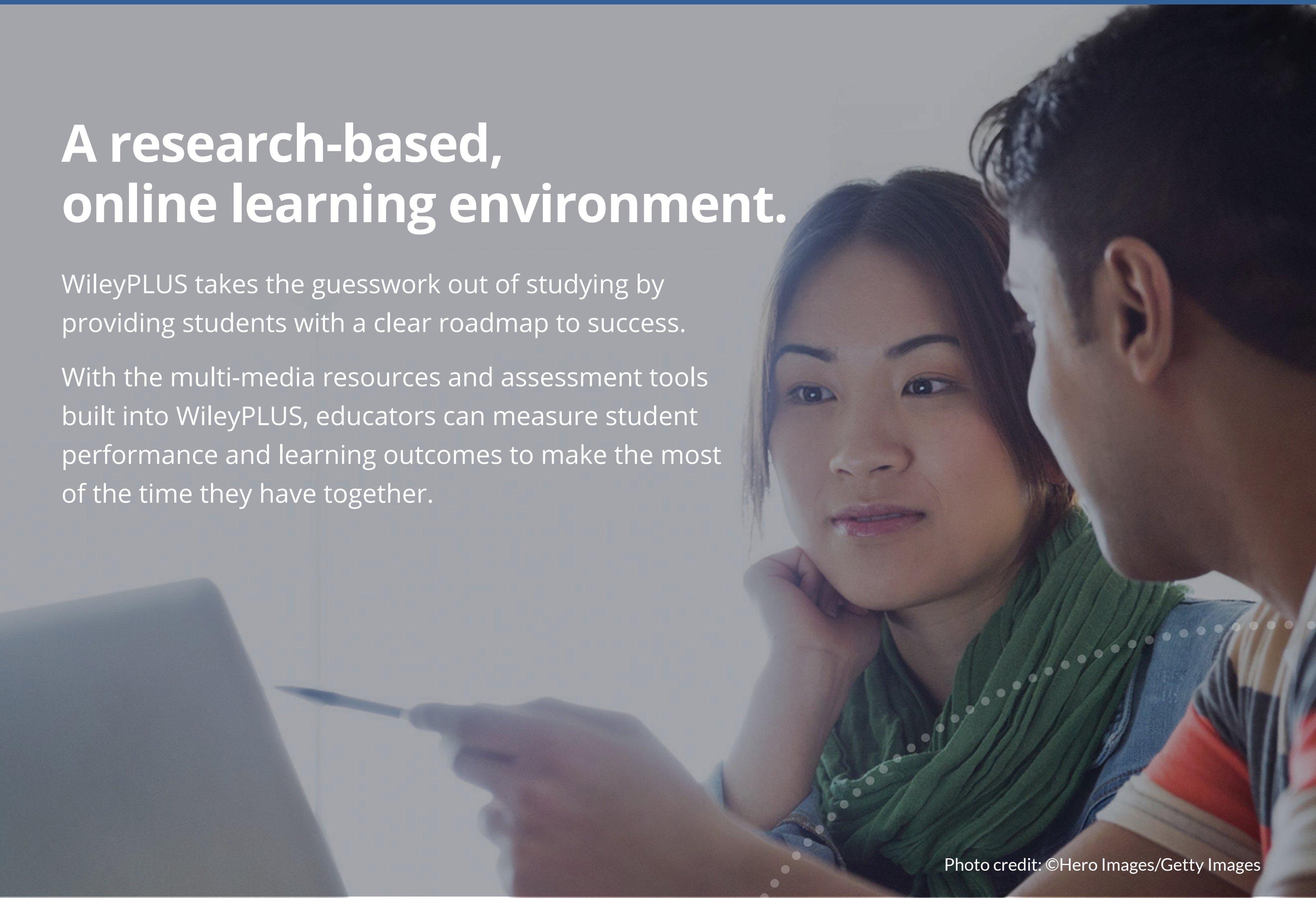
Elementary Differential Equations and Boundary Value Problems

11th Edition

BOYCE | DIPRIMA | MEADE

WILEY

WileyPLUS



A research-based, online learning environment.

WileyPLUS takes the guesswork out of studying by providing students with a clear roadmap to success.

With the multi-media resources and assessment tools built into WileyPLUS, educators can measure student performance and learning outcomes to make the most of the time they have together.

Photo credit: ©Hero Images/Getty Images

Identify which students are struggling early in the semester.

Educators can track the students' progress through required or practice assignments, and know which students are keeping up with the pace of the course.

Help students organize their learning and get the practice they need.

The Read, Study & Practice area, organized by learning objective, provides students with the complete e-textbook and a wealth of resources for learning the material.

Measure outcomes to promote continuous improvement.

With Gradebook and learning objective-based results, both instructors and students can gauge problem areas and act on what's most important.

www.wileyplus.com

WILEY

Elementary Differential Equations and Boundary Value Problems

Eleventh Edition

WILLIAM E. BOYCE
Edward P. Hamilton Professor Emeritus
Department of Mathematical Sciences
Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute

RICHARD C. DIPRIMA
formerly Eliza Ricketts Foundation Professor
Department of Mathematical Sciences
Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute

DOUGLAS B. MEADE
Department of Mathematics
University of South Carolina - Columbia

WILEY

VICE PRESIDENT AND DIRECTOR	Laurie Rosatone
ACQUISITIONS EDITOR	Shannon Corliss
SPONSORING EDITOR	Jennifer Brady
MARKETING MANAGER	John LaVacca III
EDITORIAL ASSISTANT	Ryann Dannelly
SENIOR CONTENT MANAGER	Valerie Zaborski
SENIOR PRODUCTION EDITOR	Ken Santor
SENIOR DESIGNER	Wendy Lai
PRODUCT DESIGNER	David Dietz
PRODUCT DESIGN MANAGER	Tom Kulesa
PRODUCTION SERVICES	Jeanine Furino/Cenveo Publisher Services
COVER ART	John Lund/Getty Images, Inc.

This book was set in STIX by Cenveo Publisher Services using LaTeX and printed and bound by Quad Graphics Versailles. The cover was printed by Quad Graphics Versailles.

This book is printed on acid-free paper. ∞

Copyright ©2017, 2012, 2009 John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, website www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201) 748-6011, Fax: (201) 748-6008, website http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Evaluation copies are provided to qualified academics and professionals for review purposes only, for use in their courses during the next academic year. These copies are licensed and may not be sold or transferred to a third party. Upon completion of the review period, please return the evaluation copy to Wiley. Return instructions and a free of charge return shipping label are available at www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel. Outside of the United States, please contact your local representative.

The inside back cover will contain printing identification and country of origin if omitted from this page. In addition, if the ISBN on the back cover differs from the ISBN on this page, the one on the back cover is correct.

ePub ISBN-13 978-1-119-37792-4
BRV ISBN-13 978-1-119-25600-7
EVAL ISBN-13 978-1-119-37575-3

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

To Elsa, Betsy, and in loving memory of Maureen

To Siobhan, James, Richard Jr., Carolyn, Ann, Stuart,
Michael, Marybeth, and Bradley

And to the next generation:
Charles, Aidan, Stephanie, Veronica, and Deirdre

The Authors

WILLIAM E. BOYCE received his B.A. degree in Mathematics from Rhodes College, and his M.S. and Ph.D. degrees in Mathematics from Carnegie-Mellon University. He is a member of the American Mathematical Society, the Mathematical Association of America, and the Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics. He is currently the Edward P. Hamilton Distinguished Professor Emeritus of Science Education (Department of Mathematical Sciences) at Rensselaer. He is the author of numerous technical papers in boundary value problems and random differential equations and their applications. He is the author of several textbooks including two differential equations texts, and is the coauthor (with M.H. Holmes, J.G. Ecker, and W.L. Siegmann) of a text on using Maple to explore Calculus. He is also coauthor (with R.L. Borrelli and C.S. Coleman) of *Differential Equations Laboratory Workbook* (Wiley 1992), which received the EDUCOM Best Mathematics Curricular Innovation Award in 1993. Professor Boyce was a member of the NSF-sponsored CODEE (Consortium for Ordinary Differential Equations Experiments) that led to the widely-acclaimed *ODE Architect*. He has also been active in curriculum innovation and reform. Among other things, he was the initiator of the "Computers in Calculus" project at Rensselaer, partially supported by the NSF. In 1991 he received the William H. Wiley Distinguished Faculty Award given by Rensselaer.

RICHARD C. DIPRIMA (deceased) received his B.S., M.S., and Ph.D. degrees in Mathematics from Carnegie-Mellon University. He joined the faculty of Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute after holding research positions at MIT, Harvard, and Hughes Aircraft. He held the Eliza Ricketts Foundation Professorship of Mathematics at Rensselaer, was a fellow of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, the American Academy of Mechanics, and the American Physical Society. He was also a member of the American Mathematical Society, the Mathematical Association of America, and the Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics. He served as the Chairman of the Department of Mathematical Sciences at Rensselaer, as President of the Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, and as Chairman of the Executive Committee of the Applied Mechanics Division of ASME. In 1980, he was the recipient of the William H. Wiley Distinguished Faculty Award given by Rensselaer. He received Fulbright fellowships in 1964–65 and 1983 and a Guggenheim fellowship in 1982–83. He was the author of numerous technical papers in hydrodynamic stability and lubrication theory and two texts on differential equations and boundary value problems. Professor DiPrima died on September 10, 1984.

DOUGLAS B. MEADE received B.S. degrees in Mathematics and Computer Science from Bowling Green State University, an M.S. in Applied Mathematics from Carnegie Mellon University, and a Ph.D. in mathematics from Carnegie Mellon University. After a two-year stint at Purdue University, he joined the mathematics faculty at the University of South Carolina, where he is currently an Associate Professor of mathematics and the Associate Dean for Instruction, Curriculum, and Assessment in the College of Arts and Sciences. He is a member of the American Mathematical Society, Mathematics Association of America, and Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics; in 2016 he was named an ICTCM Fellow at the International Conference on Technology in Collegiate Mathematics (ICTCM). His primary research interests are in the numerical solution of partial differential equations arising from wave propagation problems in unbounded domains and from population models for infectious diseases. He is also well-known for his educational uses of computer algebra systems, particularly Maple. These include Getting Started with Maple (with M. May, C-K. Cheung, and G. E. Keough, Wiley, 2009, ISBN 978-0-470-45554-8), Engineer's Toolkit: Maple for Engineers (with E. Bourkoff, Addison-Wesley, 1998, ISBN 0-8053-6445-5), and numerous Maple supplements for numerous calculus, linear algebra, and differential equations textbooks - including previous editions of this book. He was a member of the MathDL New Collections Working Group for Single Variable Calculus, and chaired the Working Groups for Differential Equations and Linear Algebra. The NSF is partially supporting his work, together with Prof. Philip Yasskin (Texas A&M), on the Maplets for Calculus project.

Preface

As we have prepared an updated edition our first priorities are to preserve, and to enhance, the qualities that have made previous editions so successful. In particular, we adopt the viewpoint of an applied mathematician with diverse interests in differential equations, ranging from quite theoretical to intensely practical – and usually a combination of both. Three pillars of our presentation of the material are methods of solution, analysis of solutions, and approximations of solutions. Regardless of the specific viewpoint adopted, we have sought to ensure the exposition is simultaneously correct and complete, but not needlessly abstract.

The intended audience is undergraduate STEM students whose degree program includes an introductory course in differential equations during the first two years. The essential prerequisite is a working knowledge of calculus, typically a two- or three-semester course sequence or an equivalent. While a basic familiarity with matrices is helpful, Sections 7.2 and 7.3 provide an overview of the essential linear algebra ideas needed for the parts of the book that deal with systems of differential equations (the remainder of Chapter 7, Section 8.5, and Chapter 9).

A strength of this book is its appropriateness in a wide variety of instructional settings. In particular, it allows instructors flexibility in the selection of and the ordering of topics and in the use of technology. The essential core material is Chapter 1, Sections 2.1 through 2.5, and Sections 3.1 through 3.5. After completing these sections, the selection of additional topics, and the order and depth of coverage are generally at the discretion of the instructor. Chapters 4 through 11 are essentially independent of each other, except that Chapter 7 should precede Chapter 9, and Chapter 10 should precede Chapter 11.

A particularly appealing aspect of differential equations is that even the simplest differential equations have a direct correspondence to realistic physical phenomena: exponential growth and decay, spring-mass systems, electrical circuits, competitive species, and wave propagation. More complex natural processes can often be understood by combining and building upon simpler and more basic models. A thorough knowledge of these basic models, the differential equations that describe them, and their solutions – either explicit solutions or qualitative properties of the solution – is the first and indispensable step toward analyzing the solutions of more complex and realistic problems. The modeling process is detailed in Chapter 1 and Section 2.3. Careful constructions of models appear also in Sections 2.5, 3.7, 9.4, 10.5, and 10.7 (and the appendices to Chapter 10). Various problem sets throughout the book include problems that involve modeling to formulate an appropriate differential equation, and then to solve it or to determine some qualitative properties of its solution. The primary purposes of these applied problems are to provide students with hands-on experience in the derivation of differential equations, and to convince them that differential equations arise naturally in a wide variety of real-world applications.

Another important concept emphasized repeatedly throughout the book is the transportability of mathematical knowledge. While a specific solution method applies to only a particular class of differential equations, it can be used in any application in which that particular type of differential equation arises. Once this point is made in a convincing manner, we believe that it is unnecessary to provide specific applications of every method of solution or type of equation that we consider. This decision helps to keep this book to a reasonable size, and allows us to keep the primary emphasis on the development of more solution methods for additional types of differential equations.

From a student's point of view, the problems that are assigned as homework and that appear on examinations define the course. We believe that the most outstanding feature of this book is the number, and above all the variety and range, of the problems that it contains. Many problems are entirely straightforward, but many others are more challenging, and some are fairly open-ended and can even serve as the basis for independent student projects. The observant reader will notice that there are fewer problems in this edition than in previous editions; many of these problems remain available to instructors via the WileyPlus course. The remaining 1600 problems are still far more problems than any instructor can use in any given course, and this provides instructors with a multitude of choices in tailoring their course to meet their own goals and the needs of their students. The answers to almost all of these problems can be found in the pages at the back of the book; full solutions are in either the Student's Solution Manual or the Instructor's Solution Manual.

While we make numerous references to the use of technology, we do so without limiting instructor freedom to use as much, or as little, technology as they desire. Appropriate technologies include advanced graphing calculators (TI Nspire), a spreadsheet (Excel), web-based resources (applets), computer algebra systems, (Maple, Mathematica, Sage), scientific computation systems (MATLAB), or traditional programming (FORTRAN, Javascript, Python). Problems marked with a G are ones we believe are best approached with a graphical tool; those marked with a N are best solved with the use of a numerical tool. Instructors should consider setting their own policies, consistent with their interests and intents about student use of technology when completing assigned problems.

Many problems in this book are best solved through a combination of analytic, graphic, and numeric methods. Pencil-and-paper methods are used to develop a model that is best solved (or analyzed) using a symbolic or graphic tool. The quantitative results and graphs, frequently produced using computer-based resources, serve to illustrate and to clarify conclusions that might not be readily apparent from a complicated explicit solution formula. Conversely, the implementation of an efficient numerical method to obtain an approximate solution typically requires a good deal of preliminary analysis – to determine qualitative features of the solution as a guide to computation, to investigate limiting or special cases, or to discover ranges of the variables or parameters that require an appropriate combination of both analytic and numeric computation. Good judgment may well be required to determine the best choice of solution methods in each particular case. Within this context we point out that problems that request a "sketch" are generally intended to be completed without the use of any technology (except your writing device).

We believe that it is important for students to understand that (except perhaps in courses on differential equations) the goal of solving a differential equation is seldom simply to obtain the solution. Rather, we seek the solution in order to obtain insight into the behavior of the process that the equation purports to model. In other words, the solution is not an end in itself. Thus, we have included in the text a great many problems, as well as some examples, that call for conclusions to be drawn about the solution. Sometimes this takes the form of finding the value of the independent variable at which the solution has a certain property, or determining the long-term behavior of the solution. Other problems ask for the effect of variations in a parameter, or for the determination of all values of a parameter at which the solution experiences a substantial change. Such problems are typical of those that arise in the applications of differential equations, and, depending on the goals of the course, an instructor has the option of assigning as few or as many of these problems as desired.

Readers familiar with the preceding edition will observe that the general structure of the book is unchanged. The minor revisions that we have made in this edition are in many cases the result of suggestions from users of earlier editions. The goals are to improve the clarity and readability of our presentation of basic material about differential equations and their applications. More specifically, the most important revisions include the following:

1. Chapter 1 has been rewritten. Instead of a separate section on the History of Differential Equations, this material appears in three installments in the remaining three section.
2. Additional words of explanation and/or more explicit details in the steps in a derivation have been added throughout each chapter. These are too numerous and widespread to mention individually, but collectively they should help to make the book more readable for many students.
3. There are about forty new or revised problems scattered throughout the book. The total number of problems has been reduced by about 400 problems, which are still available through WileyPlus, leaving about 1600 problems in print.
4. There are new examples in Sections 2.1, 3.8, and 7.5.
5. The majority (is this correct?) of the figures have been redrawn, mainly by the use full color to allow for easier identification of critical properties of the solution. In addition, numerous captions have been expanded to clarify the purpose of the figure without requiring a search of the surrounding text.
6. There are several new references, and some others have been updated.

The authors have found differential equations to be a never-ending source of interesting, and sometimes surprising, results and phenomena. We hope that users of this book, both students and instructors, will share our enthusiasm for the subject.

William E. Boyce and Douglas B. Meade
Watervliet, New York and Columbia, SC
29 August 2016

Supplemental Resources for Instructors and Students

An Instructor's Solutions Manual, ISBN 978-1-119-16976-5, includes solutions for all problems not contained in the Student Solutions Manual.

A Student Solutions Manual, ISBN 978-1-119-16975-8, includes solutions for selected problems in the text.

A Book Companion Site, www.wiley.com/college/boyce, provides a wealth of resources for students and instructors, including

- PowerPoint slides of important definitions, examples, and theorems from the book, as well as graphics for presentation in lectures or for study and note taking.
- Chapter Review Sheets, which enable students to test their knowledge of key concepts. For further review, diagnostic feedback is provided that refers to pertinent sections in the text.
- Mathematica, Maple, and MATLAB data files for selected problems in the text providing opportunities for further exploration of important concepts.
- Projects that deal with extended problems normally not included among traditional topics in differential equations, many involving applications from a variety of disciplines. These vary in length and complexity, and they can be assigned as individual homework or as group assignments.

A series of supplemental guidebooks, also published by John Wiley & Sons, can be used with Boyce/DiPrima/Meade in order to incorporate computing technologies into the course. These books emphasize numerical methods and graphical analysis, showing how these methods enable us to interpret solutions of ordinary differential equations (ODEs) in the real world. Separate guidebooks cover each of the three major mathematical software formats, but the ODE subject matter is the same in each.

- Hunt, Lipsman, Osborn, and Rosenberg, *Differential Equations with MATLAB* , 3rd ed., 2012, ISBN 978-1-118-37680-5

- Hunt, Lardy, Lipsman, Osborn, and Rosenberg, *Differential Equations with Maple*, 3rd ed., 2008, ISBN 978-0-471-77317-7
- Hunt, Outing, Lipsman, Osborn, and Rosenberg, *Differential Equations with Mathematica*, 3rd ed., 2009, ISBN 978-0-471-77316-0

WileyPLUS *WileyPLUS* is an innovative, research-based online environment for effective teaching and learning.

WileyPLUS builds students' confidence because it takes the guesswork out of studying by providing students with a clear roadmap: what to do, how to do it, if they did it right. Students will take more initiative so you'll have greater impact on their achievement in the classroom and beyond.

WileyPLUS, is loaded with all of the supplements above, and it also features

- The E-book, which is an exact version of the print text but also features hyperlinks to questions, definitions, and supplements for quicker and easier support.
- Guided Online (GO) Exercises, which prompt students to build solutions step-by-step. Rather than simply grading an exercise answer as wrong, GO problems show students precisely where they are making a mistake.
- Homework management tools, which enable instructors easily to assign and grade questions, as well as to gauge student comprehension.
- QuickStart pre-designed reading and homework assign ments. Use them as is, or customize them to fit the needs of your classroom.

Acknowledgments

It is a pleasure to express my appreciation to the many people who have generously assisted in various ways in the preparation of this book.

To the individuals listed below, who reviewed the manuscript and/or provided valuable suggestions for its improvement:

Irina Gheorghiciuc, Carnegie Mellon University
Bernard Brooks, Rochester Institute of Technology
James Moseley, West Virginia University
D. Glenn Lasseigne, Old Dominion University
Stephen Summers, University of Florida
Fabio Milner, Arizona State University
Mohamed Boudjelkha, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute
Yuval Flicker, The Ohio State University
Y. Charles Li, University of Missouri, Columbia
Will Murray, California State University, Long Beach
Yue Zhao, University of Central Florida
Vladimir Shtelen, Rutgers University
Zhilan Feng, Purdue University
Mathew Johnson, University of Kansas
Bulent Tosun, University of Alabama
Juha Pohjanpelto, Oregon State University
Patricia Diute, Rochester Institute of Technology
Ning Ju, Oklahoma State University
Ian Christie, West Virginia University
Jonathan Rosenberg, University of Maryland
Irina Kogan, North Carolina State University

To our colleagues and students at Rensselaer and The University of South Carolina, whose suggestions and reactions through the years have done much to sharpen our knowledge of differential equations, as well as our ideas on how to present the subject.

To those readers of the preceding edition who called errors or omissions to our attention.

To Tom Polaski (Winthrop University), who is primarily responsible for the revision of the Instructor's Solutions Manual and the Student Solutions Manual.

To Mark McKibben (West Chester University), who checked the answers in the back of the text and the Instructor's Solutions Manual for accuracy, and carefully checked the entire manuscript.

To the editorial and production staff of John Wiley & Sons, who have always been ready to offer assistance and have displayed the highest standards of professionalism.

The last, but most important, people we want to thank are our wives: Elsa, for discussing questions both mathematical and stylistic and above all for her unfailing support and encouragement, and Betsy, for her encouragement, patience and understanding.

WILLIAM E. BOYCE AND DOUGLAS B. MEADE

Brief Contents

Contents

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

In this first chapter we provide a foundation for your study of differential equations in several different ways. First, we use two problems to illustrate some of the basic ideas that we will return to, and elaborate upon, frequently throughout the remainder of the book. Later, to provide organizational structure for the book, we indicate several ways of classifying differential equations.

The study of differential equations has attracted the attention of many of the world's greatest mathematicians during the past three centuries. On the other hand, it is important to recognize that differential equations remains a dynamic field of inquiry today, with many interesting open questions. We outline some of the major trends in the historical development of the subject and mention a few of the outstanding mathematicians who have contributed to it. Additional biographical information about some of these contributors will be highlighted at appropriate times in later chapters.

1.1 Some Basic Mathematical Models; Direction Fields

Before embarking on a serious study of differential equations (for example, by reading this book or major portions of it), you should have some idea of the possible benefits to be gained by doing so. For some students the intrinsic interest of the subject itself is enough motivation, but for most it is the likelihood of important applications to other fields that makes the undertaking worthwhile.

Many of the principles, or laws, underlying the behavior of the natural world are statements or relations involving rates at which things happen. When expressed in mathematical terms, the relations are equations and the rates are derivatives. Equations containing derivatives are **differential equations**. Therefore, to understand and to investigate problems involving the motion of fluids, the flow of current in electric circuits, the dissipation of heat in solid objects, the propagation and detection of seismic waves, or the increase or decrease of populations, among many others, it is necessary to know something about differential equations.

A differential equation that describes some physical process is often called a **mathematical model** of the process, and many such models are discussed throughout this book. In this section we begin with two models leading to equations that are easy to solve. It is noteworthy that even the simplest differential equations provide useful models of important physical processes.

EXAMPLE 1 | A Falling Object

Suppose that an object is falling in the atmosphere near sea level. Formulate a differential equation that describes the motion.

Solution:

We begin by introducing letters to represent various quantities that may be of interest in this problem. The motion takes place during a certain time interval, so let us use t to denote time. Also, let us use v to represent the velocity of the falling object. The velocity will presumably change with time, so we think of v as a function of t; in other words, t is the independent variable and v is the dependent variable. The choice of units of measurement is somewhat arbitrary, and there is nothing in the statement of the problem to suggest appropriate units, so we are free to make any choice that seems reasonable. To be specific, let us measure time t in seconds and velocity v in meters/second. Further, we will assume that v is positive in the downward direction—that is, when the object is falling.

The physical law that governs the motion of objects is **Newton's second law**, which states that the mass of the object times its acceleration is equal to the net force on the object. In mathematical terms this law is expressed by the equation

$$F = ma, \tag{1}$$

where m is the mass of the object, a is its acceleration, and F is the net force exerted on the object. To keep our units consistent, we will measure m in kilograms, a in meters/second^2, and F in newtons. Of course, a is related to v by $a = dv/dt$, so we can rewrite equation (1) in the form

$$F = m\frac{dv}{dt}. \tag{2}$$

Next, consider the forces that act on the object as it falls. Gravity exerts a force equal to the weight of the object, or mg, where g is the acceleration due to gravity. In the units we have chosen, g has been determined experimentally to be approximately equal to 9.8 m/s^2 near the earth's surface.

There is also a force due to air resistance, or drag, that is more difficult to model. This is not the place for an extended discussion of the drag force; suffice it to say that it is often assumed that the drag is proportional to the velocity, and we will make that assumption here. Thus the drag force has the magnitude γv, where γ is a constant called the drag coefficient. The numerical value of the drag coefficient varies widely from one object to another; smooth streamlined objects have much smaller drag coefficients than rough blunt ones. The physical units for γ are mass/time, or kg/s for this problem; if these units seem peculiar, remember that γv must have the units of force, namely, kg·m/s^2.

In writing an expression for the net force F, we need to remember that gravity always acts in the downward (positive) direction, whereas, for a falling object, drag acts in the upward (negative) direction, as shown in Figure 1.1.1. Thus

$$F = mg - \gamma v \tag{3}$$

and equation (2) then becomes

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = mg - \gamma v. \tag{4}$$

Differential equation (4) is a mathematical model for the velocity v of an object falling in the atmosphere near sea level. Note that the model contains the three constants m, g, and γ. The constants m and γ depend very much on the particular object that is falling, and they are usually different for different objects. It is common to refer to them as parameters, since they may take on a range of values during the course of an experiment. On the other hand, g is a physical constant, whose value is the same for all objects.

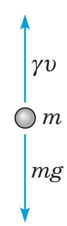


FIGURE 1.1.1 Free-body diagram of the forces on a falling object.

To solve equation (4), we need to find a function $v = v(t)$ that satisfies the equation. It is not hard to do this, and we will show you how in the next section. For the present, however, let us see what we can learn about solutions without actually finding any of them. Our task is simplified slightly if we assign numerical values to m and γ, but the procedure is the same regardless of which values we choose. So, let us suppose that $m = 10$ kg and $\gamma = 2$ kg/s. Then equation (4) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = 9.8 - \frac{v}{5}. \tag{5}$$

EXAMPLE 2 | A Falling Object (continued)

Investigate the behavior of solutions of equation (5) without solving the differential equation.

Solution:

First let us consider what information can be obtained directly from the differential equation itself. Suppose that the velocity v has a certain given value. Then, by evaluating the right-hand side of differential equation (5), we can find the corresponding value of dv/dt. For instance, if $v = 40$, then $dv/dt = 1.8$. This means that the slope of a solution $v = v(t)$ has the value 1.8 at any point where $v = 40$. We can display this information graphically in the tv-plane by drawing short line segments with slope 1.8 at several points on the line $v = 40$. (See Figure 1.1.2(a)). Similarly, when $v = 50$, then $dv/dt = -0.2$, and when $v = 60$, then $dv/dt = -2.2$, so we draw line segments with slope -0.2 at several points on the line $v = 50$ (see Figure 1.1.2(b)) and line segments with slope -2.2 at several points on the line $v = 60$ (see Figure 1.1.2(c)). Proceeding in the same way with other values of v we create what is called a **direction field**, or a **slope field**. The direction field for differential equation (5) is shown in Figure 1.1.3.

Remember that a solution of equation (5) is a function $v = v(t)$ whose graph is a curve in the tv-plane. The importance of Figure 1.1.3 is that each line segment is a tangent line to one of these solution curves. Thus, even though we have not found any solutions, and no graphs of solutions appear in the figure, we can nonetheless draw some qualitative conclusions about the behavior of solutions. For instance, if v is less than a certain critical value, then all the line segments have positive slopes, and the speed of the falling object increases as it falls. On the other hand, if v is greater than the critical value, then the line segments have negative slopes, and the falling object slows down as it falls. What is this critical value of v that separates objects whose speed is increasing from those whose speed is decreasing? Referring again to equation (5), we ask what value of v will cause dv/dt to be zero. The answer is $v = (5)(9.8) = 49$ m/s.

In fact, the constant function $v(t) = 49$ is a solution of equation (5). To verify this statement, substitute $v(t) = 49$ into equation (5) and observe that each side of the equation is zero. Because it does not change with time, the solution $v(t) = 49$ is called an **equilibrium solution**. It is the solution that corresponds to a perfect balance between gravity and drag. In Figure 1.1.3 we show the equilibrium solution $v(t) = 49$ superimposed on the direction field. From this figure we can draw another conclusion, namely, that all other solutions seem to be converging to the equilibrium solution as t increases. Thus, in this context, the equilibrium solution is often called the **terminal velocity**.

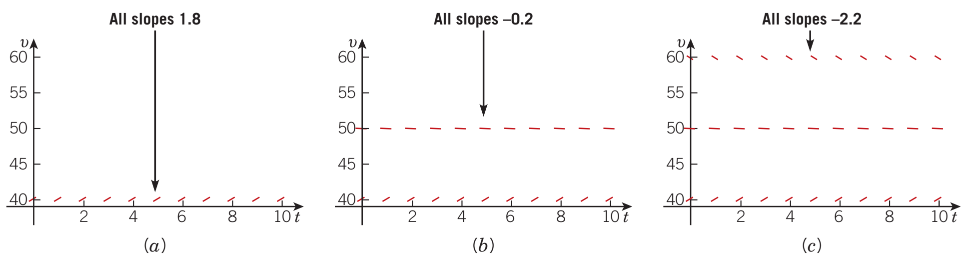


FIGURE 1.1.2 Assembling a direction field for equation (5): $dv/dt = 9.8 - v/5$. (a) when $v = 40$, $dv/dt = 1.8$, (b) when $v = 50$, $dv/dt = -0.2$, and (c) when $v = 60$, $dv/dt = -2.2$.

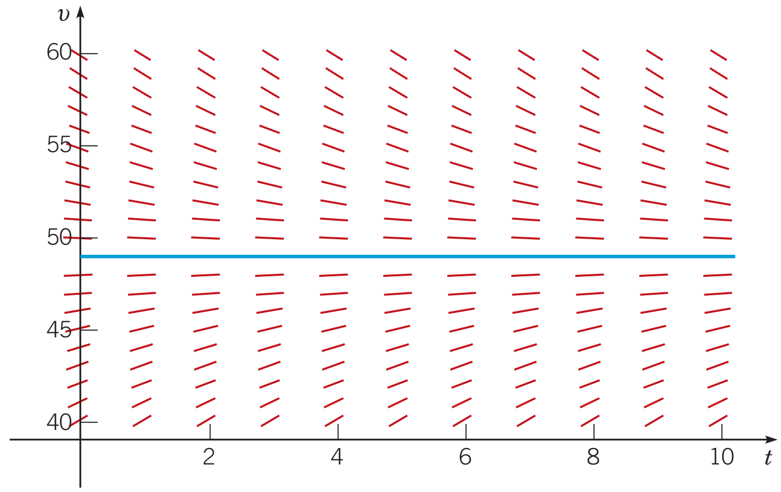


FIGURE 1.1.3 Direction field and equilibrium solution for equation (5): $dv/dt = 9.8 - v/5$.

The approach illustrated in Example 2 can be applied equally well to the more general differential equation (4), where the parameters m and γ are unspecified positive numbers. The results are essentially identical to those of Example 2. The equilibrium solution of equation (4) is the constant solution $v(t) = mg/\gamma$. Solutions below the equilibrium solution increase with time, and those above it decrease with time. As a result, we conclude that all solutions approach the equilibrium solution as t becomes large.

Direction Fields. Direction fields are valuable tools in studying the solutions of differential equations of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y), \tag{6}$$

where f is a given function of the two variables t and y, sometimes referred to as the **rate function**. A direction field for equations of the form (6) can be constructed by evaluating f at each point of a rectangular grid. At each point of the grid, a short line segment is drawn whose slope is the value of f at that point. Thus each line segment is tangent to the graph of the solution passing through that point. A direction field drawn on a fairly fine grid gives a good picture of the overall behavior of solutions of a differential equation. Usually a grid consisting of a few hundred points is sufficient. The construction of a direction field is often a useful first step in the investigation of a differential equation.

Two observations are worth particular mention. First, in constructing a direction field, we do not have to solve equation (6); we just have to evaluate the given function $f(t, y)$ many times. Thus direction fields can be readily constructed even for equations that may be quite difficult to solve. Second, repeated evaluation of a given function and drawing a direction field are tasks for which a computer or other computational or graphical aid are well suited. All the direction fields shown in this book, such as the one in Figures 1.1.2 and 1.1.3, were computer generated.

Field Mice and Owls. Now let us look at another, quite different example. Consider a population of field mice that inhabit a certain rural area. In the absence of predators we assume that the mouse population increases at a rate proportional to the current population. This assumption is not a well-established physical law (as Newton's law of motion is in Example 1), but it is a common initial hypothesis[1] in a study of population growth. If we denote time by t and the mouse population at time t by $p(t)$, then the assumption about population growth can be expressed by the equation

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = rp, \tag{7}$$

[1]A better model of population growth is discussed in Section 2.5.

where the proportionality factor r is called the **rate constant** or **growth rate**. To be specific, suppose that time is measured in months and that the rate constant r has the value 0.5/month. Then the two terms in equation (7) have the units of mice/month.

Now let us add to the problem by supposing that several owls live in the same neighborhood and that they kill 15 field mice per day. To incorporate this information into the model, we must add another term to the differential equation (7), so that it becomes

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{p}{2} - 450. \tag{8}$$

Observe that the predation term is -450 rather than -15 because time is measured in months, so the monthly predation rate is needed.

EXAMPLE 3

Investigate the solutions of differential equation (8) graphically.

Solution:

A direction field for equation (8) is shown in Figure 1.1.4. For sufficiently large values of p it can be seen from the figure, or directly from equation (8) itself, that dp/dt is positive, so that solutions increase. On the other hand, if p is small, then dp/dt is negative and solutions decrease. Again, the critical value of p that separates solutions that increase from those that decrease is the value of p for which dp/dt is zero. By setting dp/dt equal to zero in equation (8) and then solving for p, we find the equilibrium solution $p(t) = 900$, for which the growth term and the predation term in equation (8) are exactly balanced. The equilibrium solution is also shown in Figure 1.1.4.

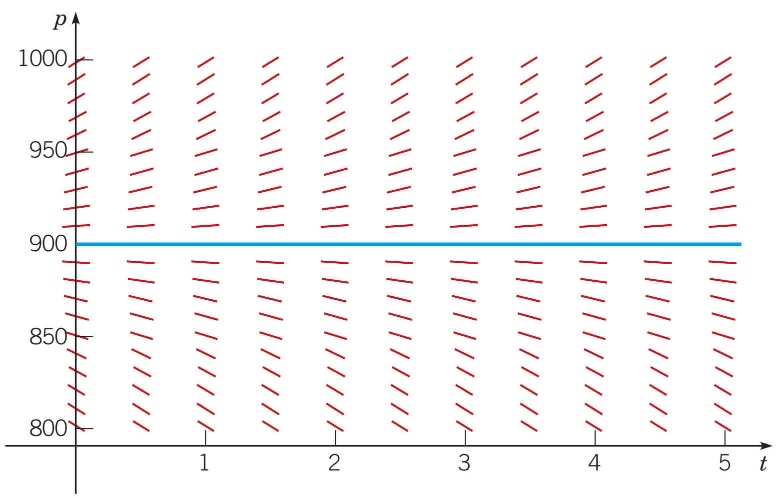


FIGURE 1.1.4 Direction field (red) and equilibrium solution (blue) for equation (8): $dp/dt = p/2 - 450$.

Comparing Examples 2 and 3, we note that in both cases the equilibrium solution separates increasing from decreasing solutions. In Example 2 other solutions converge to, or are attracted by, the equilibrium solution, so that after the object falls long enough, an observer will see it moving at very nearly the equilibrium velocity. On the other hand, in Example 3 other solutions diverge from, or are repelled by, the equilibrium solution. Solutions behave very differently depending on whether they start above or below the equilibrium solution. As time passes, an observer might see populations either much larger or much smaller than the equilibrium population, but the equilibrium solution itself will not, in practice, be observed. In both problems, however, the equilibrium solution is very important in understanding how solutions of the given differential equation behave.

A more general version of equation (8) is

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = rp - k, \tag{9}$$

where the growth rate r and the predation rate k are positive constants that are otherwise unspecified. Solutions of this more general equation are very similar to those of equation (8). The equilibrium solution of equation (9) is $p(t) = k/r$. Solutions above the equilibrium solution increase, while those below it decrease.

You should keep in mind that both of the models discussed in this section have their limitations. The model (5) of the falling object is valid only as long as the object is falling freely, without encountering any obstacles. If the velocity is large enough, the assumption that the frictional resistance is linearly proportional to the velocity has to be replaced with a nonlinear approximation (see Problem 21). The population model (8) eventually predicts negative numbers of mice (if $p < 900$) or enormously large numbers (if $p > 900$). Both of these predictions are unrealistic, so this model becomes unacceptable after a fairly short time interval.

Constructing Mathematical Models. In applying differential equations to any of the numerous fields in which they are useful, it is necessary first to formulate the appropriate differential equation that describes, or models, the problem being investigated. In this section we have looked at two examples of this modeling process, one drawn from physics and the other from ecology. In constructing future mathematical models yourself, you should recognize that each problem is different, and that successful modeling cannot be reduced to the observance of a set of prescribed rules. Indeed, constructing a satisfactory model is sometimes the most difficult part of the problem. Nevertheless, it may be helpful to list some steps that are often part of the process:

1. Identify the independent and dependent variables and assign letters to represent them. Often the independent variable is time.
2. Choose the units of measurement for each variable. In a sense the choice of units is arbitrary, but some choices may be much more convenient than others. For example, we chose to measure time in seconds for the falling-object problem and in months for the population problem.
3. Articulate the basic principle that underlies or governs the problem you are investigating. This may be a widely recognized physical law, such as Newton's law of motion, or it may be a more speculative assumption that may be based on your own experience or observations. In any case, this step is likely not to be a purely mathematical one, but will require you to be familiar with the field in which the problem originates.
4. Express the principle or law in step 3 in terms of the variables you chose in step 1. This may be easier said than done. It may require the introduction of physical constants or parameters (such as the drag coefficient in Example 1) and the determination of appropriate values for them. Or it may involve the use of auxiliary or intermediate variables that must then be related to the primary variables.
5. If the units agree, then your equation at least is dimensionally consistent, although it may have other shortcomings that this test does not reveal.
6. In the problems considered here, the result of step 4 is a single differential equation, which constitutes the desired mathematical model. Keep in mind, though, that in more complex problems the resulting mathematical model may be much more complicated, perhaps involving a system of several differential equations, for example.

Historical Background, Part I: Newton, Leibniz, and the Bernoullis. Without knowing something about differential equations and methods of solving them, it is difficult to appreciate the history of this important branch of mathematics. Further, the development of differential equations is intimately interwoven with the general development of mathematics and cannot be separated from it. Nevertheless, to provide some historical perspective, we indicate here some of the major trends in the history of the subject and identify the most prominent early contributors. The rest of the historical background in this section focuses on the earliest contributors from the seventeenth century. The story continues at the end of Section 1.2 with an overview of the contributions of Euler and other eighteenth-century (and early-nineteenth-century) mathematicians. More recent advances, including the use of computers and other technologies, are summarized at the end of Section 1.3. Additional historical information is contained in footnotes scattered throughout the book and in the references listed at the end of the chapter.

The subject of differential equations originated in the study of calculus by Isaac Newton (1643–1727) and Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (1646–1716) in the seventeenth century. Newton grew up in the English countryside, was educated at Trinity College, Cambridge, and became Lucasian Professor of Mathematics there in 1669. His epochal discoveries of calculus and of the fundamental laws of mechanics date to 1665. They were circulated privately among his friends, but Newton was extremely sensitive to criticism and did not begin to publish his results until 1687 with the appearance of his most famous book *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica*. Although Newton did relatively little work in differential equations as such, his development of the calculus and elucidation of the basic principles of mechanics provided a basis for their applications in the eighteenth century, most notably by Euler (see Historical Background, Part II in Section 1.2). Newton identified three forms of first-order differential equations: $dy/dx = f(x)$, $dy/dx = f(y)$, and $dy/dx = f(x, y)$. For the latter equation he developed a method of solution using infinite series when $f(x, y)$ is a polynomial in x and y. Newton's active research in mathematics ended in the early 1690s, except for the solution of occasional "challenge problems" and the revision and publication of results obtained much earlier. He was appointed Warden of the British Mint in 1696 and resigned his professorship a few years later. He was knighted in 1705 and, upon his death in 1727, became the first scientist buried in Westminster Abbey.

Leibniz was born in Leipzig, Germany, and completed his doctorate in philosophy at the age of 20 at the University of Altdorf. Throughout his life he engaged in scholarly work in several different fields. He was mainly self-taught in mathematics, since his interest in this subject developed when he was in his twenties. Leibniz arrived at the fundamental results of calculus independently, although a little later than Newton, but was the first to publish them, in 1684. Leibniz was very conscious of the power of good mathematical notation and was responsible for the notation dy/dx for the derivative and for the integral sign. He discovered the method of separation of variables (Section 2.2) in 1691, the reduction of homogeneous equations to separable ones (Section 2.2, Problem 30) in 1691, and the procedure for solving first-order linear equations (Section 2.1) in 1694. He spent his life as ambassador and adviser to several German royal families, which permitted him to travel widely and to carry on an extensive correspondence with other mathematicians, especially the Bernoulli brothers. In the course of this correspondence many problems in differential equations were solved during the latter part of the seventeenth century.

The Bernoulli brothers, Jakob (1654–1705) and Johann (1667–1748), of Basel, Switzerland did much to develop methods of solving differential equations and to extend the range of their applications. Jakob became professor of mathematics at Basel in 1687, and Johann was appointed to the same position upon his brother's death in 1705. Both men were quarrelsome, jealous, and frequently embroiled in disputes, especially with each other. Nevertheless, both also made significant contributions to several areas of mathematics. With the aid of calculus, they solved a number of problems in mechanics by formulating them as differential equations. For example, Jakob Bernoulli solved the differential equation $y' = \left(a^3/(b^2 y - a^3)\right)^{1/2}$ (see Problem 9 in Section 2.2) in 1690 and, in the same paper, first used the term "integral" in the modern sense. In 1694 Johann Bernoulli was able to solve the equation $dy/dx = y/(ax)$ (see Problem 10 in Section 2.2). One problem that both brothers solved, and that led to much friction between them, was the **brachistochrone problem** (see Problem 24 in Section 2.3). The brachistochrone problem was also solved by Leibniz, Newton, and the Marquis de l'Hôpital. It is said, perhaps apocryphally, that Newton learned of the problem late in the afternoon of a tiring day at the Mint and solved it that evening after dinner. He published the solution anonymously, but upon seeing it, Johann Bernoulli exclaimed, "Ah, I know the lion by his paw."

Daniel Bernoulli (1700–1782), son of Johann, migrated to St. Petersburg, Russia, as a young man to join the newly established St. Petersburg Academy, but returned to Basel in 1733 as professor of botany and, later, of physics. His interests were primarily in partial differential equations and their applications. For instance, it is his name that is associated with the Bernoulli equation in fluid mechanics. He was also the first to encounter the functions that a century later became known as Bessel functions (Section 5.7).

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, draw a direction field for the given differential equation. Based on the direction field, determine the behavior of y as $t \to \infty$. If this behavior depends on the initial value of y at $t = 0$, describe the dependency.

G **1.** $y' = 3 - 2y$

G **2.** $y' = 2y - 3$

G **3.** $y' = -1 - 2y$

G **4.** $y' = 1 + 2y$

In each of Problems 5 and 6, write down a differential equation of the form $dy/dt = ay + b$ whose solutions have the required behavior as $t \to \infty$.

5. All solutions approach $y = 2/3$.

6. All other solutions diverge from $y = 2$.

In each of Problems 7 through 10, draw a direction field for the given differential equation. Based on the direction field, determine the behavior of y as $t \to \infty$. If this behavior depends on the initial value of y at $t = 0$, describe this dependency. Note that in these problems the equations are not of the form $y' = ay + b$, and the behavior of their solutions is somewhat more complicated than for the equations in the text.

G **7.** $y' = y(4 - y)$

G **8.** $y' = -y(5 - y)$

G **9.** $y' = y^2$

G **10.** $y' = y(y - 2)^2$

Consider the following list of differential equations, some of which produced the direction fields shown in Figures 1.1.5 through 1.1.10. In each of Problems 11 through 16, identify the differential equation that corresponds to the given direction field.

a. $y' = 2y - 1$
b. $y' = 2 + y$
c. $y' = y - 2$
d. $y' = y(y + 3)$
e. $y' = y(y - 3)$
f. $y' = 1 + 2y$
g. $y' = -2 - y$
h. $y' = y(3 - y)$
i. $y' = 1 - 2y$
j. $y' = 2 - y$

11. The direction field of Figure 1.1.5.

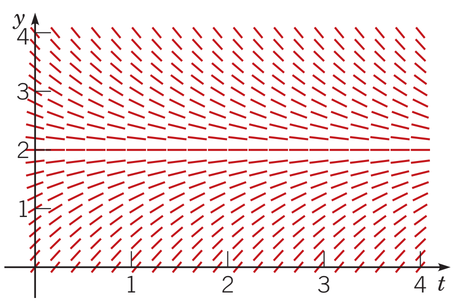


FIGURE 1.1.5 Problem 11.

12. The direction field of Figure 1.1.6.

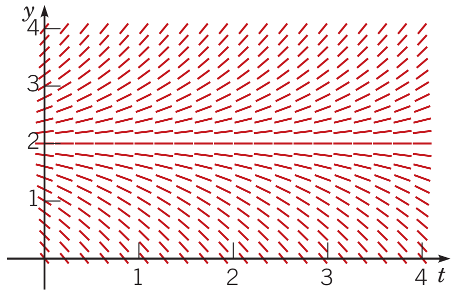


FIGURE 1.1.6 Problem 12.

13. The direction field of Figure 1.1.7.

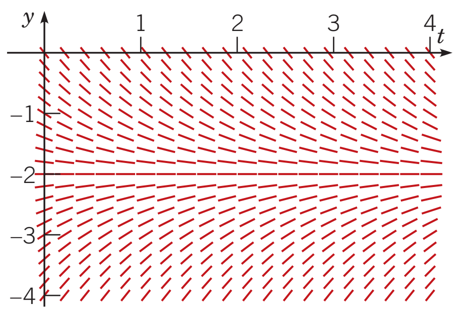


FIGURE 1.1.7 Problem 13.

14. The direction field of Figure 1.1.8.

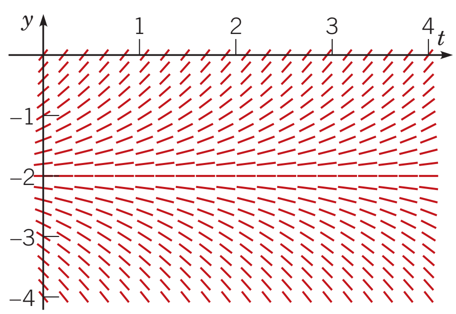


FIGURE 1.1.8 Problem 14.

15. The direction field of Figure 1.1.9.

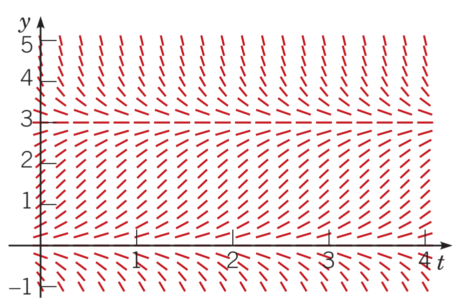


FIGURE 1.1.9 Problem 15.

16. The direction field of Figure 1.1.10.

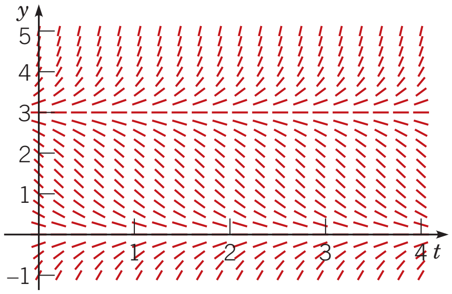


FIGURE 1.1.10 Problem 16.

17. A pond initially contains 1,000,000 gal of water and an unknown amount of an undesirable chemical. Water containing 0.01 grams of this chemical per gallon flows into the pond at a rate of 300 gal/h. The mixture flows out at the same rate, so the amount of water in the pond remains constant. Assume that the chemical is uniformly distributed throughout the pond.

a. Write a differential equation for the amount of chemical in the pond at any time.
b. How much of the chemical will be in the pond after a very long time? Does this limiting amount depend on the amount that was present initially?
c. Write a differential equation for the concentration of the chemical in the pond at time t. *Hint:* The concentration is $c = a/v = a(t)/10^6$.

18. A spherical raindrop evaporates at a rate proportional to its surface area. Write a differential equation for the volume of the raindrop as a function of time.

19. Newton's law of cooling states that the temperature of an object changes at a rate proportional to the difference between the temperature of the object itself and the temperature of its surroundings (the ambient air temperature in most cases). Suppose that the ambient temperature is 70°F and that the rate constant is 0.05 $(\text{min})^{-1}$. Write a differential equation for the temperature of the object at any time. Note that the differential equation is the same whether the temperature of the object is above or below the ambient temperature.

20. A certain drug is being administered intravenously to a hospital patient. Fluid containing 5 mg/cm^3 of the drug enters the patient's bloodstream at a rate of 100 cm^3/h. The drug is absorbed by body tissues or otherwise leaves the bloodstream at a rate proportional to the amount present, with a rate constant of 0.4/h.

a. Assuming that the drug is always uniformly distributed throughout the bloodstream, write a differential equation for the amount of the drug that is present in the bloodstream at any time.
b. How much of the drug is present in the bloodstream after a long time?

N **21.** For small, slowly falling objects, the assumption made in the text that the drag force is proportional to the velocity is a good one. For larger, more rapidly falling objects, it is more accurate to assume that the drag force is proportional to the square of the velocity.[2]

a. Write a differential equation for the velocity of a falling object of mass m if the magnitude of the drag force is proportional to the square of the velocity and its direction is opposite to that of the velocity.
b. Determine the limiting velocity after a long time.
c. If $m = 10$ kg, find the drag coefficient so that the limiting velocity is 49 m/s.
N **d.** Using the data in part c, draw a direction field and compare it with Figure 1.1.3.

In each of Problems 22 through 25, draw a direction field for the given differential equation. Based on the direction field, determine the behavior of y as $t \to \infty$. If this behavior depends on the initial value of y at $t = 0$, describe this dependency. Note that the right-hand sides of these equations depend on t as well as y; therefore, their solutions can exhibit more complicated behavior than those in the text.

G **22.** $y' = -2 + t - y$

G **23.** $y' = e^{-t} + y$

G **24.** $y' = 3\sin t + 1 + y$

G **25.** $y' = -\dfrac{2t + y}{2y}$

[2] See Lyle N. Long and Howard Weiss, "The Velocity Dependence of Aerodynamic Drag: A Primer for Mathematicians," *American Mathematical Monthly 106* (1999), 2, pp. 127–135.

1.2 Solutions of Some Differential Equations

In the preceding section we derived the differential equations

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = mg - \gamma v \tag{1}$$

and

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = rp - k. \tag{2}$$

Equation (1) models a falling object, and equation (2) models a population of field mice preyed on by owls. Both of these equations are of the general form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay - b, \tag{3}$$

where a and b are given constants. We were able to draw some important qualitative conclusions about the behavior of solutions of equations (1) and (2) by considering the associated direction fields. To answer questions of a quantitative nature, however, we need to find the solutions themselves, and we now investigate how to do that.

EXAMPLE 1 | Field Mice and Owls (continued)

Consider the equation

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = 0.5p - 450, \tag{4}$$

which describes the interaction of certain populations of field mice and owls (see equation (8) of Section 1.1). Find solutions of this equation.

Solution:

To solve equation (4), we need to find functions $p(t)$ that, when substituted into the equation, reduce it to an obvious identity. Here is one way to proceed. First, rewrite equation (4) in the form

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{p - 900}{2}, \tag{5}$$

or, if $p \neq 900$,

$$\frac{dp/dt}{p - 900} = \frac{1}{2}. \tag{6}$$

By the chain rule the left-hand side of equation (6) is the derivative of $\ln|p - 900|$ with respect to t, so we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}\ln|p - 900| = \frac{1}{2}. \tag{7}$$

Then, by integrating both sides of equation (7), we obtain

$$\ln|p - 900| = \frac{t}{2} + C, \tag{8}$$

where C is an arbitrary constant of integration. Therefore, by taking the exponential of both sides of equation (8), we find that

$$|p - 900| = e^{t/2+C} = e^C e^{t/2}, \tag{9}$$

or

$$p - 900 = \pm e^C e^{t/2}, \tag{10}$$

and finally

$$p = 900 + ce^{t/2}, \tag{11}$$

where $c = \pm e^C$ is also an arbitrary (nonzero) constant. Note that the constant function $p = 900$ is also a solution of equation (5) and that it is contained in the expression (11) if we allow c to take the value zero. Graphs of equation (11) for several values of c are shown in Figure 1.2.1.

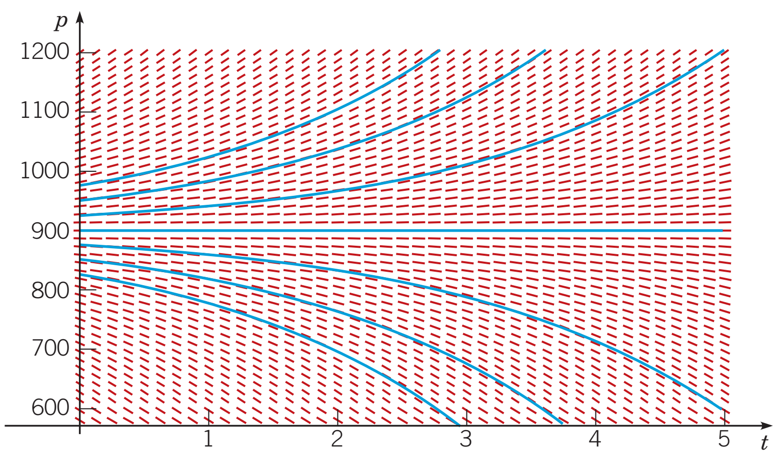


FIGURE 1.2.1 Graphs of $p = 900 + ce^{t/2}$ for several values of c. Each blue curve is a solution of $dp/dt = 0.5p - 450$.

Note that they have the character inferred from the direction field in Figure 1.1.4. For instance, solutions lying on either side of the equilibrium solution $p = 900$ tend to diverge from that solution.

In Example 1 we found infinitely many solutions of the differential equation (4), corresponding to the infinitely many values that the arbitrary constant c in equation (11) might have. This is typical of what happens when you solve a differential equation. The solution process involves an integration, which brings with it an arbitrary constant, whose possible values generate an infinite family of solutions.

Frequently, we want to focus our attention on a single member of the infinite family of solutions by specifying the value of the arbitrary constant. Most often, we do this indirectly by specifying instead a point that must lie on the graph of the solution. For example, to determine the constant c in equation (11), we could require that the population have a given value at a certain time, such as the value 850 at time $t = 0$. In other words, the graph of the solution must pass through the point $(0, 850)$. Symbolically, we can express this condition as

$$p(0) = 850. \tag{12}$$

Then, substituting $t = 0$ and $p = 850$ into equation (11), we obtain

$$850 = 900 + c.$$

Hence $c = -50$, and by inserting this value into equation (11), we obtain the desired solution, namely,

$$p = 900 - 50e^{t/2}. \tag{13}$$

The additional condition (12) that we used to determine c is an example of an **initial condition**. The differential equation (4) together with the initial condition (12) forms an **initial value problem**.

Now consider the more general problem consisting of the differential equation (3)

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay - b$$

and the initial condition

$$y(0) = y_0, \tag{14}$$

where y_0 is an arbitrary initial value. We can solve this problem by the same method as in Example 1. If $a \neq 0$ and $y \neq b/a$, then we can rewrite equation (3) as

$$\frac{dy/dt}{y - \frac{b}{a}} = a. \tag{15}$$

By integrating both sides, we find that

$$\ln\left|y(t) - \frac{b}{a}\right| = at + C, \tag{16}$$

where C is an arbitrary constant. Then, taking the exponential of both sides of equation (16) and solving for y, we obtain

$$y(t) = \frac{b}{a} + ce^{at}, \tag{17}$$

where $c = \pm e^C$ is also an arbitrary constant. Observe that $c = 0$ corresponds to the equilibrium solution $y(t) = b/a$. Finally, the initial condition (14) requires that $c = y_0 - (b/a)$, so the solution of the initial value problem (3), (14) is

$$y(t) = \frac{b}{a} + \left(y_0 - \frac{b}{a}\right)e^{at}. \tag{18}$$

For $a \neq 0$ the expression (17) contains all possible solutions of equation (3) and is called the **general solution**.[3] The geometric representation of the general solution (17) is an infinite family of curves called **integral curves**. Each integral curve is associated with a particular

[3] If $a = 0$, then the solution of equation (3) is not given by equation (17). We leave it to you to find the general solution in this case.

value of c and is the graph of the solution corresponding to that value of c. Satisfying an initial condition amounts to identifying the integral curve that passes through the given initial point.

To relate the solution (18) to equation (2), which models the field mouse population, we need only replace a by the growth rate r and replace b by the predation rate k; we assume that $r > 0$ and $k > 0$. Then the solution (18) becomes

$$p(t) = \frac{k}{r} + \left(p_0 - \frac{k}{r}\right)e^{rt}, \tag{19}$$

where p_0 is the initial population of field mice. The solution (19) confirms the conclusions reached on the basis of the direction field and Example 1. If $p_0 = k/r$, then from equation (19) it follows that $p(t) = k/r$ for all t; this is the constant, or equilibrium, solution. If $p_0 \neq k/r$, then the behavior of the solution depends on the sign of the coefficient $p_0 - k/r$ of the exponential term in equation (19). If $p_0 > k/r$, then p grows exponentially with time t; if $p_0 < k/r$, then p decreases and becomes zero (at a finite time), corresponding to extinction of the field mouse population. Negative values of p, while possible for the expression (19), make no sense in the context of this particular problem.

To put the falling-object equation (1) in the form (3), we must identify a with $-\gamma/m$ and b with $-g$. Observe that assuming $\gamma > 0$ and $m > 0$ implies that $a < 0$ and $b < 0$. Making these substitutions in the solution (18), we obtain

$$v(t) = \frac{mg}{\gamma} + \left(v_0 - \frac{mg}{\gamma}\right)e^{-\gamma t/m}, \tag{20}$$

where v_0 is the initial velocity. Again, this solution confirms the conclusions reached in Section 1.1 on the basis of a direction field. There is an equilibrium, or constant, solution $v(t) = mg/\gamma$, and all other solutions tend to approach this equilibrium solution. The speed of convergence to the equilibrium solution is determined by the exponent $-\gamma/m$. Thus, for a given mass m, the velocity approaches the equilibrium value more rapidly as the drag coefficient γ increases.

EXAMPLE 2 | A Falling Object (continued)

Suppose that, as in Example 2 of Section 1.1, we consider a falling object of mass $m = 10$ kg and drag coefficient $\gamma = 2$ kg/s. Then the equation of motion (1) becomes

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = 9.8 - \frac{v}{5}. \tag{21}$$

Suppose this object is dropped from a height of 300 m. Find its velocity at any time t. How long will it take to fall to the ground, and how fast will it be moving at the time of impact?

Solution:

The first step is to state an appropriate initial condition for equation (21). The word "dropped" in the statement of the problem suggests that the object starts from rest, that is, its initial velocity is zero, so we will use the initial condition

$$v(0) = 0. \tag{22}$$

The solution of equation (21) can be found by substituting the values of the coefficients into the solution (20), but we will proceed instead to solve equation (21) directly. First, rewrite the equation as

$$\frac{dv/dt}{v - 49} = -\frac{1}{5}. \tag{23}$$

By integrating both sides, we obtain

$$\ln\left|v(t) - 49\right| = -\frac{t}{5} + C, \tag{24}$$

and then the general solution of equation (21) is

$$v(t) = 49 + ce^{-t/5}, \tag{25}$$

where the constant c is arbitrary. To determine the particular value of c that corresponds to the initial condition (22), we substitute $t = 0$ and $v = 0$ into equation (25), with the result that $c = -49$. Then the solution of the initial value problem (21), (22) is

$$v(t) = 49\left(1 - e^{-t/5}\right). \tag{26}$$

Equation (26) gives the velocity of the falling object at any positive time after being dropped—until it hits the ground, of course.

Graphs of the solution (25) for several values of c are shown in Figure 1.2.2, with the solution (26) shown by the green curve. It is evident that, regardless of the initial velocity of the object, all solutions tend to approach the equilibrium solution $v(t) = 49$. This confirms the conclusions we reached in Section 1.1 on the basis of the direction fields in Figures 1.1.2 and 1.1.3.

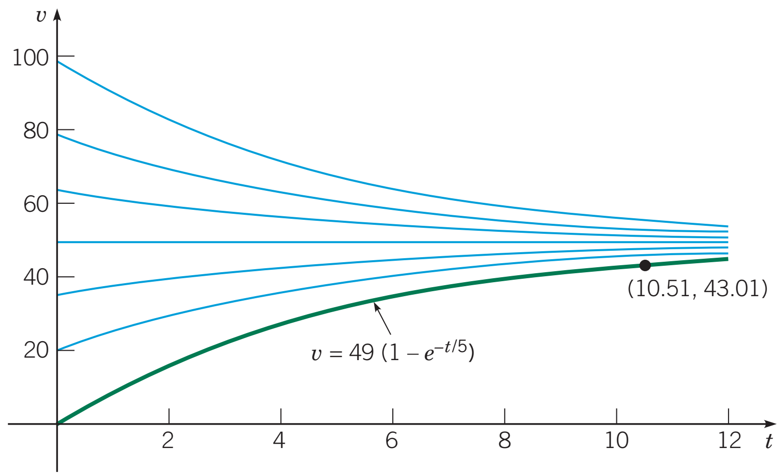


FIGURE 1.2.2 Graphs of the solution (25), $v = 49 + ce^{-t/5}$, for several values of c. The green curve corresponds to the initial condition $v(0) = 0$. The point $(10.51, 43.01)$ shows the velocity when the object hits the ground.

To find the velocity of the object when it hits the ground, we need to know the time at which impact occurs. In other words, we need to determine how long it takes the object to fall 300 m. To do this, we note that the distance x the object has fallen is related to its velocity v by the differential equation $v = dx/dt$, or

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = 49\left(1 - e^{-t/5}\right). \tag{27}$$

Consequently, by integrating both sides of equation (27) with respect to t, we have

$$x = 49t + 245e^{-t/5} + k, \tag{28}$$

where k is an arbitrary constant of integration. The object starts to fall when $t = 0$, so we know that $x = 0$ when $t = 0$. From equation (28) it follows that $k = -245$, so the distance the object has fallen at time t is given by

$$x = 49t + 245e^{-t/5} - 245. \tag{29}$$

Let T be the time at which the object hits the ground; then $x = 300$ when $t = T$. By substituting these values in equation (29), we obtain the equation

$$49T + 245e^{-T/5} - 245 = 300. \tag{30}$$

The value of T satisfying equation (30) can be approximated by a numerical process[4] using a calculator or other computational tool, with the result that $T \cong 10.51$ s. At this time, the corresponding velocity v_T is found from equation (26) to be $v_T \cong 43.01$ m/s. The point $(10.51, 43.01)$ is also shown in Figure 1.2.2.

[4] A computer algebra system provides this capability; many calculators also have built-in routines for solving such equations.

Further Remarks on Mathematical Modeling. Up to this point we have related our discussion of differential equations to mathematical models of a falling object and of a hypothetical relation between field mice and owls. The derivation of these models may have been plausible, and possibly even convincing, but you should remember that the ultimate test of any mathematical model is whether its predictions agree with observations or experimental results. We have no actual observations or experimental results to use for comparison purposes here, but there are several sources of possible discrepancies.

In the case of the falling object, the underlying physical principle (Newton's laws of motion) is well established and widely applicable. However, the assumption that the drag force is proportional to the velocity is less certain. Even if this assumption is correct, the determination of the drag coefficient γ by direct measurement presents difficulties. Indeed, sometimes one finds the drag coefficient indirectly—for example, by measuring the time of fall from a given height and then calculating the value of γ that predicts this observed time.

The model of the field mouse population is subject to various uncertainties. The determination of the growth rate r and the predation rate k depends on observations of actual populations, which may be subject to considerable variation. The assumption that r and k are constants may also be questionable. For example, a constant predation rate becomes harder to sustain as the field mouse population becomes smaller. Further, the model predicts that a population above the equilibrium value will grow exponentially larger and larger. This seems at variance with the behavior of actual populations; see the further discussion of population dynamics in Section 2.5.

If the differences between actual observations and a mathematical model's predictions are too great, then you need to consider refining the model, making more careful observations, or perhaps both. There is almost always a tradeoff between accuracy and simplicity. Both are desirable, but a gain in one usually involves a loss in the other. However, even if a mathematical model is incomplete or somewhat inaccurate, it may nevertheless be useful in explaining qualitative features of the problem under investigation. It may also give satisfactory results under some circumstances but not others. Thus you should always use good judgment and common sense in constructing mathematical models and in using their predictions.

Historical Background, Part II: Euler, Lagrange, and Laplace. The greatest mathematician of the eighteenth century, Leonhard Euler (1707–1783), grew up near Basel, Switzerland and was a student of Johann Bernoulli. He followed his friend Daniel Bernoulli to St. Petersburg in 1727. For the remainder of his life he was associated with the St. Petersburg Academy (1727–1741 and 1766–1783) and the Berlin Academy (1741–1766). Losing sight in his right eye in 1738, and in his left eye in 1766, did not stop Euler from being one of the most prolific mathematicians of all time. In addition to publishing more than 500 books and papers during his life, an additional 400 have appeared posthumously.

Of particular interest here is Euler's formulation of problems in mechanics in mathematical language and his development of methods of solving these mathematical problems. Lagrange said of Euler's work in mechanics, "The first great work in which analysis is applied to the science of movement." Among other things, Euler identified the condition for exactness of first-order differential equations (Section 2.6) in 1734–1735, developed the theory of integrating factors (Section 2.6) in the same paper, and gave the general solution of homogeneous linear differential equations with constant coefficients (Sections 3.1, 3.3, 3.4, and 4.2) in 1743. He extended the latter results to nonhomogeneous differential equations in 1750–1751. Beginning about 1750, Euler made frequent use of power series (Chapter 5) in solving differential equations. He also proposed a numerical procedure (Sections 2.7 and 8.1) in 1768–1769, made important contributions in partial differential equations, and gave the first systematic treatment of the calculus of variations.

Joseph-Louis Lagrange (1736–1813) became professor of mathematics in his native Turin, Italy, at the age of 19. He succeeded Euler in the chair of mathematics at the Berlin Academy in 1766 and moved on to the Paris Academy in 1787. He is most famous for his monumental work *Mécanique analytique*, published in 1788, an elegant and comprehensive treatise of Newtonian mechanics. With respect to elementary differential equations, Lagrange showed in 1762–1765 that the general solution of a homogeneous nth order linear differential equation is a linear combination of n independent solutions (Sections 3.2 and 4.1). Later, in 1774–1775, he offered a complete development of the method of variation of parameters (Sections 3.6 and 4.4). Lagrange is also known for fundamental work in partial differential equations and the calculus of variations.

Pierre-Simon de Laplace (1749–1827) lived in Normandy, France, as a boy but arrived in Paris in 1768 and quickly made his mark in scientific circles, winning election to the Académie des Sciences in 1773. He was preeminent in the field of celestial mechanics; his greatest work, *Traité de mécanique céleste*, was published in five volumes between 1799 and 1825. Laplace's equation is fundamental in many branches of mathematical physics, and Laplace studied it extensively in connection with gravitational attraction. The Laplace transform (Chapter 6) is also named for him, although its usefulness in solving differential equations was not recognized until much later.

By the end of the eighteenth century many elementary methods of solving ordinary differential equations had been discovered. In the nineteenth century interest turned more toward the investigation of theoretical questions of existence and uniqueness and to the development of less elementary methods such as those based on power series expansions (see Chapter 5). These methods find their natural setting in the complex plane. Consequently, they benefitted from, and to some extent stimulated, the more or less simultaneous development of the theory of complex analytic functions. Partial differential equations also began to be studied intensively, as their crucial role in mathematical physics became clear. In this connection a number of functions, arising as solutions of certain ordinary differential equations, occurred repeatedly and were studied exhaustively. Known collectively as higher transcendental functions, many of them are associated with the names of mathematicians, including Bessel (Section 5.7), Legendre (Section 5.3), Hermite (Section 5.2), Chebyshev (Section 5.3), Hankel, and many others.

Problems

N **1.** Solve each of the following initial value problems and plot the solutions for several values of y_0. Then describe in a few words how the solutions resemble, and differ from, each other.

a. $dy/dt = -y + 5, \quad y(0) = y_0$
b. $dy/dt = -2y + 5, \quad y(0) = y_0$
c. $dy/dt = -2y + 10, \quad y(0) = y_0$

G **2.** Follow the instructions for Problem 1 for the following initial-value problems:

a. $dy/dt = y - 5, \quad y(0) = y_0$
G **b.** $dy/dt = 2y - 5, \quad y(0) = y_0$
c. $dy/dt = 2y - 10, \quad y(0) = y_0$

3. Consider the differential equation

$$dy/dt = -ay + b,$$

where both a and b are positive numbers.

a. Find the general solution of the differential equation.
G **b.** Sketch the solution for several different initial conditions.
c. Describe how the solutions change under each of the following conditions:

i. a increases.
ii. b increases.
iii. Both a and b increase, but the ratio b/a remains the same.

4. Consider the differential equation $dy/dt = ay - b$.

a. Find the equilibrium solution y_e.
b. Let $Y(t) = y - y_e$; thus $Y(t)$ is the deviation from the equilibrium solution. Find the differential equation satisfied by $Y(t)$.

5. **Undetermined Coefficients.** Here is an alternative way to solve the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay - b. \tag{31}$$

a. Solve the simpler equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay. \tag{32}$$

Call the solution $y_1(t)$.
b. Observe that the only difference between equations (31) and (32) is the constant $-b$ in equation (31). Therefore, it may seem reasonable to assume that the solutions of these two equations also differ only by a constant. Test this assumption by trying to find a constant k such that $y = y_1(t) + k$ is a solution of equation (31).
c. Compare your solution from part b with the solution given in the text in equation (17).

Note: This method can also be used in some cases in which the constant b is replaced by a function $g(t)$. It depends on whether you can guess the general form that the solution is likely to take. This method is described in detail in Section 3.5 in connection with second-order equations.

6. Use the method of Problem 5 to solve the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -ay + b.$$

7. The field mouse population in Example 1 satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{p}{2} - 450.$$

a. Find the time at which the population becomes extinct if $p(0) = 850$.
b. Find the time of extinction if $p(0) = p_0$, where $0 < p_0 < 900$.
N **c.** Find the initial population p_0 if the population is to become extinct in 1 year.

8. The falling object in Example 2 satisfies the initial value problem

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = 9.8 - \frac{v}{5}, \quad v(0) = 0.$$

a. Find the time that must elapse for the object to reach 98% of its limiting velocity.
b. How far does the object fall in the time found in part a?

9. Consider the falling object of mass 10 kg in Example 2, but assume now that the drag force is proportional to the square of the velocity.

a. If the limiting velocity is 49 m/s (the same as in Example 2), show that the equation of motion can be written as

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{1}{245}\left(49^2 - v^2\right).$$

Also see Problem 21 of Section 1.1.

b. If $v(0) = 0$, find an expression for $v(t)$ at any time.

G **c.** Plot your solution from part b and the solution (26) from Example 2 on the same axes.

d. Based on your plots in part c, compare the effect of a quadratic drag force with that of a linear drag force.

e. Find the distance $x(t)$ that the object falls in time t.

N **f.** Find the time T it takes the object to fall 300 m.

10. A radioactive material, such as the isotope thorium-234, disintegrates at a rate proportional to the amount currently present. If $Q(t)$ is the amount present at time t, then $dQ/dt = -rQ$, where $r > 0$ is the decay rate.

a. If 100 mg of thorium-234 decays to 82.04 mg in 1 week, determine the decay rate r.

b. Find an expression for the amount of thorium-234 present at any time t.

c. Find the time required for the thorium-234 to decay to one-half its original amount.

11. The **half-life** of a radioactive material is the time required for an amount of this material to decay to one-half its original value. Show that for any radioactive material that decays according to the equation $Q' = -rQ$, the half-life τ and the decay rate r satisfy the equation $r\tau = \ln 2$.

12. According to Newton's law of cooling (see Problem 19 of Section 1.1), the temperature $u(t)$ of an object satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -k(u - T),$$

where T is the constant ambient temperature and k is a positive constant. Suppose that the initial temperature of the object is $u(0) = u_0$.

a. Find the temperature of the object at any time.

b. Let τ be the time at which the initial temperature difference $u_0 - T$ has been reduced by half. Find the relation between k and τ.

13. Consider an electric circuit containing a capacitor, resistor, and battery; see Figure 1.2.3. The charge $Q(t)$ on the capacitor satisfies the equation[5]

$$R\frac{dQ}{dt} + \frac{Q}{C} = V,$$

where R is the resistance, C is the capacitance, and V is the constant voltage supplied by the battery.

G **a.** If $Q(0) = 0$, find $Q(t)$ at any time t, and sketch the graph of Q versus t.

b. Find the limiting value Q_L that $Q(t)$ approaches after a long time.

G **c.** Suppose that $Q(t_1) = Q_L$ and that at time $t = t_1$ the battery is removed and the circuit is closed again. Find $Q(t)$ for $t > t_1$ and sketch its graph.

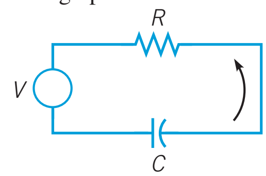


FIGURE 1.2.3 The electric circuit of Problem 13.

N **14.** A pond containing 1,000,000 gal of water is initially free of a certain undesirable chemical (see Problem 17 of Section 1.1). Water containing 0.01 g/gal of the chemical flows into the pond at a rate of 300 gal/h, and water also flows out of the pond at the same rate. Assume that the chemical is uniformly distributed throughout the pond.

a. Let $Q(t)$ be the amount of the chemical in the pond at time t. Write down an initial value problem for $Q(t)$.

b. Solve the problem in part a for $Q(t)$. How much chemical is in the pond after 1 year?

c. At the end of 1 year the source of the chemical in the pond is removed; thereafter pure water flows into the pond, and the mixture flows out at the same rate as before. Write down the initial value problem that describes this new situation.

d. Solve the initial value problem in part c. How much chemical remains in the pond after 1 additional year (2 years from the beginning of the problem)?

e. How long does it take for $Q(t)$ to be reduced to 10 g?

G **f.** Plot $Q(t)$ versus t for 3 years.

[5]This equation results from Kirchhoff's laws, which are discussed in Section 3.7.

1.3 Classification of Differential Equations

The main purposes of this book are to discuss some of the properties of solutions of differential equations and to present some of the methods that have proved effective in finding solutions or, in some cases, in approximating them. To provide a framework for our presentation, we describe here several useful ways of classifying differential equations. Mastery of this vocabulary is essential to selecting appropriate solution methods and to describing properties of solutions of differential equations that you encounter later in this book—and in the real world.

Ordinary and Partial Differential Equations. One important classification is based on whether the unknown function depends on a single independent variable or on several independent variables. In the first case, only ordinary derivatives appear in the differential equation, and it is said to be an **ordinary differential equation**. In the second case, the derivatives are partial derivatives, and the equation is called a **partial differential equation**.

All the differential equations discussed in the preceding two sections are ordinary differential equations. Another example of an ordinary differential equation is

$$L\frac{d^2Q(t)}{dt^2} + R\frac{dQ(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\,Q(t) = E(t), \tag{1}$$

for the charge $Q(t)$ on a capacitor in a circuit with capacitance C, resistance R, and inductance L; this equation is derived in Section 3.7. Typical examples of partial differential equations are the heat conduction equation

$$\alpha^2\frac{\partial^2 u(x,t)}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial u(x,t)}{\partial t} \tag{2}$$

and the wave equation

$$a^2\frac{\partial^2 u(x,t)}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 u(x,t)}{\partial t^2}. \tag{3}$$

Here, α^2 and a^2 are certain physical constants. Note that in both equations (2) and (3) the dependent variable u depends on the two independent variables x and t. The heat conduction equation describes the conduction of heat in a solid body, and the wave equation arises in a variety of problems involving wave motion in solids or fluids.

Systems of Differential Equations. Another classification of differential equations depends on the number of unknown functions that are involved. If there is a single function to be determined, then one differential equation is sufficient. However, if there are two or more unknown functions, then a system of differential equations is required. For example, the Lotka-Volterra, or predator-prey, equations are important in ecological modeling. They have the form

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dx}{dt} &= ax - \alpha xy\\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= -cy + \gamma xy,\end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

where $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are the respective populations of the prey and predator species. The positive constants a, α, c, and γ are based on empirical observations and depend on the particular species being studied. Systems of equations are discussed in Chapters 7 and 9; in particular, the Lotka-Volterra equations are examined in Section 9.5. In some areas of application it is not unusual to encounter very large systems containing hundreds, or even many thousands, of differential equations.

Order. The **order** of a differential equation is the order of the highest derivative that appears in the equation. The equations in the preceding sections are all first-order equations, whereas equation (1) is a second-order equation. Equations (2) and (3) are also second-order partial differential equations. More generally, the equation

$$F\Big(t, u(t), u'(t), \ldots, u^{(n)}(t)\Big) = 0 \tag{5}$$

is an ordinary differential equation of the n^{th} order. Equation (5) expresses a relation between the independent variable t and the values of the function u and its first n derivatives $u', u'', \ldots, u^{(n)}$. It is convenient and customary in differential equations to write y for $u(t)$, with $y', y'', \ldots, y^{(n)}$ standing for $u'(t), u''(t), \ldots, u^{(n)}(t)$. Thus equation (5) is written as

$$F\Big(t, y, y', \ldots, y^{(n)}\Big) = 0. \tag{6}$$

For example,

$$y''' + 2e^t y'' + yy' = t^4 \tag{7}$$

is a third-order differential equation for $y = u(t)$. Occasionally, other letters will be used instead of t and y for the independent and dependent variables; the meaning should be clear from the context.

We assume that it is always possible to solve a given ordinary differential equation for the highest derivative, obtaining

$$y^{(n)} = f\left(t, y, y', y'', \dots, y^{(n-1)}\right). \tag{8}$$

This is mainly to avoid the ambiguity that may arise because a single equation of the form (6) may correspond to several equations of the form (8). For example, the equation

$$(y')^2 + ty' + 4y = 0 \tag{9}$$

leads to the two equations

$$y' = \frac{-t + \sqrt{t^2 - 16y}}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad y' = \frac{-t - \sqrt{t^2 - 16y}}{2}. \tag{10}$$

Linear and Nonlinear Equations. A crucial classification of differential equations is whether they are linear or nonlinear. The ordinary differential equation

$$F\left(t, y, y', \dots, y^{(n)}\right) = 0$$

is said to be **linear** if F is a linear function of the variables $y, y', \dots, y^{(n)}$; a similar definition applies to partial differential equations. Thus the general linear ordinary differential equation of order n is

$$a_0(t)y^{(n)} + a_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_n(t)y = g(t). \tag{11}$$

Most of the equations you have seen thus far in this book are linear; examples are the equations in Sections 1.1 and 1.2 describing the falling object and the field mouse population. Similarly, in this section, equation (1) is a linear ordinary differential equation and equations (2) and (3) are linear partial differential equations. An equation that is not of the form (11) is a **nonlinear** equation. Equation (7) is nonlinear because of the term yy'. Similarly, each equation in the system (4) is nonlinear because of the terms that involve the product of the two unknown functions xy.

A simple physical problem that leads to a nonlinear differential equation is the oscillating pendulum. The angle $\theta = \theta(t)$ that an oscillating pendulum of length L makes with the vertical direction (see Figure 1.3.1) satisfies the equation

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + \frac{g}{L}\sin\theta = 0, \tag{12}$$

whose derivation is outlined in Problems 22 through 24. The presence of the term involving $\sin\theta$ makes equation (12) nonlinear.

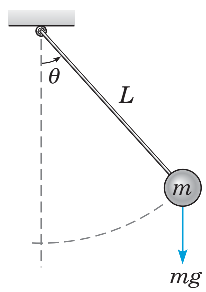


FIGURE 1.3.1 An oscillating pendulum.

The mathematical theory and methods for solving linear equations are highly developed. In contrast, for nonlinear equations the theory is more complicated, and methods of solution are less satisfactory. In view of this, it is fortunate that many significant problems lead to linear ordinary differential equations or can be approximated by linear equations. For example, for the pendulum, if the angle θ is small, then $\sin\theta \cong \theta$ and equation (12) can be approximated by the linear equation

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + \frac{g}{L}\theta = 0. \tag{13}$$

This process of approximating a nonlinear equation by a linear one is called **linearization**; it is an extremely valuable way to deal with nonlinear equations. Nevertheless, there are many physical phenomena that simply cannot be represented adequately by linear equations. To study these phenomena, it is essential to deal with nonlinear equations.

In an elementary text it is natural to emphasize the simpler and more straightforward parts of the subject. Therefore, the greater part of this book is devoted to linear equations and various methods for solving them. However, Chapters 8 and 9, as well as parts of Chapter 2, are concerned with nonlinear equations. Whenever it is appropriate, we point out why nonlinear equations are, in general, more difficult and why many of the techniques that are useful in solving linear equations cannot be applied to nonlinear equations.

Solutions. A **solution** of the n^{th} order ordinary differential equation (8) on the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$ is a function ϕ such that $\phi', \phi'', \ldots, \phi^{(n)}$ exist and satisfy

$$\phi^{(n)}(t) = f\Big(t, \phi(t), \phi'(t), \ldots, \phi^{(n-1)}(t)\Big) \tag{14}$$

for every t in $\alpha < t < \beta$. Unless stated otherwise, we assume that the function f of equation (8) is a real-valued function, and we are interested in obtaining real-valued solutions $y = \phi(t)$.

Recall that in Section 1.2 we found solutions of certain equations by a process of direct integration. For instance, we found that the equation

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{p}{2} - 450 \tag{15}$$

has the solution

$$p(t) = 900 + ce^{t/2}, \tag{16}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant.

It is often not so easy to find solutions of differential equations. However, if you find a function that you think may be a solution of a given equation, it is usually relatively easy to determine whether the function is actually a solution: just substitute the function into the equation.

For example, in this way it is easy to show that the function $y_1(t) = \cos t$ is a solution of

$$y'' + y = 0 \tag{17}$$

for all t. To confirm this, observe that $y_1'(t) = -\sin t$ and $y_1''(t) = -\cos t$; then it follows that $y_1''(t) + y_1(t) = 0$. In the same way you can easily show that $y_2(t) = \sin t$ is also a solution of equation (17).

Of course, this does not constitute a satisfactory way to solve most differential equations, because there are far too many possible functions for you to have a good chance of finding the correct one by a random choice. Nevertheless, you should realize that you can verify whether any proposed solution is correct by substituting it into the differential equation. This can be a very useful check; it is one that you should make a habit of considering.

Some Important Questions. Although for the differential equations (15) and (17) we are able to verify that certain simple functions are solutions, in general we do not have such solutions readily available. Thus a fundamental question is the following: Does an equation of the form (8) always have a solution? The answer is "No." Merely writing down an equation of the form (8) does not necessarily mean that there is a function $y = \phi(t)$ that satisfies it. So, how can we tell whether some particular equation has a solution? This is the question of *existence* of a solution, and it is answered by theorems stating that under certain restrictions on the function f in equation (8), the equation always has solutions. This is not a purely theoretical concern for at least two reasons. If a problem has no solution, we would prefer to know that fact before investing time and effort in a vain attempt to solve the problem. Further, if a sensible physical problem is modeled mathematically as a differential equation, then the equation should have a solution. If it does not, then presumably there is something wrong with the formulation. In this sense an engineer or scientist has some check on the validity of the mathematical model.

If we assume that a given differential equation has at least one solution, then we may need to consider how many solutions it has, and what additional conditions must be specified to single out a particular solution. This is the question of *uniqueness*. In general, solutions of differential equations contain one or more arbitrary constants of integration, as does the solution (16) of equation (15). Equation (16) represents an infinity of functions corresponding to the infinity of possible choices of the constant c. As we saw in Section 1.2, if p is specified at some time t, this condition will determine a specific value for c; even so, we have not yet ruled out the possibility that there may be other solutions of equation (15) that also have the prescribed value of p at the prescribed time t. As in the question of existence of solutions, the issue of uniqueness has practical as well as theoretical implications. If we are fortunate enough to find a solution of a given problem, and if we know that the problem has a unique solution, then we can be sure that we have completely solved the problem. If there may be other solutions, then perhaps we should continue to search for them.

A third important question is: Given a differential equation of the form (8), can we actually determine a solution, and if so, how? Note that if we find a solution of the given equation, we have at the same time answered the question of the existence of a solution. However, without knowledge of existence theory we might, for example, use a computer to find a numerical approximation to a "solution" that does not exist. On the other hand, even though we may know that a solution exists, it may be that the solution is not expressible in terms of the usual elementary functions—polynomial, trigonometric, exponential, logarithmic, and hyperbolic functions. Unfortunately, this is the situation for most differential equations. Thus, we discuss both elementary methods that can be used to obtain exact solutions of certain relatively simple problems, and also methods of a more general nature that can be used to find approximations to solutions of more difficult problems.

Technology Use in Differential Equations. Technology provides many extremely valuable tools for the study of differential equations. For many years computers have been used to execute numerical algorithms, such as those described in Chapter 8, to construct numerical approximations to solutions of differential equations. These algorithms have been refined to an extremely high level of generality and efficiency. A few lines of computer code, written in a high-level programming language and executed (often within a few seconds) on a relatively inexpensive computer, suffice to approximate to a high degree of accuracy the solutions of a wide range of differential equations. More sophisticated routines are also readily available. These routines combine the ability to handle very large and complicated systems with numerous diagnostic features that alert the user to possible problems as they are encountered.

The usual output from a numerical algorithm is a table of numbers, listing selected values of the independent variable and the corresponding values of the dependent variable. With appropriate software it is easy to display the solution of a differential equation graphically, whether the solution has been obtained numerically or as the result of an analytical procedure of some kind. Such a graphical display is often much more illuminating and helpful in understanding and interpreting the solution of a differential equation than a table of numbers or a complicated analytical formula. There are on the market several well-crafted and relatively inexpensive special-purpose software packages for the graphical investigation of differential equations. The increased power and sophistication of modern smartphones, tablets, and other mobile devices have brought powerful computational and graphical capability within the reach of individual students. You should consider, in the light of your own circumstances, how best to take advantage of the available computing resources. You will surely find it enlightening to do so.

Another aspect of computer use that is very relevant to the study of differential equations is the availability of extremely powerful and general software packages that can perform a wide variety of mathematical operations. Among these are Maple, Mathematica, and MATLAB, each of which can be used on various kinds of personal computers or workstations. All three of these packages can execute extensive numerical computations and have versatile graphical facilities. Maple and Mathematica also have very extensive analytical capabilities. For example, they can perform the analytical steps involved in solving many differential equations, often in response to a single command. Anyone who expects to deal with differential equations in more than a superficial way should become familiar with at least one of these products and explore the ways in which it can be used.

For you, the student, these computing resources have an effect on how you should study differential equations. To become confident in using differential equations, it is essential to understand how the solution methods work, and this understanding is achieved, in part, by working out a sufficient number of examples in detail. However, eventually you should plan to utilize appropriate computational tools to complete as many as possible of the routine (often repetitive) details, while you focus on the proper formulation of the problem and on the interpretation of the solution. Our viewpoint is that you should always try to use the best methods and tools available for each task. In particular, you should strive to combine numerical, graphical, and analytical methods so as to attain maximum understanding of the behavior of the solution and of the underlying process that the problem models. You should also remember that some tasks can best be done with pencil and paper, while others require the use of some sort of computational technology. Good judgment is often needed in selecting an effective combination.

Historical Background, Part III: Recent and Ongoing Advances. The numerous differential equations that resisted solution by analytical means led to the investigation of methods of numerical approximation (see Chapter 8). By 1900 fairly effective numerical integration methods had been devised, but their implementation was severely restricted by the need to execute the computations by hand or with very primitive computing equipment. Since World War II the development of increasingly powerful and versatile computers has vastly enlarged the range of problems that can be investigated effectively by numerical methods. Extremely refined and robust numerical integrators were developed during the same period and now are readily available, even on smartphones and other mobile devices. These technological advances have brought the ability to solve a great many significant problems within the reach of individual students.

Another characteristic of modern differential equations is the creation of geometric or topological methods, especially for nonlinear equations. The goal is to understand at least the qualitative behavior of solutions from a geometrical, as well as from an analytical, point of view. If more detailed information is needed, it can usually be obtained by using numerical approximations. An introduction to geometric methods appears in Chapter 9. We conclude this brief historical review with two examples that illustrate how computational and real-world experiences have motivated important analytical and theoretical discoveries.

In 1834 John Scott Russell (1808–1882), a Scottish civil engineer, was conducting experiments to determine the most efficient design for canal boats when he noticed that "when the boat suddenly stopped" the water being pushed by the boat "accumulated round the prow of the vessel in a state of violent agitation, then suddenly leaving it [the boat] behind, [the water] rolled forward with great velocity, assuming the form of a large solitary elevation, a rounded, smooth and well-defined heap of water."[6] Many mathematicians did not believe that the solitary traveling waves reported by Russell existed. These objections were silenced when the doctoral dissertation of Dutch mathematician Gustav de Vries (1866–1934) included a nonlinear partial differential equation model for water waves in a shallow canal. Today these equations are known as the Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equations. Diederik Johannes Korteweg (1848–1941) was de Vries's thesis advisor. Unknown to either Korteweg or de Vries, their Korteweg-de Vries model appeared as a footnote ten years earlier in French mathematician Joseph Valentin Boussinesq's (1842–1929) 680-page treatise *Essai sur la théorie des eaux courantes*. The work of Boussinesq and of Korteweg and deVries remained largely unnoticed until two Americans, physicist Norman J. Zabusky (1929–) and mathematician Martin David Kruskal (1925–2006), used computer simulations to discover, in 1965, that all solutions of the KdV equations eventually consist of a finite set of localized traveling waves. Today, nearly 200 years after Russell's observations and 50 years after the computational experiments of Zabusky and Kruskal, the study of "solitons" remains an active area of differential equations research. Other early contributors to nonlinear wave propagation include David Hilbert (German, 1862–1943), Richard Courant (German-American, 1888–1972), and John von Neumann (Hungarian-American, 1903–1957); we will encounter some of these ideas again in Chapter 9.

Computational results were also an essential element in the discovery of "chaos theory." In 1961, Edward Lorenz (1917–2008), an American mathematician and meteorologist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, was developing weather prediction models when he observed different results upon restarting a simulation in the middle of the time period using

[6]"Report on Waves," in *Proceedings of the Fourteenth Meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science*, 1845, pp. 311–390, plus plates 47–57, http://www.macs.hw.ac.uk/~chris/Scott-Russell/SR44.pdf.

previously computed results. (Lorenz restarted the computation with three-digit approximate solutions, not the six-digit approximations that were stored in the computer.) In 1976 the Australian mathematician Sir Robert M. May (1938–) introduced and analyzed the logistic map, showing that there are special values of the problem's parameter where the solutions undergo drastic changes. The common trait that small changes in the problem produce large changes in the solution is one of the defining characteristics of chaos. May's logistic map is discussed in more detail in Section 2.9. Other classical examples of what we now recognize as "chaos" include the work by French mathematician Henri Poincaré (1854–1912) on planetary motion and the studies of turbulent fluid flow by Soviet mathematician Andrey Nikolaevich Kolmogorov (1903–1987), American mathematician Mitchell Feigenbaum (1944–), and many others. In addition to these and other classical examples of chaos, new examples continue to be found.

Solitons and chaos are just two of many examples where computers, and especially computer graphics, have given a new impetus to the study of systems of nonlinear differential equations. Other unexpected phenomena (Section 9.8), such as strange attractors (David Ruelle, Belgium, 1935–) and fractals (Benoit Mandelbrot, Poland, 1924–2010), have been discovered, are being intensively studied, and are leading to important new insights in a variety of applications. Although it is an old subject about which much is known, the study of differential equations in the twenty-first century remains a fertile source of fascinating and important unsolved problems.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, determine the order of the given differential equation; also state whether the equation is linear or nonlinear.

1. $t^2\dfrac{d^2y}{dt^2} + t\dfrac{dy}{dt} + 2y = \sin t$

2. $(1 + y^2)\dfrac{d^2y}{dt^2} + t\dfrac{dy}{dt} + y = e^t$

3. $\dfrac{d^4y}{dt^4} + \dfrac{d^3y}{dt^3} + \dfrac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \dfrac{dy}{dt} + y = 1$

4. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \sin(t + y) = \sin t$

In each of Problems 5 through 10, verify that each given function is a solution of the differential equation.

5. $y'' - y = 0; \quad y_1(t) = e^t, \; y_2(t) = \cosh t$

6. $y'' + 2y' - 3y = 0; \quad y_1(t) = e^{-3t}, \; y_2(t) = e^t$

7. $ty' - y = t^2; \quad y = 3t + t^2$

8. $y'''' + 4y''' + 3y = t; \quad y_1(t) = t/3, \; y_2(t) = e^{-t} + t/3$

9. $t^2y'' + 5ty' + 4y = 0, \; t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t^{-2}, \; y_2(t) = t^{-2}\ln t$

10. $y' - 2ty = 1; \quad y = e^{t^2}\displaystyle\int_0^t e^{-s^2}\,ds + e^{t^2}$

In each of Problems 11 through 13, determine the values of r for which the given differential equation has solutions of the form $y = e^{rt}$.

11. $y' + 2y = 0$

12. $y'' + y' - 6y = 0$

13. $y''' - 3y'' + 2y' = 0$

In each of Problems 14 and 15, determine the values of r for which the given differential equation has solutions of the form $y = t^r$ for $t > 0$.

14. $t^2y'' + 4ty' + 2y = 0$

15. $t^2y'' - 4ty' + 4y = 0$

In each of Problems 16 through 18, determine the order of the given partial differential equation; also state whether the equation is linear or nonlinear. Partial derivatives are denoted by subscripts.

16. $u_{xx} + u_{yy} + u_{zz} = 0$

17. $u_{xxxx} + 2u_{xxyy} + u_{yyyy} = 0$

18. $u_t + uu_x = 1 + u_{xx}$

In each of Problems 19 through 21, verify that each given function is a solution of the given partial differential equation.

19. $u_{xx} + u_{yy} = 0; \quad u_1(x, y) = \cos x \cosh y,$
$u_2(x, y) = \ln(x^2 + y^2)$

20. $\alpha^2 u_{xx} = u_t; \quad u_1(x, t) = e^{-\alpha^2 t}\sin x,$
$u_2(x, t) = e^{-\alpha^2\lambda^2 t}\sin \lambda x, \quad \lambda$ a real constant

21. $a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}; \quad u_1(x, t) = \sin(\lambda x)\sin(\lambda a t),$
$u_2(x, t) = \sin(x - at), \quad \lambda$ a real constant

22. Follow the steps indicated here to derive the equation of motion of a pendulum, equation (12) in the text. Assume that the rod is rigid and weightless, that the mass is a point mass, and that there is no friction or drag anywhere in the system.

a. Assume that the mass is in an arbitrary displaced position, indicated by the angle θ. Draw a free-body diagram showing the forces acting on the mass.

b. Apply Newton's law of motion in the direction tangential to the circular arc on which the mass moves. Then the tensile force in the rod does not enter the equation. Observe that you need to find the component of the gravitational force in the tangential direction. Observe also that the linear acceleration, as opposed to the angular acceleration, is $Ld^2\theta/dt^2$, where L is the length of the rod.

c. Simplify the result from part b to obtain equation (12) in the text.

23. Another way to derive the pendulum equation (12) is based on the principle of conservation of energy.

a. Show that the kinetic energy T of the pendulum in motion is

$$T = \frac{1}{2}mL^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2.$$

b. Show that the potential energy V of the pendulum, relative to its rest position, is

$$V = mgL(1 - \cos\theta).$$

c. By the principle of conservation of energy, the total energy $E = T + V$ is constant. Calculate dE/dt, set it equal to zero, and show that the resulting equation reduces to equation (12).

24. A third derivation of the pendulum equation depends on the principle of angular momentum: The rate of change of angular momentum about any point is equal to the net external moment about the same point.

a. Show that the angular momentum M, or moment of momentum, about the point of support is given by $M = mL^2 d\theta/dt$.

b. Set dM/dt equal to the moment of the gravitational force, and show that the resulting equation reduces to equation (12). Note that positive moments are counterclockwise.

References

Computer software for differential equations changes too fast for particulars to be given in a book such as this. A Google search for Maple, Mathematica, Sage, or MATLAB is a good way to begin if you need information about one of these computer algebra and numerical systems.

There are many instructional books on computer algebra systems, such as the following:

Cheung, C.-K., Keough, G. E., Gross, R. H., and Landraitis, C., *Getting Started with Mathematica* (3rd ed.) (New York: Wiley, 2009).

Meade, D. B., May, M., Cheung, C.-K., and Keough, G. E., *Getting Started with Maple* (3rd ed.) (New York: Wiley, 2009).

For further reading in the history of mathematics, see books such as those listed below:

Boyer, C. B., and Merzbach, U. C., *A History of Mathematics* (2nd ed.) (New York: Wiley, 1989).

Kline, M., *Mathematical Thought from Ancient to Modern Times* (3 vols.) (New York: Oxford University Press, 1990).

A useful historical appendix on the early development of differential equations appears in

Ince, E. L., *Ordinary Differential Equations* (London: Longmans, Green, 1927; New York: Dover, 1956).

Encyclopedic sources of information about the lives and achievements of mathematicians of the past are

Gillespie, C. C., ed., *Dictionary of Scientific Biography* (15 vols.) (New York: Scribner's, 1971).

Koertge, N., ed., *New Dictionary of Scientific Biography* (8 vols.) (New York: Scribner's, 2007).

Koertge, N., ed., *Complete Dictionary of Scientific Biography* (New York: Scribner's, 2007 [e-book]).

Much historical information can be found on the Internet. One excellent site is the MacTutor History of Mathematics archive

http://www-history.mcs.st-and.ac.uk/history/

created by O'Connor, J. J., and Robertson, E. F., Department of Mathematics and Statistics, University of St. Andrews, Scotland.

CHAPTER 2

First-Order Differential Equations

This chapter deals with differential equations of first order

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y), \tag{1}$$

where f is a given function of two variables. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(t)$ that satisfies this equation for all t in some interval is called a solution, and our objective is to determine whether such functions exist and, if so, to develop methods for finding them. Unfortunately, for an arbitrary function f, there is no general method for solving the equation in terms of elementary functions. Instead, we will describe several methods, each of which is applicable to a certain subclass of first-order equations.

The most important of these are linear equations (Section 2.1), separable equations (Section 2.2), and exact equations (Section 2.6). Other sections of this chapter describe some of the important applications of first-order differential equations, introduce the idea of approximating a solution by numerical computation, and discuss some theoretical questions related to the existence and uniqueness of solutions. The final section includes an example of chaotic solutions in the context of first-order difference equations, which have some important points of similarity with differential equations and are simpler to investigate.

2.1 Linear Differential Equations; Method of Integrating Factors

If the function f in equation (1) depends linearly on the dependent variable y, then equation (1) is a first-order linear differential equation. In Sections 1.1 and 1.2 we discussed a restricted type of first-order linear differential equation in which the coefficients are constants. A typical example is

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -ay + b, \tag{2}$$

where a and b are given constants. Recall that an equation of this form describes the motion of an object falling in the atmosphere.

Now we want to consider the most general first-order linear differential equation, which is obtained by replacing the coefficients a and b in equation (2) by arbitrary functions of t. We will usually write the general **first-order linear differential equation** in the standard form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + p(t)y = g(t), \tag{3}$$

where p and g are given functions of the independent variable t. Sometimes it is more convenient to write the equation in the form

$$P(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + Q(t)y = G(t), \tag{4}$$

where P, Q, and G are given. Of course, as long as $P(t) \neq 0$, you can convert equation (4) to equation (3) by dividing both sides of equation (4) by $P(t)$.

In some cases it is possible to solve a first-order linear differential equation immediately by integrating the equation, as in the next example.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the differential equation

$$(4+t^2)\frac{dy}{dt} + 2ty = 4t. \tag{5}$$

Solution:

The left-hand side of equation (5) is a linear combination of dy/dt and y, a combination that also appears in the rule from calculus for differentiating a product. In fact,

$$(4+t^2)\frac{dy}{dt} + 2ty = \frac{d}{dt}\big((4+t^2)y\big);$$

it follows that equation (5) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{d}{dt}\big((4+t^2)y\big) = 4t. \tag{6}$$

Thus, even though y is unknown, we can integrate both sides of equation (6) with respect to t, thereby obtaining

$$(4+t^2)y = 2t^2 + c, \tag{7}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant of integration. Solving for y, we find that

$$y = \frac{2t^2}{4+t^2} + \frac{c}{4+t^2}. \tag{8}$$

This is the general solution of equation (5).

Unfortunately, most first-order linear differential equations cannot be solved as illustrated in Example 1 because their left-hand sides are not the derivative of the product of y and some other function. However, Leibniz discovered that if the differential equation is multiplied by a certain function $\mu(t)$, then the equation is converted into one that is immediately integrable by using the product rule for derivatives, just as in Example 1. The function $\mu(t)$ is called an **integrating factor** and our main task in this section is to determine how to find it for a given equation. We will show how this method works first for an example and then for the general first-order linear differential equation in the standard form (3).

EXAMPLE 2

Find the general solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{1}{2}y = \frac{1}{2}e^{t/3}. \tag{9}$$

Draw some representative integral curves; that is, plot solutions corresponding to several values of the arbitrary constant c. Also find the particular solution whose graph contains the point $(0, 1)$.

Solution:

The first step is to multiply equation (9) by a function $\mu(t)$, as yet undetermined; thus

$$\mu(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{1}{2}\mu(t)y = \frac{1}{2}\mu(t)e^{t/3}. \tag{10}$$

The question now is whether we can choose $\mu(t)$ so that the left-hand side of equation (10) is the derivative of the product $\mu(t)y$. For any differentiable function $\mu(t)$ we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mu(t)y) = \mu(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{d\mu(t)}{dt}y. \tag{11}$$

Thus the left-hand side of equation (10) and the right-hand side of equation (11) are identical, provided that we choose $\mu(t)$ to satisfy

$$\frac{d\mu(t)}{dt} = \frac{1}{2}\mu(t). \tag{12}$$

Our search for an integrating factor will be successful if we can find a solution of equation (12). Perhaps you can readily identify a function that satisfies equation (12): What well-known function from calculus has a derivative that is equal to one-half times the original function? More systematically, rewrite equation (12) as

$$\frac{1}{\mu(t)}\frac{d\mu(t)}{dt} = \frac{1}{2},$$

which is equivalent to

$$\frac{d}{dt}\ln|\mu(t)| = \frac{1}{2}. \tag{13}$$

Then it follows that

$$\ln|\mu(t)| = \frac{1}{2}t + C,$$

or

$$\mu(t) = ce^{t/2}. \tag{14}$$

The function $\mu(t)$ given by equation (14) is an integrating factor for equation (9). Since we do not need the most general integrating factor, we will choose c to be 1 in equation (14) and use $\mu(t) = e^{t/2}$.

Now we return to equation (9), multiply it by the integrating factor $e^{t/2}$, and obtain

$$e^{t/2}\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{1}{2}e^{t/2}y = \frac{1}{2}e^{5t/6}. \tag{15}$$

By the choice we have made of the integrating factor, the left-hand side of equation (15) is the derivative of $e^{t/2}y$, so that equation (15) becomes

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{t/2}y) = \frac{1}{2}e^{5t/6}. \tag{16}$$

By integrating both sides of equation (16), we obtain

$$e^{t/2}y = \frac{3}{5}e^{5t/6} + c, \tag{17}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Finally, on solving equation (17) for y, we have the general solution of equation (9), namely,

$$y = \frac{3}{5}e^{t/3} + ce^{-t/2}. \tag{18}$$

To find the solution passing through the point $(0, 1)$, we set $t = 0$ and $y = 1$ in equation (18), obtaining $1 = 3/5 + c$. Thus $c = 2/5$, and the desired solution is

$$y = \frac{3}{5}e^{t/3} + \frac{2}{5}e^{-t/2}. \tag{19}$$

Figure 2.1.1 includes the graphs of equation (18) for several values of c with a direction field in the background. The solution satisfying $y(0) = 1$ is shown by the green curve.

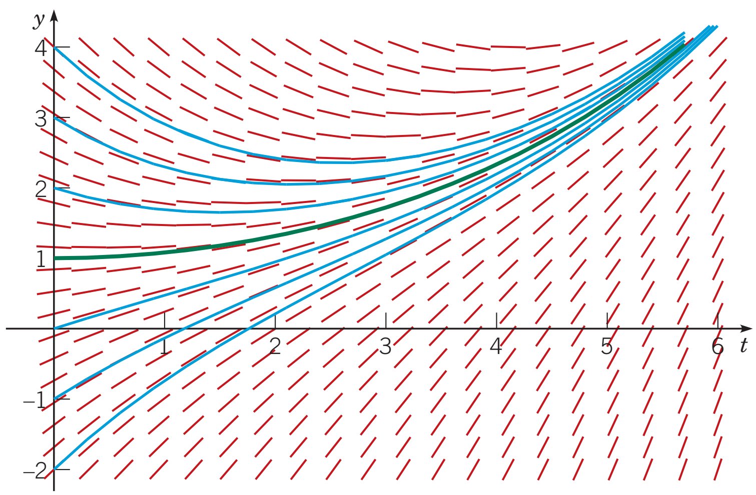


FIGURE 2.1.1 Direction field and integral curves of $y' + \frac{1}{2}y = \frac{1}{2}e^{t/3}$; the green curve passes through the point $(0, 1)$.

Let us now extend the method of integrating factors to equations of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + ay = g(t), \tag{20}$$

where a is a given constant and $g(t)$ is a given function. Proceeding as in Example 2, we find that the integrating factor $\mu(t)$ must satisfy

$$\frac{d\mu}{dt} = a\mu, \tag{21}$$

rather than equation (12). Thus the integrating factor is $\mu(t) = e^{at}$. Multiplying equation (20) by $\mu(t)$, we obtain

$$e^{at}\frac{dy}{dt} + ae^{at}y = e^{at}g(t),$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{at}y) = e^{at}g(t). \tag{22}$$

By integrating both sides of equation (22), we find that

$$e^{at}y = \int e^{at}g(t)\,dt + c, \tag{23}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. For many simple functions $g(t)$, we can evaluate the integral in equation (23) and express the solution y in terms of elementary functions, as in Example 2. However, for more complicated functions $g(t)$, it is necessary to leave the solution in integral form. In this case

$$y = e^{-at}\int_{t_0}^{t} e^{as}g(s)\,ds + ce^{-at}. \tag{24}$$

Note that in equation (24) we have used s to denote the integration variable to distinguish it from the independent variable t, and we have chosen some convenient value t_0 as the lower limit of integration. (See Theorem 2.4.1.) The choice of t_0 determines the specific value of the constant c but does not change the solution. For example, plugging $t = t_0$ into the solution formula (24) shows that $c = y(t_0)e^{at_0}$.

EXAMPLE 3

Find the general solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} - 2y = 4 - t \tag{25}$$

and plot the graphs of several solutions. Discuss the behavior of solutions as $t \to \infty$.

Solution:

Equation (25) is of the form (20) with $a = -2$; therefore, the integrating factor is $\mu(t) = e^{-2t}$. Multiplying the differential equation (25) by $\mu(t)$, we obtain

$$e^{-2t}\frac{dy}{dt} - 2e^{-2t}y = 4e^{-2t} - te^{-2t},$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(e^{-2t}y\right) = 4e^{-2t} - te^{-2t}. \tag{26}$$

Then, by integrating both sides of this equation, we have

$$e^{-2t}y = -2e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2}te^{-2t} + \frac{1}{4}e^{-2t} + c,$$

where we have used integration by parts on the last term in equation (26). Thus the general solution of equation (25) is

$$y = -\frac{7}{4} + \frac{1}{2}t + ce^{2t}. \tag{27}$$

Figure 2.1.2 shows the direction field and graphs of the solution (27) for several values of c. The behavior of the solution for large values of t is determined by the term ce^{2t}. If $c \neq 0$, then the solution grows exponentially large in magnitude, with the same sign as c itself. Thus the solutions diverge as t becomes large. The boundary between solutions that ultimately grow positively and those that ultimately grow negatively occurs when $c = 0$. If we substitute $c = 0$ into equation (27) and then set $t = 0$, we find that $y = -7/4$ is the separation point on the y-axis. Note that for this initial value, the solution is $y = -\frac{7}{4} + \frac{1}{2}t$; it grows positively, but linearly rather than exponentially.

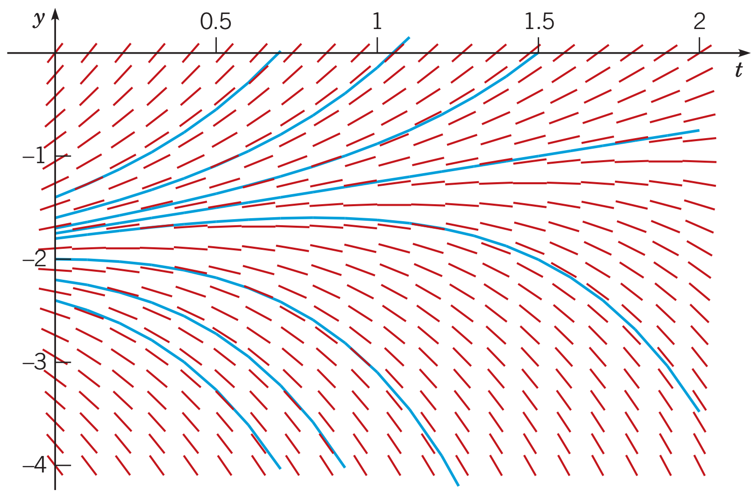


FIGURE 2.1.2 Direction field and integral curves of $y' - 2y = 4 - t$.

Now we return to the general first-order linear differential equation (3)

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + p(t)y = g(t),$$

where p and g are given functions. To determine an appropriate integrating factor, we multiply equation (3) by an as yet undetermined function $\mu(t)$, obtaining

$$\mu(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + p(t)\mu(t)y = \mu(t)g(t). \tag{28}$$

Following the same line of development as in Example 2, we see that the left-hand side of equation (28) is the derivative of the product $\mu(t)y$, provided that $\mu(t)$ satisfies the equation

$$\frac{d\mu(t)}{dt} = p(t)\mu(t). \tag{29}$$

If we assume temporarily that $\mu(t)$ is positive, then we have

$$\frac{1}{\mu(t)}\frac{d\mu(t)}{dt} = p(t),$$

and consequently

$$\ln|\mu(t)| = \int p(t)\,dt + k.$$

By choosing the arbitrary constant k to be zero, we obtain the simplest possible function for μ, namely,

$$\mu(t) = \exp\int p(t)\,dt. \tag{30}$$

Note that $\mu(t)$ is positive for all t, as we assumed. Returning to equation (28), we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mu(t)y) = \mu(t)g(t). \tag{31}$$

Hence

$$\mu(t)y = \int \mu(t)g(t)\,dt + c, \tag{32}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Sometimes the integral in equation (32) can be evaluated in terms of elementary functions. However, in general this is not possible, so the general solution of equation (3) is

$$y = \frac{1}{\mu(t)}\left(\int_{t_0}^{t} \mu(s)g(s)\,ds + c\right), \tag{33}$$

where again t_0 is some convenient lower limit of integration. Observe that equation (33) involves two integrations, one to obtain $\mu(t)$ from equation (30) and the other to determine y from equation (33).

EXAMPLE 4

Solve the initial value problem

$$ty' + 2y = 4t^2, \tag{34}$$

$$y(1) = 2. \tag{35}$$

Solution:

In order to determine $p(t)$ and $g(t)$ correctly, we must first rewrite equation (34) in the standard form (3). Thus we have

$$y' + \frac{2}{t}y = 4t, \tag{36}$$

so $p(t) = 2/t$ and $g(t) = 4t$. To solve equation (36), we first compute the integrating factor $\mu(t)$:

$$\mu(t) = \exp\left(\int \frac{2}{t}\,dt\right) = e^{2\ln|t|} = t^2.$$

On multiplying equation (36) by $\mu(t) = t^2$, we obtain

$$t^2y' + 2ty = (t^2y)' = 4t^3,$$

and therefore

$$t^2y = \int 4t^3\,dt = t^4 + c,$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. It follows that, for $t > 0$,

$$y = t^2 + \frac{c}{t^2} \tag{37}$$

is the general solution of equation (34). Integral curves of equation (34) for several values of c are shown in Figure 2.1.3.

To satisfy initial condition (35), set $t = 1$ and $y = 2$ in equation (37): $2 = 1 + c$, so $c = 1$; thus

$$y = t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}, \quad t > 0 \tag{38}$$

is the solution of the initial value problem (24), (25). This solution is shown by the green curve in Figure 2.1.3. Note that it becomes unbounded and is asymptotic to the positive y-axis as $t \to 0$ from the right. This is the effect of the infinite discontinuity in the coefficient $p(t)$ at the origin. It is important to note that while the function $y = t^2 + 1/t^2$ for $t < 0$ is part of the general solution of equation (34), it is not part of the solution of this initial value problem.

This is the first example in which the solution fails to exist for some values of t. Again, this is due to the infinite discontinuity in $p(t)$ at $t = 0$, which restricts the solution to the interval $0 < t < \infty$.

Looking again at Figure 2.1.3, we see that some solutions (those for which $c > 0$) are asymptotic to the positive y-axis as $t \to 0$ from the right, while other solutions (for which $c < 0$) are asymptotic to the negative y-axis. If we generalize the initial condition (35) to

$$y(1) = y_0, \tag{39}$$

then $c = y_0 - 1$ and the solution (38) becomes

$$y = t^2 + \frac{y_0 - 1}{t^2}, \quad t > 0 \tag{40}$$

Note that when $y_0 = 1$, so $c = 0$, the solution is $y = t^2$, which remains bounded and differentiable even at $t = 0$. (This is the red curve in Figure 2.1.3.)

As in Example 3, this is another instance where there is a critical initial value, namely, $y_0 = 1$, that separates solutions that behave in one way from others that behave quite differently.

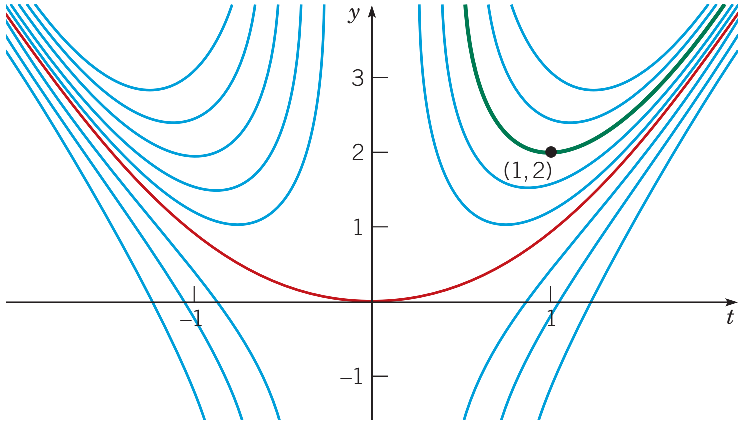


FIGURE 2.1.3 Integral curves of the differential equation $ty' + 2y = 4t^2$; the green curve is the particular solution with $y(1) = 2$. The red curve is the particular solution with $y(1) = 1$.

EXAMPLE 5

Solve the initial value problem

$$2y' + ty = 2, \tag{41}$$

$$y(0) = 1. \tag{42}$$

Solution:

To convert the differential equation (41) to the standard form (3), we must divide equation (41) by 2, obtaining

$$y' + \frac{t}{2}y = 1. \tag{43}$$

Thus $p(t) = t/2$, and the integrating factor is $\mu(t) = \exp(t^2/4)$. Then multiply equation (43) by $\mu(t)$, so that

$$e^{t^2/4}y' + \frac{t}{2}e^{t^2/4}y = e^{t^2/4}. \tag{44}$$

The left-hand side of equation (44) is the derivative of $e^{t^2/4}y$, so by integrating both sides of equation (44), we obtain

$$e^{t^2/4}y = \int e^{t^2/4}\,dt + c. \tag{45}$$

The integral on the right-hand side of equation (45) cannot be evaluated in terms of the usual elementary functions, so we leave the integral unevaluated. By choosing the lower limit of integration as the initial point $t = 0$, we can replace equation (45) by

$$e^{t^2/4}y = \int_0^t e^{s^2/4}\,ds + c, \tag{46}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. It then follows that the general solution y of equation (41) is given by

$$y = e^{-t^2/4}\int_0^t e^{s^2/4}\,ds + ce^{-t^2/4}. \tag{47}$$

To determine the particular solution that satisfies the initial condition (42), set $t = 0$ and $y = 1$ in equation (47):

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= e^0 \int_0^0 e^{-s^2/4}\,ds + ce^0 \\ &= 0 + c, \end{aligned}$$

so $c = 1$.

The main purpose of this example is to illustrate that sometimes the solution must be left in terms of an integral. This is usually at most a slight inconvenience, rather than a serious obstacle. For a given value of t, the integral in equation (47) is a definite integral and can be approximated to any desired degree of accuracy by using readily available numerical integrators. By repeating this process for many values of t and plotting the results, you can obtain a graph of a solution. Alternatively, you can use a numerical approximation method, such as those discussed in Chapter 8, that proceed directly from the differential equation and need no expression for the solution. Software packages such as Maple, Mathematica, MATLAB and Sage readily execute such procedures and produce graphs of solutions of differential equations.

Figure 2.1.4 displays graphs of the solution (47) for several values of c. The particular solution satisfying the initial condition $y(0) = 1$ is shown in black. From the figure it may be plausible to conjecture that all solutions approach a limit as $t \to \infty$. The limit can also be found analytically (see Problem 22).

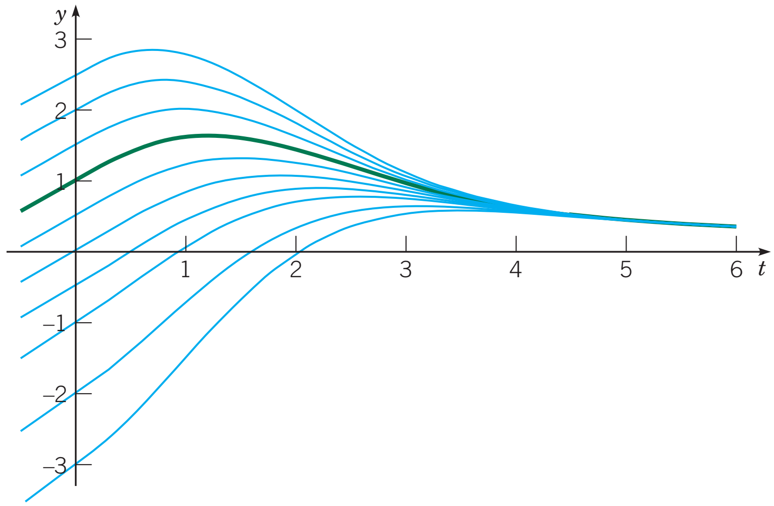


FIGURE 2.1.4 Integral curves of $2y' + ty = 2$; the green curve is the particular solution satisfying the initial condition $y(0) = 1$.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8:

a. Draw a direction field for the given differential equation.
b. Based on an inspection of the direction field, describe how solutions behave for large t.
c. Find the general solution of the given differential equation, and use it to determine how solutions behave as $t \to \infty$.

1. $y' + 3y = t + e^{-2t}$
2. $y' - 2y = t^2 e^{2t}$
3. $y' + y = te^{-t} + 1$
4. $y' + \frac{1}{t}y = 3\cos(2t), \quad t > 0$
5. $y' - 2y = 3e^t$
6. $ty' - y = t^2 e^{-t}, \quad t > 0$
7. $y' + y = 5\sin(2t)$
8. $2y' + y = 3t^2$

In each of Problems 9 through 12, find the solution of the given initial value problem.

9. $y' - y = 2te^{2t}, \quad y(0) = 1$
10. $y' + 2y = te^{-2t}, \quad y(1) = 0$
11. $y' + \frac{2}{t}y = \frac{\cos t}{t^2}, \quad y(\pi) = 0, \quad t > 0$
12. $ty' + (t+1)y = t, \quad y(\ln 2) = 1, \quad t > 0$

In each of Problems 13 and 14:

a. Draw a direction field for the given differential equation. How do solutions appear to behave as t becomes large? Does the behavior depend on the choice of the initial value a? Let a_0 be the value of a for which the transition from one type of behavior to another occurs. Estimate the value of a_0.
b. Solve the initial value problem and find the critical value a_0 exactly.
c. Describe the behavior of the solution corresponding to the initial value a_0.

13. $y' - \frac{1}{2}y = 2\cos t, \quad y(0) = a$
14. $3y' - 2y = e^{-\pi t/2}, \quad y(0) = a$

In each of Problems 15 and 16:

G **a.** Draw a direction field for the given differential equation. How do solutions appear to behave as $t \to 0$? Does the behavior depend on the choice of the initial value a? Let a_0 be the critical value of a, that is, the initial value such that the solutions for $a < a_0$ and the solutions for $a > a_0$ have different behaviors as $t \to \infty$. Estimate the value of a_0.

b. Solve the initial value problem and find the critical value a_0 exactly.

c. Describe the behavior of the solution corresponding to the initial value a_0.

15. $ty' + (t+1)y = 2te^{-t}, \quad y(1) = a, \quad t > 0$

16. $(\sin t)y' + (\cos t)y = e^t, \quad y(1) = a, \quad 0 < t < \pi$

G **17.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' + \frac{1}{2}y = 2\cos t, \quad y(0) = -1.$$

Find the coordinates of the first local maximum point of the solution for $t > 0$.

N **18.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' + \frac{2}{3}y = 1 - \frac{1}{2}t, \quad y(0) = y_0.$$

Find the value of y_0 for which the solution touches, but does not cross, the t-axis.

19. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' + \frac{1}{4}y = 3 + 2\cos(2t), \quad y(0) = 0.$$

a. Find the solution of this initial value problem and describe its behavior for large t.

N **b.** Determine the value of t for which the solution first intersects the line $y = 12$.

20. Find the value of y_0 for which the solution of the initial value problem

$$y' - y = 1 + 3\sin t, \quad y(0) = y_0$$

remains finite as $t \to \infty$.

21. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' - \frac{3}{2}y = 3t + 2e^t, \quad y(0) = y_0.$$

Find the value of y_0 that separates solutions that grow positively as $t \to \infty$ from those that grow negatively. How does the solution that corresponds to this critical value of y_0 behave as $t \to \infty$?

22. Show that all solutions of $2y' + ty = 2$ [equation (41) of the text] approach a limit as $t \to \infty$, and find the limiting value.
Hint: Consider the general solution, equation (47). Show that the first term in the solution (47) is indeterminate with form $0 \cdot \infty$. Then, use l'Hôpital's rule to compute the limit as $t \to \infty$.

23. Show that if a and λ are positive constants, and b is any real number, then every solution of the equation

$$y' + ay = be^{-\lambda t}$$

has the property that $y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$.
Hint: Consider the cases $a = \lambda$ and $a \neq \lambda$ separately.

In each of Problems 24 through 27, construct a first-order linear differential equation whose solutions have the required behavior as $t \to \infty$. Then solve your equation and confirm that the solutions do indeed have the specified property.

24. All solutions have the limit 3 as $t \to \infty$.

25. All solutions are asymptotic to the line $y = 3 - t$ as $t \to \infty$.

26. All solutions are asymptotic to the line $y = 2t - 5$ as $t \to \infty$.

27. All solutions approach the curve $y = 4 - t^2$ as $t \to \infty$.

28. **Variation of Parameters.** Consider the following method of solving the general linear equation of first order:

$$y' + p(t)y = g(t). \tag{48}$$

a. If $g(t) = 0$ for all t, show that the solution is

$$y = A\exp\left(-\int p(t)\,dt\right), \tag{49}$$

where A is a constant.

b. If $g(t)$ is not everywhere zero, assume that the solution of equation (48) is of the form

$$y = A(t)\exp\left(-\int p(t)\,dt\right), \tag{50}$$

where A is now a function of t. By substituting for y in the given differential equation, show that $A(t)$ must satisfy the condition

$$A'(t) = g(t)\exp\left(\int p(t)\,dt\right). \tag{51}$$

c. Find $A(t)$ from equation (51). Then substitute for $A(t)$ in equation (50) and determine y. Verify that the solution obtained in this manner agrees with that of equation (33) in the text. This technique is known as the method of **variation of parameters**; it is discussed in detail in Section 3.6 in connection with second-order linear equations.

In each of Problems 29 and 30, use the method of Problem 28 to solve the given differential equation.

29. $y' - 2y = t^2e^{2t}$

30. $y' + \dfrac{1}{t}y = \cos(2t), \quad t > 0$

2.2 Separable Differential Equations

In Section 1.2 we used a process of direct integration to solve first-order linear differential equations of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay + b, \tag{1}$$

where a and b are constants. We will now show that this process is actually applicable to a much larger class of nonlinear differential equations.

We will use x, rather than t, to denote the independent variable in this section for two reasons. In the first place, different letters are frequently used for the variables in a differential equation, and you should not become too accustomed to using a single pair. In particular, x often occurs as the independent variable. Further, we want to reserve t for another purpose later in the section.

The general first-order differential equation is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y). \tag{2}$$

Linear differential equations were considered in the preceding section, but if equation (2) is nonlinear, then there is no universally applicable method for solving the equation. Here, we consider a subclass of first-order equations that can be solved by direct integration.

To identify this class of equations, we first rewrite equation (2) in the form

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{3}$$

It is always possible to do this by setting $M(x, y) = -f(x, y)$ and $N(x, y) = 1$, but there may be other ways as well. When M is a function of x only and N is a function of y only, then equation (3) becomes

$$M(x) + N(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{4}$$

Such an equation is said to be **separable**, because if it is written in the **differential form**

$$M(x)\,dx + N(y)\,dy = 0, \tag{5}$$

then, if you wish, terms involving each variable may be placed on opposite sides of the equation. The differential form (5) is also more symmetric and tends to suppress the distinction between independent and dependent variables.

A separable equation can be solved by integrating the functions M and N. We illustrate the process by an example and then discuss it in general for equation (4).

EXAMPLE 1

Show that the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x^2}{1 - y^2} \tag{6}$$

is separable, and then find an equation for its integral curves.

Solution:

If we write equation (6) as

$$-x^2 + (1 - y^2)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0, \tag{7}$$

then it has the form (4) and is therefore separable. Recall from calculus that if y is a function of x, then by the chain rule,

$$\frac{d}{dx}f(y) = \frac{d}{dy}f(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = f'(y)\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

For example, if $f(y) = y - y^3/3$, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(y - \frac{y^3}{3}\right) = (1 - y^2)\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

Thus the second term in equation (7) is the derivative with respect to x of $y - y^3/3$, and the first term is the derivative of $-x^3/3$. Thus equation (7) can be written as

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(-\frac{x^3}{3}\right) + \frac{d}{dx}\left(y - \frac{y^3}{3}\right) = 0,$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(-\frac{x^3}{3} + y - \frac{y^3}{3}\right) = 0.$$

Therefore, by integrating (and multiplying the result by 3), we obtain

$$-x^3 + 3y - y^3 = c, \tag{8}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant.

Equation (8) is an equation for the integral curves of equation (6). A direction field and several integral curves are shown in Figure 2.2.1. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(x)$ that satisfies equation (8) is a solution of equation (6). An equation of the integral curve passing through a particular point (x_0, y_0) can be found by substituting x_0 and y_0 for x and y, respectively, in equation (8) and determining the corresponding value of c.

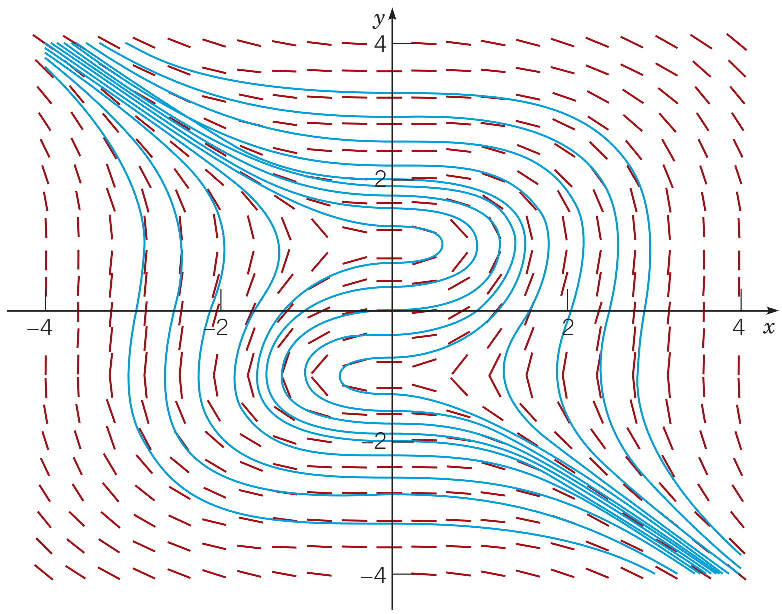


FIGURE 2.2.1 Direction field and integral curves of $y' = x^2/(1 - y^2)$.

Essentially the same procedure can be followed for any separable equation. Returning to equation (4), let H_1 and H_2 be any antiderivatives of M and N, respectively. Thus

$$H_1'(x) = M(x), \quad H_2'(y) = N(y), \tag{9}$$

and equation (4) becomes

$$H_1'(x) + H_2'(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{10}$$

If y is regarded as a function of x, then according to the chain rule,

$$H_2'(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dy}H_2(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}H_2(y). \tag{11}$$

Consequently, we can write equation (10) as

$$\frac{d}{dx}\big(H_1(x) + H_2(y)\big) = 0. \tag{12}$$

By integrating equation (12) with respect to x, we obtain

$$H_1(x) + H_2(y) = c, \tag{13}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(x)$ that satisfies equation (13) is a solution of equation (4); in other words, equation (13) defines the solution implicitly rather than explicitly. In practice, equation (13) is usually obtained from equation (5) by integrating the first term with respect to x and the second term with respect to y. The justification for this is the argument that we have just given.

The differential equation (4), together with an initial condition

$$y(x_0) = y_0, \tag{14}$$

forms an initial value problem. To solve this initial value problem, we must determine the appropriate value for the constant c in equation (13). We do this by setting $x = x_0$ and $y = y_0$ in equation (13) with the result that

$$c = H_1(x_0) + H_2(y_0). \tag{15}$$

Substituting this value of c in equation (13) and noting that

$$H_1(x) - H_1(x_0) = \int_{x_0}^{x} M(s)ds, \quad H_2(y) - H_2(y_0) = \int_{y_0}^{y} N(s)ds,$$

we obtain

$$\int_{x_0}^{x} M(s)ds + \int_{y_0}^{y} N(s)ds = 0. \tag{16}$$

Equation (16) is an implicit representation of the solution of the differential equation (4) that also satisfies the initial condition (14). Bear in mind that to determine an explicit formula for the solution, you need to solve equation (16) for y as a function of x. Unfortunately, it is often impossible to do this analytically; in such cases you can resort to numerical methods to find approximate values of y for given values of x.

EXAMPLE 2

Solve the initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3x^2 + 4x + 2}{2(y-1)}, \quad y(0) = -1, \tag{17}$$

and determine the interval in which the solution exists.

Solution:

The differential equation can be written as

$$2(y-1)dy = (3x^2 + 4x + 2)dx.$$

Integrating the left-hand side with respect to y and the right-hand side with respect to x gives

$$y^2 - 2y = x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + c, \tag{18}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. To determine the solution satisfying the prescribed initial condition, we substitute $x = 0$ and $y = -1$ in equation (18), obtaining $c = 3$. Hence the solution of the initial value problem is given implicitly by

$$y^2 - 2y = x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + 3. \tag{19}$$

To obtain the solution explicitly, we must solve equation (19) for y in terms of x. That is a simple matter in this case, since equation (19) is quadratic in y, and we obtain

$$y = 1 \pm \sqrt{x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + 4}. \tag{20}$$

Equation (20) gives two solutions of the differential equation, only one of which, however, satisfies the given initial condition. This is the solution corresponding to the minus sign in equation (20), so we finally obtain

$$y = \phi(x) = 1 - \sqrt{x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + 4} \tag{21}$$

as the solution of the initial value problem (15). Note that if we choose the plus sign by mistake in equation (20), then we obtain the solution of the same differential equation that satisfies the initial condition $y(0) = 3$. Finally, to determine the interval in which the solution (21) is valid, we must find the interval in which the quantity under the radical is positive. The only real zero of this expression is $x = -2$, so the desired interval is $x > -2$. Some integral curves of the differential equation are shown in Figure 2.2.2. The green curve passes through the point $(0, -1)$ and thus is the solution of the initial value problem (15). Observe that the boundary of the interval of validity of the solution (21) is determined by the point $(-2, 1)$ at which the tangent line is vertical.

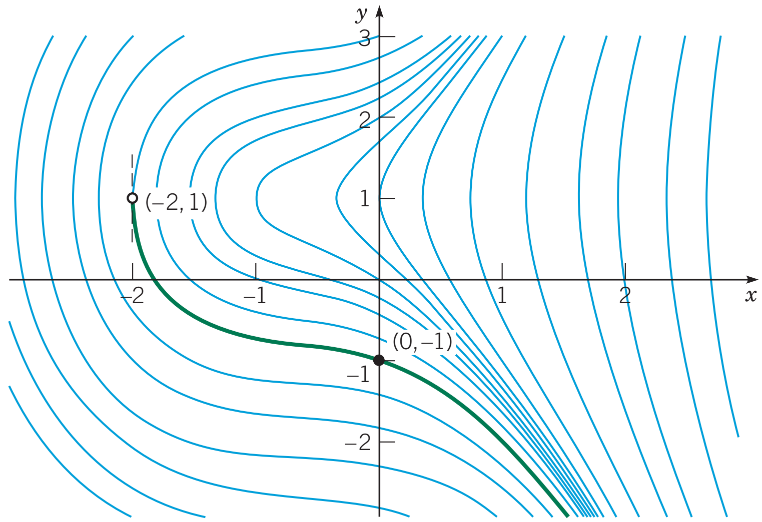


FIGURE 2.2.2 Integral curves of $y' = (3x^2 + 4x + 2)/2(y - 1)$; the solution satisfying $y(0) = -1$ is shown in green and is valid for $x > -2$.

EXAMPLE 3

Solve the separable differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4x - x^3}{4 + y^3} \tag{22}$$

and draw graphs of several integral curves. Also find the solution passing through the point $(0, 1)$ and determine its interval of validity.

Solution:

Rewriting equation (22) as

$$(4 + y^3)dy = (4x - x^3)dx,$$

integrating each side, multiplying by 4, and rearranging the terms, we obtain

$$y^4 + 16y + x^4 - 8x^2 = c, \tag{23}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(x)$ that satisfies equation (23) is a solution of the differential equation (22). Graphs of equation (23) for several values of c are shown in Figure 2.2.3.

To find the particular solution passing through $(0, 1)$, we set $x = 0$ and $y = 1$ in equation (23) with the result that $c = 17$. Thus the solution in question is given implicitly by

$$y^4 + 16y + x^4 - 8x^2 = 17. \tag{24}$$

It is shown by the green curve in Figure 2.2.3. The interval of validity of this solution extends on either side of the initial point as long as the function remains differentiable. From the figure we see that the interval ends when we reach points where the tangent line is vertical. It follows from the differential equation (22) that these are points where $4 + y^3 = 0$, or $y = (-4)^{1/3} \cong -1.5874$. From equation (24) the corresponding values of x are $x \cong \pm 3.3488$. These points are marked on the graph in Figure 2.2.3.

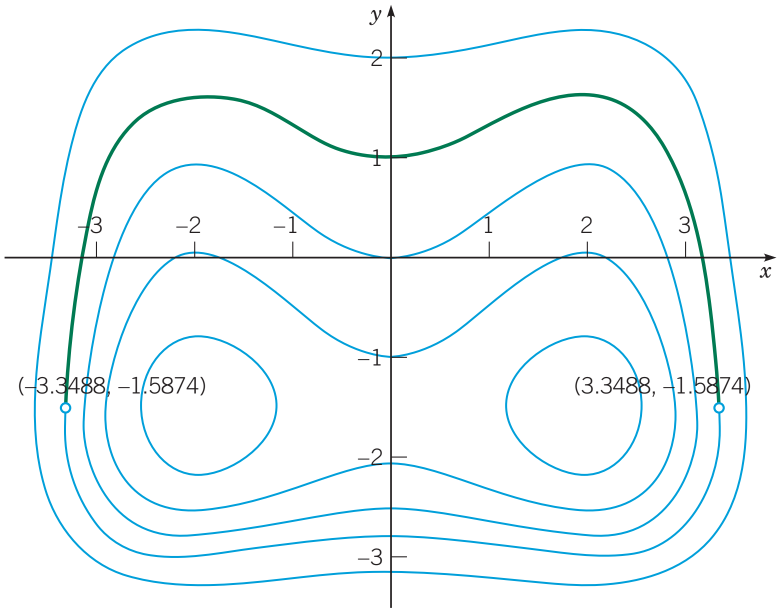


FIGURE 2.2.3 Integral curves of $y' = (4x - x^3)/(4 + y^3)$. The solution passing through $(0, 1)$ is shown by the green curve.

Note 1: Sometimes a differential equation of the form (2):

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y)$$

has a constant solution $y = y_0$. Such a solution is usually easy to find because if $f(x, y_0) = 0$ for some value y_0 and for all x, then the constant function $y = y_0$ is a solution of the differential equation (2). For example, the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(y-3)\cos x}{1 + 2y^2} \tag{25}$$

has the constant solution $y = 3$. Other solutions of this equation can be found by separating the variables and integrating.

Note 2: The investigation of a first-order nonlinear differential equation can sometimes be facilitated by regarding both x and y as functions of a third variable t. Then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy/dt}{dx/dt}. \tag{26}$$

If the differential equation is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{F(x, y)}{G(x, y)}, \tag{27}$$

then, by comparing numerators and denominators in equations (26) and (27), we obtain the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = G(x, y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = F(x, y). \tag{28}$$

At first sight it may seem unlikely that a problem will be simplified by replacing a single equation by a pair of equations, but in fact, the system (28) may well be more amenable to investigation than the single equation (27). Chapter 9 is devoted to nonlinear systems of the form (28).

Note 3: In Example 2 it was not difficult to solve explicitly for y as a function of x. However, this situation is exceptional, and often it will be better to leave the solution in implicit form, as in Examples 1 and 3. Thus, in the problems below and in other sections where nonlinear equations appear, the words "solve the following differential equation" mean to find the solution explicitly if it is convenient to do so, but otherwise to find an equation defining the solution implicitly.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8, solve the given differential equation.

1. $y' = \dfrac{x^2}{y}$
2. $y' + y^2 \sin x = 0$
3. $y' = \cos^2(x)\cos^2(2y)$
4. $xy' = (1 - y^2)^{1/2}$
5. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x - e^{-x}}{y + e^y}$
6. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2}{1 + y^2}$
7. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y}{x}$
8. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{-x}{y}$

In each of Problems 9 through 16:

a. Find the solution of the given initial value problem in explicit form.
G **b.** Plot the graph of the solution.
c. Determine (at least approximately) the interval in which the solution is defined.

9. $y' = (1 - 2x)y^2, \quad y(0) = -1/6$
10. $y' = (1 - 2x)/y, \quad y(1) = -2$
11. $x\,dx + ye^{-x}dy = 0, \quad y(0) = 1$
12. $dr/d\theta = r^2/\theta, \quad r(1) = 2$
13. $y' = xy^3(1 + x^2)^{-1/2}, \quad y(0) = 1$
14. $y' = 2x/(1 + 2y), \quad y(2) = 0$
15. $y' = (3x^2 - e^x)/(2y - 5), \quad y(0) = 1$
16. $\sin(2x)\,dx + \cos(3y)\,dy = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = \pi/3$

Some of the results requested in Problems 17 through 22 can be obtained either by solving the given equations analytically or by plotting numerically generated approximations to the solutions. Try to form an opinion about the advantages and disadvantages of each approach.

G **17.** Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = \frac{1 + 3x^2}{3y^2 - 6y}, \quad y(0) = 1$$

and determine the interval in which the solution is valid.
Hint: To find the interval of definition, look for points where the integral curve has a vertical tangent.

G **18.** Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = \frac{3x^2}{3y^2 - 4}, \quad y(1) = 0$$

and determine the interval in which the solution is valid.
Hint: To find the interval of definition, look for points where the integral curve has a vertical tangent.

G **19.** Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = 2y^2 + xy^2, \quad y(0) = 1$$

and determine where the solution attains its minimum value.

G **20.** Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = \frac{2 - e^x}{3 + 2y}, \quad y(0) = 0$$

and determine where the solution attains its maximum value.

G **21.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = \frac{ty(4 - y)}{3}, \quad y(0) = y_0.$$

a. Determine how the behavior of the solution as t increases depends on the initial value y_0.
b. Suppose that $y_0 = 0.5$. Find the time T at which the solution first reaches the value 3.98.

G **22.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = \frac{ty(4 - y)}{1 + t}, \quad y(0) = y_0 > 0.$$

a. Determine how the solution behaves as $t \to \infty$.
b. If $y_0 = 2$, find the time T at which the solution first reaches the value 3.99.
c. Find the range of initial values for which the solution lies in the interval $3.99 < y < 4.01$ by the time $t = 2$.

23. Solve the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{ay + b}{cy + d},$$

where a, b, c, and d are constants.

24. Use separation of variables to solve the differential equation

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = r(a + bQ), \quad Q(0) = Q_0,$$

where a, b, r, and Q_0 are constants. Determine how the solution behaves as $t \to \infty$

Homogeneous Equations. If the right-hand side of the equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ can be expressed as a function of the ratio y/x only, then the equation is said to be homogeneous.[1] Such equations can always be transformed into separable equations by a change of the dependent variable. Problem 25 illustrates how to solve first-order homogeneous equations.

[1]The word "homogeneous" has different meanings in different mathematical contexts. The homogeneous equations considered here have nothing to do with the homogeneous equations that will occur in Chapter 3 and elsewhere.

N 25. Consider the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y - 4x}{x - y}. \tag{29}$$

a. Show that equation (29) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(y/x) - 4}{1 - (y/x)}; \tag{30}$$

thus equation (29) is homogeneous.

b. Introduce a new dependent variable v so that $v = y/x$, or $y = xv(x)$. Express dy/dx in terms of x, v, and dv/dx.

c. Replace y and dy/dx in equation (30) by the expressions from part b that involve v and dv/dx. Show that the resulting differential equation is

$$v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v - 4}{1 - v},$$

or

$$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v^2 - 4}{1 - v}. \tag{31}$$

Observe that equation (31) is separable.

d. Solve equation (31), obtaining v implicitly in terms of x.

e. Find the solution of equation (29) by replacing v by y/x in the solution in part d.

f. Draw a direction field and some integral curves for equation (29). Recall that the right-hand side of equation (29) actually depends only on the ratio y/x. This means that integral curves have the same slope at all points on any given straight line through the origin, although the slope changes from one line to another. Therefore, the direction field and the integral curves are symmetric with respect to the origin. Is this symmetry property evident from your plot?

The method outlined in Problem 25 can be used for any homogeneous equation. That is, the substitution $y = xv(x)$ transforms a homogeneous equation into a separable equation. The latter equation can be solved by direct integration, and then replacing v by y/x gives the solution to the original equation. In each of Problems 26 through 31:

a. Show that the given equation is homogeneous.

b. Solve the differential equation.

G c. Draw a direction field and some integral curves. Are they symmetric with respect to the origin?

26. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2 + xy + y^2}{x^2}$

27. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2 + 3y^2}{2xy}$

28. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{4y - 3x}{2x - y}$

29. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{4x + 3y}{2x + y}$

30. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2 - 3y^2}{2xy}$

31. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{3y^2 - x^2}{2xy}$

2.3 Modeling with First-Order Differential Equations

Differential equations are of interest to nonmathematicians primarily because of the possibility of using them to investigate a wide variety of problems in the physical, biological, and social sciences. One reason for this is that mathematical models and their solutions lead to equations relating the variables and parameters in the problem. These equations often enable you to make predictions about how the natural process will behave in various circumstances. It is often easy to vary parameters in the mathematical model over wide ranges, whereas this may be very time-consuming or expensive, if not impossible, in an experimental setting. Nevertheless, mathematical modeling and experiment or observation are both critically important and have somewhat complementary roles in scientific investigations. Mathematical models are validated by comparison of their predictions with experimental results. On the other hand, mathematical analyses may suggest the most promising directions to explore experimentally, and they may indicate fairly precisely what experimental data will be most helpful.

In Sections 1.1 and 1.2 we formulated and investigated a few simple mathematical models. We begin by recapitulating and expanding on some of the conclusions reached in those sections. Regardless of the specific field of application, there are three identifiable steps that are always present in the process of mathematical modeling.

Step 1: Construction of the Model. In this step the physical situation is translated into mathematical terms, often using the steps listed at the end of Section 1.1. Perhaps most critical at this stage is to state clearly the physical principle(s) that are believed to govern the process. For example, it has been observed that in some circumstances heat passes from a warmer to a cooler body at a rate proportional to the temperature difference, that objects move about in accordance with Newton's laws of motion, and that isolated insect populations grow at a rate proportional to the current population. Each of these statements involves a rate of change (derivative) and consequently, when expressed mathematically, leads to a differential equation. The differential equation is a mathematical model of the process.

It is important to realize that the mathematical equations are almost always only an approximate description of the actual process. For example, bodies moving at speeds comparable to the speed of light are not governed by Newton's laws, insect populations do not grow indefinitely as stated because of eventual lack of food or space, and heat transfer is affected by factors other than the temperature difference. Thus you should always be aware of the limitations of the model so that you will use it only when it is reasonable to believe that it is accurate. Alternatively, you can adopt the point of view that the mathematical equations exactly describe the operation of a simplified physical model, which has been constructed (or conceived of) so as to embody the most important features of the actual process. Sometimes, the process of mathematical modeling involves the conceptual replacement of a discrete process by a continuous one. For instance, the number of members in an insect population changes by discrete amounts; however, if the population is large, it seems reasonable to consider it as a continuous variable and even to speak of its derivative.

Step 2: Analysis of the Model. Once the problem has been formulated mathematically, you are often faced with the problem of solving one or more differential equations or, failing that, of finding out as much as possible about the properties of the solution. It may happen that this mathematical problem is quite difficult, and if so, further approximations may be indicated at this stage to make the problem mathematically tractable. For example, a nonlinear equation may be approximated by a linear one, or a slowly varying coefficient may be replaced by a constant. Naturally, any such approximations must also be examined from the physical point of view to make sure that the simplified mathematical problem still reflects the essential features of the physical process under investigation. At the same time, an intimate knowledge of the physics of the problem may suggest reasonable mathematical approximations that will make the mathematical problem more amenable to analysis. This interplay of understanding of physical phenomena and knowledge of mathematical techniques and their limitations is characteristic of applied mathematics at its best, and it is indispensable in successfully constructing useful mathematical models of intricate physical processes.

Step 3: Comparison with Experiment or Observation. Finally, having obtained the solution (or at least some information about it), you must interpret this information in the context in which the problem arose. In particular, you should always check that the mathematical solution appears physically reasonable. If possible, calculate the values of the solution at selected points and compare them with experimentally observed values. Or ask whether the behavior of the solution after a long time is consistent with observations. Or examine the solutions corresponding to certain special values of parameters in the problem. Of course, the fact that the mathematical solution appears to be reasonable does not guarantee that it is correct. However, if the predictions of the mathematical model are seriously inconsistent with observations of the physical system it purports to describe, this suggests that errors have been made in solving the mathematical problem, that the mathematical model itself needs refinement, or that observations must be made with greater care.

The examples in this section are typical of applications in which first-order differential equations arise.

EXAMPLE 1 | Mixing

At time $t = 0$ a tank contains Q_0 lb of salt dissolved in 100 gal of water; see Figure 2.3.1. Assume that water containing $\frac{1}{4}$ lb of salt per gallon is entering the tank at a rate of r gal/min and that the well-stirred mixture is draining from the tank at the same rate. Set up the initial value problem that describes this flow process. Find the amount of salt $Q(t)$ in the tank at any time, and also find the limiting amount Q_L that is present after a very long time. If $r = 3$ and $Q_0 = 2Q_L$, find the time T after which the salt level is within 2% of Q_L. Also find the flow rate that is required if the value of T is not to exceed 45 min.

Solution:

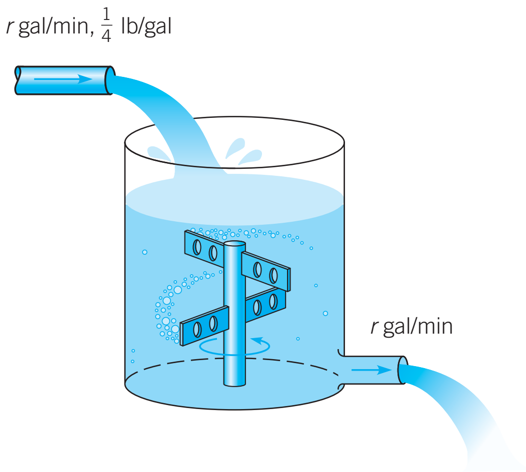


FIGURE 2.3.1 The water tank in Example 1.

We assume that salt is neither created nor destroyed in the tank. Therefore, variations in the amount of salt are due solely to the flows in and out of the tank. More precisely, the rate of change of salt in the tank, dQ/dt, is equal to the rate at which salt is flowing in minus the rate at which it is flowing out. In symbols,

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = \text{rate in} - \text{rate out}. \tag{1}$$

The rate at which salt enters the tank is the concentration $\frac{1}{4}$ lb/gal times the flow rate r gal/min, or $r/4$ lb/min. To find the rate at which salt leaves the tank, we need to multiply the concentration of salt in the tank by the rate of outflow, r gal/min. Since the rates of flow in and out are equal, the volume of water in the tank remains constant at 100 gal, and since the mixture is "well-stirred," the concentration throughout the tank is the same, namely, $Q(t)/100$ lb/gal. Therefore, the rate at which salt leaves the tank is $rQ(t)/100$ lb/min. Thus the differential equation governing this process is

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = \frac{r}{4} - \frac{rQ}{100}. \tag{2}$$

The initial condition is

$$Q(0) = Q_0. \tag{3}$$

Upon thinking about the problem physically, we might anticipate that eventually the mixture originally in the tank will be essentially replaced by the mixture flowing in, whose concentration is $\frac{1}{4}$ lb/gal. Consequently, we might expect that ultimately the amount of salt in the tank would be very close to 25 lb. We can also find the limiting amount $Q_L = 25$ by setting dQ/dt equal to zero in equation (2) and solving the resulting algebraic equation for Q.

To solve the initial value problem (2), (3) analytically, note that equation (2) is linear. (It is also separable, see Problem 24 in Section 2.2.) Rewriting the differential equation (2) in the standard form for a linear differential equation, we have

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} + \frac{rQ}{100} = \frac{r}{4}. \tag{4}$$

Thus the integrating factor is $e^{rt/100}$ and the general solution is

$$Q(t) = 25 + ce^{-rt/100}, \tag{5}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. To satisfy the initial condition (3), we must choose $c = Q_0 - 25$. Therefore, the solution of the initial value problem (2), (3) is

$$Q(t) = 25 + (Q_0 - 25)e^{-rt/100}, \tag{6}$$

or

$$Q(t) = 25(1 - e^{-rt/100}) + Q_0e^{-rt/100}. \tag{7}$$

From either form of the solution, (6) or (7), you can see that $Q(t) \to 25$ (lb) as $t \to \infty$, so the limiting value Q_L is 25, confirming our physical intuition.

Further, $Q(t)$ approaches the limit more rapidly as r increases. In interpreting the solution (7), note that the second term on the right-hand side is the portion of the original salt that remains at time t, while the first term gives the amount of salt in the tank as a consequence of the flow processes. Plots of the solution for $r = 3$ and for several values of Q_0 are shown in Figure 2.3.2.

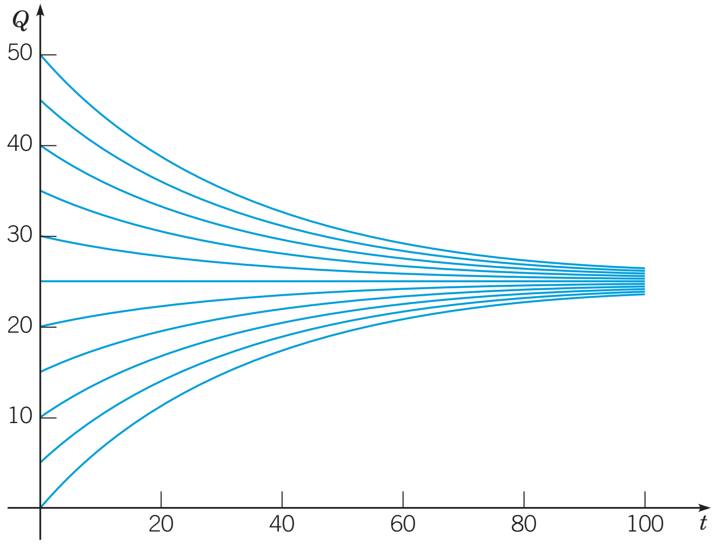


FIGURE 2.3.2 Solutions of the initial value problem (2): $dQ/dt = r/4 - rQ/100$, $Q(0) = Q_0$ for $r = 3$ and several values of Q_0.

Now suppose that $r = 3$ and $Q_0 = 2Q_L = 50$; then equation (6) becomes

$$Q(t) = 25 + 25e^{-0.03t}. \tag{8}$$

Since 2% of 25 is 0.5, we wish to find the time T at which $Q(t)$ has the value 25.5. Substituting $t = T$ and $Q = 25.5$ in equation (8) and solving for T, we obtain

$$T = \frac{\ln(50)}{0.03} \cong 130.4 \text{ (min)}. \tag{9}$$

To determine r so that $T = 45$, return to equation (6), set $t = 45$, $Q_0 = 50$, $Q(t) = 25.5$, and solve for r. The result is

$$r = \frac{100}{45} \ln 50 \cong 8.69 \text{ gal/min}. \tag{10}$$

Since this example is hypothetical, the validity of the model is not in question. If the flow rates are as stated, and if the concentration of salt in the tank is uniform, then the differential equation (1) is an accurate description of the flow process. Although this particular example has no special significance, models of this kind are often used in problems involving a pollutant in a lake, or a drug in an organ of the body, for example, rather than a tank of salt water. In such cases the flow rates may not be easy to determine or may vary with time. Similarly, the concentration may be far from uniform in some cases. Finally, the rates of inflow and outflow may be different, which means that the variation of the amount of liquid in the problem must also be taken into account.

EXAMPLE 2 | Compound Interest

Suppose that a sum of money, S_0, is deposited in a bank or money fund that pays interest at an annual rate r. The value $S(t)$ of the investment at any time t depends on the frequency with which interest is compounded as well as on the interest rate. Financial institutions have various policies concerning compounding: some compound monthly, some weekly, and some even daily. Assume that compounding takes place *continuously*. Set up an initial value problem that describes the growth of the investment.

Solution:

The rate of change of the value of the investment is dS/dt, and this quantity is equal to the rate at which interest accrues, which is the interest rate r times the current value of the investment $S(t)$. Thus

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = rS \tag{11}$$

is the differential equation that governs the process. If we let t denote the time, in years, since the original deposit, the corresponding initial condition is

$$S(0) = S_0. \tag{12}$$

Then the solution of the initial value problem (8) gives the balance $S(t)$ in the account at any time t. This initial value problem is readily solved, since the differential equation (11) is both linear and separable. Consequently, by solving equations (11) and (12), we find that

$$S(t) = S_0 e^{rt}. \tag{13}$$

Thus a bank account with continuously compounding interest grows exponentially.

The model in Example 2 is easily extended to situations involving deposits or withdrawals in addition to the accrual of interest, dividends, or annual capital gains. If we assume that the deposits or withdrawals take place at a constant rate k, then equation (11) is replaced by

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = rS + k,$$

or, in standard form,

$$\frac{dS}{dt} - rS = k, \tag{14}$$

where k is positive for deposits and negative for withdrawals.

Equation (14) is linear with the integrating factor e^{-rt}, so its general solution is

$$S(t) = ce^{rt} - \frac{k}{r},$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. To satisfy the initial condition (12), we must choose $c = S_0 + k/r$. Thus the solution of the initial value problem (10), (8) is

$$S(t) = S_0 e^{rt} + \frac{k}{r}(e^{rt} - 1). \tag{15}$$

The first term in expression (15) is the part of $S(t)$ that is due to the return accumulated on the initial amount S_0, and the second term is the part that is due to the deposit or withdrawal rate k.

The advantage of stating the problem in this general way without specific values for S_0, r, or k lies in the generality of the resulting formula (15) for $S(t)$. With this formula we can readily compare the results of different investment programs or different rates of return.

For instance, suppose that one opens an individual retirement account (IRA) at age 25 and makes annual investments of \$2000 thereafter in a continuous manner. Assuming a rate of return of 8%, what will be the balance in the IRA at age 65? We have $S_0 = 0$, $r = 0.08$, and $k = \$2000$, and we wish to determine $S(40)$. From equation (15) we have

$$S(40) = 25{,}000(e^{3.2} - 1) = \$588{,}313. \tag{16}$$

It is interesting to note that the total amount invested is \$80,000, so the remaining amount of \$508,313 results from the accumulated return on the investment. The balance after 40 years is also fairly sensitive to the assumed rate. For instance, $S(40) = \$508{,}948$ if $r = 0.075$ and $S(40) = \$681{,}508$ if $r = 0.085$.

Let us now examine the assumptions that have gone into the model. First, we have assumed that the return is compounded continuously and that additional capital is invested continuously. Neither of these is true in an actual financial situation. We have also assumed that the return rate r is constant for the entire period involved, whereas in fact it is likely to fluctuate considerably. Although we cannot reliably predict future rates, we can use solution (15) to determine the approximate effect of different rate projections. It is also possible to consider r and k in equation (14) to be functions of t rather than constants; in that case, of course, the solution may be much more complicated than equation (15).

The initial value problem (10), (8) and the solution (15) can also be used to analyze a number of other financial situations, including annuities, mortgages, and automobile loans.

Let us now compare the results from the model with continuously compounded interest (and no other deposits or withdrawals) with the corresponding situation in which compounding occurs at finite time intervals. If interest is compounded once a year, then after t years

$$S(t) = S_0(1+r)^t.$$

If interest is compounded twice a year, then at the end of 6 months the value of the investment is $S_0(1+(r/2))$, and at the end of 1 year it is $S_0(1+r/2)^2$. Thus, after t years, we have

$$S(t) = S_0\left(1+\frac{r}{2}\right)^{2t}.$$

In general, if interest is compounded m times per year, then

$$S(t) = S_0\left(1+\frac{r}{m}\right)^{mt}. \tag{17}$$

The relation between formulas (13) and (17) is clarified if we recall from calculus that

$$\lim_{m\to\infty} S_0\left(1+\frac{r}{m}\right)^{mt} = S_0e^{rt}.$$

The same model applies equally well to more general investments in which dividends and perhaps capital gains can also accumulate, as well as interest. In recognition of this fact, we will from now on refer to r as the rate of return.

Table 2.3.1 shows the effect of changing the frequency of compounding for a return rate r of 8%. The second and third columns are calculated from equation (17) for quarterly and daily compounding, respectively, and the fourth column is calculated from equation (13) for continuous compounding. The results show that the frequency of compounding is not particularly important in most cases. For example, during a 10-year period the difference between quarterly and continuous compounding is \$17.50 per \$1000 invested, or less than \$2/year. The difference would be somewhat greater for higher rates of return and less for lower rates. From the first row in the table, we see that for the return rate $r = 8\%$, the annual yield for quarterly compounding is 8.24% and for daily or continuous compounding it is 8.33%.

TABLE 2.3.1 Growth of Capital at a Return Rate $r = 8\%$ for Several Modes of Compounding

Years	$S(t)/S(t_0)$ From Equation (17) $m = 4$	$m = 365$	$S(t)/S(t_0)$ From Equation (13)
1	1.0824	1.0833	1.0833
2	1.1717	1.1735	1.1735
5	1.4859	1.4918	1.4918
10	2.2080	2.2253	2.2255
20	4.8754	4.9522	4.9530
30	10.7652	11.0203	11.0232
40	23.7699	24.5239	24.5325

EXAMPLE 3 | Chemicals in a Pond

Consider a pond that initially contains 10 million gallons of fresh water. Water containing an undesirable chemical flows into the pond at the rate of 5 million gallons per year, and the mixture in the pond flows out at the same rate. The concentration $\gamma(t)$ of chemical in the incoming water varies periodically with time according to the expression $\gamma(t) = 2 + \sin(2t)$ g/gal. Construct a mathematical model of this flow process and determine the amount of chemical in the pond at any time. Plot the solution and describe in words the effect of the variation in the incoming concentration.

Solution:

Since the incoming and outgoing flows of water are the same, the amount of water in the pond remains constant at 10^7 gal. Let us denote time by t, measured in years, and the chemical by $Q(t)$, measured in grams. This example is similar to Example 1, and the same inflow/outflow principle applies. Thus

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = \text{rate in} - \text{rate out},$$

where "rate in" and "rate out" refer to the rates at which the chemical flows into and out of the pond, respectively. The rate at which the chemical flows in is given by

$$\text{rate in} = (5 \times 10^6) \text{ gal/yr } (2 + \sin(2t)) \text{ g/gal}. \tag{18}$$

The concentration of chemical in the pond is $Q(t)/10^7$ g/gal, so the rate of flow out is

$$\text{rate out} = (5 \times 10^6) \text{ gal/year } (Q(t)/10^7) \text{ g/gal} = Q(t)/2 \text{ g/yr}. \tag{19}$$

Thus we obtain the differential equation

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = (5 \times 10^6)(2 + \sin(2t)) - \frac{Q(t)}{2}, \tag{20}$$

where each term has the units of g/yr.

To make the coefficients more manageable, it is convenient to introduce a new dependent variable defined by $q(t) = Q(t)/10^6$, or $Q(t) = 10^6 q(t)$. This means that $q(t)$ is measured in millions of grams, or megagrams (metric tons). If we make this substitution in equation (20), then each term contains the factor 10^6, which can be canceled. If we also transpose the term involving $q(t)$ to the left-hand side of the equation, we finally have

$$\frac{dq}{dt} + \frac{1}{2}q = 10 + 5\sin(2t). \tag{21}$$

Originally, there is no chemical in the pond, so the initial condition is

$$q(0) = 0. \tag{22}$$

Equation (21) is linear, and although the right-hand side is a function of time, the coefficient of q is a constant. Thus the integrating factor is $e^{t/2}$. Multiplying equation (21) by this factor and integrating the resulting equation, we obtain the general solution

$$q(t) = 20 - \frac{40}{17}\cos(2t) + \frac{10}{17}\sin(2t) + ce^{-t/2}. \tag{23}$$

The initial condition (22) requires that $c = -300/17$, so the solution of the initial value problem (17), (18) is

$$q(t) = 20 - \frac{40}{17}\cos(2t) + \frac{10}{17}\sin(2t) - \frac{300}{17}e^{-t/2}. \tag{24}$$

A plot of the solution (24) is shown in Figure 2.3.3, along with the line $q = 20$ (shown in black). The exponential term in the solution is important for small t, but it diminishes rapidly as t increases. Later, the solution consists of an oscillation, due to the $\sin(2t)$ and $\cos(2t)$ terms, about the constant level $q = 20$. Note that if the $\sin(2t)$ term were not present in equation (21), then $q = 20$ would be the equilibrium solution of that equation.

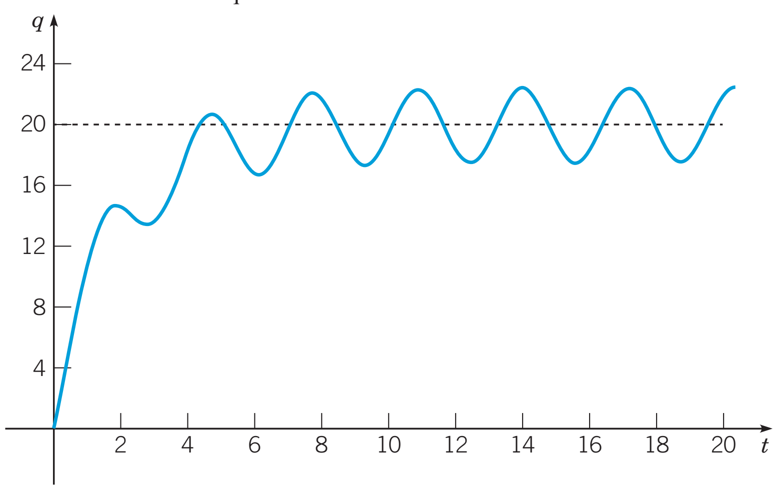


FIGURE 2.3.3 Solution of the initial value problem (17), (18): $dq/dt + q/2 = 10 + 5\sin(2t)$, $q(0) = 0$.

Let us now consider the adequacy of the mathematical model itself for this problem. The model rests on several assumptions that have not yet been stated explicitly. In the first place, the amount of water in the pond is controlled entirely by the rates of flow in and out—none is lost by evaporation or by seepage into the ground, and none is gained by rainfall. The same is true of the chemical; it flows into and out of the pond, but none is absorbed by fish or other organisms living in the pond. In addition, we assume that the concentration of chemical in the pond is uniform throughout the pond. Whether the results obtained from the model are accurate depends strongly on the validity of these simplifying assumptions.

EXAMPLE 4 | Escape Velocity

A body of constant mass m is projected away from the earth in a direction perpendicular to the earth's surface with an initial velocity v_0. Assuming that there is no air resistance, but taking into account the variation of the earth's gravitational field with distance, find an expression for the velocity during the ensuing motion. Also find the initial velocity that is required to lift the body to a given maximum altitude A_{max} above the surface of the earth, and find the least initial velocity for which the body will not return to the earth; the latter is the **escape velocity**.

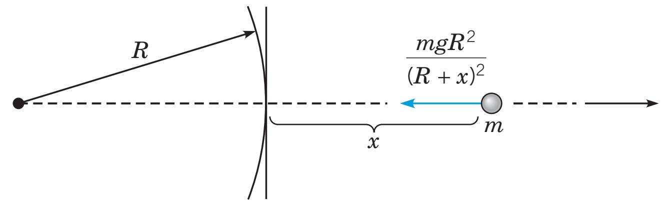


FIGURE 2.3.4 A body in the earth's gravitational field is pulled towards the center of the earth.

Solution:

Let the positive x-axis point away from the center of the earth along the line of motion with $x = 0$ lying on the earth's surface; see Figure 2.3.4. The figure is drawn horizontally to remind you that gravity is directed toward the center of the earth, which is not necessarily downward from a perspective away from the earth's surface. The gravitational force acting on the body (that is, its weight) is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the center of the earth and is given by $w(x) = -k/(x+R)^2$, where k is a constant, R is the radius of the earth, and the minus sign signifies that $w(x)$ is directed in the negative x direction. We know that on the earth's surface $w(0)$ is given by $-mg$, where g is the acceleration due to gravity at sea level. Therefore, $k = mgR^2$ and

$$w(x) = -\frac{mgR^2}{(R+x)^2}. \tag{25}$$

Since there are no other forces acting on the body, the equation of motion is

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = -\frac{mgR^2}{(R+x)^2}, \tag{26}$$

and the initial condition is

$$v(0) = v_0. \tag{27}$$

Unfortunately, equation (26) involves too many variables since it depends on t, x, and v. To remedy this situation, we can eliminate t from equation (26) by thinking of x, rather than t, as the independent variable. Then we can express dv/dt in terms of dv/dx by using the chain rule; hence

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{dv}{dx}\frac{dx}{dt} = v\frac{dv}{dx},$$

and equation (26) is replaced by

$$v\frac{dv}{dx} = -\frac{gR^2}{(R+x)^2}. \tag{28}$$

Equation (28) is separable but not linear, so by separating the variables and integrating, we obtain

$$\frac{v^2}{2} = \frac{gR^2}{R+x} + c. \tag{29}$$

Since $x = 0$ when $t = 0$, the initial condition (27) at $t = 0$ can be replaced by the condition that $v = v_0$ when $x = 0$. Hence $c = (v_0^2/2) - gR$ and

$$v = \pm\sqrt{v_0^2 - 2gR + \frac{2gR^2}{R+x}}. \tag{30}$$

Note that equation (30) gives the velocity as a function of altitude rather than as a function of time. The plus sign must be chosen if the body is rising, and the minus sign must be chosen if it is falling back to earth.

To determine the maximum altitude A_{max} that the body reaches, we set $v = 0$ and $x = A_{max}$ in equation (30) and then solve for A_{max}, obtaining

$$A_{max} = \frac{v_0^2 R}{2gR - v_0^2}. \qquad (31)$$

Solving equation (31) for v_0, we find the initial velocity required to lift the body to the altitude A_{max}, namely,

$$v_0 = \sqrt{2gR \frac{A_{max}}{R + A_{max}}}. \qquad (32)$$

The escape velocity v_e is then found by letting $A_{max} \to \infty$. Consequently,

$$v_e = \sqrt{2gR}. \qquad (33)$$

The numerical value of v_e is approximately 6.9 mi/s, or 11.1 km/s.

The preceding calculation of the escape velocity neglects the effect of air resistance, so the actual escape velocity (including the effect of air resistance) is somewhat higher. On the other hand, the effective escape velocity can be significantly reduced if the body is transported a considerable distance above sea level before being launched. Both gravitational and frictional forces are thereby reduced; air resistance, in particular, diminishes quite rapidly with increasing altitude. You should keep in mind also that it may well be impractical to impart too large an initial velocity instantaneously; space vehicles, for instance, receive their initial acceleration during a period of a few minutes.

Problems

1. Consider a tank used in certain hydrodynamic experiments. After one experiment the tank contains 200 L of a dye solution with a concentration of 1 g/L. To prepare for the next experiment, the tank is to be rinsed with fresh water flowing in at a rate of 2 L/min, the well-stirred solution flowing out at the same rate. Find the time that will elapse before the concentration of dye in the tank reaches 1% of its original value.

2. A tank initially contains 120 L of pure water. A mixture containing a concentration of γ g/L of salt enters the tank at a rate of 2 L/min, and the well-stirred mixture leaves the tank at the same rate. Find an expression in terms of γ for the amount of salt in the tank at any time t. Also find the limiting amount of salt in the tank as $t \to \infty$.

3. A tank contains 100 gal of water and 50 oz of salt. Water containing a salt concentration of $\frac{1}{4}\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\sin t\right)$ oz/gal flows into the tank at a rate of 2 gal/min, and the mixture in the tank flows out at the same rate.

a. Find the amount of salt in the tank at any time.

G **b.** Plot the solution for a time period long enough so that you see the ultimate behavior of the graph.

c. The long-time behavior of the solution is an oscillation about a certain constant level. What is this level? What is the amplitude of the oscillation?

4. Suppose that a tank containing a certain liquid has an outlet near the bottom. Let $h(t)$ be the height of the liquid surface above the outlet at time t. Torricelli's[2] principle states that the outflow velocity v at the outlet is equal to the velocity of a particle falling freely (with no drag) from the height h.

a. Show that $v = \sqrt{2gh}$, where g is the acceleration due to gravity.

b. By equating the rate of outflow to the rate of change of liquid in the tank, show that $h(t)$ satisfies the equation

$$A(h)\frac{dh}{dt} = -\alpha a\sqrt{2gh}, \qquad (34)$$

where $A(h)$ is the area of the cross section of the tank at height h and a is the area of the outlet. The constant α is a contraction coefficient that accounts for the observed fact that the cross section of the (smooth) outflow stream is smaller than a. The value of α for water is about 0.6.

c. Consider a water tank in the form of a right circular cylinder that is 3 m high above the outlet. The radius of the tank is 1 m, and the radius of the circular outlet is 0.1 m. If the tank is initially full of water, determine how long it takes to drain the tank down to the level of the outlet.

5. Suppose that a sum S_0 is invested at an annual rate of return r compounded continuously.

a. Find the time T required for the original sum to double in value as a function of r.

b. Determine T if $r = 7\%$.

c. Find the return rate that must be achieved if the initial investment is to double in 8 years.

6. A young person with no initial capital invests k dollars per year at an annual rate of return r. Assume that investments are made continuously and that the return is compounded continuously.

a. Determine the sum $S(t)$ accumulated at any time t.

b. If $r = 7.5\%$, determine k so that \$1 million will be available for retirement in 40 years.

c. If $k = \$2000$/year, determine the return rate r that must be obtained to have \$1 million available in 40 years.

[2] Evangelista Torricelli (1608–1647), successor to Galileo as court mathematician in Florence, published this result in 1644. In addition to this work in fluid dynamics, he is also known for constructing the first mercury barometer and for making important contributions to geometry.

7. A certain college graduate borrows \$8000 to buy a car. The lender charges interest at an annual rate of 10%. Assuming that interest is compounded continuously and that the borrower makes payments continuously at a constant annual rate k, determine the payment rate k that is required to pay off the loan in 3 years. Also determine how much interest is paid during the 3-year period.

N **8.** A recent college graduate borrows \$150,000 at an interest rate of 6% to purchase a condominium. Anticipating steady salary increases, the buyer expects to make payments at a monthly rate of $800 + 10t$, where t is the number of months since the loan was made.

a. Assuming that this payment schedule can be maintained, when will the loan be fully paid?

b. Assuming the same payment schedule, how large a loan could be paid off in exactly 20 years?

9. An important tool in archeological research is radiocarbon dating, developed by the American chemist Willard F. Libby.[3] This is a means of determining the age of certain wood and plant remains, and hence of animal or human bones or artifacts found buried at the same levels. Radiocarbon dating is based on the fact that some wood or plant remains contain residual amounts of carbon-14, a radioactive isotope of carbon. This isotope is accumulated during the lifetime of the plant and begins to decay at its death. Since the half-life of carbon-14 is long (approximately 5730 years),[4] measurable amounts of carbon-14 remain after many thousands of years. If even a tiny fraction of the original amount of carbon-14 is still present, then by appropriate laboratory measurements the *proportion* of the original amount of carbon-14 that remains can be accurately determined. In other words, if $Q(t)$ is the amount of carbon-14 at time t and Q_0 is the original amount, then the ratio $Q(t)/Q_0$ can be determined, as long as this quantity is not too small. Present measurement techniques permit the use of this method for time periods of 50,000 years or more.

a. Assuming that Q satisfies the differential equation $Q' = -rQ$, determine the decay constant r for carbon-14.

b. Find an expression for $Q(t)$ at any time t, if $Q(0) = Q_0$.

c. Suppose that certain remains are discovered in which the current residual amount of carbon-14 is 20% of the original amount. Determine the age of these remains.

N **10.** Suppose that a certain population has a growth rate that varies with time and that this population satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = (0.5 + \sin t)\frac{y}{5}.$$

a. If $y(0) = 1$, find (or estimate) the time τ at which the population has doubled. Choose other initial conditions and determine whether the doubling time τ depends on the initial population.

b. Suppose that the growth rate is replaced by its average value $1/10$. Determine the doubling time τ in this case.

c. Suppose that the term $\sin t$ in the differential equation is replaced by $\sin 2\pi t$; that is, the variation in the growth rate has a substantially higher frequency. What effect does this have on the doubling time τ?

d. Plot the solutions obtained in parts a, b, and c on a single set of axes.

[3]Willard F. Libby (1908–1980) was born in rural Colorado and received his education at the University of California at Berkeley. He developed the method of radiocarbon dating beginning in 1947 while he was at the University of Chicago. For this work he was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1960.

[4]*McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of Science and Technology* (8th ed.) (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1997), Vol. 5, p. 48.

N **11.** Suppose that a certain population satisfies the initial value problem

$$dy/dt = r(t)y - k, \quad y(0) = y_0,$$

where the growth rate $r(t)$ is given by $r(t) = (1 + \sin t)/5$, and k represents the rate of predation.

G **a.** Suppose that $k = 1/5$. Plot y versus t for several values of y_0 between $1/2$ and 1.

b. Estimate the critical initial population y_c below which the population will become extinct.

c. Choose other values of k and find the corresponding y_c for each one.

G **d.** Use the data you have found in parts b and c to plot y_c versus k.

12. Newton's law of cooling states that the temperature of an object changes at a rate proportional to the difference between its temperature and that of its surroundings. Suppose that the temperature of a cup of coffee obeys Newton's law of cooling. If the coffee has a temperature of 200°F when freshly poured, and 1 min later has cooled to 190°F in a room at 70°F, determine when the coffee reaches a temperature of 150°F.

13. Heat transfer from a body to its surroundings by radiation, based on the Stefan–Boltzmann[5] law, is described by the differential equation

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\alpha(u^4 - T^4), \tag{35}$$

where $u(t)$ is the absolute temperature of the body at time t, T is the absolute temperature of the surroundings, and α is a constant depending on the physical parameters of the body. However, if u is much larger than T, then solutions of equation (35) are well approximated by solutions of the simpler equation

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\alpha u^4. \tag{36}$$

Suppose that a body with initial temperature 2000 K is surrounded by a medium with temperature 300 K and that $\alpha = 2.0 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{K}^{-3}/\mathrm{s}$.

a. Determine the temperature of the body at any time by solving equation (36).

G **b.** Plot the graph of u versus t.

N **c.** Find the time τ at which $u(\tau) = 600$—that is, twice the ambient temperature. Up to this time the error in using equation (36) to approximate the solutions of equation (35) is no more than 1%.

N **14.** Consider an insulated box (a building, perhaps) with internal temperature $u(t)$. According to Newton's law of cooling, u satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -k(u - T(t)), \tag{37}$$

where $T(t)$ is the ambient (external) temperature. Suppose that $T(t)$ varies sinusoidally; for example, assume that $T(t) = T_0 + T_1\cos(\omega t)$.

[5]Jozef Stefan (1835–1893), professor of physics at Vienna, stated the radiation law on empirical grounds in 1879. His student Ludwig Boltzmann (1844–1906) derived it theoretically from the principles of thermodynamics in 1884. Boltzmann is best known for his pioneering work in statistical mechanics.

a. Solve equation (37) and express $u(t)$ in terms of t, k, T_0, T_1, and ω. Observe that part of your solution approaches zero as t becomes large; this is called the transient part. The remainder of the solution is called the steady state; denote it by $S(t)$.

G **b.** Suppose that t is measured in hours and that $\omega = \pi/12$, corresponding to a period of 24 h for $T(t)$. Further, let $T_0 = 60°\text{F}$, $T_1 = 15°\text{F}$, and $k = 0.2/\text{h}$. Draw graphs of $S(t)$ and $T(t)$ versus t on the same axes. From your graph estimate the amplitude R of the oscillatory part of $S(t)$. Also estimate the time lag τ between corresponding maxima of $T(t)$ and $S(t)$.

c. Let k, T_0, T_1, and ω now be unspecified. Write the oscillatory part of $S(t)$ in the form $R\cos(\omega(t-\tau))$. Use trigonometric identities to find expressions for R and τ. Let T_1 and ω have the values given in part b, and plot graphs of R and τ versus k.

15. Consider a lake of constant volume V containing at time t an amount $Q(t)$ of pollutant, evenly distributed throughout the lake with a concentration $c(t)$, where $c(t) = Q(t)/V$. Assume that water containing a concentration k of pollutant enters the lake at a rate r, and that water leaves the lake at the same rate. Suppose that pollutants are also added directly to the lake at a constant rate P. Note that the given assumptions neglect a number of factors that may, in some cases, be important—for example, the water added or lost by precipitation, absorption, and evaporation; the stratifying effect of temperature differences in a deep lake; the tendency of irregularities in the coastline to produce sheltered bays; and the fact that pollutants are deposited unevenly throughout the lake but (usually) at isolated points around its periphery. The results below must be interpreted in light of the neglect of such factors as these.

a. If at time $t = 0$ the concentration of pollutant is c_0, find an expression for the concentration $c(t)$ at any time. What is the limiting concentration as $t \to \infty$?

b. If the addition of pollutants to the lake is terminated ($k = 0$ and $P = 0$ for $t > 0$), determine the time interval T that must elapse before the concentration of pollutants is reduced to 50% of its original value; to 10% of its original value.

c. Table 2.3.2 contains data[6] for several of the Great Lakes. Using these data, determine from part b the time T that is needed to reduce the contamination of each of these lakes to 10% of the original value.

TABLE 2.3.2 Volume and Flow Data for the Great Lakes

Lake	$10^3 \times V$ (km^3)	r (km^3/year)
Superior	12.2	65.2
Michigan	4.9	158
Erie	0.46	175
Ontario	1.6	209

N **16.** A ball with mass 0.15 kg is thrown upward with initial velocity 20 m/s from the roof of a building 30 m high. Neglect air resistance.

a. Find the maximum height above the ground that the ball reaches.

b. Assuming that the ball misses the building on the way down, find the time that it hits the ground.

G **c.** Plot the graphs of velocity and position versus time.

[6] This problem is based on R. H. Rainey, "Natural Displacement of Pollution from the Great Lakes," *Science 155* (1967), pp. 1242–1243; the information in the table was taken from that source.

N **17.** Assume that the conditions are as in Problem 16 except that there is a force due to air resistance of magnitude $|v|/30$ directed opposite to the velocity, where the velocity v is measured in m/s.

a. Find the maximum height above the ground that the ball reaches.

b. Find the time that the ball hits the ground.

G **c.** Plot the graphs of velocity and position versus time. Compare these graphs with the corresponding ones in Problem 16.

N **18.** Assume that the conditions are as in Problem 16 except that there is a force due to air resistance of magnitude $v^2/1325$ directed opposite to the velocity, where the velocity v is measured in m/s.

a. Find the maximum height above the ground that the ball reaches.

b. Find the time that the ball hits the ground.

G **c.** Plot the graphs of velocity and position versus time. Compare these graphs with the corresponding ones in Problems 16 and 17.

19. A body of constant mass m is projected vertically upward with an initial velocity v_0 in a medium offering a resistance $k|v|$, where k is a constant. Neglect changes in the gravitational force.

a. Find the maximum height x_m attained by the body and the time t_m at which this maximum height is reached.

b. Show that if $kv_0/mg < 1$, then t_m and x_m can be expressed as

$$t_m = \frac{v_0}{g}\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\frac{kv_0}{mg} + \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{kv_0}{mg}\right)^2 - \cdots\right),$$

$$x_m = \frac{v_0^2}{2g}\left(1 - \frac{2}{3}\frac{kv_0}{mg} + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{kv_0}{mg}\right)^2 - \cdots\right).$$

c. Show that the quantity kv_0/mg is dimensionless.

20. A body of mass m is projected vertically upward with an initial velocity v_0 in a medium offering a resistance $k|v|$, where k is a constant. Assume that the gravitational attraction of the earth is constant.

a. Find the velocity $v(t)$ of the body at any time.

b. Use the result of part a to calculate the limit of $v(t)$ as $k \to 0$—that is, as the resistance approaches zero. Does this result agree with the velocity of a mass m projected upward with an initial velocity v_0 in a vacuum?

c. Use the result of part a to calculate the limit of $v(t)$ as $m \to 0$—that is, as the mass approaches zero.

21. A body falling in a relatively dense fluid, oil for example, is acted on by three forces (see Figure 2.3.5): a resistive force R, a buoyant force B, and its weight w due to gravity. The buoyant force is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the object. For a slowly moving spherical body of radius a, the resistive force is given by Stokes's law, $R = 6\pi\mu a|v|$, where v is the velocity of the body, and μ is the coefficient of viscosity of the surrounding fluid.[7]

[7] Sir George Gabriel Stokes (1819–1903) was born in Ireland but spent most of his life at Cambridge University, first as a student and later as a professor. Stokes was one of the foremost applied mathematicians of the nineteenth century, best known for his work in fluid dynamics and the wave theory of light. The basic equations of fluid mechanics (the Navier–Stokes equations) are named partly in his honor, and one of the fundamental theorems of vector calculus bears his name. He was also one of the pioneers in the use of divergent (asymptotic) series.

a. Find the limiting velocity of a solid sphere of radius a and density ρ falling freely in a medium of density ρ' and coefficient of viscosity μ.
b. In 1910 R. A. Millikan[8] studied the motion of tiny droplets of oil falling in an electric field. A field of strength E exerts a force Ee on a droplet with charge e. Assume that E has been adjusted so the droplet is held stationary ($v = 0$) and that w and B are as given above. Find an expression for e. Millikan repeated this experiment many times, and from the data that he gathered he was able to deduce the charge on an electron.

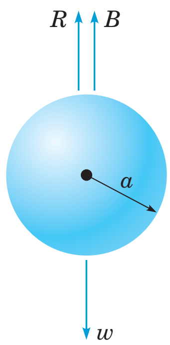


FIGURE 2.3.5 A body falling in a dense fluid (see Problem 21).

22. Let $v(t)$ and $w(t)$ be the horizontal and vertical components, respectively, of the velocity of a batted (or thrown) baseball. In the absence of air resistance, v and w satisfy the equations

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = 0, \qquad \frac{dw}{dt} = -g.$$

a. Show that

$$v = u\cos A, \qquad w = -gt + u\sin A,$$

where u is the initial speed of the ball and A is its initial angle of elevation.
b. Let $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ be the horizontal and vertical coordinates, respectively, of the ball at time t. If $x(0) = 0$ and $y(0) = h$, find $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ at any time t.
G **c.** Let $g = 32$ ft/s^2, $u = 125$ ft/s, and $h = 3$ ft. Plot the trajectory of the ball for several values of the angle A; that is, plot $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ parametrically.
d. Suppose the outfield wall is at a distance L and has height H. Find a relation between u and A that must be satisfied if the ball is to clear the wall.
e. Suppose that $L = 350$ ft and $H = 10$ ft. Using the relation in part (d), find (or estimate from a plot) the range of values of A that correspond to an initial velocity of $u = 110$ ft/s.
f. For $L = 350$ and $H = 10$, find the minimum initial velocity u and the corresponding optimal angle A for which the ball will clear the wall.

N **23.** A more realistic model (than that in Problem 22) of a baseball in flight includes the effect of air resistance. In this case the equations of motion are

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = -rv, \qquad \frac{dw}{dt} = -g - rw,$$

where r is the coefficient of resistance.

a. Determine $v(t)$ and $w(t)$ in terms of initial speed u and initial angle of elevation A.
b. Find $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ if $x(0) = 0$ and $y(0) = h$.
G **c.** Plot the trajectory of the ball for $r = 1/5$, $u = 125$, $h = 3$, and for several values of A. How do the trajectories differ from those in Problem 22 with $r = 0$?
d. Assuming that $r = 1/5$ and $h = 3$, find the minimum initial velocity u and the optimal angle A for which the ball will clear a wall that is 350 ft distant and 10 ft high. Compare this result with that in Problem 22f.

24. Brachistochrone Problem. One of the famous problems in the history of mathematics is the brachistochrone[9] problem: to find the curve along which a particle will slide without friction in the minimum time from one given point P to another Q, the second point being lower than the first but not directly beneath it (see Figure 2.3.6). This problem was posed by Johann Bernoulli in 1696 as a challenge problem to the mathematicians of his day. Correct solutions were found by Johann Bernoulli and his brother Jakob Bernoulli and by Isaac Newton, Gottfried Leibniz, and the Marquis de L'Hôpital. The brachistochrone problem is important in the development of mathematics as one of the forerunners of the calculus of variations.

In solving this problem, it is convenient to take the origin as the upper point P and to orient the axes as shown in Figure 2.3.6. The lower point Q has coordinates (x_0, y_0). It is then possible to show that the curve of minimum time is given by a function $y = \phi(x)$ that satisfies the differential equation

$$(1 + y'^2)y = k^2, \tag{38}$$

where k^2 is a certain positive constant to be determined later.
a. Solve equation (38) for y'. Why is it necessary to choose the positive square root?
b. Introduce the new variable t by the relation

$$y = k^2 \sin^2 t. \tag{39}$$

Show that the equation found in part a then takes the form

$$2k^2 \sin^2 t \, dt = dx. \tag{40}$$

c. Letting $\theta = 2t$, show that the solution of equation (40) for which $x = 0$ when $y = 0$ is given by

$$x = k^2(\theta - \sin\theta)/2, \qquad y = k^2(1 - \cos\theta)/2. \tag{41}$$

Equations (41) are parametric equations of the solution of equation (38) that passes through $(0, 0)$. The graph of equations (41) is called a **cycloid**.
d. If we make a proper choice of the constant k, then the cycloid also passes through the point (x_0, y_0) and is the solution of the brachistochrone problem. Find k if $x_0 = 1$ and $y_0 = 2$.

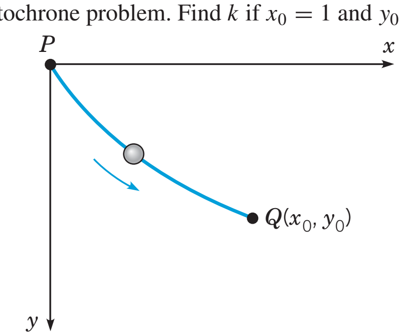


FIGURE 2.3.6 The brachistochrone (see Problem 24).

[8] Robert A. Millikan (1868–1953) was educated at Oberlin College and Columbia University. Later he was a professor at the University of Chicago and California Institute of Technology. His determination of the charge on an electron was published in 1910. For this work, and for other studies of the photoelectric effect, he was awarded the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1923.

[9] The word "brachistochrone" comes from the Greek words *brachistos*, meaning shortest, and *chronos*, meaning time.

2.4 Differences Between Linear and Nonlinear Differential Equations

Up to now, we have been primarily concerned with showing that first-order differential equations can be used to investigate many different kinds of problems in the natural sciences, and with presenting methods of solving such equations if they are either linear or separable. Now it is time to turn our attention to some more general questions about differential equations and to explore in more detail some important ways in which nonlinear equations differ from linear ones.

Existence and Uniqueness of Solutions. So far, we have discussed a number of initial value problems, each of which had a solution and apparently only one solution. That raises the question of whether this is true of all initial value problems for first-order equations. In other words, does every initial value problem have exactly one solution? This may be an important question even for nonmathematicians. If you encounter an initial value problem in the course of investigating some physical problem, you might want to know that it has a solution before spending very much time and effort in trying to find it. Further, if you are successful in finding one solution, you might be interested in knowing whether you should continue a search for other possible solutions or whether you can be sure that there are no other solutions. For linear equations, the answers to these questions are given by the following fundamental theorem.

Theorem 2.4.1 | Existence and Uniqueness Theorem for First-Order Linear Equations

If the functions p and g are continuous on an open interval $I: \alpha < t < \beta$ containing the point $t = t_0$, then there exists a unique function $y = \phi(t)$ that satisfies the differential equation

$$y' + p(t)y = g(t) \tag{1}$$

for each t in I, and that also satisfies the initial condition

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \tag{2}$$

where y_0 is an arbitrary prescribed initial value.

Observe that Theorem 2.4.1 states that the given initial value problem *has* a solution and also that the problem has *only one* solution. In other words, the theorem asserts both the *existence* and the *uniqueness* of the solution of the initial value problem (1). In addition, it states that the solution exists throughout any interval I containing the initial point t_0 in which the coefficients p and g are continuous. That is, the solution can be discontinuous or fail to exist only at points where at least one of p and g is discontinuous. Such points can often be identified at a glance.

The proof of this theorem is partly contained in the discussion in Section 2.1 leading to the formula (see equation (32) in Section 2.1)

$$\mu(t)y = \int \mu(t)g(t)\,dt + c, \tag{3}$$

where [equation (30) in Section 2.1]

$$\mu(t) = \exp \int p(t)\,dt. \tag{4}$$

The derivation in Section 2.1 shows that if equation (1) has a solution, then it must be given by equation (3). By looking slightly more closely at that derivation, we can also conclude that the differential equation (1) must indeed have a solution. Since p is continuous for $\alpha < t < \beta$, it follows that on the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$, μ is defined, is a differentiable function, and is nonzero. Upon multiplying equation (1) by $\mu(t)$, we obtain

$$(\mu(t)y)' = \mu(t)g(t). \tag{5}$$

Since both μ and g are continuous, the function μg is integrable, and equation (3) follows from equation (5). Further, the integral of μg is differentiable, so y as given by equation (3) exists and is differentiable throughout the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$. By substituting the expression for y from equation (3) into either equation (1) or equation (5), you can verify that this expression satisfies the differential equation throughout the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$. Finally, the initial condition (2) determines the constant c uniquely, so there is only one solution of the initial value problem; this completes the proof.

Equation (4) determines the integrating factor $\mu(t)$ only up to a multiplicative factor that depends on the lower limit of integration. If we choose this lower limit to be t_0, then

$$\mu(t) = \exp \int_{t_0}^{t} p(s)\,ds, \tag{6}$$

and it follows that $\mu(t_0) = 1$. Using the integrating factor given by equation (6), and choosing the lower limit of integration in equation (3) also to be t_0, we obtain the general solution of equation (1) in the form

$$y = \frac{1}{\mu(t)}\left(\int_{t_0}^{t} \mu(s)g(s)\,ds + c\right). \tag{7}$$

To satisfy the initial condition (2), we must choose $c = y_0$. Thus the solution of the initial value problem (1) is

$$y = \frac{1}{\mu(t)}\left(\int_{t_0}^{t} \mu(s)g(s)\,ds + y_0\right), \tag{8}$$

where $\mu(t)$ is given by equation (6).

Turning now to nonlinear differential equations, we must replace Theorem 2.4.1 by a more general theorem, such as the one that follows.

Theorem 2.4.2 | Existence and Uniqueness Theorem for First-Order Nonlinear Equations

Let the functions f and $\partial f/\partial y$ be continuous in some rectangle $\alpha < t < \beta, \gamma < y < \delta$ containing the point (t_0, y_0). Then, in some interval $t_0 - h < t < t_0 + h$ contained in $\alpha < t < \beta$, there is a unique solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the initial value problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{9}$$

Observe that the hypotheses in Theorem 2.4.2 reduce to those in Theorem 2.4.1 if the differential equation is linear. In this case

$$f(t, y) = -p(t)y + g(t) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial f(t, y)}{\partial y} = -p(t),$$

so the continuity of f and $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}$ is equivalent to the continuity of p and g.

The proof of Theorem 2.4.1 was comparatively simple because it could be based on the expression (3) that gives the solution of an arbitrary linear equation. There is no corresponding expression for the solution of the differential equation (9), so the proof of Theorem 2.4.2 is much more difficult. It is discussed to some extent in Section 2.8 and in greater depth in more advanced books on differential equations.

We note that the conditions stated in Theorem 2.4.2 are sufficient to guarantee the existence of a unique solution of the initial value problem (6) in some interval $(t_0 - h, t_0 + h)$, but they are not necessary. That is, the conclusion remains true under slightly weaker hypotheses about the function f. In fact, the existence of a solution (but not its uniqueness) can be established on the basis of the continuity of f alone.

An important geometrical consequence of the uniqueness parts of Theorems 2.4.1 and 2.4.2 is that the graphs of two solutions cannot intersect each other. Otherwise, there would be two solutions that satisfy the initial condition corresponding to the point of intersection, in contradiction to Theorem 2.4.1 or 2.4.2.

We now consider some examples.

EXAMPLE 1

Use Theorem 2.4.1 to find an interval in which the initial value problem

$$ty' + 2y = 4t^2, \tag{10}$$

$$y(1) = 2 \tag{11}$$

has a unique solution. Then do the same when the initial condition is changed to $y(-1) = 2$.

Solution:

Rewriting equation (10) in the standard form (1), we have

$$y' + (2/t)y = 4t,$$

so $p(t) = 2/t$ and $g(t) = 4t$. Thus, for this equation, g is continuous for all t, while p is continuous only for $t < 0$ or for $t > 0$. The interval $t > 0$ contains the initial point; consequently, Theorem 2.4.1 guarantees that the problem (7), (8) has a unique solution on the interval $0 < t < \infty$. In Example 4 of Section 2.1 we found the solution of this initial value problem to be

$$y = t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}, \quad t > 0. \tag{12}$$

Now suppose that the initial condition (11) is changed to $y(-1) = 2$. Then Theorem 2.4.1 asserts the existence of a unique solution for $t < 0$. As you can readily verify, the solution is again given by equation (12), but now on the interval $t < 0$.

EXAMPLE 2

Apply Theorem 2.4.2 to the initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3x^2 + 4x + 2}{2(y-1)}, \quad y(0) = -1. \tag{13}$$

Repeat this analysis when the initial condition is changed to $y(0) = 1$.

Solution:

Note that Theorem 2.4.1 is not applicable to this problem since the differential equation is nonlinear. To apply Theorem 2.4.2, observe that

$$f(x, y) = \frac{3x^2 + 4x + 2}{2(y-1)}, \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = -\frac{3x^2 + 4x + 2}{2(y-1)^2}.$$

Thus each of these functions is continuous everywhere except on the line $y = 1$. Consequently, a rectangle can be drawn about the initial point $(0, -1)$ in which both f and $\partial f/\partial y$ are continuous. Therefore, Theorem 2.4.2 guarantees that the initial value problem has a unique solution in some interval about $x = 0$. However, even though the rectangle can be stretched infinitely far in both the positive and the negative x directions, this does not necessarily mean that the solution exists for all x. Indeed, the initial value problem (9) was solved in Example 2 of Section 2.2, and the solution exists only for $x > -2$.

Now suppose we change the initial condition to $y(0) = 1$. The initial point now lies on the line $y = 1$, so no rectangle can be drawn about it within which f and $\partial f/\partial y$ are continuous. Consequently, Theorem 2.4.2 says nothing about possible solutions of this modified problem. However, if we separate the variables and integrate, as in Section 2.2, we find that

$$y^2 - 2y = x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + c.$$

Further, if $x = 0$ and $y = 1$, then $c = -1$. Finally, by solving for y, we obtain

$$y = 1 \pm \sqrt{x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x}. \tag{14}$$

Equation (14) provides two functions that satisfy the given differential equation for $x > 0$ and also satisfy the initial condition $y(0) = 1$. The fact that there are two solutions to this initial value problem reinforces the conclusion that Theorem 2.4.2 does not apply to this initial value problem.

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = y^{1/3}, \quad y(0) = 0 \tag{15}$$

for $t \geq 0$. Apply Theorem 2.4.2 to this initial value problem and then solve the problem.

Solution:

The function $f(t, y) = y^{1/3}$ is continuous everywhere, but $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \dfrac{1}{3}y^{-2/3}$ does not exist when $y = 0$, and hence it is not continuous there. Thus Theorem 2.4.2 does not apply to this problem, and no conclusion can be drawn from it. However, by the remark following Theorem 2.4.2, the continuity of f does ensure the existence of solutions, though not their uniqueness.

To understand the situation more clearly, we must actually solve the problem, which is easy to do since the differential equation is separable. Thus we have

$$y^{-1/3}dy = dt,$$

so

$$\frac{3}{2}y^{2/3} = t + c$$

and

$$y = \left(\frac{2}{3}(t + c)\right)^{3/2}.$$

The initial condition is satisfied if $c = 0$, so

$$y = \phi_1(t) = \left(\frac{2}{3}t\right)^{3/2}, \quad t \geq 0 \tag{16}$$

satisfies both of equations (15). On the other hand, the function

$$y = \phi_2(t) = -\left(\frac{2}{3}t\right)^{3/2}, \quad t \geq 0 \tag{17}$$

is also a solution of the initial value problem. Moreover, the function

$$y = \psi(t) = 0, \quad t \geq 0 \tag{18}$$

is yet another solution. Indeed, for an arbitrary positive t_0, the functions

$$y = \chi(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } 0 \leq t < t_0, \\ \pm\left(\frac{2}{3}(t - t_0)\right)^{3/2}, & \text{if } t \geq t_0 \end{cases} \tag{19}$$

are continuous, are differentiable (in particular at $t = t_0$), and are solutions of the initial value problem (11). Hence this problem has an infinite family of solutions; see Figure 2.4.1, where a few of these solutions are shown.

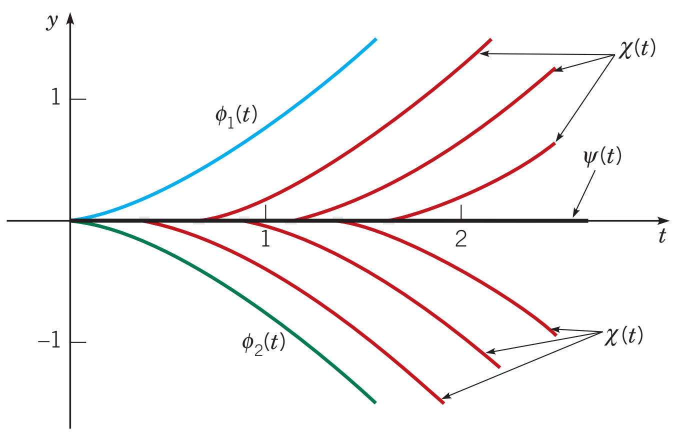


FIGURE 2.4.1 Several solutions of the initial value problem $y' = y^{1/3}$, $y(0) = 0$.

As already noted, the nonuniqueness of the solutions of the problem (11) does not contradict the existence and uniqueness theorem, since Theorem 2.4.2 is not applicable if the initial point lies on the t-axis. If (t_0, y_0) is any point not on the t-axis, however, then the theorem guarantees that there is a unique solution of the differential equation $y' = y^{1/3}$ passing through (t_0, y_0).

Interval of Existence. According to Theorem 2.4.1, the solution of a linear equation (1)

$$y' + p(t)y = g(t),$$

subject to the initial condition $y(t_0) = y_0$, exists throughout any interval about $t = t_0$ in which the functions p and g are continuous. Thus vertical asymptotes or other discontinuities in the solution can occur only at points of discontinuity of p or g. For instance, the solutions in Example 1 (with one exception) are asymptotic to the y-axis, corresponding to the discontinuity at $t = 0$ in the coefficient $p(t) = 2/t$, but none of the solutions has any other point where it fails to exist and to be differentiable. The one exceptional solution shows that solutions may sometimes remain continuous even at points of discontinuity of the coefficients.

On the other hand, for a nonlinear initial value problem satisfying the hypotheses of Theorem 2.4.2, the interval in which a solution exists may be difficult to determine. The solution $y = \phi(t)$ is certain to exist as long as the point $(t, \phi(t))$ remains within a region in which the hypotheses of Theorem 2.4.2 are satisfied. This is what determines the value of h in that theorem. However, since $\phi(t)$ is usually not known, it may be impossible to locate the point $(t, \phi(t))$ with respect to this region. In any case, the interval in which a solution exists may have no simple relationship to the function f in the differential equation $y' = f(t, y)$. This is illustrated by the following example.

EXAMPLE 4

Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = y^2, \quad y(0) = 1, \tag{20}$$

and determine the interval in which the solution exists.

Solution:

Theorem 2.4.2 guarantees that this problem has a unique solution since $f(t, y) = y^2$ and $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2y$ are continuous everywhere. To find the solution, we separate the variables and integrate with the result that

$$y^{-2}\,dy = dt \tag{21}$$

and

$$-y^{-1} = t + c.$$

Then, solving for y, we have

$$y = -\frac{1}{t+c}. \tag{22}$$

To satisfy the initial condition, we must choose $c = -1$, so

$$y = \frac{1}{1-t} \tag{23}$$

is the solution of the given initial value problem. Clearly, the solution becomes unbounded as $t \to 1$; therefore, the solution exists only in the interval $-\infty < t < 1$. There is no indication from the differential equation itself, however, that the point $t = 1$ is in any way remarkable. Moreover, if the initial condition is replaced by

$$y(0) = y_0, \tag{24}$$

then the constant c in equation (22) must be chosen to be $c = -1/y_0$ $(y_0 \neq 0)$, and it follows that

$$y = \frac{y_0}{1 - y_0 t} \tag{25}$$

is the solution of the initial value problem with the initial condition (24). Observe that the solution (25) becomes unbounded as $t \to 1/y_0$, so the interval of existence of the solution is $-\infty < t < 1/y_0$ if $y_0 > 0$, and is $1/y_0 < t < \infty$ if $y_0 < 0$. This example illustrates another feature of initial value problems for nonlinear equations: the singularities of the solution may depend in an essential way on the initial conditions as well as on the differential equation.

General Solution. Another way in which linear and nonlinear equations differ concerns the concept of a general solution. For a first-order linear differential equation it is possible to obtain a solution containing one arbitrary constant, from which all possible solutions follow by specifying values for this constant. For nonlinear equations this may not be the case; even though a solution containing an arbitrary constant may be found, there may be other solutions that cannot be obtained by giving values to this constant. For instance, for the differential equation $y' = y^2$ in Example 4, the expression in equation (22) contains an arbitrary constant but does not include all solutions of the differential equation. To show this, observe that the function $y = 0$ for all t is certainly a solution of the differential equation, but it cannot be obtained from equation (22) by assigning a value to c. In this example we might anticipate that something of this sort might happen, because to rewrite the original differential equation in the form (21), we must require that y is not zero. However, the existence of "additional" solutions is not uncommon for nonlinear equations; a less obvious example is given in Problem 18. Thus we will use the term "general solution" only when discussing linear equations.

Implicit Solutions. Recall again that for an initial value problem for a first-order linear differential equation, equation (8) provides an explicit formula for the solution $y = \phi(t)$. As long as the necessary antiderivatives can be found, the value of the solution at any point can be determined merely by substituting the appropriate value of t into the equation. The situation for nonlinear equations is much less satisfactory. Usually, the best that we can hope for is to find an equation

$$F(t, y) = 0 \tag{26}$$

involving t and y that is satisfied by the solution $y = \phi(t)$. Even this can be done only for differential equations of certain particular types, of which separable equations are the most important. The equation (26) is called an integral, or first integral, of the differential equation, and (as we have already noted) its graph is an integral curve, or perhaps a family of integral curves. Equation (26), assuming it can be found, defines the solution implicitly; that is, for each value of t we must solve equation (26) to find the corresponding value of y. If equation (26) is simple enough, it may be possible to solve it for y by analytical means and thereby obtain an explicit formula for the solution. However, more frequently this will not be possible, and you will have to resort to a numerical calculation to determine (approximately) the value of y for a given value of t. Once several pairs of values of t and y have been calculated, it is often helpful to plot them and then to sketch the integral curve that passes through them. You should take advantage of the wide range of computational and graphical utilities available to carry out these calculations and to create the graph of one or more integral curves.

Examples 2, 3, and 4 involve nonlinear problems in which it is easy to solve for an explicit formula for the solution $y = \phi(t)$. On the other hand, Examples 1 and 3 in Section 2.2 are cases in which it is better to leave the solution in implicit form and to use numerical means to evaluate it for particular values of the independent variable. The latter situation is more typical; unless the implicit relation is quadratic in y or has some other particularly simple form, it is unlikely that it can be solved exactly by analytical methods. Indeed, more often than not, it is impossible even to find an implicit expression for the solution of a first-order nonlinear equation.

Graphical or Numerical Construction of Integral Curves. Because of the difficulty in obtaining exact analytical solutions of nonlinear differential equations, methods that yield approximate solutions or other qualitative information about solutions are of correspondingly greater importance. We have already described, in Section 1.1, how the direction field of a differential equation can be constructed. The direction field can often show the qualitative form of solutions and can also be helpful in identifying regions of the ty-plane where solutions exhibit interesting features that merit more detailed analytical or numerical investigation. Graphical methods for first-order differential equations are discussed further in Section 2.5.

An introduction to numerical methods for first-order equations is given in Section 2.7, and a systematic discussion of numerical methods appears in Chapter 8. However, it is not necessary to study the numerical algorithms themselves in order to use effectively one of the many software packages that generate and plot numerical approximations to solutions of initial value problems.

Summary. The linear equation $y' + p(t)y = g(t)$ has several nice properties that can be summarized in the following statements:

1. Assuming that the coefficients are continuous, there is a general solution, containing an arbitrary constant, that includes all solutions of the differential equation. A particular solution that satisfies a given initial condition can be picked out by choosing the proper value for the arbitrary constant.
2. There is an expression for the solution, namely, equation (7) or equation (8). Moreover, although it involves two integrations, the expression is an explicit one for the solution $y = \phi(t)$ rather than an equation that defines ϕ implicitly.
3. The possible points of discontinuity, or singularities, of the solution can be identified (without solving the problem) merely by finding the points of discontinuity of the coefficients. Thus, if the coefficients are continuous for all t, then the solution also exists and is differentiable for all t.

None of these statements are true, in general, of nonlinear equations. Although a nonlinear equation may well have a solution involving an arbitrary constant, there may also be other solutions. There is no general formula for solutions of nonlinear equations. If you are able to integrate a nonlinear equation, you are likely to obtain an equation defining solutions implicitly rather than explicitly. Finally, the singularities of solutions of nonlinear equations can usually be found only by solving the equation and examining the solution. It is likely that the singularities will depend on the initial condition as well as on the differential equation.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, determine (without solving the problem) an interval in which the solution of the given initial value problem is certain to exist.

1. $(t-3)y' + (\ln t)y = 2t, \quad y(1) = 2$

2. $y' + (\tan t)y = \sin t, \quad y(\pi) = 0$

3. $(4-t^2)y' + 2ty = 3t^2, \quad y(-3) = 1$

4. $(\ln t)y' + y = \cot t, \quad y(2) = 3$

In each of Problems 5 through 8, state where in the ty-plane the hypotheses of Theorem 2.4.2 are satisfied.

5. $y' = (1 - t^2 - y^2)^{1/2}$

6. $y' = \dfrac{\ln|ty|}{1 - t^2 + y^2}$

7. $y' = (t^2 + y^2)^{3/2}$

8. $y' = \dfrac{1 + t^2}{3y - y^2}$

In each of Problems 9 through 12, solve the given initial value problem and determine how the interval in which the solution exists depends on the initial value y_0.

9. $y' = -4t/y, \quad y(0) = y_0$

10. $y' = 2ty^2, \quad y(0) = y_0$

11. $y' + y^3 = 0, \quad y(0) = y_0$

12. $y' = \dfrac{t^2}{y(1+t^3)}, \quad y(0) = y_0$

In each of Problems 13 through 16, draw a direction field and plot (or sketch) several solutions of the given differential equation. Describe how solutions appear to behave as t increases and how their behavior depends on the initial value y_0 when $t = 0$.

G **13.** $y' = ty(3 - y)$

G **14.** $y' = y(3 - ty)$

G **15.** $y' = -y(3 - ty)$

G **16.** $y' = t - 1 - y^2$

17. Consider the initial value problem $y' = y^{1/3}$, $y(0) = 0$ from Example 3 in the text.

a. Is there a solution that passes through the point $(1, 1)$? If so, find it.

b. Is there a solution that passes through the point $(2, 1)$? If so, find it.

c. Consider all possible solutions of the given initial value problem. Determine the set of values that these solutions have at $t = 2$.

18. **a.** Verify that both $y_1(t) = 1 - t$ and $y_2(t) = -t^2/4$ are solutions of the initial value problem

$$y' = \frac{-t + \sqrt{t^2 + 4y}}{2}, \quad y(2) = -1.$$

Where are these solutions valid?

b. Explain why the existence of two solutions of the given problem does not contradict the uniqueness part of Theorem 2.4.2.

c. Show that $y = ct + c^2$, where c is an arbitrary constant, satisfies the differential equation in part a for $t \geq -2c$. If $c = -1$, the initial condition is also satisfied, and the solution $y = y_1(t)$ is obtained. Show that there is no choice of c that gives the second solution $y = y_2(t)$.

19. **a.** Show that $\phi(t) = e^{2t}$ is a solution of $y' - 2y = 0$ and that $y = c\phi(t)$ is also a solution of this equation for any value of the constant c.

b. Show that $\phi(t) = 1/t$ is a solution of $y' + y^2 = 0$ for $t > 0$, but that $y = c\phi(t)$ is not a solution of this equation unless $c = 0$ or $c = 1$. Note that the equation of part b is nonlinear, while that of part a is linear.

20. Show that if $y = \phi(t)$ is a solution of $y' + p(t)y = 0$, then $y = c\phi(t)$ is also a solution for any value of the constant c.

21. Let $y = y_1(t)$ be a solution of

$$y' + p(t)y = 0, \tag{27}$$

and let $y = y_2(t)$ be a solution of

$$y' + p(t)y = g(t). \tag{28}$$

Show that $y = y_1(t) + y_2(t)$ is also a solution of equation (28).

22. **a.** Show that the solution (7) of the general linear equation (1) can be written in the form

$$y = cy_1(t) + y_2(t), \tag{29}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant.

b. Show that y_1 is a solution of the differential equation

$$y' + p(t)y = 0, \tag{30}$$

corresponding to $g(t) = 0$.

c. Show that y_2 is a solution of the full linear equation (1). We see later (for example, in Section 3.5) that solutions of higher-order linear equations have a pattern similar to equation (29).

Bernoulli Equations. Sometimes it is possible to solve a nonlinear equation by making a change of the dependent variable that converts it into a linear equation. The most important such equation has the form

$$y' + p(t)y = q(t)y^n,$$

and is called a Bernoulli equation after Jakob Bernoulli. Problems 23 and 25 deal with equations of this type.

23. **a.** Solve Bernoulli's equation when $n = 0$; when $n = 1$.

b. Show that if $n \neq 0, 1$, then the substitution $v = y^{1-n}$ reduces Bernoulli's equation to a linear equation. This method of solution was formulated by Leibniz in 1696.

In each of Problems 24 through 25, the given equation is a Bernoulli equation. In each case solve it by using the substitution mentioned in Problem 23b.

24. $y' = ry - ky^2$, $r > 0$ and $k > 0$. This equation is important in population dynamics and is discussed in detail in Section 2.5.

25. $y' = \epsilon y - \sigma y^3$, $\epsilon > 0$ and $\sigma > 0$. This equation occurs in the study of the stability of fluid flow.

Discontinuous Coefficients. Linear differential equations sometimes occur in which one or both of the functions p and g have jump discontinuities. If t_0 is such a point of discontinuity, then it is necessary to solve the equation separately for $t < t_0$ and $t > t_0$. Afterward, the two solutions are matched so that y is continuous at t_0; this is accomplished by a proper choice of the arbitrary constants. The following two problems illustrate this situation. Note in each case that it is impossible also to make y' continuous at t_0.

26. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' + 2y = g(t), \quad y(0) = 0,$$

where

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq t \leq 1, \\ 0, & t > 1. \end{cases}$$

27. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' + p(t)y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1,$$

where

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} 2, & 0 \leq t \leq 1, \\ 1, & t > 1. \end{cases}$$

2.5 Autonomous Differential Equations and Population Dynamics

An important class of first-order equations consists of those in which the independent variable does not appear explicitly. Such equations are called **autonomous** and have the form

$$dy/dt = f(y). \tag{1}$$

We will discuss these equations in the context of the growth or decline of the population of a given species, an important issue in fields ranging from medicine to ecology to global economics. A number of other applications are mentioned in some of the problems. Recall that in Sections 1.1 and 1.2 we considered the special case of equation (1) in which $f(y) = ay + b$.

Equation (1) is separable, so the discussion in Section 2.2 is applicable to it, but the main purpose of this section is to show how geometric methods can be used to obtain important qualitative information directly from the differential equation without solving the equation. Of fundamental importance in this effort are the concepts of stability and instability of solutions of differential equations. These ideas were introduced informally in Chapter 1, but without using this terminology. They are discussed further here and will be examined in greater depth and in a more general setting in Chapter 9.

Exponential Growth. Let $y = \phi(t)$ be the population of the given species at time t. The simplest hypothesis concerning the variation of population is that the rate of change of y is proportional[10] to the current value of y; that is,

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ry, \tag{2}$$

where the constant of proportionality r is called the **rate of growth** or **decline**, depending on whether r is positive or negative. Here, we assume that the population is growing, so $r > 0$.

Solving equation (2) subject to the initial condition[11]

$$y(0) = y_0, \tag{3}$$

we obtain

$$y = y_0 e^{rt}. \tag{4}$$

Thus the mathematical model consisting of the initial value problem (1), (2) with $r > 0$ predicts that the population will grow exponentially for all time, as shown in Figure 2.5.1 for several values of y_0. Under ideal conditions, equation (4) has been observed to be reasonably accurate for many populations, at least for limited periods of time. However, it is clear that such ideal conditions cannot continue indefinitely; eventually, limitations on space, food supply, or other resources will reduce the growth rate and bring an end to uninhibited exponential growth.

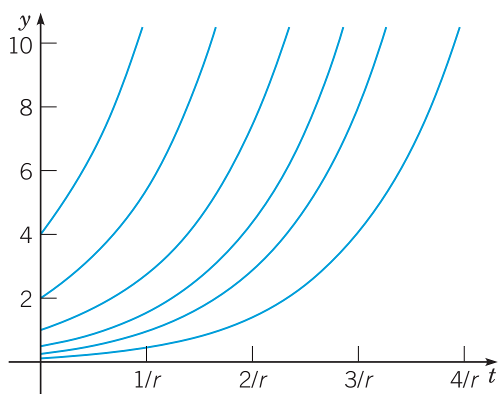


FIGURE 2.5.1 Exponential growth: y versus t for $dy/dt = ry$ $(r > 0)$.

Logistic Growth. To take account of the fact that the growth rate actually depends on the population, we replace the constant r in equation (2) by a function $h(y)$ and thereby obtain the modified equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = h(y)y. \tag{5}$$

We now want to choose $h(y)$ so that $h(y) \cong r > 0$ when y is small, $h(y)$ decreases as y grows larger, and $h(y) < 0$ when y is sufficiently large. The simplest function that has these properties is $h(y) = r - ay$, where a is also a positive constant. Using this function in equation (5), we obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = (r - ay)y. \tag{6}$$

[10]It was apparently the British economist Thomas Malthus (1766–1834) who first observed that many biological populations increase at a rate proportional to the population. His first paper on populations appeared in 1798.

[11]In this section, because the unknown function is a population, we assume $y_0 > 0$.

Equation (6) is known as the Verhulst[12] equation or the **logistic equation**. It is often convenient to write the logistic equation in the equivalent form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = r\left(1 - \frac{y}{K}\right)y, \tag{7}$$

where $K = r/a$. In this form, the constant r is called the **intrinsic growth rate**—that is, the growth rate in the absence of any limiting factors. The interpretation of K will become clear shortly.

We will investigate the solutions of equation (7) in some detail later in this section. Before doing that, however, we will show how you can easily draw a *qualitatively correct* sketch of the solutions. The same methods also apply to the more general equation (1).

We first seek solutions of equation (7) of the simplest possible type—that is, constant functions. For such a solution $dy/dt = 0$ for all t, so any constant solution of equation (7) must satisfy the algebraic equation

$$r\left(1 - \frac{y}{K}\right)y = 0.$$

Thus the constant solutions are $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ and $y = \phi_2(t) = K$. These solutions are called **equilibrium solutions** of equation (7) because they correspond to no change or variation in the value of y as t increases. In the same way, any equilibrium solutions of the more general equation (1) can be found by locating the roots of $f(y) = 0$. The zeros of $f(y)$ are also called **critical points**.

To visualize other solutions of equation (7) and to sketch their graphs quickly, we start by drawing the graph of $f(y)$ versus y. In the case of equation (7), $f(y) = r(1 - y/K)y$, so the graph is the parabola shown in Figure 2.5.2. The intercepts are $(0, 0)$ and $(K, 0)$, corresponding to the critical points of equation (7), and the vertex of the parabola is $(K/2, rK/4)$. Observe that $dy/dt > 0$ for $0 < y < K$. Therefore, y is an increasing function of t when y is in this interval; this is indicated by the rightward-pointing arrows near the y-axis in Figure 2.5.2. Similarly, if $y > K$, then $dy/dt < 0$; hence y is decreasing, as indicated by the leftward-pointing arrow in Figure 2.5.2.

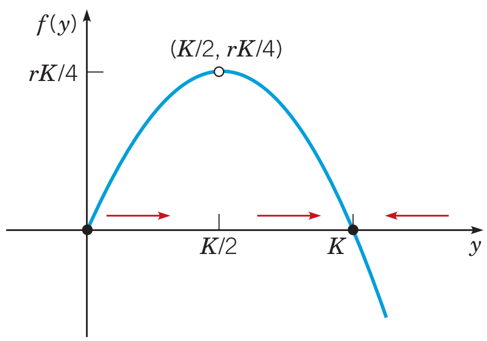


FIGURE 2.5.2 $f(y)$ versus y for $dy/dt = r(1-y/K)y$.

In this context the y-axis is often called the **phase line**, and it is reproduced in its more customary vertical orientation in Figure 2.5.3*a*. The dots at $y = 0$ and $y = K$ are the critical points, or equilibrium solutions. The arrows again indicate that y is increasing whenever $0 < y < K$ and that y is decreasing whenever $y > K$.

[12]Pierre F. Verhulst (1804–1849) was a Belgian mathematician who introduced equation (6) as a model for human population growth in 1838. He referred to it as logistic growth, so equation (6) is often called the logistic equation. He was unable to test the accuracy of his model because of inadequate census data, and it did not receive much attention until many years later. Reasonable agreement with experimental data was demonstrated by R. Pearl (1930) for *Drosophila melanogaster* (fruit fly) populations and by G. F. Gause (1935) for *Paramecium* and *Tribolium* (flour beetle) populations.

Further, from Figure 2.5.2, note that if y is near zero or K, then the slope $f(y)$ is near zero, so the solution curves are relatively flat. They become steeper as the value of y leaves the neighborhood of zero or K.

To sketch the graphs of solutions of equation (7) in the ty-plane, we start with the equilibrium solutions $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ and $y = \phi_2(t) = K$; then we draw other curves that are increasing when $0 < y < K$, decreasing when $y > K$, and flatten out as y approaches either of the values 0 or K. Thus the graphs of solutions of equation (7) must have the general shape shown in Figure 2.5.3*b*, regardless of the values of r and K.

Figure 2.5.3*b* may seem to show that other solutions intersect the equilibrium solution $y = K$, but is this really possible? No, the uniqueness part of Theorem 2.4.2, the fundamental existence and uniqueness theorem, states that only one solution can pass through a given point in the ty-plane. Thus, although other solutions may be asymptotic to the equilibrium solution as $t \to \infty$, they cannot intersect it at any finite time. Consequently, a solution that starts in the interval $0 < y < K$ remains in this interval for all time, and similarly for a solution that starts in $K < y < \infty$.

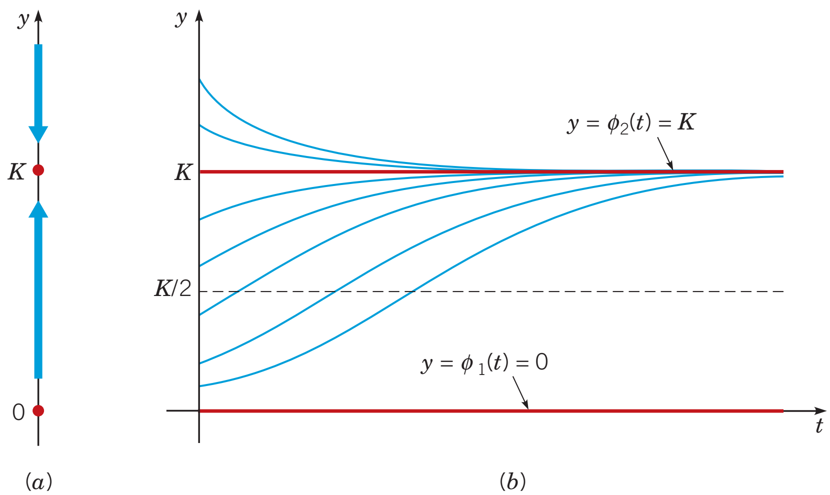


FIGURE 2.5.3 Logistic growth: $dy/dt = r(1 - y/K)y$. (*a*) The phase line. (*b*) Plots of y versus t.

To carry the investigation one step further, we can determine the concavity of the solution curves and the location of inflection points by finding d^2y/dt^2. From the differential equation (1), we obtain (using the chain rule)

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = \frac{d}{dt}\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}f(y) = f'(y)\frac{dy}{dt} = f'(y)f(y). \tag{8}$$

The graph of y versus t is concave up when $y'' > 0$—that is, when f and f' have the same sign. Similarly, it is concave down when $y'' < 0$, which occurs when f and f' have opposite signs. The signs of f and f' can be easily identified from the graph of $f(y)$ versus y. Inflection points may occur when $f'(y) = 0$.

In the case of equation (7), solutions are concave up for $0 < y < K/2$ where f is positive and increasing (see Figure 2.5.2), so that both f and f' are positive. Solutions are also concave up for $y > K$ where f is negative and decreasing (both f and f' are negative). For $K/2 < y < K$, solutions are concave down since here f is positive and decreasing, so f is positive but f' is negative. There is an inflection point whenever the graph of y versus t crosses the line $y = K/2$. The graphs in Figure 2.5.3*b* exhibit these properties.

Finally, observe that K is the upper bound that is approached, but not exceeded, by growing populations starting below this value. Thus it is natural to refer to K as the **saturation level**, or the **environmental carrying capacity**, for the given species.

A comparison of Figures 2.5.1 and 2.5.3*b* reveals that solutions of the nonlinear equation (7) are strikingly different from those of the linear equation (1), at least for large values of t. Regardless of the value of K—that is, no matter how small the nonlinear term in equation (7)—solutions of that equation approach a finite value as $t \to \infty$, whereas solutions of equation (1) grow (exponentially) without bound as $t \to \infty$. Thus even a tiny nonlinear term in the differential equation (7) has a decisive effect on the solution for large t.

In many situations it is sufficient to have the qualitative information about a solution $y = \phi(t)$ of equation (7) that is shown in Figure 2.5.3*b*. This information was obtained entirely from the graph of $f(y)$ versus y and without solving the differential equation (7). However, if we wish to have a more detailed description of logistic growth—for example, if we wish to know the value of the population at some particular time—then we must solve equation (7) subject to the initial condition (3). Provided that $y \neq 0$ and $y \neq K$, we can write equation (7) in the form

$$\frac{dy}{(1 - y/K)y} = r\,dt.$$

Using a partial fraction expansion on the left-hand side, we have

$$\left(\frac{1}{y} + \frac{1/K}{1 - y/K}\right)dy = r\,dt.$$

Then, by integrating both sides, we obtain

$$\ln|y| - \ln\left|1 - \frac{y}{K}\right| = rt + c, \tag{9}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant of integration to be determined from the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$. We have already noted that if $0 < y_0 < K$, then y remains in this interval for all time. Thus in this case we can remove the absolute value bars in equation (9), and by taking the exponential of both sides, we find that

$$\frac{y}{1 - (y/K)} = Ce^{rt}, \tag{10}$$

where $C = e^c$. In order to satisfy the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$, we must choose $C = y_0/(1-(y_0/K))$. Using this value for C in equation (10) and solving for y (see Problem 10), we obtain

$$y = \frac{y_0 K}{y_0 + (K - y_0)e^{-rt}}. \tag{11}$$

We have derived the solution (11) under the assumption that $0 < y_0 < K$. If $y_0 > K$, then the details of dealing with equation (9) are only slightly different, and we leave it to you to show that equation (11) is also valid in this case. Finally, note that equation (11) also contains the equilibrium solutions $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ and $y = \phi_2(t) = K$ corresponding to the initial conditions $y_0 = 0$ and $y_0 = K$, respectively.

All the qualitative conclusions that we reached earlier by geometrical reasoning can be confirmed by examining the solution (11). In particular, if $y_0 = 0$, then equation (11) requires that $y(t) = 0$ for all t. If $y_0 > 0$, and if we let $t \to \infty$ in equation (11), then we obtain

$$\lim_{t\to\infty} y(t) = \frac{y_0 K}{y_0} = K.$$

Thus, for each $y_0 > 0$, the solution approaches the equilibrium solution $y = \phi_2(t) = K$ asymptotically as $t \to \infty$. Therefore, we say that the constant solution $\phi_2(t) = K$ is an **asymptotically stable solution** of equation (7) or that the point $y = K$ is an asymptotically stable equilibrium or critical point. After a long time, the population is close to the saturation level K regardless of the initial population size, as long as it is positive. Other solutions approach the equilibrium solution more rapidly as r increases.

On the other hand, the situation for the equilibrium solution $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ is quite different. Even solutions that start very near zero grow as t increases and, as we have seen, approach K as $t \to \infty$. We say that $\phi_1(t) = 0$ is an **unstable equilibrium solution** or that $y = 0$ is an unstable equilibrium or critical point. This means that the only way to guarantee that the solution remains near zero is to make sure its initial value is *exactly* equal to zero.

EXAMPLE 1

The logistic model has been applied to the natural growth of the halibut population in certain areas of the Pacific Ocean.[13] Let y, measured in kilograms, be the biomass, that is, the total mass, of the halibut population, at time t. The parameters in the logistic equation are estimated to have the values $r = 0.71/\text{year}$ and $K = 80.5 \times 10^6$ kg. If the initial biomass is $y_0 = 0.25K$, find the biomass 2 years later. Also find the time τ for which $y(\tau) = 0.75K$.

Solution:

It is convenient to scale the solution (11) to the carrying capacity K; thus we write equation (11) in the form

$$\frac{y}{K} = \frac{y_0/K}{(y_0/K) + (1 - y_0/K)e^{-rt}}. \tag{12}$$

Using the data given in the problem, we find that

$$\frac{y(2)}{K} = \frac{0.25}{0.25 + 0.75e^{-1.42}} \cong 0.5797.$$

Consequently, $y(2) \cong 46.7 \times 10^6$ kg.

To find τ, the time when $y_0/K = 0.75$ we first solve equation (12) for t, obtaining

$$e^{-rt} = \frac{(y_0/K)(1 - y/K)}{(y/K)\big(1 - y_0/K\big)};$$

hence

$$t = -\frac{1}{r}\ln\left(\frac{(y_0/K)(1 - y/K)}{(y/K)\big(1 - y_0/K\big)}\right). \tag{13}$$

Using the given values of r and y_0/K and setting $y/K = 0.75$, we find that

$$\tau = -\frac{1}{0.71}\ln\frac{(0.25)(0.25)}{(0.75)(0.75)} = \frac{1}{0.71}\ln 9 \cong 3.095 \text{ years}.$$

The graphs of y/K versus t for the given parameter values and for several initial conditions are shown in Figure 2.5.4. The green curve corresponds to the initial condition $y_0 = 0.25K$.

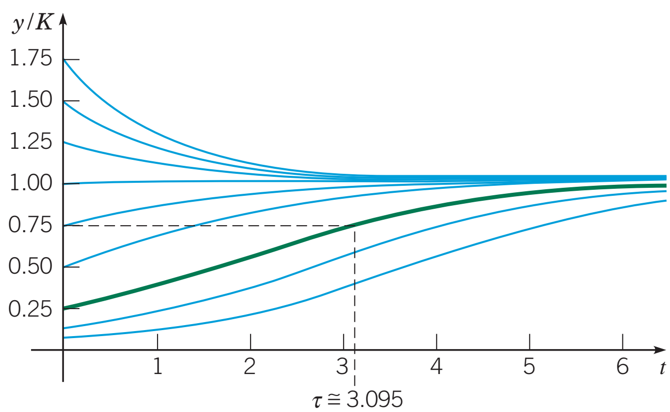


FIGURE 2.5.4 y/K versus t for population model of halibut in the Pacific Ocean. The green curve satisfies the initial condition $y(0)/K = 0.25$. The solution with $y(0) = 0.25$ reaches 75% of the carrying capacity at time $t = \tau 3.095$ years.

[13] A good source of information on the population dynamics and economics involved in making efficient use of a renewable resource, with particular emphasis on fisheries, is the book by Clark listed in the references at the end of this chapter. The parameter values used here are given on page 53 of this book and were obtained from a study by H. S. Mohring.

A Critical Threshold. We now turn to a consideration of the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -r\left(1 - \frac{y}{T}\right)y, \tag{14}$$

where r and T are given positive constants. Observe that (except for replacing the parameter K by T) this equation differs from the logistic equation (7) only in the presence of the minus sign on the right-hand side. However, as we will see, the solutions of equation (14) behave very differently from those of equation (7).

For equation (14) the graph of $f(y)$ versus y is the parabola shown in Figure 2.5.5. The intercepts on the y-axis are the critical points $y = 0$ and $y = T$, corresponding to the equilibrium solutions $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ and $y = \phi_2(t) = T$. If $0 < y < T$, then $dy/dt < 0$, and y is positive and decreases as t increases. Thus $\phi_1(t) = 0$ is an asymptotically stable equilibrium solution. On the other hand, if $y > T$, then $dy/dt > 0$, so that y is positive and increasing as t increases; thus $\phi_2(t) = T$ is an unstable equilibrium solution.

Furthermore, the concavity of solutions can be determined by looking at the sign of $y'' = f'(y)f(y)$; see equation (8). Figure 2.5.5 clearly shows that $f'(y)$ is negative for $0 < y < T/2$ and positive for $T/2 < y < T$, so the graph of y versus t is concave up and concave down, respectively, in these intervals. Also, $f'(y)$ and $f(y)$ are both positive for $y > T$, so the graph of y versus t is also concave up there.

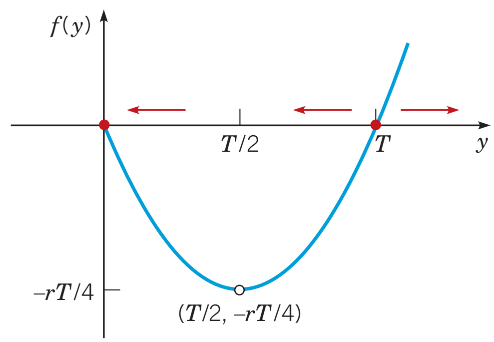


FIGURE 2.5.5 $f(y)$ versus y for $dy/dt = -r(1 - y/T)y$.

Figure 2.5.6(a) shows the phase line (the y-axis) for equation (14). The dots at $y = 0$ and $y = T$ are the critical points, or equilibrium solutions, and the arrows indicate where solutions are either increasing or decreasing.

Solution curves of equation (14) can now be sketched quickly, as follows. First draw the equilibrium solutions $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ and $y = \phi_2(t) = T$. Then sketch curves in the strip $0 < y < T$ that are decreasing as t increases and change concavity as they cross the line $y = T/2$. Next draw some curves above $y = T$ that increase more and more steeply as t and y increase. Make sure that all curves become flatter as y approaches either zero or T. The result is Figure 2.5.6(b), which is a qualitatively accurate sketch of solutions of equation (14) for any r and T. From this figure it appears that as time increases, y either approaches zero or grows without bound, depending on whether the initial value y_0 is less than or greater than T. Thus T is a **threshold level**, below which growth does not occur.

We can confirm the conclusions that we have reached through geometrical reasoning by solving the differential equation (14). This can be done by separating the variables and integrating, just as we did for equation (7). However, if we note that equation (14) can be obtained from equation (7) by replacing K by T and r by $-r$, then we can make the same substitutions in the solution (11) and thereby obtain

$$y = \frac{y_0 T}{y_0 + (T - y_0)e^{rt}}, \tag{15}$$

which is the solution of equation (14) subject to the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$.

If $0 < y_0 < T$, then it follows from equation (15) that $y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$. This agrees with our qualitative geometric analysis. If $y_0 > T$, then the denominator on the right-hand

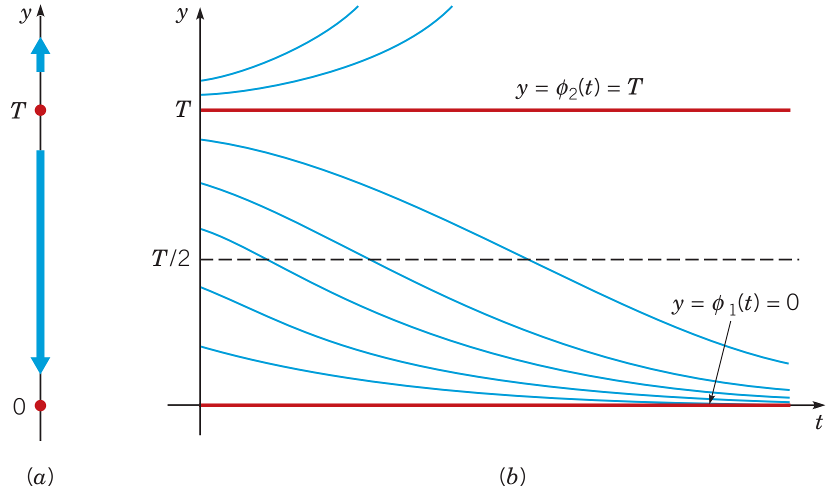


FIGURE 2.5.6 Growth with a threshold: $dy/dt = -r(1 - y/T)y$; $y = T$ is an asymptotically unstable equilibrium, while $y = 0$ is asymptotically stable. (*a*) The phase line. (*b*) Plots of y versus t.

side of equation (15) is zero for a certain finite value of t. We denote this value by t^* and calculate it from

$$y_0 - (y_0 - T)e^{rt^*} = 0,$$

which gives (see Problem 12)

$$t^* = \frac{1}{r} \ln \frac{y_0}{y_0 - T}. \tag{16}$$

Thus, if the initial population y_0 is above the threshold T, the threshold model predicts that the graph of y versus t has a vertical asymptote at $t = t^*$; in other words, the population becomes unbounded in a finite time, whose value depends on y_0, T, and r. The existence and location of this asymptote were not apparent from the geometric analysis, so in this case the explicit solution yields additional important qualitative, as well as quantitative, information.

The populations of some species exhibit the threshold phenomenon. If too few are present, then the species cannot propagate itself successfully and the population becomes extinct. However, if the population is larger than the threshold level, then further growth occurs. Of course, the population cannot become unbounded, so eventually equation (14) must be modified to take this into account.

Critical thresholds also occur in other circumstances. For example, in fluid mechanics, equations of the form (7) or (14) often govern the evolution of a small disturbance y in a *laminar* (or smooth) fluid flow. For instance, if equation (14) holds and $y < T$, then the disturbance is damped out and the laminar flow persists. However, if $y > T$, then the disturbance grows larger and the laminar flow breaks up into a turbulent one. In this case T is referred to as the *critical amplitude*. Experimenters speak of keeping the disturbance level in a wind tunnel low enough so that they can study laminar flow over an airfoil, for example.

Logistic Growth with a Threshold. As we mentioned in the last subsection, the threshold model (14) may need to be modified so that unbounded growth does not occur when y is above the threshold T. The simplest way to do this is to introduce another factor that will have the effect of making dy/dt negative when y is large. Thus we consider

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -r\left(1 - \frac{y}{T}\right)\left(1 - \frac{y}{K}\right)y, \tag{17}$$

where $r > 0$ and $0 < T < K$.

The graph of $f(y)$ versus y is shown in Figure 2.5.7. In this problem there are three critical points, $y = 0$, $y = T$, and $y = K$, corresponding to the equilibrium solutions $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$, $y = \phi_2(t) = T$, and $y = \phi_3(t) = K$, respectively. From Figure 2.5.7 we observe that $dy/dt > 0$ for $T < y < K$, and consequently y is increasing there. Further, $dy/dt < 0$ for $y < T$ and for $y > K$, so y is decreasing in these intervals. Consequently, the equilibrium solutions $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ and $y = \phi_3(t) = K$ are asymptotically stable, and the solution $y = \phi_2(t) = T$ is unstable.

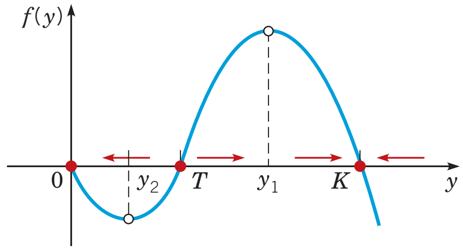


FIGURE 2.5.7 $f(y)$ versus y for $dy/dt = -r(1 - y/T)(1 - y/K)y$.

The phase line for equation (17) is shown in Figure 2.5.8*a*, and the graphs of some solutions are sketched in Figure 2.5.8*b*. You should make sure that you understand the relation between these two figures, as well as the relation between Figures 2.5.7 and 2.5.8*a*. From Figure 2.5.8*b* we see that if y starts below the threshold T, then y declines to ultimate extinction. On the other hand, if y starts above T, then y eventually approaches the carrying capacity K. The inflection points on the graphs of y versus t in Figure 2.5.8*b* correspond to the maximum and minimum points, y_1 and y_2, respectively, on the graph of $f(y)$ versus y in Figure 2.5.7. These values can be obtained by differentiating the right-hand side of equation (17) with respect to y, setting the result equal to zero, and solving for y. We obtain

$$y_{1,2} = (K + T \pm \sqrt{K^2 - KT + T^2})/3, \tag{18}$$

where the plus sign yields y_1 and the minus sign y_2.

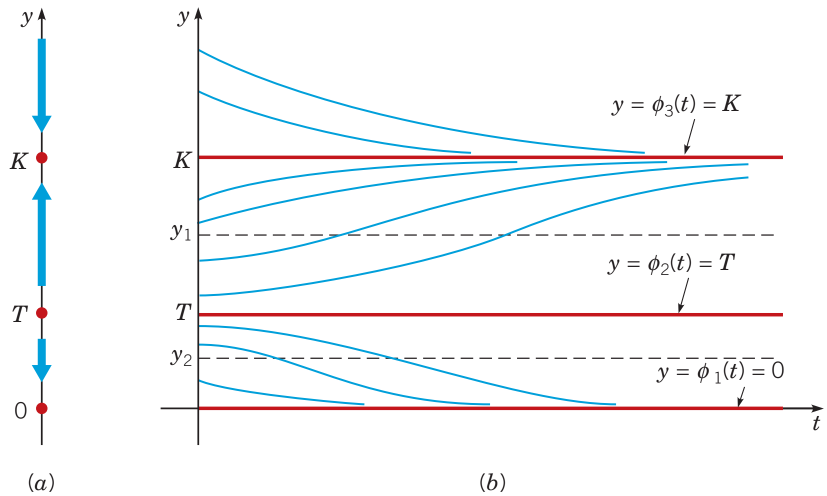


FIGURE 2.5.8 Logistic growth with a threshold: $dy/dt = -r(1 - y/T)(1 - y/K)y$; $y = \phi_1(t) = 0$ and $y = \phi_3(t) = K$ are asymptotically stable equilibria and $y = \phi_2(t) = T$ is an asymptotically unstable equilibrium. (a) The phase line. (b) Plots of y versus t.

A model of this general sort apparently describes the population of the passenger pigeon,[14] which was present in the United States in vast numbers until the late nineteenth century. It was heavily hunted for food and for sport, and consequently its numbers were drastically reduced by the 1880s. Unfortunately, the passenger pigeon could apparently breed successfully only when present in a large concentration, corresponding to a relatively high threshold T. Although a reasonably large number of individual birds remained alive in the late 1880s, there were not enough in any one place to permit successful breeding, and the population rapidly declined to extinction. The last passenger pigeon died in 1914. The precipitous decline in the passenger pigeon population from huge numbers to extinction in a few decades was one of the early factors contributing to a concern for conservation in this country.

[14] See, for example, Oliver L. Austin, Jr., *Birds of the World* (New York: Golden Press, 1983), pp. 143–145.

Problems

Problems 1 through 4 involve equations of the form $dy/dt = f(y)$. In each problem sketch the graph of $f(y)$ versus y, determine the critical (equilibrium) points, and classify each one as asymptotically stable or unstable. Draw the phase line, and sketch several graphs of solutions in the ty-plane.

G **1.** $dy/dt = ay + by^2, \quad a > 0, \quad b > 0, \quad -\infty < y_0 < \infty$

G **2.** $dy/dt = y(y-1)(y-2), \quad y_0 \geq 0$

G **3.** $dy/dt = e^y - 1, \quad -\infty < y_0 < \infty$

G **4.** $dy/dt = e^{-y} - 1, \quad -\infty < y_0 < \infty$

5. Semistable Equilibrium Solutions. Sometimes a constant equilibrium solution has the property that solutions lying on one side of the equilibrium solution tend to approach it, whereas solutions lying on the other side depart from it (see Figure 2.5.9). In this case the equilibrium solution is said to be **semistable**.

a. Consider the equation

$$dy/dt = k(1-y)^2, \tag{19}$$

where k is a positive constant. Show that $y = 1$ is the only critical point, with the corresponding equilibrium solution $\phi(t) = 1$.

G **b.** Sketch $f(y)$ versus y. Show that y is increasing as a function of t for $y < 1$ and also for $y > 1$. The phase line has upward-pointing arrows both below and above $y = 1$. Thus solutions below the equilibrium solution approach it, and those above it grow farther away. Therefore, $\phi(t) = 1$ is semistable.

c. Solve equation (19) subject to the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$ and confirm the conclusions reached in part b.

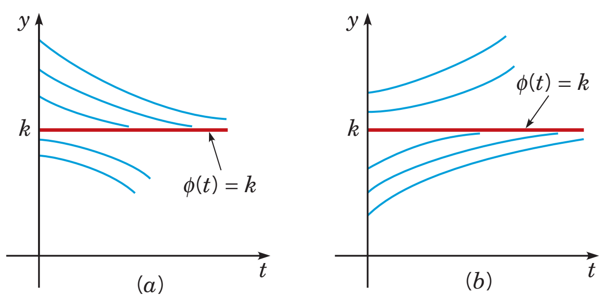


FIGURE 2.5.9 In both cases the equilibrium solution $\phi(t) = k$ is semistable. (*a*) $dy/dt \leq 0$; (*b*) $dy/dt \geq 0$.

Problems 6 through 9 involve equations of the form $dy/dt = f(y)$. In each problem sketch the graph of $f(y)$ versus y, determine the critical (equilibrium) points, and classify each one as asymptotically stable, unstable, or semistable (see Problem 5). Draw the phase line, and sketch several graphs of solutions in the ty-plane.

G **6.** $dy/dt = y^2(y^2 - 1), \quad -\infty < y_0 < \infty$

G **7.** $dy/dt = y(1 - y^2), \quad -\infty < y_0 < \infty$

G **8.** $dy/dt = y^2(4 - y^2), \quad -\infty < y_0 < \infty$

G **9.** $dy/dt = y^2(1-y)^2, \quad -\infty < y_0 < \infty$

10. Complete the derivation of the explicit formula for the solution (11) of the logistic model by solving equation (10) for y.

11. In Example 1, complete the manipulations needed to arrive at equation (13). That is, solve the solution (11) for t.

12. Complete the derivation of the location of the vertical asymptote in the solution (15) when $y_0 > T$. That is, derive formula (16) by finding the value of t when the denominator of the right-hand side of equation (15) is zero.

13. Complete the derivation of formula (18) for the locations of the inflection points of the solution of the logistic growth model with a threshold (17). *Hint:* Follow the steps outlined on p. 66.

14. Consider the equation $dy/dt = f(y)$ and suppose that y_1 is a critical point—that is, $f(y_1) = 0$. Show that the constant equilibrium solution $\phi(t) = y_1$ is asymptotically stable if $f'(y_1) < 0$ and unstable if $f'(y_1) > 0$.

15. Suppose that a certain population obeys the logistic equation $dy/dt = ry(1 - (y/K))$.

a. If $y_0 = K/3$, find the time τ at which the initial population has doubled. Find the value of τ corresponding to $r = 0.025$ per year.

b. If $y_0/K = \alpha$, find the time T at which $y(T)/K = \beta$, where $0 < \alpha, \beta < 1$. Observe that $T \to \infty$ as $\alpha \to 0$ or as $\beta \to 1$. Find the value of T for $r = 0.025$ per year, $\alpha = 0.1$, and $\beta = 0.9$.

G **16.** Another equation that has been used to model population growth is the Gompertz[15] equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ry\ln\left(\frac{K}{y}\right),$$

where r and K are positive constants.

a. Sketch the graph of $f(y)$ versus y, find the critical points, and determine whether each is asymptotically stable or unstable.

b. For $0 \leq y \leq K$, determine where the graph of y versus t is concave up and where it is concave down.

c. For each y in $0 < y \leq K$, show that dy/dt as given by the Gompertz equation is never less than dy/dt as given by the logistic equation.

17. a. Solve the Gompertz equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ry\ln\left(\frac{K}{y}\right),$$

subject to the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$.
Hint: You may wish to let $u = \ln(y/K)$.

b. For the data given in Example 1 in the text ($r = 0.71$ per year, $K = 80.5 \times 10^6$ kg, $y_0/K = 0.25$), use the Gompertz model to find the predicted value of $y(2)$.

c. For the same data as in part b, use the Gompertz model to find the time τ at which $y(\tau) = 0.75K$.

[15] Benjamin Gompertz (1779–1865) was an English actuary. He developed his model for population growth, published in 1825, in the course of constructing mortality tables for his insurance company.

18. A pond forms as water collects in a conical depression of radius a and depth h. Suppose that water flows in at a constant rate k and is lost through evaporation at a rate proportional to the surface area.

a. Show that the volume $V(t)$ of water in the pond at time t satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = k - \alpha\pi(3a/\pi h)^{2/3}V^{2/3},$$

where α is the coefficient of evaporation.

b. Find the equilibrium depth of water in the pond. Is the equilibrium asymptotically stable?

c. Find a condition that must be satisfied if the pond is not to overflow.

Harvesting a Renewable Resource. Suppose that the population y of a certain species of fish (for example, tuna or halibut) in a given area of the ocean is described by the logistic equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = r\left(1 - \frac{y}{K}\right)y.$$

Although it is desirable to utilize this source of food, it is intuitively clear that if too many fish are caught, then the fish population may be reduced below a useful level and possibly even driven to extinction. Problems 19 and 20 explore some of the questions involved in formulating a rational strategy for managing the fishery.[16]

19. At a given level of effort, it is reasonable to assume that the rate at which fish are caught depends on the population y: the more fish there are, the easier it is to catch them. Thus we assume that the rate at which fish are caught is given by Ey, where E is a positive constant, with units of 1/time, that measures the total effort made to harvest the given species of fish. To include this effect, the logistic equation is replaced by

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = r\left(1 - \frac{y}{K}\right)y - Ey. \tag{20}$$

This equation is known as the **Schaefer model** after the biologist M. B. Schaefer, who applied it to fish populations.

a. Show that if $E < r$, then there are two equilibrium points, $y_1 = 0$ and $y_2 = K(1 - E/r) > 0$.

b. Show that $y = y_1$ is unstable and $y = y_2$ is asymptotically stable.

c. A sustainable yield Y of the fishery is a rate at which fish can be caught indefinitely. It is the product of the effort E and the asymptotically stable population y_2. Find Y as a function of the effort E; the graph of this function is known as the yield–effort curve.

d. Determine E so as to maximize Y and thereby find the **maximum sustainable yield** Y_m.

20. In this problem we assume that fish are caught at a constant rate h independent of the size of the fish population. Then y satisfies

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = r\left(1 - \frac{y}{K}\right)y - h. \tag{21}$$

The assumption of a constant catch rate h may be reasonable when y is large but becomes less so when y is small.

a. If $h < rK/4$, show that equation (21) has two equilibrium points y_1 and y_2 with $y_1 < y_2$; determine these points.

b. Show that y_1 is unstable and y_2 is asymptotically stable.

c. From a plot of $f(y)$ versus y, show that if the initial population $y_0 > y_1$, then $y \to y_2$ as $t \to \infty$, but that if $y_0 < y_1$, then y decreases as t increases. Note that $y = 0$ is not an equilibrium point, so if $y_0 < y_1$, then extinction will be reached in a finite time.

d. If $h > rK/4$, show that y decreases to zero as t increases, regardless of the value of y_0.

e. If $h = rK/4$, show that there is a single equilibrium point $y = K/2$ and that this point is semistable (see Problem 5). Thus the maximum sustainable yield is $h_m = rK/4$, corresponding to the equilibrium value $y = K/2$. Observe that h_m has the same value as Y_m in Problem 19d. The fishery is considered to be overexploited if y is reduced to a level below $K/2$.

Epidemics. The use of mathematical methods to study the spread of contagious diseases goes back at least to some work by Daniel Bernoulli in 1760 on smallpox. In more recent years many mathematical models have been proposed and studied for many different diseases.[17] Problems 21 through 23 deal with a few of the simpler models and the conclusions that can be drawn from them. Similar models have also been used to describe the spread of rumors and of consumer products.

21. Suppose that a given population can be divided into two parts: those who have a given disease and can infect others, and those who do not have it but are susceptible. Let x be the proportion of susceptible individuals and y the proportion of infectious individuals; then $x + y = 1$. Assume that the disease spreads by contact between sick and well members of the population and that the rate of spread dy/dt is proportional to the number of such contacts. Further, assume that members of both groups move about freely among each other, so the number of contacts is proportional to the product of x and y. Since $x = 1 - y$, we obtain the initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \alpha y(1 - y), \quad y(0) = y_0, \tag{22}$$

where α is a positive proportionality factor, and y_0 is the initial proportion of infectious individuals.

a. Find the equilibrium points for the differential equation (22) and determine whether each is asymptotically stable, semistable, or unstable.

b. Solve the initial value problem 22 and verify that the conclusions you reached in part a are correct. Show that $y(t) \to 1$ as $t \to \infty$, which means that ultimately the disease spreads through the entire population.

22. Some diseases (such as typhoid fever) are spread largely by *carriers*, individuals who can transmit the disease but who exhibit no overt symptoms. Let x and y denote the proportions of susceptibles and carriers, respectively, in the population. Suppose that carriers are identified and removed from the population at a rate β, so

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -\beta y. \tag{23}$$

Suppose also that the disease spreads at a rate proportional to the product of x and y; thus

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\alpha xy. \tag{24}$$

a. Determine y at any time t by solving equation (23) subject to the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$.

b. Use the result of part a to find x at any time t by solving equation (24) subject to the initial condition $x(0) = x_0$.

c. Find the proportion of the population that escapes the epidemic by finding the limiting value of x as $t \to \infty$.

[16] An excellent treatment of this kind of problem, which goes far beyond what is outlined here, may be found in the book by Clark mentioned previously, especially in the first two chapters. Numerous additional references are given there.

[17] A standard source is the book by Bailey listed in the references. The models in Problems 21, 22, and 23 are discussed by Bailey in Chapters 5, 10, and 20, respectively.

23. Daniel Bernoulli's work in 1760 had the goal of appraising the effectiveness of a controversial inoculation program against smallpox, which at that time was a major threat to public health. His model applies equally well to any other disease that, once contracted and survived, confers a lifetime immunity.

Consider the cohort of individuals born in a given year ($t = 0$), and let $n(t)$ be the number of these individuals surviving t years later. Let $x(t)$ be the number of members of this cohort who have not had smallpox by year t and who are therefore still susceptible. Let β be the rate at which susceptibles contract smallpox, and let ν be the rate at which people who contract smallpox die from the disease. Finally, let $\mu(t)$ be the death rate from all causes other than smallpox. Then dx/dt, the rate at which the number of susceptibles declines, is given by

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -(\beta + \mu(t))x. \tag{25}$$

The first term on the right-hand side of equation (25) is the rate at which susceptibles contract smallpox, and the second term is the rate at which they die from all other causes. Also

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = -\nu\beta x - \mu(t)n, \tag{26}$$

where dn/dt is the death rate of the entire cohort, and the two terms on the right-hand side are the death rates due to smallpox and to all other causes, respectively.

a. Let $z = x/n$, and show that z satisfies the initial value problem

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = -\beta z(1 - \nu z), \quad z(0) = 1. \tag{27}$$

Observe that the initial value problem (27) does not depend on $\mu(t)$.

b. Find $z(t)$ by solving equation (27).

c. Bernoulli estimated that $\nu = \beta = 1/8$. Using these values, determine the proportion of 20-year-olds who have not had smallpox.

Note: On the basis of the model just described and the best mortality data available at the time, Bernoulli calculated that if deaths due to smallpox could be eliminated ($\nu = 0$), then approximately 3 years could be added to the average life expectancy (in 1760) of 26 years, 7 months. He therefore supported the inoculation program.

Bifurcation Points. For an equation of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(a, y), \tag{28}$$

where a is a real parameter, the critical points (equilibrium solutions) usually depend on the value of a. As a steadily increases or decreases, it often happens that at a certain value of a, called a **bifurcation point**, critical points come together, or separate, and equilibrium solutions may be either lost or gained. Bifurcation points are of great interest in many applications, because near them the nature of the solution of the underlying differential equation is undergoing an abrupt change. For example, in fluid mechanics a smooth (laminar) flow may break up and become turbulent. Or an axially loaded column may suddenly buckle and exhibit a large lateral displacement. Or, as the amount of one of the chemicals in a certain mixture is increased, spiral wave patterns of varying color may suddenly emerge in an originally quiescent fluid. Problems 24 through 26 describe three types of bifurcations that can occur in simple equations of the form (28).

24. Consider the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = a - y^2. \tag{29}$$

a. Find all of the critical points for equation (29). Observe that there are no critical points if $a < 0$, one critical point if $a = 0$, and two critical points if $a > 0$.

G b. Draw the phase line in each case and determine whether each critical point is asymptotically stable, semistable, or unstable.

G c. In each case sketch several solutions of equation (29) in the ty-plane.

Note: If we plot the location of the critical points as a function of a in the ay-plane, we obtain Figure 2.5.10. This is called the **bifurcation diagram** for equation (29). The bifurcation at $a = 0$ is called a **saddle–node** bifurcation. This name is more natural in the context of second-order systems, which are discussed in Chapter 9.

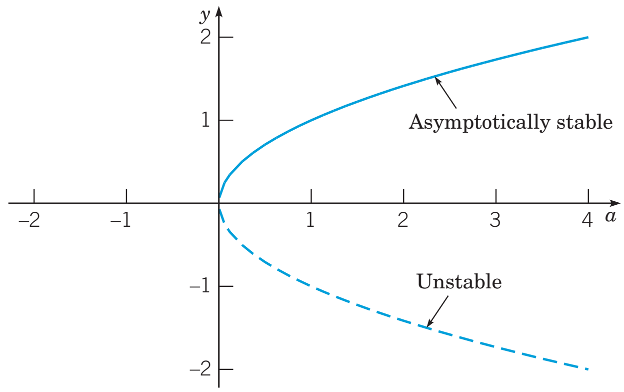


FIGURE 2.5.10 Bifurcation diagram for $y' = a - y^2$.

25. Consider the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay - y^3 = y(a - y^2). \tag{30}$$

G a. Again consider the cases $a < 0$, $a = 0$, and $a > 0$. In each case find the critical points, draw the phase line, and determine whether each critical point is asymptotically stable, semistable, or unstable.

G b. In each case sketch several solutions of equation (30) in the ty-plane.

G c. Draw the bifurcation diagram for equation (30)—that is, plot the location of the critical points versus a.

Note: For equation (30) the bifurcation point at $a = 0$ is called a **pitchfork bifurcation**. Your diagram may suggest why this name is appropriate.

26. Consider the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay - y^2 = y(a - y). \tag{31}$$

a. Again consider the cases $a < 0$, $a = 0$, and $a > 0$. In each case find the critical points, draw the phase line, and determine whether each critical point is asymptotically stable, semistable, or unstable.

b. In each case sketch several solutions of equation (31) in the ty-plane.

c. Draw the bifurcation diagram for equation (31).

Note: Observe that for equation (31) there are the same number of critical points for $a < 0$ and $a > 0$ but that their stability has changed. For $a < 0$ the equilibrium solution $y = 0$ is asymptotically stable and $y = a$ is unstable, while for $a > 0$ the situation is reversed. Thus there has been an **exchange of stability** as a passes through the bifurcation point $a = 0$. This type of bifurcation is called a **transcritical bifurcation**.

27. Chemical Reactions. A second-order chemical reaction involves the interaction (collision) of one molecule of a substance P with one molecule of a substance Q to produce one molecule of a new substance X; this is denoted by $P + Q \to X$. Suppose that p and q, where $p \neq q$, are the initial concentrations of P and Q, respectively, and let $x(t)$ be the concentration of X at time t. Then $p - x(t)$ and $q - x(t)$ are the concentrations of P and Q at time t, and the rate at which the reaction occurs is given by the equation

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \alpha(p - x)(q - x), \tag{32}$$

where α is a positive constant.

a. If $x(0) = 0$, determine the limiting value of $x(t)$ as $t \to \infty$ without solving the differential equation. Then solve the initial value problem and find $x(t)$ for any t.

b. If the substances P and Q are the same, then $p = q$ and equation (32) is replaced by

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \alpha(p - x)^2. \tag{33}$$

If $x(0) = 0$, determine the limiting value of $x(t)$ as $t \to \infty$ without solving the differential equation. Then solve the initial value problem and determine $x(t)$ for any t.

2.6 Exact Differential Equations and Integrating Factors

For first-order differential equations there are a number of integration methods that are applicable to various classes of problems. The most important of these are linear equations and separable equations, which we have discussed previously. Here, we consider a class of equations known as exact differential equations for which there is also a well-defined method of solution. Keep in mind, however, that the first-order differential equations that can be solved by elementary integration methods are rather special; most first-order equations cannot be solved in this way.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the differential equation

$$2x + y^2 + 2xyy' = 0. \tag{1}$$

Solution:

The equation is neither linear nor separable, so the methods suitable for those types of equations are not applicable here. However, observe that the function $\psi(x, y) = x^2 + xy^2$ has the property that

$$2x + y^2 = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}, \quad 2xy = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y}. \tag{2}$$

Therefore, the differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{3}$$

Assuming that y is a function of x, we can use the chain rule to write the left-hand side of equation (3) as $d\psi(x, y)/dx$. Then equation (3) has the form

$$\frac{d\psi}{dx}(x, y) = \frac{d}{dx}(x^2 + xy^2) = 0. \tag{4}$$

Integrating equation (4) we obtain

$$\psi(x, y) = x^2 + xy^2 = c, \tag{5}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. The level curves of $\psi(x, y)$ are the integral curves of equation (1). Solutions of equation (1) are defined implicitly by equation (5).

In solving equation (1) the key step was the recognition that there is a function ψ that satisfies equations (2). More generally, let the differential equation

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = 0 \tag{6}$$

be given. Suppose that we can identify a function $\psi(x, y)$ such that

$$\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x}(x, y) = M(x, y), \quad \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}(x, y) = N(x, y), \tag{7}$$

and such that $\psi(x, y) = c$ defines $y = \phi(x)$ implicitly as a differentiable function of x.[18]

When there is a function $\psi(x, y)$ such that $\psi_x = M$ and $\psi_y = N$, we can write

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}\psi(x, \phi(x))$$

and the differential equation (6) becomes

$$\frac{d}{dx}\psi(x, \phi(x)) = 0. \tag{8}$$

In this case equation (6) is said to be an **exact differential equation** because it can be expressed exactly as the derivative of a specific function. Solutions of equation (6), or the equivalent equation (8), are given implicitly by

$$\psi(x, y) = c, \tag{9}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant.

In Example 1 it was relatively easy to see that the differential equation was exact and, in fact, easy to find its solution, at least implicitly, by recognizing the required function ψ. For more complicated equations it may not be possible to do this so easily. How can we tell whether a given equation is exact, and if it is, how can we find the function $\psi(x, y)$? The following theorem answers the first question, and its proof provides a way of answering the second.

Theorem 2.6.1

Let the functions M, N, M_y, and N_x, where subscripts denote partial derivatives, be continuous in the rectangular[19] region $R: \alpha < x < \beta, \gamma < y < \delta$. Then equation (6)

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = 0$$

is an exact differential equation in R if and only if

$$M_y(x, y) = N_x(x, y) \tag{10}$$

at each point of R. That is, there exists a function ψ satisfying equations (7),

$$\psi_x(x, y) = M(x, y), \quad \psi_y(x, y) = N(x, y),$$

if and only if M and N satisfy equation (10).

The proof of this theorem has two parts. First, we show that if there is a function ψ such that equations (7) are true, then it follows that equation (10) is satisfied. Computing M_y and N_x from equations (7), we obtain

$$M_y(x, y) = \psi_{xy}(x, y), \quad N_x(x, y) = \psi_{yx}(x, y). \tag{11}$$

Since M_y and N_x are continuous, it follows that ψ_{xy} and ψ_{yx} are also continuous. This guarantees their equality, and equation (10) is valid.

We now show that if M and N satisfy equation (10), then equation (6) is exact. The proof involves the construction of a function ψ satisfying equations (7)

$$\psi_x(x, y) = M(x, y), \quad \psi_y(x, y) = N(x, y).$$

[18] While a complete discussion of when $\psi(x, y) = c$ defines $y = \phi(x)$ implicitly as a differentiable function of x is beyond the scope and focus of this course, in general terms this condition is satisfied, locally, at points (x, y), where $\partial\psi/\partial y(x, y) \neq 0$. More details can be found in most books on advanced calculus.

[19] It is not essential that the region be rectangular, only that it be simply connected. In two dimensions this means that the region has no holes in its interior. Thus, for example, rectangular or circular regions are simply connected, but an annular region is not. More details can be found in most books on advanced calculus.

We begin by integrating the first of equations (7) with respect to x, holding y constant. We obtain

$$\psi(x, y) = Q(x, y) + h(y), \tag{12}$$

where $Q(x, y)$ is any differentiable function such that $Q_x = M$. For example, we might choose

$$Q(x, y) = \int_{x_0}^{x} M(s, y)\,ds, \tag{13}$$

where x_0 is some specified constant with $\alpha < x_0 < \beta$. The function h in equation (12) is an arbitrary differentiable function of y, playing the role of the arbitrary constant (with respect to x). Now we must show that it is always possible to choose $h(y)$ so that the second of equations (7) is satisfied—that is, $\psi_y = N$. By differentiating equation (12) with respect to y and setting the result equal to $N(x, y)$, we obtain

$$\psi_y(x, y) = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial y}(x, y) + h'(y) = N(x, y).$$

Then, solving for $h'(y)$, we have

$$h'(y) = N(x, y) - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial y}(x, y). \tag{14}$$

In order for us to determine $h(y)$ from equation (14), the right-hand side of equation (14), despite its appearance, must be a function of y only. One way to show that this is true is to show that its derivative with respect to x is zero. Thus we differentiate the right-hand side of equation (14) with respect to x, obtaining the expression

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\frac{\partial Q}{\partial y}(x, y). \tag{15}$$

By interchanging the order of differentiation in the second term of equation (15), we have

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y),$$

or, since $Q_x = M$,

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}(x, y) - \frac{\partial M}{\partial y}(x, y),$$

which is zero on account of equation (10). Hence, despite its apparent form, the right-hand side of equation (14) does not, in fact, depend on x. Then we find $h(y)$ by integrating equation (14) and, upon substituting this function in equation (12), we obtain the required function $\psi(x, y)$. This completes the proof of Theorem 2.6.1.

It is possible to obtain an explicit expression for $\psi(x, y)$ in terms of integrals (see Problem 13), but in solving specific exact equations, it is usually simpler and easier just to repeat the procedure used in the preceding proof. That is, after showing that $M_y = N_x$, integrate $\psi_x = M$ with respect to x, including an arbitrary function of $h(y)$ instead of an arbitrary constant, and then differentiate the result with respect to y and set it equal to N. Finally, use this last equation to solve for $h(y)$. The next example illustrates this procedure.

EXAMPLE 2

Solve the differential equation

$$(y\cos x + 2xe^y) + (\sin x + x^2e^y - 1)y' = 0. \tag{16}$$

Solution:

By calculating M_y and N_x, we find that

$$M_y(x, y) = \cos x + 2xe^y = N_x(x, y),$$

so the given equation is exact. Thus there is a $\psi(x, y)$ such that

$$\psi_x(x, y) = y \cos x + 2xe^y,$$
$$\psi_y(x, y) = \sin x + x^2 e^y - 1.$$

Integrating the first of these equations with respect to x, we obtain

$$\psi(x, y) = y \sin x + x^2 e^y + h(y). \tag{17}$$

Next, computing ψ_y from equation (17) and setting $\psi_y = N$ gives

$$\psi_y(x, y) = \sin x + x^2 e^y + h'(y) = \sin x + x^2 e^y - 1.$$

Thus $h'(y) = -1$ and $h(y) = -y$. The constant of integration can be omitted since any solution of the preceding differential equation is satisfactory; we do not require the most general one. Substituting for $h(y)$ in equation (17) gives

$$\psi(x, y) = y \sin x + x^2 e^y - y.$$

Hence solutions of equation (16) are given implicitly by

$$y \sin x + x^2 e^y - y = c. \tag{18}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Solve the differential equation

$$(3xy + y^2) + (x^2 + xy)y' = 0. \tag{19}$$

Solution:

We have

$$M_y(x, y) = 3x + 2y, \quad N_x(x, y) = 2x + y;$$

since $M_y \neq N_x$, the given equation is not exact. To see that it cannot be solved by the procedure described above, let us seek a function ψ such that

$$\psi_x(x, y) = 3xy + y^2, \quad \psi_y(x, y) = x^2 + xy. \tag{20}$$

Integrating the first of equations (20) with respect to x gives

$$\psi(x, y) = \frac{3}{2}x^2 y + xy^2 + h(y), \tag{21}$$

where h is an arbitrary function of y only. To try to satisfy the second of equations (20), we compute ψ_y from equation (21) and set it equal to N, obtaining

$$\frac{3}{2}x^2 + 2xy + h'(y) = x^2 + xy$$

or

$$h'(y) = -\frac{1}{2}x^2 - xy. \tag{22}$$

Since the right-hand side of equation (22) depends on x as well as y, it is impossible to solve equation (22) for $h(y)$. Thus there is no $\psi(x, y)$ satisfying both of equations (20).

Integrating Factors. It is sometimes possible to convert a differential equation that is not exact into an exact differential equation by multiplying the equation by a suitable integrating factor. Recall that this is the procedure that we used in solving linear differential equations in Section 2.1. To investigate the possibility of implementing this idea more generally, let us multiply the equation

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = 0 \tag{23}$$

by a function μ and then try to choose μ so that the resulting equation

$$\mu(x, y)M(x, y) + \mu(x, y)N(x, y)y' = 0 \tag{24}$$

is exact. By Theorem 2.6.1, equation (24) is exact if and only if

$$(\mu M)_y = (\mu N)_x. \tag{25}$$

Since M and N are given functions, equation (25) states that the integrating factor μ must satisfy the first-order partial differential equation

$$M\mu_y - N\mu_x + (M_y - N_x)\mu = 0. \tag{26}$$

If a function μ satisfying equation (26) can be found, then equation (24) will be exact. The solution of equation (24) can then be obtained by the method described in the first part of this section. The solution found in this way also satisfies equation (23), since the integrating factor μ can be canceled out of equation (24).

A partial differential equation of the form (26) may have more than one solution; if this is the case, any such solution may be used as an integrating factor of equation (23). This possible nonuniqueness of the integrating factor is illustrated in Example 4.

Unfortunately, equation (26), which determines the integrating factor μ, is ordinarily at least as hard to solve as the original equation (23). Therefore, although in principle integrating factors are powerful tools for solving differential equations, in practice they can be found only in special cases. The most important situations in which simple integrating factors can be found occur when μ is a function of only one of the variables x or y, instead of both.

Let us determine conditions on M and N so that equation (23) has an integrating factor μ that depends on x only. If we assume that μ is a function of x only, then the partial derivative μ_x reduces to the ordinary derivative $d\mu/dx$ and $\mu_y = 0$. Making these substitutions in equation (26), we find that

$$\frac{d\mu}{dx} = \frac{M_y - N_x}{N}\mu. \tag{27}$$

If $(M_y - N_x)/N$ is a function of x only, then there is an integrating factor μ that also depends only on x; further, $\mu(x)$ can be found by solving differential equation (27), which is both linear and separable.

A similar procedure can be used to determine a condition under which equation (23) has an integrating factor depending only on y; see Problem 17.

EXAMPLE 4

Find an integrating factor for the equation

$$(3xy + y^2) + (x^2 + xy)y' = 0 \tag{19}$$

and then solve the equation.

Solution:

In Example 3 we showed that this equation is not exact. Let us determine whether it has an integrating factor that depends on x only. On computing the quantity $(M_y - N_x)/N$, we find that

$$\frac{M_y(x, y) - N_x(x, y)}{N(x, y)} = \frac{3x + 2y - (2x + y)}{x^2 + xy} = \frac{1}{x}. \tag{28}$$

Thus there is an integrating factor μ that is a function of x only, and it satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d\mu}{dx} = \frac{\mu}{x}. \tag{29}$$

Hence (see Problem 7 in Section 2.2)

$$\mu(x) = x. \tag{30}$$

Multiplying equation (19) by this integrating factor, we obtain

$$(3x^2y + xy^2) + (x^3 + x^2y)y' = 0. \tag{31}$$

Equation (31) is exact, since

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}(3x^2y + xy^2) = 3x^2 + 2xy = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(x^3 + x^2y).$$

Thus there is a function ψ such that

$$\psi_x(x, y) = 3x^2y + xy^2, \quad \psi_y(x, y) = x^3 + x^2y. \tag{32}$$

Integrating the first of equations (32) with respect to x, we obtain

$$\psi(x, y) = x^3 y + \frac{1}{2}x^2 y^2 + h(y).$$

Substituting this expression for $\psi(x, y)$ in the second of equations (32), we find that

$$x^3 + x^2 y + h'(y) = x^3 + x^2 y,$$

so $h'(y) = 0$ and $h(y)$ is a constant. Thus the solutions of equation (31), and hence of equation (19), are given implicitly by

$$x^3 y + \frac{1}{2}x^2 y^2 = c. \tag{33}$$

Solutions may also be found in explicit form since equation (33) is quadratic in y.

You may also verify that a second integrating factor for equation (19) is

$$\mu(x, y) = \frac{1}{xy(2x + y)}$$

and that the same solution is obtained, though with much greater difficulty, if this integrating factor is used (see Problem 22).

Problems

Determine whether each of the equations in Problems 1 through 8 is exact. If it is exact, find the solution.

1. $(2x + 3) + (2y - 2)y' = 0$

2. $(2x + 4y) + (2x - 2y)y' = 0$

3. $(3x^2 - 2xy + 2) + (6y^2 - x^2 + 3)y' = 0$

4. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{ax + by}{bx + cy}$

5. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{ax - by}{bx - cy}$

6. $(ye^{xy}\cos(2x) - 2e^{xy}\sin(2x) + 2x) + (xe^{xy}\cos(2x) - 3)y' = 0$

7. $(y/x + 6x) + (\ln x - 2)y' = 0, \quad x > 0$

8. $\dfrac{x}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}} + \dfrac{y}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0$

In each of Problems 9 and 10, solve the given initial value problem and determine at least approximately where the solution is valid.

9. $(2x - y) + (2y - x)y' = 0, \quad y(1) = 3$

10. $(9x^2 + y - 1) - (4y - x)y' = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

In each of Problems 11 and 12, find the value of b for which the given equation is exact, and then solve it using that value of b.

11. $(xy^2 + bx^2 y) + (x + y)x^2 y' = 0$

12. $(ye^{2xy} + x) + bxe^{2xy}y' = 0$

13. Assume that equation (6) meets the requirements of Theorem 2.6.1 in a rectangle R and is therefore exact. Show that a possible function $\psi(x, y)$ is

$$\psi(x, y) = \int_{x_0}^{x} M(s, y_0)\, ds + \int_{y_0}^{y} N(x, t)\, dt,$$

where (x_0, y_0) is a point in R.

14. Show that any separable equation

$$M(x) + N(y)y' = 0$$

is also exact.

In each of Problems 15 and 16, show that the given equation is not exact but becomes exact when multiplied by the given integrating factor. Then solve the equation.

15. $x^2 y^3 + x(1 + y^2)y' = 0, \quad \mu(x, y) = 1/(xy^3)$

16. $(x + 2)\sin y + (x\cos y)y' = 0, \quad \mu(x, y) = xe^x$

17. Show that if $(N_x - M_y)/M = Q$, where Q is a function of y only, then the differential equation

$$M + Ny' = 0$$

has an integrating factor of the form

$$\mu(y) = \exp \int Q(y)\, dy.$$

In each of Problems 18 through 21, find an integrating factor and solve the given equation.

18. $(3x^2 y + 2xy + y^3) + (x^2 + y^2)y' = 0$

19. $y' = e^{2x} + y - 1$

20. $1 + (x/y - \sin y)y' = 0$

21. $y + (2xy - e^{-2y})y' = 0$

22. Solve the differential equation

$$(3xy + y^2) + (x^2 + xy)y' = 0$$

using the integrating factor $\mu(x, y) = (xy(2x + y))^{-1}$. Verify that the solution is the same as that obtained in Example 4 with a different integrating factor.

2.7 Numerical Approximations: Euler's Method

Recall two important facts about the first-order initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{1}$$

First, if f and $\partial f / \partial y$ are continuous, then the initial value problem (1) has a unique solution $y = \phi(t)$ in some interval surrounding the initial point $t = t_0$. Second, it is usually not possible to find the solution ϕ by symbolic manipulations of the differential equation. Up to now we have considered the main exceptions to the latter statement: differential equations that are linear, separable, or exact, or that can be transformed into one of these types. Nevertheless, it remains true that solutions of the vast majority of first-order initial value problems cannot be found by analytical means, such as those considered in the first part of this chapter.

Therefore, it is important to be able to approach the problem in other ways. As we have already seen, one of these ways is to draw a direction field for the differential equation (which does not involve solving the equation) and then to visualize the behavior of solutions from the direction field. This has the advantage of being a relatively simple process, even for complicated differential equations. However, it does not lend itself to quantitative computations or comparisons, and this is often a critical shortcoming.

For example, Figure 2.7.1 shows a direction field for the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = 3 - 2t - 0.5y. \tag{2}$$

From the direction field you can visualize the behavior of solutions on the rectangle shown in the figure. On this rectangle a solution starting at a point on the y-axis initially increases with t, but it soon reaches a maximum value and then begins to decrease as t increases further.

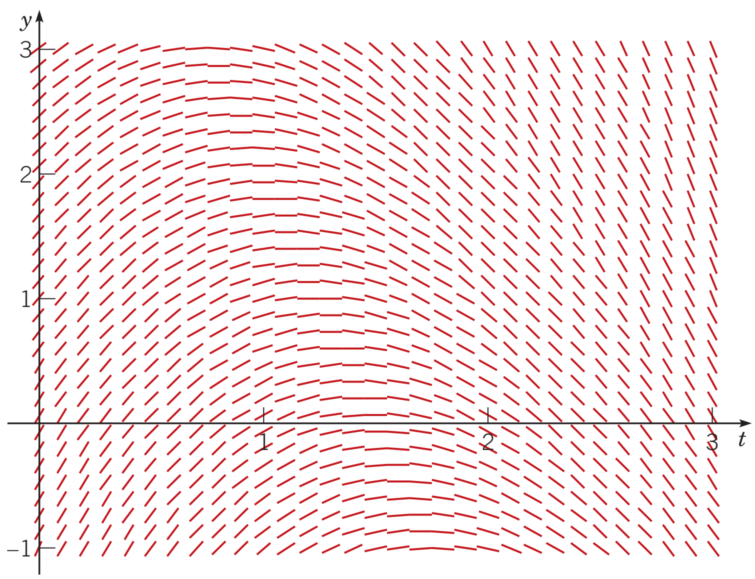


FIGURE 2.7.1 A direction field for equation (2): $dy/dt = 3 - 2t - 0.5y$.

You may also observe that in Figure 2.7.1 many tangent line segments at successive values of t almost touch each other. It takes only a bit of imagination to consider starting at a point on the y-axis and linking line segments for successive values of t in the grid, thereby producing a piecewise linear graph. Such a graph would apparently be an approximation to a solution of the differential equation. To convert this idea into a useful method for generating approximate solutions, we must answer several questions, including the following:

1. Can we carry out the linking of tangent lines in a systematic and straightforward manner?
2. If so, does the resulting piecewise linear function provide an approximation to an actual solution of the differential equation?
3. If so, can we assess the accuracy of the approximation? That is, can we estimate how far the approximation deviates from the solution itself?

It turns out that the answer to each of these questions is affirmative. The resulting method was originated by Euler about 1768 and is referred to as the **tangent line method** or the **Euler method**. We will deal with the first two questions in this section, but will defer a systematic discussion of the third question until Chapter 8.

To see how the Euler method works, let us consider how the tangent lines might be used to approximate the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of initial value problem (1) near $t = t_0$. We know that the solution passes through the initial point (t_0, y_0), and from the differential equation, we also know that its slope at this point is $f(t_0, y_0)$. Thus we can write down an equation for the line tangent to the solution curve at (t_0, y_0), namely,

$$y = y_0 + f(t_0, y_0)(t - t_0). \tag{3}$$

The tangent line is a good approximation to the actual solution curve on an interval short enough so that the slope of the solution does not change appreciably from its value at the initial point; see Figure 2.7.2. Thus, if t_1 is close enough to t_0, we can approximate $\phi(t_1)$ by the value y_1 determined by substituting $t = t_1$ into the tangent line approximation at $t = t_0$; thus

$$y_1 = y_0 + f(t_0, y_0)(t_1 - t_0). \tag{4}$$

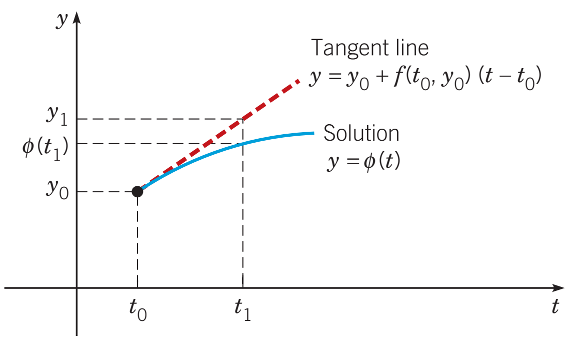


FIGURE 2.7.2 A tangent line approximation of $y' = f(t, y)$ at (t_0, y_0).

To proceed further, we can try to repeat the process. Unfortunately, we do not know the value $\phi(t_1)$ of the solution at t_1. The best we can do is to use the approximate value y_1 instead. Thus we construct the line through (t_1, y_1) with the slope $f(t_1, y_1)$,

$$y = y_1 + f(t_1, y_1)(t - t_1). \tag{5}$$

To approximate the value of $\phi(t)$ at a nearby point t_2, we use equation (5) instead of equation (3), obtaining

$$y_2 = y_1 + f(t_1, y_1)(t_2 - t_1). \tag{6}$$

Continuing in this manner, we use the value of y calculated at each step to determine the slope of the approximation for the next step. The general expression for the tangent line starting at (t_n, y_n) is

$$y = y_n + f(t_n, y_n)(t - t_n); \tag{7}$$

hence the approximate value y_{n+1} at t_{n+1} in terms of t_n, t_{n+1}, and y_n is

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + f(t_n, y_n)(t_{n+1} - t_n), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{8}$$

If we introduce the notation $f_n = f(t_n, y_n)$, then we can rewrite equation (8) as

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + f_n \cdot (t_{n+1} - t_n), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots . \tag{9}$$

Finally, if we assume that there is a uniform step size h between the points $t_0, t_1, t_2, \ldots$, then $t_{n+1} = t_n + h$ for each n, and we obtain Euler's formula in the form

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + f_n h, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots . \tag{10}$$

To use Euler's method, you repeatedly evaluate equation (9) or equation (10), depending on whether or not the step size is constant, using the result of each step to execute the next step. In this way you generate a sequence of values $y_1, y_2, y_3, \ldots$ that approximate the values of the solution $\phi(t)$ at the points $t_1, t_2, t_3, \ldots$. If, instead of a sequence of points, you need a function to approximate the solution $\phi(t)$, then you can use the piecewise linear function constructed from the collection of tangent line segments. That is, let y be given in $[t_0, t_1]$ by equation (7) with $n = 0$, in $[t_1, t_2]$ by equation (7) with $n = 1$, and so on.

EXAMPLE 1

Consider the initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = 3 - 2t - 0.5y, \quad y(0) = 1. \tag{11}$$

Use Euler's method with step size $h = 0.2$ to find approximate values of the solution of initial value problem (9) at $t = 0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8$, and 1. Compare them with the corresponding values of the actual solution of the initial value problem.

Solution:

Note that the differential equation in the given initial value problem is the same as in equation (2); its direction field is shown in Figure 2.7.1. Before applying Euler's method, observe that this differential equation is linear, so it can be solved as in Section 2.1, using the integrating factor $e^{t/2}$. The resulting solution of the initial value problem (9) is

$$y = \phi(t) = 14 - 4t - 13e^{-t/2}. \tag{12}$$

We will use this information to assess how the approximate solution obtained by Euler's method compares with the exact solution.

To approximate this solution by Euler's method, note that $f(t, y) = 3 - 2t - 0.5y$. Using the initial values $t_0 = 0$ and $y_0 = 1$, we find that

$$f_0 = f(t_0, y_0) = f(0, 1) = 3 - 0 - 0.5 = 2.5$$

and then, from equation (3), the tangent line approximation near $t = 0$ is

$$y = 1 + 2.5(t - 0) = 1 + 2.5t. \tag{13}$$

Setting $t = 0.2$ in equation (13), we find the approximate value y_1 of the solution at $t = 0.2$, namely,

$$y_1 = 1 + (2.5)(0.2) = 1.5.$$

At the next step we have

$$f_1 = f(t_1, y_1) = f(0.2, 1.5) = 3 - 2(0.2) - (0.5)(1.5) = 3 - 0.4 - 0.75 = 1.85.$$

Then the tangent line approximation near $t = 0.2$ is

$$y = 1.5 + 1.85(t - 0.2) = 1.13 + 1.85t. \tag{14}$$

Evaluating the expression in equation (14) for $t = 0.4$, we obtain

$$y_2 = 1.13 + 1.85(0.4) = 1.87.$$

Repeating this computational procedure three more times, we obtain the results shown in Table 2.7.1.

TABLE 2.7.1 Results of Euler's Method with $h = 0.2$ for $y' = 3 - 2t - 0.5y, \quad y(0) = 1$

n	t_n	y_n	$f_n = f(t_n, y_n)$	Tangent Line	Exact $y(t_n)$
0	0.0	1.00000	2.5	$y = 1 + 2.5(t - 0)$	1.00000
1	0.2	1.50000	1.85	$y = 1.5 + 1.85(t - 0.2)$	1.43711
2	0.4	1.87000	1.265	$y = 1.87 + 1.265(t - 0.4)$	1.75650
3	0.6	2.12300	0.7385	$y = 2.123 + 0.7385(t - 0.6)$	1.96936
4	0.8	2.27070	0.26465	$y = 2.2707 + 0.26465(t - 0.8)$	2.08584
5	1.0	2.32363			2.11510

The second column contains the t-values separated by the step size $h = 0.2$. The third column shows the corresponding y-values computed from Euler's formula (10). Column four contains the slopes f_n of the tangent line at the current point, (t_n, y_n). In the fifth column are the tangent line approximations found from equation (7). The sixth column contains values of the solution (12) of the initial value problem (9), correct to five decimal places. The solution (12) and the tangent line approximation are also plotted in Figure 2.7.3.

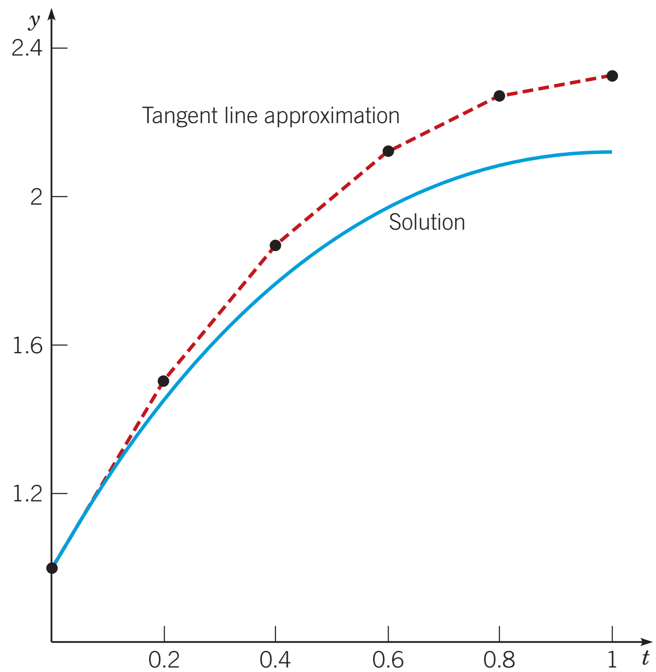


FIGURE 2.7.3 Plots of the solution and a tangent line approximation with $h = 0.2$ for the initial value problem (9): $dy/dt = 3 - 2t - 0.5y, \; y(0) = 1$.

From Table 2.7.1 and Figure 2.7.3 we see that the approximations given by Euler's method for this problem are greater than the corresponding values of the actual solution. This is because the graph of the solution is concave down and therefore the tangent line approximations lie above the graph.

The accuracy of the approximations in this example is not good enough to be satisfactory in a typical scientific or engineering application. For example, at $t = 1$ the error in the approximation is $2.32363 - 2.11510 = 0.20853$, which is a percentage error of about 9.86% relative to the exact solution. One way to achieve more accurate results is to use a smaller step size, with a corresponding increase in the number of computational steps. We explore this possibility in the next example.

Of course, computations such as those in Example 1 and in the other examples in this section are usually done on a computer. Some software packages include code for the Euler method, while others do not. In any case, it is straightforward to write a computer program that will carry out the calculations required to produce results such as those in Table 2.7.1.

Basically, what is required is a loop that will evaluate equation (10) repetitively, along with suitable instructions for input and output. The output can be a list of numbers, as in Table 2.7.1, or a plot, as in Figure 2.7.3. The specific instructions can be written in any high-level programming language with which you are familiar.

EXAMPLE 2

Consider again the initial value problem (9)

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = 3 - 2t - 0.5y, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

Use Euler's method with various step sizes to calculate approximate values of the solution for $0 \le t \le 5$. Compare the calculated results with the corresponding values of the exact solution (12)

$$y = 14 - 4t - 13e^{-t/2}.$$

Solution:

We used step sizes $h = 0.1$, 0.05, 0.025, and 0.01, corresponding to 50, 100, 200, and 500 steps, respectively, to go from $t = 0$ to $t = 5$. The results of these calculations, along with the values of the exact solution, are summarized in Table 2.7.2. All computed entries are rounded to four decimal places, although more digits were retained in the intermediate calculations.

TABLE 2.7.2 Comparison of the Exact Solution with Euler's Method for Several Step Sizes h for $y' = 3 - 2t - 0.5y, \quad y(0) = 1$

t	$h = 0.1$	$h = 0.05$	$h = 0.025$	$h = 0.01$	Exact
0.0	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000
1.0	2.2164	2.1651	2.1399	2.1250	2.1151
2.0	1.3397	1.2780	1.2476	1.2295	1.2176
3.0	−0.7903	−0.8459	−0.8734	−0.8898	−0.9007
4.0	−3.6707	−3.7152	−3.7373	−3.7506	−3.7594
5.0	−7.0003	−7.0337	−7.0504	−7.0604	−7.0671

What conclusions can we draw from the data in Table 2.7.2? The most important observation is that, for a fixed value of t, the computed approximate values become more accurate as the step size h decreases. You can see this by reading across a particular row in the table from left to right. This is what we would expect, of course, but it is encouraging that the data confirm our expectations. For example, for $t = 2$ the approximate value with $h = 0.1$ is too large by 0.1221 (about 10%), whereas the value with $h = 0.01$ is too large by only 0.0119 (about 1%). In this case, reducing the step size by a factor of 10 (and performing 10 times as many computations) also reduces the error by a factor of about 10. Comparing the errors for other pairs of values in the table confirms that this relation between step size and error holds for them also: reducing the step size by a given factor also reduces the error by approximately the same factor. Does this mean that for the Euler method the error is approximately proportional to the step size? Of course, one example does not establish such a general result, but it is at least an interesting conjecture.[20]

A second observation from Table 2.7.2 is that, for a fixed step size h, the approximations become more accurate as t increases, at least for $t > 2$. For instance, for $h = 0.1$ the error for $t = 5$ is only 0.0668, which is a little more than one-half of the error at $t = 2$. We will return to this matter later in this section.

All in all, Euler's method seems to work rather well for this problem. Reasonably good results are obtained even for a moderately large step size $h = 0.1$, and the approximation can be improved by decreasing h.

[20] A more detailed discussion of the errors in using the Euler method appears in Chapter 8.

Let us now look at another example.

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = 4 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1. \tag{15}$$

The general solution of this differential equation was found in Example 2 of Section 2.1, and the solution of the initial value problem (11) is

$$y = -\frac{7}{4} + \frac{1}{2}t + \frac{11}{4}e^{2t}. \tag{16}$$

Use Euler's method with several step sizes to find approximate values of the solution on the interval $0 \le t \le 5$. Compare the results with the corresponding values of the solution (16).

Solution:

Using the same range of step sizes as in Example 2, we obtain the results presented in Table 2.7.3.

TABLE 2.7.3 Comparison of the Exact Solution with Euler's Method for Several Step Sizes h for $y' = 4 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

t	$h = 0.1$	$h = 0.05$	$h = 0.025$	$h = 0.01$	Exact
0.0	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
1.0	15.77728	17.25062	18.10997	18.67278	19.06990
2.0	104.6784	123.7130	135.5440	143.5835	149.3949
3.0	652.5349	837.0745	959.2580	1045.395	1109.179
4.0	4042.122	5633.351	6755.175	7575.577	8197.884
5.0	25026.95	37897.43	47555.35	54881.32	60573.53

The data in Table 2.7.3 again confirm our expectation that, for a given value of t, accuracy improves as the step size h is reduced. For example, for $t = 1$ the percentage error diminishes from 17.3% when $h = 0.1$ to 2.1% when $h = 0.01$. However, the error increases fairly rapidly as t increases for a fixed h. Even for $h = 0.01$, the error at $t = 5$ is 9.4%, and it is much greater for larger step sizes. Of course, the accuracy that is needed depends on the purpose for which the results are intended, but the errors in Table 2.7.3 are too large for most scientific or engineering applications. To improve the situation, we might either try even smaller step sizes or else restrict the computations to a rather short interval away from the initial point. Nevertheless, it is clear that Euler's method is much less effective in this example than in Example 2.

To understand better what is happening in these examples, let us look again at Euler's method for the general initial value problem (1)

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0,$$

whose exact solution we denote by $\phi(t)$. Recall that a first-order differential equation has an infinite family of solutions, indexed by an arbitrary constant c, and that the initial condition picks out one member of this infinite family by determining the value of c. Thus in the infinite family of solutions, $\phi(t)$ is the one solution that satisfies the initial condition $\phi(t_0) = y_0$.

At the first step Euler's method uses the tangent line approximation to the graph of $y = \phi(t)$ passing through the initial point (t_0, y_0), and this produces the approximate value y_1 at t_1. Usually, $y_1 \neq \phi(t_1)$, so at the second step Euler's method uses the tangent line approximation not to $y = \phi(t)$, but to a nearby solution $y = \phi_1(t)$ that passes through the point (t_1, y_1). So it is at each subsequent step. Euler's method uses a succession of tangent line approximations to a sequence of different solutions $\phi(t), \phi_1(t), \phi_2(t), \ldots$ of the differential equation. At each step the tangent line is constructed to the solution passing through the point determined by the result of the preceding step, as shown in Figure 2.7.4. The quality of the approximation after many steps depends strongly on the behavior of the set of solutions that pass through the points (t_n, y_n) for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$.

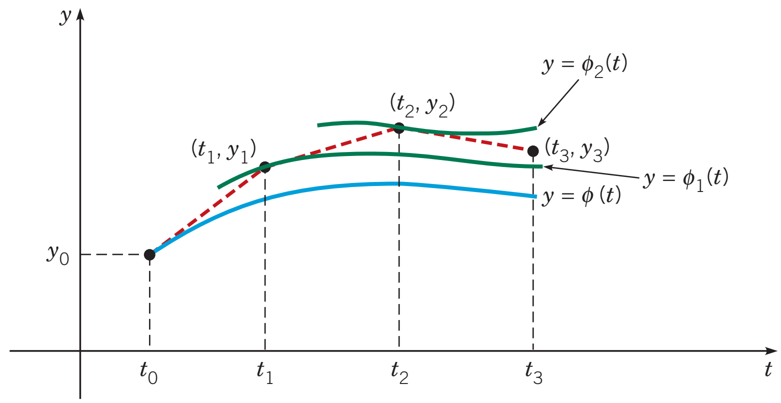


FIGURE 2.7.4 The Euler method.

In Example 2 the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = 14 - 4t + ce^{-t/2} \tag{17}$$

and the solution of the initial value problem (9) corresponds to $c = -13$. The family of solutions (17) is a converging family since the term involving the arbitrary constant c approaches zero as $t \to \infty$. It does not matter very much which solutions we are approximating by tangent lines in the implementation of Euler's method, since all the solutions are getting closer and closer to each other as t increases.

On the other hand, in Example 3 the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = -\frac{7}{4} + \frac{1}{2}t + ce^{2t}, \tag{18}$$

and, because the term involving the arbitrary constant c grows without bound as $t \to \infty$, this is a diverging family. Note that solutions corresponding to two nearby values of c become arbitrarily far apart as t increases. In Example 3 we are trying approximate the solution for $c = 11/4$, but in the use of Euler's method we are actually at each step following another solution that separates from the desired one faster and faster as t increases. This explains why the errors in Example 3 are so much larger than those in Example 2.

In using a numerical procedure such as the Euler method, you must always keep in mind the question of whether the results are accurate enough to be useful. In the preceding examples, the accuracy of the numerical results could be determined directly by a comparison with the solution obtained analytically. Of course, usually the analytical solution is not available if a numerical procedure is to be employed, so what we usually need are bounds for, or at least estimates of, the error that do not require a knowledge of the exact solution. You should also keep in mind that the best that we can expect, or hope for, from a numerical approximation is that it reflects the behavior of the actual solution. Thus a member of a diverging family of solutions will always be harder to approximate than a member of a converging family.

If you wish to read more about numerical approximations to solutions of initial value problems, you may go directly to Chapter 8 at this point. There, we present some information on the analysis of errors and also discuss several algorithms that are computationally much more efficient than the Euler method.

Problems

Note about Variations of Computed Results. Most of the problems in this section call for fairly extensive numerical computations. To handle these problems you need suitable computing hardware and software. Keep in mind that numerical results may vary somewhat, depending on how your program is constructed and on how your computer executes arithmetic steps, rounds off, and so forth. Minor variations in the last decimal place may be due to such causes and do not necessarily indicate that something is amiss. Answers in the back of the book are recorded to six digits in most cases, although more digits were retained in the intermediate calculations.

In each of Problems 1 through 4:

N **a.** Find approximate values of the solution of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3,$ and 0.4 using the Euler method with $h = 0.1$.

N **b.** Repeat part (a) with $h = 0.05$. Compare the results with those found in a.

N **c.** Repeat part a with $h = 0.025$. Compare the results with those found in a and b.
N **d.** Find the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the given problem and evaluate $\phi(t)$ at $t = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3$, and 0.4. Compare these values with the results of a, b, and c.

1. $y' = 3 + t - y, \quad y(0) = 1$

2. $y' = 2y - 1, \quad y(0) = 1$

3. $y' = 0.5 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

4. $y' = 3\cos t - 2y, \quad y(0) = 0$

In each of Problems 5 through 8, draw a direction field for the given differential equation and state whether you think that the solutions are converging or diverging.

G **5.** $y' = 5 - 3\sqrt{y}$

G **6.** $y' = y(3 - ty)$

G **7.** $y' = -ty + 0.1y^3$

G **8.** $y' = t^2 + y^2$

In each of Problems 9 and 10, use Euler's method to find approximate values of the solution of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.5$, 1, 1.5, 2, 2.5, and 3: (a) With $h = 0.1$, (b) With $h = 0.05$, (c) With $h = 0.025$, (d) With $h = 0.01$.

N **9.** $y' = 5 - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

N **10.** $y' = y(3 - ty), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

11. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = \frac{3t^2}{3y^2 - 4}, \quad y(1) = 0.$$

N **a.** Use Euler's method with $h = 0.1$ to obtain approximate values of the solution at $t = 1.2, 1.4, 1.6$, and 1.8.
N **b.** Repeat part a with $h = 0.05$.
c. Compare the results of parts a and b. Note that they are reasonably close for $t = 1.2, 1.4$, and 1.6 but are quite different for $t = 1.8$. Also note (from the differential equation) that the line tangent to the solution is parallel to the y-axis when $y = \pm 2/\sqrt{3} \cong \pm 1.155$. Explain how this might cause such a difference in the calculated values.

N **12.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = t^2 + y^2, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

Use Euler's method with $h = 0.1, 0.05, 0.025$, and 0.01 to explore the solution of this problem for $0 \le t \le 1$. What is your best estimate of the value of the solution at $t = 0.8$? At $t = 1$? Are your results consistent with the direction field in Problem 8?

13. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = -ty + 0.1y^3, \quad y(0) = \alpha,$$

where α is a given number.

G **a.** Draw a direction field for the differential equation (or reexamine the one from Problem 7). Observe that there is a critical value of α in the interval $2 \le \alpha \le 3$ that separates converging solutions from diverging ones. Call this critical value α_0.
N **b.** Use Euler's method with $h = 0.01$ to estimate α_0. Do this by restricting α_0 to an interval $[a, b]$, where $b - a = 0.01$.

14. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = y^2 - t^2, \quad y(0) = \alpha,$$

where α is a given number.

G **a.** Draw a direction field for the differential equation. Note that there is a critical value of α in the interval $0 \le \alpha \le 1$ that separates converging solutions from diverging ones. Call this critical value α_0.
N **b.** Use Euler's method with $h = 0.01$ to estimate α_0. Do this by restricting α_0 to an interval $[a, b]$, where $b - a = 0.01$.

15. Convergence of Euler's Method. It can be shown that under suitable conditions on f, the numerical approximation generated by the Euler method for the initial value problem $y' = f(t, y)$, $y(t_0) = y_0$ converges to the exact solution as the step size h decreases. This is illustrated by the following example. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = 1 - t + y, \quad y(t_0) = y_0.$$

a. Show that the exact solution is $y = \phi(t) = (y_0 - t_0)e^{t - t_0} + t$.
N **b.** Using the Euler formula, show that

$$y_k = (1 + h)y_{k-1} + h - ht_{k-1}, \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots.$$

c. Noting that $y_1 = (1 + h)(y_0 - t_0) + t_1$, show by induction that

$$y_n = (1 + h)^n (y_0 - t_0) + t_n \tag{19}$$

for each positive integer n.
d. Consider a fixed point $t > t_0$ and for a given n choose $h = (t - t_0)/n$. Then $t_n = t$ for every n. Note also that $h \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$. By substituting for h in equation (19) and letting $n \to \infty$, show that $y_n \to \phi(t)$ as $n \to \infty$.
Hint: $\lim_{n \to \infty} (1 + a/n)^n = e^a$.

In each of Problems 16 and 17, use the technique discussed in Problem 15 to show that the approximation obtained by the Euler method converges to the exact solution at any fixed point as $h \to 0$.

16. $y' = y, \quad y(0) = 1$

17. $y' = 2y - 1, \quad y(0) = 1 \quad$ *Hint:* $y_1 = (1 + 2h)/2 + 1/2$

2.8 The Existence and Uniqueness Theorem

In this section we discuss the proof of Theorem 2.4.2, the fundamental existence and uniqueness theorem for first-order initial value problems. Recall that this theorem states that under certain conditions on $f(t, y)$, the initial value problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0 \tag{1}$$

has a unique solution in some interval containing the point t_0.

In some cases (for example, if the differential equation is linear), the existence of a solution of the initial value problem (1) can be established directly by actually solving the problem and exhibiting a formula for the solution. However, in general, this approach is not feasible because there is no method of solving the differential equation that applies in all cases. Therefore, for the general case, it is necessary to adopt an indirect approach that demonstrates the existence of a solution of initial value problem (1) but usually does not provide a practical means of finding it. The heart of this method is the construction of a sequence of functions that converges to a limit function satisfying the initial value problem, although the members of the sequence individually do not. As a rule, it is impossible to compute explicitly more than a few members of the sequence; therefore, the limit function can be determined only in rare cases. Nevertheless, under the restrictions on $f(t, y)$ stated in Theorem 2.4.2, it is possible to show that the sequence in question converges and that the limit function has the desired properties. The argument is fairly intricate and depends, in part, on techniques and results that are usually encountered for the first time in a course on advanced calculus. Consequently, we do not go into all the details of the proof here; we do, however, indicate its main features and point out some of the difficulties that must be overcome.

First of all, we note that it is sufficient to consider the problem in which the initial point (t_0, y_0) is the origin; that is, we consider the problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(0) = 0. \tag{2}$$

If some other initial point is given, then we can always make a preliminary change of variables, corresponding to a translation of the coordinate axes, that will take the given point (t_0, y_0) into the origin. The existence and uniqueness theorem can now be stated in the following way.

Theorem 2.8.1 | Existence and Uniqueness of Solutions of $y' = f(t, y), y(0) = 0$

If f and $\partial f/\partial y$ are continuous in a rectangle $R: |t| \leq a$, $|y| \leq b$, then there is some interval $|t| \leq h \leq a$ in which there exists a unique solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the initial value problem (2).

For the method of proof discussed here it is necessary to transform initial value problem (2) into a more convenient form. If we suppose temporarily that there is a differentiable function $y = \phi(t)$ that satisfies the initial value problem, then $f(t, \phi(t))$ is a continuous function of t only. Hence we can integrate $y' = f(t, y)$ from the initial point $t = 0$ to an arbitrary value of t, obtaining

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t f(s, \phi(s))\, ds, \tag{3}$$

where we have made use of the initial condition $\phi(0) = 0$. We also denote the dummy variable of integration by s.

Since equation (3) contains an integral of the unknown function ϕ, it is called an **integral equation**. This integral equation is not a formula for the solution of the initial value problem, but it does provide another relation satisfied by any solution of equations (2). Conversely, suppose that there is a continuous function $y = \phi(t)$ that satisfies the integral equation (3); then this function also satisfies the initial value problem (2). To show this, we first substitute zero for t in equation (3), which shows that the initial condition is satisfied. Further, since the integrand in equation (3) is continuous, it follows from the fundamental theorem of calculus that ϕ is differentiable and that $\phi'(t) = f(t, \phi(t))$. Therefore, the initial value problem and the integral equation are equivalent in the sense that any solution of one is also a solution of the other. It is more convenient to show that there is a unique solution of the integral equation in a certain interval $|t| \leq h$. The same conclusion also holds for the initial value problem (2).

One method of showing that the integral equation (3) has a unique solution is known as the **method of successive approximations** or Picard's[21] **iteration method**. In using this method,

[21] Charles-Émile Picard (1856–1914) was appointed professor at the Sorbonne before the age of 30. Except for Henri Poincaré, he is perhaps the most distinguished French mathematician of his generation. He is known for important theorems in complex variables and algebraic geometry as well as differential equations. A special case of the method of successive approximations was first published by Liouville in 1838. However, the method is usually credited to Picard, who established it in a general and widely applicable form in a series of papers beginning in 1890.

we start by choosing an initial function ϕ_0, either arbitrarily or to approximate in some way the solution of the initial value problem. The simplest choice is

$$\phi_0(t) = 0; \tag{4}$$

then ϕ_0 at least satisfies the initial condition in equations (2), although presumably not the differential equation. The next approximation ϕ_1 is obtained by substituting $\phi_0(s)$ for $\phi(s)$ in the right-hand side of equation (3) and calling the result of this operation $\phi_1(t)$. Thus

$$\phi_1(t) = \int_0^t f\big(s, \phi_0(s)\big)\, ds. \tag{5}$$

Similarly, ϕ_2 is obtained from ϕ_1:

$$\phi_2(t) = \int_0^t f\big(s, \phi_1(s)\big)\, ds, \tag{6}$$

and, in general,

$$\phi_{n+1}(t) = \int_0^t f(s, \phi_n(s))\, ds. \tag{7}$$

In this manner we generate the sequence of functions $\{\phi_n\} = \{\phi_0, \phi_1, \phi_2, \ldots, \phi_n, \ldots\}$.

Each member of the sequence satisfies the initial condition, but in general none satisfies the differential equation. However, if at some stage, say, for $n = k$, we find that $\phi_{k+1}(t) = \phi_k(t)$, then it follows that ϕ_k is a solution of the integral equation (3). Hence ϕ_k is also a solution of the initial value problem (2), and the sequence is terminated at this point. In general, this does not occur, and it is necessary to consider the entire infinite sequence.

To establish Theorem 2.8.1, we must answer four principal questions:

1. Do all members of the sequence $\{\phi_n\}$ exist, or may the process break down at some stage?
2. Does the sequence converge?
3. What are the properties of the limit function? In particular, does it satisfy the integral equation (3) and hence the initial value problem (2)?
4. Is this the only solution, or may there be others?

We first show how these questions can be answered in a specific and relatively simple example and then comment on some of the difficulties that may be encountered in the general case.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = 2t(1 + y), \quad y(0) = 0 \tag{8}$$

by the method of successive approximations.

Solution:

Note first that if $y = \phi(t)$, then the corresponding integral equation is

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t 2s(1 + \phi(s))\, ds. \tag{9}$$

If the initial approximation is $\phi_0(t) = 0$, it follows that

$$\phi_1(t) = \int_0^t 2s\big(1 + \phi_0(s)\big)\, ds = \int_0^t 2s ds = t^2. \tag{10}$$

Similarly,

$$\phi_2(t) = \int_0^t 2s\big(1 + \phi_1(s)\big) ds = \int_0^t 2s(1 + s^2) ds = t^2 + \frac{t^4}{2} \tag{11}$$

and

$$\phi_3(t) = \int_0^t 2s(1+\phi_2(s))ds = \int_0^t 2s\left(1+s^2+\frac{s^4}{2}\right)ds = t^2+\frac{t^4}{2}+\frac{t^6}{2\cdot 3}. \tag{12}$$

Equations (10), (11), and (12) suggest that

$$\phi_n(t) = t^2+\frac{t^4}{2!}+\frac{t^6}{3!}+\cdots+\frac{t^{2n}}{n!} \tag{13}$$

for each $n \geq 1$, and this result can be established by mathematical induction, as follows. Equation (13) is certainly true for $n = 1$; see equation (10). We must show that if it is true for $n = k$, then it also holds for $n = k+1$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi_{k+1}(t) &= \int_0^t 2s(1+\phi_k(s))\,ds \\
&= \int_0^t 2s\left(1+s^2+\frac{s^4}{2!}+\cdots+\frac{s^{2k}}{k!}\right)ds \\
&= \int_0^t 2s+2s^3+\frac{2s^5}{2!}+\cdots+\frac{2s^{2k+1}}{k!}\,ds \\
&= t^2+\frac{t^4}{2!}+\frac{t^6}{3!}+\cdots+\frac{t^{2k+2}}{(k+1)!},
\end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

and the inductive proof is complete.

A plot of the first four iterates, $\phi_1(t)$, $\phi_2(t)$, $\phi_3(t)$, and $\phi_4(t)$, is shown in Figure 2.8.1. As k increases, the iterates seem to remain close over a gradually increasing interval, suggesting eventual convergence to a limit function.

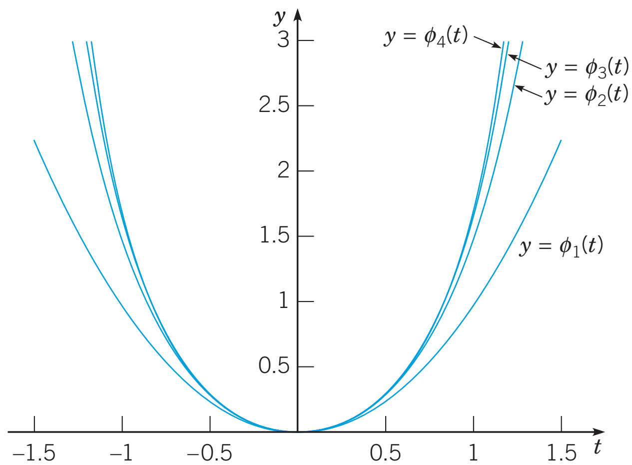


FIGURE 2.8.1 Plots of the first four Picard iterates $y = \phi_1(t), \ldots, y = \phi_4(t)$ for Example 1: $dy/dt = 2t(1+y)$, $y(0) = 0$.

It follows from equation (13) that $\phi_n(t)$ is the n^{th} partial sum of the infinite series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{t^{2k}}{k!}; \tag{15}$$

hence $\lim\limits_{n\to\infty}\phi_n(t)$ exists if and only if the series (15) converges. Applying the ratio test, we see that, for each t,

$$\left|\frac{t^{2k+2}}{(k+1)!}\,\frac{k!}{t^{2k}}\right| = \frac{t^2}{k+1} \to 0 \text{ as } k\to\infty. \tag{16}$$

Thus the interval of convergence for series (15) is the entire t-axis. This means its sum $\phi(t)$ is the limit of the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ for every value of t. Further, since the series (15) is a Taylor series, it can be differentiated or integrated term-by-term for all values of t. Therefore, we can verify by direct computation that $\phi(t) = \sum\limits_{k=1}^{\infty} t^{2k}/k!$ is a solution of the integral equation (9). Alternatively, by substituting $\phi(t)$ for y in equations (8), we can verify that this function satisfies the initial value problem (6). In this example it is also possible, from the series (15), to identify the solution $\phi(t)$ in terms of elementary functions, namely, $\phi(t) = e^{t^2} - 1$. (See Problem 13.) However, this is not necessary for the discussion of existence and uniqueness.

Explicit knowledge of $\phi(t)$ does make it possible to visualize the convergence of the sequence of iterates more clearly by plotting the difference $e_k(t) = \phi(t) - \phi_k(t)$ for various values of k. Figure 2.8.2 shows this difference for $k = 1, 2, 3, 4$. This figure clearly illustrates the gradually increasing interval over which successive iterates provide a good approximation to the solution of the initial value problem.

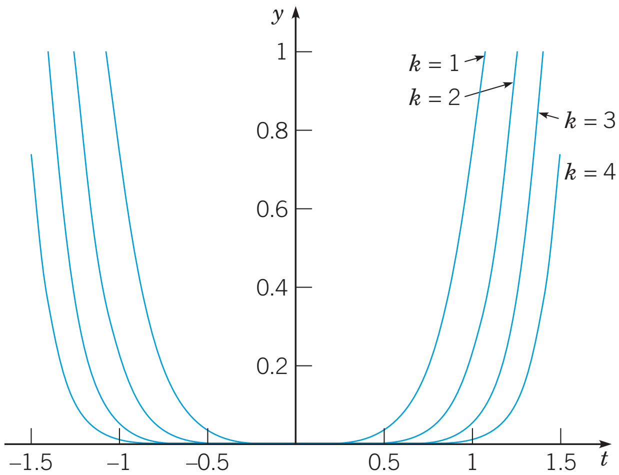


FIGURE 2.8.2 Plots of $y = e_k(t) = \phi(t) - \phi_k(t)$ for Example 1 for $k = 1, \ldots, 4$.

Finally, to deal with the question of uniqueness, let us suppose that the initial value problem has two different solutions ϕ and ψ. The assumption that ϕ and ψ are different means there is at least one value of t for which $\phi(t) - \psi(t) \neq 0$. Also, since ϕ and ψ both satisfy the integral equation (9), we have by subtraction (and the linearity of integration) that

$$\phi(t) - \psi(t) = \int_0^t 2s(\phi(s) - \psi(s))ds.$$

Taking absolute values of both sides, we have, if $t > 0$,

$$|\phi(t) - \psi(t)| = \left| \int_0^t 2s(\phi(s) - \psi(s))ds \right| \leq \int_0^t 2s|\phi(s) - \psi(s)|ds.$$

If we restrict t to lie in the interval $0 \leq t \leq A/2$, where A is arbitrary, then $2t \leq A$ and

$$|\phi(t) - \psi(t)| \leq A \int_0^t |\phi(s) - \psi(s)|ds \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq t \leq A/2. \tag{17}$$

It is now convenient to introduce the function U defined by

$$U(t) = \int_0^t |\phi(s) - \psi(s)|ds. \tag{18}$$

Then it follows at once that

$$U(0) = 0, \tag{19}$$

$$U(t) \geq 0, \quad \text{for} \quad t \geq 0. \tag{20}$$

Further, U is differentiable, and $U'(t) = |\phi(t) - \psi(t)|$. Hence, by equation (17),

$$U'(t) - AU(t) \leq 0 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq t \leq A/2. \tag{21}$$

Multiplying equation (21) by the positive quantity e^{-At} gives

$$\left(e^{-At}U(t)\right)' \leq 0 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq t \leq A/2. \tag{22}$$

Then, upon integrating equation (22) from zero to t and using equation (19), we obtain

$$e^{-At}U(t) \le 0 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \le t \le A/2.$$

Hence $U(t) \le 0$ for $0 \le t \le A/2$. However, since A is arbitrary, we conclude that $U(t) \le 0$ for all nonnegative t. This result and equation (20) are compatible only if $U(t) = 0$ for each $t \ge 0$. Thus $U'(t) = 0$ and therefore $\psi(t) = \phi(t)$ for all $t \ge 0$. This contradicts the hypothesis that ϕ and ψ are two different solutions. Consequently, there cannot be two different solutions of the initial value problem for $t \ge 0$. A slight modification of this argument leads to the same conclusion for $t \le 0$.

Returning now to the general problem of solving the integral equation (3), let us consider briefly each of the questions raised earlier:

1. *Do all members of the sequence $\{\phi_n\}$ exist?*

In the example, f and $\partial f/\partial y$ were continuous in the whole ty-plane, and each member of the sequence could be explicitly calculated. In contrast, in the general case, f and $\partial f/\partial y$ are assumed to be continuous only in the rectangle R: $|t| \le a$, $|y| \le b$ (see Figure 2.8.3). Furthermore, the members of the sequence cannot as a rule be explicitly determined. The danger is that at some stage, say, for $n = k$, the graph of $y = \phi_k(t)$ may contain points that lie outside the rectangle R. More precisely, in the computation of $\phi_{k+1}(t)$ it would be necessary to evaluate $f(t, y)$ at points where it is not known to be continuous or even to exist. Thus the calculation of $\phi_{k+1}(t)$ might be impossible.

To avoid this danger, it may be necessary to restrict t to a smaller interval than $|t| \le a$. To find such an interval, we make use of the fact that a continuous function on a closed bounded region is bounded. Hence f is bounded on R; thus there exists a positive number M such that

$$|f(t, y)| \le M, \qquad (t, y) \text{ in } R. \tag{23}$$

We have mentioned before that

$$\phi_n(0) = 0$$

for each n. Since $f(t, \phi_k(t))$ is equal to $\phi'_{k+1}(t)$, the maximum absolute slope of the graph of the equation $y = \phi_{k+1}(t)$ is M. Since this graph contains the point $(0, 0)$, it must lie in a bow tie-shaped shaded region as shown in Figure 2.8.4. Hence the point $(t, \phi_{k+1}(t))$ remains in R at least as long as R contains the bow tie-shaped region, which is for $|t| \le b/M$. We hereafter consider only the rectangle D: $|t| \le h$, $|y| \le b$, where h is equal either to a or to b/M, whichever is smaller. With this restriction, all members of the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ exist. Note that whenever $b/M < a$, you can try to obtain a larger value of h by finding a better (that is, smaller) bound M for $|f(t, y)|$, if this is possible.

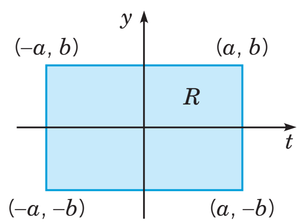


FIGURE 2.8.3 Region of definition for Theorem 2.8.1.

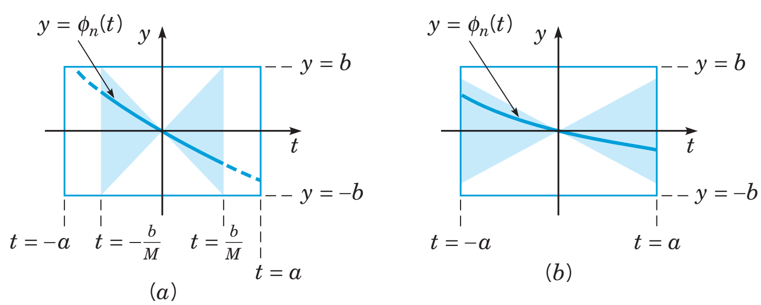


FIGURE 2.8.4 Bow-tie regions in which successive iterates lie. (a) if $b/M < a$ then $h = b/M$; (b) if $b/M > a$ then $h = a$.

2. *Does the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ converge?*

We can identify $\phi_n(t) = \phi_1(t) + (\phi_2(t) - \phi_1(t)) + \cdots + (\phi_n(t) - \phi_{n-1}(t))$ as the n^{th} partial sum of the series

$$\phi_1(t) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\phi_{k+1}(t) - \phi_k(t)). \tag{24}$$

The convergence of the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ is established by showing that the series (24) converges. To do this, it is necessary to estimate the magnitude $|\phi_{k+1}(t) - \phi_k(t)|$ of the general term. The argument by which this is done is indicated in Problems 14 through 17 and will be omitted here. Assuming that the sequence converges, denote the limit function by ϕ, and so

$$\phi(t) = \lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(t). \tag{25}$$

3. *What are the properties of the limit function ϕ?*

In the first place, we would like to know that ϕ is continuous. This is not, however, a necessary consequence of the convergence of the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$, even though each member of the sequence is itself continuous. Sometimes a sequence of continuous functions converges to a limit function that is discontinuous. A simple example of this phenomenon is given in Problem 11. One way to show that ϕ is continuous is to show not only that the sequence $\{\phi_n\}$ converges, but also that it converges in a certain manner, known as **uniform convergence**. We do not take up this matter here, but note only that the argument referred to in the discussion of question 2 is sufficient to establish the uniform convergence of the sequence $\{\phi_n\}$ and, hence, the continuity of the limit function ϕ in the interval $|t| \le h$.

Now let us return to equation (7)

$$\phi_{n+1}(t) = \int_0^t f(s, \phi_n(s))\, ds.$$

Allowing n to approach ∞ on both sides, we obtain

$$\phi(t) = \lim_{n\to\infty} \int_0^t f(s, \phi_n(s))\, ds. \tag{26}$$

We would like to interchange the operations of integrating and taking the limit on the right-hand side of equation (26) so as to obtain

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t \lim_{n\to\infty} f(s, \phi_n(s))\, ds. \tag{27}$$

In general, such an interchange is not permissible (see Problem 12, for example), but once again, the fact that the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ converges uniformly is sufficient to allow us to take the limiting operation inside the integral sign. Next, we wish to take the limit inside the function f, which would give

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t f\left(s, \lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(s)\right) ds \tag{28}$$

and hence

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t f(s, \phi(s))\, ds. \tag{29}$$

The statement that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} f(s, \phi_n(s)) = f\left(s, \lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(s)\right)$$

is equivalent to the statement that f is continuous in its second variable, which is known by hypothesis. Hence equation (29) is valid, and the function ϕ satisfies the integral equation (3). Thus $y = \phi(t)$ is also a solution of the initial value problem (2).

4. *Are there other solutions of the integral equation (3) besides $y = \phi(t)$?*

To show the uniqueness of the solution $y = \phi(t)$, we can proceed much as in the example. First, assume the existence of another solution $y = \psi(t)$. It is then possible to show (see Problem 18) that the difference $\phi(t) - \psi(t)$ satisfies the inequality

$$|\phi(t) - \psi(t)| \leq A \int_0^t |\phi(s) - \psi(s)|\, ds \tag{30}$$

for $0 \leq t \leq h$ and a suitable positive number A. From this point the argument is identical to that given in the example, and we conclude that there is no solution of the initial value problem (2) other than the one generated by the method of successive approximations.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 and 2, transform the given initial value problem into an equivalent problem with the initial point at the origin.

1. $dy/dt = t^2 + y^2, \quad y(1) = 2$

2. $dy/dt = 1 - y^3, \quad y(-1) = 3$

In each of Problems 3 through 4, let $\phi_0(t) = 0$ and define $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ by the method of successive approximations.

a. Determine $\phi_n(t)$ for an arbitrary value of n.

G **b.** Plot $\phi_n(t)$ for $n = 1, \ldots, 4$. Observe whether the iterates appear to be converging.

c. Express $\lim\limits_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(t) = \phi(t)$ in terms of elementary functions; that is, solve the given initial value problem.

G **d.** Plot $|\phi(t) - \phi_n(t)|$ for $n = 1, \ldots, 4$. For each of $\phi_1(t), \ldots, \phi_4(t)$, estimate the interval in which it is a reasonably good approximation to the actual solution.

N **3.** $y' = 2(y + 1), \quad y(0) = 0$

N **4.** $y' = -y/2 + t, \quad y(0) = 0$

In each of Problems 5 and 6, let $\phi_0(t) = 0$ and use the method of successive approximations to solve the given initial value problem.

a. Determine $\phi_n(t)$ for an arbitrary value of n.

G **b.** Plot $\phi_n(t)$ for $n = 1, \ldots, 4$. Observe whether the iterates appear to be converging.

c. Show that the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ converges.

5. $y' = ty + 1, \quad y(0) = 0$

6. $y' = t^2 y - t, \quad y(0) = 0$

In each of Problems 7 and 8, let $\phi_0(t) = 0$ and use the method of successive approximations to approximate the solution of the given initial value problem.

a. Calculate $\phi_1(t), \ldots, \phi_3(t)$.

G **b.** Plot $\phi_1(t), \ldots, \phi_3(t)$. Observe whether the iterates appear to be converging.

7. $y' = t^2 + y^2, \quad y(0) = 0$

8. $y' = 1 - y^3, \quad y(0) = 0$

In each of Problems 9 and 10, let $\phi_0(t) = 0$ and use the method of successive approximations to approximate the solution of the given initial value problem.

a. Calculate $\phi_1(t), \ldots, \phi_4(t)$, or (if necessary) Taylor approximations to these iterates. Keep terms up to order six.

G **b.** Plot the functions you found in part a and observe whether they appear to be converging.

9. $y' = -\sin y + 1, \quad y(0) = 0$

10. $y' = \dfrac{3t^2 + 4t + 2}{2(y - 1)}, \quad y(0) = 0$

11. Let $\phi_n(x) = x^n$ for $0 \leq x \leq 1$ and show that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq x < 1, \\ 1, & x = 1. \end{cases}$$

This example shows that a sequence of continuous functions may converge to a limit function that is discontinuous.

12. Consider the sequence $\phi_n(x) = 2nxe^{-nx^2}, \quad 0 \leq x \leq 1$.

a. Show that $\lim\limits_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(x) = 0$ for $0 \leq x \leq 1$; hence

$$\int_0^1 \lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(x)\,dx = 0.$$

b. Show that $\displaystyle\int_0^1 2nxe^{-nx^2}\,dx = 1 - e^{-n}$; hence

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \int_0^1 \phi_n(x)\,dx = 1.$$

Thus, in this example,

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \int_a^b \phi_n(x)\,dx \neq \int_a^b \lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(x)\,dx,$$

even though $\lim\limits_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(x)$ exists and is continuous.

13. a. Verify that $\phi(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{t^{2k}}{k!}$ is a solution of the integral equation (9).

b. Verify that $\phi(t)$ is also a solution of the initial value problem (6).

c. Use the fact that $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^k}{k!} = e^t$ to evaluate $\phi(t)$ in terms of elementary functions.

d. Solve initial value problem (6) as a separable equation.

e. Solve initial value problem (6) as a first order linear equation.

In Problems 14 through 17, we indicate how to prove that the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$, defined by equations (4) through (7), converges.

a. Verify that $\phi(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{t^{2k}}{k!}$ is a solution of the integral equation (9).

b. Verify that $\phi(t)$ is also a solution of the initial value problem (6).

c. Use the fact that $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^k}{k!} = e^t$ to evaluate $\phi(t)$ in terms of elementary functions.

d. Solve initial value problem (6) as a separable equation.

e. Solve initial value problem (6) as a first order linear equation.

14. If $\partial f/\partial y$ is continuous in the rectangle D, show that there is a positive constant K such that

$$|f(t, y_1) - f(t, y_2)| \le K|y_1 - y_2|, \tag{31}$$

where (t, y_1) and (t, y_2) are any two points in D having the same t coordinate. This inequality is known as a Lipschitz[22] condition.
Hint: Hold t fixed and use the mean value theorem on f as a function of y only. Choose K to be the maximum value of $|\partial f/\partial y|$ in D.

15. If $\phi_{n-1}(t)$ and $\phi_n(t)$ are members of the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$, use the result of Problem 14 to show that

$$\left|f(t, \phi_n(t)) - f\big(t, \phi_{n-1}(t)\big)\right| \le K\left|\phi_n(t) - \phi_{n-1}(t)\right|.$$

16. **a.** Show that if $|t| \le h$, then

$$|\phi_1(t)| \le M|t|,$$

where M is chosen so that $|f(t, y)| \le M$ for (t, y) in D.

b. Use the results of Problem 15 and part a of Problem 16 to show that

$$|\phi_2(t) - \phi_1(t)| \le \frac{MK|t|^2}{2}.$$

c. Show, by mathematical induction, that

$$|\phi_n(t) - \phi_{n-1}(t)| \le \frac{MK^{n-1}|t|^n}{n!} \le \frac{MK^{n-1}h^n}{n!}.$$

17. Note that

$$\phi_n(t) = \phi_1(t) + \big(\phi_2(t) - \phi_1(t)\big) + \cdots + \big(\phi_n(t) - \phi_{n-1}(t)\big).$$

a. Show that

$$|\phi_n(t)| \le |\phi_1(t)| + |\phi_2(t) - \phi_1(t)| + \cdots + |\phi_n(t) - \phi_{n-1}(t)|.$$

b. Use the results of Problem 16 to show that

$$|\phi_n(t)| \le \frac{M}{K}\left(Kh + \frac{(Kh)^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{(Kh)^n}{n!}\right).$$

c. Show that the sum in part b converges as $n \to \infty$ and, hence, the sum in part a also converges as $n \to \infty$. Conclude therefore that the sequence $\{\phi_n(t)\}$ converges since it is the sequence of partial sums of a convergent infinite series.

18. In this problem we deal with the question of uniqueness of the solution of the integral equation (3)

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t f(s, \phi(s))\, ds.$$

a. Suppose that ϕ and ψ are two solutions of equation (3). Show that, for $t \ge 0$,

$$\phi(t) - \psi(t) = \int_0^t (f(s, \phi(s)) - f(s, \psi(s)))\, ds.$$

b. Show that

$$|\phi(t) - \psi(t)| \le \int_0^t (f(s, \phi(s)) - f(s, \psi(s)))\, ds.$$

c. Use the result of Problem 14 to show that

$$|\phi(t) - \psi(t)| \le K\int_0^t |\phi(s) - \psi(s)|\, ds,$$

where K is an upper bound for $|\partial f/\partial y|$ in D. This is the same as equation (30), and the rest of the proof may be constructed as indicated in the text.

[22] The German mathematician Rudolf Lipschitz (1832–1903), professor at the University of Bonn for many years, worked in several areas of mathematics. The inequality (i) can replace the hypothesis that $\partial f/\partial y$ is continuous in Theorem 2.8.1; this results in a slightly stronger theorem.

2.9 First-Order Difference Equations

Although a continuous model leading to a differential equation is reasonable and attractive for many problems, there are some cases in which a discrete model may be more natural. For instance, the continuous model of compound interest used in Section 2.3 is only an approximation to the actual discrete process. Similarly, sometimes population growth may be described more accurately by a discrete model than by a continuous model. This is true, for example, of species whose generations do not overlap and that propagate at regular intervals, such as at particular times of the calendar year. Then the population y_{n+1} of the species in the year $n+1$ is some function of n and the population y_n in the preceding year; that is,

$$y_{n+1} = f(n, y_n), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{1}$$

Equation (1) is called a **first-order difference equation**. It is first-order because the value of y_{n+1} depends on the value of y_n but not on earlier values y_{n-1}, y_{n-2}, and so forth. As for differential equations, the difference equation (1) is **linear** if f is a linear function of y_n; otherwise, it is **nonlinear**. A **solution** of the difference equation (1) is a sequence of numbers $y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots$ that satisfy the equation for each n. In addition to the difference equation itself, there may also be an **initial condition**

$$y_0 = \alpha \tag{2}$$

that prescribes the value of the first term of the solution sequence.

We now assume temporarily that the function f in equation (1) depends only on y_n, but not on n. In this case

$$y_{n+1} = f(y_n), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{3}$$

If y_0 is given, then successive terms of the solution can be found from equation (3). Thus

$$y_1 = f(y_0),$$

and

$$y_2 = f(y_1) = f(f(y_0)).$$

The quantity $f(f(y_0))$ is called the second iterate of the difference equation and is sometimes denoted by $f^2(y_0)$. Similarly, the third iterate y_3 is given by

$$y_3 = f(y_2) = f\big(f\big(f(y_0)\big)\big) = f^3(y_0),$$

and so on. In general, the n^{th} iterate y_n is

$$y_n = f(y_{n-1}) = f^n(y_0).$$

This procedure is referred to as iterating the difference equation. It is often of primary interest to determine the behavior of y_n as $n \to \infty$. In particular, does y_n approach a limit, and if so, what is it?

Solutions for which y_n has the same value for all n are called **equilibrium solutions**. They are frequently of special importance, just as in the study of differential equations. If equilibrium solutions exist, you can find them by setting y_{n+1} equal to y_n in equation (3) and solving the resulting equation

$$y_n = f(y_n) \tag{4}$$

for y_n.

Linear Equations. Suppose that the population of a certain species in a given region in year $n+1$, denoted by y_{n+1}, is a positive multiple ρ_n of the population y_n in year n; that is,

$$y_{n+1} = \rho_n y_n, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{5}$$

Note that the reproduction rate ρ_n may differ from year to year. The difference equation (5) is linear and can easily be solved by iteration. We obtain

$$y_1 = \rho_0 y_0,$$
$$y_2 = \rho_1 y_1 = \rho_1 \rho_0 y_0,$$

and, in general,

$$y_n = \rho_{n-1} \cdots \rho_0 y_0, \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{6}$$

Thus, if the initial population y_0 is given, then the population of each succeeding generation is determined by equation (6). Although for a population problem ρ_n is intrinsically positive, the solution (6) is also valid if ρ_n is negative for some or all values of n. Note, however, that if ρ_n is zero for some n, then y_{n+1} and all succeeding values of y are zero; in other words, the species has become extinct.

If the reproduction rate ρ_n has the same value ρ for each n, then the difference equation (5) becomes

$$y_{n+1} = \rho y_n \tag{7}$$

and its solution is

$$y_n = \rho^n y_0. \tag{8}$$

Equation (7) also has an equilibrium solution, namely, $y_n = 0$ for all n, corresponding to the initial value $y_0 = 0$. The limiting behavior of y_n is easy to determine from equation (8). In fact,

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} y_n = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } |\rho| < 1; \\ y_0, & \text{if } \rho = 1; \\ \text{does not exist}, & \text{otherwise}. \end{cases} \tag{9}$$

In other words, the equilibrium solution $y_n = 0$ is asymptotically stable for $|\rho| < 1$ and unstable for $|\rho| > 1$.

Now we will modify the population model represented by equation (5) to include the effect of immigration or emigration. If b_n is the net increase in population in year n due to immigration, then the population in year $n+1$ is the sum of the part of the population resulting from natural reproduction and the part due to immigration. Thus

$$y_{n+1} = \rho y_n + b_n, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{10}$$

where we are now assuming that the reproduction rate ρ is constant. We can solve equation (10) by iteration in the same manner as before. We have

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= \rho y_0 + b_0, \\ y_2 &= \rho(\rho y_0 + b_0) + b_1 = \rho^2 y_0 + \rho b_0 + b_1, \\ y_3 &= \rho(\rho^2 y_0 + \rho b_0 + b_1) + b_2 = \rho^3 y_0 + \rho^2 b_0 + \rho b_1 + b_2, \end{aligned}$$

and so forth. In general, we obtain

$$y_n = \rho^n y_0 + \rho^{n-1} b_0 + \cdots + \rho b_{n-2} + b_{n-1} = \rho^n y_0 + \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \rho^{n-1-j} b_j. \tag{11}$$

Note that the first term on the right-hand side of equation (11) represents the descendants of the original population, while the other terms represent the population in year n resulting from immigration in all preceding years.

In the special case where $b_n = b \neq 0$ for all n, the difference equation is

$$y_{n+1} = \rho y_n + b, \tag{12}$$

and from equation (11) its solution is

$$y_n = \rho^n y_0 + (1 + \rho + \rho^2 + \cdots + \rho^{n-1}) b. \tag{13}$$

If $\rho \neq 1$, we can write this solution in the more compact form

$$y_n = \rho^n y_0 + \frac{1 - \rho^n}{1 - \rho} b, \tag{14}$$

where again the two terms on the right-hand side are the effects of the original population and of immigration, respectively. Rewriting equation (14) as

$$y_n = \rho^n \left(y_0 - \frac{b}{1-\rho} \right) + \frac{b}{1-\rho} \tag{15}$$

makes the long-time behavior of y_n more evident. It follows from equation (15) that $y_n \to b/(1-\rho)$ if $|\rho| < 1$. If $|\rho| > 1$ or if $\rho = -1$ then y_n has no limit unless $y_0 = b/(1-\rho)$. The quantity $b/(1-\rho)$, for $\rho \neq 1$, is an equilibrium solution of equation (12), as can readily be seen directly from that equation. Of course, equation (14) is not valid for $\rho = 1$. To deal with that case, we must return to equation (13) and let $\rho = 1$ there. It follows that

$$y_n = y_0 + nb, \tag{16}$$

so in this case y_n becomes unbounded as $n \to \infty$.

The same model also provides a framework for solving many problems of a financial character. For such problems, y_n is the account balance in the nth time period, $\rho_n = 1 + r_n$, where r_n is the interest rate for that period, and b_n is the amount deposited or withdrawn. The following example is typical.

EXAMPLE 1

A recent college graduate takes out a \$10,000 loan to purchase a car. If the interest rate is 12%, what monthly payment is required to pay off the loan in 4 years?

Solution:

The relevant difference equation is equation (12), where y_n is the loan balance outstanding in the n^{th} month, $\rho = 1 + r$, where r is the interest rate per month, and b is the effect of the monthly payment.

Note that $\rho = 1.01$, corresponding to a monthly interest rate of 1%. Since payments reduce the loan balance, b must be negative; the actual payment is $|b|$.

The solution of the difference equation (12) with this value for ρ and the initial condition $y_0 = 10{,}000$ is given by equation (15); that is,

$$y_n = (1.01)^n(10{,}000 + 100b) - 100b. \tag{17}$$

The value of b needed to pay off the loan in 4 years is found by setting $y_{48} = 0$ and solving for b. This gives

$$b = -100\frac{(1.01)^{48}}{(1.01)^{48} - 1} = -263.34. \tag{18}$$

The total amount paid on the loan is 48 times $|b|$, or \$12,640.32. Of this amount, \$10,000 is repayment of the principal and the remaining \$2640.32 is interest.

Nonlinear Equations. Nonlinear difference equations are much more complicated and have much more varied solutions than linear equations. We will restrict our attention to a single equation, the **logistic difference equation**

$$y_{n+1} = \rho y_n\left(1 - \frac{y_n}{k}\right), \tag{19}$$

which is analogous to the logistic differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ry\left(1 - \frac{y}{K}\right) \tag{20}$$

that was discussed in Section 2.5. Note that if the derivative dy/dt in equation (20) is replaced by the difference quotient $(y_{n+1} - y_n)/h$, then equation (20) reduces to equation (19) with $\rho = 1 + hr$ and $k = (1 + hr)K/hr$. To simplify equation (19) a little more, we can scale the variable y_n by introducing the new variable $u_n = y_n/k$. Then equation (19) becomes

$$u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n), \tag{21}$$

where ρ is a positive parameter.

We begin our investigation of equation (21) by seeking the equilibrium, or constant, solutions. These can be found by setting u_{n+1} equal to u_n in equation (21), which corresponds to setting dy/dt equal to zero in equation (20). The resulting equation is

$$u_n = \rho u_n - \rho u_n^2, \tag{22}$$

so it follows that the equilibrium solutions of equation (21) are

$$u_n = 0, \qquad u_n = \frac{\rho - 1}{\rho}. \tag{23}$$

The next question is whether the equilibrium solutions are asymptotically stable or unstable. That is, for an initial condition near one of the equilibrium solutions, does the resulting solution sequence approach or depart from the equilibrium solution?

One way to examine this question is by approximating equation (21) by a linear equation in the neighborhood of an equilibrium solution. For example, near the equilibrium solution $u_n = 0$, the quantity u_n^2 is small compared to u_n itself, so we assume that we can neglect the quadratic term in equation (21) in comparison with the linear terms. This leaves us with the linear difference equation

$$u_{n+1} = \rho u_n, \tag{24}$$

which is presumably a good approximation to equation (21) for u_n sufficiently near zero. However, equation (24) is the same as equation (7), and we have already concluded, in equation (9), that $u_n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ if and only if $|\rho| < 1$, or (since ρ must be positive) for $0 < \rho < 1$. Thus the equilibrium solution $u_n = 0$ is asymptotically stable for the linear approximation (24) for this set of ρ values, so we conclude that it is also asymptotically stable for the full nonlinear equation (21).

The previous conclusion is correct, although our argument is not complete. What is lacking is a theorem stating that the solutions of the nonlinear equation (21) resemble those of the linear equation (24) near the equilibrium solution $u_n = 0$. We will not take time to discuss this issue here; the same question is treated for differential equations in Section 9.3.

Now consider the other equilibrium solution $u_n = (\rho - 1)/\rho$. To study solutions in the neighborhood of this point, we write

$$u_n = \frac{\rho - 1}{\rho} + v_n, \tag{25}$$

where we assume that v_n is small. By substituting from equation (25) in equation (21) and simplifying the resulting equation, we eventually obtain

$$v_{n+1} = (2 - \rho)v_n - \rho v_n^2. \tag{26}$$

Since v_n is small, we again neglect the quadratic term in comparison with the linear terms and thereby obtain the linear equation

$$v_{n+1} = (2 - \rho)v_n. \tag{27}$$

Referring to equation (9) once more, we find that $v_n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ for $|2 - \rho| < 1$, or in other words for $1 < \rho < 3$. Therefore, we conclude that for this range of values of ρ, the equilibrium solution $u_n = (\rho - 1)/\rho$ is asymptotically stable.

Figure 2.9.1 contains the graphs of solutions of equation (21) for $\rho = 0.8$, $\rho = 1.5$, and $\rho = 2.8$, respectively. Observe that the solution converges to zero for $\rho = 0.8$ and to the nonzero equilibrium solution for $\rho = 1.5$ and $\rho = 2.8$. The convergence is (eventually) monotone for $\rho = 0.8$ and for $\rho = 1.5$ and is oscillatory for $\rho = 2.8$. The graphs shown are for particular initial conditions, but the graphs for other initial conditions are similar.

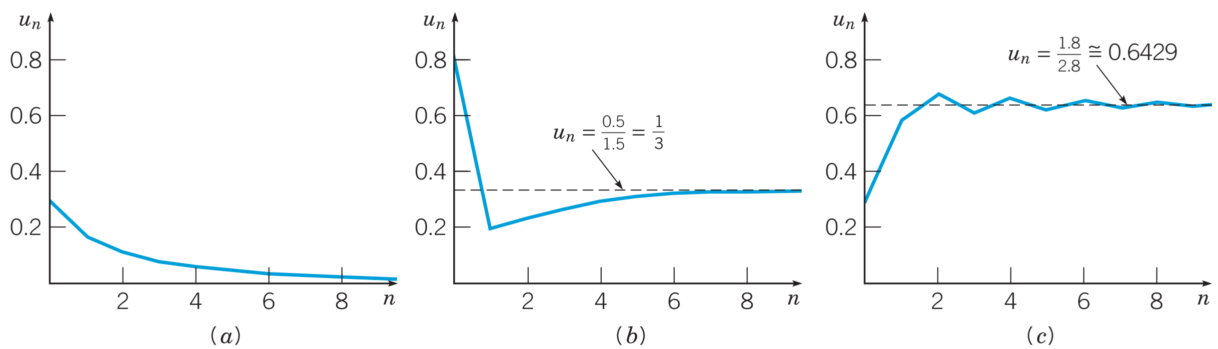


FIGURE 2.9.1 Solutions of $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$: (a) $\rho = 0.8$; (b) $\rho = 1.5$; (c) $\rho = 2.8$.

Another way of displaying the solution of a difference equation is shown in Figure 2.9.2. In each part of this figure, the graphs of the parabola $y = \rho x(1 - x)$ and of the straight line $y = x$ are shown. The equilibrium solutions correspond to the points of intersection of these two curves. The piecewise linear graph consisting of successive vertical and horizontal line segments, sometimes called a stairstep or cobweb diagram, represents the solution sequence. The sequence starts at the point u_0 on the x-axis. The vertical line segment drawn upward to the parabola at u_0 corresponds to the calculation of $\rho u_0(1 - u_0) = u_1$. This value is then transferred from the y-axis to the x-axis; this step is represented by the horizontal line segment from the parabola to the line $y = x$. Then the process is repeated over and over again. Clearly, the sequence converges to the origin in Figure 2.9.2*a* and to the nonzero equilibrium solution in the other two cases.

To summarize our results so far: the difference equation (21) has two equilibrium solutions, $u_n = 0$ and $u_n = (\rho - 1)/\rho$; the former is asymptotically stable for $0 \le \rho < 1$, and the latter is asymptotically stable for $1 < \rho < 3$. When $\rho = 1$, the two equilibrium solutions coincide at $u = 0$; this solution can be shown to be asymptotically stable. In Figure 2.9.3 the parameter ρ is plotted on the horizontal axis and u on the vertical axis. The equilibrium solutions $u = 0$ and $u = (\rho - 1)/\rho$ are shown. The intervals in which each one is asymptotically stable are indicated by the solid portions of the curves. There is an **exchange of stability** from one equilibrium solution to the other at $\rho = 1$.

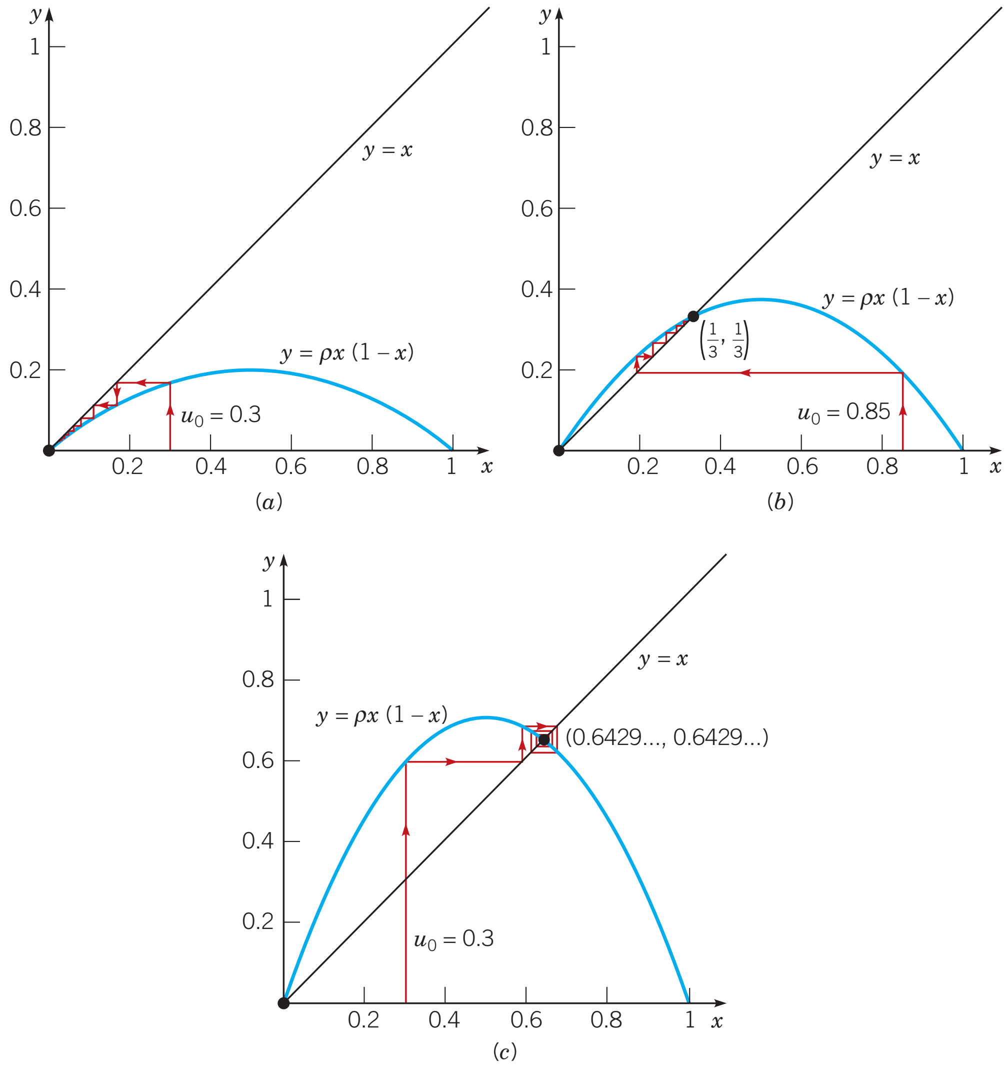


FIGURE 2.9.2 Iterates of $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$: (a) $\rho = 0.8$; (b) $\rho = 1.5$; (c) $\rho = 2.8$.

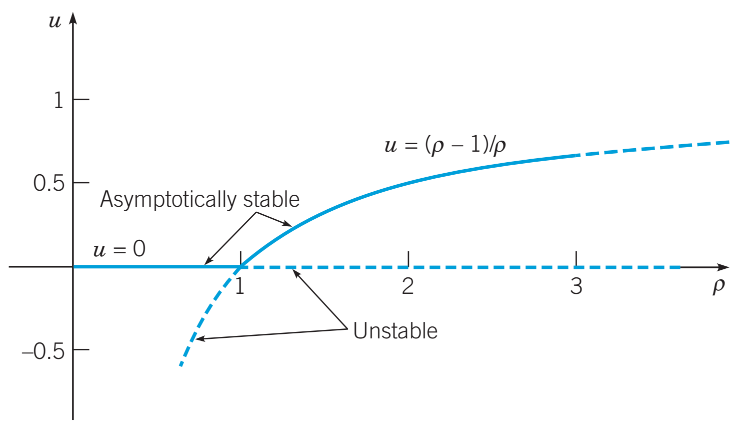


FIGURE 2.9.3 Exchange of stability for $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$.

For $\rho > 3$, neither of the equilibrium solutions is stable, and the solutions of equation (21) exhibit increasing complexity as ρ increases. For ρ somewhat greater than 3, the sequence u_n rapidly approaches a steady oscillation of period 2; that is, u_n oscillates back and forth between two distinct values. For $\rho = 3.2$, a solution is shown in Figure 2.9.4. For n greater than about

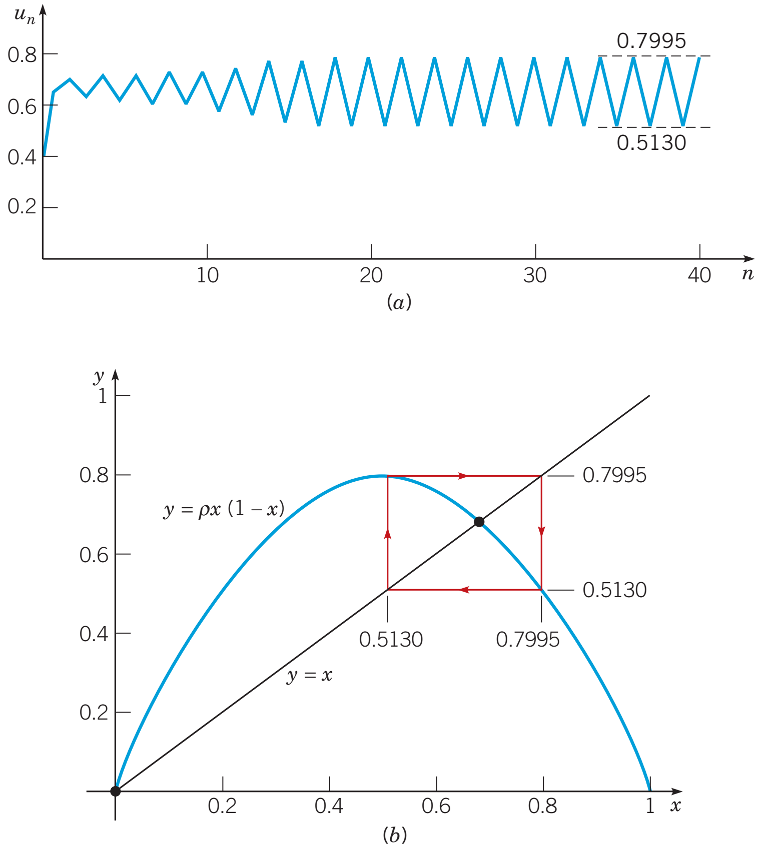


FIGURE 2.9.4 A solution of $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$ for $\rho = 3.2$; period 2. (*a*) u_n versus n; (*b*) the cobweb diagram shows the iterates are in a two-cycle.

20, the solution alternates between the values 0.5130 and 0.7995. The graph is drawn for the particular initial condition $u_0 = 0.3$, but it is similar for all other initial values between 0 and 1. Figure 2.9.4*b* also shows the same steady oscillation as a rectangular path that is traversed repeatedly in the clockwise direction.

At about $\rho = 3.449$, each state in the oscillation of period 2 separates into two distinct states, and the solution becomes periodic with period 4; see Figure 2.9.5, which shows a solution of period 4 for $\rho = 3.5$. As ρ increases further, periodic solutions of period 8, 16, . . . appear. The transition from solutions with one period to solutions with a new period that occurs at a certain parameter value is called a **bifurcation**; the value of the parameter where the bifurcation occurs is called a **bifurcation value** of the parameter.

The values of ρ at which the successive period doublings occur approach a limit that is approximately 3.57. For $\rho > 3.57$, the solutions possess some regularity but no discernible detailed pattern for most values of ρ. For example, a solution for $\rho = 3.65$ is shown in Figure 2.9.6. It oscillates between approximately 0.3 and 0.9, but its fine structure is unpredictable. The term **chaotic** is used to describe this situation. One of the features of chaotic solutions is extreme sensitivity to the initial conditions. This is illustrated in Figure 2.9.7, where two solutions of equation (21) for $\rho = 3.65$ are shown. One solution is the same as that in Figure 2.9.6 and has the initial value $u_0 = 0.3$, while the other solution has the initial value $u_0 = 0.305$. For about 15 iterations the two solutions remain close and are hard to distinguish from each other in the figure. After that, although they continue to wander about in approximately the same set of values, their graphs are quite dissimilar. It would certainly not be possible to use one of these solutions to estimate the value of the other for values of n larger than about 15.

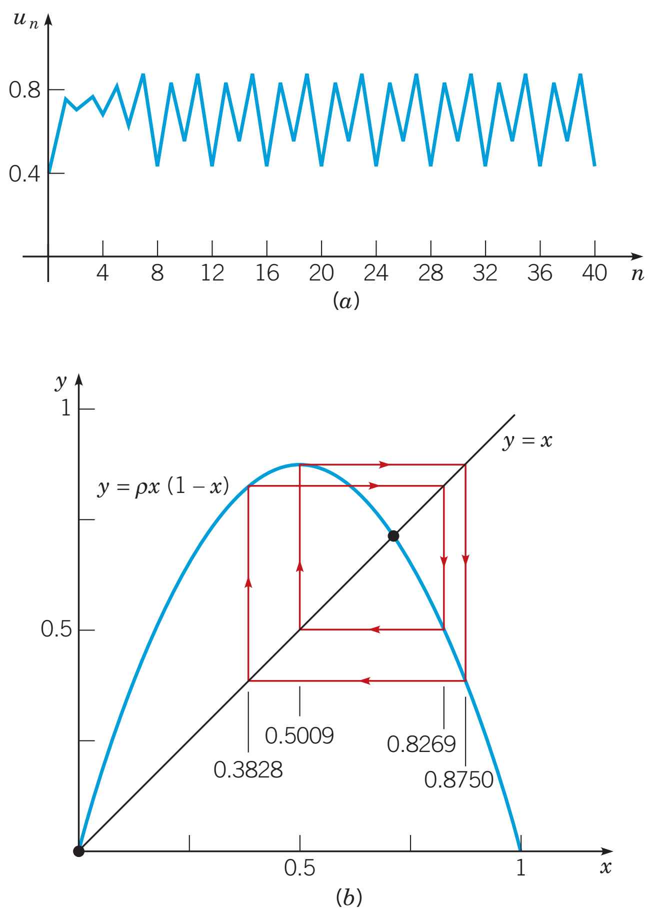


FIGURE 2.9.5 A solution of $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$ for $\rho = 3.5$; period 4. (a) u_n versus n; (b) the cobweb diagram shows the iterates are in a four-cycle.

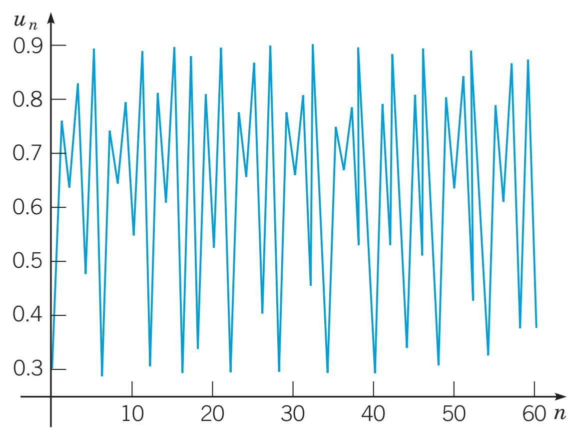


FIGURE 2.9.6 A solution of $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$ for $\rho = 3.65$; a chaotic solution.

It is only comparatively recently that chaotic solutions of difference and differential equations have become widely known. Equation (20) was one of the first instances of mathematical chaos to be found and studied in detail, by Robert May[23] in 1974. On the basis

[23]Robert M. May (1936–) was born in Sydney, Australia, and received his education at the University of Sydney with a doctorate in theoretical physics in 1959. His interests soon turned to population dynamics and theoretical ecology; the work cited in the text is described in two papers listed in the References at the end of this chapter. He has held professorships at Sydney, at Princeton, at Imperial College (London), and (since 1988) at Oxford.

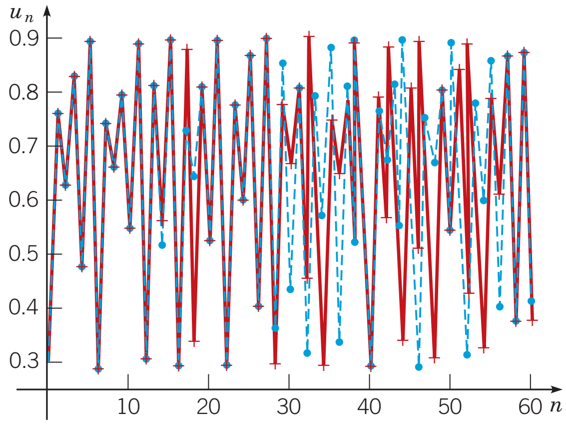


FIGURE 2.9.7 Two solutions of $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$ for $\rho = 3.65$; $u_0 = 0.3$ and $u_0 = 0.305$.

of his analysis of this equation as a model of the population of certain insect species, May suggested that if the growth rate ρ is too large, then it will be impossible to make effective long-range predictions about these insect populations. The occurrence of chaotic solutions in seemingly simple problems has stimulated an enormous amount of research, but many questions remain unanswered. It is increasingly clear, however, that chaotic solutions are much more common than was suspected at first and that they may be a part of the investigation of a wide range of phenomena.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, solve the given difference equation in terms of the initial value y_0. Describe the behavior of the solution as $n \to \infty$.

1. $y_{n+1} = -0.9y_n$

2. $y_{n+1} = \sqrt{\dfrac{n+3}{n+1}}\, y_n$

3. $y_{n+1} = (-1)^{n+1} y_n$

4. $y_{n+1} = 0.5y_n + 6$

5. An investor deposits \$1000 in an account paying interest at a rate of 8%, compounded monthly, and also makes additional deposits of \$25 per month. Find the balance in the account after 3 years.

6. A certain college graduate borrows \$8000 to buy a car. The lender charges interest at an annual rate of 10%. What monthly payment rate is required to pay off the loan in 3 years? Compare your result with that of Problem 7 in Section 2.3.

7. A homebuyer takes out a mortgage of \$100,000 with an interest rate of 9%. What monthly payment is required to pay off the loan in 30 years? In 20 years? What is the total amount paid during the term of the loan in each of these cases?

8. If the interest rate on a 20-year mortgage is fixed at 10% and if a monthly payment of \$1000 is the maximum that the buyer can afford, what is the maximum mortgage loan that can be made under these conditions?

9. A homebuyer wishes to finance the purchase with a \$95,000 mortgage with a 20-year term. What is the maximum interest rate the buyer can afford if the monthly payment is not to exceed \$900?

The Logistic Difference Equation. Problems 10 through 15 deal with the difference equation (21), $u_{n+1} = \rho u_n(1 - u_n)$.

10. Carry out the details in the linear stability analysis of the equilibrium solution $u_n = (\rho - 1)/\rho$. That is, derive the difference equation (26) in the text for the perturbation v_n.

11. **N** **a.** For $\rho = 3.2$, plot or calculate the solution of the logistic equation (21) for several initial conditions, say, $u_0 = 0.2, 0.4, 0.6$, and 0.8. Observe that in each case the solution approaches a steady oscillation between the same two values. This illustrates that the long-term behavior of the solution is independent of the initial conditions.

N **b.** Make similar calculations and verify that the nature of the solution for large n is independent of the initial condition for other values of ρ, such as 2.6, 2.8, and 3.4.

12. Assume that $\rho > 1$ in equation (21).

G **a.** Draw a qualitatively correct stairstep diagram and thereby show that if $u_0 < 0$, then $u_n \to -\infty$ as $n \to \infty$.

G **b.** In a similar way, determine what happens as $n \to \infty$ if $u_0 > 1$.

13. The solutions of equation (21) change from convergent sequences to periodic oscillations of period 2 as the parameter ρ passes through the value 3. To see more clearly how this happens, carry out the following calculations.

N **a.** Plot or calculate the solution for $\rho = 2.9$, 2.95, and 2.99, respectively, using an initial value u_0 of your choice in the interval $(0, 1)$. In each case estimate how many iterations are required for the solution to get "very close" to the limiting value. Use any convenient interpretation of what "very close" means in the preceding sentence.

N **b.** Plot or calculate the solution for $\rho = 3.01$, 3.05, and 3.1, respectively, using the same initial condition as in part a. In each case estimate how many iterations are needed to reach a steady-state oscillation. Also find or estimate the two values in the steady-state oscillation.

N **14.** By calculating or plotting the solution of equation (21) for different values of ρ, estimate the value of ρ at which the solution changes from an oscillation of period 2 to one of period 4. In the same way, estimate the value of ρ at which the solution changes from period 4 to period 8.

N **15.** Let ρ_k be the value of ρ at which the solution of equation (21) changes from period 2^{k-1} to period 2^k. Thus, as noted in the text, $\rho_1 = 3$, $\rho_2 \cong 3.449$, and $\rho_3 \cong 3.544$.

a. Using these values of ρ_1, ρ_2, and ρ_3, or those you found in Problem 14, calculate $(\rho_2 - \rho_1)/(\rho_3 - \rho_2)$.

b. Let $\delta_n = (\rho_n - \rho_{n-1})/(\rho_{n+1} - \rho_n)$. It can be shown that δ_n approaches a limit δ as $n \to \infty$, where $\delta \cong 4.6692$ is known as the Feigenbaum[24] number. Determine the percentage difference between the limiting value δ and δ_2, as calculated in part a.

c. Assume that $\delta_3 = \delta$ and use this relation to estimate ρ_4, the value of ρ at which solutions of period 16 appear.

G **d.** By plotting or calculating solutions near the value of ρ_4 found in part c, try to detect the appearance of a period 16 solution.

e. Observe that

$$\rho_n = \rho_1 + (\rho_2 - \rho_1) + (\rho_3 - \rho_2) + \cdots + (\rho_n - \rho_{n-1}).$$

Assuming that

$$\rho_4 - \rho_3 = (\rho_3 - \rho_2)\delta^{-1}, \qquad \rho_5 - \rho_4 = (\rho_3 - \rho_2)\delta^{-2},$$

and so forth, express ρ_n as a geometric sum. Then find the limit ρ_n as $n \to \infty$. This is an estimate of the value of ρ at which the onset of chaos occurs in the solution of the logistic equation (21).

[24]This result for the logistic difference equation was discovered in August 1975 by Mitchell Feigenbaum (1944–), while he was working at the Los Alamos National Laboratory. Within a few weeks he had established that the same limiting value also appears in a large class of period-doubling difference equations. Feigenbaum, who has a doctorate in physics from M.I.T., is now at Rockefeller University.

Chapter Review Problems

Miscellaneous Problems. One of the difficulties in solving first-order differential equations is that there are several methods of solution, each of which can be used on a certain type of equation. It may take some time to become proficient in matching solution methods with equations. The first 24 of the following problems are presented to give you some practice in identifying the method or methods applicable to a given equation. The remaining problems involve certain types of equations that can be solved by specialized methods.

In each of Problems 1 through 24, solve the given differential equation. If an initial condition is given, also find the solution that satisfies it.

1. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^3 - 2y}{x}$
2. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1 + \cos x}{2 - \sin y}$
3. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2x + y}{3 + 3y^2 - x}, \quad y(0) = 0$
4. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 3 - 6x + y - 2xy$
5. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{2xy + y^2 + 1}{x^2 + 2xy}$
6. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + xy = 1 - y, \quad y(1) = 0$
7. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2y = \dfrac{\sin x}{x}, \quad y(2) = 1$
8. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{2xy + 1}{x^2 + 2y}$
9. $(x^2y + xy - y) + (x^2y - 2x^2)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0$
10. $(x^2 + y) + (x + e^y)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0$
11. $(x + y) + (x + 2y)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0, \quad y(2) = 3$
12. $(e^x + 1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y - ye^x$
13. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{e^{-x}\cos y - e^{2y}\cos x}{-e^{-x}\sin y + 2e^{2y}\sin x}$
14. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^{2x} + 3y$
15. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2y = e^{-x^2-2x}, \quad y(0) = 3$
16. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{3x^2 - 2y - y^3}{2x + 3xy^2}$
17. $y' = e^{x+y}$
18. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + \dfrac{2y^2 + 6xy - 4}{3x^2 + 4xy + 3y^2} = 0$
19. $t\dfrac{dy}{dt} + (t + 1)y = e^{2t}$
20. $xy' = y + xe^{y/x}$
21. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x}{x^2y + y^3} \qquad$ *Hint:* Let $u = x^2$.
22. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x + y}{x - y}$
23. $(3y^2 + 2xy) - (2xy + x^2)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0$
24. $xy' + y - y^2e^{2x} = 0, \quad y(1) = 2$

25. **Riccati Equations.** The equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = q_1(t) + q_2(t)y + q_3(t)y^2$$

is known as a Riccati[25] equation. Suppose that some particular solution y_1 of this equation is known. A more general solution containing one arbitrary constant can be obtained through the substitution

$$y = y_1(t) + \frac{1}{v(t)}.$$

Show that $v(t)$ satisfies the first-order *linear* equation

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = -(q_2 + 2q_3 y_1)v - q_3.$$

Note that $v(t)$ will contain a single arbitrary constant.

26. Verify that the given function is a particular solution of the given Riccati equation. Then use the method of Problem 25 to solve the following Riccati equations:

a. $y' = 1 + t^2 - 2ty + y^2; \quad y_1(t) = t$

b. $y' = -\frac{1}{t^2} - \frac{y}{t} + y^2; \quad y_1(t) = \frac{1}{t}$

c. $\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{2\cos^2 t - \sin^2 t + y^2}{2\cos t}; \quad y_1(t) = \sin t$

27. The propagation of a single action in a large population (for example, drivers turning on headlights at sunset) often depends partly on external circumstances (gathering darkness) and partly on a tendency to imitate others who have already performed the action in question. In this case the proportion $y(t)$ of people who have performed the action can be described[26] by the equation

$$dy/dt = (1 - y)(x(t) + by), \tag{28}$$

where $x(t)$ measures the external stimulus and b is the imitation coefficient.

a. Observe that equation (28) is a Riccati equation and that $y_1(t) = 1$ is one solution. Use the transformation suggested in Problem 25, and find the linear equation satisfied by $v(t)$.

b. Find $v(t)$ in the case that $x(t) = at$, where a is a constant. Leave your answer in the form of an integral.

[25] Riccati equations are named for Jacopo Francesco Riccati (1676–1754), a Venetian nobleman, who declined university appointments in Italy, Austria, and Russia to pursue his mathematical studies privately at home. Riccati studied these equations extensively; however, it was Euler (in 1760) who discovered the result stated in this problem.

[26] See Anatol Rapoport, "Contribution to the Mathematical Theory of Mass Behavior: I. The Propagation of Single Acts," *Bulletin of Mathematical Biophysics 14* (1952), pp. 159–169, and John Z. Hearon, "Note on the Theory of Mass Behavior," *Bulletin of Mathematical Biophysics 17* (1955), pp. 7–13.

Some Special Second-Order Differential Equations. Second-order differential equations involve the second derivative of the unknown function and have the general form $y'' = f(t, y, y')$. Usually, such equations cannot be solved by methods designed for first-order equations. However, there are two types of second-order equations that can be transformed into first-order equations by a suitable change of variable. The resulting equation can sometimes be solved by the methods presented in this chapter. Problems 28 through 37 deal with these types of equations.

Equations with the Dependent Variable Missing. For a second-order differential equation of the form $y'' = f(t, y')$, the substitution $v = y'$, $v' = y''$ leads to a first-order differential equation of the form $v' = f(t, v)$. If this equation can be solved for v, then y can be obtained by integrating $dy/dt = v$. Note that one arbitrary constant is obtained in solving the first-order equation for v, and a second is introduced in the integration for y. In each of Problems 28 through 31, use this substitution to solve the given equation.

28. $t^2 y'' + 2ty' - 1 = 0, \quad t > 0$

29. $ty'' + y' = 1, \quad t > 0$

30. $y'' + t(y')^2 = 0$

31. $2t^2 y'' + (y')^3 = 2ty', \quad t > 0$

Equations with the Independent Variable Missing. Consider second-order differential equations of the form $y'' = f(y, y')$, in which the independent variable t does not appear explicitly. If we let $v = y'$, then we obtain $dv/dt = f(y, v)$. Since the right-hand side of this equation depends on y and v, rather than on t and v, this equation contains too many variables. However, if we think of y as the independent variable, then by the chain rule, $dv/dt = (dv/dy)(dy/dt) = v(dv/dy)$. Hence the original differential equation can be written as $v(dv/dy) = f(y, v)$. Provided that this first-order equation can be solved, we obtain v as a function of y. A relation between y and t results from solving $dy/dt = v(y)$, which is a separable equation. Again, there are two arbitrary constants in the final result. In each of Problems 32 through 35, use this method to solve the given differential equation.

32. $yy'' + (y')^2 = 0$

33. $y'' + y = 0$

34. $yy'' - (y')^3 = 0$

35. $y'' + (y')^2 = 2e^{-y}$

Hint: In Problem 35 the transformed equation is a Bernoulli equation. See Problem 23 in Section 2.4.

In each of Problems 36 through 37, solve the given initial value problem using the methods of Problems 28 through 35.

36. $y'y'' = 2, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 2$

37. $(1 + t^2)y'' + 2ty' + 3t^{-2} = 0, \quad y(1) = 2, \quad y'(1) = -1$

References

The two books mentioned in Section 2.5 are

Bailey, N. T. J., *The Mathematical Theory of Infectious Diseases and Its Applications* (2nd ed.) (New York: Hafner Press, 1975).

Clark, Colin W., *Mathematical Bioeconomics* (2nd ed.) (New York: Wiley-Interscience, 1990).

A good introduction to population dynamics, in general, is

Frauenthal, J. C., *Introduction to Population Modeling* (Boston: Birkhauser, 1980).

A fuller discussion of the proof of the fundamental existence and uniqueness theorem can be found in many more advanced books on differential equations. Two that are reasonably accessible to elementary readers are

Coddington, E. A., *An Introduction to Ordinary Differential Equations* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1961; New York: Dover, 1989).

Brauer, F., and Nohel, J., *The Qualitative Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations* (New York: Benjamin, 1969; New York: Dover, 1989).

A valuable compendium of methods for solving differential equations is

Zwillinger, D., *Handbook of Differential Equations* (3rd ed.) (San Diego: Academic Press, 1998).

For further discussion and examples of nonlinear phenomena, including bifurcations and chaos, see

Strogatz, Steven H., *Nonlinear Dynamics and Chaos* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1994).

A general reference on difference equations is

Mickens, R. E., *Difference Equations, Theory and Applications* (2nd ed.) (New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1990).

Two papers by Robert May cited in the text are

R. M. May, "Biological Populations with Nonoverlapping Generations: Stable Points, Stable Cycles, and Chaos," *Science 186* (1974), pp. 645–647; "Biological Populations Obeying Difference Equations: Stable Points, Stable Cycles, and Chaos," *Journal of Theoretical Biology 51* (1975), pp. 511–524.

An elementary treatment of chaotic solutions of difference equations is

Devaney, R. L., *Chaos, Fractals, and Dynamics* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1990).

CHAPTER 3

Second-Order Linear Differential Equations

Linear differential equations of second order are of crucial importance in the study of differential equations for two main reasons. The first is that linear equations have a rich theoretical structure that underlies a number of systematic methods of solution. Further, a substantial portion of this structure and of these methods is understandable at a fairly elementary mathematical level. In order to present the key ideas in the simplest possible context, we describe them in this chapter for second-order equations. The second reason to study second-order linear differential equations is that they are vital to any serious investigation of the classical areas of mathematical physics. One cannot go very far in the development of fluid mechanics, heat conduction, wave motion, or electromagnetic phenomena without finding it necessary to solve second-order linear differential equations. We illustrate this at the end of this chapter with a discussion of the oscillations of some basic mechanical and electrical systems.

3.1 Homogeneous Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

Many second-order ordinary differential equations have the form

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = f\left(t, y, \frac{dy}{dt}\right), \tag{1}$$

where f is some given function. Usually, we will denote the independent variable by t since time is often the independent variable in physical problems, but sometimes we will use x instead. We will use y, or occasionally some other letter, to designate the dependent variable. Equation (1) is said to be **linear** if the function f has the form

$$f\left(t, y, \frac{dy}{dt}\right) = g(t) - p(t)\frac{dy}{dt} - q(t)y, \tag{2}$$

that is, if f is linear in y and dy/dt. In equation (2) g, p, and q are specified functions of the independent variable t but do not depend on y. In this case we usually rewrite equation (1) as

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{3}$$

where the primes denote differentiation with respect to t. Instead of equation (3), we sometimes see the equation

$$P(t)y'' + Q(t)y' + R(t)y = G(t). \tag{4}$$

Of course, if $P(t) \neq 0$, we can divide equation (4) by $P(t)$ and thereby obtain equation (3) with

$$p(t) = \frac{Q(t)}{P(t)}, \quad q(t) = \frac{R(t)}{P(t)}, \quad g(t) = \frac{G(t)}{P(t)}. \tag{5}$$

In discussing equation (3) and in trying to solve it, we will restrict ourselves to intervals in which p, q, and g are continuous functions.[1]

If equation (1) is not of the form (3) or (4), then it is called **nonlinear**. Analytical investigations of nonlinear equations are relatively difficult, so we will have little to say about them in this book. Numerical or geometical approaches are often more appropriate, and these are discussed in Chapters 8 and 9.

An initial value problem consists of a differential equation such as equations (1), (3), or (4) together with a pair of initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0', \tag{6}$$

where y_0 and y_0' are given numbers prescribing values for y and y' at the initial point t_0. Observe that the initial conditions for a second-order differential equation identify not only a particular point (t_0, y_0) through which the graph of the solution must pass, but also the slope y_0' of the graph at that point. It is reasonable to expect that two initial conditions are needed for a second-order differential equation because, roughly speaking, two integrations are required to find a solution and each integration introduces an arbitrary constant. Presumably, two initial conditions will suffice to determine values for these two constants.

A second-order linear differential equation is said to be **homogeneous** if the term $g(t)$ in equation (3), or the term $G(t)$ in equation (4), is zero for all t. Otherwise, the equation is called **nonhomogeneous**. Alternatively, the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$, or $G(t)$, is sometimes called the forcing function because in many applications it describes an externally applied force. We begin our discussion with homogeneous equations, which we will write in the form

$$P(t)y'' + Q(t)y' + R(t)y = 0. \tag{7}$$

Later, in Sections 3.5 and 3.6, we will show that once the homogeneous equation has been solved, it is always possible to solve the corresponding nonhomogeneous equation (4), or at least to express the solution in terms of an integral. Thus the problem of solving the homogeneous equation is the more fundamental one.

In this chapter we will concentrate our attention on equations in which the functions P, Q, and R are constants. In this case, equation (7) becomes

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \tag{8}$$

where a, b, and c are given constants. It turns out that equation (8) can always be solved easily in terms of the elementary functions of calculus. On the other hand, it is usually much more difficult to solve equation (7) if the coefficients are not constants, and a treatment of that case is deferred until Chapter 5. Before taking up equation (8), let us first gain some experience by looking at a simple example that in many ways is typical.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the equation

$$y'' - y = 0. \tag{9}$$

Also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1. \tag{10}$$

Solution:

Observe that equation (9) is just equation (8) with $a = 1$, $b = 0$, and $c = -1$. In words, equation (9) says that we seek a function with the property that the second derivative of the function is the same as the function itself. Do any of the functions that you studied in calculus have this property? A little thought will probably produce at least one such function, namely, $y_1(t) = e^t$, the exponential function. A little more thought may also produce a second function, $y_2(t) = e^{-t}$. Some further experimentation reveals that constant multiples of these two solutions are also solutions.

[1]There is a corresponding treatment of higher-order linear equations in Chapter 4. If you wish, you may read the appropriate parts of Chapter 4 in parallel with Chapter 3.

For example, the functions $2e^t$ and $5e^{-t}$ also satisfy equation (9), as you can verify by calculating their second derivatives. In the same way, the functions $c_1y_1(t) = c_1e^t$ and $c_2y_2(t) = c_2e^{-t}$ satisfy the differential equation (9) for all values of the constants c_1 and c_2.

Next, it is vital to notice that the sum of any two solutions of equation (9) is also a solution. In particular, since $c_1y_1(t)$ and $c_2y_2(t)$ are solutions of equation (9) for any values of c_1 and c_2, so is the function

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) = c_1e^t + c_2e^{-t}. \tag{11}$$

Again, this can be verified by calculating the second derivative y'' from equation (11). We have $y' = c_1e^t - c_2e^{-t}$ and $y'' = c_1e^t + c_2e^{-t}$; thus y'' is the same as y, and equation (9) is satisfied.

Let us summarize what we have done so far in this example. Once we notice that the functions $y_1(t) = e^t$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-t}$ are solutions of equation (9), it follows that the general linear combination (11) of these functions is also a solution. Since the coefficients c_1 and c_2 in equation (11) are arbitrary, this expression represents an infinite two-parameter family of solutions of the differential equation (9).

We now turn to the task of picking out a particular member of this infinite family of solutions that also satisfies the given pair of initial conditions (10). In other words, we seek the solution that passes through the point (0, 2) and at that point has the slope -1. First, to ensure the solution passes through the point $(0, 2)$, we set $t = 0$ and $y = 2$ in equation (11); this gives the equation

$$c_1 + c_2 = 2. \tag{12}$$

Next, we differentiate equation (11) with the result that

$$y' = c_1e^t - c_2e^{-t}. \tag{13}$$

Then, to enforce the condition that the slope at $(0, 2)$ is -1, we set $t = 0$ and $y' = -1$ in equation (13); this yields the equation

$$c_1 - c_2 = -1. \tag{14}$$

By solving equations (12) and (14) simultaneously for c_1 and c_2, we find that

$$c_1 = \frac{1}{2}, \quad c_2 = \frac{3}{2}. \tag{15}$$

Finally, inserting these values in equation (11), we obtain

$$y = \frac{1}{2}e^t + \frac{3}{2}e^{-t}, \tag{16}$$

the solution of the initial value problem consisting of the differential equation (9) and the initial conditions (10).

What conclusions can we draw from the preceding example that will help us to deal with the more general equation (8),

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0,$$

whose coefficients a, b, and c are arbitrary (real) constants? In the first place, in the example the solutions were exponential functions. Further, once we had identified two solutions, we were able to use a linear combination of them to satisfy the given initial conditions as well as the differential equation itself.

It turns out that by exploiting these two ideas, we can solve equation (8) for any values of its coefficients and also satisfy any given set of initial conditions for y and y'.

We start by seeking exponential solutions of the form $y = e^{rt}$, where r is a parameter to be determined. Then it follows that $y' = re^{rt}$ and $y'' = r^2e^{rt}$. By substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in equation (8), we obtain

$$(ar^2 + br + c)e^{rt} = 0.$$

Since $e^{rt} \neq 0$, this condition is satisfied only when the other factor is zero:

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{17}$$

Equation (17) is called the **characteristic equation** for the differential equation (8). Its significance lies in the fact that if r is a root of the polynomial equation (17), then $y = e^{rt}$ is a solution of the differential equation (8). Since equation (17) is a quadratic equation with real coefficients, it has two roots, which may be real and different, complex conjugates, or real but repeated. We consider the first case here and the latter two cases in Sections 3.3 and 3.4, respectively.

Assuming that the roots of the characteristic equation (17) are real and different, let them be denoted by r_1 and r_2, where $r_1 \neq r_2$. Then $y_1(t) = e^{r_1 t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{r_2 t}$ are two solutions of equation (8). Just as in Example 1, it now follows that

$$y = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t) = c_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 e^{r_2 t} \tag{18}$$

is also a solution of equation (8). To verify that this is so, we can differentiate the expression in equation (18); hence

$$y' = c_1 r_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 r_2 e^{r_2 t} \tag{19}$$

and

$$y'' = c_1 r_1^2 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 r_2^2 e^{r_2 t}. \tag{20}$$

Substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in equation (8) and rearranging terms, we obtain

$$ay'' + by' + cy = c_1\left(ar_1^2 + br_1 + c\right)e^{r_1 t} + c_2\left(ar_2^2 + br_2 + c\right)e^{r_2 t}. \tag{21}$$

The fact that r_1 is a root of equation (17) means that $ar_1^2 + br_1 + c = 0$. Since r_2 is also a root of the characteristic equation (17), it follows that $ar_2^2 + br_2 + c = 0$ as well. This completes the verification that y as given by equation (18) is indeed a solution of equation (8).

Now suppose that we want to find the particular member of the family of solutions (18) that satisfies the initial conditions (6)

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0'.$$

By substituting $t = t_0$ and $y = y_0$ in equation (18), we obtain

$$c_1 e^{r_1 t_0} + c_2 e^{r_2 t_0} = y_0. \tag{22}$$

Similarly, setting $t = t_0$ and $y' = y_0'$ in equation (19) gives

$$c_1 r_1 e^{r_1 t_0} + c_2 r_2 e^{r_2 t_0} = y_0'. \tag{23}$$

On solving equations (22) and (23) simultaneously for c_1 and c_2, we find that

$$c_1 = \frac{y_0' - y_0 r_2}{r_1 - r_2} e^{-r_1 t_0}, \quad c_2 = \frac{y_0 r_1 - y_0'}{r_1 - r_2} e^{-r_2 t_0}. \tag{24}$$

Since the roots of the characteristic equation (17) are assumed to be different, $r_1 - r_2 \neq 0$ so that the expressions in equation (24) always make sense. Thus, no matter what initial conditions are assigned—that is, regardless of the values of t_0, y_0, and y_0' in equations (6)—it is always possible to determine c_1 and c_2 so that the initial conditions are satisfied. Moreover, there is only one possible choice of c_1 and c_2 for each set of initial conditions. With the values of c_1 and c_2 given by equation (24), the expression (18) is the solution of the initial value problem

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \quad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0'. \tag{25}$$

It is possible to show, on the basis of the fundamental theorem cited in the next section, that all solutions of equation (8) are included in the expression (18), at least for the case in which the roots of equation (17) are real and different. Therefore, we call equation (18) the **general solution** of equation (8). The fact that any possible initial conditions can be satisfied by the proper choice of the constants in equation (18) makes more plausible the idea that this expression does include all solutions of equation (8).

Let us now look at some further examples.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the general solution of

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0. \tag{26}$$

Solution:

We assume that $y = e^{rt}$, and it then follows that r must be a root of the characteristic equation

$$r^2 + 5r + 6 = (r + 2)(r + 3) = 0.$$

Thus the possible values of r are $r_1 = -2$ and $r_2 = -3$; the general solution of equation (26) is

$$y = c_1 e^{-2t} + c_2 e^{-3t}. \tag{27}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 3. \tag{28}$$

Solution:

The general solution of the differential equation was found in Example 2 and is given by equation (27). To satisfy the first initial condition, we set $t = 0$ and $y = 2$ in equation (27); thus c_1 and c_2 must satisfy

$$c_1 + c_2 = 2. \tag{29}$$

To use the second initial condition, we must first differentiate equation (27). This gives $y' = -2c_1e^{-2t} - 3c_2e^{-3t}$. Then, setting $t = 0$ and $y' = 3$, we obtain

$$-2c_1 - 3c_2 = 3. \tag{30}$$

By solving equations (29) and (30), we find that $c_1 = 9$ and $c_2 = -7$. Using these values in the expression (27), we obtain the solution

$$y = 9e^{-2t} - 7e^{-3t} \tag{31}$$

of the initial value problem (28). The graph of the solution is shown in Figure 3.1.1.

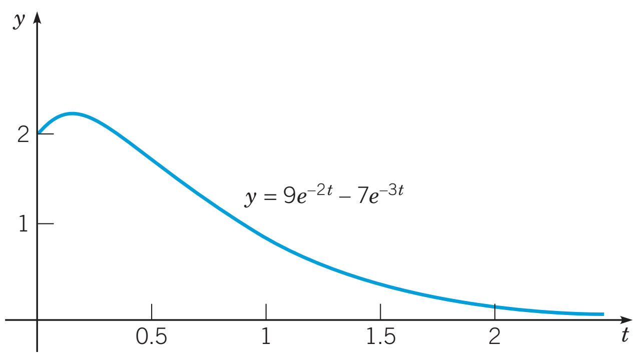


FIGURE 3.1.1 Solution of the initial value problem (28): $y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0$, $y(0) = 2$, $y'(0) = 3$.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$4y'' - 8y' + 3y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \frac{1}{2}. \tag{32}$$

Solution:

If $y = e^{rt}$, then we obtain the characteristic equation

$$4r^2 - 8r + 3 = 0$$

whose roots are $r = \frac{3}{2}$ and $r = \frac{1}{2}$. Therefore, the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = c_1 e^{3t/2} + c_2 e^{t/2}. \tag{33}$$

Applying the initial conditions, we obtain the following two equations for c_1 and c_2:

$$c_1 + c_2 = 2, \quad \frac{3}{2}c_1 + \frac{1}{2}c_2 = \frac{1}{2}.$$

The solution of these equations is $c_1 = -\frac{1}{2}$, $c_2 = \frac{5}{2}$, so the solution of the initial value problem (32) is

$$y = -\frac{1}{2}e^{3t/2} + \frac{5}{2}e^{t/2}. \tag{34}$$

Figure 3.1.2 shows the graph of the solution.

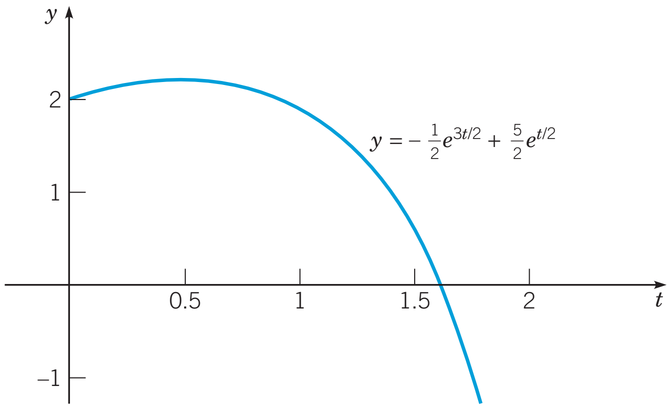


FIGURE 3.1.2 Solution of the initial value problem (32): $4y'' - 8y' + 3y = 0$, $y(0) = 2$, $y'(0) = 1/2$.

EXAMPLE 5

The solution (31) of the initial value problem (28) initially increases (because its initial slope is positive), but eventually approaches zero (because both terms involve negative exponential functions). Therefore, the solution must have a maximum point, and the graph in Figure 3.1.1 confirms this. Determine the location of this maximum point.

Solution:

The coordinates of the maximum point can be estimated from the graph, but to find them more precisely, we seek the point where the solution has a horizontal tangent line. By differentiating the solution (31), $y = 9e^{-2t} - 7e^{-3t}$, with respect to t, we obtain

$$y' = -18e^{-2t} + 21e^{-3t}. \tag{35}$$

Setting y' equal to zero and multiplying by e^{3t}, we find that the critical value t_m satisfies $e^t = 7/6$; hence

$$t_m = \ln(7/6) \cong 0.15415. \tag{36}$$

The corresponding maximum value y_m is given by

$$y_m = 9e^{-2t_m} - 7e^{-3t_m} = \frac{108}{49} \cong 2.20408. \tag{37}$$

In this example the initial slope is 3, but the solution of the given differential equation behaves in a similar way for any other positive initial slope. In Problem 19 you are asked to determine how the coordinates of the maximum point depend on the initial slope.

Returning to the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ with arbitrary coefficients, recall that when $r_1 \neq r_2$, its general solution (18) is the sum of two exponential functions. Therefore, the solution has a relatively simple geometrical behavior: as t increases, the magnitude of the solution either tends to zero (when both exponents are negative) or else exhibits unbounded growth (when at least one exponent is positive). These two cases are illustrated by the solutions of Examples 3 and 4, which are shown in Figures 3.1.1 and 3.1.2, respectively. Note that whether a growing solution approaches $+\infty$ or $-\infty$ as $t \to \infty$ is determined by the sign of the coefficient of the exponential for the larger root of the characteristic equation. (See Problem 21.) There is also a third case that occurs less often: the solution approaches a constant when one exponent is zero and the other is negative.

In Sections 3.3 and 3.4, respectively, we return to the problem of solving the equation $ay''+by'+cy = 0$ when the roots of the characteristic equation either are complex conjugates or are real and equal. In the meantime, in Section 3.2, we provide a systematic discussion of the mathematical structure of the solutions of all second-order linear homogeneous equations.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y'' + 2y' - 3y = 0$
2. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = 0$
3. $6y'' - y' - y = 0$
4. $y'' + 5y' = 0$
5. $4y'' - 9y = 0$
6. $y'' - 2y' - 2y = 0$

In each of Problems 7 through 12, find the solution of the given initial value problem. Sketch the graph of the solution and describe its behavior as t increases.

G 7. $y'' + y' - 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 1$

G 8. $y'' + 4y' + 3y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$

G 9. $y'' + 3y' = 0, \quad y(0) = -2, \quad y'(0) = 3$

G 10. $2y'' + y' - 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

G 11. $y'' + 8y' - 9y = 0, \quad y(1) = 1, \quad y'(1) = 0$

G 12. $4y'' - y = 0, \quad y(-2) = 1, \quad y'(-2) = -1$

13. Find a differential equation whose general solution is $y = c_1e^{2t} + c_2e^{-3t}$.

G 14. Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' - y = 0, \quad y(0) = \frac{5}{4}, \quad y'(0) = -\frac{3}{4}.$$

Plot the solution for $0 \le t \le 2$ and determine its minimum value.

15. Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$2y'' - 3y' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Then determine the maximum value of the solution and also find the point where the solution is zero.

16. Solve the initial value problem $y'' - y' - 2y = 0$, $y(0) = \alpha$, $y'(0) = 2$. Then find α so that the solution approaches zero as $t \to \infty$.

In each of Problems 17 and 18, determine the values of α, if any, for which all solutions tend to zero as $t \to \infty$; also determine the values of α, if any, for which all (nonzero) solutions become unbounded as $t \to \infty$.

17. $y'' - (2\alpha - 1)y' + \alpha(\alpha - 1)y = 0$
18. $y'' + (3 - \alpha)y' - 2(\alpha - 1)y = 0$
19. Consider the initial value problem (see Example 5)

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \beta,$$

where $\beta > 0$.

  a. Solve the initial value problem.
  b. Determine the coordinates t_m and y_m of the maximum point of the solution as functions of β.
  c. Determine the smallest value of β for which $y_m \ge 4$.
  d. Determine the behavior of t_m and y_m as $\beta \to \infty$.

20. Consider the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = d$, where a, b, c, and d are constants.
  a. Find all equilibrium, or constant, solutions of this differential equation.
  b. Let y_e denote an equilibrium solution, and let $Y = y - y_e$. Thus Y is the deviation of a solution y from an equilibrium solution. Find the differential equation satisfied by Y.

21. Consider the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$, where a, b, and c are constants with $a > 0$. Find conditions on a, b, and c such that the roots of the characteristic equation are:
  a. real, different, and negative.
  b. real with opposite signs.
  c. real, different, and positive.

In each case, determine the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

3.2 Solutions of Linear Homogeneous Equations; the Wronskian

In the preceding section we showed how to solve some differential equations of the form

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0,$$

where a, b, and c are constants. Now we build on those results to provide a clearer picture of the structure of the solutions of all second-order linear homogeneous equations. In turn, this understanding will assist us in finding the solutions of other problems that we will encounter later.

To discuss general properties of linear differential equations, it is helpful to introduce a **differential operator** notation. Let p and q be continuous functions on an open interval I—that is, for $\alpha < t < \beta$. The cases for $\alpha = -\infty$, or $\beta = \infty$, or both, are included. Then, for any function ϕ that is twice differentiable on I, we define the differential operator L by the equation

$$L[\phi] = \phi'' + p\phi' + q\phi. \tag{1}$$

It is important to understand that the result of applying the operator L to a function ϕ is another function, which we refer to as $L[\phi]$. The value of $L[\phi]$ at a point t is

$$L[\phi](t) = \phi''(t) + p(t)\phi'(t) + q(t)\phi(t).$$

For example, if $p(t) = t^2$, $q(t) = 1 + t$, and $\phi(t) = \sin 3t$, then

$$\begin{aligned} L[\phi](t) &= (\sin 3t)'' + t^2(\sin 3t)' + (1+t)\sin 3t \\ &= -9\sin 3t + 3t^2\cos 3t + (1+t)\sin 3t. \end{aligned}$$

The operator L is often written as $L = D^2 + pD + q$, where D is the derivative operator, that is, $D[\phi] = \phi'$.

In this section we study the second-order linear homogeneous differential equation $L[\phi](t) = 0$. Since it is customary to use the symbol y to denote $\phi(t)$, we will usually write this equation in the form

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0. \tag{2}$$

With equation (2) we associate a set of initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0', \tag{3}$$

where t_0 is any point in the interval I, and y_0 and y_0' are given real numbers. We would like to know whether the initial value problem (2), (3) always has a solution, and whether it may have more than one solution. We would also like to know whether anything can be said about the form and structure of solutions that might be helpful in finding solutions of particular problems. Answers to these questions are contained in the theorems in this section.

The fundamental theoretical result for initial value problems for second-order linear equations is stated in Theorem 3.2.1, which is analogous to Theorem 2.4.1 for first-order linear equations. The result applies equally well to nonhomogeneous equations, so the theorem is stated in that form.

Theorem 3.2.1 | (Existence and Uniqueness Theorem)

Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0', \tag{4}$$

where p, q, and g are continuous on an open interval I that contains the point t_0. This problem has exactly one solution $y = \phi(t)$, and the solution exists throughout the interval I.

We emphasize that the theorem says three things:

1. The initial value problem *has* a solution; in other words, a solution *exists*.
2. The initial value problem has *only one* solution; that is, the solution is *unique*.
3. The solution ϕ is defined *throughout the interval* I where the coefficients are continuous and is at least twice differentiable there.

For some problems some of these assertions are easy to prove. For instance, we found in Example 1 of Section 3.1 that the initial value problem

$$y'' - y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1 \tag{5}$$

has the solution

$$y = \frac{1}{2}e^t + \frac{3}{2}e^{-t}. \tag{6}$$

The fact that we found a solution certainly establishes that a solution exists for this initial value problem. Further, the solution (6) is twice differentiable, indeed differentiable any number of times, throughout the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$ where the coefficients in the differential equation are continuous. On the other hand, it is not obvious, and is more difficult to show, that the initial value problem (5) has no solutions other than the one given by equation (6). Nevertheless, Theorem 3.2.1 states that this solution is indeed the only solution of the initial value problem (5).

For most problems of the form (4), it is not possible to write down a useful expression for the solution. This is a major difference between first-order and second-order linear differential equations. Therefore, all parts of the theorem must be proved by general methods that do not involve having such an expression. The proof of Theorem 3.2.1 is fairly difficult, and we do not discuss it here.[2] We will, however, accept Theorem 3.2.1 as true and make use of it whenever necessary.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the longest interval in which the solution of the initial value problem

$$(t^2 - 3t)y'' + ty' - (t+3)y = 0, \quad y(1) = 2, \quad y'(1) = 1$$

is certain to exist.

Solution:

If the given differential equation is written in the form of equation (4), then

$$p(t) = \frac{1}{t-3}, \quad q(t) = -\frac{t+3}{t(t-3)}, \quad \text{and} \quad g(t) = 0.$$

The only points of discontinuity of the coefficients are $t = 0$ and $t = 3$. Therefore, the longest open interval, containing the initial point $t = 1$, in which all the coefficients are continuous is $0 < t < 3$. Thus this is the longest interval in which Theorem 3.2.1 guarantees that the solution exists.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the unique solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \quad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where p and q are continuous in an open interval I containing t_0.

Solution:

The function $y = \phi(t) = 0$ for all t in I certainly satisfies the differential equation and initial conditions. By the uniqueness part of Theorem 3.2.1, it is the only solution of the given problem.

[2] A proof of Theorem 3.2.1 can be found, for example, in Chapter 6, Section 8 of the book by Coddington listed in the references at the end of this chapter.

Let us now assume that y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of equation (2); in other words,

$$L[y_1] = y_1'' + py_1' + qy_1 = 0,$$

and similarly for y_2. Then, just as in the examples in Section 3.1, we can generate more solutions by forming linear combinations of y_1 and y_2. We state this result as a theorem.

Theorem 3.2.2 | (Principle of Superposition)

If y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of the differential equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

then the linear combination $c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$ is also a solution for any values of the constants c_1 and c_2.

A special case of Theorem 3.2.2 occurs if either c_1 or c_2 is zero. Then we conclude that any constant multiple of a solution of equation (2) is also a solution.

To prove Theorem 3.2.2, we need only substitute

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) \tag{7}$$

for y in equation (2). By calculating the indicated derivatives and rearranging terms, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2] &= [c_1y_1 + c_2y_2]'' + p[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2]' + q[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2] \\ &= c_1y_1'' + c_2y_2'' + c_1py_1' + c_2py_2' + c_1qy_1 + c_2qy_2 \\ &= c_1[y_1'' + py_1' + qy_1] + c_2[y_2'' + py_2' + qy_2] \\ &= c_1L[y_1] + c_2L[y_2]. \end{aligned}$$

Since $L[y_1] = 0$ and $L[y_2] = 0$, it follows that $L[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2] = 0$ also. Therefore, regardless of the values of c_1 and c_2, the function y as given by equation (7) satisfies the differential equation (2), and the proof of Theorem 3.2.2 is complete.

Theorem 3.2.2 states that, beginning with only two solutions of equation (2), we can construct an infinite family of solutions by means of equation (7). The next question is whether all solutions of equation (2) are included in equation (7) or whether there may be other solutions of a different form. We begin to address this question by examining whether the constants c_1 and c_2 in equation (7) can be chosen so as to satisfy the initial conditions (3). These initial conditions require c_1 and c_2 to satisfy the equations

$$\begin{aligned} c_1y_1(t_0) + c_2y_2(t_0) &= y_0, \\ c_1y_1'(t_0) + c_2y_2'(t_0) &= y_0'. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

The determinant of coefficients of the system (8) is

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix} = y_1(t_0)y_2'(t_0) - y_1'(t_0)y_2(t_0). \tag{9}$$

If $W \neq 0$, then equations (8) have a unique solution (c_1, c_2) regardless of the values of y_0 and y_0'. This solution is given by

$$c_1 = \frac{y_0y_2'(t_0) - y_0'y_2(t_0)}{y_1(t_0)y_2'(t_0) - y_1'(t_0)y_2(t_0)}, \qquad c_2 = \frac{-y_0y_1'(t_0) + y_0'y_1(t_0)}{y_1(t_0)y_2'(t_0) - y_1'(t_0)y_2(t_0)}, \tag{10}$$

or, in terms of determinants,

$$c_1 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_0 & y_2(t_0) \\ y_0' & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix}}, \qquad c_2 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_0 \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_0' \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix}}. \tag{11}$$

With these values for c_1 and c_2, the linear combination $y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$ satisfies the initial conditions (3) as well as the differential equation (2). Note that the denominator in the expressions for c_1 and c_2 is the nonzero determinant W.

On the other hand, if $W = 0$, then the denominators appearing in equations (10) and (11) are zero. In this case equations (8) have no solution unless y_0 and y_0' have values that also make the numerators in equations (10) and (11) equal to zero. Thus, if $W = 0$, there are many initial conditions that cannot be satisfied no matter how c_1 and c_2 are chosen.

The determinant W is called the **Wronskian**[3] **determinant**, or simply the **Wronskian**, of the solutions y_1 and y_2. Sometimes we use the more extended notation $W[y_1, y_2](t_0)$ to stand for the expression on the right-hand side of equation (9), thereby emphasizing that the Wronskian depends on the functions y_1 and y_2, and that it is evaluated at the point t_0. The preceding argument establishes the following result.

Theorem 3.2.3

Suppose that y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of equation (2)

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

and that the initial conditions (3)

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0'$$

are assigned. Then it is always possible to choose the constants c_1, c_2 so that

$$y = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t)$$

satisfies the differential equation (2) and the initial conditions (3) if and only if the Wronskian

$$W[y_1, y_2] = y_1 y_2' - y_1' y_2$$

is not zero at t_0.

EXAMPLE 3

In Example 2 of Section 3.1 we found that $y_1(t) = e^{-2t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-3t}$ are solutions of the differential equation

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0.$$

Find the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2.

Solution:

The Wronskian of these two functions is

$$W\left[e^{-2t}, e^{-3t}\right] = \begin{vmatrix} e^{-2t} & e^{-3t} \\ -2e^{-2t} & -3e^{-3t} \end{vmatrix} = -e^{-5t}.$$

Since W is nonzero for all values of t, the functions y_1 and y_2 can be used to construct solutions of the given differential equation, together with initial conditions prescribed at any value of t. One such initial value problem was solved in Example 3 of Section 3.1.

The next theorem justifies the term "general solution" that we introduced in Section 3.1 for the linear combination $c_1 y_1 + c_2 y_2$.

[3] Wronskian determinants are named for Jósef Maria Hoëné-Wronski (1776–1853), who was born in Poland but spent most of his life in France. Wronski was a gifted but troubled man, and his life was marked by frequent heated disputes with other individuals and institutions.

Theorem 3.2.4

Suppose that y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of the second-order linear differential equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0.$$

Then the two-parameter family of solutions

$$y = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t)$$

with arbitrary coefficients c_1 and c_2 includes every solution of equation (2) if and only if there is a point t_0 where the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is not zero.

Let the function ϕ be any solution of equation (2). To prove the theorem, we must determine whether ϕ is included in the linear combinations $c_1 y_1 + c_2 y_2$. That is, we must determine whether there are values of the constants c_1 and c_2 that make the linear combination the same as ϕ. Let t_0 be a point where the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is nonzero. Then evaluate ϕ and ϕ' at this point and call these values y_0 and y_0', respectively; that is,

$$y_0 = \phi(t_0), \quad y_0' = \phi'(t_0).$$

Next, consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \quad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0'. \tag{12}$$

The function ϕ is certainly a solution of this initial value problem. Further, because we are assuming that $W[y_1, y_2](t_0)$ is nonzero, it is possible (by Theorem 3.2.3) to choose c_1 and c_2 such that $y = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t)$ is also a solution of the initial value problem (9). In fact, the proper values of c_1 and c_2 are given by equations (10) or (11). The uniqueness part of Theorem 3.2.1 guarantees that these two solutions of the same initial value problem are actually the same function; thus, for the proper choice of c_1 and c_2,

$$\phi(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t), \tag{13}$$

and therefore ϕ is included in the family of functions $c_1 y_1 + c_2 y_2$. Finally, since ϕ is an *arbitrary* solution of equation (2), it follows that *every* solution of this equation is included in this family.

Now suppose that there is no point t_0 where the Wronskian is nonzero. Thus $W[y_1, y_2](t_0) = 0$ for every point t_0. Then (by Theorem 3.2.3) there are values of y_0 and y_0' such that no values of c_1 and c_2 satisfy the system (8). Select a pair of such values for y_0 and y_0' and choose the solution $\phi(t)$ of equation (2) that satisfies the initial condition (3). Observe that this initial value problem is guaranteed to have a solution by Theorem 3.2.1. However, this solution is not included in the family $y = c_1 y_1 + c_2 y_2$. Thus, in cases where $W[y_1, y_2](t_0) = 0$ for every t_0, the linear combinations of y_1 and y_2 do not include all solutions of equation (2). This completes the proof of Theorem 3.2.4.

Theorem 3.2.4 states that the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is not everywhere zero if and only if the linear combination $c_1 y_1 + c_2 y_2$ contains all solutions of equation (2). It is therefore natural (and we have already done this in the preceding section) to call the expression

$$y = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t)$$

with arbitrary constant coefficients the **general solution** of equation (2). The solutions y_1 and y_2 are said to form a **fundamental set of solutions** of equation (2) if and only if their Wronskian is nonzero.

We can restate the result of Theorem 3.2.4 in slightly different language: to find the general solution, and therefore all solutions, of an equation of the form (2), we need only find two solutions of the given equation whose Wronskian is nonzero. We did precisely this in several examples in Section 3.1, although there we did not calculate the Wronskians. You should now go back and do that, thereby verifying that all the solutions we called "general solutions" in Section 3.1 do satisfy the necessary Wronskian condition.

Now that you have a little experience verifying the nonzero Wronskian condition for the examples from Section 3.1, the following example handles all second-order linear differential equations whose characteristic polynomial has two distinct real roots.

EXAMPLE 4

Suppose that $y_1(t) = e^{r_1 t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{r_2 t}$ are two solutions of an equation of the form (2). Show that if $r_1 \neq r_2$, then y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (2).

Solution:

We calculate the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2:

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} e^{r_1 t} & e^{r_2 t} \\ r_1 e^{r_1 t} & r_2 e^{r_2 t} \end{vmatrix} = (r_2 - r_1)\exp[(r_1 + r_2)t].$$

Since the exponential function is never zero, and since we are assuming that $r_2 - r_1 \neq 0$, it follows that W is nonzero for every value of t. Consequently, y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (2).

EXAMPLE 5

Show that $y_1(t) = t^{1/2}$ and $y_2(t) = t^{-1}$ form a fundamental set of solutions of

$$2t^2 y'' + 3ty' - y = 0, \qquad t > 0. \tag{14}$$

Solution:

We will show how to solve equation (14) later (see Problem 25 in Section 3.3). However, at this stage we can verify by direct substitution that y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the differential equation (14). Since $y_1'(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^{-1/2}$ and $y_1''(t) = -\frac{1}{4}t^{-3/2}$, we have

$$2t^2\left(-\frac{1}{4}t^{-3/2}\right) + 3t\left(\frac{1}{2}t^{-1/2}\right) - t^{1/2} = \left(-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2} - 1\right)t^{1/2} = 0.$$

Similarly, $y_2'(t) = -t^{-2}$ and $y_2''(t) = 2t^{-3}$, so

$$2t^2\left(2t^{-3}\right) + 3t\left(-t^{-2}\right) - t^{-1} = (4 - 3 - 1)t^{-1} = 0.$$

Next we calculate the Wronskian W of y_1 and y_2:

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} t^{1/2} & t^{-1} \\ \frac{1}{2}t^{-1/2} & -t^{-2} \end{vmatrix} = -\frac{3}{2}t^{-3/2}. \tag{15}$$

Since $W \neq 0$ for $t > 0$, we conclude that y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions there. Thus the general solution of differential equation (14) is $y(t) = c_1 t^{1/2} + c_2 t^{-1}$ for $t > 0$.

In several cases we have been able to find a fundamental set of solutions, and therefore the general solution, of a given differential equation. However, this is often a difficult task, and the question arises as to whether a differential equation of the form (2) always has a fundamental set of solutions. The following theorem provides an affirmative answer to this question.

Theorem 3.2.5

Consider the differential equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

whose coefficients p and q are continuous on some open interval I. Choose some point t_0 in I. Let y_1 be the solution of equation (2) that also satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = 1, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

and let y_2 be the solution of equation (2) that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 1.$$

Then y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (2).

First observe that the *existence* of the functions y_1 and y_2 is ensured by the existence part of Theorem 3.2.1. To show that they form a fundamental set of solutions, we need only calculate their Wronskian at t_0:

$$W(y_1, y_2)(t_0) = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 1.$$

Since their Wronskian is not zero at the point t_0, the functions y_1 and y_2 do form a fundamental set of solutions, thus completing the proof of Theorem 3.2.5.

Note that the potentially difficult part of this proof, demonstrating the existence of a pair of solutions, is taken care of by reference to Theorem 3.2.1. Note also that Theorem 3.2.5 does not address the question of how to find the solutions y_1 and y_2 by solving the specified initial value problems. Nevertheless, it may be reassuring to know that a fundamental set of solutions always exists.

EXAMPLE 6

Find the fundamental set of solutions y_1 and y_2 specified by Theorem 3.2.5 for the differential equation

$$y'' - y = 0, \tag{16}$$

using the initial point $t_0 = 0$.

Solution:

In Section 3.1 we noted that two solutions of equation (16) are $y_1(t) = e^t$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-t}$. The Wronskian of these solutions is $W[y_1, y_2](t) = -2 \neq 0$, so they form a fundamental set of solutions. However, they are not the fundamental solutions indicated by Theorem 3.2.5 because they do not satisfy the initial conditions mentioned in that theorem at the point $t = 0$.

To find the fundamental solutions specified by the theorem, we need to find the solutions satisfying the proper initial conditions. Let us denote by $y_3(t)$ the solution of equation (16) that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0. \tag{17}$$

The general solution of equation (16) is

$$y = c_1 e^t + c_2 e^{-t}, \tag{18}$$

and the initial conditions (17) are satisfied if $c_1 = 1/2$ and $c_2 = 1/2$. Thus

$$y_3(t) = \frac{1}{2}e^t + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} = \cosh t.$$

Similarly, if $y_4(t)$ satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1, \tag{19}$$

then

$$y_4(t) = \frac{1}{2}e^t - \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} = \sinh t.$$

Since the Wronskian of y_3 and y_4 is

$$W[y_3, y_4](t) = \cosh^2 t - \sinh^2 t = 1,$$

these functions also form a fundamental set of solutions, as stated by Theorem 3.2.5. Therefore, the general solution of equation (16) can be written as

$$y = k_1 \cosh t + k_2 \sinh t, \tag{20}$$

as well as in the form (18). We have used k_1 and k_2 for the arbitrary constants in equation (20) because they are not the same as the constants c_1 and c_2 in equation (18). One purpose of this example is to make it clear that a given differential equation has more than one fundamental set of solutions; indeed, it has infinitely many (see Problem 16). As a rule, you should choose the set that is most convenient.

In the next section we will encounter equations that have complex-valued solutions. The following theorem is fundamental in dealing with such equations and their solutions.

Theorem 3.2.6

Consider again the second-order linear differential equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

where p and q are continuous real-valued functions. If $y = u(t) + iv(t)$ is a complex-valued solution of differential equation (2), then its real part u and its imaginary part v are also solutions of this equation.

To prove this theorem, we substitute $u(t) + iv(t)$ for y in $L[y]$, obtaining

$$L[y](t) = u''(t) + iv''(t) + p(t)(u'(t) + iv'(t)) + q(t)(u(t) + iv(t)). \tag{21}$$

Then, by separating equation (21) into its real and imaginary parts—and this is where we need to know that $p(t)$ and $q(t)$ are real-valued—we find that

$$\begin{aligned} L[y](t) &= (u''(t) + p(t)u'(t) + q(t)u(t)) + i(v''(t) + p(t)v'(t) + q(t)v(t)) \\ &= L[u](t) + iL[v](t). \end{aligned}$$

Recall that a complex number is zero if and only if its real and imaginary parts are both zero. We know that $L[y] = 0$ because y is a solution of equation (2). Therefore, both $L[u] = 0$ and $L[v] = 0$; consequently, the two real-valued functions u and v are also solutions of equation (2), so the theorem is established. We will see examples of the use of Theorem 3.2.6 in Section 3.3.

Incidentally, the complex conjugate $\overline{y}$ of a solution y is also a solution. While this can be proved by an argument similar to the one just used to prove Theorem 3.2.6, it is also a consequence of Theorem 3.2.2 since $\overline{y} = u(t) - iv(t)$ is a linear combination of two solutions.

Now let us examine further the properties of the Wronskian of two solutions of a second-order linear homogeneous differential equation. The following theorem, perhaps surprisingly, gives a simple explicit formula for the Wronskian of any two solutions of any such equation, even if the solutions themselves are not known.

Theorem 3.2.7 | (Abel's Theorem)[4]

If y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the second-order linear differential equation

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \tag{22}$$

where p and q are continuous on an open interval I, then the Wronskian $W[y_1, y_2](t)$ is given by

$$W[y_1, y_2](t) = c\exp\left(-\int p(t)\,dt\right), \tag{23}$$

where c is a certain constant that depends on y_1 and y_2, but not on t. Further, $W[y_1, y_2](t)$ either is zero for all t in I (if $c = 0$) or else is never zero in I (if $c \neq 0$).

To prove Abel's theorem, we start by noting that y_1 and y_2 satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} y_1'' + p(t)y_1' + q(t)y_1 &= 0, \\ y_2'' + p(t)y_2' + q(t)y_2 &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

If we multiply the first equation by $-y_2$, multiply the second by y_1, and add the resulting equations, we obtain

$$(y_1y_2'' - y_1''y_2) + p(t)(y_1y_2' - y_1'y_2) = 0. \tag{25}$$

[4]The result in Theorem 3.2.7 was derived by the Norwegian mathematician Niels Henrik Abel (1802–1829) in 1827 and is known as **Abel's formula**. Abel also showed that there is no general formula for solving a quintic, or fifth degree, polynomial equation in terms of explicit algebraic operations on the coefficients, thereby resolving a question that had remained unanswered since the sixteenth century. His greatest contributions, however, were in analysis, particularly in the study of elliptic functions. Unfortunately, his work was not widely noticed until after his death. The distinguished French mathematician Legendre called it a "monument more lasting than bronze."

Next, we let $W(t) = W[y_1, y_2](t)$ and observe that

$$W' = y_1 y_2'' - y_1'' y_2. \tag{26}$$

Then we can write equation (25) in the form

$$W' + p(t)W = 0. \tag{27}$$

Equation (27) can be solved immediately since it is both a first-order linear differential equation (Section 2.1) and a separable differential equation (Section 2.2). Thus

$$W(t) = c\exp\left(-\int p(t)\,dt\right), \tag{28}$$

where c is a constant.

The value of c depends on which pair of solutions of equation (22) is involved. However, since the exponential function is never zero, $W(t)$ is not zero unless $c = 0$, in which case $W(t)$ is zero for all t. This completes the proof of Theorem 3.2.7.

Note that the Wronskians of any two fundamental sets of solutions of the same differential equation can differ only by a multiplicative constant, and that the Wronskian of any fundamental set of solutions can be determined, up to a multiplicative constant, without solving the differential equation. Further, since under the conditions of Theorem 3.2.7 the Wronskian W is either always zero or never zero, you can determine which case actually occurs by evaluating W at any single convenient value of t.

EXAMPLE 7

In Example 5 we verified that $y_1(t) = t^{1/2}$ and $y_2(t) = t^{-1}$ are solutions of the equation

$$2t^2y'' + 3ty' - y = 0, \quad t > 0. \tag{29}$$

Verify that the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is given by Abel's formula (23).

Solution:

From the example just cited we know that $W[y_1, y_2](t) = -\frac{3}{2}t^{-3/2}$. To use equation (23), we must write the differential equation (29) in the standard form with the coefficient of y'' equal to 1. Thus we obtain

$$y'' + \frac{3}{2t}y' - \frac{1}{2t^2}y = 0,$$

so $p(t) = \dfrac{3}{2t}$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} W[y_1, y_2](t) &= c\,\exp\left(-\int \frac{3}{2t}\,dt\right) = c\exp\left(-\frac{3}{2}\ln t\right) \\ &= c\,t^{-3/2}. \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

Equation (30) gives the Wronskian of any pair of solutions of equation (29). For the particular solutions given in this example, we must choose $c = -\dfrac{3}{2}$.

Summary. We can summarize the discussion in this section as follows: to find the general solution of the differential equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \quad \alpha < t < \beta,$$

we must first find two functions y_1 and y_2 that satisfy the differential equation in $\alpha < t < \beta$. Then we must make sure that there is a point in the interval where the Wronskian W of y_1 and y_2 is nonzero. Under these circumstances y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution is

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t),$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. If initial conditions are prescribed at a given point in $\alpha < t < \beta$, then c_1 and c_2 can be chosen so as to satisfy these conditions.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 5, find the Wronskian of the given pair of functions.

1. $e^{2t}, \quad e^{-3t/2}$

2. $\cos t, \quad \sin t$

3. $e^{-2t}, \quad te^{-2t}$

4. $e^t \sin t, \quad e^t \cos t$

5. $\cos^2 \theta, \quad 1 + \cos(2\theta)$

In each of Problems 6 through 9, determine the longest interval in which the given initial value problem is certain to have a unique twice-differentiable solution. Do not attempt to find the solution.

6. $ty'' + 3y = t, \quad y(1) = 1, \quad y'(1) = 2$

7. $t(t-4)y'' + 3ty' + 4y = 2, \quad y(3) = 0, \quad y'(3) = -1$

8. $y'' + (\cos t)y' + 3(\ln|t|)y = 0, \quad y(2) = 3, \quad y'(2) = 1$

9. $(x-2)y'' + y' + (x-2)(\tan x)y = 0, \quad y(3) = 1, \quad y'(3) = 2$

10. Verify that $y_1(t) = t^2$ and $y_2(t) = t^{-1}$ are two solutions of the differential equation $t^2y'' - 2y = 0$ for $t > 0$. Then show that $y = c_1t^2 + c_2t^{-1}$ is also a solution of this equation for any c_1 and c_2.

11. Verify that $y_1(t) = 1$ and $y_2(t) = t^{1/2}$ are solutions of the differential equation $yy'' + (y')^2 = 0$ for $t > 0$. Then show that $y = c_1 + c_2t^{1/2}$ is not, in general, a solution of this equation. Explain why this result does not contradict Theorem 3.2.2.

12. Show that if $y = \phi(t)$ is a solution of the differential equation $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t)$, where $g(t)$ is not always zero, then $y = c\phi(t)$, where c is any constant other than 1, is not a solution. Explain why this result does not contradict the remark following Theorem 3.2.2.

13. Can $y = \sin(t^2)$ be a solution on an interval containing $t = 0$ of an equation $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ with continuous coefficients? Explain your answer.

14. If the Wronskian W of f and g is $3e^{4t}$, and if $f(t) = e^{2t}$, find $g(t)$.

15. If the Wronskian of f and g is $t\cos t - \sin t$, and if $u = f + 3g$, $v = f - g$, find the Wronskian of u and v.

16. Assume that y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ and let $y_3 = a_1y_1 + a_2y_2$ and $y_4 = b_1y_1 + b_2y_2$, where a_1, a_2, b_1, and b_2 are any constants. Show that

$$W[y_3, y_4] = (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)W[y_1, y_2].$$

Are y_3 and y_4 also a fundamental set of solutions? Why or why not?

In each of Problems 17 and 18, find the fundamental set of solutions specified by Theorem 3.2.5 for the given differential equation and initial point.

17. $y'' + y' - 2y = 0, \quad t_0 = 0$

18. $y'' + 4y' + 3y = 0, \quad t_0 = 1$

In each of Problems 19 through 21, verify that the functions y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the given differential equation. Do they constitute a fundamental set of solutions?

19. $y'' + 4y = 0; \quad y_1(t) = \cos(2t), \quad y_2(t) = \sin(2t)$

20. $y'' - 2y' + y = 0; \quad y_1(t) = e^t, \quad y_2(t) = te^t$

21. $x^2y'' - x(x+2)y' + (x+2)y = 0, \quad x > 0;$
$y_1(x) = x, \quad y_2(x) = xe^x$

22. Consider the equation $y'' - y' - 2y = 0$.

a. Show that $y_1(t) = e^{-t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{2t}$ form a fundamental set of solutions.

b. Let $y_3(t) = -2e^{2t}$, $y_4(t) = y_1(t) + 2y_2(t)$, and $y_5(t) = 2y_1(t) - 2y_3(t)$. Are $y_3(t)$, $y_4(t)$, and $y_5(t)$ also solutions of the given differential equation?

c. Determine whether each of the following pairs forms a fundamental set of solutions: $\{y_1(t), y_3(t)\}$; $\{y_2(t), y_3(t)\}$; $\{y_1(t), y_4(t)\}$; $\{y_4(t), y_5(t)\}$.

In each of Problems 23 through 25, find the Wronskian of two solutions of the given differential equation without solving the equation.

23. $t^2y'' - t(t+2)y' + (t+2)y = 0$

24. $(\cos t)y'' + (\sin t)y' - ty = 0$

25. $(1-x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha+1)y = 0, \quad$ Legendre's equation

26. Show that if p is differentiable and $p(t) > 0$, then the Wronskian $W(t)$ of two solutions of $[p(t)y']' + q(t)y = 0$ is $W(t) = c/p(t)$, where c is a constant.

27. If the differential equation $ty'' + 2y' + te^ty = 0$ has y_1 and y_2 as a fundamental set of solutions and if $W[y_1, y_2](1) = 2$, find the value of $W[y_1, y_2](5)$.

28. If the Wronskian of any two solutions of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ is constant, what does this imply about the coefficients p and q?

In Problems 29 and 30, assume that p and q are continuous and that the functions y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the differential equation $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ on an open interval I.

29. Prove that if y_1 and y_2 are zero at the same point in I, then they cannot be a fundamental set of solutions on that interval.

30. Prove that if y_1 and y_2 have a common point of inflection t_0 in I, then they cannot be a fundamental set of solutions on I unless both p and q are zero at t_0.

31. Exact Equations. The equation

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0$$

is said to be exact if it can be written in the form

$$(P(x)y')' + (f(x)y)' = 0,$$

where $f(x)$ is to be determined in terms of $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, and $R(x)$. The latter equation can be integrated once immediately, resulting in a first-order linear equation for y that can be solved as in Section 2.1. By equating the coefficients of the preceding equations and then eliminating $f(x)$, show that a necessary condition for exactness is

$$P''(x) - Q'(x) + R(x) = 0.$$

It can be shown that this is also a sufficient condition.

In each of Problems 32 through 34, use the result of Problem 31 to determine whether the given equation is exact. If it is, then solve the equation.

32. $y'' + xy' + y = 0$

33. $xy'' - (\cos x)y' + (\sin x)y = 0, \quad x > 0$

34. $x^2y'' + xy' - y = 0, \quad x > 0$

35. The Adjoint Equation. If a second-order linear homogeneous equation is not exact, it can be made exact by multiplying by an appropriate integrating factor $\mu(x)$. Thus we require that $\mu(x)$ be such that

$$\mu(x)P(x)y'' + \mu(x)Q(x)y' + \mu(x)R(x)y = 0$$

can be written in the form

$$(\mu(x)P(x)y')' + (f(x)y)' = 0.$$

By equating coefficients in these two equations and eliminating $f(x)$, show that the function μ must satisfy

$$P\mu'' + (2P' - Q)\mu' + (P'' - Q' + R)\mu = 0.$$

This equation is known as the **adjoint** of the original equation and is important in the advanced theory of differential equations. In general, the problem of solving the adjoint differential equation is as difficult as that of solving the original equation, so only occasionally is it possible to find an integrating factor for a second-order equation.

In each of Problems 36 and 37, use the result of Problem 35 to find the adjoint of the given differential equation.

36. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0$, Bessel's equation

37. $y'' - xy = 0$, Airy's equation

38. A second-order linear equation $P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0$ is said to be **self-adjoint** if its adjoint is the same as the original equation. Show that a necessary condition for this equation to be self-adjoint is that $P'(x) = Q(x)$. Determine whether each of the equations in Problems 36 and 37 is self-adjoint.

3.3 Complex Roots of the Characteristic Equation

We continue our discussion of the second-order linear differential equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \tag{1}$$

where a, b, and c are given real numbers. In Section 3.1 we found that if we seek solutions of the form $y = e^{rt}$, then r must be a root of the characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{2}$$

We showed in Section 3.1 that if the roots r_1 and r_2 are real and different, which occurs whenever the discriminant $b^2 - 4ac$ is positive, then the general solution of equation (1) is

$$y = c_1e^{r_1t} + c_2e^{r_2t}. \tag{3}$$

Suppose now that $b^2 - 4ac$ is negative. Then the roots of equation (2) are conjugate complex numbers; we denote them by

$$r_1 = \lambda + i\mu, \quad r_2 = \lambda - i\mu, \tag{4}$$

where λ and μ are real. The corresponding expressions for y are

$$y_1(t) = \exp((\lambda + i\mu)t), \quad y_2(t) = \exp((\lambda - i\mu)t). \tag{5}$$

Our first task is to explore what is meant by these expressions, which involve evaluating the exponential function for a complex exponent. For example, if $\lambda = -1$, $\mu = 2$, and $t = 3$, then from equation (5),

$$y_1(3) = e^{-3+6i}. \tag{6}$$

What does it mean to raise the number e to a complex power? The answer is provided by an important relation known as Euler's formula.

Euler's Formula. To assign a meaning to the expressions in equations (5), we need to give a definition of the complex exponential function. Of course, we want the definition to reduce to the familiar real exponential function when the exponent is real. There are several ways to discover how this extension of the exponential function should be defined. Here we use a method based on infinite series; an alternative is outlined in Problem 20.

Recall from calculus that the Taylor series for e^t about $t = 0$ is

$$e^t = 1 + t + \frac{t^2}{2} + \cdots + \frac{t^n}{n!} + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!}, \quad -\infty < t < \infty. \tag{7}$$

If we now assume that we can substitute it for t in equation (7), then we have

$$e^{it} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(it)^n}{n!}. \tag{8}$$

To simplify this series, we write $(it)^n = i^n t^n$ and make use of the facts that $i^2 = -1$, $i^3 = -i$, $i^4 = 1$, and so forth. When n is even, there is an integer k with $n = 2k$; in this case $i^n = i^{2k} = (-1)^k$. And when n is odd, $n = 2k + 1$, so $i^n = i^{2k+1} = i(-1)^k$. This suggests separating the terms in the right-hand side of (8) into its real and imaginary parts. The result is[5]

$$e^{it} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k t^{2k}}{(2k)!} + i \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k t^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!}. \tag{9}$$

The first series in equation (9) is precisely the Taylor series for $\cos t$ about $t = 0$, and the second is the Taylor series for $\sin t$ about $t = 0$. Thus we have

$$e^{it} = \cos t + i \sin t. \tag{10}$$

Equation (10) is known as **Euler's formula** and is an extremely important mathematical relationship.

Although our derivation of equation (10) is based on the unverified assumption that the series (7) can be used for complex as well as real values of the independent variable, our intention is to use this derivation only to make equation (10) seem plausible. We now put matters on a firm foundation by adopting equation (10) as the *definition* of e^{it}. In other words, whenever we write e^{it}, we mean the expression on the right-hand side of equation (10).

There are some variations of Euler's formula that are also worth noting. If we replace t by $-t$ in equation (10) and recall that $\cos(-t) = \cos t$ and $\sin(-t) = -\sin t$, then we have

$$e^{-it} = \cos t - i \sin t. \tag{11}$$

Further, if t is replaced by μt in equation (10), then we obtain a generalized version of Euler's formula, namely,

$$e^{i\mu t} = \cos(\mu t) + i \sin(\mu t). \tag{12}$$

Next, we want to extend the definition of the exponential function to arbitrary complex exponents of the form $(\lambda + i\mu)t$. Since we want the usual properties of the exponential function to hold for complex exponents, we certainly want $\exp((\lambda + i\mu)t)$ to satisfy

$$e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t} = e^{\lambda t} e^{i\mu t}. \tag{13}$$

Then, substituting for $e^{i\mu t}$ from equation (12), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t} &= e^{\lambda t}(\cos(\mu t) + i \sin(\mu t)) \\ &= e^{\lambda t} \cos(\mu t) + i e^{\lambda t} \sin(\mu t). \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

We now take equation (14) as the definition of $\exp[(\lambda + i\mu)t]$. The value of the exponential function with a complex exponent is a complex number whose real and imaginary parts are given by the terms on the right-hand side of equation (14). Observe that the real and imaginary parts of $\exp((\lambda + i\mu)t)$ are expressed entirely in terms of elementary real-valued functions. For example, the quantity in equation (6) has the value

$$e^{-3+6i} = e^{-3} \cos 6 + i e^{-3} \sin 6 \cong 0.0478041 - 0.0139113i.$$

With the definitions (10) and (14), it is straightforward to show that the usual laws of exponents are valid for the complex exponential function. You can also use equation (14) to verify that the differentiation formula

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{rt}) = re^{rt} \tag{15}$$

holds for complex values of r.

[5]Recall from calculus that the reordering of terms in the right-hand side of equation (9) is allowed because the series converges absolutely for all $-\infty < t < \infty$.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of the differential equation

$$y'' + y' + 9.25y = 0. \tag{16}$$

Also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 8, \tag{17}$$

and draw its graph for $0 < t < 10$.

Solution:

The characteristic equation for equation (16) is

$$r^2 + r + 9.25 = 0$$

so its roots are

$$r_1 = -\frac{1}{2} + 3i, \quad r_2 = -\frac{1}{2} - 3i.$$

Therefore, two solutions of equation (16) are

$$y_1(t) = \exp\left(\left(-\frac{1}{2} + 3i\right)t\right) = e^{-t/2}(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)) \tag{18}$$

and

$$y_2(t) = \exp\left(\left(-\frac{1}{2} - 3i\right)t\right) = e^{-t/2}(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)). \tag{19}$$

You can verify that the Wronskian $W[y_1, y_2](t) = -6ie^{-t}$, which is not zero, so the general solution of equation (15) can be expressed as a linear combination of $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ with arbitrary coefficients.

However, the initial value problem (16), (17) has only real coefficients, and it is often desirable to express the solution of such a problem in terms of real-valued functions. To do this we can make use of Theorem 3.2.6, which states that the real and imaginary parts of a complex-valued solution of equation (16) are also solutions of the same differential equation. Thus, starting from $y_1(t)$, we obtain

$$u(t) = e^{-t/2}\cos(3t), \quad v(t) = e^{-t/2}\sin(3t) \tag{20}$$

as real-valued solutions[6] of equation (16). On calculating the Wronskian of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$, we find that $W[u, v](t) = 3e^{-t}$, which is not zero; thus $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution of equation (16) can be written as

$$y = c_1u(t) + c_2v(t) = e^{-t/2}\big(c_1\cos(3t) + c_2\sin(3t)\big), \tag{21}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants.

To satisfy the initial conditions (17), we first substitute $t = 0$ and $y = 2$ in the solution (20) with the result that $c_1 = 2$. Then, by differentiating equation (21), setting $t = 0$, and setting $y' = 8$, we obtain $-\frac{1}{2}c_1 + 3c_2 = 8$ so that $c_2 = 3$. Thus the solution of the initial value problem (16), (17) is

$$y = e^{-t/2}(2\cos(3t) + 3\sin(3t)). \tag{22}$$

The graph of this solution is shown in Figure 3.3.1.

From the graph we see that the solution of this problem oscillates, with period $2\pi/3$ and a decaying amplitude. The sine and cosine factors control the oscillatory nature of the solution, and the negative exponential factor in each term causes the magnitude of the oscillations to decrease toward zero as time increases.

[6] If you are not completely sure that $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are solutions of the given differential equation, you should substitute these functions into equation (16) and confirm that they satisfy it. (See Problem 23.)

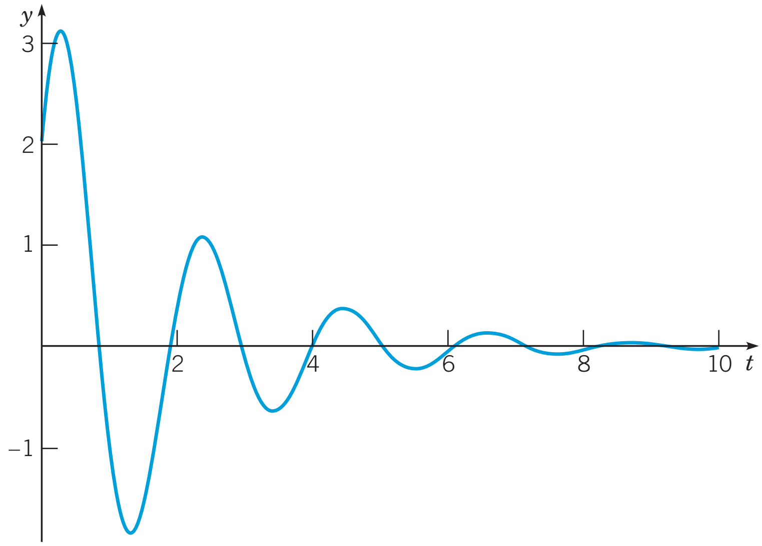


FIGURE 3.3.1 Solution of the initial value problem (16), (17): $y'' + y' + 9.25y = 0$, $y(0) = 2$, $y'(0) = 8$.

Complex Roots; The General Case. The functions $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$, given by equations (5) and with the meaning expressed by equation (14), are solutions of equation (1) when the roots of the characteristic equation (2) are complex numbers $\lambda \pm i\mu$. However, the solutions y_1 and y_2 are complex-valued functions, whereas in general we would prefer to have real-valued solutions because the differential equation itself has real coefficients. Just as in Example 1, we can use Theorem 3.2.6 to find a fundamental set of real-valued solutions by choosing the real and imaginary parts of either $y_1(t)$ or $y_2(t)$. In this way we obtain the solutions

$$u(t) = e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t), \qquad v(t) = e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t). \tag{23}$$

By direct computation (see Problem 19), you can show that the Wronskian of u and v is

$$W[u, v](t) = \mu e^{2\lambda t}. \tag{24}$$

Thus, as long as $\mu \neq 0$, the Wronskian W is not zero, so u and v form a fundamental set of solutions. (Of course, if $\mu = 0$, then the roots are real and equal and the discussions in this section, and in Section 3.1, are not applicable.) Consequently, if the roots of the characteristic equation are complex numbers $\lambda \pm i\mu$, with $\mu \neq 0$, then the general solution of equation (1) is

$$y = c_1 e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t) + c_2 e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t), \tag{25}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. Note that the solution (25) can be written down as soon as the values of λ and μ are known. Let us now consider some further examples.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$16y'' - 8y' + 145y = 0, \qquad y(0) = -2, \quad y'(0) = 1. \tag{26}$$

Solution:

The characteristic equation is $16r^2 - 8r + 145 = 0$ and its roots are $r = \frac{1}{4} \pm 3i$. Thus the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y(t) = c_1 e^{t/4}\cos(3t) + c_2 e^{t/4}\sin(3t). \tag{27}$$

To apply the first initial condition, we set $t = 0$ in equation (27); this gives

$$y(0) = c_1 = -2.$$

For the second initial condition, we must differentiate equation (27) before substituting $t = 0$. In this way we find that

$$y'(0) = \frac{1}{4}c_1 + 3c_2 = 1,$$

from which we determine that $c_2 = \frac{1}{2}$. Using these values of c_1 and c_2 in the general solution (27), we obtain

$$y = -2e^{t/4}\cos(3t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{t/4}\sin(3t) \tag{28}$$

as the solution of the initial value problem (26). The graph of this solution is shown in Figure 3.3.2.

In this case we observe that the solution is a growing oscillation. Again the trigonometric factors in equation (28) determine the oscillatory part of the solution (again with period $2\pi/3$), while the exponential factor (with a positive exponent this time) causes the magnitude of the oscillation to increase with time.

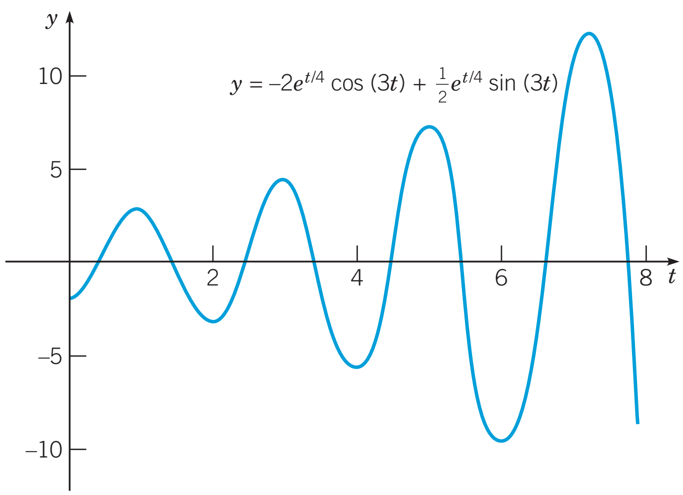


FIGURE 3.3.2 Solution of the initial value problem (26): $16y'' - 8y' + 145y = 0,\ \ y(0) = -2,\ \ y'(0) = 1.$

EXAMPLE 3

Find the general solution of

$$y'' + 9y = 0. \tag{29}$$

Solution:

The characteristic equation is $r^2 + 9 = 0$ with the roots $r = \pm 3i$; thus $\lambda = 0$ and $\mu = 3$. The general solution is

$$y = c_1\cos(3t) + c_2\sin(3t). \tag{30}$$

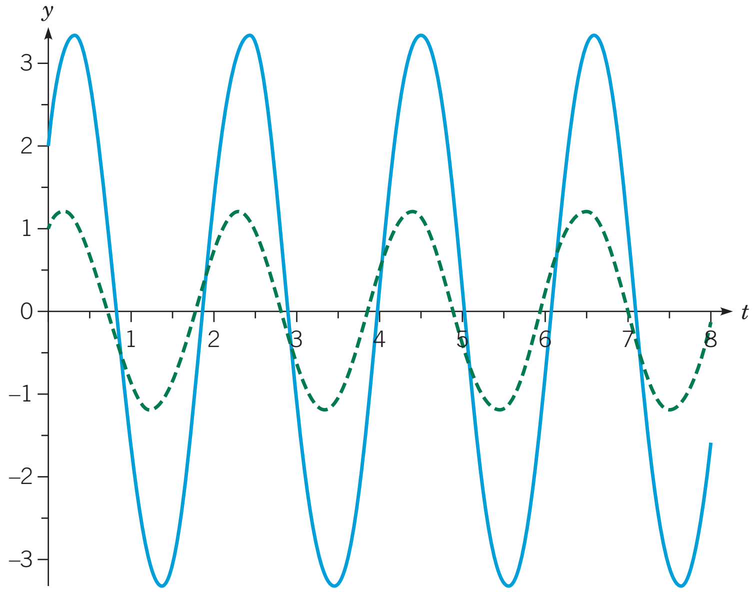


FIGURE 3.3.3 Solutions of equation (29): $y'' + 9y = 0$, with two sets of initial conditions: $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = 2$ (dashed, green) and $y(0) = 2$, $y'(0) = 8$ (solid, blue). Both solutions have the same period, but different amplitudes and phase shifts.

Note that if the real part of the roots is zero, as in this example, then there is no exponential factor in the solution. Figure 3.3.3 shows the graph of two solutions of equation (28) with different initial conditions. In each case the solution is a pure oscillation with period $2\pi/3$ but whose amplitude and phase shift are determined by the initial conditions. Since there is no exponential factor in the solution (30), the amplitude of each oscillation remains constant in time.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, use Euler's formula to write the given expression in the form $a + ib$.

1. $\exp(2 - 3i)$

2. $e^{i\pi}$

3. $e^{2-(\pi/2)i}$

4. 2^{1-i}

In each of Problems 5 through 11, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

5. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0$

6. $y'' - 2y' + 6y = 0$

7. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 0$

8. $y'' + 6y' + 13y = 0$

9. $y'' + 2y' + 1.25y = 0$

10. $9y'' + 9y' - 4y = 0$

11. $y'' + 4y' + 6.25y = 0$

In each of Problems 12 through 15, find the solution of the given initial value problem. Sketch the graph of the solution and describe its behavior for increasing t.

G **12.** $y'' + 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

G **13.** $y'' - 2y' + 5y = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = 0, \quad y'(\pi/2) = 2$

G **14.** $y'' + y = 0, \quad y(\pi/3) = 2, \quad y'(\pi/3) = -4$

G **15.** $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 0, \quad y(\pi/4) = 2, \quad y'(\pi/4) = -2$

N **16.** Consider the initial value problem

$$3u'' - u' + 2u = 0, \quad u(0) = 2, \quad u'(0) = 0.$$

a. Find the solution $u(t)$ of this problem.
b. For $t > 0$, find the first time at which $|u(t)| = 10$.

N **17.** Consider the initial value problem

$$5u'' + 2u' + 7u = 0, \quad u(0) = 2, \quad u'(0) = 1.$$

a. Find the solution $u(t)$ of this problem.
b. Find the smallest T such that $|u(t)| \le 0.1$ for all $t > T$.

N **18.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + 2y' + 6y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \alpha \ge 0.$$

a. Find the solution $y(t)$ of this problem.
b. Find α such that $y = 0$ when $t = 1$.
c. Find, as a function of α, the smallest positive value of t for which $y = 0$.
d. Determine the limit of the expression found in part c as $\alpha \to \infty$.

19. Show that $W\left[e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t), e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t)\right] = \mu e^{2\lambda t}$.

20. In this problem we outline a different derivation of Euler's formula.

a. Show that $y_1(t) = \cos t$ and $y_2(t) = \sin t$ are a fundamental set of solutions of $y'' + y = 0$; that is, show that they are solutions and that their Wronskian is not zero.

b. Show (formally) that $y = e^{it}$ is also a solution of $y'' + y = 0$. Therefore,

$$e^{it} = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t \tag{31}$$

for some constants c_1 and c_2. Why is this so?

c. Set $t = 0$ in equation (31) to show that $c_1 = 1$.

d. Assuming that equation (15) is true, differentiate equation (31) and then set $t = 0$ to conclude that $c_2 = i$. Use the values of c_1 and c_2 in equation (31) to arrive at Euler's formula.

21. Using Euler's formula, show that

$$\frac{e^{it} + e^{-it}}{2} = \cos t, \qquad \frac{e^{it} - e^{-it}}{2i} = \sin t.$$

22. If e^{rt} is given by equation (14), show that $e^{(r_1+r_2)t} = e^{r_1 t} e^{r_2 t}$ for any complex numbers r_1 and r_2.

23. Consider the differential equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0,$$

where $b^2 - 4ac < 0$ and the characteristic equation has complex roots $\lambda \pm i\mu$. Substitute the functions

$$u(t) = e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t) \quad \text{and} \quad v(t) = e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t)$$

for y in the differential equation and thereby confirm that they are solutions.

24. If the functions y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$, show that between consecutive zeros of y_1 there is one and only one zero of y_2. Note that this result is illustrated by the solutions $y_1(t) = \cos t$ and $y_2(t) = \sin t$ of the equation $y'' + y = 0$.
Hint: Suppose that t_1 and t_2 are two zeros of y_1 between which there are no zeros of y_2. Apply Rolle's theorem to y_1/y_2 to reach a contradiction.

Change of Variables. Sometimes a differential equation with variable coefficients,

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \tag{32}$$

can be put in a more suitable form for finding a solution by making a change of the independent variable. We explore these ideas in Problems 25 through 36. In particular, in Problem 25 we show that a class of equations known as Euler equations can be transformed into equations with constant coefficients by a simple change of the independent variable. Problems 26 through 31 are examples of this type of equation. Problem 32 determines conditions under which the more general equation (32) can be transformed into a differential equation with constant coefficients. Problems 33 through 36 give specific applications of this procedure.

25. **Euler Equations.** An equation of the form

$$t^2\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \alpha t\frac{dy}{dt} + \beta y = 0, \qquad t > 0, \tag{33}$$

where α and β are real constants, is called an **Euler equation**.

a. Let $x = \ln t$ and calculate dy/dt and d^2y/dt^2 in terms of dy/dx and d^2y/dx^2.

b. Use the results of part a to transform equation (33) into

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + (\alpha - 1)\frac{dy}{dx} + \beta y = 0. \tag{34}$$

Observe that differential equation (34) has constant coefficients. If $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (34), then $y_1(\ln t)$ and $y_2(\ln t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (33).

In each of Problems 26 through 31, use the method of Problem 25 to solve the given equation for $t > 0$.

26. $t^2y'' + ty' + y = 0$

27. $t^2y'' + 4ty' + 2y = 0$

28. $t^2y'' - 4ty' - 6y = 0$

29. $t^2y'' - 4ty' + 6y = 0$

30. $t^2y'' + 3ty' - 3y = 0$

31. $t^2y'' + 7ty' + 10y = 0$

32. In this problem we determine conditions on p and q that enable equation (32) to be transformed into an equation with constant coefficients by a change of the independent variable. Let $x = u(t)$ be the new independent variable, with the relation between x and t to be specified later.

a. Show that

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt}\frac{dy}{dx}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = \left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

b. Show that the differential equation (32) becomes

$$\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \left(\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + p(t)\frac{dx}{dt}\right)\frac{dy}{dx} + q(t)y = 0. \tag{35}$$

c. In order for equation (35) to have constant coefficients, the coefficients of d^2y/dx^2, dy/dx, and y must all be proportional. If $q(t) > 0$, then we can choose the constant of proportionality to be 1; hence, after integrating with respect to t,

$$x = u(t) = \int (q(t))^{1/2}\, dt. \tag{36}$$

d. With x chosen as in part c, show that the coefficient of dy/dx in equation (35) is also a constant, provided that the expression

$$\frac{q'(t) + 2p(t)q(t)}{2(q(t))^{3/2}} \tag{37}$$

is a constant. Thus equation (32) can be transformed into an equation with constant coefficients by a change of the independent variable, provided that the function $(q' + 2pq)/q^{3/2}$ is a constant.

e. How must the analysis and results in d be modified if $q(t) < 0$?

In each of Problems 33 through 36, try to transform the given equation into one with constant coefficients by the method of Problem 32. If this is possible, find the general solution of the given equation.

33. $y'' + ty' + e^{-t^2}y = 0, \quad -\infty < t < \infty$

34. $y'' + 3ty' + t^2y = 0, \quad -\infty < t < \infty$

35. $ty'' + (t^2 - 1)y' + t^3y = 0, \quad 0 < t < \infty$

36. $y'' + ty' - e^{-t^2}y = 0$

3.4 Repeated Roots; Reduction of Order

In Sections 3.1 and 3.3 we showed how to solve the equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0 \tag{1}$$

when the roots of the characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0 \tag{2}$$

either are real and different or are complex conjugates. Now we consider the third possibility, namely, that the two roots r_1 and r_2 are equal. This case is transitional between the other two and occurs when the discriminant $b^2 - 4ac$ is zero. Then it follows from the quadratic formula that

$$r_1 = r_2 = -\frac{b}{2a}. \tag{3}$$

The difficulty is immediately apparent; both roots yield the same solution

$$y_1(t) = e^{-bt/(2a)} \tag{4}$$

of the differential equation (1), and it is not obvious how to find a second solution.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the differential equation

$$y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0. \tag{5}$$

Solution:

The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 + 4r + 4 = (r+2)^2 = 0,$$

so $r_1 = r_2 = -2$. Therefore, one solution of equation (5) is $y_1(t) = e^{-2t}$. To find the general solution of equation (5), we need a second solution that is not a constant multiple of y_1. This second solution can be found in several ways (see Problems 15 through 17); here we use a method originated by d'Alembert[7] in the eighteenth century. Recall that since $y_1(t)$ is a solution of equation (1), so is $cy_1(t)$ for any constant c. The basic idea is to generalize this observation by replacing c by a function $v(t)$ and then trying to determine $v(t)$ so that the product $v(t)y_1(t)$ is also a solution of equation (1).

To carry out this program, we substitute $y = v(t)y_1(t)$ in equation (5) and use the resulting equation to find $v(t)$. Starting with

$$y = v(t)y_1(t) = v(t)e^{-2t}, \tag{6}$$

we differentiate once to find

$$y' = v'(t)e^{-2t} - 2v(t)e^{-2t} \tag{7}$$

and a second differentiation yields

$$y'' = v''(t)e^{-2t} - 4v'(t)e^{-2t} + 4v(t)e^{-2t}. \tag{8}$$

By substituting the expressions in equations (6), (7), and (8) in equation (5) and collecting terms, we obtain

$$(v''(t) - 4v'(t) + 4v(t) + 4v'(t) - 8v(t) + 4v(t))e^{-2t} = 0,$$

[7] Jean d'Alembert (1717–1783), a French mathematician, was a contemporary of Euler and Daniel Bernoulli and is known primarily for his work in mechanics and differential equations. D'Alembert's principle in mechanics and d'Alembert's paradox in hydrodynamics are named for him, and the wave equation first appeared in his paper on vibrating strings in 1747. In his later years he devoted himself primarily to philosophy and to his duties as science editor of Diderot's *Encyclopédie*.

which simplifies to

$$v''(t) = 0. \tag{9}$$

Therefore,

$$v'(t) = c_1$$

and

$$v(t) = c_1 t + c_2, \tag{10}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. Finally, substituting for $v(t)$ in equation (6), we obtain

$$y = c_1 t e^{-2t} + c_2 e^{-2t}. \tag{11}$$

The second term on the right-hand side of equation (11) corresponds to the original solution $y_1(t) = \exp(-2t)$, but the first term arises from a second solution, namely, $y_2(t) = t\exp(-2t)$. We can verify that these two solutions form a fundamental set by calculating their Wronskian:

$$\begin{aligned} W[y_1, y_2](t) &= \begin{vmatrix} e^{-2t} & te^{-2t} \\ -2e^{-2t} & (1-2t)e^{-2t} \end{vmatrix} = e^{-4t} - 2te^{-4t} + 2te^{-4t} \\ &= e^{-4t} \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$y_1(t) = e^{-2t}, \quad y_2(t) = te^{-2t} \tag{12}$$

form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (5), and the general solution of that equation is given by equation (11). Note that both $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ tend to zero as $t \to \infty$; consequently, all solutions of equation (5) behave in this way. The graphs of typical solutions are shown in Figure 3.4.1.

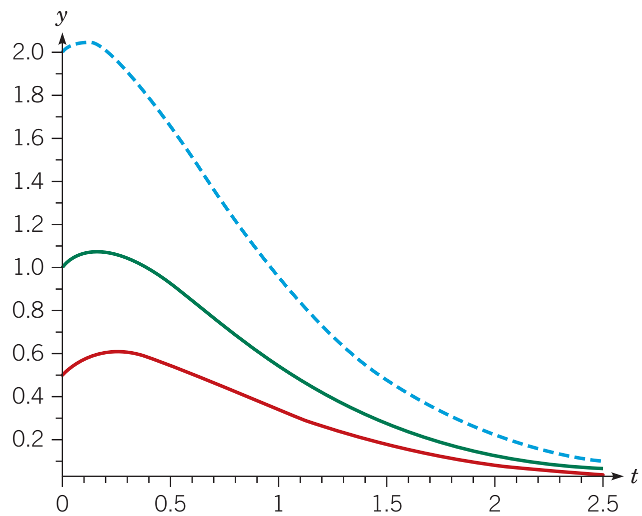


FIGURE 3.4.1 Three solutions of equation (5): $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0$, with different sets of initial conditions: $y(0) = 2$, $y'(0) = 1$ (blue, dashed); $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = 1$ (green, solid); $y(0) = 1/2$, $y'(0) = 1$ (red).

The procedure used in Example 1 can be extended to a general equation whose characteristic equation has repeated roots. That is, we assume that the coefficients in equation (1) satisfy $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, in which case

$$y_1(t) = e^{-bt/(2a)}$$

is a solution. To find a second solution, we assume that

$$y = v(t)y_1(t) = v(t)e^{-bt/(2a)} \tag{13}$$

and substitute for y in equation (1) to determine $v(t)$. We have

$$y' = v'(t)e^{-bt/(2a)} - \frac{b}{2a}v(t)e^{-bt/(2a)} \tag{14}$$

and

$$y'' = v''(t)e^{-bt/(2a)} - \frac{b}{a}v'(t)e^{-bt/(2a)} + \frac{b^2}{4a^2}v(t)e^{-bt/(2a)}. \tag{15}$$

Then, by substituting in equation (1), we obtain

$$\left(a\left(v''(t) - \frac{b}{a}v'(t) + \frac{b^2}{4a^2}v(t)\right) + b\left(v'(t) - \frac{b}{2a}v(t)\right) + cv(t)\right)e^{-bt/(2a)} = 0. \tag{16}$$

Canceling the factor $e^{-b/(2a)}$, which is nonzero, and rearranging the remaining terms, we find that

$$av''(t) + (-b+b)v'(t) + \left(\frac{b^2}{4a} - \frac{b^2}{2a} + c\right)v(t) = 0. \tag{17}$$

The term involving $v'(t)$ is obviously zero. Further, the coefficient of $v(t)$ is $c - b^2/(4a)$, which is also zero because $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ in the problem that we are considering. Thus, just as in Example 1, equation (17) reduces to

$$v''(t) = 0,$$

so

$$v(t) = c_1 + c_2 t.$$

Hence, from equation (13), we have

$$y = c_1 e^{-bt/(2a)} + c_2 t e^{-bt/(2a)}. \tag{18}$$

Thus y is a linear combination of the two solutions

$$y_1(t) = e^{-bt/(2a)}, \quad y_2(t) = te^{-bt/(2a)}. \tag{19}$$

The Wronskian of these two solutions is

$$W(y_1, y_2)(t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{-bt/(2a)} & te^{-bt/(2a)} \\ -\dfrac{b}{2a}e^{-bt/(2a)} & \left(1 - \dfrac{bt}{2a}\right)e^{-bt/(2a)} \end{vmatrix} = e^{-bt/a}. \tag{20}$$

Since $W[y_1, y_2](t)$ is never zero, the solutions y_1 and y_2 given by equation (19) are a fundamental set of solutions. Further, equation (18) is the general solution of equation (1) when the roots of the characteristic equation are equal. In other words, in this case there is one exponential solution corresponding to the repeated root and a second solution that is obtained by multiplying the exponential solution by t.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' - y' + \frac{y}{4} = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \frac{1}{3}. \tag{21}$$

Solution:

The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 - r + \frac{1}{4} = 0,$$

so the roots are $r_1 = r_2 = 1/2$. Thus the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = c_1 e^{t/2} + c_2 t e^{t/2}. \tag{22}$$

The first initial condition requires that

$$y(0) = c_1 = 2.$$

To satisfy the second initial condition, we first differentiate equation (22) and then set $t = 0$. This gives

$$y'(0) = \frac{1}{2}c_1 + c_2 = \frac{1}{3},$$

so $c_2 = -2/3$. Thus the solution of the initial value problem is

$$y = 2e^{t/2} - \frac{2}{3}te^{t/2}. \tag{23}$$

The graph of this solution is shown by the blue curve in Figure 3.4.2.

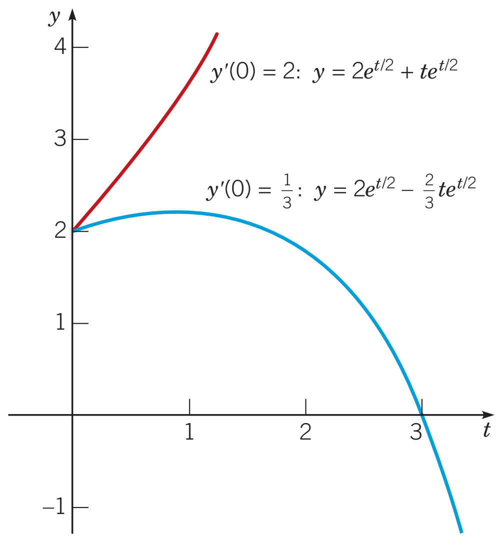


FIGURE 3.4.2 Solutions of $y'' - y' + y/4 = 0$, $y(0) = 2$, with $y'(0) = 1/3$ (blue) and with $y'(0) = 2$ (red).

Let us now modify the initial value problem (16) by changing the initial slope; to be specific, let the second initial condition be $y'(0) = 2$. The solution of this modified problem is

$$y = 2e^{t/2} + te^{t/2},$$

and its graph is shown by the red curve in Figure 3.4.2. The graphs shown in this figure suggest that there is a critical initial slope, with a value between $1/3$ and 2, that separates solutions that increase as $t \to \infty$ from those that ultimately decrease as $t \to \infty$. In Problem 12 you are asked to determine this critical initial slope.

The asymptotic behavior of solutions is similar in this case to that when the roots are real and different. If the exponents are either positive or negative, then the magnitude of the solution grows or decays accordingly; the linear factor t has little influence. A decaying solution is shown in Figure 3.4.1 and growing solutions in Figure 3.4.2. However, if the repeated root is zero, then the differential equation is $y'' = 0$ and the general solution is a linear function of t.

Summary. We can now summarize the results that we have obtained for second-order linear homogeneous equations with constant coefficients

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0. \tag{24}$$

Let r_1 and r_2 be the roots of the corresponding characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{25}$$

If r_1 and r_2 are real but not equal, then the general solution of differential equation (24) is

$$y = c_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 e^{r_2 t}. \tag{26}$$

If r_1 and r_2 are complex conjugates $\lambda \pm i\mu$, then the general solution is

$$y = c_1 e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t) + c_2 e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t). \tag{27}$$

If $r_1 = r_2$, then the general solution is

$$y = c_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 t e^{r_1 t}. \tag{28}$$

Reduction of Order. It is worth noting that the procedure used in this section for equations with constant coefficients is more generally applicable. Suppose that we know one solution $y_1(t)$, not everywhere zero, of

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0. \tag{29}$$

To find a second solution, let

$$y = v(t)y_1(t); \tag{30}$$

then

$$y' = v'(t)y_1(t) + v(t)y_1'(t)$$

and

$$y'' = v''(t)y_1(t) + 2v'(t)y_1'(t) + v(t)y_1''(t).$$

Substituting for y, y', and y'' in equation (29) and collecting terms, we find that

$$y_1 v'' + (2y_1' + py_1)v' + (y_1'' + py_1' + qy_1)v = 0. \tag{31}$$

Since y_1 is a solution of equation (29), the coefficient of v in equation (31) is zero so that equation (31) becomes

$$y_1 v'' + (2y_1' + py_1)v' = 0. \tag{32}$$

Despite its appearance, equation (32) is actually a first-order differential equation for the function v' and can be solved either as a first-order linear equation or as a separable equation. Once v' has been found, then v is obtained by an integration. Finally, y is determined from equation (30). This procedure is called the method of **reduction of order**, because the crucial step is the solution of a first-order differential equation for v' rather than the original second-order differential equation for y. Although it is possible to write down a formula for $v(t)$, we will instead illustrate how this method works by an example.

EXAMPLE 3

Given that $y_1(t) = t^{-1}$ is a solution of

$$2t^2 y'' + 3ty' - y = 0, \quad t > 0, \tag{33}$$

find a fundamental set of solutions.

Solution:

We set $y = v(t)t^{-1}$; then

$$y' = v't^{-1} - vt^{-2}, \quad y'' = v''t^{-1} - 2v't^{-2} + 2vt^{-3}.$$

Substituting for y, y', and y'' in equation (33) and collecting terms, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 2t^2\left(v''t^{-1} - 2v't^{-2} + 2vt^{-3}\right) + 3t\left(v't^{-1} - vt^{-2}\right) - vt^{-1} \\ = 2tv'' + (-4+3)v' + \left(4t^{-1} - 3t^{-1} - t^{-1}\right)v \\ = 2tv'' - v' = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{34}$$

Note that the coefficient of v is zero, as it should be; this provides a useful check on our algebraic calculations.

If we let $w = v'$, then the second-order linear differential equation (34) reduces to the separable first-order differential equation

$$2tw' - w = 0.$$

Separating the variables and solving for $w(t)$, we find that

$$w(t) = v'(t) = ct^{1/2};$$

then, one final integration yields

$$v(t) = \frac{2}{3}ct^{3/2} + k.$$

It follows that

$$y = v(t)t^{-1} = \frac{2}{3}ct^{1/2} + kt^{-1}, \tag{35}$$

where c and k are arbitrary constants. The second term on the right-hand side of equation (35) is a multiple of $y_1(t)$ and can be dropped, but the first term provides a new solution $y_2(t) = t^{1/2}$. You can verify that the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is

$$W[y_1, y_2](t) = \frac{3}{2}t^{-3/2} \neq 0 \quad \text{for} \quad t > 0. \tag{36}$$

Consequently, y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (33) for $t > 0$.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y'' - 2y' + y = 0$

2. $9y'' + 6y' + y = 0$

3. $4y'' - 4y' - 3y = 0$

4. $y'' - 2y' + 10y = 0$

5. $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 0$

6. $4y'' + 17y' + 4y = 0$

7. $16y'' + 24y' + 9y = 0$

8. $2y'' + 2y' + y = 0$

In each of Problems 9 through 11, solve the given initial value problem. Sketch the graph of the solution and describe its behavior for increasing t.

9. $9y'' - 12y' + 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$

10. $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 2$

11. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0, \quad y(-1) = 2, \quad y'(-1) = 1$

12. Consider the following modification of the initial value problem in Example 2:

$$y'' - y' + \frac{y}{4} = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = b.$$

Find the solution as a function of b, and then determine the critical value of b that separates solutions that remain positive for all $t > 0$ from those that eventually become negative.

N **13.** Consider the initial value problem

$$4y'' + 4y' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 2.$$

a. Solve the initial value problem and plot the solution.
b. Determine the coordinates (t_M, y_M) of the maximum point.
c. Change the second initial condition to $y'(0) = b > 0$ and find the solution as a function of b.
d. Find the coordinates (t_M, y_M) of the maximum point in terms of b. Describe the dependence of t_M and y_M on b as b increases.

14. Consider the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$. If the roots of the corresponding characteristic equation are real, show that a solution to the differential equation either is everywhere zero or else can take on the value zero at most once.

Problems 15 through 17 indicate other ways of finding the second solution when the characteristic equation has repeated roots.

15. **a.** Consider the equation $y'' + 2ay' + a^2y = 0$. Show that the roots of the characteristic equation are $r_1 = r_2 = -a$ so that one solution of the equation is e^{-at}.

b. Use Abel's formula [equation (23) of Section 3.2] to show that the Wronskian of any two solutions of the given equation is

$$W(t) = y_1(t)y_2'(t) - y_1'(t)y_2(t) = c_1e^{-2at},$$

where c_1 is a constant.

c. Let $y_1(t) = e^{-at}$ and use the result of part b to obtain a differential equation satisfied by a second solution $y_2(t)$. By solving this equation, show that $y_2(t) = te^{-at}$.

16. Suppose that r_1 and r_2 are roots of $ar^2 + br + c = 0$ and that $r_1 \neq r_2$; then $\exp(r_1 t)$ and $\exp(r_2 t)$ are solutions of the differential equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$. Show that

$$\phi(t; r_1, r_2) = \frac{e^{r_2 t} - e^{r_1 t}}{r_2 - r_1}$$

is also a solution of the equation for $r_2 \neq r_1$. Then think of r_1 as fixed, and use l'Hôpital's rule to evaluate the limit of $\phi(t; r_1, r_2)$ as $r_2 \to r_1$, thereby obtaining the second solution in the case of equal roots.

17. **a.** If $ar^2 + br + c = 0$ has equal roots r_1, show that

$$L\left[e^{rt}\right] = a(e^{rt})'' + b(e^{rt})' + ce^{rt} = a(r - r_1)^2 e^{rt}. \tag{37}$$

Since the right-hand side of equation (37) is zero when $r = r_1$, it follows that $\exp(r_1 t)$ is a solution of $L[y] = ay'' + by' + cy = 0$.

b. Differentiate equation (37) with respect to r, and interchange differentiation with respect to r and with respect to t, thus showing that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r} L\left[e^{rt}\right] = L\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r} e^{rt}\right] = L\left[te^{rt}\right]$$
$$= ate^{rt}(r - r_1)^2 + 2ae^{rt}(r - r_1). \tag{38}$$

Since the right-hand side of equation (36) is zero when $r = r_1$, conclude that $t\exp(r_1 t)$ is also a solution of $L[y] = 0$.

In each of Problems 18 through 22, use the method of reduction of order to find a second solution of the given differential equation.

18. $t^2 y'' - 4ty' + 6y = 0, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t^2$

19. $t^2 y'' + 2ty' - 2y = 0, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t$

20. $t^2 y'' + 3ty' + y = 0, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t^{-1}$

21. $xy'' - y' + 4x^3 y = 0, \quad x > 0; \quad y_1(x) = \sin(x^2)$

22. $x^2 y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 0.25)y = 0, \quad x > 0; \quad y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x$

23. The differential equation

$$y'' + \delta(xy' + y) = 0$$

arises in the study of the turbulent flow of a uniform stream past a circular cylinder. Verify that $y_1(x) = \exp(-\delta x^2/2)$ is one solution, and then find the general solution in the form of an integral.

24. The method of Problem 15 can be extended to second-order equations with variable coefficients. If y_1 is a known nonvanishing solution of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$, show that a second solution y_2 satisfies $(y_2/y_1)' = W[y_1, y_2]/y_1^2$, where $W[y_1, y_2]$ is the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2. Then use Abel's formula (equation (23) of Section 3.2) to determine y_2.

In each of Problems 25 through 27, use the method of Problem 24 to find a second independent solution of the given equation.

25. $t^2 y'' + 3ty' + y = 0, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t^{-1}$

26. $ty'' - y' + 4t^3 y = 0, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = \sin(t^2)$

27. $x^2 y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 0.25)y = 0, \quad x > 0; \quad y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x$

Behavior of Solutions as $t \to \infty$. Problems 28 through 30 are concerned with the behavior of solutions as $t \to \infty$.

28. If a, b, and c are positive constants, show that all solutions of $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ approach zero as $t \to \infty$.

29. **a.** If $a > 0$ and $c > 0$, but $b = 0$, show that the result of Problem 28 is no longer true, but that all solutions are bounded as $t \to \infty$.

b. If $a > 0$ and $b > 0$, but $c = 0$, show that the result of Problem 28 is no longer true, but that all solutions approach a constant that depends on the initial conditions as $t \to \infty$. Determine this constant for the initial conditions $y(0) = y_0$, $y'(0) = y_0'$.

30. Show that $y = \sin t$ is a solution of

$$y'' + (k\sin^2 t)y' + (1 - k\cos t\sin t)y = 0$$

for any value of the constant k. If $0 < k < 2$, show that $1 - k\cos t\sin t > 0$ and $k\sin^2 t \geq 0$. Thus observe that even though the coefficients of this variable-coefficient differential equation are nonnegative (and the coefficient of y' is zero only at the points $t = 0, \pi, 2\pi, \ldots$), it has a solution that does not approach zero as $t \to \infty$. Compare this situation with the result of Problem 28. Thus we observe a not unusual situation in the study of differential equations: equations that are apparently very similar can have quite different properties.

Euler Equations. In each of Problems 31 through 34, use the substitution introduced in Problem 25 in Section 3.3 to solve the given differential equation.

31. $t^2 y'' - 3ty' + 4y = 0, \quad t > 0$

32. $t^2 y'' + 2ty' + 0.25y = 0, \quad t > 0$

33. $t^2 y'' + 3ty' + y = 0, \quad t > 0$

34. $4t^2 y'' - 8ty' + 9y = 0, \quad t > 0$

3.5 Nonhomogeneous Equations; Method of Undetermined Coefficients

We now turn our attention to the nonhomogeneous second-order linear differential equation

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{1}$$

where p, q, and g are given (continuous) functions on the open interval I. The equation

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \tag{2}$$

in which $g(t) = 0$ and p and q are the same as in equation (1), is called the homogeneous differential equation corresponding to equation (1). The following two results describe the structure of solutions of the nonhomogeneous equation (1) and provide a foundation for constructing its general solution.

Theorem 3.5.1

If Y_1 and Y_2 are two solutions of the nonhomogeneous linear differential equation (1), then their difference $Y_1 - Y_2$ is a solution of the corresponding homogeneous differential equation (2). If, in addition, y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (2), then

$$Y_1(t) - Y_2(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t), \tag{3}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are certain constants.

To prove this result, note that Y_1 and Y_2 satisfy the equations

$$L[Y_1](t) = g(t), \quad L[Y_2](t) = g(t). \tag{4}$$

Subtracting the second of these equations from the first, we have

$$L[Y_1](t) - L[Y_2](t) = g(t) - g(t) = 0. \tag{5}$$

However,

$$L[Y_1] - L[Y_2] = L[Y_1 - Y_2],$$

so equation (5) becomes

$$L[Y_1 - Y_2](t) = 0. \tag{6}$$

Equation (6) states that $Y_1 - Y_2$ is a solution of equation (2). Finally, since by Theorem 3.2.4 all solutions of equation (2) can be expressed as linear combinations of a fundamental set of solutions, it follows that the solution $Y_1 - Y_2$ can be so written. Hence equation (3) holds and the proof is complete.

Theorem 3.5.2

The general solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1) can be written in the form

$$y = \phi(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t) + Y(t), \tag{7}$$

where y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation (2), c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants, and Y is any solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1).

The proof of Theorem 3.5.2 follows quickly from Theorem 3.5.1. Note that equation (3) holds if we identify Y_1 with an arbitrary solution ϕ of equation (1) and Y_2 with the specific solution Y. From equation (3) we thereby obtain

$$\phi(t) - Y(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t), \tag{8}$$

which is equivalent to equation (7). Since ϕ is an arbitrary solution of equation (1), the expression on the right-hand side of equation (7) includes all solutions of equation (1); thus it is natural to call it the general solution of equation (1).

In somewhat different words, Theorem 3.5.2 states that to solve the nonhomogeneous equation (1), we must do three things:

1. Find the general solution $c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t)$ of the corresponding homogeneous equation. This solution is frequently called the **complementary solution** and may be denoted by $y_c(t)$.
2. Find any solution $Y(t)$ of the nonhomogeneous equation. Often this solution is referred to as a **particular solution**.
3. Form the sum of the functions found in steps 1 and 2.

We have already discussed how to find $y_c(t)$, at least when the homogeneous equation (2) has constant coefficients. Therefore, in the remainder of this section and Section 3.6, we will focus on finding a particular solution $Y(t)$ of the nonhomogeneous linear differential equation (1). There are two methods that we wish to discuss. They are known as the method of undetermined coefficients (discussed here) and the method of variation of parameters (see Section 3.6). Each has some advantages and some possible shortcomings.

Method of Undetermined Coefficients. The method of undetermined coefficients requires us to make an initial assumption about the form of the particular solution $Y(t)$, but with the coefficients left unspecified. We then substitute the assumed expression into the nonhomogeneous differential equation (1) and attempt to determine the coefficients so as to satisfy that equation. If we are successful, then we have found a solution of the differential equation (1) and can use it for the particular solution $Y(t)$. If we cannot determine the coefficients, then this means that there is no solution of the form that we assumed. In this case we may modify the initial assumption and try again.

The main advantage of the method of undetermined coefficients is that it is straightforward to execute once the assumption is made about the form of $Y(t)$. Its major limitation is that it is useful primarily for equations for which we can easily write down the correct form of the particular solution in advance. For this reason, this method is usually used only for problems in which the homogeneous equation has constant coefficients and the nonhomogeneous term is restricted to a relatively small class of functions. In particular, we consider only nonhomogeneous terms that consist of polynomials, exponential functions, sines, and cosines. Despite this limitation, the method of undetermined coefficients is useful for solving many problems that have important applications. However, the algebraic details may become tedious, and a computer algebra system can be very helpful in practical applications. We will illustrate the method of undetermined coefficients by several simple examples and then summarize some rules for using it.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t}. \tag{9}$$

Solution:

We seek a function Y such that the combination $Y''(t) - 3Y'(t) - 4Y(t)$ is equal to $3e^{2t}$. Since the exponential function reproduces itself through differentiation, the most plausible way to achieve the desired result is to assume that $Y(t)$ is some multiple of e^{2t},

$$Y(t) = Ae^{2t},$$

where the coefficient A is yet to be determined. To find A, we calculate the first two derivatives of Y:

$$Y'(t) = 2Ae^{2t}, \quad Y''(t) = 4Ae^{2t},$$

and substitute for y, y', and y'' in the nonhomogeneous differential equation (9). We obtain

$$Y'' - 3Y' - 4Y = (4A - 6A - 4A)e^{2t} = 3e^{2t}.$$

Hence $-6Ae^{2t}$ must equal $3e^{2t}$, so $-6A = 3$ and we conclude that $A = -\frac{1}{2}$. Thus a particular solution is

$$Y(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{2t}. \tag{10}$$

EXAMPLE 2

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2\sin t. \tag{11}$$

Solution:

By analogy with Example 1, let us assume that $Y(t) = A\sin t$, where A is a constant to be determined. On substituting this guess in equation (11) we obtain

$$Y'' - 3Y' - 4Y = -A\sin t - 3A\cos t - 4A\sin t = 2\sin t,$$

or, moving all terms to the left-hand side and collecting the terms involving $\sin t$ and $\cos t$, we arrive at,

$$(2 + 5A)\sin t + 3A\cos t = 0. \tag{12}$$

We want equation (12) to hold for all t. Thus it must hold for two specific points, such as $t = 0$ and $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$. At these points equation (12) reduces to $3A = 0$ and $2 + 5A = 0$, respectively. These contradictory requirements mean that there is no choice of the constant A that makes equation (12) true for $t = 0$ and $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$, much less for all t. Thus we conclude that our assumption concerning $Y(t)$ is inadequate.

The appearance of the cosine term in equation (12) suggests that we modify our original assumption to include a cosine term in $Y(t)$; that is,

$$Y(t) = A\sin t + B\cos t,$$

where A and B are the undetermined coefficients. Then

$$Y'(t) = A\cos t - B\sin t, \quad Y''(t) = -A\sin t - B\cos t.$$

By substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in equation (11) and collecting terms, we obtain

$$Y'' - 3Y' - 4Y = (-A + 3B - 4A)\sin t + (-B - 3A - 4B)\cos t = 2\sin t. \tag{13}$$

Now, working exactly as with the first guess, move all terms to the left-hand side and evaluate $t = 0$ and $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$ to find that A and B must satisfy the equations

$$-5A + 3B - 2 = 0, \quad -3A - 5B = 0.$$

Solving these algebraic equations for A and B, we obtain $A = -\frac{5}{17}$ and $B = \frac{3}{17}$; hence a particular solution of equation (11) is

$$Y(t) = -\frac{5}{17}\sin t + \frac{3}{17}\cos t.$$

The method illustrated in the preceding examples can also be used when the right-hand side of the equation is a polynomial. Thus, to find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 4t^2 - 1, \tag{14}$$

we initially assume that $Y(t)$ is a polynomial of the same degree as the nonhomogeneous term; that is, $Y(t) = At^2 + Bt + C$.

To summarize our conclusions up to this point: if the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$ in differential equation (1) is an exponential function $e^{\alpha t}$, then assume that $Y(t)$ is proportional to the same exponential function; if $g(t)$ is $\sin(\beta t)$ or $\cos(\beta t)$, then assume that $Y(t)$ is a linear combination of $\sin(\beta t)$ and $\cos(\beta t)$; if $g(t)$ is a polynomial of degree n, then assume that $Y(t)$ is a polynomial of degree n. The same principle extends to the case where $g(t)$ is a product of any two, or all three, of these types of functions, as the next example illustrates.

EXAMPLE 3

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = -8e^t\cos(2t). \tag{15}$$

Solution:

In this case we assume that $Y(t)$ is the product of e^t and a linear combination of $\cos(2t)$ and $\sin(2t)$; that is,

$$Y(t) = Ae^t\cos(2t) + Be^t\sin(2t).$$

The algebra is more tedious in this example, but it follows that

$$Y'(t) = (A + 2B)e^t\cos(2t) + (-2A + B)e^t\sin(2t)$$

and

$$Y''(t) = (-3A + 4B)e^t\cos(2t) + (-4A - 3B)e^t\sin(2t).$$

By substituting these expressions in equation (15), we find that A and B must satisfy

$$10A + 2B = 8, \quad 2A - 10B = 0.$$

Hence $A = \dfrac{10}{13}$ and $B = \dfrac{2}{13}$; therefore, a particular solution of equation (15) is

$$Y(t) = \frac{10}{13}e^t\cos(2t) + \frac{2}{13}e^t\sin(2t).$$

Now suppose that $g(t)$ is the sum of two terms, $g(t) = g_1(t) + g_2(t)$, and suppose that Y_1 and Y_2 are solutions of the equations

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g_1(t) \tag{16}$$

and

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g_2(t), \tag{17}$$

respectively. Then $Y_1 + Y_2$ is a solution of the equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t). \tag{18}$$

To prove this statement, substitute $Y_1(t) + Y_2(t)$ for y in equation (18) and make use of equations (16) and (17). A similar conclusion holds if $g(t)$ is the sum of any finite number of terms. The practical significance of this result is that for an equation whose nonhomogeneous function $g(t)$ can be expressed as a sum, you can consider instead several simpler equations and then add together the results. The following example is an illustration of this procedure.

EXAMPLE 4

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t} + 2\sin t - 8e^t\cos(2t). \tag{19}$$

Solution:

By splitting up the right-hand side of equation (19), we obtain the three equations

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t},$$
$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2\sin t,$$

and

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = -8e^t\cos(2t).$$

Solutions of these three equations have been found in Examples 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Therefore, a particular solution of equation (19) is their sum, namely,

$$Y(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{2t} + \frac{3}{17}\cos t - \frac{5}{17}\sin t + \frac{10}{13}e^t\cos(2t) + \frac{2}{13}e^t\sin(2t).$$

The procedure illustrated in these examples enables us to solve a fairly large class of problems in a reasonably efficient manner. However, there is one difficulty that sometimes occurs. The next example illustrates how it arises.

EXAMPLE 5

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2e^{-t}. \tag{20}$$

Solution:

Proceeding as in Example 1, we assume that $Y(t) = Ae^{-t}$. By substituting in equation (20), we obtain

$$Y'' - 3Y' - 4Y = (A + 3A - 4A)e^{-t} = 2e^{-t}. \tag{21}$$

Since the left-hand side of equation (21) is zero, there is no choice of A for which $0 = 2e^{-t}$. Therefore, there is no particular solution of equation (20) of the assumed form. The reason for this possibly unexpected result becomes clear if we solve the homogeneous equation

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 0 \tag{22}$$

that corresponds to equation (20). The two functions in a fundamental set of solutions of equation (22) are $y_1(t) = e^{-t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{4t}$. Thus our assumed particular solution of equation (20) is actually a solution of the homogeneous equation (22); consequently, it cannot possibly be a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (20). To find a solution of equation (20), we must therefore consider functions of a somewhat different form.

At this stage, we have several possible alternatives. One is simply to try to guess the proper form of the particular solution of equation (20). Another is to solve this equation in some different way and then to use the result to guide our assumptions if this situation arises again in the future; see Problems 22 and 27 for other solution methods. Still another possibility is to seek a simpler equation where this difficulty occurs and to use its solution to suggest how we might proceed with equation (20). Adopting the latter approach, we look for a first-order equation analogous to equation (20). One possibility is the linear equation

$$y' + y = 2e^{-t}. \tag{23}$$

If we try to find a particular solution of equation (23) of the form Ae^{-t}, we will fail because e^{-t} is a solution of the homogeneous equation $y' + y = 0$. However, from Section 2.1 we already know how to solve equation (23). An integrating factor is $\mu(t) = e^t$, and by multiplying by $\mu(t)$ and then integrating both sides, we obtain the solution

$$y = 2te^{-t} + ce^{-t}. \tag{24}$$

The second term on the right-hand side of equation (24) is the general solution of the homogeneous equation $y' + y = 0$, but the first term is a solution of the full nonhomogeneous equation (23). Observe that it involves the exponential factor e^{-t} multiplied by the factor t. This is the clue that we were looking for.

We now return to equation (20) and assume a particular solution of the form $Y(t) = Ate^{-t}$. Then

$$Y'(t) = Ae^{-t} - Ate^{-t}, \quad Y''(t) = -2Ae^{-t} + Ate^{-t}. \tag{25}$$

Substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in equation (20), we obtain

$$Y'' - 3Y' - 4Y = (-2A - 3A)e^{-t} + (A + 3A - 4A)te^{-t} = 2e^{-t}.$$

The coefficient of te^{-t} is zero, and from the terms involving e^t we have $-5A = 2$, so $A = -\frac{2}{5}$. Thus a particular solution of equation (20) is

$$Y(t) = -\frac{2}{5}te^{-t}. \tag{26}$$

The outcome of Example 5 suggests a modification of the principle stated previously: if the assumed form of the particular solution duplicates a solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation, then modify the assumed particular solution by multiplying it by t. Occasionally, this modification will be insufficient to remove all duplication with the solutions of the homogeneous equation, in which case it is necessary to multiply by t a second time. For a second-order equation, it will never be necessary to carry the process further than this.

Summary. We now summarize the steps involved in finding the solution of an initial value problem consisting of a nonhomogeneous linear differential equation of the form

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \tag{27}$$

where the coefficients a, b, and c are constants, together with a given set of initial conditions.

1. Find the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation.
2. Make sure that the function $g(t)$ in equation (27) belongs to the class of functions discussed in this section; that is, be sure it involves nothing more than exponential functions, sines, cosines, polynomials, or sums or products of such functions. If this is not the case, use the method of variation of parameters (discussed in Section 3.6).
3. If $g(t) = g_1(t) + \cdots + g_n(t)$—that is, if $g(t)$ is a sum of n terms—then form n subproblems, each of which contains only one of the terms $g_1(t), \ldots, g_n(t)$. The i^{th} subproblem consists of the equation
$$ay'' + by' + cy = g_i(t),$$
where i runs from 1 to n.
4. For the i^{th} subproblem, assume a particular solution $Y_i(t)$ consisting of the appropriate exponential function, sine, cosine, polynomial, or combination thereof. If there is any duplication in the assumed form of $Y_i(t)$ with the solutions of the homogeneous equation (found in step 1), then multiply $Y_i(t)$ by t, or (if necessary) by t^2, so as to remove the duplication. See Table 3.5.1.

TABLE 3.5.1 **The Particular Solution of $ay'' + by' + cy = g_i(t)$**

$g_i(t)$	$Y_i(t)$
$P_n(t) = a_0t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n$	$t^s(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n)$
$P_n(t)e^{\alpha t}$	$t^s(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n)e^{\alpha t}$
$P_n(t)e^{\alpha t}\begin{cases}\sin\beta t\\ \cos\beta t\end{cases}$	$t^s\big((A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n)e^{\alpha t}\cos(\beta t)$ $+ (B_0t^n + B_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + B_n)e^{\alpha t}\sin(\beta t)\big)$

Notes: Here, s is the smallest nonnegative integer ($s = 0$, 1, or 2) that will ensure that no term in $Y_i(t)$ is a solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation. Equivalently, for the three cases, s is the number of times 0 is a root of the characteristic equation, α is a root of the characteristic equation, and $\alpha + i\beta$ is a root of the characteristic equation, respectively.

5. Find a particular solution $Y_i(t)$ for each of the subproblems. Then $Y_1(t) + \cdots + Y_n(t)$ is a particular solution of the full nonhomogeneous equation (27).
6. Form the sum of the general solution of the homogeneous equation (step 1) and the particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (step 5). This is the general solution of the nonhomogeneous equation.
7. When initial conditions are provided, use them to determine the values of the arbitrary constants remaining in the general solution.

For some problems this entire procedure is easy to carry out by hand, but often the algebraic calculations are lengthy. Once you understand clearly how the method works, a computer algebra system can be of great assistance in executing the details.

The method of undetermined coefficients is self-correcting in the sense that if you assume too little for $Y(t)$, then a contradiction is soon reached that usually points the way to the modification that is needed in the assumed form. On the other hand, if you assume too many terms, then some unnecessary work is done and some coefficients turn out to be zero, but at least the correct answer is obtained.

Proof of the Method of Undetermined Coefficients. In the preceding discussion we have described the method of undetermined coefficients on the basis of several examples. To prove that the procedure always works as stated, we now give a general argument, in which we consider three cases corresponding to different forms for the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$.

Case 1: $g(t) = P_n(t) = a_0t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n$. In this case equation (27) becomes
$$ay'' + by' + cy = a_0t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n. \tag{28}$$

To obtain a particular solution, we assume that

$$Y(t) = A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_{n-2}t^2 + A_{n-1}t + A_n. \tag{29}$$

Substituting in equation (28), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} &a\Big(n(n-1)A_0t^{n-2} + \cdots + 2A_{n-2}\Big) + b(nA_0t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_{n-1}) \\ &\quad + c(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n) = a_0t^n + \cdots + a_n. \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

Equating the coefficients of like powers of t, beginning with t^n, leads to the following sequence of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} cA_0 &= a_0, \\ cA_1 + nbA_0 &= a_1, \\ &\vdots \\ cA_n + bA_{n-1} + 2aA_{n-2} &= a_n. \end{aligned}$$

Provided that $c \neq 0$, the solution of the first equation is $A_0 = a_0/c$, and the remaining equations determine $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ successively.

If $c = 0$ but $b \neq 0$, then the polynomial on the left-hand side of equation (30) is of degree $n-1$, and we cannot satisfy equation (30). To be sure that $aY''(t) + bY'(t)$ is a polynomial of degree n, we must choose $Y(t)$ to be a polynomial of degree $n+1$. Hence we assume that

$$Y(t) = t(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n).$$

Substituting this guess into equation (28), with $c = 0$, and simplifying yields

$$\begin{aligned} aY'' + bY' &= bA_0(n+1)t^n + (aA_0(n+1)n + bA_1n)t^{n-1} + \cdots \\ &= a_0t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n. \end{aligned}$$

There is no constant term in this expression for $Y(t)$, but there is no need to include such a term since a constant is a solution of the homogeneous equation when $c = 0$. Since $b \neq 0$, we find $A_0 = a_0/(b(n+1))$, and the other coefficients $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ can be determined similarly.

If both c and b are zero, then the characteristic equation is $ar^2 = 0$ and $r = 0$ is a repeated root. Thus $y_1 = e^{0t} = 1$ and $y_2 = te^{0t} = t$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation. This leads us to assume that

$$Y(t) = t^2(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n).$$

The term $aY''(t)$ gives rise to a term of degree n, and we can proceed as before. Again the constant and linear terms in $Y(t)$ are omitted since, in this case, they are both solutions of the homogeneous equation.

Case 2: $g(t) = e^{\alpha t}P_n(t)$. The problem of determining a particular solution of

$$ay'' + by' + cy = e^{\alpha t}P_n(t) \tag{31}$$

can be reduced to the preceding case by a substitution. Let

$$Y(t) = e^{\alpha t}u(t);$$

then

$$Y'(t) = e^{\alpha t}(u'(t) + \alpha u(t))$$

and

$$Y''(t) = e^{\alpha t}(u''(t) + 2\alpha u'(t) + \alpha^2u(t)).$$

Substituting for y, y', and y'' in equation (31), canceling the factor $e^{\alpha t}$, and collecting terms, we obtain

$$au''(t) + (2a\alpha + b)u'(t) + (a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c)u(t) = P_n(t). \tag{32}$$

The determination of a particular solution of equation (32) is precisely the same problem, except for the names of the constants, as solving equation (28). Therefore, if $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ is not zero, we assume that $u(t) = A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n$; hence a particular solution of equation (31) is of the form

$$Y(t) = e^{\alpha t}(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n). \tag{33}$$

On the other hand, if $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ is zero but $2a\alpha + b$ is not, we must take $u(t)$ to be of the form $t(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n)$. The corresponding form for $Y(t)$ is t times the expression on the right-hand side of equation (33). Note that if $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ is zero, then $e^{\alpha t}$ is a solution of the homogeneous equation.

If both $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ and $2a\alpha + b$ are zero (and this implies that both $e^{\alpha t}$ and $te^{\alpha t}$ are solutions of the homogeneous equation), then the correct form for $u(t)$ is $t^2(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n)$. Hence $Y(t)$ is t^2 times the expression on the right-hand side of equation (33).

Case 3: $g(t) = e^{\alpha t}P_n(t)\cos(\beta t)$ or $e^{\alpha t}P_n(t)\sin(\beta t)$. These two cases are similar, so we consider only the latter. We can reduce this problem to the preceding one by noting that, as a consequence of Euler's formula, $\sin(\beta t) = (e^{i\beta t} - e^{-i\beta t})/(2i)$. Hence $g(t)$ is of the form

$$g(t) = P_n(t)\frac{e^{(\alpha+i\beta)t} - e^{(\alpha-i\beta)t}}{2i},$$

and we should choose

$$Y(t) = e^{(\alpha+i\beta)t}(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n) + e^{(\alpha-i\beta)t}(B_0t^n + \cdots + B_n),$$

or, equivalently,

$$Y(t) = e^{\alpha t}(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n)\cos(\beta t) + e^{\alpha t}(B_0t^n + \cdots + B_n)\sin(\beta t).$$

Usually, the latter form is preferred because it does not involve the use of complex-valued coefficients. If $\alpha \pm i\beta$ satisfy the characteristic equation corresponding to the homogeneous equation, we must, of course, multiply each of the polynomials by t to increase their degrees by 1.

If the nonhomogeneous function involves both $\cos(\beta t)$ and $\sin(\beta t)$, it is usually convenient to treat these terms together, since each one individually may give rise to the same form for a particular solution. For example, if $g(t) = t\sin t + 2\cos t$, the form for $Y(t)$ would be

$$Y(t) = (A_0t + A_1)\sin t + (B_0t + B_1)\cos t,$$

provided that $\sin t$ and $\cos t$ are not solutions of the homogeneous equation.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 10, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y'' - 2y' - 3y = 3e^{2t}$

2. $y'' - y' - 2y = -2t + 4t^2$

3. $y'' + y' - 6y = 12e^{3t} + 12e^{-2t}$

4. $y'' - 2y' - 3y = -3te^{-t}$

5. $y'' + 2y' = 3 + 4\sin(2t)$

6. $y'' + 2y' + y = 2e^{-t}$

7. $y'' + y = 3\sin(2t) + t\cos(2t)$

8. $u'' + \omega_0^2 u = \cos(\omega t), \quad \omega^2 \neq \omega_0^2$

9. $u'' + \omega_0^2 u = \cos(\omega_0 t)$

10. $y'' + y' + 4y = 2\sinh t \qquad$ *Hint:* $\sinh t = (e^t - e^{-t})/2$

In each of Problems 11 through 15, find the solution of the given initial value problem.

11. $y'' + y' - 2y = 2t, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

12. $y'' + 4y = t^2 + 3e^t, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 2$

13. $y'' - 2y' + y = te^t + 4, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 1$

14. $y'' + 4y = 3\sin(2t), \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$

15. $y'' + 2y' + 5y = 4e^{-t}\cos(2t), \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

In each of Problems 16 through 21:

a. Determine a suitable form for $Y(t)$ if the method of undetermined coefficients is to be used.

N **b.** Use a computer algebra system to find a particular solution of the given equation.

16. $y'' + 3y' = 2t^4 + t^2e^{-3t} + \sin(3t)$

17. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = e^t\cos(2t) + e^{2t}(3t + 4)\sin t$

18. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 3e^{-t} + 2e^{-t}\cos t + 4e^{-t}t^2\sin t$

19. $y'' + 4y = t^2\sin(2t) + (6t + 7)\cos(2t)$

20. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = e^t(t^2 + 1)\sin(2t) + 3e^{-t}\cos t + 4e^t$

21. $y'' + 2y' + 5y = 3te^{-t}\cos(2t) - 2te^{-2t}\cos t$

22. Consider the equation

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2e^{-t} \tag{34}$$

from Example 5. Recall that $y_1(t) = e^{-t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{4t}$ are solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation. Adapting the method of reduction of order (Section 3.4), seek a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation of the form $Y(t) = v(t)y_1(t) = v(t)e^{-t}$, where $v(t)$ is to be determined.

a. Substitute $Y(t)$, $Y'(t)$, and $Y''(t)$ into equation (34) and show that $v(t)$ must satisfy $v'' - 5v' = 2$.
b. Let $w(t) = v'(t)$ and show that $w(t)$ satisfies $w' - 5w = 2$. Solve this equation for $w(t)$.
c. Integrate $w(t)$ to find $v(t)$ and then show that

$$Y(t) = -\frac{2}{5}te^{-t} + \frac{1}{5}c_1e^{4t} + c_2e^{-t}.$$

The first term on the right-hand side is the desired particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation. Note that it is a product of t and e^{-t}.

23. Determine the general solution of

$$y'' + \lambda^2 y = \sum_{m=1}^{N} a_m \sin(m\pi t),$$

where $\lambda > 0$ and $\lambda \neq m\pi$ for $m = 1, \ldots, N$.

N 24. In many physical problems the nonhomogeneous term may be specified by different formulas in different time periods. As an example, determine the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of

$$y'' + y = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t \le \pi, \\ \pi e^{\pi - t}, & t > \pi, \end{cases}$$

satisfying the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$ and $y'(0) = 1$. Assume that y and y' are also continuous at $t = \pi$. Plot the nonhomogeneous term and the solution as functions of time. *Hint:* First solve the initial value problem for $t \le \pi$; then solve for $t > \pi$, determining the constants in the latter solution from the continuity conditions at $t = \pi$.

Behavior of Solutions as $t \to \infty$. In Problems 25 and 26, we continue the discussion started with Problems 28 through 30 of Section 3.4. Consider the differential equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \tag{35}$$

where a, b, and c are positive.

25. If $Y_1(t)$ and $Y_2(t)$ are solutions of equation (35), show that $Y_1(t) - Y_2(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$. Is this result true if $b = 0$?

26. If $g(t) = d$, a constant, show that every solution of equation (35) approaches d/c as $t \to \infty$. What happens if $c = 0$? What if $b = 0$ also?

27. In this problem we indicate an alternative procedure[8] for solving the differential equation

$$y'' + by' + cy = (D^2 + bD + c)y = g(t), \tag{36}$$

where b and c are constants, and D denotes differentiation with respect to t. Let r_1 and r_2 be the zeros of the characteristic polynomial of the corresponding homogeneous equation. These roots may be real and different, real and equal, or conjugate complex numbers.

a. Verify that equation (36) can be written in the factored form

$$(D - r_1)(D - r_2)y = g(t),$$

where $r_1 + r_2 = -b$ and $r_1 r_2 = c$.
b. Let $u = (D - r_2)y$. Then show that the solution of equation (36) can be found by solving the following two first-order equations:

$$(D - r_1)u = g(t), \quad (D - r_2)y = u(t).$$

In each of Problems 28 through 30, use the method of Problem 27 to solve the given differential equation.

28. $y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t}$ (see Example 1)

29. $y'' + 2y' + y = 2e^{-t}$ (see Problem 6)

30. $y'' + 2y' = 3 + 4\sin(2t)$ (see Problem 5)

[8] R. S. Luthar, "Another Approach to a Standard Differential Equation," *Two Year College Mathematics Journal 10* (1979), pp. 200–201. Also see D. C. Sandell and F. M. Stein, "Factorization of Operators of Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Ordinary Differential Equations," *Two Year College Mathematics Journal 8* (1977), pp. 132–141, for a more general discussion of factoring operators.

3.6 Variation of Parameters

In this section we describe a second method of finding a particular solution of a nonhomogeneous equation. This method, **variation of parameters**, is due to Lagrange and complements the method of undetermined coefficients rather well. The main advantage of variation of parameters is that it is a *general method*; in principle at least, it can be applied to any equation, and it requires no detailed assumptions about the form of the solution. In fact, later in this section we use this method to derive a formula for a particular solution of an arbitrary second-order linear nonhomogeneous differential equation. On the other hand, the method of variation of parameters eventually requires us to evaluate certain integrals involving the nonhomogeneous term in the differential equation, and this may present difficulties. Before looking at this method in the general case, we illustrate its use in an example.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of

$$y'' + 4y = 8\tan t \qquad -\pi/2 < t < \pi/2. \tag{1}$$

Solution:

Observe that this problem is not a good candidate for the method of undetermined coefficients, as described in Section 3.5, because the nonhomogeneous term $g(t) = 8\tan t$ involves a quotient (rather than a sum or a product) of $\sin t$ and $\cos t$. Therefore, the method of undetermined coefficients cannot be applied; we need a different approach.

Observe also that the homogeneous equation corresponding to equation (1) is

$$y'' + 4y = 0, \tag{2}$$

and that the general solution of equation (2) is

$$y_c(t) = c_1 \cos(2t) + c_2 \sin(2t). \tag{3}$$

The basic idea in the method of variation of parameters is similar to the method of reduction of order introduced at the end of Section 3.4. In the general solution (3), replace the constants c_1 and c_2 by functions $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$, respectively, and then determine these functions so that the resulting expression

$$y = u_1(t)\cos(2t) + u_2(t)\sin(2t) \tag{4}$$

is a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1).

To determine u_1 and u_2, we need to substitute for y from equation (4) in differential equation (1). However, even without carrying out this substitution, we can anticipate that the result will be a single equation involving some combination of u_1, u_2, and their first two derivatives. Since there is only one equation and two unknown functions, we can expect that there are many possible choices of u_1 and u_2 that will meet our needs. Alternatively, we may be able to impose a second condition of our own choosing, thereby obtaining two equations for the two unknown functions u_1 and u_2. We will soon show (following Lagrange) that it is possible to choose this second condition in a way that makes the computation markedly more efficient.[9]

Returning now to equation (4), we differentiate it and rearrange the terms, thereby obtaining

$$y' = -2u_1(t)\sin(2t) + 2u_2(t)\cos(2t) + u_1'(t)\cos(2t) + u_2'(t)\sin(2t). \tag{5}$$

Keeping in mind the possibility of choosing a second condition on u_1 and u_2, let us require the sum of the last two terms on the right-hand side of equation (5) to be zero; that is, we require that

$$u_1'(t)\cos(2t) + u_2'(t)\sin(2t) = 0. \tag{6}$$

It then follows from equation (5) that

$$y' = -2u_1(t)\sin(2t) + 2u_2(t)\cos(2t). \tag{7}$$

Although the ultimate effect of the condition (6) is not yet clear, the removal of the terms involving u_1' and u_2' has simplified the expression for y'. Further, by differentiating equation (7), we obtain

$$y'' = -4u_1(t)\cos(2t) - 4u_2(t)\sin(2t) - 2u_1'(t)\sin(2t) + 2u_2'(t)\cos(2t). \tag{8}$$

Then, substituting for y and y'' in equation (1) from equations (4) and (8), respectively, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} y'' + 4y = &-4u_1(t)\cos(2t) - 4u_2(t)\sin(2t) - 2u_1'(t)\sin(2t) + 2u_2'(t)\cos(2t) \\ &+ 4u_1(t)\cos(2t) + 4u_2(t)\sin(2t) = 8\tan t. \end{aligned}$$

Hence u_1 and u_2 must satisfy

$$-2u_1'(t)\sin(2t) + 2u_2'(t)\cos(2t) = 8\tan t. \tag{9}$$

Summarizing our results to this point, we want to choose u_1 and u_2 so as to satisfy equations (6) and (9). These equations can be viewed as a pair of linear *algebraic* equations for the two unknown quantities $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$. Equations (6) and (9) can be solved in various ways. For example, solving equation (6) for $u_2'(t)$, we have

$$u_2'(t) = -u_1'(t)\frac{\cos(2t)}{\sin(2t)}. \tag{10}$$

Then, substituting for $u_2'(t)$ in equation (9) and simplifying, we obtain

$$u_1'(t) = -\frac{8\tan t\sin(2t)}{2} = -8\sin^2 t. \tag{11}$$

[9] An alternate, and more mathematically appealing, derivation of the second condition can be found in Problems 17 to 19 in Section 7.9.

Further, putting this expression for $u_1'(t)$ back in equation (10) and using the double-angle formulas, we find that

$$u_2'(t) = \frac{8\sin^2 t\cos(2t)}{\sin(2t)} = 4\frac{\sin t(2\cos^2 t - 1)}{\cos t} = 4\sin t\left(2\cos t - \frac{1}{\cos t}\right). \tag{12}$$

Having obtained $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$, we next integrate so as to find $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$. The result is

$$u_1(t) = 4\sin t\cos t - 4t + c_1 \tag{13}$$

and

$$u_2(t) = 4\ln(\cos t) - 4\cos^2 t + c_2. \tag{14}$$

On substituting these expressions in equation (4), we have

$$y = (4\sin t\cos t)\cos(2t) + (4\ln(\cos t) - 4\cos^2 t)\sin(2t) + c_1\cos(2t) + c_2\sin(2t).$$

Finally, by using the double-angle formulas once more, we obtain

$$y = -2\sin(2t) - 4t\cos(2t) + 4\ln(\cos t)\sin(2t) + c_1\cos(2t) + c_2\sin(2t). \tag{15}$$

The terms in equation (15) involving the arbitrary constants c_1 and c_2 are the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation, while the other three terms are a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1). Thus equation (15) is the general solution of equation (1).

The particular solution identified at the end of Example 1 corresponds to choosing both c_1, and c_2 to be zero in equation (15). Any other choice of c_1 and c_2 is also a particular solution of the same nonhomogeneous differential equation. Notice, in particular, that choosing $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 2$ in equation (15) yields a particular solution with only two terms:

$$-4t\cos(2t) + 4\ln(\cos t)\sin(2t).$$

We conclude this first look at the method of variation of parameters with the observation that the particular solution involves terms that might be difficult to anticipate. This explains why the method of undetermined coefficients is not a good candidate for this problem, and why the method of variation of parameters is needed.

In the preceding example the method of variation of parameters worked well in determining a particular solution, and hence the general solution, of equation (1). The next question is whether this method can be applied effectively to an arbitrary equation. Therefore, we consider

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{16}$$

where p, q, and g are given continuous functions. As a starting point, we assume that we know the general solution

$$y_c(t) = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) \tag{17}$$

of the corresponding homogeneous equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0. \tag{18}$$

This is a major assumption. So far we have shown how to solve equation (18) only if it has constant coefficients. If equation (18) has coefficients that depend on t, then usually the methods described in Chapter 5 must be used to obtain $y_c(t)$.

The crucial idea, as illustrated in Example 1, is to replace the constants c_1 and c_2 in equation (17) by functions $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$, respectively; thus we have

$$y = u_1(t)y_1(t) + u_2(t)y_2(t). \tag{19}$$

Then we try to determine $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$ so that the expression in equation (19) is a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (16) rather than the homogeneous equation (18). Thus we differentiate equation (19), obtaining

$$y' = u_1'(t)y_1(t) + u_1(t)y_1'(t) + u_2'(t)y_2(t) + u_2(t)y_2'(t). \tag{20}$$

As in Example 1, we now set the terms involving $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$ in equation (20) equal to zero; that is, we require that

$$u_1'(t)y_1(t) + u_2'(t)y_2(t) = 0. \tag{21}$$

Then, from equation (20), we have

$$y' = u_1(t)y_1'(t) + u_2(t)y_2'(t). \tag{22}$$

Further, by differentiating again, we obtain

$$y'' = u_1'(t)y_1'(t) + u_1(t)y_1''(t) + u_2'(t)y_2'(t) + u_2(t)y_2''(t). \tag{23}$$

Now we substitute for y, y', and y'' in equation (16) from equations (19), (22), and (23), respectively. After rearranging the terms in the resulting equation, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} u_1(t)\Big(y_1''(t) \;+\; p(t)y_1'(t) + q(t)y_1(t)\Big) \\ + u_2(t)\Big(y_2''(t) \;+\; p(t)y_2'(t) + q(t)y_2(t)\Big) \\ + u_1'(t)y_1'(t) + u_2'(t)y_2'(t) = g(t). \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

Each of the expressions in parentheses in the first two lines of equation (24) is zero because both y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the homogeneous equation (18). Therefore, equation (24) reduces to

$$u_1'(t)y_1'(t) + u_2'(t)y_2'(t) = g(t). \tag{25}$$

Equations (21) and (25) form a system of two linear algebraic equations for the derivatives $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$ of the unknown functions. They correspond exactly to equations (6) and (9) in Example 1.

Solving the system of equations (21), (25), we obtain

$$u_1'(t) = -\frac{y_2(t)g(t)}{W[y_1, y_2](t)}, \qquad u_2'(t) = \frac{y_1(t)g(t)}{W[y_1, y_2](t)}, \tag{26}$$

where $W[y_1, y_2]$ is the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2. Note that division by $W[y_1, y_2]$ is permissible since y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions, and therefore their Wronskian is nonzero. By integrating equations (26), we find the desired functions $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$, namely,

$$u_1(t) = -\int \frac{y_2(t)g(t)}{W[y_1, y_2](t)}\,dt + c_1, \qquad u_2(t) = \int \frac{y_1(t)g(t)}{W[y_1, y_2](t)}\,dt + c_2. \tag{27}$$

If the integrals in equations (27) can be evaluated in terms of elementary functions, then we substitute the results in equation (19), thereby obtaining the general solution of equation (16). More generally, the solution can always be expressed in terms of integrals, as stated in the following theorem.

Theorem 3.6.1

Consider the nonhomogeneous second-order linear differential equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t). \tag{28}$$

If the functions p, q, and g are continuous on an open interval I, and if the functions y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \tag{29}$$

then a particular solution of equation (28) is

$$Y(t) = -y_1(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{y_2(s)g(s)}{W[y_1, y_2](s)}\,ds + y_2(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{y_1(s)g(s)}{W[y_1, y_2](s)}\,ds, \tag{30}$$

where t_0 is any conveniently chosen point in I. The general solution is

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) + Y(t), \tag{31}$$

as prescribed by Theorem 3.5.2.

By examining the expression (30) and reviewing the process by which we derived it, we can see that there may be two major difficulties in carrying out the method of variation of parameters. As we have mentioned earlier, one is the determination of functions $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ that form a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation (29) when the coefficients in that equation are not constants. The other possible difficulty lies in the evaluation of the integrals appearing in equation (30). This depends entirely on the nature of the functions y_1, y_2, and g. In using equation (30), be sure that the differential equation is exactly in the form (28); otherwise, the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$ will not be correctly identified.

A major advantage of the method of variation of parameters is that equation (30) provides an expression for the particular solution $Y(t)$ in terms of an arbitrary forcing function $g(t)$. This expression is a good starting point if you wish to investigate the effect of variations in the forcing function, or if you wish to analyze the response of a system to a number of different forcing functions. (See Problems 18 to 22.)

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, use the method of variation of parameters to find a particular solution of the given differential equation. Then check your answer by using the method of undetermined coefficients.

1. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 2e^t$

2. $y'' - y' - 2y = 2e^{-t}$

3. $4y'' - 4y' + y = 16e^{t/2}$

In each of Problems 4 through 9, find the general solution of the given differential equation. In Problems 9, g is an arbitrary continuous function.

4. $y'' + y = \tan t, \quad 0 < t < \pi/2$

5. $y'' + 9y = 9\sec^2(3t), \quad 0 < t < \pi/6$

6. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = t^{-2}e^{-2t}, \quad t > 0$

7. $4y'' + y = 2\sec(t/2), \quad -\pi < t < \pi$

8. $y'' - 2y' + y = e^t/(1+t^2)$

9. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = g(t)$

In each of Problems 10 through 15, verify that the given functions y_1 and y_2 satisfy the corresponding homogeneous equation; then find a particular solution of the given nonhomogeneous equation. In Problems 14 and 15, g is an arbitrary continuous function.

10. $t^2y'' - 2y = 3t^2 - 1, \ t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t^2, \ y_2(t) = t^{-1}$

11. $t^2y'' - t(t+2)y' + (t+2)y = 2t^3, \ t > 0;$
$y_1(t) = t, \ y_2(t) = te^t$

12. $ty'' - (1+t)y' + y = t^2e^{2t}, \ t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = 1+t, \ y_2(t) = e^t$

13. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = x^2\ln x, \ x > 0; \quad y_1(x) = x^2,$
$y_2(x) = x^2\ln x$

14. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \frac{1}{4})y = 3x^{3/2}\sin x, \ x > 0;$
$y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x, \ y_2(x) = x^{-1/2}\cos x$

15. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 0.25)y = g(x), \ x > 0;$
$y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x, \ y_2(x) = x^{-1/2}\cos x$

16. By choosing the lower limit of integration in equation (30) in the text as the initial point t_0, show that $Y(t)$ becomes

$$Y(t) = \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{y_1(s)y_2(t) - y_1(t)y_2(s)}{y_1(s)y_2'(s) - y_1'(s)y_2(s)}\, g(s)\, ds.$$

Show that $Y(t)$ is a solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = 0, \ y'(t_0) = 0.$$

17. Show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = y_0, \ y'(t_0) = y_0' \tag{32}$$

can be written as $y = u(t) + v(t)$, where u and v are solutions of the two initial value problems

$$L[u] = 0, \qquad u(t_0) = y_0, \quad u'(t_0) = y_0', \tag{33}$$

$$L[v] = g(t), \qquad v(t_0) = 0, \quad v'(t_0) = 0, \tag{34}$$

respectively. In other words, the nonhomogeneities in the differential equation and in the initial conditions can be dealt with separately. Observe that u is easy to find if a fundamental set of solutions of $L[u] = 0$ is known. And, as shown in Problem 16, the function v is given by equation (30).

18. **a.** Use the result of Problem 16 to show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = 0, \ y'(t_0) = 0 \tag{35}$$

is

$$y = \int_{t_0}^{t} \sin(t-s)g(s)\, ds. \tag{36}$$

b. Use the result of Problem 17 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = g(t), \quad y(0) = y_0, \ y'(0) = y_0'.$$

19. Use the result of Problem 16 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = 0, \ y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where $L[y] = (D-a)(D-b)y$ for real numbers a and b with $a \neq b$. Note that $L[y] = y'' - (a+b)y' + aby$.

20. Use the result of Problem 16 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = 0, \ y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where $L[y] = (D - (\lambda + i\mu))(D - (\lambda - i\mu))y$; that is, $L[y] = y'' - 2\lambda y' + (\lambda^2 + \mu^2)y$. Note that the roots of the characteristic equation are $\lambda \pm i\mu$.

21. Use the result of Problem 16 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where $L[y] = (D - a)^2 y$, that is, $L[y] = y'' - 2ay' + a^2 y$, and a is any real number.

22. By combining the results of Problems 19 through 21, show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = (D^2 + bD + c)y = g(t), \quad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where b and c are constants, can be written in the form

$$y = \phi(t) = \int_{t_0}^{t} K(t - s)g(s)\,ds, \tag{37}$$

where the function K depends only on the solutions y_1 and y_2 of the corresponding homogeneous equation and is independent of the nonhomogeneous term. Once K is determined, all nonhomogeneous problems involving the same differential operator L are reduced to the evaluation of an integral. Note also that although K depends on both t and s, only the combination $t - s$ appears, so K is actually a function of a single variable. When we think of $g(t)$ as the input to the problem and of $\phi(t)$ as the output, it follows from equation (37) that the output depends on the input over the entire interval from the initial point t_0 to the current value t. The integral in equation (37) is called the **convolution** of K and g, and K is referred to as the **kernel**.

23. The method of reduction of order (Section 3.4) can also be used for the nonhomogeneous equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{38}$$

provided one solution y_1 of the corresponding homogeneous equation is known. Let $y = v(t)y_1(t)$ and show that y satisfies equation (38) if v is a solution of

$$y_1(t)v'' + \big(2y_1'(t) + p(t)y_1(t)\big)v' = g(t). \tag{39}$$

Equation (39) is a first-order linear differential equation for v'. By solving equation (39) for v', integrating the result to find v, and then multiplying by $y_1(t)$, you can find the general solution of equation (38). This method simultaneously finds both the second homogeneous solution and a particular solution.

In each of Problems 24 through 26, use the method outlined in Problem 23 to solve the given differential equation.

24. $t^2 y'' - 2ty' + 2y = 4t^2, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t$

25. $t^2 y'' + 7ty' + 5y = t, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = t^{-1}$

26. $ty'' - (1 + t)y' + y = t^2 e^{2t}, \quad t > 0; \quad y_1(t) = 1 + t$ (see Problem 12)

3.7 Mechanical and Electrical Vibrations

One of the reasons why second-order linear differential equations with constant coefficients are worth studying is that they serve as mathematical models of many important physical processes. Two important areas of application are the fields of mechanical and electrical oscillations. For example, the motion of a mass on a vibrating spring, the torsional oscillations of a shaft with a flywheel, the flow of electric current in a simple series circuit, and many other physical problems are all described by the solution of an initial value problem of the form

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \quad y(0) = y_0, \quad y'(0) = y_0'. \tag{1}$$

This illustrates a fundamental relationship between mathematics and physics: *many physical problems may have mathematically equivalent models*. Thus, once we know how to solve the initial value problem (1), it is only necessary to make appropriate interpretations of the constants a, b, and c, and of the functions y and g, to obtain solutions of different physical problems.

We will study the motion of a mass on a spring in detail because understanding the behavior of this simple system is the first step in the investigation of more complex vibrating systems. Further, the principles involved are common to many problems.

Consider a mass m hanging at rest on the end of a vertical spring of original length l, as shown in Figure 3.7.1. The mass causes an elongation L of the spring in the downward (positive) direction. In this static situation there are two forces acting at the point where the mass is attached to the spring; see Figure 3.7.2. The gravitational force, or weight of the mass, acts downward and has magnitude $w = mg$, where g is the acceleration due to gravity. There is also a force F_s, due to the spring, that acts upward. If we assume that the elongation L of the spring is small, the spring force is very nearly proportional to L; this is known as **Hooke's**[10] **law**. Thus we write $F_s = -kL$, where the constant of proportionality k is called the

[10]Robert Hooke (1635–1703) was an English scientist with wide-ranging interests. His most important book, *Micrographia*, was published in 1665 and described a variety of microscopical observations. Hooke first published his law of elastic behavior in 1676 as *ceiiinosssttuv*; in 1678 he gave the interpretation *ut tensio sic vis*, which means, roughly, "as the force so is the displacement."

spring constant, and the minus sign is due to the fact that the spring force acts in the upward (negative) direction. Since the mass is in equilibrium, the two forces balance each other, which means that

$$w + F_s = mg - kL = 0. \tag{2}$$

For a given weight $w = mg$, you can measure L and then use equation (2) to determine k. Note that k has the units of force per unit length.

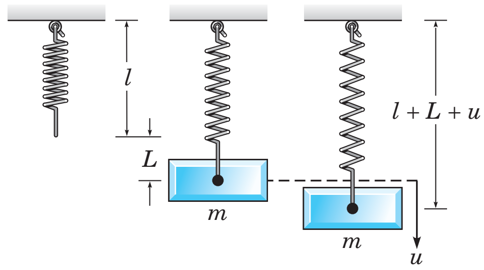


FIGURE 3.7.1 A spring-mass system.

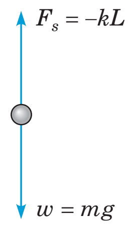


FIGURE 3.7.2 Force diagram for a spring-mass system.

In the corresponding dynamic problem, we are interested in studying the motion of the mass when it is acted on by an external force or is initially displaced. Let $u(t)$, measured positive in the downward direction, denote the displacement of the mass from its equilibrium position at time t; see Figure 3.7.1. Then $u(t)$ is related to the forces acting on the mass through Newton's law of motion

$$mu''(t) = f(t), \tag{3}$$

where u'' is the acceleration of the mass and f is the net force acting on the mass. Observe that both u and f are functions of time. In this dynamic problem there are now four separate forces that must be considered.

1. The weight $w = mg$ of the mass always acts downward.
2. The spring force F_s is assumed to be proportional to the total elongation $L + u$ of the spring and always acts to restore the spring to its natural position. If $L + u > 0$, then the spring is extended, and the spring force is directed upward. In this case

$$F_s = -k(L + u). \tag{4}$$

   On the other hand, if $L+u < 0$, then the spring is compressed a distance $|L+u|$, and the spring force, which is now directed downward, is given by $F_s = k|L+u|$. However, when $L+u < 0$, it follows that $|L+u| = -(L+u)$, so F_s is again given by equation (4). Thus, regardless of the position of the mass, the force exerted by the spring is always expressed by equation (4).
3. The damping or resistive force F_d always acts in the direction opposite to the direction of motion of the mass. This force may arise from several sources: resistance from the air or other medium in which the mass moves, internal energy dissipation due to the extension or compression of the spring, friction between the mass and the guides (if any) that constrain its motion to one dimension, or a mechanical device (dashpot) that imparts a resistive force to the mass. In any case, we assume that the resistive force is proportional to the speed $|du/dt|$ of the mass; this is usually referred to as **viscous damping**. If $du/dt > 0$, then u is increasing, so the mass is moving downward. Then F_d is directed

upward and is given by

$$F_d(t) = -\gamma u'(t), \tag{5}$$

where γ is a positive constant of proportionality known as the damping constant. On the other hand, if $du/dt < 0$, then u is decreasing, the mass is moving upward, and F_d is directed downward. In this case, $F_d = \gamma|u'(t)|$; since $|u'(t)| = -u'(t)$, it follows that $F_d(t)$ is again given by equation (5). Thus, regardless of the direction of motion of the mass, the damping force is always expressed by equation (5).

The damping force may be rather complicated, and the assumption that it is modeled adequately by equation (5) may be open to question. Some dashpots do behave as equation (5) states, and if the other sources of dissipation are small, it may be possible to neglect them altogether or to adjust the damping constant γ to approximate them. An important benefit of the assumption (5) is that it leads to a linear (rather than a nonlinear) differential equation. In turn, this means that a thorough analysis of the system is straightforward, as we will show in this section and in Section 3.8.

4. An applied external force $F(t)$ is directed downward or upward as $F(t)$ is positive or negative. This could be a force due to the motion of the mount to which the spring is attached, or it could be a force applied directly to the mass. Often the external force is periodic.

Taking account of these forces, we can now rewrite Newton's law (3) as

$$\begin{aligned} mu''(t) &= w + F_s(t) + F_d(t) + F(t) \\ &= mg - k(L + u(t)) - \gamma u'(t) + F(t). \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

Since $mg - kL = 0$ by equation (2), it follows that the equation of motion of the mass is

$$mu''(t) + \gamma u'(t) + ku(t) = F(t), \tag{7}$$

where the constants m, γ, and k are positive. Note that equation (7) has the same form as equation (1), that is, it is a nonhomogeneous second-order linear differential equation with constant coefficients.

It is important to understand that equation (7) is only an approximate equation for the displacement $u(t)$. In particular, both equations (4) and (5) should be viewed as approximations for the spring force and the damping force, respectively. In our derivation we have also neglected the mass of the spring in comparison with the mass of the attached body.

The complete formulation of the vibration problem requires that we specify two initial conditions, namely, the initial position u_0 and the initial velocity v_0 of the mass:

$$u(0) = u_0, \quad u'(0) = v_0. \tag{8}$$

It follows from Theorem 3.2.1 that these conditions give a mathematical problem that has a unique solution for any values of the constants u_0 and v_0. This is consistent with our physical intuition that if the mass is set in motion with a given initial displacement and velocity, then its position will be determined uniquely at all future times. The position of the mass is given (approximately) by the solution of the second-order linear differential equation (7) subject to the prescribed initial conditions (8).

EXAMPLE 1

A mass weighing 4 lb stretches a spring 2 in. Suppose that the mass is given an additional 6-in displacement in the positive direction and then released. The mass is in a medium that exerts a viscous resistance of 6 lb when the mass has a velocity of 3 ft/s. Under the assumptions discussed in this section, formulate the initial value problem that governs the motion of the mass.

Solution:

The required initial value problem consists of the differential equation (7) and initial conditions (8), so our task is to determine the various constants that appear in these equations. The first step is to choose the units of measurement. Based on the statement of the problem, it is natural to use the English rather than the metric system of units. The only time unit mentioned is the second, so we will measure t in seconds. On the other hand, both the foot and the inch appear in the statement as units of length. It is immaterial which one we use, but having made a choice, we must be consistent. To be definite, let us measure the displacement u in feet.

Since nothing is said in the statement of the problem about an external force, we assume that $F(t) = 0$. To determine m, note that

$$m = \frac{w}{g} = \frac{4 \text{ lb}}{32 \text{ ft}/\text{s}^2} = \frac{1}{8}\,\frac{\text{lb}\cdot\text{s}^2}{\text{ft}}.$$

The damping coefficient γ is determined from the statement that $\gamma u'$ is equal to 6 lb when u' is 3 ft/s. Therefore,

$$\gamma = \frac{6 \text{ lb}}{3 \text{ ft}/\text{s}} = 2\,\frac{\text{lb}\cdot\text{s}}{\text{ft}}.$$

The spring constant k is found from the statement that the mass stretches the spring by 2 in or $\frac{1}{6}$ ft. Thus

$$k = \frac{4 \text{ lb}}{1/6 \text{ ft}} = 24\frac{\text{lb}}{\text{ft}}.$$

Consequently, differential equation (7) becomes

$$\frac{1}{8}u'' + 2u' + 24u = 0,$$

or

$$u'' + 16u' + 192u = 0. \tag{9}$$

The initial conditions are

$$u(0) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad u'(0) = 0. \tag{10}$$

The second initial condition is implied by the word "released" in the statement of the problem, which we interpret to mean that the mass is set in motion with no initial velocity.

Undamped Free Vibrations. If there is no external force, then $F(t) = 0$ in equation (7). Let us also suppose that there is no damping so that $\gamma = 0$; this is an idealized configuration of the system, seldom (if ever) completely attainable in practice. However, if the actual damping is very small, then the assumption of no damping may yield satisfactory results over short to moderate time intervals. In this case the equation of motion (7) reduces to

$$mu'' + ku = 0. \tag{11}$$

The characteristic equation for equation (11) is

$$mr^2 + k = 0$$

and its roots are $r = \pm i\sqrt{k/m}$. Thus the general solution of equation (11) is

$$u = A\cos(\omega_0 t) + B\sin(\omega_0 t), \tag{12}$$

where

$$\omega_0^2 = \frac{k}{m}. \tag{13}$$

The arbitrary constants A and B can be determined if initial conditions of the form (8) are given.

In discussing the solution of equation (11), it is convenient to rewrite equation (12) in the form

$$u = R\cos(\omega_0 t - \delta), \tag{14}$$

or

$$u = R\cos\delta\cos\left(\omega_0 t\right) + R\sin\delta\sin\left(\omega_0 t\right). \tag{15}$$

By comparing equation (15) with equation (12), we find that A, B, R, and δ are related by the equations

$$A = R\cos\delta, \qquad B = R\sin\delta. \tag{16}$$

Thus

$$R = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}, \qquad \tan\delta = \frac{B}{A}. \tag{17}$$

In calculating δ, we must take care to choose the correct quadrant; this can be done by checking the signs of $\cos\delta$ and $\sin\delta$ in equations (16).

The graph of equation (14), or the equivalent equation (12), for a typical set of initial conditions is shown in Figure 3.7.3. The graph is a displaced cosine wave that describes a periodic, or **simple harmonic**, motion of the mass. The **period** of the motion is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} = 2\pi\left(\frac{m}{k}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{18}$$

The circular frequency $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$, measured in radians per unit time, is called the **natural frequency** of the vibration. The maximum displacement R of the mass from equilibrium is the **amplitude** of the motion. The dimensionless parameter δ is called the **phase**, or phase angle, and measures the displacement of the wave from its normal position corresponding to $\delta = 0$.

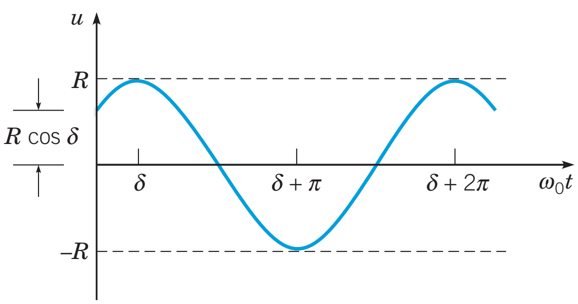


FIGURE 3.7.3 Simple harmonic motion; $u = R\cos(\omega_0 t - \delta)$. Note that the horizontal axis is labeled as $\omega_0 t$.

Note that the motion described by equation (14) has a constant amplitude that does not diminish with time. This reflects the fact that, in the absence of damping, there is no way for the system to dissipate the energy imparted to it by the initial displacement and velocity. Further, for a given mass m and spring constant k, the system always vibrates at the same frequency ω_0, regardless of the initial conditions. However, the initial conditions do help to determine the amplitude of the motion. Finally, observe from equation (18) that the period T increases as the mass m increases, so larger masses vibrate more slowly. On the other hand, the period T decreases as the spring constant k increases, which means that stiffer springs cause the system to vibrate more rapidly.

EXAMPLE 2

Suppose that a mass weighing 10 lb stretches a spring 2 in. If the mass is displaced an additional 2 in and is then set in motion with an initial upward velocity of 1 ft/s, determine the position of the mass at any later time. Also determine the period, amplitude, and phase of the motion.

Solution:

The spring constant is $k = 10$ lb$/2$ in $= 60$ lb/ft, and the mass is $m = w/g = 10/32$ lb·s^2/ft. Hence the equation of motion reduces to

$$u'' + 192u = 0, \tag{19}$$

and the general solution is

$$u = A\cos(8\sqrt{3}t) + B\sin(8\sqrt{3}t).$$

The solution satisfying the initial conditions $u(0) = 1/6$ ft and $u'(0) = -1$ ft/s is

$$u = \frac{1}{6}\cos(8\sqrt{3}t) - \frac{1}{8\sqrt{3}}\sin(8\sqrt{3}t). \tag{20}$$

The natural frequency is $\omega_0 = 8\sqrt{3} \cong 13.856$ rad/s, so the period is $T = 2\pi/\omega_0 \cong 0.453$ s. The amplitude R and phase δ are found from equations (17). We have

$$R^2 = \frac{1}{36} + \frac{1}{192} = \frac{19}{576}, \quad \text{so} \quad R \cong 0.182\text{ft}.$$

The second of equations (17) yields $\tan\delta = -\sqrt{3}/4$. There are two solutions of this equation, one in the second quadrant and one in the fourth. In the present problem, $\cos\delta > 0$ and $\sin\delta < 0$, so δ is in the fourth quadrant. In fact,

$$\delta = -\arctan\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cong -0.40864 \text{ rad}.$$

The graph of the solution (20) is shown in Figure 3.7.4.

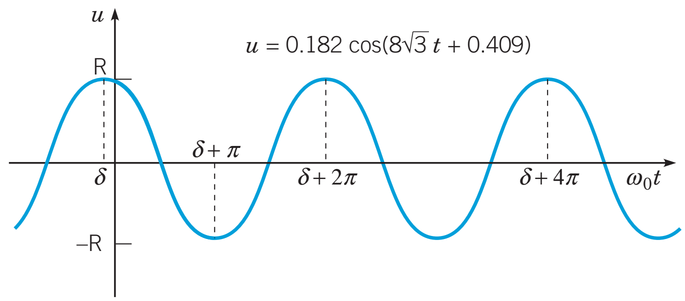


FIGURE 3.7.4 An undamped free vibration: $u'' + 192u = 0$, $u(0) = 1/6$, $u'(0) = -1$. Note that the scale for the horizontal axis is $\omega_0 t$.

Damped Free Vibrations. When the effects of damping are included, the differential equation governing the motion of the mass is

$$mu'' + \gamma u' + ku = 0. \tag{21}$$

We are especially interested in examining the effect of variations in the damping coefficient γ for given values of the mass m and spring constant k. The corresponding characteristic equation is

$$mr^2 + \gamma r + k = 0,$$

and its roots are

$$r_1, r_2 = \frac{-\gamma \pm \sqrt{\gamma^2 - 4km}}{2m} = \frac{\gamma}{2m}\left(-1 \pm \sqrt{1 - \frac{4km}{\gamma^2}}\right). \tag{22}$$

Depending on the sign of $\gamma^2 - 4km$, the solution u has one of the following forms:

$$\gamma^2 - 4km > 0, \quad u = Ae^{r_1 t} + Be^{r_2 t}; \tag{23}$$

$$\gamma^2 - 4km = 0, \quad u = (A + Bt)e^{-\gamma t/(2m)}; \tag{24}$$

$$\gamma^2 - 4km < 0, \quad u = e^{-\gamma t/(2m)}(A\cos(\mu t) + B\sin(\mu t)), \quad \mu = \frac{1}{2m}\left(4km - \gamma^2\right)^{1/2} > 0. \tag{25}$$

Since m, γ, and k are positive, $\gamma^2 - 4km$ is always less than γ^2. Hence, if $\gamma^2 - 4km \geq 0$, then the values of r_1 and r_2 given by equation (22) are *negative*. If $\gamma^2 - 4km < 0$, then the values of r_1 and r_2 are complex, but with *negative* real part. Thus, in all cases, the solution u tends to zero as $t \to \infty$; this occurs regardless of the values of the arbitrary constants A and B—that is, regardless of the initial conditions. This confirms our intuitive expectation, namely, that damping gradually dissipates the energy initially imparted to the system, and consequently the motion dies out with increasing time.

The most interesting case is the third one, which occurs when the damping is small. If we let $A = R\cos\delta$ and $B = R\sin\delta$ in equation (25), then we obtain

$$u = Re^{-\gamma t/(2m)}\cos(\mu t - \delta). \tag{26}$$

The displacement u lies between the curves $u = \pm Re^{-\gamma t/(2m)}$; hence it resembles a cosine wave whose amplitude decreases as t increases. A typical example is sketched in Figure 3.7.5. The motion is called a damped oscillation or a damped vibration. The amplitude factor R depends on m, γ, k, and the initial conditions.

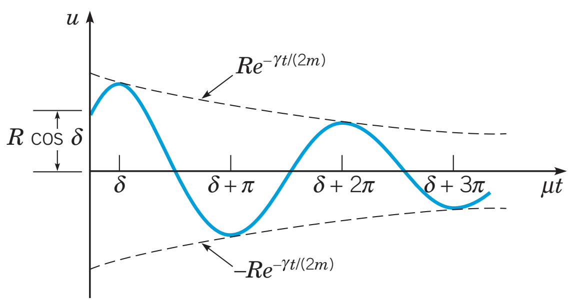


FIGURE 3.7.5 Damped vibration; $u = Re^{-\gamma t/2m}\cos(\mu t - \delta)$. Note that the scale for the horizontal axis is μt.

Although the motion is not periodic, the parameter μ determines the frequency with which the mass oscillates back and forth; consequently, μ is called the **quasi-frequency**. By comparing μ with the frequency ω_0 of undamped motion, we find that

$$\frac{\mu}{\omega_0} = \frac{(4km - \gamma^2)^{1/2}/(2m)}{\sqrt{k/m}} = \left(1 - \frac{\gamma^2}{4km}\right)^{1/2} \cong 1 - \frac{\gamma^2}{8km}. \tag{27}$$

The last approximation is valid when $\gamma^2/4km$ is small; we refer to this situation as "small damping." Thus the effect of small damping is to reduce slightly the frequency of the oscillation. By analogy with equation (18), the quantity $T_d = 2\pi/\mu$ is called the **quasi-period** of the motion. It is the time between successive maxima or successive minima of the position of the mass, or between successive passages of the mass through its equilibrium position while going in the same direction. The relation between T_d and T is given by

$$\frac{T_d}{T} = \frac{\omega_0}{\mu} = \left(1 - \frac{\gamma^2}{4km}\right)^{-1/2} \cong 1 + \frac{\gamma^2}{8km}, \tag{28}$$

where again the last approximation is valid when $\gamma^2/4km$ is small. Thus small damping increases the quasi-period.

Equations (27) and (28) reinforce the significance of the dimensionless ratio $\gamma^2/(4km)$. It is not the magnitude of γ alone that determines whether damping is large or small, but the magnitude of γ^2 compared to $4km$. When $\gamma^2/(4km)$ is small, then damping has a small effect on the quasi-frequency and quasi-period of the motion. On the other hand, if we want to study the detailed motion of the mass for all time, then we can *never* neglect the damping force, no matter how small.

As $\gamma^2/(4km)$ increases, the quasi-frequency μ decreases and the quasi-period T_d increases. In fact, $\mu \to 0$ and $T_d \to \infty$ as $\gamma \to 2\sqrt{km}$. As indicated by equations (23), (24), and (25), the nature of the solution changes as γ passes through the value $2\sqrt{km}$. The motion with $\gamma = 2\sqrt{km}$ is said to be **critically damped**. For larger values of γ, $\gamma > 2\sqrt{km}$, the motion is said to be **overdamped**. In these cases, given by equations (24) and (23), respectively, the mass may pass through its equilibrium position at most once (see Figure 3.7.6) and then creep back to it. The mass does not oscillate about the equilibrium, as it does for small γ. Two typical examples of critically damped motion are shown in Figure 3.7.6, and the situation is discussed further in Problems 15 and 16.

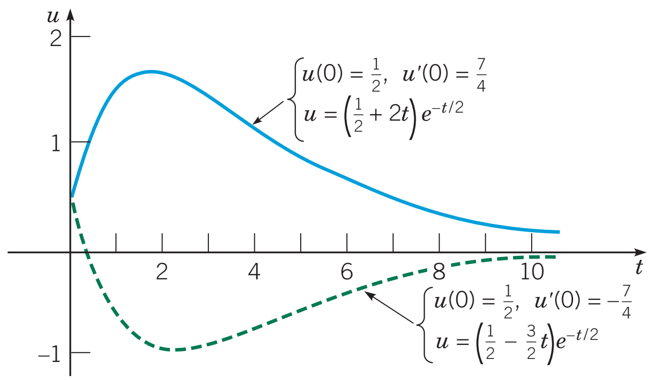


FIGURE 3.7.6 Critically damped motions: $u'' + u' + 0.25u = 0$; $u = (A + Bt)e^{-t/2}$. The solid blue curve is the solution satisfying $u(0) = 1/2, u'(0) = 7/4$; the dashed green curve satisfies $u(0) = 1/2, u'(0) = -7/4$.

EXAMPLE 3

The motion of a certain spring-mass system is governed by the differential equation

$$u'' + \frac{1}{8}u' + u = 0, \tag{29}$$

where u is measured in feet and t in seconds. If $u(0) = 2$ and $u'(0) = 0$, determine the position of the mass at any time. Find the quasi-frequency and the quasi-period, as well as the time at which the mass first passes through its equilibrium position. Also find the time τ such that $|u(t)| < 0.1$ for all $t > \tau$.

Solution:

The solution of equation (29) is

$$u(t) = e^{-t/16}\left(A\cos\left(\frac{\sqrt{255}}{16}t\right) + B\sin\left(\frac{\sqrt{255}}{16}t\right)\right).$$

To satisfy the initial conditions, we must choose $A = 2$ and $B = 2/\sqrt{255}$; hence the solution of the initial value problem is

$$\begin{aligned} u &= e^{-t/16}\left(2\cos\left(\frac{\sqrt{255}}{16}t\right) + \frac{2}{\sqrt{255}}\sin\left(\frac{\sqrt{255}}{16}t\right)\right) \\ &= \frac{32}{\sqrt{255}}e^{-t/16}\cos\left(\frac{\sqrt{255}}{16}t - \delta\right), \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

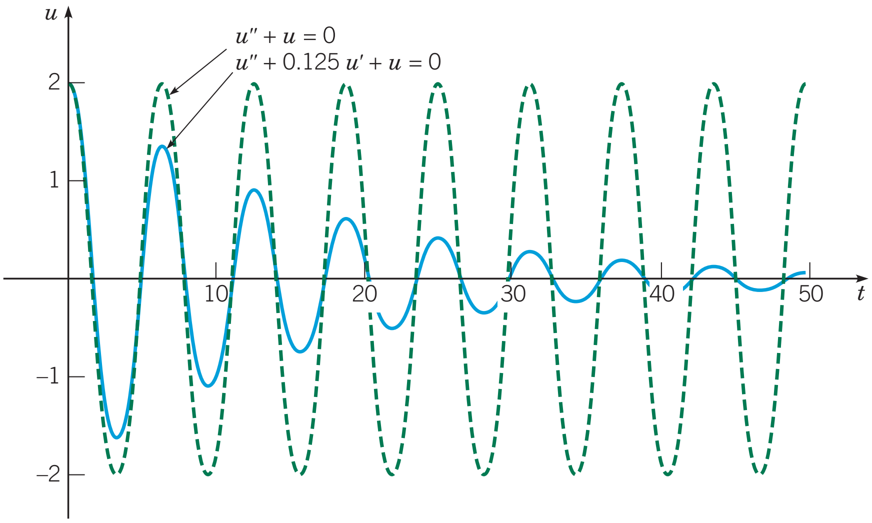


FIGURE 3.7.7 Vibration with small damping (solid blue curve) and with no damping (dashed green curve). Both motions have the same initial conditions: $u(0) = 2$, $u'(0) = 0$.

where δ is in the first quadrant with $\tan\delta = 1/\sqrt{255}$, so $\delta \cong 0.06254$. The displacement of the mass as a function of time is shown in Figure 3.7.7. For purposes of comparison, we also show the motion if the damping term is neglected.

The quasi-frequency is $\mu = \sqrt{255}/16 \cong 0.998$, and the quasi-period is $T_d = 2\pi/\mu \cong 6.295$ s. These values differ only slightly from the corresponding values (1 and 2π, respectively) for the undamped oscillation. This is evident also from the graphs in Figure 3.7.7, which rise and fall almost together. The damping coefficient is small in this example: only one-sixteenth of the critical value, in fact. Nevertheless, the amplitude of the oscillation is reduced rather rapidly.

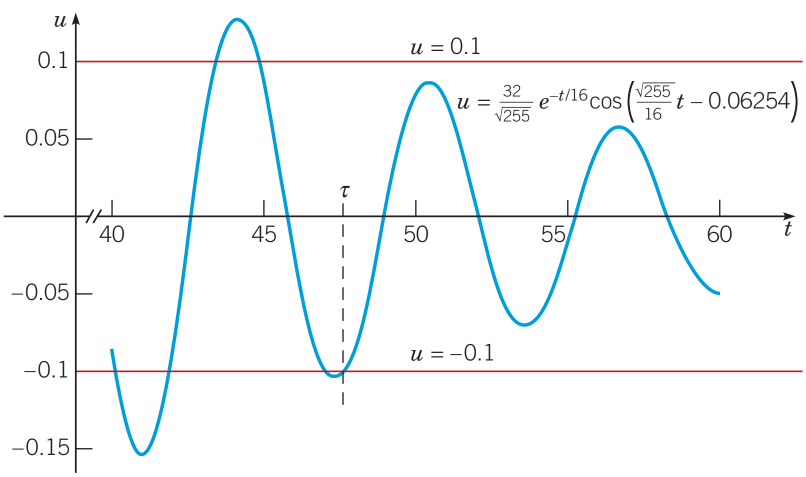


FIGURE 3.7.8 Solution of Example 3 for $40 \le t \le 60$; determination of the time τ after which $|u(t)| < 0.1$.

Figure 3.7.8 shows the graph of the solution for $40 \le t \le 60$, together with the graphs of $u = \pm 0.1$. From the graph it appears that τ is about 47.5, and by a more precise calculation we find that $\tau \cong 47.5149$ s.

To find the time at which the mass first passes through its equilibrium position, we refer to equation (30) and set $\sqrt{255}t/16 - \delta$ equal to $\pi/2$, the smallest positive zero of the cosine function. Then, by solving for t, we obtain

$$t = \frac{16}{\sqrt{255}}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \delta\right) \cong 1.637 \text{ s}.$$

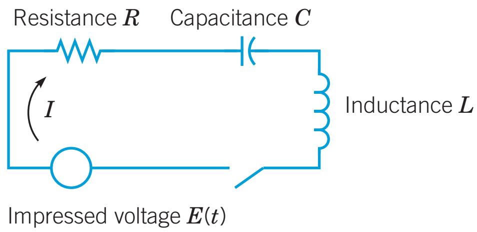


FIGURE 3.7.9 A simple electric circuit.

Electric Circuits. A second example of the occurrence of second-order linear differential equations with constant coefficients is their use as a model of the flow of electric current in the simple series circuit shown in Figure 3.7.9. The current I, measured in amperes (A), is a function of time t. The resistance R in ohms (Ω), the capacitance C in farads (F), and the inductance L in henrys (H) are all positive and are assumed to be known constants. The impressed voltage E in volts (V) is a given function of time. Another physical quantity that enters the discussion is the total charge Q in coulombs (C) on the capacitor at time t. The relation between charge Q and current I is

$$I = \frac{dQ}{dt}. \tag{31}$$

The flow of current in the circuit is governed by Kirchhoff's[11] second law: *In a closed circuit the impressed voltage is equal to the sum of the voltage drops in the rest of the circuit.*

According to the elementary laws of electricity, we know that

The voltage drop across the resistor is RI.

The voltage drop across the capacitor is $\dfrac{Q}{C}$.

The voltage drop across the inductor is $L\dfrac{dI}{dt}$.

Hence, by Kirchhoff's law,

$$L\frac{dI}{dt} + RI + \frac{1}{C}Q = E(t). \tag{32}$$

The units for voltage, resistance, current, charge, capacitance, inductance, and time are all related:

$$1 \text{ volt} = 1 \text{ ohm} \cdot 1 \text{ ampere} = 1 \text{ coulomb}/1 \text{ farad} = 1 \text{ henry} \cdot 1 \text{ ampere}/1 \text{ second}.$$

Substituting for I from equation (31), we obtain the differential equation

$$LQ'' + RQ' + \frac{1}{C}Q = E(t) \tag{33}$$

for the charge Q. The initial conditions are

$$Q(t_0) = Q_0, \quad Q'(t_0) = I(t_0) = I_0. \tag{34}$$

Thus to know the charge at any time it is sufficient to know the charge on the capacitor and the current in the circuit at some initial time t_0.

Alternatively, we can obtain a differential equation for the current I by differentiating equation (33) with respect to t, and then substituting for dQ/dt from equation (31). The result is

$$LI'' + RI' + \frac{1}{C}I = E'(t), \tag{35}$$

with the initial conditions

$$I(t_0) = I_0, \quad I'(t_0) = I_0'. \tag{36}$$

[11]Gustav Kirchhoff (1824–1887) was a German physicist and professor at Breslau, Heidelberg, and Berlin. He formulated the basic laws of electric circuits about 1845 while still a student at Albertus University in his native Königsberg. In 1857 he discovered that an electric current in a resistanceless wire travels at the speed of light. He is also famous for fundamental work in electromagnetic absorption and emission and was one of the founders of spectroscopy.

From equation (32) it follows that

$$I_0' = \frac{E(t_0) - RI_0 - \dfrac{Q_0}{C}}{L}. \tag{37}$$

Hence I_0' is also determined by the initial charge and current, which are physically measurable quantities.

The most important conclusion from this discussion is that the flow of current in the circuit is described by an initial value problem of precisely the same form as the one that describes the motion of a spring-mass system. This is a good example of the unifying role of mathematics: once you know how to solve second-order linear equations with constant coefficients, you can interpret the results in terms of mechanical vibrations, electric circuits, or any other physical situation that leads to the same problem.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 and 2, determine ω_0, R, and δ so as to write the given expression in the form $u = R\cos(\omega_0 t - \delta)$.

1. $u = 3\cos(2t) + 4\sin(2t)$

2. $u = -2\cos(\pi t) - 3\sin(\pi t)$

3. A mass of 100 g stretches a spring 5 cm. If the mass is set in motion from its equilibrium position with a downward velocity of 10 cm/s, and if there is no damping, determine the position u of the mass at any time t. When does the mass first return to its equilibrium position?

4. A mass weighing 3 lb stretches a spring 3 in. If the mass is pushed upward, contracting the spring a distance of 1 in and then set in motion with a downward velocity of 2 ft/s, and if there is no damping, find the position u of the mass at any time t. Determine the frequency, period, amplitude, and phase of the motion.

G **5.** A mass of 20 g stretches a spring 5 cm. Suppose that the mass is also attached to a viscous damper with a damping constant of 400 dyn·s/cm. If the mass is pulled down an additional 2 cm and then released, find its position u at any time t. Plot u versus t. Determine the quasi-frequency and the quasi-period. Determine the ratio of the quasi-period to the period of the corresponding undamped motion. Also find the time τ such that $|u(t)| < 0.05$ cm for all $t > \tau$.

6. A spring is stretched 10 cm by a force of 3 N. A mass of 2 kg is hung from the spring and is also attached to a viscous damper that exerts a force of 3 N when the velocity of the mass is 5 m/s. If the mass is pulled down 5 cm below its equilibrium position and given an initial downward velocity of 10 cm/s, determine its position u at any time t. Find the quasi-frequency μ and the ratio of μ to the natural frequency of the corresponding undamped motion.

7. A series circuit has a capacitor of 10^{-5} F, a resistor of $3 \times 10^2\ \Omega$, and an inductor of 0.2 H. The initial charge on the capacitor is 10^{-6} C and there is no initial current. Find the charge Q on the capacitor at any time t.

8. A vibrating system satisfies the equation $u'' + \gamma u' + u = 0$. Find the value of the damping coefficient γ for which the quasi-period of the damped motion is 50% greater than the period of the corresponding undamped motion.

9. Show that the period of motion of an undamped vibration of a mass hanging from a vertical spring is $2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$, where L is the elongation of the spring due to the mass, and g is the acceleration due to gravity.

10. Show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$mu'' + \gamma u' + ku = 0, \quad u(t_0) = u_0, \quad u'(t_0) = u_0'$$

can be expressed as the sum $u = v + w$, where v satisfies the initial conditions $v(t_0) = u_0$, $v'(t_0) = 0$, w satisfies the initial conditions $w(t_0) = 0$, $w'(t_0) = u_0'$, and both v and w satisfy the same differential equation as u. This is another instance of superposing solutions of simpler problems to obtain the solution of a more general problem.

11. **a.** Show that $A\cos\left(\omega_0 t\right) + B\sin\left(\omega_0 t\right)$ can be written in the form $r\sin(\omega_0 t - \theta)$. Determine r and θ in terms of A and B.

b. If $R\cos(\omega_0 t - \delta) = r\sin(\omega_0 t - \theta)$, determine the relationship among R, r, δ, and θ.

12. If a series circuit has a capacitor of $C = 0.8 \times 10^{-6}$ F and an inductor of $L = 0.2$ H, find the resistance R so that the circuit is critically damped.

13. Assume that the system described by the differential equation $mu'' + \gamma u' + ku = 0$ is either critically damped or overdamped. Show that the mass can pass through the equilibrium position at most once, regardless of the initial conditions.
Hint: Determine all possible values of t for which $u = 0$.

14. Assume that the system described by the differential equation $mu'' + \gamma u' + ku = 0$ is critically damped and that the initial conditions are $u(0) = u_0$, $u'(0) = v_0$. If $v_0 = 0$, show that $u \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$ but that u is never zero. If u_0 is positive, determine a condition on v_0 that will ensure that the mass passes through its equilibrium position after it is released.

15. **Logarithmic Decrement.** **a.** For the damped oscillation described by equation (26), show that the time between successive maxima is $T_d = 2\pi/\mu$.

b. Show that the ratio of the displacements at two successive maxima is given by $\exp(\gamma T_d/(2m))$. Observe that this ratio does not depend on which pair of maxima is chosen. The natural logarithm of this ratio is called the **logarithmic decrement** and is denoted by Δ.

c. Show that $\Delta = \pi\gamma/(m\mu)$. Since m, μ, and Δ are quantities that can be measured easily for a mechanical system, this result provides a convenient and *practical* method for determining the damping constant of the system, which is more difficult to measure directly. In particular, for the motion of a vibrating mass in a viscous fluid, the damping constant depends on the viscosity of the fluid; for simple geometric shapes the form of this dependence is known, and the preceding relation allows the experimental determination of the viscosity. This is one of the most accurate ways of determining the viscosity of a gas at high pressure.

16. Referring to Problem 15, find the logarithmic decrement of the system in Problem 5.

17. The position of a certain spring-mass system satisfies the initial value problem

$$\frac{3}{2}u'' + ku = 0, \quad u(0) = 2, \ u'(0) = v.$$

If the period and amplitude of the resulting motion are observed to be π and 3, respectively, determine the values of k and v.

18. Consider the initial value problem

$$mu'' + \gamma u' + ku = 0, \quad u(0) = u_0, \ u'(0) = v_0.$$

Assume that $\gamma^2 < 4km$.

a. Solve the initial value problem.

b. Write the solution in the form $u(t) = Re^{-\gamma t/(2m)}\cos(\mu t - \delta)$. Determine R in terms of m, γ, k, u_0, and v_0.

c. Investigate the dependence of R on the damping coefficient γ for fixed values of the other parameters.

19. A cubic block of side l and mass density ρ per unit volume is floating in a fluid of mass density ρ_0 per unit volume, where $\rho_0 > \rho$. If the block is slightly depressed and then released, it oscillates in the vertical direction. Assuming that the viscous damping of the fluid and air can be neglected, derive the differential equation of motion and determine the period of the motion.

Hint: Use Archimedes'[12] principle: an object that is completely or partially submerged in a fluid is acted on by an upward (buoyant) force equal to the weight of the displaced fluid.

20. The position of a certain undamped spring-mass system satisfies the initial value problem

$$u'' + 2u = 0, \quad u(0) = 0, \ u'(0) = 2.$$

a. Find the solution of this initial value problem.

G **b.** Plot u versus t and u' versus t on the same axes.

G **c.** Plot u' versus u; that is, plot $u(t)$ and $u'(t)$ parametrically with t as the parameter. This plot is known as a **phase plot**, and the uu'-plane is called the **phase plane**. Observe that a closed curve in the phase plane corresponds to a periodic solution $u(t)$. What is the direction of motion on the phase plot as t increases?

21. The position of a certain spring-mass system satisfies the initial value problem

$$u'' + \frac{1}{4}u' + 2u = 0, \quad u(0) = 0, \ u'(0) = 2.$$

a. Find the solution of this initial value problem.

G **b.** Plot u versus t and u' versus t on the same axes.

G **c.** Plot u' versus u in the phase plane (see Problem 20). Identify several corresponding points on the curves in parts b and c. What is the direction of motion on the phase plot as t increases?

22. In the absence of damping, the motion of a spring-mass system satisfies the initial value problem

$$mu'' + ku = 0, \quad u(0) = a, \ u'(0) = b.$$

a. Show that the kinetic energy initially imparted to the mass is $mb^2/2$ and that the potential energy initially stored in the spring is $ka^2/2$, so initially the total energy in the system is $(ka^2 + mb^2)/2$.

b. Solve the given initial value problem.

c. Using the solution in part b, determine the total energy in the system at any time t. Your result should confirm the principle of conservation of energy for this system.

23. Suppose that a mass m slides without friction on a horizontal surface. The mass is attached to a spring with spring constant k, as shown in Figure 3.7.10, and is also subject to viscous air resistance with coefficient γ. Show that the displacement $u(t)$ of the mass from its equilibrium position satisfies equation (21). How does the derivation of the equation of motion in this case differ from the derivation given in the text?

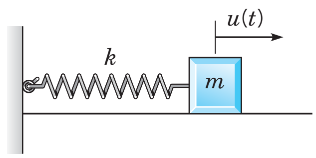


FIGURE 3.7.10 A spring-mass system.

24. In the spring-mass system of Problem 23, suppose that the spring force is not given by Hooke's law but instead satisfies the relation

$$F_s = -(ku + \epsilon u^3),$$

where $k > 0$ and ϵ is small but may be of either sign. The spring is called a hardening spring if $\epsilon > 0$ and a softening spring if $\epsilon < 0$. Why are these terms appropriate?

a. Show that the displacement $u(t)$ of the mass from its equilibrium position satisfies the differential equation

$$mu'' + \gamma u' + ku + \epsilon u^3 = 0.$$

Suppose that the initial conditions are

$$u(0) = 0, \quad u'(0) = 1.$$

In the remainder of this problem, assume that $m = 1$, $k = 1$, and $\gamma = 0$.

b. Find $u(t)$ when $\epsilon = 0$ and also determine the amplitude and period of the motion.

G **c.** Let $\epsilon = 0.1$. Plot a numerical approximation to the solution. Does the motion appear to be periodic? Estimate the amplitude and period.

G **d.** Repeat part c for $\epsilon = 0.2$ and $\epsilon = 0.3$.

G **e.** Plot your estimated values of the amplitude A and the period T versus ϵ. Describe the way in which A and T, respectively, depend on ϵ.

G **f.** Repeat parts c, d, and e for negative values of ϵ.

[12] Archimedes (287–212 BCE) was the foremost of the ancient Greek mathematicians. He lived in Syracuse on the island of Sicily. His most notable discoveries were in geometry, but he also made important contributions to hydrostatics and other branches of mechanics. His method of exhaustion is a precursor of the integral calculus developed by Newton and Leibniz almost two millennia later. He died at the hands of a Roman soldier during the Second Punic War.

3.8 Forced Periodic Vibrations

We will now investigate the situation in which a periodic external force is applied to a spring-mass system. The behavior of this simple system models that of many oscillatory systems with an external force due, for example, to a motor attached to the system. We will first consider the case in which damping is present and will look later at the idealized special case in which there is assumed to be no damping.

Forced Vibrations with Damping. The algebraic calculations can be fairly complicated in this kind of problem, so we will begin with a relatively simple example.

EXAMPLE 1

Suppose that the motion of a certain spring-mass system satisfies the differential equation

$$u'' + u' + \frac{5}{4}u = 3\cos t \tag{1}$$

and the initial conditions

$$u(0) = 2, \quad u'(0) = 3. \tag{2}$$

Find the solution of this initial value problem and describe the behavior of the solution for large t.

Solution:

The homogeneous equation corresponding to equation (1) has the characteristic equation $r^2 + r + \frac{5}{4} = 0$ with roots $r = -\frac{1}{2} \pm i$. Thus a general solution $u_c(t)$ of this homogeneous equation is

$$u_c(t) = c_1 e^{-t/2}\cos t + c_2 e^{-t/2}\sin t. \tag{3}$$

A particular solution of equation (1) has the form $U(t) = A\cos t + B\sin t$, where A and B are found by substituting $U(t)$ for u in equation (1). We have $U'(t) = -A\sin t + B\cos t$ and $U''(t) = -A\cos t - B\sin t$. Thus, from equation (1) we obtain

$$\left(\frac{1}{4}A + B\right)\cos t + \left(-A + \frac{1}{4}B\right)\sin t = 3\cos t.$$

Consequently, A and B must satisfy the equations

$$\frac{1}{4}A + B = 3, \quad -A + \frac{1}{4}B = 0,$$

with the result that $A = \frac{12}{17}$ and $B = \frac{48}{17}$. Therefore, the particular solution is

$$U(t) = \frac{12}{17}\cos t + \frac{48}{17}\sin t, \tag{4}$$

and the general solution of equation (1) is

$$u = u_c(t) + U(t) = c_1 e^{-t/2}\cos t + c_2 e^{-t/2}\sin t + \frac{12}{17}\cos t + \frac{48}{17}\sin t. \tag{5}$$

The remaining constants c_1 and c_2 are determined by the initial conditions (2). From equation (5), and its first derivative, we have

$$u(0) = c_1 + \frac{12}{17} = 2, \quad u'(0) = -\frac{1}{2}c_1 + c_2 + \frac{48}{17} = 3,$$

so $c_1 = \frac{22}{17}$ and $c_2 = \frac{14}{17}$. Thus we finally arrive at the solution of the given initial value problem (1), (2), namely,

$$u = \frac{22}{17}e^{-t/2}\cos t + \frac{14}{17}e^{-t/2}\sin t + \frac{12}{17}\cos t + \frac{48}{17}\sin t. \tag{6}$$

The graph of the solution (6) is shown by the green curve in Figure 3.8.1.

It is important to note that the solution consists of two distinct parts. The first two terms on the right-hand side of equation (6) contain the exponential factor $e^{-t/2}$; as a result, they rapidly approach zero. It is customary to call these terms the **transient solution**. The remaining terms in equation (6) involve only sines and cosines, so they represent an oscillation that continues indefinitely. We refer to them as the **steady-state solution**. The dotted red and dashed blue curves in Figure 3.8.1 show the transient and the steady-state parts of the solution, respectively. The transient part comes from the solution of the homogeneous equation corresponding to equation (1) and is needed to satisfy the initial conditions. The steady-state solution is the particular solution of the full nonhomogeneous equation. After a fairly short time, the transient solution is vanishingly small and the full solution is essentially indistinguishable from the steady state.

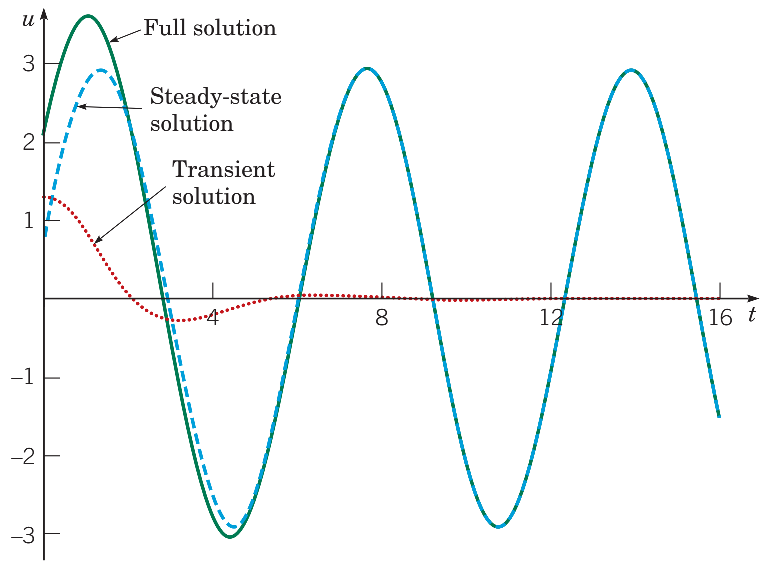


FIGURE 3.8.1 Solution of the initial value problem (1), (2): $u'' + u' + 5u/4 = 3\cos t$, $u(0) = 2$, $u'(0) = 3$. The full solution (solid green) is the sum of the transient solution (dotted red) and steady-state solution (dashed blue).

The equation of motion of a general spring-mass system subject to an external force $F(t)$ is equation (7) in Section 3.7:

$$mu''(t) + \gamma u'(t) + ku(t) = F(t), \tag{7}$$

where m, γ, and k are the mass, damping coefficient, and spring constant of the spring-mass system. Suppose now that the external force is given by $F_0 \cos(\omega t)$, where F_0 and ω are positive constants representing the amplitude and frequency, respectively, of the force. Then equation (7) becomes

$$mu'' + \gamma u' + ku = F_0 \cos(\omega t). \tag{8}$$

Solutions of equation (8) behave very much like the solution in the preceding example. The general solution of equation (8) must have the form

$$u = c_1 u_1(t) + c_2 u_2(t) + A\cos(\omega t) + B\sin(\omega t) = u_c(t) + U(t). \tag{9}$$

The first two terms on the right-hand side of equation (9) are the general solution $u_c(t)$ of the homogeneous equation corresponding to equation (8), and the latter two terms are a particular solution $U(t)$ of the full nonhomogeneous equation. The coefficients A and B can be found, as usual, by substituting these terms into the differential equation (8), while the arbitrary constants c_1 and c_2 are available to satisfy initial conditions, if any are prescribed. The solutions $u_1(t)$

and $u_2(t)$ of the homogeneous equation depend on the roots r_1 and r_2 of the characteristic equation $mr^2 + \gamma r + k = 0$. Since m, γ, and k are all positive, it follows that r_1 and r_2 either are real and negative or are complex conjugates with a negative real part. In either case, both $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$ approach zero as $t \to \infty$. Since $u_c(t)$ dies out as t increases, it is called the **transient solution**. In many applications, it is of little importance and (depending on the value of γ) may well be undetectable after only a few seconds.

The remaining terms in equation (9)—namely, $U(t) = A\cos(\omega t) + B\sin(\omega t)$—do not die out as t increases but persist indefinitely, or as long as the external force is applied. They represent a steady oscillation with the same frequency as the external force and are called the **steady-state solution** or the **forced response** of the system. The transient solution enables us to satisfy whatever initial conditions may be imposed. With increasing time, the energy put into the system by the initial displacement and velocity is dissipated through the damping force, and the motion then becomes the response of the system to the external force. Without damping, the effect of the initial conditions would persist for all time.

It is convenient to express $U(t)$ as a single trigonometric term rather than as a sum of two terms. Recall that we did this for other similar expressions in Section 3.7. Thus we write

$$U(t) = R\cos(\omega t - \delta). \tag{10}$$

The amplitude R and phase δ depend directly on A and B and indirectly on the parameters in the differential equation (8). It is possible to show, by straightforward but somewhat lengthy algebraic computations, that

$$R = \frac{F_0}{\Delta}, \quad \cos\delta = \frac{m(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)}{\Delta}, \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\delta = \frac{\gamma\omega}{\Delta}, \tag{11}$$

where

$$\Delta = \sqrt{m^2(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)^2 + \gamma^2\omega^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \omega_0^2 = \frac{k}{m}. \tag{12}$$

Recall that ω_0 is the natural frequency of the unforced system in the absence of damping.

We now investigate how the amplitude R of the steady-state oscillation depends on the frequency ω of the external force. Substituting from equation (12) into the expression for R in equation (11) and executing some algebraic manipulations, we find that

$$\frac{Rk}{F_0} = \left(\left(1 - \left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_0}\right)^2\right)^2 + \Gamma\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_0}\right)^2\right)^{-1/2} \quad \text{where } \Gamma = \frac{\gamma^2}{mk}. \tag{13}$$

Observe that the quantity Rk/F_0 is the ratio of the amplitude R of the forced response to F_0/k, the static displacement of the spring produced by a force F_0.

For low frequency excitation—that is, as $\omega \to 0$—it follows from equation (13) that $Rk/F_0 \to 1$ or $R \to F_0/k$. At the other extreme, for very high frequency excitation, equation (13) implies that $R \to 0$ as $\omega \to \infty$. At an intermediate value of ω the amplitude may have a maximum. To find this maximum point, we can differentiate R with respect to ω and set the result equal to zero. In this way we find that the maximum amplitude occurs when $\omega = \omega_{\max}$, where

$$\omega_{\max}^2 = \omega_0^2 - \frac{\gamma^2}{2m^2} = \omega_0^2\left(1 - \frac{\gamma^2}{2mk}\right). \tag{14}$$

Note that $\omega_{\max} < \omega_0$ and that $\omega_{\max}$ is close to ω_0 when γ is small. The maximum value of R is

$$R_{\max} = \frac{F_0}{\gamma\omega_0\sqrt{1 - (\gamma^2/4mk)}} \cong \frac{F_0}{\gamma\omega_0}\left(1 + \frac{\gamma^2}{8mk}\right), \tag{15}$$

where the last expression is an approximation that is valid when γ is small (see Problem 5). If $\frac{\gamma^2}{mk} > 2$, then $\omega_{\max}$ as given by equation (14) is imaginary; in this case the maximum value of R occurs for $\omega = 0$, and R is a monotone decreasing function of ω. Recall that critical damping occurs when $\frac{\gamma^2}{mk} = 4$.

For small γ it follows from equation (15) that $R_{\max} \cong \frac{F_0}{\gamma\omega_0}$. Thus, for lightly damped systems, the amplitude R of the forced response when ω is near ω_0 is quite large even for relatively small external forces, and the smaller the value of γ, the more pronounced is this effect. This phenomenon is known as **resonance**, and it is often an important design consideration. Resonance can be either good or bad, depending on the circumstances. It must be taken very seriously in the design of structures, such as buildings and bridges, where it can produce instabilities that might lead to the catastrophic failure of the structure. On the other hand, resonance can be put to good use in the design of instruments, such as seismographs, that are intended to detect weak periodic incoming signals.

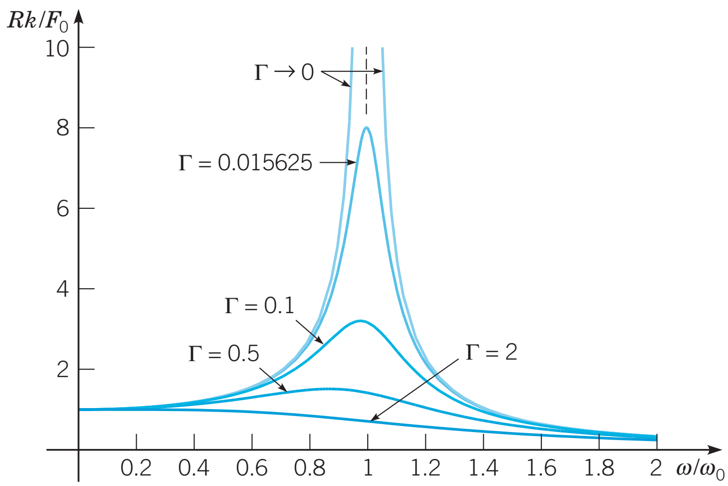


FIGURE 3.8.2 Forced vibration with damping: amplitude of steady-state response versus frequency of driving force for several values of the dimensionless damping parameter $\Gamma = \gamma^2/mk$.

Figure 3.8.2 contains some representative graphs of $\frac{Rk}{F_0}$ versus $\frac{\omega}{\omega_0}$ for several values of $\Gamma = \frac{\gamma^2}{mk}$. We refer to Γ as a damping parameter, as the following examples will explain. The graph corresponding to $\Gamma = 0.015625$ is included because this is the value of Γ that occurs in Example 2 below. Note particularly the sharp peak in the curve corresponding to $\Gamma = 0.015625$ near $\frac{\omega}{\omega_0} = 1$. The limiting case as $\Gamma \to 0$ is also shown. It follows from equation (13), or from equations (11) and (12), that $R \to \frac{F_0}{m\left|\omega_0^2 - \omega^2\right|}$ as $\gamma \to 0$ and hence $\frac{Rk}{F_0}$ is asymptotic to the vertical line $\omega = \omega_0$, as shown in the figure. As the damping in the system increases, the peak response gradually diminishes.

Figure 3.8.2 also illustrates the usefulness of dimensionless variables. You can easily verify that each of the quantities $\frac{Rk}{F_0}$, $\frac{\omega}{\omega_0}$, and Γ is dimensionless (see Problem 9d). The importance of this observation is that the number of significant parameters in the problem has been reduced to three rather than the five that appear in equation (8). Thus only one family of curves, of which a few are shown in Figure 3.8.2, is needed to describe the response-versus-frequency behavior of all systems governed by equation (8).

The phase angle δ also depends in an interesting way on ω. For ω near zero, it follows from equations (11) and (12) that $\cos\delta \cong 1$ and $\sin\delta \cong 0$. Thus $\delta \cong 0$, and the response is nearly in phase with the excitation, meaning that they rise and fall together and, in particular, assume their respective maxima nearly together and their respective minima nearly together.

For $\omega = \omega_0$ we find that $\cos\delta = 0$ and $\sin\delta = 1$, so $\delta = \pi/2$. In this case the response lags behind the excitation by $\pi/2$; that is, the peaks of the response occur $\pi/2$ later than the peaks of the excitation, and similarly for the valleys. Finally, for ω very large, we have $\cos\delta \cong -1$ and $\sin\delta \cong 0$. Thus $\delta \cong \pi$ so that the response is nearly out of phase with the excitation; this means that the response is minimum when the excitation is maximum, and vice versa. Figure 3.8.3 shows the graphs of δ versus ω/ω_0 for several values of Γ. For small damping, the phase transition from near $\delta = 0$ to near $\delta = \pi$ occurs rather abruptly, whereas for larger values of the damping parameter, the transition takes place more gradually.

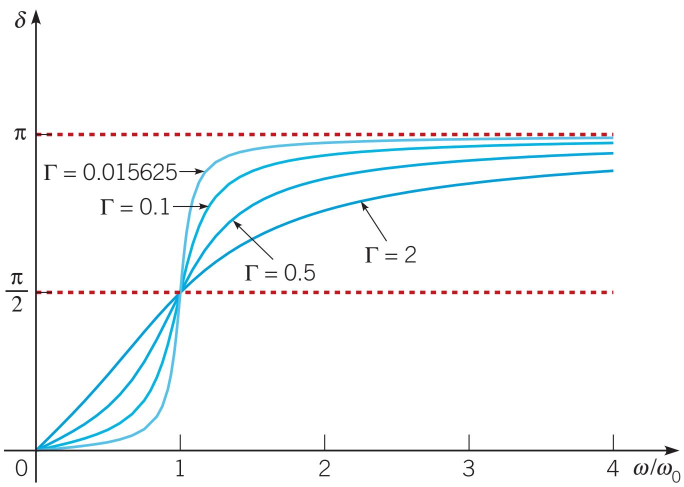


FIGURE 3.8.3 Forced vibration with damping: phase of steady-state response versus frequency of driving force for several values of the dimensionless damping parameter $\Gamma = \gamma^2/mk$.

EXAMPLE 2

Consider the initial value problem

$$u'' + \frac{1}{8}u' + u = 3\cos(\omega t), \quad u(0) = 2, \quad u'(0) = 0. \tag{16}$$

Show plots of the solution for different values of the forcing frequency ω, and compare them with corresponding plots of the forcing function.

Solution:

For this system we have $\omega_0 = 1$ and $\Gamma = 1/64 = 0.015625$. Its unforced motion was discussed in Example 3 of Section 3.7, and Figure 3.7.7 shows the graph of the solution of the unforced problem. Figures 3.8.4, 3.8.5, and 3.8.6 show the solution of the forced problem (16) for $\omega = 0.3$, $\omega = 1$, and $\omega = 2$, respectively. The graph of the corresponding forcing function is also shown in each figure. In this example the static displacement, F_0/k, is equal to 3.

Figure 3.8.4 shows the low frequency case, $\omega/\omega_0 = 0.3$. After the initial transient response is substantially damped out, the remaining steady-state response is essentially in phase with the excitation, and the amplitude of the response is somewhat larger than the static displacement. To be specific, $R \cong 3.2939$ and $\delta \cong 0.041185$.

The resonant case, $\omega/\omega_0 = 1$, is shown in Figure 3.8.5. Here, the amplitude of the steady-state response is eight times the static displacement, and the figure also shows the predicted phase lag of $\pi/2$ relative to the external force.

The case of comparatively high frequency excitation is shown in Figure 3.8.6. Observe that the amplitude of the steady forced response is approximately one-third the static displacement and that the phase difference between the excitation and the response is approximately π. More precisely, we find that $R \cong 0.99655$ and that $\delta \cong 3.0585$.

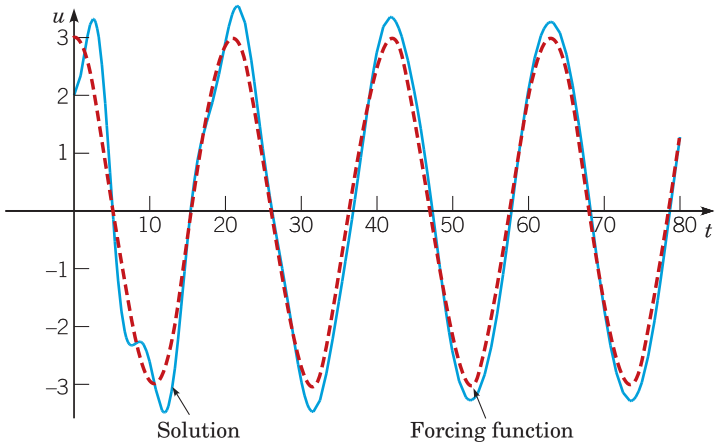


FIGURE 3.8.4 A forced vibration with damping; the solution (solid blue) of equation (16) with $\omega = 0.3$: $u'' + \frac{1}{8}u' + u = 3\cos(0.3t)$, $u(0) = 2$, $u'(0) = 0$. The dashed red curve is the external force: $F(t) = 3\cos(0.3t)$.

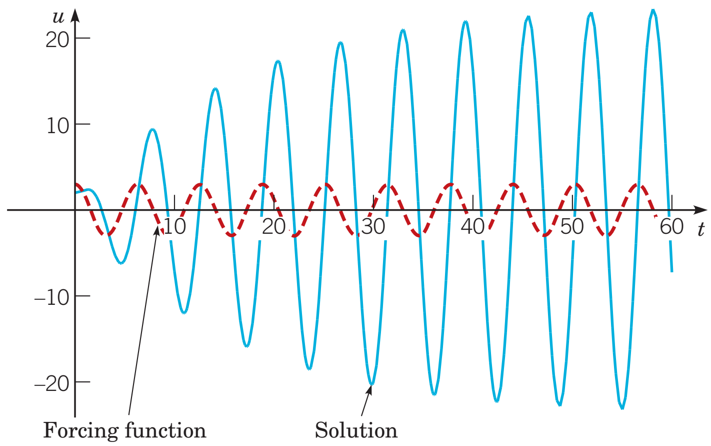


FIGURE 3.8.5 A forced vibration with damping; the solution (solid blue) of equation (16) with $\omega = 1$: $u'' + \frac{1}{8}u' + u = 3\cos t$, $u(0) = 2$, $u'(0) = 0$. The dashed red curve is the external force: $F(t) = 3\cos t$.

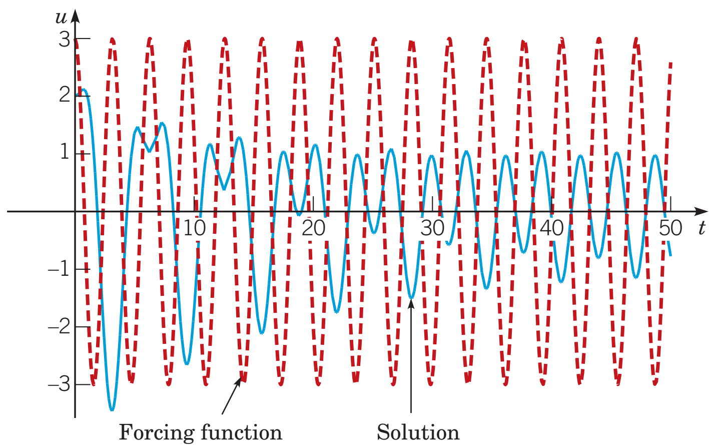


FIGURE 3.8.6 A forced vibration with damping; the solution (solid blue) of equation (16) with $\omega = 2$: $u'' + \frac{1}{8}u' + u = 3\cos(2t)$, $u(0) = 2$, $u'(0) = 0$. The dashed red curve is the external force: $F(t) = 3\cos(2t)$.

Forced Vibrations Without Damping. We now assume that $\gamma = 0$ in equation (8), thereby obtaining the equation of motion of an undamped forced oscillator,

$$mu'' + ku = F_0 \cos(\omega t). \tag{17}$$

The form of the general solution of equation (17) is different, depending on whether the forcing frequency ω is different from or equal to the natural frequency $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$ of the unforced system. First consider the case $\omega \neq \omega_0$; then the general solution of equation (17) is

$$u = c_1 \cos(\omega_0 t) + c_2 \sin(\omega_0 t) + \frac{F_0}{m(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)} \cos(\omega t). \tag{18}$$

The constants c_1 and c_2 are determined by the initial conditions. The resulting motion is, in general, the sum of two periodic motions of different frequencies (ω_0 and ω) and different amplitudes as well.

It is particularly interesting to suppose that the mass is initially at rest so that the initial conditions are $u(0) = 0$ and $u'(0) = 0$. Then the energy driving the system comes entirely from the external force, with no contribution from the initial conditions. In this case it turns out that the constants c_1 and c_2 in equation (18) are given by

$$c_1 = -\frac{F_0}{m(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)}, \qquad c_2 = 0, \tag{19}$$

and the solution of equation (17) is

$$u = \frac{F_0}{m(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)}\big(\cos(\omega t) - \cos(\omega_0 t)\big). \tag{20}$$

This is the sum of two periodic functions of different periods but the same amplitude. Making use of the trigonometric identities for $\cos(A \pm B)$ with $A = \frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 + \omega)t$ and $B = \frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 - \omega)t$, we can write equation (20) in the form

$$u = \frac{2F_0}{m}\left(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2\right) \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 - \omega)t\right) \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 + \omega)t\right). \tag{21}$$

If $|\omega_0 - \omega|$ is small, then $\omega_0 + \omega$ is much greater than $|\omega_0 - \omega|$. Consequently, $\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 + \omega)t\right)$ is a rapidly oscillating function compared to $\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 - \omega)t\right)$. Thus the motion is a rapid oscillation with frequency $\frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 + \omega)$ but with a slowly varying sinusoidal amplitude

$$\frac{2F_0}{m\left|\omega_0^2 - \omega^2\right|}\left|\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 - \omega)t\right)\right|.$$

This type of motion, possessing a periodic variation of amplitude, exhibits what is called a **beat**. For example, such a phenomenon occurs in acoustics when two tuning forks of nearly equal frequency are excited simultaneously. In this case the periodic variation of amplitude is quite apparent to the unaided ear. In electronics, the variation of the amplitude with time is called **amplitude modulation**.

EXAMPLE 3

Solve the initial value problem

$$u'' + u = \frac{1}{2}\cos(0.8t), \quad u(0) = 0, \ u'(0) = 0, \tag{22}$$

and plot the solution.

Solution:

In this case $\omega_0 = 1$, $\omega = 0.8$, and $F_0 = \frac{1}{2}$, so from equation (21) the solution of the given problem is

$$u = 2.778 \sin(0.1t) \sin(0.9t). \tag{23}$$

A graph of this solution is shown in Figure 3.8.7. The amplitude variation has a slow frequency of 0.1 and a corresponding slow period of $2\pi/0.1 = 20\pi$. Note that a half-period of 10π corresponds to a single cycle of increasing and then decreasing amplitude. The displacement of the spring-mass system oscillates with a relatively fast frequency of 0.9, which is only slightly less than the natural frequency ω_0.

Now imagine that the forcing frequency ω is increased, say, to $\omega = 0.9$. Then the slow frequency is halved to 0.05, and the corresponding slow half-period is doubled to 20π. The multiplier 2.7778 also increases substantially, to 5.263. However, the fast frequency is only marginally increased, to 0.95. Can you visualize what happens as ω takes on values closer and closer to the natural frequency $\omega_0 = 1$?

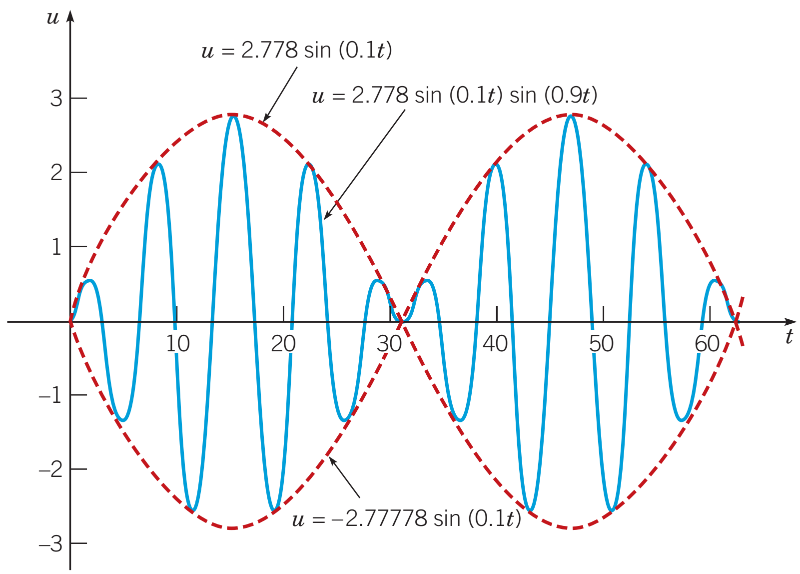


FIGURE 3.8.7 A beat; the solution (solid blue) of equation (22): $u'' + u = \frac{1}{2}\cos(0.8t)$, $u(0) = 0$, $u'(0) = 0$ is $u = 2.778 \sin(0.1t) \sin(0.9t)$. The dashed red curve is the external force $F(t) = \frac{1}{2}\cos(0.8t)$.

Now let us return to equation (17) and consider the case of resonance, where $\omega = \omega_0$; that is, the frequency of the forcing function is the same as the natural frequency of the system. Then the nonhomogeneous term $F_0 \cos(\omega t)$ is a solution of the homogeneous equation. In this case the solution of equation (17) is

$$u = c_1 \cos \omega_0 t + c_2 \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{F_0}{2m\omega_0} t \sin(\omega_0 t). \tag{24}$$

Consider the following example.

EXAMPLE 4

Solve the initial value problem

$$u'' + u = \frac{1}{2}\cos t, \quad u(0) = 0, \quad u'(0) = 0, \tag{25}$$

and plot the graph of the solution.

Solution:

The general solution of the differential equation is

$$u = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t + \frac{t}{4}\sin t,$$

and the initial conditions require that $c_1 = c_2 = 0$. Thus the solution of the given initial value problem is

$$u = \frac{t}{4}\sin t. \tag{26}$$

The graph of the solution is shown in Figure 3.8.8.

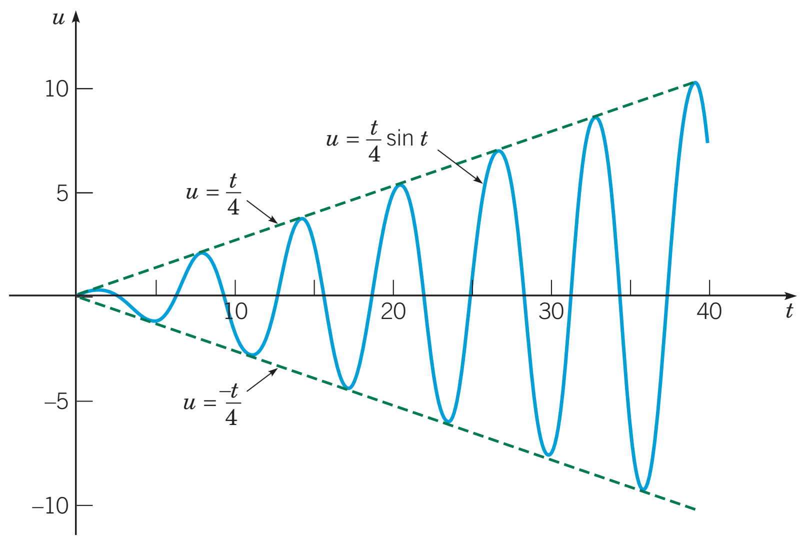


FIGURE 3.8.8 Resonance; the solution (solid blue) of equation (25): $u'' + u = \frac{1}{2}\cos t$, $u(0) = 0$, $u'(0) = 0$ is $u = \frac{t}{4}\sin t$.

Because of the term $t\sin(\omega_0 t)$, the solution (24) predicts that the motion will become unbounded as $t \to \infty$ regardless of the values of c_1 and c_2, and Figure 3.8.8 bears this out. Of course, in reality, unbounded oscillations do not occur, because the spring cannot stretch infinitely far. Moreover, as soon as u becomes large, the mathematical model on which equation (17) is based is no longer valid, since the assumption that the spring force depends linearly on the displacement requires that u be small. As we have seen, if damping is included in the model, the predicted motion remains bounded; however, the response to the input function $F_0\cos(\omega t)$ may be quite large if the damping is small and ω is close to ω_0.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, write the given expression as a product of two trigonometric functions of different frequencies.

1. $\sin(7t) - \sin(6t)$

2. $\cos(\pi t) + \cos(2\pi t)$

3. $\sin(3t) + \sin(4t)$

4. A mass of 5 kg stretches a spring 10 cm. The mass is acted on by an external force of $10\sin(t/2)$ N (newtons) and moves in a medium that imparts a viscous force of 2 N when the speed of the mass is 4 cm/s. If the mass is set in motion from its equilibrium position with an initial velocity of 3 cm/s, formulate the initial value problem describing the motion of the mass.

5. **a.** Find the solution of the initial value problem in Problem 4.

b. Identify the transient and steady-state parts of the solution.

G **c.** Plot the graph of the steady-state solution.

N **d.** If the given external force is replaced by a force of $2\cos(\omega t)$ of frequency ω, find the value of ω for which the amplitude of the forced response is maximum.

N **6.** A mass that weighs 8 lb stretches a spring 6 in. The system is acted on by an external force of $8\sin(8t)$ lb. If the mass is pulled down 3 in and then released, determine the position of the mass at any time. Determine the first four times at which the velocity of the mass is zero.

7. A spring is stretched 6 in by a mass that weighs 8 lb. The mass is attached to a dashpot mechanism that has a damping constant of $\frac{1}{4}$ lb·s/ft and is acted on by an external force of $4\cos(2t)$ lb.

a. Determine the steady-state response of this system.

b. If the given mass is replaced by a mass m, determine the value of m for which the amplitude of the steady-state response is maximum.

8. A spring-mass system has a spring constant of 3 N/m. A mass of 2 kg is attached to the spring, and the motion takes place in a viscous fluid that offers a resistance numerically equal to the magnitude of the instantaneous velocity. If the system is driven by an external force of $(3\cos(3t) - 2\sin(3t))$ N, determine the steady-state response. Express your answer in the form $R\cos(\omega t - \delta)$.

9. In this problem we ask you to supply some of the details in the analysis of a forced damped oscillator.

a. Derive equations (10), (11), and (12) for the steady-state solution of equation (8).
b. Derive the expression in equation (13) for Rk/F_0.
c. Show that $\omega^2_{\max}$ and $R_{\max}$ are given by equations (14) and (15), respectively.
d. Verify that Rk/F_0, ω/ω_0, and $\Gamma = \gamma^2/(mk)$ are all dimensionless quantities.

10. Find the velocity of the steady-state response given by equation (10). Then show that the velocity is maximum when $\omega = \omega_0$.

11. Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$u'' + u = F(t), \quad u(0) = 0, \quad u'(0) = 0,$$

where

$$F(t) = \begin{cases} F_0 t, & 0 \le t \le \pi, \\ F_0(2\pi - t), & \pi < t \le 2\pi, \\ 0, & 2\pi < t. \end{cases}$$

Hint: Treat each time interval separately, and match the solutions in the different intervals by requiring u and u' to be continuous functions of t.

N **12.** A series circuit has a capacitor of 0.25×10^{-6} F, a resistor of $5 \times 10^3\ \Omega$, and an inductor of 1 H. The initial charge on the capacitor is zero. If a 12 V battery is connected to the circuit and the circuit is closed at $t = 0$, determine the charge on the capacitor at $t = 0.001$ s, at $t = 0.01$ s, and at any time t. Also determine the limiting charge as $t \to \infty$.

N **13.** Consider the forced but undamped system described by the initial value problem

$$u'' + u = 3\cos(\omega t), \quad u(0) = 0, \quad u'(0) = 0.$$

a. Find the solution $u(t)$ for $\omega \ne 1$.
G **b.** Plot the solution $u(t)$ versus t for $\omega = 0.7$, $\omega = 0.8$, and $\omega = 0.9$. Describe how the response $u(t)$ changes as ω varies in this interval. What happens as ω takes on values closer and closer to 1? Note that the natural frequency of the unforced system is $\omega_0 = 1$.

14. Consider the vibrating system described by the initial value problem

$$u'' + u = 3\cos(\omega t), \quad u(0) = 1, \quad u'(0) = 1.$$

a. Find the solution for $\omega \ne 1$.
G **b.** Plot the solution $u(t)$ versus t for $\omega = 0.7$, $\omega = 0.8$, and $\omega = 0.9$. Compare the results with those of Problem 13; that is, describe the effect of the nonzero initial conditions.

G **15.** For the initial value problem in Problem 13, plot u' versus u for $\omega = 0.7$, $\omega = 0.8$, and $\omega = 0.9$. (Recall that such a plot is called a phase plot.) Use a t interval that is long enough so that the phase plot appears as a closed curve. Mark your curve with arrows to show the direction in which it is traversed as t increases.

Problems 16 through 18 deal with the initial value problem

$$u'' + \frac{1}{8}u' + 4u = F(t), \quad u(0) = 2, \quad u'(0) = 0.$$

In each of these problems:

G **a.** Plot the given forcing function $F(t)$ versus t, and also plot the solution $u(t)$ versus t on the same set of axes. Use a t interval that is long enough so the initial transients are substantially eliminated. Observe the relation between the amplitude and phase of the forcing term and the amplitude and phase of the response. Note that $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m} = 2$.
G **b.** Draw the phase plot of the solution; that is, plot u' versus u.

16. $F(t) = 3\cos(t/4)$

17. $F(t) = 3\cos(2t)$

18. $F(t) = 3\cos(6t)$

G **19.** A spring-mass system with a hardening spring (Problem 24 of Section 3.7) is acted on by a periodic external force. In the absence of damping, suppose that the displacement of the mass satisfies the initial value problem

$$u'' + u + \frac{1}{5}u^3 = \cos\omega t, \quad u(0) = 0, \quad u'(0) = 0.$$

a. Let $\omega = 1$ and plot a computer-generated solution of the given problem. Does the system exhibit a beat?
b. Plot the solution for several values of ω between 1/2 and 2. Describe how the solution changes as ω increases.

References

Coddington, E. A., *An Introduction to Ordinary Differential Equations* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1961; New York: Dover, 1989).

There are many books on mechanical vibrations and electric circuits. One that deals with both is

Close, C. M., and Frederick, D. K., *Modeling and Analysis of Dynamic Systems* (3rd ed.) (New York: Wiley, 2001).

A classic book on mechanical vibrations is

Den Hartog, J. P., *Mechanical Vibrations* (4th ed.) (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1956; New York: Dover, 1985).

An intermediate-level book is

Thomson, W. T., *Theory of Vibrations with Applications* (5th ed.) (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1997).

An elementary book on electric circuits is

Bobrow, L. S., *Elementary Linear Circuit Analysis* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1996).

CHAPTER **4**

Higher-Order Linear Differential Equations

The theoretical structure and methods of solution developed in the preceding chapter for second-order linear equations extend directly to linear equations of third and higher order. In this chapter we briefly review this generalization, taking particular note of those instances where new phenomena may appear, because of the greater variety of situations that can occur for equations of higher order.

4.1 General Theory of n^{th} Order Linear Differential Equations

An n^{th} order linear differential equation is an equation of the form

$$P_0(t)\frac{d^n y}{dt^n} + P_1(t)\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dt^{n-1}} + \cdots + P_{n-1}(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + P_n(t)y = G(t). \tag{1}$$

We assume that the functions $P_0, \ldots, P_n$, and G are continuous real-valued functions on some interval I: $\alpha < t < \beta$, and that P_0 is nowhere zero in this interval. Then, dividing equation (1) by $P_0(t)$, we obtain

$$L[y] = \frac{d^n y}{dt^n} + p_1(t)\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dt^{n-1}} + \cdots + p_{n-1}(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + p_n(t)y = g(t). \tag{2}$$

The linear differential operator L of order n defined by equation (2) is similar to the second-order operator introduced in Chapter 3. The mathematical theory associated with equation (2) is completely analogous to that for the second-order linear equation; for this reason we simply state the results for the n^{th} order problem. The proofs of most of the results are also similar to those for the second-order equation and are usually left as exercises.

Since equation (2) involves the n^{th} derivative of y with respect to t, it will, so to speak, require n integrations to solve equation (2). Each of these integrations introduces an arbitrary constant. Hence we expect that to obtain a unique solution it is necessary to specify n initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0', \ \ldots, \ y^{(n-1)}(t_0) = y_0^{(n-1)}, \tag{3}$$

where t_0 may be any point in the interval I and $y_0, y_0', \ldots, y_0^{(n-1)}$ are any prescribed real constants. The following theorem, which is similar to Theorem 3.2.1, guarantees that the initial value problem (2), (3) has a solution and that it is unique.

Theorem 4.1.1

If the functions $p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_n$, and g are continuous on the open interval I, then there exists exactly one solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the differential equation (2) that also satisfies the initial conditions (3), where t_0 is any point in I. This solution exists throughout the interval I.

We will not give a proof of this theorem here. However, if the coefficients $p_1, \ldots, p_n$ are constants, then we can construct the solution of the initial value problem (2), (3) much as in Chapter 3; see Sections 4.2 through 4.4. Even though we may find a solution in this case, we do not know that it is unique without the use of Theorem 4.1.1. A proof of the theorem can be found in Ince (Section 3.32) or Coddington (Chapter 6).

The Homogeneous Equation. As in the corresponding second-order problem, we first discuss the homogeneous equation

$$L[y] = y^{(n)} + p_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + p_{n-1}(t)y' + p_n(t)y = 0. \tag{4}$$

If the functions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ are solutions of the differential equation (4), then it follows by direct computation that the linear combination

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) + \cdots + c_ny_n(t), \tag{5}$$

where $c_1, \ldots, c_n$ are arbitrary constants, is also a solution of equation (4). It is then natural to ask whether every solution of equation (4) can be expressed as a linear combination of $y_1, \ldots, y_n$. This will be true if, regardless of the initial conditions (3) that are prescribed, it is possible to choose the constants $c_1, \ldots, c_n$ so that the linear combination (5) satisfies the initial conditions. That is, for any choice of the point t_0 in I, and for any choice of $y_0, y_0', \ldots, y_0^{(n-1)}$, we must be able to determine $c_1, \ldots, c_n$ so that the equations

$$\begin{aligned} c_1y_1(t_0) + \cdots + c_ny_n(t_0) &= y_0 \\ c_1y_1'(t_0) + \cdots + c_ny_n'(t_0) &= y_0' \\ &\ \vdots \\ c_1y_1^{(n-1)}(t_0) + \cdots + c_ny_n^{(n-1)}(t_0) &= y_0^{(n-1)} \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

are satisfied. The system (6) of n linear algebraic equations can be solved uniquely for the n constants $c_1, \ldots, c_n$, provided that the determinant of the coefficient matrix is not zero. On the other hand, if the determinant of the coefficient matrix is zero, then it is always possible to choose values of $y_0, y_0', \ldots, y_0^{(n-1)}$ so that equations (6) do not have a solution. Therefore a necessary and sufficient condition for the existence of a solution of equations (6) for arbitrary values of $y_0, y_0', \ldots, y_0^{(n-1)}$ is that the Wronskian

$$W[y_1, \ldots, y_n] = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_n \\ y_1' & y_2' & \cdots & y_n' \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ y_1^{(n-1)} & y_2^{(n-1)} & \cdots & y_n^{(n-1)} \end{vmatrix} \tag{7}$$

is not zero at $t = t_0$. Since t_0 can be any point in the interval I, it is necessary and sufficient that $W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]$ be nonzero at every point in the interval. Just as for the second-order linear equation, it can be shown that if $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ are solutions of equation (4), then $W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]$ either is zero for every t in the interval I or else is never zero there; see Problem 15. Hence we have the following theorem.

Theorem 4.1.2

If the functions $p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_n$ are continuous on the open interval I, if the functions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ are solutions of equation (4), and if $W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n](t) \neq 0$ for at least one point in I, then every solution of equation (4) can be expressed as a linear combination of the solutions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$.

Solutions $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ of equation (4) whose Wronskian is nonzero are said to form a **fundamental set of solutions**. The existence of a fundamental set of solutions can be demonstrated in the same way as for the second-order linear equation (see Theorem 3.2.5).

Since all solutions of the homogeneous n^{th} order linear differential equation (4) are of the form (5), we use the term **general solution** to refer to an arbitrary linear combination of any fundamental set of solutions of equation (4).

Linear Dependence and Independence. We now explore the relationship between fundamental sets of solutions and the concept of linear independence, a central idea in the study of linear algebra. The functions $f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n$ are said to be **linearly dependent** on an interval I if there exists a set of constants $k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_n$, not all zero, such that

$$k_1 f_1(t) + k_2 f_2(t) + \cdots + k_n f_n(t) = 0 \tag{8}$$

for all t in I. The functions $f_1, \ldots, f_n$ are said to be **linearly independent** on I if they are not linearly dependent there.

EXAMPLE 1

Determine whether the functions $f_1(t) = 1$, $f_2(t) = t$, and $f_3(t) = t^2$ are linearly independent or dependent on the interval $I: -\infty < t < \infty$.

Solution:

Form the linear combination

$$k_1 f_1(t) + k_2 f_2(t) + k_3 f_3(t) = k_1 + k_2 t + k_3 t^2,$$

and set it equal to zero to obtain

$$k_1 + k_2 t + k_3 t^2 = 0. \tag{9}$$

If equation (9) is to hold for all t in I, then it must certainly be true at any three distinct points in I. Any three points will serve our purpose, but it is convenient to choose $t = 0$, $t = 1$, and $t = -1$. Evaluating equation (9) at each of these points, we obtain the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 \qquad\qquad &= 0, \\ k_1 + k_2 + k_3 &= 0, \\ k_1 - k_2 + k_3 &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

From the first of equations (10) we note that $k_1 = 0$; then from the other two equations it follows that $k_2 = k_3 = 0$ as well. Therefore, there is no set of constants k_1, k_2, k_3, not all zero, for which equation (9) holds even at the three chosen points, much less throughout I. Thus the given functions are not linearly dependent on I, so they must be linearly independent. Indeed, they are linearly independent on any interval. This can be established just as in this example, possibly using a different set of three points.

EXAMPLE 2

Determine whether the functions

$$f_1(t) = 1, \quad f_2(t) = 2 + t, \quad f_3(t) = 3 - t^2, \quad \text{and} \quad f_4(t) = 4t + t^2$$

are linearly independent or dependent on any interval I.

Solution:

Form the linear combination

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 f_1(t) + k_2 f_2(t) + k_3 f_3(t) + k_4 f_4(t) &= k_1 + k_2(2 + t) + k_3(3 - t^2) + k_4(4t + t^2) \\ &= (k_1 + 2k_2 + 3k_3) + (k_2 + 4k_4)t + (-k_3 + k_4)t^2. \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

For this expression to be zero throughout an interval, it is certainly sufficient to require that

$$k_1 + 2k_2 + 3k_3 = 0, \quad k_2 + 4k_4 = 0, \quad -k_3 + k_4 = 0.$$

These three equations, with four unknowns, have many solutions. For instance, if $k_4 = 1$, then $k_3 = 1$, $k_2 = -4$, and $k_1 = 5$. If we use these values for the coefficients in equation (11), then these functions satisfy the linear relation

$$5f_1(t) - 4f_2(t) + f_3(t) + f_4(t) = 0$$

for each value of t. Thus the given functions are linearly dependent on every interval.

The concept of linear independence provides an alternative characterization of fundamental sets of solutions of the homogeneous equation (4). Suppose that the functions $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ are solutions of equation (4) on an interval I, and consider the equation

$$k_1 y_1(t) + \cdots + k_n y_n(t) = 0. \tag{12}$$

By differentiating equation (12) repeatedly, we obtain the additional $n-1$ equations

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 y_1'(t) + \cdots + k_n y_n'(t) &= 0, \\ &\vdots \\ k_1 y_1^{(n-1)}(t) + \cdots + k_n y_n^{(n-1)}(t) &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

The system consisting of equations (12) and (13) is a system of n linear algebraic equations for the n unknowns $k_1, \ldots, k_n$. The determinant of coefficients for this system is the Wronskian $W[y_1, \ldots, y_n](t)$ of $y_1, \ldots, y_n$. This leads to the following theorem.

Theorem 4.1.3

If $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous n^{th} order linear differential equation (4)

$$L[y] = y^{(n)} + p_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + p_{n-1}(t)y' + p_n(t)y = 0$$

on an interval I, then $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$ are linearly independent on I. Conversely, if $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$ are linearly independent solutions of equation (4) on I, then they form a fundamental set of solutions on I.

To prove this theorem, first suppose that $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous differential equation (4) on I. Then the Wronskian $W[y_1, \ldots, y_n](t) \neq 0$ for every t in I. Hence the system (12), (13) has only the solution $k_1 = \cdots = k_n = 0$ for every t in I. Thus $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$ cannot be linearly dependent on I and must therefore be linearly independent there.

To demonstrate the converse, let $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$ be linearly independent on I. To show that they form a fundamental set of solutions, we need to show that their Wronskian is never zero in I. Suppose that this is not true; then there is at least one point t_0 where the Wronskian is zero. At this point the system (12), (13) has a nonzero solution; let us denote it by $k_1^*, \ldots, k_n^*$. Now form the linear combination

$$\phi(t) = k_1^* y_1(t) + \cdots + k_n^* y_n(t). \tag{14}$$

Then $y = \phi(t)$ satisfies the initial value problem

$$L[y] = 0, \quad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0, \ldots, y^{(n-1)}(t_0) = 0. \tag{15}$$

The function ϕ satisfies the differential equation because it is a linear combination of solutions; it satisfies the initial conditions because these are just the equations in the system (12), (13) evaluated at t_0. However, the function $y(t) = 0$ for all t in I is also a solution of this initial value problem, and by Theorem 4.1.1, the solution to the initial value problem (15) is unique. Thus $\phi(t) = 0$ for all t in I. Consequently, $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$ are linearly dependent on I, which is a contradiction. Hence the assumption that there is a point where the Wronskian is zero is untenable. Therefore, the Wronskian is never zero on I, as was to be proved.

Note that for a set of functions $f_1, \ldots, f_n$ that are not solutions of the homogeneous linear differential equation (4), the converse part of Theorem 4.1.3 is not necessarily true. They may be linearly independent on I even though the Wronskian is zero at some points, or even every point, but with different sets of constants $k_1, \ldots, k_n$ at different points. See Problem 18 for an example.

The Nonhomogeneous Equation. Now consider the nonhomogeneous equation (2)

$$L[y] = y^{(n)} + p_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + p_n(t)y = g(t).$$

If Y_1 and Y_2 are any two solutions of equation (2), then it follows immediately from the linearity of the operator L that

$$L[Y_1 - Y_2](t) = L[Y_1](t) - L[Y_2](t) = g(t) - g(t) = 0.$$

Hence the difference of any two solutions of the nonhomogeneous equation (2) is a solution of the homogeneous differential equation (4). Since any solution of the homogeneous equation can be expressed as a linear combination of a fundamental set of solutions $y_1, \ldots, y_n$, it follows that any solution of the nonhomogeneous differential equation (2) can be written as

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) + \cdots + c_ny_n(t) + Y(t), \tag{16}$$

where Y is some particular solution of the nonhomogeneous differential equation (2). The linear combination (16) is called the **general solution** of the nonhomogeneous equation (2).

Thus the primary problem is to determine a fundamental set of solutions $\{y_1, \ldots, y_n\}$ of the homogeneous n^{th} order linear differential equation (4). If the coefficients are constants, this is a fairly simple problem; it is discussed in the next section. If the coefficients are not constants, it is usually necessary to use numerical methods such as those in Chapter 8 or series methods similar to those in Chapter 5. These tend to become more cumbersome as the order of the equation increases.

To find a particular solution $Y(t)$ in equation (16), the methods of undetermined coefficients and variation of parameters are again available. They are discussed and illustrated in Sections 4.3 and 4.4, respectively.

The method of reduction of order (Section 3.4) also applies to n^{th} order linear differential equations. If y_1 is one solution of equation (4), then the substitution $y = v(t)y_1(t)$ leads to a linear differential equation of order $n-1$ for v' (see Problem 19 for the case when $n = 3$). However, if $n \geq 3$, the reduced equation is itself at least of second order, and only rarely will it be significantly simpler than the original equation. Thus, in practice, reduction of order is seldom useful for equations of higher than second order.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, determine intervals in which solutions are sure to exist.

1. $y^{(4)} + 4y''' + 3y = t$

2. $t(t-1)y^{(4)} + e^t y'' + 4t^2 y = 0$

3. $(x-1)y^{(4)} + (x+1)y'' + (\tan x)y = 0$

4. $(x^2-4)y^{(6)} + x^2y''' + 9y = 0$

In each of Problems 5 through 7, determine whether the given functions are linearly dependent or linearly independent. If they are linearly dependent, find a linear relation among them.

5. $f_1(t) = 2t-3,\ f_2(t) = t^2+1,\ f_3(t) = 2t^2 - t$

6. $f_1(t) = 2t-3,\ f_2(t) = 2t^2+1,\ f_3(t) = 3t^2 + t$

7. $f_1(t) = 2t-3,\ f_2(t) = t^2+1,\ f_3(t) = 2t^2 - t,$ $f_4(t) = t^2 + t + 1$

In each of Problems 8 through 11, verify that the given functions are solutions of the differential equation, and determine their Wronskian.

8. $y^{(4)} + y'' = 0;\quad 1,\ t,\ \cos t,\ \sin t$

9. $y''' + 2y'' - y' - 2y = 0;\quad e^t,\ e^{-t},\ e^{-2t}$

10. $xy''' - y'' = 0;\quad 1,\ x,\ x^3$

11. $x^3y''' + x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 0;\quad x,\ x^2,\ 1/x$

12. **a.** Show that $W[5, \sin^2 t, \cos(2t)] = 0$ for all t by directly evaluating the Wrosnkian.
b. Establish the same result without direct evaluation of the Wronskian.

13. Verify that the differential operator defined by

$$L[y] = y^{(n)} + p_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + p_n(t)y$$

is a linear differential operator. That is, show that

$$L[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2] = c_1L[y_1] + c_2L[y_2],$$

where y_1 and y_2 are n-times-differentiable functions and c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. Hence, show that if $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ are solutions of $L[y] = 0$, then the linear combination $c_1y_1 + \cdots + c_ny_n$ is also a solution of $L[y] = 0$.

14. Let the linear differential operator L be defined by

$$L[y] = a_0y^{(n)} + a_1y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_ny,$$

where $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n$ are real constants.

a. Find $L[t^n]$.
b. Find $L[e^{rt}]$.
c. Determine four solutions of the equation $y^{(4)} - 5y'' + 4y = 0$. Do you think the four solutions form a fundamental set of solutions? Why?

15. In this problem we show how to generalize Theorem 3.2.7 (Abel's theorem) to higher-order equations. We first outline the procedure for the third-order equation

$$y''' + p_1(t)y'' + p_2(t)y' + p_3(t)y = 0.$$

Let y_1, y_2, and y_3 be solutions of this equation on an interval I.

a. If $W = W[y_1, y_2, y_3]$, show that

$$W' = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \\ y_1' & y_2' & y_3' \\ y_1''' & y_2''' & y_3''' \end{vmatrix}.$$

Hint: The derivative of a 3-by-3 determinant is the sum of three 3-by-3 determinants obtained by differentiating the first, second, and third rows, respectively.

b. Substitute for y_1''', y_2''', and y_3''' from the differential equation; multiply the first row by p_3, multiply the second row by p_2, and add these to the last row to obtain

$$W' = -p_1(t)W.$$

c. Show that

$$W[y_1, y_2, y_3](t) = c\exp\left(-\int p_1(t)dt\right).$$

It follows that W is either always zero or nowhere zero on I.

d. Generalize this argument to the n^{th} order equation

$$y^{(n)} + p_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + p_n(t)y = 0$$

with solutions $y_1, \ldots, y_n$. That is, establish **Abel's formula**

$$W[y_1, \ldots, y_n](t) = c\exp\left(-\int p_1(t)dt\right) \qquad (17)$$

for this case.

In each of Problems 16 and 17, use Abel's formula (17) to find the Wronskian of a fundamental set of solutions of the given differential equation.

16. $y''' + 2y'' - y' - 3y = 0$

17. $ty''' + 2y'' - y' + ty = 0$

18. Let $f(t) = t^2|t|$ and $g(t) = t^3$.

a. Show that the functions $f(t)$ and $g(t)$ are linearly dependent on $0 < t < 1$.
b. Show that $f(t)$ and $g(t)$ are linearly dependent on $-1 < t < 0$.
c. Show that $f(t)$ and $g(t)$ are linearly independent on $-1 < t < 1$.
d. Show that $W[f, g](t)$ is zero for all t in $-1 < t < 1$.
e. Explain why the results in c and d do not contradict Theorem 4.1.3.

19. Show that if y_1 is a solution of

$$y''' + p_1(t)y'' + p_2(t)y' + p_3(t)y = 0,$$

then the substitution $y = y_1(t)v(t)$ leads to the following second-order equation for v':

$$y_1v''' + (3y_1' + p_1y_1)v'' + (3y_1'' + 2p_1y_1' + p_2y_1)v' = 0.$$

In each of Problems 20 and 21, use the method of reduction of order (Problem 19) to solve the given differential equation.

20. $(2-t)y''' + (2t-3)y'' - ty' + y = 0, \quad t < 2; \quad y_1(t) = e^t$

21. $t^2(t+3)y''' - 3t(t+2)y'' + 6(1+t)y' - 6y = 0, \quad t > 0;$ $y_1(t) = t^2, \quad y_2(t) = t^3$

4.2 Homogeneous Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

Consider the n^{th} order linear homogeneous differential equation

$$L[y] = a_0y^{(n)} + a_1y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_{n-1}y' + a_ny = 0, \qquad (1)$$

where $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n$ are real constants and $a_0 \neq 0$. From our knowledge of second-order linear equations with constant coefficients, it is natural to anticipate that $y = e^{rt}$ is a solution of equation (1) for suitable values of r. Indeed,

$$L[e^{rt}] = e^{rt}(a_0r^n + a_1r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1}r + a_n) = e^{rt}Z(r) \qquad (2)$$

for all r, where

$$Z(r) = a_0 r^n + a_1 r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} r + a_n. \tag{3}$$

For those values of r for which $Z(r) = 0$, it follows that $L[e^{rt}] = 0$ and $y = e^{rt}$ is a solution of equation (1). The polynomial $Z(r)$ is called the **characteristic polynomial**, and the equation $Z(r) = 0$ is the **characteristic equation** of the differential equation (1). Since $a_0 \neq 0$, we know that $Z(r)$ is a polynomial of degree n and therefore has n zeros,[1] say, $r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_n$, some of which may be equal and some of which may be complex-valued. Hence we can write the characteristic polynomial in the form

$$Z(r) = a_0(r - r_1)(r - r_2)\cdots(r - r_n). \tag{4}$$

Real and Unequal Roots. If the roots of the characteristic equation are real and no two are equal, then we have n distinct solutions $e^{r_1 t}, e^{r_2 t}, \ldots, e^{r_n t}$ of equation (1). If these functions are linearly independent, then the general solution of the homogeneous n^{th} order linear differential equation (1) is

$$y = c_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 e^{r_2 t} + \cdots + c_n e^{r_n t}. \tag{5}$$

One way to establish the linear independence of $e^{r_1 t}, e^{r_2 t}, \ldots, e^{r_n t}$ is to evaluate their Wronskian determinant; another way is outlined in Problem 30.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} + y''' - 7y'' - y' + 6y = 0. \tag{6}$$

Also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = -2, \quad y'''(0) = -1. \tag{7}$$

Plot its graph and determine the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

Solution:

Assuming that $y = e^{rt}$, we must determine r by solving the polynomial equation

$$r^4 + r^3 - 7r^2 - r + 6 = 0. \tag{8}$$

The roots of this equation are $r_1 = 1$, $r_2 = -1$, $r_3 = 2$, and $r_4 = -3$. Therefore, the general solution of differential equation (6) is

$$y = c_1 e^t + c_2 e^{-t} + c_3 e^{2t} + c_4 e^{-3t}. \tag{9}$$

The initial conditions (7) require that $c_1, \ldots, c_4$ satisfy the four equations

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + c_4 &= 1, \\ c_1 - c_2 + 2c_3 - 3c_4 &= 0, \\ c_1 + c_2 + 4c_3 + 9c_4 &= -2, \\ c_1 - c_2 + 8c_3 - 27c_4 &= -1. \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

[1] An important question in mathematics for more than 200 years was whether every polynomial equation has at least one root. The affirmative answer to this question, the fundamental theorem of algebra, was given by Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855) in his doctoral dissertation in 1799, although his proof does not meet modern standards of rigor. Several other proofs have been discovered since, including three by Gauss himself. Today, students often meet the fundamental theorem of algebra in a first course on complex variables, where it can be established as a consequence of some of the basic properties of complex analytic functions.

By solving this system of four linear algebraic equations, we find that

$$c_1 = \frac{11}{8}, \quad c_2 = \frac{5}{12}, \quad c_3 = -\frac{2}{3}, \quad c_4 = -\frac{1}{8}.$$

Thus the solution of the initial value problem is

$$y = \frac{11}{8}e^{t} + \frac{5}{12}e^{-t} - \frac{2}{3}e^{2t} - \frac{1}{8}e^{-3t}. \tag{11}$$

The graph of the solution is shown in Figure 4.2.1. Observe that the dominant term, as $t \to \infty$, in the solution is $\frac{2}{3}e^{2t}$. As a result, we conclude that the solution approaches $-\infty$ as $t \to \infty$.

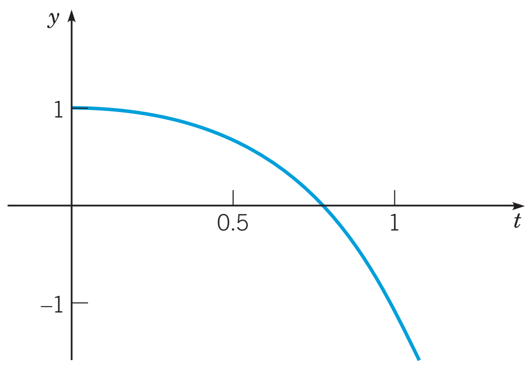


FIGURE 4.2.1 Solution of the initial value problem (6), (7): $y^{(4)} + y''' - 7y'' - y' + 6y = 0$, $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = 0$, $y''(0) = -2$, $y'''(0) = -1$.

As Example 1 illustrates, the procedure for solving an n^{th} order linear differential equation with constant coefficients depends on finding the roots of a corresponding n^{th} degree polynomial equation. If initial conditions are prescribed, then a system of n linear algebraic equations must be solved to determine the proper values of the constants $c_1, \ldots, c_n$. Each of these tasks becomes much more complicated as n increases, and we have omitted the detailed calculations in Example 1. Computer assistance can be very helpful in such problems.

For third and fourth degree polynomials there are formulas,[2] analogous to the formula for quadratic equations but more complicated, that give exact expressions for the roots. Root-finding algorithms are readily available on calculators and computers. Sometimes they are included in the differential equation solver, so that the process of factoring the characteristic polynomial is hidden and the solution of the differential equation is produced automatically.

If you are faced with the need to factor the characteristic polynomial by hand, here is one result that is sometimes helpful. Suppose that the polynomial

$$a_0 r^n + a_1 r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} r + a_n = 0 \tag{12}$$

has integer coefficients. If $r = p/q$ is a rational root, where p and q have no common factors, then p must be a factor of a_n, and q must be a factor of a_0. For example, in equation (8) the factors of a_0 are ± 1 and the factors of a_n are $\pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3$, and ± 6. Thus the only possible rational roots of this equation are $\pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3$, and ± 6. By testing these possible roots, we find that $1, -1, 2$, and -3 are actual roots. In this case there are no other roots, since the polynomial

[2] The method for solving the cubic equation was apparently discovered by Scipione dal Ferro (1465–1526) about 1500, although it was first published in 1545 by Girolamo Cardano (1501–1576) in his *Ars Magna*. This book also contains a method for solving quartic equations that Cardano attributes to his pupil Ludovico Ferrari (1522–1565). The question of whether analogous formulas exist for the roots of higher degree equations remained open for more than two centuries, until 1826, when Niels Abel showed that no general solution formulas can exist for polynomial equations of degree five or higher. A more general theory was developed by Evariste Galois (1811–1832) in 1831, but unfortunately it did not become widely known for several decades.

is of fourth degree. If some of the roots are irrational or complex, as is usually the case, then this process will not find them, but at least the degree of the polynomial can be reduced by dividing the polynomial by the factors corresponding to the rational roots.

If the roots of the characteristic equation are real and different, we have seen that the general solution (5) is simply a sum of exponential functions. For large values of t the solution is dominated by the term corresponding to the algebraically largest root. If this root is positive, then solutions become exponentially unbounded, approaching $+\infty$ or $-\infty$ depending on the sign of the coefficient of the dominant term in the solution. If the largest root is negative, then solutions tend exponentially to zero. Finally, if this root is zero, then solutions approach a nonzero constant as t becomes large. Of course, for certain initial conditions, the coefficient of the otherwise dominant term may be zero; then the nature of the solution for large t is determined by the next largest root.

Complex Roots. Since the coefficients $a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are real numbers, if the characteristic equation has complex roots, they must occur in conjugate pairs, $\lambda \pm i\mu$. That is, when $r = \lambda + i\mu$ is a root of the characteristic equation, so is $\bar{r} = \lambda - i\mu$. Provided that none of the roots is repeated, equation (5) still gives the form of the general solution of equation (1). However, just as for the second-order differential equation (Section 3.3), we can replace the complex-valued solutions $e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$ and $e^{(\lambda-i\mu)t}$ by the real-valued solutions

$$e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t), \qquad e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t) \tag{13}$$

obtained as the real and imaginary parts of $e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$. Thus, even though some of the roots of the characteristic equation are complex, it is still possible to express the general solution of equation (1) as a linear combination of real-valued solutions.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} - y = 0. \tag{14}$$

Also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = \frac{7}{2}, \quad y'(0) = -4, \quad y''(0) = \frac{5}{2}, \quad y'''(0) = -2 \tag{15}$$

and draw its graph.

Solution:

Substituting e^{rt} for y, we find that the characteristic equation is

$$r^4 - 1 = (r^2 - 1)(r^2 + 1) = 0.$$

Therefore, the roots are $r = 1, -1, i$, and $-i$, and the general solution of equation (14) is

$$y = c_1 e^t + c_2 e^{-t} + c_3 \cos t + c_4 \sin t.$$

If we impose the initial conditions (15), we obtain (see Problem 26a)

$$c_1 = 0, \quad c_2 = 3, \quad c_3 = \frac{1}{2}, \quad c_4 = -1;$$

thus the solution of the given initial value problem is

$$y = 3e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}\cos t - \sin t. \tag{16}$$

The graph of this solution is shown in Figure 4.2.2.

Observe that the initial conditions (15) cause the coefficient c_1 of the exponentially growing term in the general solution to be zero. Therefore, this term is absent in the solution (16), which describes an exponential decay to a steady oscillation, as Figure 4.2.2 shows. However, if the initial conditions are changed slightly, then c_1 is likely to be nonzero, and the nature of the solution changes enormously. For example, if the first three initial conditions remain the same, but the value of $y'''(0)$

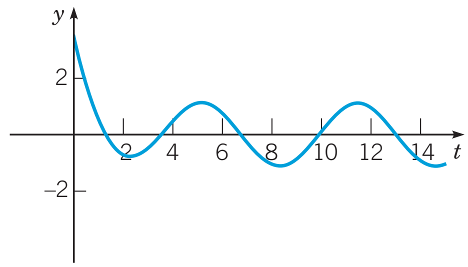


FIGURE 4.2.2 Solution of the initial value problem (14), (15): $y^{(4)} - y = 0$, $y(0) = \frac{7}{2}$, $y'(0) = -4$, $y''(0) = \frac{5}{2}$, $y'''(0) = -2$.

is changed from -2 to $-\frac{15}{8}$, then the solution of the initial value problem becomes (see Problem 26b)

$$y = \frac{1}{32}e^t + \frac{95}{32}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}\cos t - \frac{17}{16}\sin t. \tag{17}$$

The coefficients in the solution (17) differ only slightly from those in the solution (16), but the exponentially growing term, even with the relatively small coefficient of $\frac{1}{32}$, completely dominates the solution by the time t is larger than about 4 or 5. This is clearly seen in Figure 4.2.3, which shows the graphs of the two solutions (16) and (17).

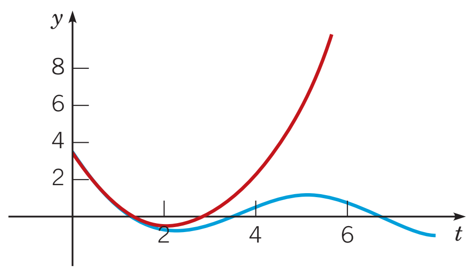


FIGURE 4.2.3 Two solutions of the homogeneous differential equation (14). The blue curve satsifies the initial conditions (15); the red curve satisfies the modified problem in which the last initial condition is changed to $y'''(0) = -15/8$.

Repeated Roots. If the roots of the characteristic equation are not distinct—that is, if some of the roots are repeated—then the solution (5) is clearly not the general solution of equation (1). Recall that if r_1 is a repeated root for the second-order linear equation $a_0 y'' + a_1 y' + a_2 y = 0$, then two linearly independent solutions are $e^{r_1 t}$ and $te^{r_1 t}$. For an equation of order n, if a root of $Z(r) = 0$, say $r = r_1$, has multiplicity s (where $s \le n$), then

$$e^{r_1 t},\quad te^{r_1 t},\quad t^2 e^{r_1 t},\quad \dots,\ t^{s-1}e^{r_1 t} \tag{18}$$

are corresponding solutions of equation (1). See Problem 31 for a proof of this statement, which is valid whether the repeated root is real or complex.

Note that a complex root can be repeated only if the differential equation (1) is of order four or higher. If a complex root $\lambda + i\mu$ is repeated s times, the complex conjugate $\lambda - i\mu$ is also repeated s times. Corresponding to these $2s$ complex-valued solutions, we can find $2s$ real-valued solutions by noting that the real and imaginary parts of $e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$, $te^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$, ..., $t^{s-1}e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$ are also linearly independent solutions:

$$e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t),\quad e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t),\quad te^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t),\quad te^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t),\ \dots,$$
$$t^{s-1}e^{\lambda t}\cos(\mu t),\quad t^{s-1}e^{\lambda t}\sin(\mu t).$$

Hence the general solution of equation (1) can always be expressed as a linear combination of n real-valued solutions. Consider the following example.

EXAMPLE 3

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 0. \tag{19}$$

Solution:

The characteristic equation is

$$r^4 + 2r^2 + 1 = (r^2 + 1)(r^2 + 1) = 0.$$

Since $r^2 + 1 = (r - i)(r + i)$, it follows that the roots of the characteristic equation are $r_1 = i$ and $r_2 = -i$. Each of these roots has multiplicity 2. Thus the general solution of equation (19) is

$$y = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t + c_3 t \cos t + c_4 t \sin t.$$

In determining the roots of the characteristic equation, it may be necessary to compute the cube roots, the fourth roots, or even higher roots of a (possibly complex) number. This can usually be done most conveniently by using Euler's formula $e^{it} = \cos t + i \sin t$ and the algebraic laws given in Section 3.3. This is illustrated in the following example.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} + y = 0. \tag{20}$$

Solution:

The characteristic equation is

$$r^4 + 1 = 0.$$

To solve the equation, we must compute the fourth roots of -1. Now -1, thought of as a complex number, is $-1 + 0i$. It has magnitude 1 and polar angle π:

$$-1 = \cos \pi + i \sin \pi = e^{i\pi}.$$

Moreover, because $\sin(x)$ and $\cos(x)$ both have period 2π, the angle is determined only up to a multiple of 2π:

$$-1 = \cos(\pi + 2m\pi) + i \sin(\pi + 2m\pi) = e^{i(\pi+2m\pi)},$$

where m is zero or any positive or negative integer. Now, by the properties of exponents,

$$(-1)^{1/4} = \left(e^{i(\pi+2m\pi)}\right)^{1/4} = e^{i(\pi/4+m\pi/2)} = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{m\pi}{2}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{m\pi}{2}\right).$$

The four fourth roots of -1 are obtained by setting $m = 0$, 1, 2, and 3; they are

$$\frac{1+i}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad \frac{-1+i}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad \frac{-1-i}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad \frac{1-i}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

It is easy to verify that, for any other value of m, we obtain one of these four roots. For example, corresponding to $m = 4$, we obtain $(1+i)/\sqrt{2}$. The general solution of the homogeneous fourth-order linear differential equation (20) is

$$y = e^{t/\sqrt{2}}\left(c_1 \cos\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + c_2 \sin\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\right) + e^{-t/\sqrt{2}}\left(c_3 \cos\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + c_4 \sin\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\right). \tag{21}$$

In conclusion, we note that the problem of finding all the roots of a polynomial equation may not be entirely straightforward, even with computer assistance. In particular, it may be difficult to determine whether two roots are equal or merely very close together. Recall that the form of the general solution is different in these two cases.

If the constants $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n$ in equation (1) are complex numbers, the solution of equation (1) is still of the form (4). In this case, however, the roots of the characteristic equation are, in general, complex numbers, and it is no longer true that the complex conjugate of a root is also a root. The corresponding solutions are complex-valued.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, express the given complex number in polar form $R(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta) = Re^{i\theta}$.

1. $1 + i$

2. $-1 + \sqrt{3}i$

3. -3

4. $\sqrt{3} - i$

In each of Problems 5 through 7, follow the procedure in Example 4 to determine the indicated roots of the given complex number.

5. $1^{1/3}$

6. $(1 - i)^{1/2}$

7. $(2(\cos(\pi/3) + i\sin(\pi/3)))^{1/2}$

In each of Problems 8 through 19, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

8. $y''' - y'' - y' + y = 0$

9. $y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = 0$

10. $y^{(4)} - 4y''' + 4y'' = 0$

11. $y^{(6)} + y = 0$

12. $y^{(6)} - 3y^{(4)} + 3y'' - y = 0$

13. $y^{(6)} - y'' = 0$

14. $y^{(5)} - 3y^{(4)} + 3y''' - 3y'' + 2y' = 0$

15. $y^{(8)} + 8y^{(4)} + 16y = 0$

16. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 0$

17. $y''' + 5y'' + 6y' + 2y = 0$

N **18.** $y^{(4)} - 7y''' + 6y'' + 30y' - 36y = 0$

N **19.** $12y^{(4)} + 31y''' + 75y'' + 37y' + 5y = 0$

In each of Problems 20 through 25, find the solution of the given initial value problem, and plot its graph. How does the solution behave as $t \to \infty$?

G **20.** $y''' + y' = 0;\quad y(0) = 0,\ \ y'(0) = 1,\ \ y''(0) = 2$

G **21.** $y^{(4)} + y = 0;\quad y(0) = 0,\ \ y'(0) = 0,$ $y''(0) = -1,\ \ y'''(0) = 0$

G **22.** $y^{(4)} - 4y''' + 4y'' = 0;\quad y(1) = -1,\ \ y'(1) = 2,$ $y''(1) = 0,\ \ y'''(1) = 0$

G **23.** $2y^{(4)} - y''' - 9y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0;\quad y(0) = -2,$ $y'(0) = 0,\ \ y''(0) = -2,\ \ y'''(0) = 0$

G **24.** $4y''' + y' + 5y = 0;\quad y(0) = 2,\ \ y'(0) = 1,\ \ y''(0) = -1$

G **25.** $6y''' + 5y'' + y' = 0;\ \ y(0) = -2,\ \ y'(0) = 2,\ \ y''(0) = 0$

26. C **a.** Verify that $y(t) = 3e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}\cos t - \sin t$ is the solution to $y^{(4)} - y = 0,\ y(0) = \frac{7}{2},\ y'(0) = -4,\ y''(0) = \frac{5}{2},\ y'''(0) = -2.$

N **b.** Find the solution to $y^{(4)} - y = 0,\ y(0) = \frac{7}{2},\ y'(0) = -4,$ $y''(0) = \frac{5}{2},\ y'''(0) = -\frac{15}{8}.$

Note: These are the initial value problems considered in Example 2.

27. Show that the general solution of $y^{(4)} - y = 0$ can be written as

$$y = c_1\cos t + c_2\sin t + c_3\cosh t + c_4\sinh t.$$

Determine the solution satisfying the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 0$, $y''(0) = 1$, $y'''(0) = 1$. Why is it convenient to use the solutions $\cosh t$ and $\sinh t$ rather than e^t and e^{-t}?

28. Consider the equation $y^{(4)} - y = 0$.

a. Use Abel's formula (Problem 15d of Section 4.1) to find the Wronskian of a fundamental set of solutions of the given equation.

b. Determine the Wronskian of the solutions e^t, e^{-t}, $\cos t$, and $\sin t$.

c. Determine the Wronskian of the solutions $\cosh t$, $\sinh t$, $\cos t$, and $\sin t$.

29. Consider the spring-mass system, shown in Figure 4.2.4, consisting of two unit masses suspended from springs with spring constants 3 and 2, respectively. Assume that there is no damping in the system.

a. Show that the displacements u_1 and u_2 of the masses from their respective equilibrium positions satisfy the equations

$$u_1'' + 5u_1 = 2u_2, \qquad u_2'' + 2u_2 = 2u_1. \tag{22}$$

b. Solve the first of equations (22) for u_2 and substitute into the second equation, thereby obtaining the following fourth-order equation for u_1:

$$u_1^{(4)} + 7u_1'' + 6u_1 = 0. \tag{23}$$

Find the general solution of equation (23).

c. Suppose that the initial conditions are

$$u_1(0) = 1, \quad u_1'(0) = 0, \quad u_2(0) = 2, \quad u_2'(0) = 0. \tag{24}$$

Use the first of equations (22) and the initial conditions (24) to obtain values for $u_1''(0)$ and $u_1'''(0)$. Then show that the solution of equation (23) that satisfies the four initial conditions on u_1 is $u_1(t) = \cos t$. Show that the corresponding solution u_2 is $u_2(t) = 2\cos t$.

d. Now suppose that the initial conditions are

$$u_1(0) = -2, \quad u_1'(0) = 0, \quad u_2(0) = 1, \quad u_2'(0) = 0. \quad (25)$$

Proceed as in part c to show that the corresponding solutions are $u_1(t) = -2\cos\left(\sqrt{6}\,t\right)$ and $u_2(t) = \cos\left(\sqrt{6}\,t\right)$.

e. Observe that the solutions obtained in parts c and d describe two distinct modes of vibration. In the first, the frequency of the motion is 1, and the two masses move in phase, both moving up or down together; the second mass moves twice as far as the first. The second motion has frequency $\sqrt{6}$, and the masses move out of phase with each other, one moving down while the other is moving up, and vice versa. In this mode the first mass moves twice as far as the second. For other initial conditions, not proportional to either of equations (24) or (25), the motion of the masses is a combination of these two modes.

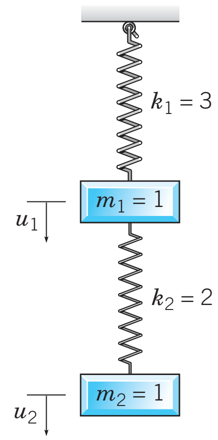


FIGURE 4.2.4 A two-spring, two-mass system.

30. In this problem we outline one way to show that if $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ are all real and different, then $e^{r_1 t}, \ldots, e^{r_n t}$ are linearly independent on $-\infty < t < \infty$. To do this, we consider the linear relation

$$c_1 e^{r_1 t} + \cdots + c_n e^{r_n t} = 0, \qquad -\infty < t < \infty \qquad (26)$$

and show that all the constants are zero.

a. Multiply equation (26) by $e^{-r_1 t}$ and differentiate with respect to t, thereby obtaining

$$c_2(r_2 - r_1)e^{(r_2 - r_1)t} + \cdots + c_n(r_n - r_1)e^{(r_n - r_1)t} = 0.$$

b. Multiply the result of part a by $e^{-(r_2 - r_1)t}$ and differentiate with respect to t to obtain

$$c_3(r_3 - r_2)(r_3 - r_1)e^{(r_3 - r_2)t} + \cdots + c_n(r_n - r_2)(r_n - r_1)e^{(r_n - r_2)t} = 0.$$

c. Continue the procedure from parts a and b, eventually obtaining

$$c_n(r_n - r_{n-1}) \cdots (r_n - r_1)e^{(r_n - r_{n-1})t} = 0.$$

Hence $c_n = 0$, and therefore,

$$c_1 e^{r_1 t} + \cdots + c_{n-1} e^{r_{n-1} t} = 0.$$

d. Repeat the preceding argument to show that $c_{n-1} = 0$. In a similar way it follows that $c_{n-2} = \cdots = c_1 = 0$. Thus the functions $e^{r_1 t}, \ldots, e^{r_n t}$ are linearly independent.

31. In this problem we indicate one way to show that if $r = r_1$ is a root of multiplicity s of the characteristic polynomial $Z(r)$, then $e^{r_1 t}, te^{r_1 t}, \ldots, t^{s-1}e^{r_1 t}$ are solutions of equation (1). This problem extends to n^{th} order equations the method for second-order equations given in Problem 17 of Section 3.4. We start from equation (2) in the text

$$L[e^{rt}] = e^{rt} Z(r) \qquad (27)$$

and differentiate repeatedly with respect to r, setting $r = r_1$ after each differentiation.

a. Recall that if r_1 is a root of multiplicity s, then $Z(r) = (r - r_1)^s q(r)$, where $q(r)$ is a polynomial of degree $n - s$ and $q(r_1) \neq 0$. Show that $Z(r_1), Z'(r_1), \ldots, Z^{(s-1)}(r_1)$ are all zero, but $Z^{(s)}(r_1) \neq 0$.

b. By differentiating equation (27) repeatedly with respect to r, show that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r} L[e^{rt}] = L\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r} e^{rt}\right] = L[te^{rt}],$$
$$\vdots$$
$$\frac{\partial^{s-1}}{\partial r^{s-1}} L[e^{rt}] = L[t^{s-1}e^{rt}].$$

c. Show that $e^{r_1 t}, te^{r_1 t}, \ldots, t^{s-1}e^{r_1 t}$ are solutions of equation (27).

4.3 The Method of Undetermined Coefficients

A particular solution Y of the nonhomogeneous n^{th} order linear differential equation with constant coefficients

$$L[y] = a_0 y^{(n)} + a_1 y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y' + a_n y = g(t) \qquad (1)$$

can be obtained by the method of undetermined coefficients, provided the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$ is of an appropriate form. Although the method of undetermined coefficients is not as general as the method of variation of parameters described in the next section, it is usually much easier to use when it is applicable.

Just as for the second-order linear differential equation, when the constant coefficient linear differential operator L is applied to a polynomial $A_0 t^m + A_1 t^{m-1} + \cdots + A_m$, an exponential function $e^{\alpha t}$, a linear combination of sine and cosine functions $a_1 \cos(\beta t) + a_2 \sin(\beta t)$, the result is a polynomial, an exponential function, or a linear combination of sine and cosine functions, respectively. Hence, if $g(t)$ is a sum of polynomials, exponentials, sines, and cosines, or products of such functions, we can expect that it is possible to find $Y(t)$ by choosing a suitable combination of polynomials, exponentials, and so forth, multiplied by a number of undetermined constants. The constants are then determined by substituting the assumed expression into the nonhomogeneous linear differential equation (1).

The main difference in using this method for higher-order equations stems from the fact that roots of the characteristic polynomial equation may have multiplicity greater than 2. Consequently, terms proposed for the nonhomogeneous part of the solution may need to be multiplied by higher powers of t to make them different from terms in the solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation. The following examples illustrate this. In these examples we have omitted numerous straightforward algebraic steps, because our main goal is to show how to arrive at the correct form for the assumed solution.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of

$$y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = 4e^t. \tag{2}$$

Solution:

The characteristic polynomial for the homogeneous equation corresponding to equation (2) is

$$r^3 - 3r^2 + 3r - 1 = (r-1)^3,$$

so the general solution of the homogeneous equation is

$$y_c(t) = c_1 e^t + c_2 t e^t + c_3 t^2 e^t. \tag{3}$$

To find a particular solution $Y(t)$ of equation (2), we start by assuming that $Y(t) = Ae^t$. However, since e^t, te^t, and $t^2 e^t$ are all solutions of the homogeneous equation, we must multiply this initial choice by t^3. Thus our final assumption is that $Y(t) = At^3 e^t$, where A is an undetermined coefficient.

To find the correct value for A, differentiate $Y(t)$ three times, substitute for y and its derivatives in equation (2), and collect terms in the resulting equation. In this way we obtain

$$6Ae^t = 4e^t.$$

Thus $A = \dfrac{2}{3}$ and the particular solution is

$$Y(t) = \frac{2}{3} t^3 e^t. \tag{4}$$

The general solution of the nonhomogeneous differential equation (2) is the sum of $y_c(t)$ from equation (3) and $Y(t)$ from equation (4):

$$y = c_1 e^t + c_2 t e^t + c_3 t^2 e^t + \frac{2}{3} t^3 e^t.$$

EXAMPLE 2

Find a particular solution of the equation

$$y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 3\sin t - 5\cos t. \tag{5}$$

Solution:

The general solution of the homogeneous equation was found in Example 3 of Section 4.2; it is

$$y_c(t) = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t + c_3 t \cos t + c_4 t \sin t, \tag{6}$$

corresponding to the roots $r = i, i, -i$, and $-i$ of the characteristic equation. Our initial assumption for a particular solution is $Y(t) = A \sin t + B \cos t$, but we must multiply this choice by t^2 to make it different from all solutions of the homogeneous equation. Thus our final assumption is

$$Y(t) = At^2 \sin t + Bt^2 \cos t.$$

Next, we differentiate $Y(t)$ four times, substitute into the differential equation (5), and collect terms, obtaining finally

$$-8A \sin t - 8B \cos t = 3 \sin t - 5 \cos t.$$

Thus $A = -\frac{3}{8}$, $B = \frac{5}{8}$, and the particular solution of equation (4) is

$$Y(t) = -\frac{3}{8}t^2 \sin t + \frac{5}{8}t^2 \cos t. \tag{7}$$

If $g(t)$ is a sum of several terms, it may be easier in practice to compute separately the particular solution corresponding to each term in $g(t)$. In the same way as for second-order differential equations, the particular solution of the complete problem is the sum of the particular solutions of the individual component problems. This is illustrated in the following example.

EXAMPLE 3

Find a particular solution of

$$y''' - 4y' = t + 3 \cos t + e^{-2t}. \tag{8}$$

Solution:

First we solve the homogeneous equation. The characteristic equation is $r^3 - 4r = 0$, and the roots are $r = 0, \pm 2$; hence

$$y_c(t) = c_1 + c_2 e^{2t} + c_3 e^{-2t}.$$

We can write a particular solution of equation (8) as the sum of particular solutions of the differential equations

$$y''' - 4y' = t, \quad y''' - 4y' = 3 \cos t, \quad y''' - 4y' = e^{-2t}.$$

Our initial choice for a particular solution $Y_1(t)$ of the first equation is $A_0 t + A_1$, but a constant is a solution of the homogeneous equation, so we multiply by t. Thus

$$Y_1(t) = t(A_0 t + A_1).$$

For the second equation we choose

$$Y_2(t) = B \cos t + C \sin t,$$

and there is no need to modify this initial choice since $\sin t$ and $\cos t$ are not solutions of the homogeneous equation. Finally, for the third equation, since e^{-2t} is a solution of the homogeneous equation, we assume that

$$Y_3(t) = Ete^{-2t}.$$

The constants are determined by substituting into the individual differential equations; they are $A_0 = -\frac{1}{8}$, $A_1 = 0$, $B = 0$, $C = -\frac{3}{5}$, and $E = \frac{1}{8}$. Hence a particular solution of equation (8) is

$$Y(t) = -\frac{1}{8}t^2 - \frac{3}{5} \sin t + \frac{1}{8}te^{-2t}. \tag{9}$$

You should keep in mind that the amount of algebra required to calculate the coefficients may be quite substantial for higher-order equations, especially if the nonhomogeneous term is even moderately complicated. A computer algebra system can be extremely helpful in executing these algebraic calculations.

The method of undetermined coefficients can be used whenever it is possible to guess the correct form for $Y(t)$. However, this is usually impossible for differential equations not having constant coefficients, or for nonhomogeneous terms other than the type described previously. For more complicated problems we can use the method of variation of parameters, which is discussed in the next section.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, determine the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y''' - y'' - y' + y = 2e^{-t} + 3$
2. $y^{(4)} - y = 3t + \cos t$
3. $y''' + y'' + y' + y = e^{-t} + 4t$
4. $y^{(4)} - 4y'' = t^2 + e^t$
5. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 3 + \cos 2t$
6. $y^{(6)} + y''' = t$

In each of Problems 7 through 9, find the solution of the given initial-value problem. Then plot a graph of the solution.

G 7. $y''' + 4y' = t; \quad y(0) = y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = 1$

G 8. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 3t + 4; \quad y(0) = y'(0) = 0,$ $y''(0) = y'''(0) = 1$

G 9. $y^{(4)} + 2y''' + y'' + 8y' - 12y = 12\sin t - e^{-t};$ $y(0) = 3, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = -1, \quad y'''(0) = 2$

In each of Problems 10 through 13, determine a suitable form for $Y(t)$ if the method of undetermined coefficients is to be used. Do not evaluate the constants.

10. $y''' - 2y'' + y' = t^3 + 2e^t$
11. $y''' - y' = te^{-t} + 2\cos t$
12. $y^{(4)} - y''' - y'' + y' = t^2 + 4 + t\sin t$
13. $y^{(4)} + 2y''' + 2y'' = 3e^t + 2te^{-t} + e^{-t}\sin t$

14. Consider the nonhomogeneous n^{th} order linear differential equation

$$a_0 y^{(n)} + a_1 y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_n y = g(t), \tag{10}$$

where $a_0, \ldots, a_n$ are constants. Verify that if $g(t)$ is of the form

$$e^{\alpha t}(b_0 t^m + \cdots + b_m),$$

then the substitution $y = e^{\alpha t}u(t)$ reduces equation (10) to the form

$$k_0 u^{(n)} + k_1 u^{(n-1)} + \cdots + k_n u = b_0 t^m + \cdots + b_m, \tag{11}$$

where $k_0, \ldots, k_n$ are constants. Determine k_0 and k_n in terms of the a's and α. Thus the problem of determining a particular solution of the original equation is reduced to the simpler problem of determining a particular solution of an equation with constant coefficients and a polynomial for the nonhomogeneous term.

Method of Annihilators. In Problems 15 through 17, we consider another way of arriving at the proper form of $Y(t)$ for use in the method of undetermined coefficients. The procedure is based on the observation that exponential, polynomial, or sinusoidal terms (or sums and products of such terms) can be viewed as solutions of certain linear homogeneous differential equations with constant coefficients. It is convenient to use the symbol D for $\dfrac{d}{dt}$. Then, for example, e^{-t} is a solution of $(D + 1)y = 0$; the differential operator $D + 1$ is said to *annihilate*, or to be an *annihilator* of, e^{-t}. In the same way, $D^2 + 4$ is an annihilator of $\sin 2t$ or $\cos 2t$, $(D - 3)^2 = D^2 - 6D + 9$ is an annihilator of e^{3t} or te^{3t}, and so forth.

15. Show that linear differential operators with constant coefficients obey the commutative law. That is, show that

$$(D - a)(D - b)f = (D - b)(D - a)f$$

for any twice-differentiable function f and any constants a and b. The result extends at once to any finite number of factors.

16. Consider the problem of finding the form of a particular solution $Y(t)$ of

$$(D - 2)^3(D + 1)Y = 3e^{2t} - te^{-t}, \tag{12}$$

where the left-hand side of the equation is written in a form corresponding to the factorization of the characteristic polynomial.

a. Show that $D - 2$ and $(D + 1)^2$, respectively, are annihilators of the terms on the right-hand side of equation (12), and that the combined operator $(D - 2)(D + 1)^2$ annihilates both terms on the right-hand side of equation (12) simultaneously.

b. Apply the operator $(D - 2)(D + 1)^2$ to equation (12) and use the result of Problem 15 to obtain

$$(D - 2)^4(D + 1)^3 Y = 0. \tag{13}$$

Thus Y is a solution of the homogeneous equation (13). By solving equation (13), show that

$$Y(t) = c_1 e^{2t} + c_2 te^{2t} + c_3 t^2 e^{2t} + c_4 t^3 e^{2t} + c_5 e^{-t} + c_6 te^{-t} + c_7 t^2 e^{-t}, \tag{14}$$

where $c_1, \ldots, c_7$ are constants, as yet undetermined.

c. Observe that e^{2t}, te^{2t}, t^2e^{2t}, and e^{-t} are solutions of the homogeneous equation corresponding to equation (12); hence these terms are not useful in solving the nonhomogeneous equation. Therefore, choose c_1, c_2, c_3, and c_5 to be zero in equation (14), so that

$$Y(t) = c_4 t^3 e^{2t} + c_6 te^{-t} + c_7 t^2 e^{-t}. \tag{15}$$

This is the form of the particular solution Y of equation (12). The values of the coefficients c_4, c_6, and c_7 can be found by substituting from equation (15) in the differential equation (12).

Summary of the Method of Annihilators. Suppose that

$$L(D)y = g(t), \tag{16}$$

where $L(D)$ is a linear differential operator with constant coefficients, and $g(t)$ is a sum or product of exponential, polynomial, or sinusoidal terms. To find the form of a particular solution of equation (16), you can proceed as follows:

a. Find a differential operator $H(D)$ with constant coefficients that annihilates $g(t)$—that is, an operator such that $H(D)g(t) = 0$.

b. Apply $H(D)$ to equation (16), obtaining

$$H(D)L(D)y = 0, \tag{17}$$

which is a homogeneous equation of higher-order.

c. Solve equation (17).

d. Eliminate from the solution found in step c the terms that also appear in the solution of $L(D)y = 0$. The remaining terms constitute the correct form of a particular solution of equation (16).

17. Use the method of annihilators to find the form of a particular solution $Y(t)$ for each of the equations in Problems 10 through 13. Do not evaluate the coefficients.

4.4 The Method of Variation of Parameters

The method of variation of parameters for determining a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous n^{th} order linear differential equation

$$L[y] = y^{(n)} + p_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + p_{n-1}(t)y' + p_n(t)y = g(t) \tag{1}$$

is a direct extension of the method for the second-order differential equation (see Section 3.6). As before, to use the method of variation of parameters, it is first necessary to solve the corresponding homogeneous differential equation. In general, this may be difficult unless the coefficients are constants. However, the method of variation of parameters is still more general than the method of undetermined coefficients in that it leads to an expression for the particular solution for *any* continuous function g, whereas the method of undetermined coefficients is restricted in practice to a limited class of functions g.

Suppose then that we know a fundamental set of solutions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ of the homogeneous equation. Then the general solution of the homogeneous equation is

$$y_c(t) = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) + \cdots + c_ny_n(t). \tag{2}$$

The method of variation of parameters for determining a particular solution of equation (1) rests on the possibility of determining n functions $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n$ such that $Y(t)$ is of the form

$$Y(t) = u_1(t)y_1(t) + u_2(t)y_2(t) + \cdots + u_n(t)y_n(t). \tag{3}$$

Since we have n functions to determine, we will have to specify n conditions. One of these is clearly that Y satisfy equation (1). The other $n-1$ conditions are chosen so as to make the calculations as simple as possible. Since we can hardly expect a simplification in determining Y if we must solve high order differential equations for $u_1, \ldots, u_n$, it is natural to impose conditions to suppress the terms that lead to higher derivatives of $u_1, \ldots, u_n$. From equation (3) we obtain

$$Y' = (u_1y_1' + u_2y_2' + \cdots + u_ny_n') + (u_1'y_1 + u_2'y_2 + \cdots + u_n'y_n), \tag{4}$$

where we have omitted the independent variable t on which each function in equation (4) depends. Thus the first condition that we impose is that

$$u_1'y_1 + u_2'y_2 + \cdots + u_n'y_n = 0. \tag{5}$$

It follows that the expression (4) for Y' reduces to

$$Y' = u_1y_1' + u_2y_2' + \cdots + u_ny_n'. \tag{6}$$

We continue this process by calculating the successive derivatives $Y'', \ldots, Y^{(n-1)}$. After each differentiation we set equal to zero the sum of terms involving derivatives of $u_1, \ldots, u_n$. In this way we obtain $n-2$ further conditions similar to equation (5); that is,

$$u_1'y_1^{(m)} + u_2'y_2^{(m)} + \cdots + u_n'y_n^{(m)} = 0, \quad m = 1, 2, \ldots, n-2. \tag{7}$$

As a result of these conditions, it follows that the expressions for $Y'', \ldots, Y^{(n-1)}$ reduce to

$$Y^{(m)} = u_1y_1^{(m)} + u_2y_2^{(m)} + \cdots + u_ny_n^{(m)}, \quad m = 2, 3, \ldots, n-1. \tag{8}$$

Finally, we need to impose the condition that Y must be a solution of equation (1). By differentiating $Y^{(n-1)}$ from equation (8), we obtain

$$Y^{(n)} = (u_1 y_1^{(n)} + \cdots + u_n y_n^{(n)}) + (u_1' y_1^{(n-1)} + \cdots + u_n' y_n^{(n-1)}). \tag{9}$$

To satisfy the differential equation we substitute for Y and its derivatives in equation (1) from equations (3), (6), (8), and (9). Then we group the terms involving each of the functions $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ and their derivatives. It then follows that most of the terms in the equation drop out because each of $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ is a solution of equation (1) and therefore $L[y_i] = 0$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$. The remaining terms yield the relation

$$u_1' y_1^{(n-1)} + u_2' y_2^{(n-1)} + \cdots + u_n' y_n^{(n-1)} = g. \tag{10}$$

Equation (10), equation (5), and the $n - 2$ equations (7) provide n simultaneous linear nonhomogeneous algebraic equations for $u_1', u_2', \ldots, u_n'$:

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 u_1' + y_2 u_2' + \cdots + y_n u_n' &= 0, \\ y_1' u_1' + y_2' u_2' + \cdots + y_n' u_n' &= 0, \\ y_1'' u_1' + y_2'' u_2' + \cdots + y_n'' u_n' &= 0, \\ &\vdots \\ y_1^{(n-1)} u_1' + \cdots + y_n^{(n-1)} u_n' &= g. \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

The system (11) is a linear algebraic system for the unknown quantities $u_1', \ldots, u_n'$. By solving this system and then integrating the resulting expressions, you can obtain the coefficients $u_1, \ldots, u_n$. A sufficient condition for the existence of a solution of the system of equations (11) is that the determinant of coefficients is nonzero for each value of t. However, the determinant of coefficients is precisely $W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]$, and it is nowhere zero since $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ is a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation. Hence it is possible to determine $u_1', \ldots, u_n'$. Using Cramer's[3] rule, we can write the solution of the system of equations (11) in the form

$$u_m'(t) = \frac{g(t) W_m(t)}{W(t)}, \qquad m = 1, 2, \ldots, n. \tag{12}$$

Here $W(t) = W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n](t)$, and W_m is the determinant obtained from W by replacing the m^{th} column by the column $(0, 0, \ldots, 0, 1)^T$. With this notation a particular solution of equation (1) is given by

$$Y(t) = \sum_{m=1}^{n} y_m(t) \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s) W_m(s)}{W(s)} ds, \tag{13}$$

where t_0 is arbitrary.

EXAMPLE 1

Given that $y_1(t) = e^t$, $y_2(t) = te^t$, and $y_3(t) = e^{-t}$ are solutions of the homogeneous equation corresponding to

$$y''' - y'' - y' + y = g(t), \tag{14}$$

determine a particular solution of equation (14) in terms of an integral.

[3] Cramer's rule is credited to the Swiss mathematician Gabriel Cramer (1704–1752), professor at the Académie de Calvin in Geneva, who published it in a general form (but without proof) in 1750. For small systems the result had been known earlier.

Solution:

We use equation (13). First, we have

$$W(t) = W[e^t, te^t, e^{-t}](t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & te^t & e^{-t} \\ e^t & (t+1)e^t & -e^{-t} \\ e^t & (t+2)e^t & e^{-t} \end{vmatrix}.$$

Factoring e^t from each of the first two columns and e^{-t} from the third column, we obtain

$$W(t) = e^t \begin{vmatrix} 1 & t & 1 \\ 1 & t+1 & -1 \\ 1 & t+2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Then, by subtracting the first row from the second and third rows, we have

$$W(t) = e^t \begin{vmatrix} 1 & t & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Finally, evaluating the latter determinant by minors associated with the first column, we find that

$$W(t) = 4e^t.$$

Next,

$$W_1(t) = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & te^t & e^{-t} \\ 0 & (t+1)e^t & -e^{-t} \\ 1 & (t+2)e^t & e^{-t} \end{vmatrix}.$$

Using minors associated with the first column, we obtain

$$W_1(t) = \begin{vmatrix} te^t & e^{-t} \\ (t+1)e^t & -e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = -2t - 1.$$

In a similar way,

$$W_2(t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & 0 & e^{-t} \\ e^t & 0 & -e^{-t} \\ e^t & 1 & e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = -\begin{vmatrix} e^t & e^{-t} \\ e^t & -e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = 2$$

and

$$W_3(t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & te^t & 0 \\ e^t & (t+1)e^t & 0 \\ e^t & (t+2)e^t & 1 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & te^t \\ e^t & (t+1)e^t \end{vmatrix} = e^{2t}.$$

Substituting these results in equation (13), we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(t) &= e^t \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s)(-1-2s)}{4e^s} ds + te^t \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s)(2)}{4e^s} ds + e^{-t} \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s)e^{2s}}{4e^s} ds \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \int_{t_0}^{t} \left(e^{t-s}(-1 + 2(t-s)) + e^{-(t-s)} \right) g(s) ds. \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

Depending on the specific function $g(t)$, it may or may not be possible to evaluate the integrals in equation (15) in terms of elementary functions.

Although the procedure is straightforward, the algebraic computations involved in determining $Y(t)$ from equation (13) become more and more complicated as n increases. In some cases the calculations may be simplified to some extent by using Abel's identity (Problem 15d of Section 4.1),

$$W(t) = W[y_1, \ldots, y_n](t) = c \exp\left(-\int p_1(t) dt \right).$$

The constant c can be determined by evaluating W at some convenient point.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, use the method of variation of parameters to determine the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y''' + y' = \tan t, \quad -\dfrac{\pi}{2} < t < \dfrac{\pi}{2}$

2. $y''' - y' = t$

3. $y''' - 2y'' - y' + 2y = e^{4t}$

4. $y''' - y'' + y' - y = e^{-t}\sin t$

In each of Problems 5 and 6, find the general solution of the given differential equation. Leave your answer in terms of one or more integrals.

5. $y''' - y'' + y' - y = \sec t, \quad -\dfrac{\pi}{2} < t < \dfrac{\pi}{2}$

6. $y''' - y' = \csc t, \quad 0 < t < \pi$

In each of Problems 7 and 8, find the solution of the given initial-value problem. Then plot a graph of the solution.

G **7.** $y''' - y'' + y' - y = \sec t; \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1, \quad y''(0) = 1$

G **8.** $y''' - y' = \tan t; \quad y\left(\dfrac{\pi}{4}\right) = 2, \quad y'\left(\dfrac{\pi}{4}\right) = 1, \quad y''\left(\dfrac{\pi}{4}\right) = -1$

9. Given that x, x^2, and $1/x$ are solutions of the homogeneous equation corresponding to

$$x^3y''' + x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 2x^4, \quad x > 0,$$

determine a particular solution.

10. Find a formula involving integrals for a particular solution of the differential equation

$$y''' - y'' + y' - y = g(t).$$

11. Find a formula involving integrals for a particular solution of the differential equation

$$y^{(4)} - y = g(t).$$

Hint: The functions $\sin t$, $\cos t$, $\sinh t$, and $\cosh t$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation.

12. Find a formula involving integrals for a particular solution of the differential equation

$$y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = g(t).$$

If $g(t) = t^{-2}e^t$, determine $Y(t)$.

References

Coddington, E. A., *An Introduction to Ordinary Differential Equations* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1961; New York: Dover, 1989).

Coddington, E. A. and Carlson, R., *Linear Ordinary Differential Equations* (Philadelphia, PA: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 1997).

Ince, E. L., Ordinary Differential Equations (London: Longmans, Green, 1927; New York: Dover, 1956).

CHAPTER 5

Series Solutions of Second-Order Linear Equations

Finding the general solution of a linear differential equation depends on determining a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation. So far, we have given a systematic procedure for constructing fundamental solutions only when the equation has constant coefficients. To deal with the much larger class of equations that have variable coefficients, it is necessary to extend our search for solutions beyond the familiar elementary functions of calculus. The principal tool that we need is the representation of a given function by a power series. The basic idea is similar to that in the method of undetermined coefficients: we assume that the solutions of a given differential equation have power series expansions, and then we attempt to determine the coefficients so as to satisfy the differential equation.

5.1 Review of Power Series

In this chapter we discuss the use of power series to construct fundamental sets of solutions of second-order linear differential equations whose coefficients are functions of the independent variable. We begin by summarizing very briefly the pertinent results about power series that we need. Readers who are familiar with power series may go on to Section 5.2. Those who need more details than are presented here should consult a book on calculus.

1. A power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-x_0)^n$ is said to *converge at a point* x if
$$\lim_{m\to\infty}\sum_{n=0}^{m} a_n(x-x_0)^n$$
exists for that x. The series certainly converges for $x = x_0$; it may converge for all x, or it may converge for some values of x and not for others.
2. The power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-x_0)^n$ is said to *converge absolutely at a point* x if the associated power series
$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |a_n(x-x_0)^n| = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |a_n||x-x_0|^n$$
converges. It can be shown that if the power series converges absolutely, then the power series also converges; however, the converse is not necessarily true.
3. One of the most useful tests for the absolute convergence of a power series is the ratio test: If $a_n \neq 0$, and if, for a fixed value of x,
$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\left|\frac{a_{n+1}(x-x_0)^{n+1}}{a_n(x-x_0)^n}\right| = |x-x_0|\lim_{n\to\infty}\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| = |x-x_0|L,$$

then the power series converges absolutely at that value of x if $|x - x_0|L < 1$ and diverges if $|x - x_0|L > 1$. If $|x - x_0|L = 1$, the ratio test is inconclusive.

EXAMPLE 1

For which values of x does the power series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} n(x-2)^n = (x-2) - 2(x-2)^2 + 3(x-2)^3 - \cdots$$

converge?

Solution:

We first test for absolute convergence using the ratio test. We have

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \left| \frac{(-1)^{n+2}(n+1)(x-2)^{n+1}}{(-1)^{n+1} n(x-2)^n} \right| = |x-2| \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{n+1}{n} = |x-2|.$$

According to statement 3, the series converges absolutely for $|x - 2| < 1$, that is, for $1 < x < 3$, and diverges for $|x - 2| > 1$. The values of x corresponding to $|x - 2| = 1$ are $x = 1$ and $x = 3$. The series diverges for each of these values of x since the nth term of the series does not approach zero as $n \to \infty$. This power series converges (absolutely) for $1 < x < 3$ and diverges for $x \leq 1$ and for $x \geq 3$.

4. If the power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x - x_0)^n$ converges at $x = x_1$, it converges absolutely for $|x - x_0| < |x_1 - x_0|$; and if it diverges at $x = x_1$, it diverges for $|x - x_0| > |x_1 - x_0|$.

5. For a typical power series, such as the one in Example 1, there is a positive number ρ, called the **radius of convergence**, such that $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x - x_0)^n$ converges absolutely for $|x - x_0| < \rho$ and diverges for $|x - x_0| > \rho$. The interval $|x - x_0| < \rho$ is called the **interval of convergence**; it is indicated by the hatched lines in Figure 5.1.1. The series may either converge or diverge when $|x - x_0| = \rho$. Many important power series converge for all values of x. In this case it is customary to say that ρ is infinite and the interval of convergence is the entire real line. It is also possible for a power series to converge only at x_0. For such a series we say that $\rho = 0$ and the series has no interval of convergence. When these exceptional cases are taken into account, every power series has a nonnegative radius of convergence ρ, and if $\rho > 0$, then there is a (finite or infinite) interval of convergence centered at x_0.

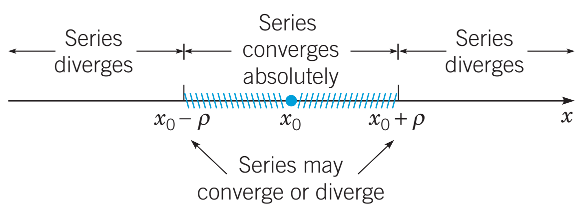


FIGURE 5.1.1 The interval of convergence of a power series.

EXAMPLE 2

Determine the radius of convergence of the power series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(x+1)^n}{n2^n}.$$

Solution:

We apply the ratio test:

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\left|\frac{(x+1)^{n+1}}{(n+1)2^{n+1}}\,\frac{n2^n}{(x+1)^n}\right| = \frac{|x+1|}{2}\lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{n}{n+1} = \frac{|x+1|}{2}.$$

Thus the series converges absolutely for $|x+1| < 2$, that is, for $-3 < x < 1$, and diverges for $|x+1| > 2$. The radius of convergence of the power series is $\rho = 2$. Finally, we check the endpoints of the interval of convergence. At $x = 1$ the series becomes the harmonic series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n},$$

which diverges. At $x = -3$ we have

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-3+1)^n}{n2^n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n}{n}.$$

Recognizing this as the alternating harmonic series, we recall that it converges but does not converge absolutely. The power series is said to converge conditionally at $x = -3$. To summarize, the given power series converges for $-3 \le x < 1$ and diverges otherwise. It converges absolutely for $-3 < x < 1$ and has a radius of convergence of 2.

Suppose that $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-x_0)^n$ and $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n(x-x_0)^n$ converge to $f(x)$ and $g(x)$, respectively, for $|x-x_0| < \rho$, $\rho > 0$.

6. The two series can be added or subtracted termwise, and

$$f(x) \pm g(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(a_n \pm b_n)(x-x_0)^n;$$

the resulting series converges at least for $|x-x_0| < \rho$.

7. The two series can be formally multiplied, and

$$f(x)g(x) = \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-x_0)^n\right)\left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n(x-x_0)^n\right) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n(x-x_0)^n,$$

where $c_n = a_0b_n + a_1b_{n-1} + \cdots + a_nb_0$. The resulting series converges at least for $|x-x_0| < \rho$.

Further, if $b_0 \neq 0$, then $g(x_0) \neq 0$, and the series for $f(x)$ can be formally divided by the series for $g(x)$, and

$$\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} d_n(x-x_0)^n.$$

In most cases the coefficients d_n can be most easily obtained by equating coefficients in the equivalent relation

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-x_0)^n &= \left[\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} d_n(x-x_0)^n\right]\left[\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n(x-x_0)^n\right]\\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n} d_k b_{n-k}\right)(x-x_0)^n.\end{aligned}$$

In the case of division, the radius of convergence of the resulting power series may be less than ρ.

8. The function f is continuous and has derivatives of all orders for $|x-x_0| < \rho$. Moreover, f', f'', ... can be computed by differentiating the series termwise; that is,

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= a_1 + 2a_2(x-x_0) + \cdots + na_n(x-x_0)^{n-1} + \cdots \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} na_n(x-x_0)^{n-1}, \\ f''(x) &= 2a_2 + 6a_3(x-x_0) + \cdots + n(n-1)a_n(x-x_0)^{n-2} + \cdots \\ &= \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n(n-1)a_n(x-x_0)^{n-2}, \end{aligned}$$

and so forth, and each of the series converges absolutely for $|x-x_0| < \rho$.

9. The value of a_n is given by

$$a_n = \frac{f^{(n)}(x_0)}{n!}.$$

The series is called the Taylor[1] series for the function f about $x = x_0$.

10. If $\sum\limits_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-x_0)^n = \sum\limits_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n(x-x_0)^n$ for each x in some open interval with center x_0, then $a_n = b_n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. In particular, if $\sum\limits_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-x_0)^n = 0$ for each such x, then $a_0 = a_1 = \cdots = a_n = \cdots = 0$.

A function f that has a Taylor series expansion about $x = x_0$

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(n)}(x_0)}{n!}(x-x_0)^n,$$

with a radius of convergence $\rho > 0$, is said to be **analytic** at $x = x_0$. All of the familiar functions of calculus are analytic except perhaps at certain easily recognized points. For example, $\sin x$ and e^x are analytic everywhere, $1/x$ is analytic except at $x = 0$, and $\tan x$ is analytic except at odd multiples of $\pi/2$. According to statements 6 and 7, if f and g are analytic at x_0, then $f \pm g$, $f \cdot g$, and f/g (provided that $g(x_0) \neq 0$) are also analytic at $x = x_0$. In many respects the natural context for the use of power series is the complex plane. The methods and results of this chapter nearly always can be directly extended to differential equations in which the independent and dependent variables are complex-valued.

Shift of Index of Summation. The index of summation in an infinite series is a dummy parameter just as the integration variable in a definite integral is a dummy variable. Thus it is immaterial which letter is used for the index of summation. For example,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^n x^n}{n!} = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^j x^j}{j!}.$$

Just as we make changes of the variable of integration in a definite integral, we find it convenient to make changes of summation indices in calculating series solutions of differential equations. We illustrate by several examples how to shift the summation index.

[1]Brook Taylor (1685–1731), English mathematician, received his education at Cambridge University. His book *Methodus incrementorum directa et inversa*, published in 1715, includes a general statement of the expansion theorem that is named for him. This is a basic result in all branches of analysis, but its fundamental importance was not recognized until 1772 (by Lagrange). Taylor was also the first to use integration by parts, was one of the founders of the calculus of finite differences, and was the first to recognize the existence of singular solutions of differential equations.

EXAMPLE 3

Write $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ as a series whose first term corresponds to $n = 0$ rather than $n = 2$.

Solution:

Let $m = n - 2$; then $n = m + 2$, and $n = 2$ corresponds to $m = 0$. Hence

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_{m+2} x^{m+2}. \tag{1}$$

By writing out the first few terms of each of these series, you can verify that they contain precisely the same terms. Finally, in the series on the right-hand side of equation (1), we can replace the dummy index m by n, obtaining

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+2} x^{n+2}. \tag{2}$$

In effect, we have shifted the index upward by 2 and have compensated by starting to count at a level 2 lower than originally.

EXAMPLE 4

Write the series

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1)a_n(x - x_0)^{n-2} \tag{3}$$

as a series whose generic term involves $(x - x_0)^n$ rather than $(x - x_0)^{n-2}$.

Solution:

Again, we shift the index by 2 so that n is replaced by $n + 2$ and start counting 2 lower. We obtain

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+4)(n+3)a_{n+2}(x - x_0)^n. \tag{4}$$

You can readily verify that the terms in the series (3) and (4) are exactly the same.

EXAMPLE 5

Write the expression

$$x^2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (r+n)a_n x^{r+n-1} \tag{5}$$

as a series whose generic term involves x^{r+n}.

Solution:

First, take the x^2 inside the summation, obtaining

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (r+n)a_n x^{r+n+1}. \tag{6}$$

Next, shift the index down by 1 and start counting 1 higher. Thus

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(r+n)a_n x^{r+n+1} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(r+n-1)a_{n-1}x^{r+n}. \tag{7}$$

Again, you can easily verify that the two series in equation (7) are identical and that both are exactly the same as the expression (5).

EXAMPLE 6

Assume that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n a_n x^{n-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \tag{8}$$

for all x, and determine what this implies about the coefficients a_n.

Solution:

We want to use statement 10 to equate corresponding coefficients in the two series. In order to do this, we must first rewrite equation (8) so that the series display the same power of x in their generic terms. For instance, in the series on the left-hand side of equation (8), we can replace n by $n+1$ and start counting 1 lower. Thus equation (8) becomes

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+1)a_{n+1}x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n. \tag{9}$$

According to statement 10, we conclude that

$$(n+1)a_{n+1} = a_n, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

or

$$a_{n+1} = \frac{a_n}{n+1}, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{10}$$

Hence, choosing successive values of n in equation (10), we have

$$a_1 = a_0, \quad a_2 = \frac{a_1}{2} = \frac{a_0}{2}, \quad a_3 = \frac{a_2}{3} = \frac{a_0}{3!},$$

and so forth. In general,

$$a_n = \frac{a_0}{n!}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{11}$$

Thus the relation (8) determines all the following coefficients in terms of a_0. Finally, using the coefficients given by equation (11), we obtain

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{a_0}{n!}x^n = a_0\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{x^n}{n!} = a_0 e^x,$$

where we have followed the usual convention that $0! = 1$, and recalled that $e^x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{x^n}{n!}$ for all values of x. (See Problem 8.)

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, determine the radius of convergence of the given power series.

1. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(x-3)^n$

2. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{n}{2^n}x^n$

3. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{x^{2n}}{n!}$

4. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}2^n x^n$

5. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(x-x_0)^n}{n}$

6. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n n^2(x+2)^n}{3^n}$

In each of Problems 7 through 13, determine the Taylor series about the point x_0 for the given function. Also determine the radius of convergence of the series.

7. $\sin x, \quad x_0=0$

8. $e^x, \quad x_0=0$

9. $x, \quad x_0=1$

10. $x^2, \quad x_0=-1$

11. $\ln x, \quad x_0=1$

12. $\frac{1}{1-x}, \quad x_0=0$

13. $\frac{1}{1-x}, \quad x_0=2$

14. Let $y=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}nx^n$.

a. Compute y' and write out the first four terms of the series.
b. Compute y'' and write out the first four terms of the series.

15. Let $y=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n x^n$.

a. Compute y' and y'' and write out the first four terms of each series, as well as the coefficient of x^n in the general term.
b. Show that if $y''=y$, then the coefficients a_0 and a_1 are arbitrary, and determine a_2 and a_3 in terms of a_0 and a_1.
c. Show that $a_{n+2}=\frac{a_n}{(n+2)(n+1)}$, $n=0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$.

In each of Problems 16 and 17, verify the given equation.

16. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n(x-1)^{n+1}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}a_{n-1}(x-1)^n$

17. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}a_{k+1}x^k+\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}a_k x^{k+1}=a_1+\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}(a_{k+1}+a_{k-1})x^k$

In each of Problems 18 through 22, rewrite the given expression as a single power series whose generic term involves x^n.

18. $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty}n(n-1)a_n x^{n-2}$

19. $x\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}na_n x^{n-1}+\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}a_k x^k$

20. $\sum_{m=2}^{\infty}m(m-1)a_m x^{m-2}+x\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}ka_k x^{k-1}$

21. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}na_n x^{n-1}+x\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n x^n$

22. $x\sum_{n=2}^{\infty}n(n-1)a_n x^{n-2}+\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n x^n$

23. Determine the a_n so that the equation

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}na_n x^{n-1}+2\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n x^n=0$$

is satisfied. Try to identify the function represented by the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n x^n$.

5.2 Series Solutions Near an Ordinary Point, Part I

In Chapter 3 we described methods of solving second-order linear differential equations with constant coefficients. We now consider methods of solving second-order linear equations when the coefficients are functions of the independent variable. In this chapter we will denote the independent variable by x. It is sufficient to consider the homogeneous equation

$$P(x)\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + Q(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + R(x)y = 0, \tag{1}$$

since the procedure for the corresponding nonhomogeneous equation is similar.

Many problems in mathematical physics lead to equations of the form (1) having polynomial coefficients; examples include the Bessel equation

$$x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0,$$

where ν is a constant, and the Legendre equation

$$(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha + 1)y = 0,$$

where α is a constant. For this reason, as well as to simplify the algebraic computations, we primarily consider the case in which the functions P, Q, and R are polynomials. However, as we will see, the method of solution is also applicable when P, Q, and R are general analytic functions.

For the present, then, suppose that P, Q, and R are polynomials and that there is no factor $(x-c)$ that is common to all three of them. If there is such a common factor $(x-c)$, then divide it out before proceeding. Suppose also that we wish to solve equation (1) in the neighborhood of a point x_0. The solution of equation (1) in an interval containing x_0 is closely associated with the behavior of P in that interval.

A point x_0 such that $P(x_0) \neq 0$ is called an **ordinary point**. Since P is continuous, it follows that there is an open interval containing x_0 in which $P(x)$ is never zero. In that interval, which we will call I, we can divide equation (1) by $P(x)$ to obtain

$$y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = 0, \tag{2}$$

where $p(x) = Q(x)/P(x)$ and $q(x) = R(x)/P(x)$ are continuous functions on I. Hence, according to the existence and uniqueness theorem, Theorem 3.2.1, there exists a unique solution of equation (1) in the interval I that also satisfies the initial conditions $y(x_0) = y_0$ and $y'(x_0) = y_0'$ for arbitrary values of y_0 and y_0'. In this and the following section, we discuss the solution of equation (1) in the neighborhood of an ordinary point.

On the other hand, if $P(x_0) = 0$, then x_0 is called a **singular point** of equation (1). In this case, because $(x - x_0)$ is not a factor of P, Q, and R, at least one of $Q(x_0)$ and $R(x_0)$ is not zero. Consequently, at least one of the coefficients p and q in equation (2) becomes unbounded as $x \to x_0$, and therefore Theorem 3.2.1 does not apply in this case. Sections 5.4 through 5.7 deal with finding solutions of equation (1) in the neighborhood of a singular point.

We now take up the problem of solving equation (1) in the neighborhood of an ordinary point x_0. We look for solutions of the form

$$y = a_0 + a_1(x - x_0) + \cdots + a_n(x - x_0)^n + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x - x_0)^n \tag{3}$$

and assume that the series converges in the interval $|x - x_0| < \rho$ for some $\rho > 0$.

While at first sight it may appear unattractive to seek a solution in the form of a power series, this is actually a convenient and useful form for a solution. Within their intervals of convergence, power series behave very much like polynomials and are easy to manipulate both analytically and numerically. Indeed, even if we can obtain a solution in terms of elementary functions, such as exponential or trigonometric functions, we are likely to need a power series or some equivalent expression if we want to evaluate the solution numerically or to plot its graph.

The most practical way to determine the coefficients a_n is to substitute the series (3) and its derivatives for y, y', and y'' in equation (1). The following examples illustrate this process. The operations, such as differentiation, that are involved in the procedure are justified so long as we stay within the interval of convergence. The differential equations in these examples are also of considerable importance in their own right.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a series solution of the equation

$$y'' + y = 0, \quad -\infty < x < \infty. \tag{4}$$

Solution:

As we know, $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ form a fundamental set of solutions of this equation, so series methods are not needed to solve it. However, this example illustrates the use of power series in a relatively simple case. For equation (4), $P(x) = 1$, $Q(x) = 0$, and $R(x) = 1$; hence every point is an ordinary point.

We look for a solution in the form of a power series about $x_0 = 0$

$$y = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + a_3 x^3 + \cdots + a_n x^n + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \tag{5}$$

and assume that the series converges in some interval $|x| < \rho$. Differentiating equation (5) term by term, we obtain

$$y' = a_1 + 2a_2 x + 3a_3 x^2 + \cdots + n a_n x^{n-1} + \cdots = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n a_n x^{n-1} \tag{6}$$

and

$$y'' = 2a_2 + 3 \cdot 2 a_3 x + \cdots + n(n-1) a_n x^{n-2} + \cdots = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n(n-1) a_n x^{n-2}. \tag{7}$$

Substituting the series (5) and (7) for y and y'' in equation (4) gives

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n(n-1) a_n x^{n-2} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = 0.$$

To combine the two series, we need to rewrite at least one of them so that both series display the same generic term. (See Problem 22 in Section 5.1.) Thus, in the first sum, we shift the index of summation by replacing n by $n + 2$ and starting the sum at 0 rather than 2. We obtain

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1) a_{n+2} x^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = 0$$

or

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \big((n+2)(n+1) a_{n+2} + a_n \big) x^n = 0.$$

For this equation to be satisfied for all x, the coefficient of each power of x must be zero; hence we conclude that

$$(n+2)(n+1) a_{n+2} + a_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{8}$$

Equation (8) is referred to as a **recurrence relation**. The successive coefficients can be evaluated one by one by writing the recurrence relation first for $n = 0$, then for $n = 1$, and so forth. In this example equation (8) relates each coefficient to the second one before it. Thus the even-numbered coefficients ($a_0, a_2, a_4, \ldots$) and the odd-numbered ones ($a_1, a_3, a_5, \ldots$) are determined separately. For the even-numbered coefficients we have

$$a_2 = -\frac{a_0}{2 \cdot 1} = -\frac{a_0}{2!}, \quad a_4 = -\frac{a_2}{4 \cdot 3} = +\frac{a_0}{4!}, \quad a_6 = -\frac{a_4}{6 \cdot 5} = -\frac{a_0}{6!}, \ldots .$$

These results suggest that in general, if $n = 2k$, then

$$a_n = a_{2k} = \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} a_0, \quad k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{9}$$

We can prove equation (9) by mathematical induction. First, observe that it is true for $k = 1$. Next, assume that it is true for an arbitrary value of k and consider the case $k + 1$. We have

$$a_{2k+2} = -\frac{a_{2k}}{(2k+2)(2k+1)} = -\frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+2)(2k+1)(2k)!} a_0 = \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k+2)!} a_0.$$

Hence equation (9) is also true for $k+1$, and consequently it is true for all positive integers k.

Similarly, for the odd-numbered coefficients

$$a_3 = -\frac{a_1}{2 \cdot 3} = -\frac{a_1}{3!}, \quad a_5 = -\frac{a_3}{5 \cdot 4} = +\frac{a_1}{5!}, \quad a_7 = -\frac{a_5}{7 \cdot 6} = -\frac{a_1}{7!}, \ \ldots,$$

and in general, if $n = 2k+1$, then[2]

$$a_n = a_{2k+1} = \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)!}a_1, \quad k = 1, 2, 3, \ \ldots. \tag{10}$$

Substituting these coefficients into equation (5), we have

$$\begin{aligned} y &= a_0 + a_1 x - \frac{a_0}{2!}x^2 - \frac{a_1}{3!}x^3 + \frac{a_0}{4!}x^4 + \frac{a_1}{5!}x^5 \\ &\quad + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^n a_0}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \frac{(-1)^n a_1}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1} + \cdots \\ &= a_0\left[1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \cdots\right] \\ &\quad + a_1\left[x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1} + \cdots\right] \\ &= a_0 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + a_1 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}. \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

We identify two series solutions of equation (4):

$$y_1(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n)!}x^{2n} \quad \text{and} \quad y_2(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}.$$

Using the ratio test, we can show that the series for $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ converge for all x, and this justifies retroactively all of the steps used in obtaining these solutions. Indeed, the series for $y_1(x)$ is exactly the Taylor series for $\cos x$ about $x = 0$ and the series for $y_2(x)$ is the corresponding Taylor series for $\sin x$. Thus, as we anticipated in equation (11) we have obtained the general solution of equation (4) in the form $y = a_0 \cos x + a_1 \sin x$.

Notice that no conditions are imposed on a_0 and a_1; hence they are arbitrary. From equations (5) and (6) we see that y and y' evaluated at $x = 0$ are a_0 and a_1, respectively. Since the initial conditions $y(0)$ and $y'(0)$ can be chosen arbitrarily, it follows that a_0 and a_1 should be arbitrary until specific initial conditions are stated.

Figures 5.2.1 and 5.2.2 show how the partial sums of the series solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ approximate $\cos x$ and $\sin x$, respectively. As the number of terms increases, the interval over which

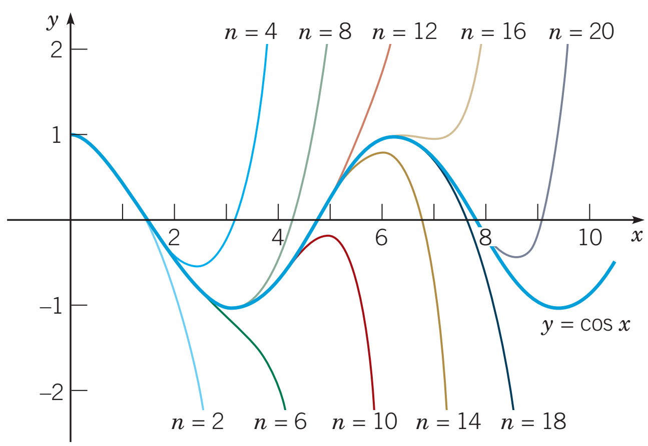


FIGURE 5.2.1 Polynomial approximations to $y = \cos x$. The value of n is the degree of the approximating polynomial.

[2]The result given in equation (10) and other similar formulas in this chapter can be proved by an induction argument resembling the one just given for equation (9). We assume that the results are plausible and omit the inductive argument hereafter. (See Problem 16.)

the approximation is satisfactory becomes longer, and for each x in this interval the accuracy of the approximation improves. However, you should always remember that a truncated power series provides only a local approximation of the solution in a neighborhood of the initial point $x = 0$; it cannot adequately represent the solution for large $|x|$.

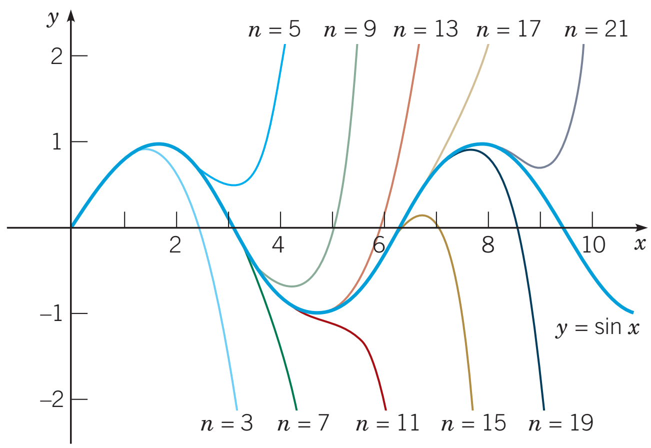


FIGURE 5.2.2 Polynomial approximations to $y = \sin x$. The value of n is the degree of the approximating polynomial.

In Example 1 we knew from the start that $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ form a fundamental set of solutions of equation (4). However, if we had not known this and had simply solved equation (4) using series methods, we would still have obtained the solution (11). In recognition of the fact that the differential equation (4) often occurs in applications, we might decide to give the two solutions of equation (11) special names, perhaps

$$C(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n)!} x^{2n}, \qquad S(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n+1)!} x^{2n+1}. \tag{12}$$

Then we might ask what properties these functions have. For instance, can we be sure that $C(x)$ and $S(x)$ form a fundamental set of solutions? It follows at once from the series expansions that $C(0) = 1$ and $S(0) = 0$. By differentiating the series for $C(x)$ and $S(x)$ term by term, we find that

$$S'(x) = C(x), \qquad C'(x) = -S(x). \tag{13}$$

Thus at $x = 0$, we have $S'(0) = 1$ and $C'(0) = 0$. Consequently, the Wronskian of C and S at $x = 0$ is

$$W[C, S](0) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 1, \tag{14}$$

so these functions do indeed form a fundamental set of solutions. By substituting $-x$ for x in each of equations (12), we obtain $C(-x) = C(x)$ and $S(-x) = -S(x)$. Moreover, by calculating with the infinite series,[3] we can show that the functions $C(x)$ and $S(x)$ have all the usual analytical and algebraic properties of the cosine and sine functions, respectively.

Although you probably first saw the sine and cosine functions defined in a more elementary manner in terms of right triangles, it is interesting that these functions can be defined as solutions of a certain simple second-order linear differential equation. To be precise, the function $\sin x$ can be defined as the unique solution of the initial-value problem $y'' + y = 0$, $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 1$; similarly, $\cos x$ can be defined as the unique solution of the initial-value

[3] Such an analysis is given in Section 24 of Knopp (see the References at the end of this chapter).

problem $y'' + y = 0$, $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = 0$. Many other functions that are important in mathematical physics are also defined as solutions of certain initial-value problems. For most of these functions there is no simpler or more elementary way to approach them.

EXAMPLE 2

Find a series solution in powers of x of Airy's[4] equation

$$y'' - xy = 0, \quad -\infty < x < \infty. \tag{15}$$

Solution:

For this equation $P(x) = 1$, $Q(x) = 0$, and $R(x) = -x$; hence every point is an ordinary point. We assume that

$$y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \tag{16}$$

and that the series converges in some interval $|x| < \rho$. The series for y'' is given by equation (7); as explained in the preceding example, we can rewrite it as

$$y'' = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}x^n. \tag{17}$$

Substituting the series (16) and (17) for y and y'' into the left-hand side of equation (15), we obtain

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}x^n - x\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1)a_{x+2}x^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{n+1}. \tag{18}$$

Next, we shift the index of summation in the second series on the right-hand side of equation (18) by replacing n by $n-1$ and starting the summation at 1 rather than zero. Thus we write equation (15) as

$$2 \cdot 1 a_2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}x^n - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1}x^n = 0.$$

Again, for this equation to be satisfied for all x in some interval, the coefficients of like powers of x must be zero; hence $a_2 = 0$, and we obtain the recurrence relation

$$(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2} - a_{n-1} = 0 \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{19}$$

Since a_{n+2} is given in terms of a_{n-1}, the a's are determined in steps of three. Thus a_0 determines a_3, which in turn determines a_6, ... ; a_1 determines a_4, which in turn determines a_7, ... ; and a_2 determines a_5, which in turn determines a_8, ... Since $a_2 = 0$, we immediately conclude that $a_5 = a_8 = a_{11} = \cdots = 0$.

For the sequence $a_0, a_3, a_6, a_9, \ldots$ we set $n = 1, 4, 7, 10, \ldots$ in the recurrence relation:

$$a_3 = \frac{a_0}{2 \cdot 3}, \quad a_6 = \frac{a_3}{5 \cdot 6} = \frac{a_0}{2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 6}, \quad a_9 = \frac{a_6}{8 \cdot 9} = \frac{a_0}{2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 6 \cdot 8 \cdot 9}, \ldots.$$

These results suggest the general formula

$$a_{3n} = \frac{a_0}{2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 6 \cdots (3n-1)(3n)}, \quad n \geq 4.$$

[4] Sir George Biddell Airy (1801–1892), an English astronomer and mathematician, was director of the Greenwich Observatory from 1835 to 1881. He studied the equation named for him in an 1838 paper on optics. One reason why Airy's equation is of interest is that for x negative the solutions are similar to trigonometric functions, and for x positive they are similar to hyperbolic functions. Can you explain why it is reasonable to expect such behavior?

For the sequence $a_1, a_4, a_7, a_{10}, \ldots$, we set $n = 2, 5, 8, 11, \ldots$ in the recurrence relation:

$$a_4 = \frac{a_1}{3 \cdot 4}, \quad a_7 = \frac{a_4}{6 \cdot 7} = \frac{a_1}{3 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7}, \quad a_{10} = \frac{a_7}{9 \cdot 10} = \frac{a_1}{3 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7 \cdot 9 \cdot 10}, \ \ldots.$$

In general, we have

$$a_{3n+1} = \frac{a_1}{3 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7 \cdots (3n)(3n+1)}, \qquad n \geq 4.$$

Thus the general solution of Airy's equation is

$$\begin{aligned} y(x) &= a_0\left[1 + \frac{x^3}{2 \cdot 3} + \frac{x^6}{2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 6} + \cdots + \frac{x^{3n}}{2 \cdot 3 \cdots (3n-1)(3n)} + \cdots\right] \\ &\quad + a_1\left[x + \frac{x^4}{3 \cdot 4} + \frac{x^7}{3 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7} + \cdots + \frac{x^{3n+1}}{3 \cdot 4 \cdots (3n)(3n+1)} + \cdots\right] \\ &= a_0 y_1(x) + a_1 y_2(x) \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

where $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ are the first and second bracketed expressions in equation (20).

Having obtained these two series solutions, we can now investigate their convergence. Because of the rapid growth of the denominators of the terms in the series for $y_1(x)$ and for $y_2(x)$, we might expect these series to have a large radius of convergence. Indeed, it is easy to use the ratio test to show that both of these series converge for all x; see Problem 17.

Assume for the moment that the series for y_1 and y_2 do converge for all x. Then, by choosing first $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 0$ and then $a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1$, it follows that y_1 and y_2 are individually solutions of equation (15). Notice that y_1 satisfies the initial conditions $y_1(0) = 1$, $y_1'(0) = 0$ and that y_2 satisfies the initial conditions $y_2(0) = 0$, $y_2'(0) = 1$. Thus $W[y_1, y_2](0) = 1 \neq 0$, and consequently y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions. Hence the general solution of Airy's equation is

$$y = a_0 y_1(x) + a_1 y_2(x) \qquad -\infty < x < \infty.$$

In Figures 5.2.3 and 5.2.4, respectively, we show the graphs of the solutions y_1 and y_2 of Airy's equation as well as graphs of several partial sums of the two series in equation (20). Again, the partial sums provide local approximations to the solutions in a neighborhood of the origin. Although the quality of the approximation improves as the number of terms increases, no polynomial can adequately represent y_1 and y_2 for large $|x|$. A practical way to estimate the interval in which a given partial sum is reasonably accurate is to compare the graphs of that partial sum and the next one, obtained by including one more term. As soon as the graphs begin to separate noticeably, we can be confident that the original partial sum is no longer accurate. For example, in Figure 5.2.3 the graphs for $n = 24$ and $n = 27$ begin to separate at about $x = -9/2$. Thus, beyond this point, the partial sum of degree 24 is worthless as an approximation to the solution.

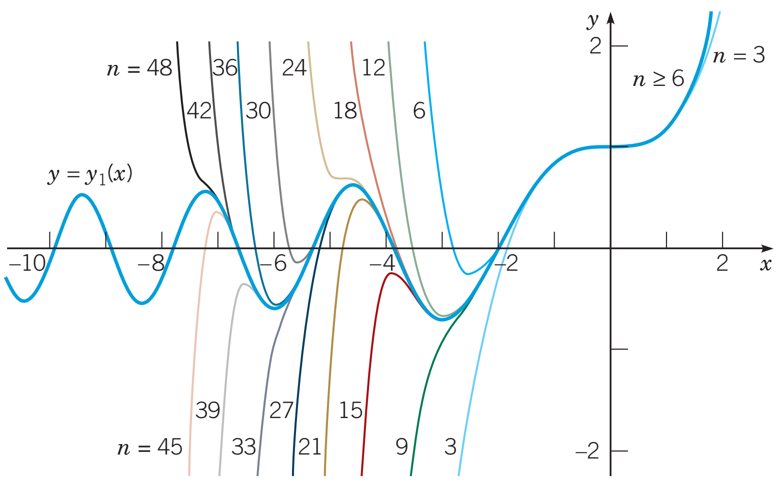


FIGURE 5.2.3 Polynomial approximations to the solution $y = y_1(x)$ of Airy's equation. The value of n is the degree of the approximating polynomial.

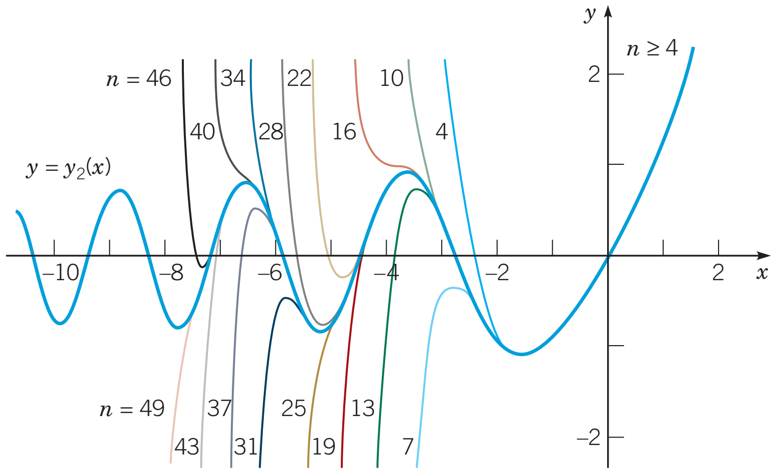


FIGURE 5.2.4 Polynomial approximations to the solution $y = y_2(x)$ of Airy's equation. The value of n is the degree of the approximating polynomial.

Observe that both y_1 and y_2 are monotone for $x > 0$ and oscillatory for $x < 0$. You can also see from the figures that the oscillations are not uniform but, rather, decay in amplitude and increase in frequency as the distance from the origin increases. In contrast to Example 1, the solutions y_1 and y_2 of Airy's equation are not elementary functions that you have already encountered in calculus. However, because of their importance in some physical applications, these functions have been extensively studied, and their properties are well known to applied mathematicians and scientists.

EXAMPLE 3

Find a solution of Airy's equation in powers of $x - 1$.

Solution:

The point $x = 1$ is an ordinary point of equation (15), and thus we look for a solution of the form

$$y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (x-1)^n,$$

where we assume that the series converges in some interval $|x - 1| < \rho$. Then

$$y' = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n a_n (x-1)^{n-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+1) a_{n+1} (x-1)^n,$$

and

$$y'' = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n(n-1) a_n (x-1)^{n-2} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1) a_{n+2} (x-1)^n.$$

Substituting for y and y'' in equation (15), we obtain

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+2)(n+1) a_{n+2} (x-1)^n = x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (x-1)^n. \tag{21}$$

Now to equate the coefficients of like powers of $(x - 1)$, we must express x, the coefficient of y in equation (15), in powers of $x - 1$; that is, we write $x = 1 + (x - 1)$. Note that this is precisely the

Taylor series for x about $x = 1$. (See Problem 9 in Section 5.1.) Then equation (21) takes the form

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}(x-1)^n = (1+(x-1))\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n(x-1)^n$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n(x-1)^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n(x-1)^{n+1}.$$

Shifting the index of summation in the second series on the right gives

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}(x-1)^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_n(x-1)^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}a_{n-1}(x-1)^n.$$

Equating coefficients of like powers of $x-1$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 2a_2 &= a_0, \\ (3\cdot 2)a_3 &= a_1 + a_0, \\ (4\cdot 3)a_4 &= a_2 + a_1, \\ (5\cdot 4)a_5 &= a_3 + a_2, \\ &\ \vdots \end{aligned}$$

The general recurrence relation is

$$(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2} = a_n + a_{n-1} \quad \text{for} \quad n \ge 1. \tag{22}$$

Solving for the first few coefficients a_n in terms of a_0 and a_1, we find that

$$a_2 = \frac{a_0}{2}, \quad a_3 = \frac{a_1}{6} + \frac{a_0}{6}, \quad a_4 = \frac{a_2}{12} + \frac{a_1}{12} = \frac{a_0}{24} + \frac{a_1}{12}, \quad a_5 = \frac{a_3}{20} + \frac{a_2}{20} = \frac{a_0}{30} + \frac{a_1}{120}.$$

Hence

$$y = a_0\left[1 + \frac{(x-1)^2}{2} + \frac{(x-1)^3}{6} + \frac{(x-1)^4}{24} + \frac{(x-1)^5}{30} + \cdots\right]$$

$$+ a_1\left[(x-1) + \frac{(x-1)^3}{6} + \frac{(x-1)^4}{12} + \frac{(x-1)^5}{120} + \cdots\right]. \tag{23}$$

In general, when the recurrence relation has more than two terms, as in equation (22), the determination of a formula for a_n in terms a_0 and a_1 will be fairly complicated, if not impossible. In this example such a formula is not readily apparent. Lacking such a formula, we cannot test the two series in equation (23) for convergence by direct methods such as the ratio test. However, we shall see in Section 5.3 that even without knowing the formula for a_n, it is possible to establish that the two series in equation (23) converge for all x. Further, they define functions y_3 and y_4 that are a fundamental set of solutions of the Airy equation (15). Thus

$$y = a_0y_3(x) + a_1y_4(x)$$

is the general solution of Airy's equation for $-\infty < x < \infty$.

While Airy's equation is not particularly complicated, Example 3 shows some of the complications encountered when looking for a power series solution expressed in powers of $x - x_0$ with $x_0 \neq 0$. There is an alternative. We can make the change of variable $x - x_0 = t$, obtaining a new differential equation for y as a function of t, and then look for solutions of this new equation of the form $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nt^n$. When we have finished the calculations, we replace t by $x - x_0$ (see Problem 15).

In Examples 2 and 3 we have found two sets of solutions of Airy's equation. The functions y_1 and y_2 defined by the series in equation (20) are a fundamental set of solutions of equation (15) for all x, and this is also true for the functions y_3 and y_4 defined by the series in equation (23). According to the general theory of second-order linear equations, each of the first two functions can be expressed as a linear combination of the latter two functions, and vice versa—a result that is certainly not obvious from an examination of the series alone.

Finally, we emphasize that it is not particularly important if, as in Example 3, we are unable to determine the general coefficient a_n in terms of a_0 and a_1. What is essential is that we can determine *as many coefficients as we want.* Thus we can find as many terms in the two series solutions as we want, even if we cannot determine the general term. While the task of calculating several coefficients in a power series solution is not difficult, it can be tedious. A symbolic manipulation package can be very helpful here; some are able to find a specified number of terms in a power series solution in response to a single command. With a suitable graphics package we can also produce plots such as those shown in the figures in this section.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 11:

a. Seek power series solutions of the given differential equation about the given point x_0; find the recurrence relation that the coefficients must satisfy.
b. Find the first four nonzero terms in each of two solutions y_1 and y_2 (unless the series terminates sooner).
c. By evaluating the Wronskian $W[y_1, y_2](x_0)$, show that y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions.
d. If possible, find the general term in each solution.

1. $y'' - y = 0, \quad x_0 = 0$
2. $y'' + 3y' = 0, \quad x_0 = 0$
3. $y'' - xy' - y = 0, \quad x_0 = 0$
4. $y'' - xy' - y = 0, \quad x_0 = 1$
5. $y'' + k^2x^2y = 0, \quad x_0 = 0, \quad k$ a constant
6. $(1 - x)y'' + y = 0, \quad x_0 = 0$
7. $y'' + xy' + 2y = 0, \quad x_0 = 0$
8. $xy'' + y' + xy = 0, \quad x_0 = 1$
9. $(3 - x^2)y'' - 3xy' - y = 0, \quad x_0 = 0$
10. $2y'' + xy' + 3y = 0, \quad x_0 = 0$
11. $2y'' + (x + 1)y' + 3y = 0, \quad x_0 = 2$

In each of Problems 12 through 14:

a. Find the first five nonzero terms in the solution of the given initial-value problem.
G **b.** Plot the four-term and the five-term approximations to the solution on the same axes.
c. From the plot in part b, estimate the interval in which the four-term approximation is reasonably accurate.

12. $y'' - xy' - y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 1;$ see Problem 3
13. $y'' + xy' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 4, \quad y'(0) = -1;$ see Problem 7
14. $(1 - x)y'' + xy' - y = 0, \quad y(0) = -3, \quad y'(0) = 2$
15. **a.** By making the change of variable $x - 1 = t$ and assuming that y has a Taylor series in powers of t, find two series solutions of

$$y'' + (x - 1)^2y' + (x^2 - 1)y = 0$$

in powers of $x - 1$.
b. Show that you obtain the same result by assuming that y has a Taylor series in powers of $x - 1$ and also expressing the coefficient $x^2 - 1$ in powers of $x - 1$.
16. Prove equation (10).
17. Show directly, using the ratio test, that the two series solutions of Airy's equation about $x = 0$ converge for all x; see equation (20) of the text.
18. **The Hermite Equation.** The equation

$$y'' - 2xy' + \lambda y = 0, \quad -\infty < x < \infty,$$

where λ is a constant, is known as the Hermite[5] equation. It is an important equation in mathematical physics.

a. Find the first four nonzero terms in each of two solutions about $x = 0$ and show that they form a fundamental set of solutions.
b. Observe that if λ is a nonnegative even integer, then one or the other of the series solutions terminates and becomes a polynomial. Find the polynomial solutions for $\lambda = 0, 2, 4, 6, 8$, and 10. Note that each polynomial is determined only up to a multiplicative constant.
c. The Hermite polynomial $H_n(x)$ is defined as the polynomial solution of the Hermite equation with $\lambda = 2n$ for which the coefficient of x^n is 2^n. Find $H_0(x), H_1(x), \dots, H_5(x)$.

19. Consider the initial-value problem $y' = \sqrt{1 - y^2}$, $y(0) = 0$.
a. Show that $y = \sin x$ is the solution of this initial-value problem.
b. Look for a solution of the initial-value problem in the form of a power series about $x = 0$. Find the coefficients up to the term in x^3 in this series.

In each of Problems 20 through 23, plot several partial sums in a series solution of the given initial-value problem about $x = 0$, thereby obtaining graphs analogous to those in Figures 5.2.1 through 5.2.4 (except that we do not know an explicit formula for the actual solution).

G **20.** $y'' + xy' + 2y = 0, \; y(0) = 0, \; y'(0) = 1;$ see Problem 7
G **21.** $(4 - x^2)y'' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$
G **22.** $y'' + x^2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0;$ see Problem 5
G **23.** $(1 - x)y'' + xy' - 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

[5] Charles Hermite (1822–1901) was an influential French analyst and algebraist. An inspiring teacher, he was professor at the École Polytechnique and the Sorbonne. He introduced the Hermite functions in 1864 and showed in 1873 that e is a transcendental number (that is, e is not a root of any polynomial equation with rational coefficients). His name is also associated with Hermitian matrices (see Section 7.3), some of whose properties he discovered.

5.3 Series Solutions Near an Ordinary Point, Part II

In the preceding section we considered the problem of finding solutions of

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0, \tag{1}$$

where P, Q, and R are polynomials, in the neighborhood of an ordinary point x_0. Assuming that equation (1) does have a solution $y = \phi(x)$ and that ϕ has a Taylor series

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x - x_0)^n \tag{2}$$

that converges for $|x - x_0| < \rho$, where $\rho > 0$, we found that the a_n can be determined by directly substituting the series (2) for y in equation (1).

Let us now consider how we might justify the statement that if x_0 is an ordinary point of equation (1), then there exist solutions of the form (2). We also consider the question of the radius of convergence of such a series. In doing this, we are led to a generalization of the definition of an ordinary point.

Suppose, then, that there is a solution of equation (1) of the form (2). By differentiating equation (2) m times and setting x equal to x_0, we obtain

$$m!a_m = \phi^{(m)}(x_0). \tag{3}$$

Hence, to compute a_n in the series (2), we must show that we can determine $\phi^{(n)}(x_0)$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ from the differential equation (1).

Suppose that $y = \phi(x)$ is a solution of equation (1) satisfying the initial conditions $y(x_0) = y_0$, $y'(x_0) = y'_0$. Then $a_0 = y_0$ and $a_1 = y'_0$. If we are solely interested in finding a solution of equation (1) without specifying any initial conditions, then a_0 and a_1 remain arbitrary. To determine $\phi^{(n)}(x_0)$ and the corresponding a_n for $n = 2, 3, \ldots,$ we turn to equation (1) with the goal of finding a formula for $\phi''(x), \phi'''(x), \ldots$. Since ϕ is a solution of equation (1), we have

$$P(x)\phi''(x) + Q(x)\phi'(x) + R(x)\phi(x) = 0.$$

For the interval about x_0 for which P is nonzero, we can write this equation in the form

$$\phi''(x) = -p(x)\phi'(x) - q(x)\phi(x), \tag{4}$$

where $p(x) = Q(x)/P(x)$ and $q(x) = R(x)/P(x)$. Observe that, at $x = x_0$, the right-hand side of equation (4) is known, thus allowing us to compute $\phi''(x_0)$: Setting x equal to x_0 in equation (4) gives

$$\phi''(x_0) = -p(x_0)\phi'(x_0) - q(x_0)\phi(x_0) = -p(x_0)a_1 - q(x_0)a_0.$$

Hence, using equation (3) with $m = 2$, we find that a_2 is given by

$$2!a_2 = \phi''(x_0) = -p(x_0)a_1 - q(x_0)a_0. \tag{5}$$

To determine a_3, we differentiate equation (4) and then set x equal to x_0, obtaining

$$\begin{aligned} 3!a_3 = \phi'''(x_0) &= -\big(p(x)\phi'(x) + q(x)\phi(x)\big)'\Big|_{x=x_0} \\ &= -2!\,p(x_0)a_2 - \big(p'(x_0) + q(x_0)\big)a_1 - q'(x_0)a_0. \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

Substituting for a_2 from equation (5) gives a_3 in terms of a_1 and a_0.

Since P, Q, and R are polynomials and $P(x_0) \neq 0$, all the derivatives of p and q exist at x_0. Hence we can continue to differentiate equation (4) indefinitely, determining after each differentiation the successive coefficients $a_4, a_5, \ldots$ by setting x equal to x_0.

EXAMPLE 1

Let $y = \phi(x)$ be a solution of the initial value problem $(1 + x^2)y'' + 2xy' + 4x^2 y = 0$, $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 1$. Determine $\phi''(0)$, $\phi'''(0)$, and $\phi^{(4)}(0)$.

Solution:

To find $\phi''(0)$, simply evaluate the differential equation when $x = 0$:

$$(1 + 0^2)\phi''(0) + 2 \cdot 0 \cdot \phi'(0) + 4 \cdot 0^2 \cdot \phi(0) = 0,$$

so $\phi''(0) = 0$.

To find $\phi'''(0)$, differentiate the differential equation with respect to x:

$$(1 + x^2)\phi'''(x) + 2x\phi''(x) + 2x\phi''(x) + 2\phi'(x) + 4x^2\phi'(x) + 8x\phi(x) = 0. \tag{7}$$

Then evaluate the resulting equation (7) at $x = 0$:

$$\phi'''(0) + 2\phi'(0) = 0.$$

Thus $\phi'''(0) = -2\phi'(0) = -2$ (because $\phi'(0) = 1$).

Finally, to find $\phi^{(4)}(0)$, first differentiate equation (7) with respect to x:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(1 + x^2\right)\phi^{(4)}(x) \ + 2x\phi'''(x) + 4x\phi'''(x) + 4\phi''(x) + \left(2 + 4x^2\right)\phi''(x) + 8x\phi'(x) \\ + 8x\phi'(x) + 8\phi(x) = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Evaluating this equation at $x = 0$ we find

$$\phi^{(4)}(0) + 6\phi''(0) + 8\phi(0) = 0.$$

Finally, using $\phi(0) = 0$ and $\phi''(0) = 0$, we conclude that $\phi^{(4)}(0) = 0$.

Notice that the important property that we used in determining the a_n was that we could compute infinitely many derivatives of the functions p and q. It might seem reasonable to relax our assumption that the functions p and q are ratios of polynomials and simply require that they be infinitely differentiable in the neighborhood of x_0. Unfortunately, this condition is too weak to ensure that we can prove the convergence of the resulting series expansion for $y = \phi(x)$. What is needed is to assume that the functions p and q are *analytic* at x_0; that is, they have Taylor series expansions that converge to them in some interval about the point x_0:

$$p(x) = p_0 + p_1(x - x_0) + \cdots + p_n(x - x_0)^n + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n(x - x_0)^n, \tag{8}$$

$$q(x) = q_0 + q_1(x - x_0) + \cdots + q_n(x - x_0)^n + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} q_n(x - x_0)^n. \tag{9}$$

With this idea in mind, we can generalize the definitions of an ordinary point and a singular point of equation (1) as follows: if the functions $p(x) = Q(x)/P(x)$ and $q(x) = R(x)/P(x)$ are analytic at x_0, then the point x_0 is said to be an **ordinary point** of the differential equation (1); otherwise, it is a **singular point**.

Now let us turn to the question of the interval of convergence of the series solution. One possibility is actually to compute the series solution for each problem and then to apply one of the tests for convergence of an infinite series to determine its radius of convergence. Unfortunately, these tests require us to obtain an expression for the general coefficient a_n as a function of n, and this task is often quite difficult, if not impossible; recall Example 3 in Section 5.2. However, the question can be answered at once for a wide class of problems by the following theorem.

Theorem 5.3.1

If x_0 is an ordinary point of the differential equation (1)

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0,$$

that is, if $p(x) = Q(x)/P(x)$ and $q(x) = R(x)/P(x)$ are analytic at x_0, then the general solution of equation (1) is

$$y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x - x_0)^n = a_0 y_1(x) + a_1 y_2(x),$$

where a_0 and a_1 are arbitrary, and y_1 and y_2 are two power series solutions that are analytic at x_0. The solutions y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions. Further, the radius of convergence for each of the series solutions y_1 and y_2 is at least as large as the minimum of the radii of convergence of the series for p and q.

To see that y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions, note that they have the form $y_1(x) = 1 + b_2(x - x_0)^2 + \cdots$ and $y_2(x) = (x - x_0) + c_2(x - x_0)^2 + \cdots$, where $b_2 + c_2 = a_2$. Hence y_1 satisfies the initial conditions $y_1(x_0) = 1$, $y_1'(x_0) = 0$, and y_2 satisfies the initial conditions $y_2(x_0) = 0$, $y_2'(x_0) = 1$. Thus $W[y_1, y_2](x_0) = 1$.

Also note that although calculating the coefficients by successively differentiating the differential equation is excellent in theory, it is usually not a practical computational procedure. Rather, you should substitute the series (2) for y in the differential equation (1) and determine the coefficients so that the differential equation is satisfied, as in the examples in the preceding section.

We will not prove this theorem, which in a slightly more general form was established by Fuchs.[6] What is important for our purposes is that there is a series solution of the form (2) and that the radius of convergence of the series solution cannot be less than the smaller of the radii of convergence of the series for p and q; hence we need only determine these.

This can be done in either of two ways. Again, one possibility is simply to compute the power series for p and q and then to determine the radii of convergence by using one of the convergence tests for infinite series. However, there is an easier way when $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, and $R(x)$ are polynomials. It is shown in the theory of functions of a complex variable that the ratio of two polynomials, say, $Q(x)/P(x)$, has a convergent power series expansion about a point $x = x_0$ if $P(x_0) \neq 0$. Further, if we assume that any factors common to $Q(x)$ and $P(x)$ have been canceled, then the radius of convergence of the power series for $Q(x)/P(x)$ about the point x_0 is precisely the distance from x_0 to the nearest zero of $P(x)$. In determining this distance, we must remember that $P(x) = 0$ may have complex roots, and these must also be considered.

EXAMPLE 2

What is the radius of convergence of the Taylor series for $(1 + x^2)^{-1}$ about $x = 0$?

Solution:

One way to proceed is to find the Taylor series in question, namely,

$$\frac{1}{1 + x^2} = 1 - x^2 + x^4 - x^6 + \cdots + (-1)^n x^{2n} + \cdots.$$

Then it can be verified by the ratio test that $\rho = 1$. Another approach is to note that the zeros of $1 + x^2$ are $x = \pm i$. Since the distance in the complex plane from 0 to i or to $-i$ is 1, the radius of convergence of the power series about $x = 0$ is 1.

[6]Lazarus Immanuel Fuchs (1833–1902), a German mathematician, was a student and later a professor at the University of Berlin. He proved the result of Theorem 5.3.1 in 1866. His most important research was on singular points of linear differential equations. He recognized the significance of regular singular points (Section 5.4), and equations whose only singularities, including the point at infinity, are regular singular points are known as Fuchsian equations.

EXAMPLE 3

What is the radius of convergence of the Taylor series for $(x^2 - 2x + 2)^{-1}$ about $x = 0$? about $x = 1$?

Solution:

First notice that

$$x^2 - 2x + 2 = 0$$

has solutions $x = 1 \pm i$. The distance in the complex plane from $x = 0$ to either $x = 1 + i$ or $x = 1 - i$ is $\sqrt{2}$; hence the radius of convergence of the Taylor series expansion $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ about $x = 0$ is $\sqrt{2}$.

The distance in the complex plane from $x = 1$ to either $x = 1 + i$ or $x = 1 - i$ is 1; hence the radius of convergence of the Taylor series expansion $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n (x-1)^n$ about $x = 1$ is 1.

According to Theorem 5.3.1, the series solutions of the Airy equation in Examples 2 and 3 of the preceding section converge for all values of x and $x - 1$, respectively, since in each problem $P(x) = 1$ and hence is never zero.

A series solution may converge for a wider range of x than indicated by Theorem 5.3.1, so the theorem actually gives only a lower bound on the radius of convergence of the series solution. This is illustrated by the Legendre polynomial solution of the Legendre equation given in the next example.

EXAMPLE 4

Determine a lower bound for the radius of convergence of series solutions about $x = 0$ for the Legendre equation

$$(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha + 1)y = 0,$$

where α is a constant.

Solution:

Note that $P(x) = 1 - x^2$, $Q(x) = -2x$, and $R(x) = \alpha(\alpha + 1)$ are polynomials, and that the zeros of P, namely, $x = \pm 1$, are a distance 1 from $x = 0$. Hence a series solution of the form $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ converges at least for $|x| < 1$, and possibly for larger values of x. Indeed, it can be shown that if α is a positive integer, one of the series solutions terminates after a finite number of terms, that is, one solution is a polynomial, and hence converges not just for $|x| < 1$ but for all x. For example, if $\alpha = 1$, the polynomial solution is $y = x$. See Problems 17 through 23 at the end of this section for a further discussion of the Legendre equation.

EXAMPLE 5

Determine a lower bound for the radius of convergence of series solutions of the differential equation

$$(1 + x^2)y'' + 2xy' + 4x^2 y = 0 \tag{10}$$

about the point $x = 0$; about the point $x = -\frac{1}{2}$.

Solution:

Again P, Q, and R are polynomials, and P has zeros at $x = \pm i$. The distance in the complex plane from 0 to $\pm i$ is 1, and from $-\dfrac{1}{2}$ to $\pm i$ is $\sqrt{1 + \dfrac{1}{4}} = \dfrac{\sqrt{5}}{2}$. Hence in the first case the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ converges at least for $|x| < 1$, and in the second case the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \left(x + \dfrac{1}{2}\right)^n$ converges at least for $\left|x + \dfrac{1}{2}\right| < \dfrac{\sqrt{5}}{2}$.

An interesting observation that we can make about equation (10) follows from Theorems 3.2.1 and 5.3.1. Suppose that initial conditions $y(0) = y_0$ and $y'(0) = y_0'$ are given. Since $1 + x^2 \neq 0$ for all x, we know from Theorem 3.2.1 that there exists a unique solution of the initial-value problem on $-\infty < x < \infty$. On the other hand, Theorem 5.3.1 only guarantees a series solution of the form $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ (with $a_0 = y_0$, $a_1 = y_0'$) for $-1 < x < 1$. The unique solution on the interval $-\infty < x < \infty$ may not have a power series about $x = 0$ that converges for all x.

EXAMPLE 6

Can we determine a series solution about $x = 0$ for the differential equation

$$y'' + (\sin x)y' + (1 + x^2)y = 0,$$

and if so, what is the radius of convergence?

Solution:

For this differential equation, $p(x) = \sin x$ and $q(x) = 1 + x^2$. Recall from calculus that $\sin x$ has a Taylor series expansion about $x = 0$ that converges for all x. Further, q also has a Taylor series expansion about $x = 0$, namely, $q(x) = 1 + x^2$, that converges for all x. Thus there is a series solution of the form $y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ with a_0 and a_1 arbitrary, and the series converges for all x.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, determine $\phi''(x_0)$, $\phi'''(x_0)$, and $\phi^{(4)}(x_0)$ for the given point x_0 if $y = \phi(x)$ is a solution of the given initial-value problem.

1. $y'' + xy' + y = 0; \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

2. $x^2 y'' + (1 + x)y' + 3(\ln x)y = 0; \quad y(1) = 2, \quad y'(1) = 0$

3. $y'' + x^2 y' + (\sin x)y = 0; \quad y(0) = a_0, \quad y'(0) = a_1$

In each of Problems 4 through 6, determine a lower bound for the radius of convergence of series solutions about each given point x_0 for the given differential equation.

4. $y'' + 4y' + 6xy = 0; \quad x_0 = 0, \quad x_0 = 4$

5. $(x^2 - 2x - 3)y'' + xy' + 4y = 0; \quad x_0 = 4, \quad x_0 = -4, \quad x_0 = 0$

6. $(1 + x^3)y'' + 4xy' + y = 0; \quad x_0 = 0, \quad x_0 = 2$

7. Determine a lower bound for the radius of convergence of series solutions about the given x_0 for each of the differential equations in Problems 1 through 11 of Section 5.2.

8. **The Chebyshev Equation.** The Chebyshev[7] differential equation is

$$(1 - x^2)y'' - xy' + \alpha^2 y = 0,$$

where α is a constant.

a. Determine two solutions in powers of x for $|x| < 1$, and show that they form a fundamental set of solutions.

b. Show that if α is a nonnegative integer n, then there is a polynomial solution of degree n. These polynomials, when properly normalized, are called the **Chebyshev polynomials**. They are very useful in problems that require a polynomial approximation to a function defined on $-1 \leq x \leq 1$.

c. Find a polynomial solution for each of the cases $\alpha = n = 0$, 1, 2, 3.

For each of the differential equations in Problems 9 through 11, find the first four nonzero terms in each of two power series solutions about the origin. Show that they form a fundamental set of solutions. What do you expect the radius of convergence to be for each solution?

9. $y'' + (\sin x)y = 0$

10. $e^x y'' + xy = 0$

11. $(\cos x)y'' + xy' - 2y = 0$

12. Let $y = x$ and $y = x^2$ be solutions of a differential equation $P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0$. Can you say whether the point $x = 0$ is an ordinary point or a singular point? Prove your answer.

First-Order Equations. The series methods discussed in this section are directly applicable to the first-order linear differential equation $P(x)y' + Q(x)y = 0$ at a point x_0, if the function $p = Q/P$ has a Taylor series expansion about that point. Such a point is called an ordinary point, and further, the radius of convergence of the series $y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x - x_0)^n$ is at least as large as the radius of convergence of the series for Q/P. In each of Problems 13 through 16, solve the given differential equation by a series in powers of x and verify that a_0 is arbitrary in each case. Problem 17 involves a nonhomogeneous differential equation to which series methods can be easily extended. Where possible, compare the series solution with the solution obtained by using the methods of Chapter 2.

[7] Pafnuty L. Chebyshev (1821–1894), the most influential nineteenth-century Russian mathematician, was for 35 years professor at the University of St. Petersburg, which produced a long line of distinguished mathematicians. His study of Chebyshev polynomials began in about 1854 as part of an investigation of the approximation of functions by polynomials. Chebyshev is also known for his work in number theory and probability.

13. $y' - y = 0$

14. $y' - xy = 0$

15. $(1-x)y' = y$

16. $y' - y = x^2$

The Legendre Equation. Problems 17 through 23 deal with the Legendre[8] equation

$$(1-x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha+1)y = 0.$$

As indicated in Example 4, the point $x = 0$ is an ordinary point of this equation, and the distance from the origin to the nearest zero of $P(x) = 1 - x^2$ is 1. Hence the radius of convergence of series solutions about $x = 0$ is at least 1. Also notice that we need to consider only $\alpha > -1$ because if $\alpha \le -1$, then the substitution $\alpha = -(1+\gamma)$, where $\gamma \ge 0$, leads to the Legendre equation $(1-x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \gamma(\gamma+1)y = 0$.

17. Show that two solutions of the Legendre equation for $|x| < 1$ are

$$y_1(x) = 1 - \frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{\alpha(\alpha-2)(\alpha+1)(\alpha+3)}{4!}x^4$$
$$+ \sum_{m=3}^{\infty}(-1)^m \frac{\alpha\cdots(\alpha-2m+2)(\alpha+1)\cdots(\alpha+2m-1)}{(2m)!}x^{2m},$$

$$y_2(x) = x - \frac{(\alpha-1)(\alpha+2)}{3!}x^3$$
$$+\frac{(\alpha-1)(\alpha-3)(\alpha+2)(\alpha+4)}{5!}x^5$$
$$+\sum_{m=3}^{\infty}(-1)^m$$
$$\times\frac{(\alpha-1)\cdots(\alpha-2m+1)(\alpha+2)\cdots(\alpha+2m)}{(2m+1)!}x^{2m+1}.$$

18. Show that if α is zero or a positive even integer $2n$, the series solution y_1 reduces to a polynomial of degree $2n$ containing only even powers of x. Find the polynomials corresponding to $\alpha = 0$, 2, and 4. Show that if α is a positive odd integer $2n+1$, the series solution y_2 reduces to a polynomial of degree $2n+1$ containing only odd powers of x. Find the polynomials corresponding to $\alpha = 1$, 3, and 5.

19. The Legendre polynomial $P_n(x)$ is defined as the polynomial solution of the Legendre equation with $\alpha = n$ that also satisfies the condition $P_n(1) = 1$.

a. Using the results of Problem 18, find the Legendre polynomials $P_0(x), \ldots, P_5(x)$.

G **b.** Plot the graphs of $P_0(x), \ldots, P_5(x)$ for $-1 \le x \le 1$.

N **c.** Find the zeros of $P_0(x), \ldots, P_5(x)$.

[8]Adrien-Marie Legendre (1752–1833) held various positions in the French Académie des Sciences from 1783 onward. His primary work was in the fields of elliptic functions and number theory. The Legendre functions, solutions of Legendre's equation, first appeared in 1784 in his study of the attraction of spheroids.

20. The Legendre polynomials play an important role in mathematical physics. For example, in solving Laplace's equation (the potential equation) in spherical coordinates, we encounter the equation

$$\frac{d^2F(\varphi)}{d\varphi^2} + \cot\varphi\frac{dF(\varphi)}{d\varphi} + n(n+1)F(\varphi) = 0, \quad 0 < \varphi < \pi,$$

where n is a positive integer. Show that the change of variable $x = \cos\varphi$ leads to the Legendre equation with $\alpha = n$ for $y = f(x) = F(\arccos x)$.

21. Show that for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$, the corresponding Legendre polynomial is given by

$$P_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^n n!}\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(x^2-1)^n.$$

This formula, known as Rodrigues's formula,[9] is true for all positive integers n.

22. Show that the Legendre equation can also be written as

$$\left((1-x^2)y'\right)' = -\alpha(\alpha+1)y.$$

Then it follows that

$$\left((1-x^2)P_n'(x)\right)' = -n(n+1)P_n(x)$$

and

$$\left((1-x^2)P_m'(x)\right)' = -m(m+1)P_m(x).$$

By multiplying the first equation by $P_m(x)$ and the second equation by $P_n(x)$, integrating by parts, and then subtracting one equation from the other, show that

$$\int_{-1}^{1} P_n(x)P_m(x)\,dx = 0 \quad \text{if } n \ne m.$$

This property of the Legendre polynomials is known as the orthogonality property. If $m = n$, it can be shown that the value of the preceding integral is $2/(2n+1)$.

23. Given a polynomial f of degree n, it is possible to express f as a linear combination of $P_0, P_1, P_2, \ldots, P_n$:

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k P_k(x).$$

Using the result of Problem 22, show that

$$a_k = \frac{2k+1}{2}\int_{-1}^{1} f(x)P_k(x)\,dx.$$

[9]Benjamin Olinde Rodrigues (1795–1851) published this result as part of his doctoral thesis from the University of Paris in 1815. He then became a banker and social reformer but retained an interest in mathematics. Unfortunately, his later papers were not appreciated until the late twentieth century.

5.4 Euler Equations; Regular Singular Points

In this section we will begin to consider how to solve equations of the form

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0 \tag{1}$$

in the neighborhood of a singular point x_0. Recall that if the functions P, Q, and R are polynomials having no factors common to all three of them, then the singular points of equation (1) are the points for which $P(x) = 0$.

Euler Equations. A relatively simple differential equation that has a singular point is the **Euler equation**[10]

$$L[y] = x^2y'' + \alpha xy' + \beta y = 0, \tag{2}$$

where α and β are real constants. Then $P(x) = x^2$, $Q(x) = \alpha x$, and $R(x) = \beta$. If $\beta \neq 0$, then $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, and $R(x)$ have no common factors, so the only singular point of equation (2) is $x = 0$; all other points are ordinary points. For convenience we first consider the interval $x > 0$; later we extend our results to the interval $x < 0$.

Observe that $(x^r)' = rx^{r-1}$ and $(x^r)'' = r(r-1)x^{r-2}$. Hence, if we assume that equation (2) has a solution of the form

$$y = x^r, \tag{3}$$

then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L[x^r] &= x^2(x^r)'' + \alpha x(x^r)' + \beta x^r \\ &= x^2 r(r-1)x^{r-2} + \alpha x(rx^{r-1}) + \beta x^r \\ &= x^r(r(r-1) + \alpha r + \beta). \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

If r is a root of the quadratic equation

$$F(r) = r(r-1) + \alpha r + \beta = 0, \tag{5}$$

then $L[x^r]$ is zero, and $y = x^r$ is a solution of equation (2). The roots of equation (5) are

$$r_1, r_2 = \frac{-(\alpha - 1) \pm \sqrt{(\alpha-1)^2 - 4\beta}}{2}, \tag{6}$$

and the quadratic polynomial $F(r)$ defined in equation (5) can also be written as $F(r) = (r - r_1)(r - r_2)$. Mirroring the treatment of second-order linear differential equations with constant coefficients, we consider separately the cases in which the roots are real and different, real but equal, and complex conjugates. Indeed, the entire discussion of Euler equations is similar to the treatment of second-order linear equations with constant coefficients in Chapter 3, with e^{rx} replaced by x^r.

Real, Distinct Roots. If $F(r) = 0$ has real roots r_1 and r_2, with $r_1 \neq r_2$, then $y_1(x) = x^{r_1}$ and $y_2(x) = x^{r_2}$ are solutions of equation (2). Since

$$W[x^{r_1}, x^{r_2}] = (r_2 - r_1)x^{r_1+r_2-1}$$

is nonzero for $r_1 \neq r_2$ and $x > 0$, it follows that the general solution of equation (2) is

$$y = c_1x^{r_1} + c_2x^{r_2}, \quad x > 0. \tag{7}$$

Note that if r is not a rational number, then x^r is defined by $x^r = e^{r \ln x}$.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve

$$2x^2y'' + 3xy' - y = 0, \quad x > 0. \tag{8}$$

[10]This equation is sometimes called the Cauchy–Euler equation or the equidimensional equation. Euler studied it in about 1740, but its solution was known to Johann Bernoulli before 1700.

Solution:

Substituting $y = x^r$ in equation (8) gives

$$x^r(2r(r-1) + 3r - 1) = x^r(2r^2 + r - 1) = x^r(2r-1)(r+1) = 0.$$

Hence $r_1 = \dfrac{1}{2}$ and $r_2 = -1$, so the general solution of equation (8) is

$$y = c_1 x^{1/2} + c_2 x^{-1}, \quad x > 0. \tag{9}$$

Equal Roots. If the roots r_1 and r_2 are equal, then we obtain only one solution $y_1(x) = x^{r_1}$ of the assumed form. A second solution can be obtained by the method of reduction of order, but for the purpose of our future discussion we consider an alternative method. Since $r_1 = r_2$, it follows that $F(r) = (r - r_1)^2$. Thus in this case, not only does $F(r_1) = 0$ but also $F'(r_1) = 0$. This suggests differentiating equation (4) with respect to r and then setting r equal to r_1. By differentiating equation (4) with respect to r, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} L[x^r] &= \frac{\partial}{\partial r}[x^r F(r)] = \frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left[x^r (r - r_1)^2\right] \\ &= (r - r_1)^2 x^r \ln x + 2(r - r_1)x^r. \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

However, by interchanging differentiation with respect to x and with respect to r, we also obtain

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r} L[x^r] = L\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r} x^r\right] = L[x^r \ln x].$$

The right-hand side of equation (10) is zero for $r = r_1$; consequently, $L[x^{r_1} \ln x] = 0$ also. Therefore, a second solution of equation (2) is

$$y_2(x) = x^{r_1} \ln x, \quad x > 0. \tag{11}$$

By evaluating the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2, we find that

$$W[x^{r_1}, x^{r_1} \ln x] = x^{2r_1 - 1}.$$

Hence x^{r_1} and $x^{r_1} \ln x$ are a fundamental set of solutions for $x > 0$, and the general solution of equation (2) is

$$y = (c_1 + c_2 \ln x)x^{r_1}, \quad x > 0. \tag{12}$$

EXAMPLE 2

Solve

$$x^2 y'' + 5xy' + 4y = 0, \quad x > 0. \tag{13}$$

Solution:

Substituting $y = x^r$ in equation (13) gives

$$x^r(r(r-1) + 5r + 4) = x^r\left(r^2 + 4r + 4\right) = 0.$$

Hence $r_1 = r_2 = -2$, and

$$y = x^{-2}(c_1 + c_2 \ln x), \quad x > 0 \tag{14}$$

is the general solution of equation (13).

Complex Roots. Finally, suppose that the roots r_1 and r_2 of equation (5) are complex conjugates, say, $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$ and $r_2 = \lambda - i\mu$, with $\mu \neq 0$. We must now explain what is meant by x^r when r is complex. Remembering that

$$x^r = e^{r \ln x} \tag{15}$$

when $x > 0$ and r is real, we can use this equation to *define* x^r when r is complex. Then, using Euler's formula for $e^{i\mu \ln x}$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} x^{\lambda+i\mu} &= e^{(\lambda+i\mu)\ln x} = e^{\lambda \ln x} e^{i\mu \ln x} = x^{\lambda} e^{i\mu \ln x} \\ &= x^{\lambda}(\cos(\mu \ln x) + i \sin(\mu \ln x)), \quad x > 0. \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

With this definition of x^r for complex values of r, it can be verified that the usual laws of algebra and differential calculus hold, and hence x^{r_1} and x^{r_2} are indeed solutions of equation (2). The general solution of equation (2) is

$$y = c_1 x^{\lambda+i\mu} + c_2 x^{\lambda-i\mu}. \tag{17}$$

The disadvantage of this expression is that the functions $x^{\lambda+i\mu}$ and $x^{\lambda-i\mu}$ are complex-valued. Recall that we had a similar situation for the second-order differential equation with constant coefficients when the roots of the characteristic equation were complex. Just as we did then, we can use Theorem 3.2.6 to obtain real-valued solutions of equation (2) by taking the real and imaginary parts of $x^{\lambda+i\mu}$, namely,

$$x^{\lambda} \cos(\mu \ln x) \quad \text{and} \quad x^{\lambda} \sin(\mu \ln x). \tag{18}$$

A straightforward calculation shows (see Problem 29) that

$$W\left[x^{\lambda}\cos(\mu \ln x), x^{\lambda}\sin(\mu \ln x)\right] = \mu x^{2\lambda-1}.$$

Hence these solutions form a fundamental set of solutions for $x > 0$, and the general solution of the Euler equation (2) is

$$y = c_1 x^{\lambda}\cos(\mu \ln x) + c_2 x^{\lambda}\sin(\mu \ln x), \quad x > 0. \tag{19}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Solve

$$x^2 y'' + x y' + y = 0. \tag{20}$$

Solution:

Substituting $y = x^r$ in equation (20) gives

$$x^r(r(r-1) + r + 1) = x^r(r^2 + 1) = 0.$$

Hence $r = \pm i$, and the general solution is

$$y = c_1 \cos(\ln x) + c_2 \sin(\ln x), \quad x > 0. \tag{21}$$

The factor x^{λ} does not appear explicitly in equation (21) because in this example $\lambda = 0$ and $x^{\lambda} = 1$.

Now let us consider the qualitative behavior of the solutions of equation (2) near the singular point $x = 0$. This depends entirely on the values of the exponents r_1 and r_2. First, if r is real and positive, then $x^r \to 0$ as x tends to zero through positive values. On the other hand, if r is real and negative, then x^r becomes unbounded. Finally, if $r = 0$, then $x^r = 1$. Figure 5.4.1 shows these possibilities for various values of r. If r is complex, then a typical solution is $x^{\lambda}\cos(\mu \ln x)$. This function becomes unbounded or approaches zero if λ is negative or positive, respectively, and also oscillates more and more rapidly as $x \to 0$. This behavior is shown in Figures 5.4.2 and 5.4.3 for selected values of λ and μ. If $\lambda = 0$, the oscillation is of constant amplitude. Finally, if there are repeated roots, then one solution is of the form $x^r \ln x$, which tends to zero if $r > 0$ and becomes unbounded if $r \le 0$. An example of each case is shown in Figure 5.4.4.

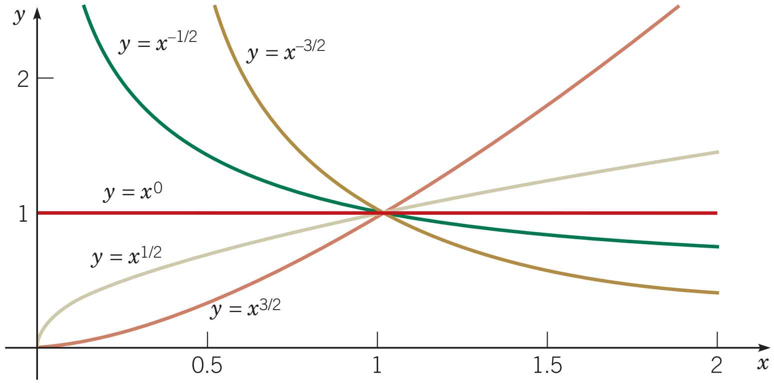


FIGURE 5.4.1 Solutions of an Euler equation; real roots ($\mu = 0$).

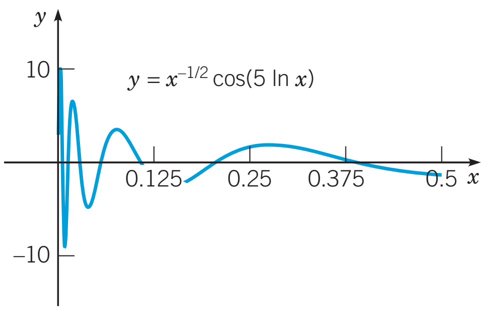


FIGURE 5.4.2 Solution of an Euler equation; complex roots with negative real part.

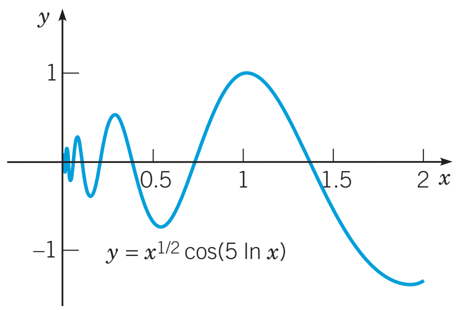


FIGURE 5.4.3 Solution of an Euler equation; complex roots with positive real part.

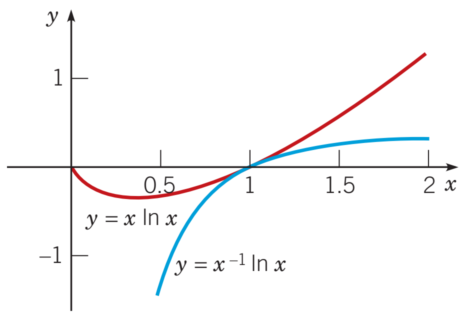


FIGURE 5.4.4 The two typical second solutions of an Euler equation with equal roots: $r > 0$ (red), $r < 0$ (blue).

The extension of the solutions of equation (2) into the interval $x < 0$ can be carried out in a relatively straightforward manner. The difficulty lies in understanding what is meant by x^r when x is negative and r is not an integer; similarly, $\ln x$ has not been defined for $x < 0$. The solutions of the Euler equation that we have given for $x > 0$ can be shown to be valid for $x < 0$, but in general they are complex-valued. Thus in Example 1 the solution $x^{1/2}$ is imaginary for $x < 0$.

It is always possible to obtain real-valued solutions of the Euler equation (2) in the interval $x < 0$ by making the following change of variable. Let $x = -\xi$, where $\xi > 0$, and let $y = u(\xi)$. Then we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{du}{d\xi}\frac{d\xi}{dx} = -\frac{du}{d\xi}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d}{d\xi}\left(-\frac{du}{d\xi}\right)\frac{d\xi}{dx} = \frac{d^2u}{d\xi^2}. \tag{22}$$

Thus, for $x < 0$, equation (2) takes the form

$$\xi^2 \frac{d^2u}{d\xi^2} + \alpha\xi \frac{du}{d\xi} + \beta u = 0, \quad \xi > 0. \tag{23}$$

But except for names of the variables, this is exactly the same as equation (2); from equations (7), (12), and (19), we have

$$u(\xi) = \begin{cases} c_1\xi^{r_1} + c_2\xi^{r_2} & \text{if } r_1 \text{ and } r_2 \text{ are real-valued and different} \\ (c_1 + c_2 \ln \xi)\xi^{r_1} & \text{if } r_1 \text{ and } r_2 \text{ are real-valued with } r_1 = r_2 \\ c_1\xi^{\lambda} \cos(\mu \ln \xi) + c_2\xi^{\lambda} \sin(\mu \ln \xi) & \text{if } r_{1,2} = \lambda \pm i\mu \text{ are complex-valued} \\ & \quad (\mu \neq 0), \end{cases} \tag{24}$$

depending on the nature of the zeros of $F(r) = r(r-1) + \alpha r + \beta = 0$. To obtain u in terms of x, we replace ξ by $-x$ in equations (24).

We can combine the results for $x > 0$ and $x < 0$ by recalling that $|x| = x$ when $x > 0$ and that $|x| = -x$ when $x < 0$. Thus we need only replace x by $|x|$ in equations (7), (12), and (19) to obtain real-valued solutions valid in any interval not containing the origin.

Hence the general solution of the Euler equation (2)

$$x^2y'' + \alpha xy' + \beta y = 0$$

in any interval not containing the origin is determined by the roots r_1 and r_2 of the equation

$$F(r) = r(r-1) + \alpha r + \beta = 0$$

as follows. If the roots r_1 and r_2 are real and different, $r_{1,2} = \lambda \pm i\mu$, then

$$y = c_1|x|^{r_1} + c_2|x|^{r_2}. \tag{25}$$

If the roots are real and equal, then

$$y = (c_1 + c_2 \ln |x|)|x|^{r_1}. \tag{26}$$

If the roots are complex conjugates, $r_{1,2} = \lambda \pm i\mu$, then

$$y = |x|^{\lambda}\big(c_1 \cos(\mu \ln |x|) + c_2 \sin(\mu \ln |x|)\big). \tag{27}$$

The solutions of an Euler equation of the form

$$(x - x_0)^2y'' + \alpha(x - x_0)y' + \beta y = 0 \tag{28}$$

are similar. If we look for solutions of the form $y = (x - x_0)^r$, then the general solution is given by equation (25), equation (26), or equation (27) with x replaced by $x - x_0$. Alternatively, we can reduce equation (28) to the form of equation (2) by making the change of independent variable $t = x - x_0$.

Regular Singular Points. We now return to a consideration of the general equation (1)

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0,$$

where x_0 is a singular point. This means that $P(x_0) = 0$ and that at least one of Q and R is not zero at x_0.

Unfortunately, if we attempt to use the methods of the preceding two sections to solve equation (1) in the neighborhood of a singular point x_0, we find that these methods fail. This is because the solution of equation (1) is often not analytic at x_0 and consequently cannot be represented by a Taylor series in powers of $x - x_0$. Examples 1, 2, and 3 illustrate this fact; in each of these examples, the solution fails to have a power series expansion about the singular point $x = 0$. Therefore, to have any chance of solving equation (1) in the neighborhood of a singular point we must use a more general type of series expansion.

Since the singular points of a differential equation are usually few in number, we might ask whether we can simply ignore them, especially since we already know how to construct solutions about ordinary points. However, this is not feasible. The singular points determine the principal features of the solution to a much larger extent than you might at first suspect. In the neighborhood of a singular point the solution often becomes large in magnitude or experiences rapid changes in magnitude. For example, the solutions found in Examples 1, 2, and 3 are illustrations of this fact. Thus the behavior of a physical system modeled by a differential equation frequently is most interesting in the neighborhood of a singular point. Often geometric singularities in a physical problem, such as corners or sharp edges, lead to singular points in the corresponding differential equation. Thus, although at first we might want to avoid the few points where a differential equation is singular, it is precisely at these points that it is necessary to study the solution most carefully.

As an alternative to analytical methods, we can consider the use of numerical methods, which are discussed in Chapter 8. However, these methods are ill suited for the study of solutions near a singular point. Thus, even if we adopt a numerical approach, it is advantageous to combine it with the analytical methods of this chapter in order to examine the behavior of solutions near singular points.

Without any additional information about the behavior of Q/P and R/P in the neighborhood of the singular point, it is impossible to describe the behavior of the solutions of equation (1) near $x = x_0$. It may be that there are two distinct solutions of equation (1) that remain bounded as $x \to x_0$ (as in Example 3); or there may be only one, with the other becoming unbounded as $x \to x_0$ (as in Example 1); or they may both become unbounded as $x \to x_0$ (as in Example 2). If equation (1) has solutions that become unbounded as $x \to x_0$, it is often important to determine how these solutions behave as $x \to x_0$. For example, does $y \to \infty$ in the same way as $(x - x_0)^{-1}$ or $|x - x_0|^{-1/2}$, or in some other manner?

Our goal is to extend the method already developed for solving equation (1) near an ordinary point so that it also applies to the neighborhood of a singular point x_0. To do this in a reasonably simple manner, it is necessary to restrict ourselves to cases in which the singularities in the functions Q/P and R/P at $x = x_0$ are not too severe—that is, to what we might call "weak singularities." At this stage it is not clear exactly what is an acceptable singularity. However, as we develop the method of solution, you will see that the appropriate conditions (see also Section 5.6, Problem 16) to distinguish "weak singularities" are

$$\lim_{x \to x_0} (x - x_0) \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} \quad \text{is finite} \tag{29}$$

and

$$\lim_{x \to x_0} (x - x_0)^2 \frac{R(x)}{P(x)} \quad \text{is finite.} \tag{30}$$

This means that the singularity in Q/P can be no worse than $(x - x_0)^{-1}$ and the singularity in R/P can be no worse than $(x - x_0)^{-2}$. Such a point is called a **regular singular point** of equation (1). For equations with more general coefficients than polynomials, x_0 is a regular singular point of equation (1) if it is a singular point and if both[11]

$$(x - x_0) \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} \quad \text{and} \quad (x - x_0)^2 \frac{R(x)}{P(x)} \tag{31}$$

have convergent Taylor series about x_0—that is, if the functions in equation (31) are analytic at $x = x_0$. Equations (29) and (30) imply that this will be the case when P, Q, and R are polynomials. Any singular point of equation (1) that is not a regular singular point is called an **irregular singular point** of equation (1).

[11]The functions given in equation (31) may not be defined at x_0, in which case their values at x_0 are to be assigned as their limits as $x \to x_0$.

Observe that the conditions in equations (29) and (30) are satisfied by the Euler equation (28). Thus the singularity in an Euler equation is a regular singular point. Indeed, we will see that all equations of the form (1) behave very much like Euler equations near a regular singular point. That is, solutions near a regular singular point may include powers of x with negative or nonintegral exponents, logarithms, or sines or cosines of logarithmic arguments.

In the following sections we discuss how to solve equation (1) in the neighborhood of a regular singular point. A discussion of the solutions of differential equations in the neighborhood of irregular singular points is more complicated and may be found in more advanced books.

EXAMPLE 4

Determine the singular points of the Legendre equation

$$(1-x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha+1)y = 0 \tag{32}$$

and determine whether they are regular or irregular.

Solution:

In this case $P(x) = 1 - x^2$, so the singular points are $x = 1$ and $x = -1$. Observe that when we divide equation (32) by $1-x^2$, the coefficients of y' and y are $-2x/(1-x^2)$ and $\alpha(\alpha+1)/(1-x^2)$, respectively. We consider the point $x = 1$ first. Thus, from equations (29) and (30), we calculate

$$\lim_{x\to 1}(x-1)\frac{-2x}{1-x^2} = \lim_{x\to 1}\frac{(x-1)(-2x)}{(1-x)(1+x)} = \lim_{x\to 1}\frac{2x}{1+x} = 1$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to 1}(x-1)^2\frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)}{1-x^2} &= \lim_{x\to 1}\frac{(x-1)^2\alpha(\alpha+1)}{(1-x)(1+x)}\\ &= \lim_{x\to 1}\frac{(x-1)(-\alpha)(\alpha+1)}{1+x} = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Since these limits are finite, the point $x = 1$ is a regular singular point.

It can be shown in a similar manner that $x = -1$ is also a regular singular point.

EXAMPLE 5

Determine the singular points of the differential equation

$$2x(x-2)^2y'' + 3xy' + (x-2)y = 0$$

and classify them as regular or irregular.

Solution:

Dividing the differential equation by $2x(x-2)^2$, we have

$$y'' + \frac{3}{2(x-2)^2}y' + \frac{1}{2x(x-2)}y = 0,$$

so $p(x) = \dfrac{Q(x)}{P(x)} = \dfrac{3}{2(x-2)^2}$ and $q(x) = \dfrac{R(x)}{P(x)} = \dfrac{1}{2x(x-2)}$. The singular points are $x = 0$ and $x = 2$. Consider $x = 0$. We have

$$\lim_{x\to 0} xp(x) = \lim_{x\to 0} x\frac{3}{2(x-2)^2} = 0,$$

and

$$\lim_{x\to 0} x^2 q(x) = \lim_{x\to 0} x^2 \frac{1}{2x(x-2)} = 0.$$

Since these limits are finite, $x = 0$ is a regular singular point.

For $x = 2$ we have

$$\lim_{x\to 2}(x-2)\,p(x) = \lim_{x\to 2}(x-2)\frac{3}{2(x-2)^2} = \lim_{x\to 2}\frac{3}{2(x-2)},$$

so the limit does not exist; hence $x = 2$ is an irregular singular point.

EXAMPLE 6

Determine the singular points of

$$\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2 y'' + (\cos x)\,y' + (\sin x)\,y = 0$$

and classify them as regular or irregular.

Solution:

The only singular point is $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$. To study it, we consider the functions

$$\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)p(x) = \left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} = \frac{\cos x}{x - \pi/2}$$

and

$$\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2 q(x) = \left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2 \frac{R(x)}{P(x)} = \sin x.$$

Starting from the Taylor series for $\cos x$ about $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$, we find that

$$\frac{\cos x}{x - \pi/2} = -1 + \frac{(x-\pi/2)^2}{3!} - \frac{(x-\pi/2)^4}{5!} + \cdots,$$

which converges for all x. Similarly, $\sin x$ is analytic at $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$. Therefore, we conclude that $\frac{\pi}{2}$ is a regular singular point for this equation.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8, determine the general solution of the given differential equation that is valid in any interval not including the singular point.

1. $x^2y'' + 4xy' + 2y = 0$
2. $(x+1)^2y'' + 3(x+1)y' + 0.75y = 0$
3. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = 0$
4. $x^2y'' - xy' + y = 0$
5. $x^2y'' + 6xy' - y = 0$
6. $2x^2y'' - 4xy' + 6y = 0$
7. $x^2y'' - 5xy' + 9y = 0$
8. $(x-2)^2y'' + 5(x-2)y' + 8y = 0$

In each of Problems 9 through 11, find the solution of the given initial-value problem. Plot the graph of the solution and describe how the solution behaves as $x \to 0$.

G 9. $2x^2y'' + xy' - 3y = 0, \quad y(1) = 1, \quad y'(1) = 4$

G 10. $4x^2y'' + 8xy' + 17y = 0, \quad y(1) = 2, \quad y'(1) = -3$

G 11. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = 0, \quad y(-1) = 2, \quad y'(-1) = 3$

In each of Problems 12 through 23, find all singular points of the given equation and determine whether each one is regular or irregular.

12. $xy'' + (1-x)y' + xy = 0$
13. $x^2(1-x)^2y'' + 2xy' + 4y = 0$

14. $x^2(1-x)y'' + (x-2)y' - 3xy = 0$

15. $x^2(1-x^2)y'' + \left(\frac{2}{x}\right)y' + 4y = 0$

16. $(1-x^2)^2y'' + x(1-x)y' + (1+x)y = 0$

17. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2-\nu^2)y = 0$ (Bessel equation)

18. $(x+2)^2(x-1)y'' + 3(x-1)y' - 2(x+2)y = 0$

19. $x(3-x)y'' + (x+1)y' - 2y = 0$

20. $xy'' + e^xy' + (3\cos x)y = 0$

21. $y'' + (\ln|x|)y' + 3xy = 0$

22. $(\sin x)y'' + xy' + 4y = 0$

23. $(x\sin x)y'' + 3y' + xy = 0$

24. Find all values of α for which all solutions of $x^2y'' + \alpha xy' + \frac{5}{2}y = 0$ approach zero as $x \to 0$.

25. Find all values of β for which all solutions of $x^2y'' + \beta y = 0$ approach zero as $x \to 0$.

26. Find γ so that the solution of the initial-value problem $x^2y'' - 2y = 0$, $y(1) = 1$, $y'(1) = \gamma$ is bounded as $x \to 0$.

27. Consider the Euler equation $x^2y'' + \alpha xy' + \beta y = 0$. Find conditions on α and β so that:

a. All solutions approach zero as $x \to 0$.
b. All solutions are bounded as $x \to 0$.
c. All solutions approach zero as $x \to \infty$.
d. All solutions are bounded as $x \to \infty$.
e. All solutions are bounded both as $x \to 0$ and as $x \to \infty$.

28. Using the method of reduction of order, show that if r_1 is a repeated root of

$$r(r-1) + \alpha r + \beta = 0,$$

then x^{r_1} and $x^{r_1}\ln x$ are solutions of $x^2y''+\alpha xy'+\beta y = 0$ for $x > 0$.

29. Verify that $W[x^\lambda\cos(\mu\ln x), x^\lambda\sin(\mu\ln x)] = \mu x^{2\lambda-1}$.

In each of Problems 30 and 31, show that the point $x = 0$ is a regular singular point. In each problem try to find solutions of the form $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nx^n$. Show that (except for constant multiples) there is only one nonzero solution of this form in Problem 30 and that there are no nonzero solutions of this form in Problem 31. Thus in neither case can the general solution be found in this manner. This is typical of equations with singular points.

30. $2xy'' + 3y' + xy = 0$

31. $2x^2y'' + 3xy' - (1+x)y = 0$

32. **Singularities at Infinity.** The definitions of an ordinary point and a regular singular point given in the preceding sections apply only if the point x_0 is finite. In more advanced work in differential equations, it is often necessary to consider the point at infinity. This is done by making the change of variable $\xi = 1/x$ and studying the resulting equation at $\xi = 0$. Show that, for the differential equation

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0,$$

the point at infinity is an ordinary point if

$$\frac{1}{P(1/\xi)}\left(\frac{2P(1/\xi)}{\xi} - \frac{Q(1/\xi)}{\xi^2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{R(1/\xi)}{\xi^4P(1/\xi)}$$

have Taylor series expansions about $\xi = 0$. Show also that the point at infinity is a regular singular point if at least one of the above functions does not have a Taylor series expansion, but both

$$\frac{\xi}{P(1/\xi)}\left(\frac{2P(1/\xi)}{\xi} - \frac{Q(1/\xi)}{\xi^2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{R(1/\xi)}{\xi^2P(1/\xi)}$$

do have such expansions.

In each of Problems 33 through 37, use the results of Problem 32 to determine whether the point at infinity is an ordinary point, a regular singular point, or an irregular singular point of the given differential equation.

33. $y'' + y = 0$

34. $x^2y'' + xy' - 4y = 0$

35. $(1-x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha+1)y = 0$ (Legendre equation)

36. $y'' - 2xy' + \lambda y = 0$ (Hermite equation)

37. $y'' - xy = 0$ (Airy equation)

5.5 Series Solutions Near a Regular Singular Point, Part I

We now consider the question of solving the general second-order linear differential equation

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0 \tag{1}$$

in the neighborhood of a regular singular point $x = x_0$. For convenience we assume that $x_0 = 0$. If $x_0 \neq 0$, the equation can be transformed into one for which the regular singular point is at the origin by letting $x - x_0$ equal t.

The assumption that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point of equation (1) means that $xQ(x)/P(x) = xp(x)$ and $x^2R(x)/P(x) = x^2q(x)$ have finite limits as $x \to 0$ and are analytic at $x = 0$. Thus they have convergent power series expansions of the form

$$xp(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_nx^n, \quad x^2q(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} q_nx^n, \tag{2}$$

on some interval $|x| < \rho$ about the origin, where $\rho > 0$. To make the quantities $xp(x)$ and $x^2q(x)$ appear in equation (1), it is convenient to divide equation (1) by $P(x)$ and then to multiply by x^2, obtaining

$$x^2y'' + x(xp(x))y' + \left(x^2q(x)\right)y = 0, \tag{3}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} x^2y'' + x(p_0 + p_1x + \cdots + p_nx^n + \cdots)y' \\ + (q_0 + q_1x + \cdots + q_nx^n + \cdots)y = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

Notice that the first terms of $xp(x)$ and of $x^2q(x)$ are

$$p_0 = \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{xQ(x)}{P(x)} \quad \text{and} \quad q_0 = \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{x^2R(x)}{P(x)}. \tag{5}$$

If all other coefficients p_n and q_n for $n \geq 1$ in equation (2) are zero, then equation (4) reduces to the Euler equation

$$x^2y'' + p_0xy' + q_0y = 0, \tag{6}$$

which was discussed in the preceding section.

In general, of course, some of the coefficients p_n and q_n, $n \geq 1$, are not zero. However, the essential character of solutions of equation (4) in the neighborhood of the singular point is identical to that of solutions of the Euler equation (6). The presence of the terms $p_1x + \cdots + p_nx^n + \cdots$ and $q_1x + \cdots + q_nx^n + \cdots$ merely complicates the calculations.

We restrict our discussion primarily to the interval $x > 0$. The interval $x < 0$ can be treated, just as for the Euler equation, by making the change of variable $x = -\xi$ and then solving the resulting equation for $\xi > 0$.

The coefficients in equation (4) can be viewed as "Euler coefficients" times power series. To see this, you can write the coefficient of y' in equation (4) as

$$p_0x\left(1 + \frac{p_1}{p_0}x + \frac{p_2}{p_0}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{p_n}{p_0}x^n + \cdots\right),$$

and similarly for the coefficient of y. Thus it may seem natural to seek solutions of equation (4) in the form of "Euler solutions" times power series. Hence we assume that

$$y = x^r(a_0 + a_1x + \cdots + a_nx^n + \cdots) = x^r\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nx^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nx^{r+n}, \tag{7}$$

where $a_0 \neq 0$. In other words, r is the exponent of the first nonzero term in the series, and a_0 is its coefficient. As part of the solution, we have to determine:

1. The values of r for which equation (1) has a solution of the form (7)
2. The recurrence relation for the coefficients a_n
3. The radius of convergence of the series $\sum\limits_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nx^n$

The general theory was constructed by Frobenius[12] and is fairly complicated. Rather than trying to present this theory, we simply assume, in this and the next two sections, that there does exist a solution of the stated form. In particular, we assume that any power series in an expression for a solution has a nonzero radius of convergence and concentrate on showing how to determine the coefficients in such a series. To illustrate the method of Frobenius, we first consider an example.

[12]Ferdinand Georg Frobenius (1849–1917) grew up in the suburbs of Berlin, received his doctorate in 1870 from the University of Berlin, and returned as professor in 1892. For most of the intervening years he was professor at the Eidgenössische Polytechnikum at Zürich. He showed how to construct series solutions about regular singular points in 1874. His most distinguished work, however, was in algebra, where he was one of the foremost early developers of group theory.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the differential equation

$$2x^2y'' - xy' + (1+x)y = 0. \tag{8}$$

Solution:

It is easy to show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point of equation (8). Further, $xp(x) = -1/2$ and $x^2q(x) = (1+x)/2$. Thus $p_0 = -1/2$, $q_0 = 1/2$, $q_1 = 1/2$, and all other p_n's and q_n's are zero. Then, from equation (6), the Euler equation corresponding to equation (8) is

$$2x^2y'' - xy' + y = 0. \tag{9}$$

To solve equation (8), we assume that there is a solution of the form (7). Then y' and y'' are given by

$$y' = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(r+n)x^{r+n-1} \tag{10}$$

and

$$y'' = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(r+n)(r+n-1)x^{r+n-2}. \tag{11}$$

By substituting the expressions for y, y', and y'' in equation (8), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 2x^2y'' - xy' + (1+x)y &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2a_n(r+n)(r+n-1)x^{r+n} \\ &\quad - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(r+n)x^{r+n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n+1}. \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

The last term in equation (12) can be written as $\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1}x^{r+n}$, so by combining the terms in equation (12), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 2x^2y'' - xy' + (1+x)y &= a_0[2r(r-1) - r + 1]x^r \\ &\quad + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\big((2(r+n)(r+n-1) - (r+n) + 1)a_n + a_{n-1}\big)x^{r+n} = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

If equation (13) is to be satisfied for all x, the coefficient of each power of x in equation (13) must be zero. From the coefficient of x^r we obtain, since $a_0 \neq 0$,

$$2r(r-1) - r + 1 = 2r^2 - 3r + 1 = (r-1)(2r-1) = 0. \tag{14}$$

Equation (14) is called the **indicial equation** for equation (8). Note that it is exactly the polynomial equation we would obtain for the Euler equation (9) associated with equation (8). The roots of the indicial equation are

$$r_1 = 1, \quad r_2 = \frac{1}{2}. \tag{15}$$

These values of r are called the **exponents at the singularity** for the regular singular point $x = 0$. They determine the qualitative behavior of the solution (7) in the neighborhood of the singular point.

Now we return to equation (13) and set the coefficient of x^{r+n} equal to zero. This gives the relation

$$(2(r+n)(r+n-1) - (r+n) + 1)a_n + a_{n-1} = 0, \quad n \geq 1, \tag{16}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= -\frac{a_{n-1}}{2(r+n)^2 - 3(r+n) + 1} \\ &= -\frac{a_{n-1}}{((r+n)-1)(2(r+n)-1)}, \quad n \geq 1. \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

For each root r_1 and r_2 of the indicial equation, we use the recurrence relation (17) to determine a set of coefficients $a_1, a_2, \ldots$. For $r = r_1 = 1$, equation (17) becomes

$$a_n = -\frac{a_{n-1}}{(2n+1)n}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

Thus

$$a_1 = -\frac{a_0}{3 \cdot 1},$$

$$a_2 = -\frac{a_1}{5 \cdot 2} = \frac{a_0}{(3 \cdot 5)(1 \cdot 2)},$$

and

$$a_3 = -\frac{a_2}{7 \cdot 3} = -\frac{a_0}{(3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7)(1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3)}.$$

In general, we have

$$a_n = \frac{(-1)^n}{(3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdots (2n+1))n!} a_0, \quad n \geq 4. \tag{18}$$

If we multiply both the numerator and denominator of the right-hand side of equation (18) by $2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot \cdots \cdot 2n = 2^n n!$, we can rewrite a_n as

$$a_n = \frac{(-1)^n 2^n}{(2n+1)!} a_0, \quad n \geq 1.$$

Hence, if we omit the constant multiplier a_0, one solution of equation (8) is

$$y_1(x) = x \left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n 2^n}{(2n+1)!} x^n \right), \quad x > 0. \tag{19}$$

To determine the radius of convergence of the series in equation (19), we use the ratio test:

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1} x^{n+1}}{a_n x^n} \right| = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{2|x|}{(2n+2)(2n+3)} = 0$$

for all x. Thus the series converges for all x.

Corresponding to the second root $r = r_2 = \frac{1}{2}$, we proceed similarly. From equation (17) we have

$$a_n = -\frac{a_{n-1}}{2n\left(n - \frac{1}{2}\right)} = -\frac{a_{n-1}}{n(2n-1)}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

Hence

$$a_1 = -\frac{a_0}{1 \cdot 1},$$

$$a_2 = -\frac{a_1}{2 \cdot 3} = \frac{a_0}{(1 \cdot 2)(1 \cdot 3)},$$

$$a_3 = -\frac{a_2}{3 \cdot 5} = -\frac{a_0}{(1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3)(1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5)},$$

and, in general,

$$a_n = \frac{(-1)^n}{n!(1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1))} a_0, \quad n \geq 4. \tag{20}$$

Just as in the case of the first root r_1, we multiply the numerator and denominator by $2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot \cdots \cdot 2n = 2^n n!$. Then we have

$$a_n = \frac{(-1)^n 2^n}{(2n)!} a_0, \quad n \geq 1.$$

Again omitting the constant multiplier a_0, we obtain the second solution

$$y_2(x) = x^{1/2} \left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n 2^n}{(2n)!} x^n \right), \quad x > 0. \tag{21}$$

As before, we can show that the series in equation (21) converges for all x. Since y_1 and y_2 behave like x and $x^{1/2}$, respectively, near $x = 0$, they are linearly independent and so they form a fundamental set of solutions. Hence the general solution of equation (8) is

$$y = c_1 y_1(x) + c_2 y_2(x), \quad x > 0.$$

The preceding example illustrates that if $x = 0$ is a regular singular point, then sometimes there are two solutions of the form (7) in the neighborhood of this point. Similarly, if there is a regular singular point at $x = x_0$, then there may be two solutions of the form

$$y = (x - x_0)^r \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (x - x_0)^n \tag{22}$$

that are valid near $x = x_0$. However, just as an Euler equation may not have two solutions of the form $y = x^r$, so a more general equation with a regular singular point may not have two solutions of the form (7) or (22). In particular, we show in the next section that if the roots r_1 and r_2 of the indicial equation are equal or differ by an integer, then the second solution normally has a more complicated structure. In all cases, though, it is possible to find at least one solution of the form (7) or (22); if r_1 and r_2 differ by an integer, this solution corresponds to the larger value of r. If there is only one such solution, then the second solution involves a logarithmic term, just as for the Euler equation when the roots of the characteristic equation are equal. The method of reduction of order or some other procedure can be invoked to determine the second solution in such cases. This is discussed in Sections 5.6 and 5.7.

If the roots of the indicial equation are complex, then they cannot be equal or differ by an integer, so there are always two solutions of the form (7) or (22). Of course, these solutions are complex-valued functions of x. However, as for the Euler equation, it is possible to obtain real-valued solutions by taking the real and imaginary parts of the complex solutions.

Finally, we mention a practical point. If P, Q, and R are polynomials, it is often much better to work directly with equation (1) than with equation (3). This avoids the necessity of expressing $xQ(x)/P(x)$ and $x^2R(x)/P(x)$ as power series. For example, it is more convenient to consider the equation

$$x(1 + x)y'' + 2y' + xy = 0$$

than to write it in the form

$$x^2 y'' + \frac{2x}{1 + x} y' + \frac{x^2}{1 + x} y = 0,$$

which would entail expanding $\dfrac{2x}{1 + x}$ and $\dfrac{x^2}{1 + x}$ in power series.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6:

a. Show that the given differential equation has a regular singular point at $x = 0$.

b. Determine the indicial equation, the recurrence relation, and the roots of the indicial equation.

c. Find the series solution ($x > 0$) corresponding to the larger root.

d. If the roots are unequal and do not differ by an integer, find the series solution corresponding to the smaller root also.

1. $2xy'' + y' + xy = 0$

2. $x^2 y'' + xy' + \left(x^2 - \frac{1}{9}\right) y = 0$

3. $xy'' + y = 0$

4. $xy'' + y' - y = 0$

5. $x^2 y'' + xy' + (x - 2)y = 0$

6. $xy'' + (1 - x)y' - y = 0$

7. The Legendre equation of order α is

$$(1-x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha+1)y = 0.$$

The solution of this equation near the ordinary point $x = 0$ was discussed in Problems 17 and 18 of Section 5.3. In Example 4 of Section 5.4, it was shown that $x = \pm 1$ are regular singular points.

a. Determine the indicial equation and its roots for the point $x = 1$.
b. Find a series solution in powers of $x - 1$ for $x - 1 > 0$.
Hint: Write $1 + x = 2 + (x - 1)$ and $x = 1 + (x - 1)$. Alternatively, make the change of variable $x - 1 = t$ and determine a series solution in powers of t.

8. The Chebyshev equation is

$$(1-x^2)y'' - xy' + \alpha^2 y = 0,$$

where α is a constant; see Problem 8 of Section 5.3.

a. Show that $x = 1$ and $x = -1$ are regular singular points, and find the exponents at each of these singularities.
b. Find two solutions about $x = 1$.

9. The Laguerre[13] differential equation is

$$xy'' + (1-x)y' + \lambda y = 0.$$

a. Show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point.
b. Determine the indicial equation, its roots, and the recurrence relation.
c. Find one solution (for $x > 0$). Show that if $\lambda = m$, a positive integer, this solution reduces to a polynomial. When properly normalized, this polynomial is known as the **Laguerre polynomial**, $L_m(x)$.

10. The Bessel equation of order zero is

$$x^2y'' + xy' + x^2y = 0.$$

[13] Edmond Nicolas Laguerre (1834–1886), a French geometer and analyst, studied the polynomials named for him about 1879. He is also known for an algorithm for calculating roots of polynomial equations.

a. Show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point.
b. Show that the roots of the indicial equation are $r_1 = r_2 = 0$.
c. Show that one solution for $x > 0$ is

$$J_0(x) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{2^{2n}(n!)^2}.$$

The function J_0 is known as the **Bessel function of the first kind of order zero**.
d. Show that the series for $J_0(x)$ converges for all x.

11. Referring to Problem 10, use the method of reduction of order to show that the second solution of the Bessel equation of order zero contains a logarithmic term.
Hint: If $y_2(x) = J_0(x)v(x)$, then

$$y_2(x) = J_0(x)\int \frac{dx}{x\big(J_0(x)\big)^2}.$$

Find the first term in the series expansion of $\dfrac{1}{x\big(J_0(x)\big)^2}$.

12. The Bessel equation of order one is

$$x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2-1)y = 0.$$

a. Show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point.
b. Show that the roots of the indicial equation are $r_1 = 1$ and $r_2 = -1$.
c. Show that one solution for $x > 0$ is

$$J_1(x) = \frac{x}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(n+1)!\,n!\,2^{2n}}.$$

The function J_1 is known as the **Bessel function of the first kind of order one**.
d. Show that the series for $J_1(x)$ converges for all x.
e. Show that it is impossible to determine a second solution of the form

$$x^{-1}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n, \qquad x > 0.$$

5.6 Series Solutions Near a Regular Singular Point, Part II

Now let us consider the general problem of determining a solution of the equation

$$L[y] = x^2y'' + x(xp(x))y' + \left(x^2q(x)\right)y = 0, \tag{1}$$

where

$$xp(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n x^n, \qquad x^2q(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} q_n x^n, \tag{2}$$

and both series converge in an interval $|x| < \rho$ for some $\rho > 0$. The point $x = 0$ is a regular singular point, and the corresponding Euler equation is

$$x^2y'' + p_0xy' + q_0y = 0. \tag{3}$$

We seek a solution of equation (1) for $x > 0$ and assume that it has the form

$$y = \phi(r, x) = x^r \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n}, \tag{4}$$

where $a_0 \neq 0$, and we have written $y = \phi(r, x)$ to emphasize that ϕ depends on r as well as x. It follows that

$$y' = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (r+n) a_n x^{r+n-1}, \quad y'' = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (r+n)(r+n-1) a_n x^{r+n-2}. \tag{5}$$

Then, substituting from equations (2), (4), and (5) in equation (1) gives

$$\begin{aligned} L[\phi](r, x) &= a_0 r(r-1)x^r + a_1(r+1)rx^{r+1} + \cdots + a_n(r+n)(r+n-1)x^{r+n} + \cdots \\ &\quad + \big(p_0 + p_1 x + \cdots + p_n x^n + \cdots\big)\Big(a_0 r x^r + a_1(r+1)x^{r+1} + \cdots + a_n(r+n)x^{r+n} + \cdots\Big) \\ &\quad + \big(q_0 + q_1 x + \cdots + q_n x^n + \cdots\big)\Big(a_0 x^r + a_1 x^{r+1} + \cdots + a_n x^{r+n} + \cdots\Big) \\ &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying the infinite series together and then collecting terms, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L[\phi](r, x) = a_0 F(r) x^r &+ \big[a_1 F(r+1) + a_0(p_1 r + q_1)\big]x^{r+1} \\ &+ \big[a_2 F(r+2) + a_0(p_2 r + q_2) + a_1\big(p_1(r+1) + q_1\big)\big]x^{r+2} \\ &+ \cdots + \big[a_n F(r+n) + a_0(p_n r + q_n) + a_1\big(p_{n-1}(r+1) + q_{n-1}\big) \\ &\qquad + \cdots + a_{n-1}\big(p_1(r+n-1) + q_1\big)\big]x^{r+n} + \cdots = 0, \end{aligned}$$

or, in a more compact form,

$$\begin{aligned} L[\phi] &= a_0 F(r) x^r \\ &\quad + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(F(r+n) a_n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} a_k ((r+k) p_{n-k} + q_{n-k}) \right) x^{r+n} = 0, \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

where

$$F(r) = r(r-1) + p_0 r + q_0. \tag{7}$$

For equation (6) to be satisfied for all $x > 0$, the coefficient of each power of x must be zero.

Since $a_0 \neq 0$, the term involving x^r yields the equation $F(r) = 0$. This equation is called the *indicial equation*; note that it is exactly the equation we would obtain in looking for solutions $y = x^r$ of the Euler equation (3). Let us denote the roots of the indicial equation by r_1 and r_2 with $r_1 \geq r_2$ if the roots are real. If the roots are complex, the designation of the roots is immaterial. Only for these values of r can we expect to find solutions of equation (1) of the form (4). The roots r_1 and r_2 are called the *exponents at the singularity*; they determine the qualitative nature of the solution in the neighborhood of the singular point.

Setting the coefficient of x^{r+n} in equation (6) equal to zero gives the **recurrence relation**

$$F(r+n) a_n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} a_k ((r+k) p_{n-k} + q_{n-k}) = 0, \quad n \geq 1. \tag{8}$$

Equation (8) shows that, in general, a_n depends on the value of r and all the preceding coefficients $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_{n-1}$. It also shows that we can successively compute $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n, \ldots$ in terms of a_0 and the coefficients in the series for $xp(x)$ and $x^2 q(x)$, provided that $F(r+1), F(r+2), \ldots, F(r+n), \ldots$ are not zero. The only values of r for which $F(r) = 0$ are $r = r_1$ and $r = r_2$; since $r_1 \geq r_2$, it follows that $r_1 + n$ is not equal to r_1 or r_2 for $n \geq 1$. Consequently, $F(r_1 + n) \neq 0$ for $n \geq 1$. Hence we can always determine one solution of equation (1) in the form (4), namely,

$$y_1(x) = x^{r_1} \left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r_1) x^n \right), \quad x > 0. \tag{9}$$

Here we have introduced the notation $a_n(r_1)$ to indicate that a_n has been determined from equation (8) with $r = r_1$. The solution involves an arbitrary constant; the solution in equation (9) is obtained by assigning a_0 the value 1.

If r_2 is not equal to r_1, and $r_1 - r_2$ is not a positive integer, then $r_2 + n$ is not equal to r_1 for any value of $n \geq 1$; hence $F(r_2 + n) \neq 0$, and we can also obtain a second solution

$$y_2(x) = x^{r_2}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r_2)x^n\right), \quad x > 0. \tag{10}$$

Just as for the series solutions about ordinary points discussed in Section 5.3, the series in equations (9) and (10) converge at least in the interval $|x| < \rho$ where the series for both $xp(x)$ and $x^2q(x)$ converge. Within their radii of convergence, the power series $1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r_1)x^n$ and $1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r_2)x^n$ define functions that are analytic at $x = 0$. Thus the singular behavior, if there is any, of the solutions y_1 and y_2 is due to the factors x^{r_1} and x^{r_2} that multiply these two analytic functions.

Next, to obtain real-valued solutions for $x < 0$, we can make the substitution $x = -\xi$ with $\xi > 0$. As we might expect from our discussion of the Euler equation, it turns out that we need only replace x^{r_1} in equation (9) and x^{r_2} in equation (10) by $|x|^{r_1}$ and $|x|^{r_2}$, respectively.

Finally, note that if r_1 and r_2 are complex numbers, then they are necessarily complex conjugates and $r_2 \neq r_1 + N$ for any positive integer N. Thus, in this case we can always find two series solutions of the form (4); however, they are complex-valued functions of x. Real-valued solutions can be obtained by taking the real and imaginary parts of the complex-valued solutions.

The exceptional cases in which $r_1 = r_2$ or $r_1 - r_2 = N$, where N is a positive integer, require more discussion and will be considered later in this section.

It is important to realize that r_1 and r_2, the exponents at the singular point, are easy to find and that they determine the qualitative behavior of the solutions. To calculate r_1 and r_2, it is only necessary to solve the quadratic indicial equation

$$r(r-1) + p_0 r + q_0 = 0, \tag{11}$$

whose coefficients are given by

$$p_0 = \lim_{x \to 0} xp(x), \quad q_0 = \lim_{x \to 0} x^2 q(x). \tag{12}$$

Note that these are exactly the limits that must be evaluated in order to classify the singularity as a regular singular point; thus they have usually been determined at an earlier stage of the investigation.

Further, if $x = 0$ is a regular singular point of the equation

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0, \tag{13}$$

where the functions P, Q, and R are polynomials, then $xp(x) = xQ(x)/P(x)$ and $x^2q(x) = x^2R(x)/P(x)$. Thus

$$p_0 = \lim_{x \to 0} x\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)}, \quad q_0 = \lim_{x \to 0} x^2\frac{R(x)}{P(x)}. \tag{14}$$

Finally, the radii of convergence for the series in equations (9) and (10) are at least equal to the distance from the origin to the nearest zero of P other than the regular singular point $x = 0$ itself.

EXAMPLE 1

Discuss the nature of the solutions of the equation

$$2x(1 + x)y'' + (3 + x)y' - xy = 0$$

near the singular points.

Solution:

This equation is of the form (13) with $P(x) = 2x(1+x)$, $Q(x) = 3+x$, and $R(x) = -x$. The points $x = 0$ and $x = -1$ are the only singular points. The point $x = 0$ is a regular singular point, since

$$\lim_{x\to 0} x\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} = \lim_{x\to 0} x\frac{3+x}{2x(1+x)} = \frac{3}{2},$$

$$\lim_{x\to 0} x^2\frac{R(x)}{P(x)} = \lim_{x\to 0} x^2\frac{-x}{2x(1+x)} = 0.$$

Further, from equation (14), $p_0 = \frac{3}{2}$ and $q_0 = 0$. Thus the indicial equation is $r(r-1) + \frac{3}{2}r = 0$, and the roots are $r_1 = 0$, $r_2 = -\frac{1}{2}$. Since these roots are not equal and do not differ by an integer, there are two solutions of the form

$$y_1(x) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(0)x^n \quad \text{and} \quad y_2(x) = |x|^{-1/2}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n\left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\right)x^n\right)$$

for $0 < |x| < \rho$. A lower bound for the radius of convergence of each series is 1, the distance from $x = 0$ to $x = -1$, the other zero of $P(x)$. Note that the solution y_1 is bounded as $x \to 0$, indeed is analytic there, and that the second solution y_2 is unbounded as $x \to 0$.

The point $x = -1$ is also a regular singular point, since

$$\lim_{x\to -1} (x+1)\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} = \lim_{x\to -1} \frac{(x+1)(3+x)}{2x(1+x)} = -1,$$

$$\lim_{x\to -1} (x+1)^2\frac{R(x)}{P(x)} = \lim_{x\to -1} \frac{(x+1)^2(-x)}{2x(1+x)} = 0.$$

In this case $p_0 = -1$, $q_0 = 0$, so the indicial equation is $r(r-1) - r = 0$. The roots of the indicial equation are $r_1 = 2$ and $r_2 = 0$. Corresponding to the larger root there is a solution of the form

$$y_1(x) = (x+1)^2\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(2)(x+1)^n\right).$$

The series converges at least for $|x+1| < 1$, and y_1 is an analytic function there. Since the two roots differ by a positive integer, there may or may not be a second solution of the form

$$y_2(x) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(0)(x+1)^n.$$

We cannot say more without further analysis.

Observe that no complicated calculations were required to discover the information about the solutions presented in this example. All that was needed was to evaluate a few limits and solve two quadratic equations.

We now consider the cases in which the roots of the indicial equation are equal or differ by a positive integer, $r_1 - r_2 = N$. As we have shown earlier, there is always one solution of the form (9) corresponding to the larger root r_1 of the indicial equation. By analogy with the Euler equation, we might expect that if $r_1 = r_2$, then the second solution contains a logarithmic term. This may also be true if the roots differ by an integer.

Equal Roots. The method of finding the second solution is essentially the same as the one we used in finding the second solution of the Euler equation (see Section 5.4) when the roots of the indicial equation were equal. We consider r to be a continuous variable and determine a_n as a function of r by solving the recurrence relation (8). For this choice of $a_n(r)$ for $n \geq 1$, the terms in equation (6) involving $x^{r+1}, x^{r+2}, x^{r+3}, \ldots$ all have coefficients equal to zero. Therefore, since r_1 is a repeated root of $F(r)$, equation (6) reduces to

$$L[\phi](r,x) = a_0F(r)x^r = a_0(r-r_1)^2x^r. \tag{15}$$

Setting $r = r_1$ in equation (15), we find that $L[\phi](r_1, x) = 0$; hence, as we already know, $y_1(x)$ given by equation (9) is one solution of equation (1). But more important, it also follows from equation (15), just as for the Euler equation, that

$$L\left[\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial r}\right](r_1, x) = a_0 \frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(x^r (r - r_1)^2\right)\Big|_{r=r_1}$$
$$= a_0\left((r - r_1)^2 x^r \ln x + 2(r - r_1)x^r\right)\Big|_{r=r_1} = 0. \tag{16}$$

Hence, a second solution of equation (1) is

$$y_2(x) = \frac{\partial \phi(r, x)}{\partial r}\Bigg|_{r=r_1} = \frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(x^r\left(a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r)x^n\right)\right)\Bigg|_{r=r_1}$$
$$= (x^{r_1}\ln x)\left(a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r_1)x^n\right) + x^{r_1}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n'(r_1)x^n$$
$$= y_1(x)\ln x + x^{r_1}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n'(r_1)x^n, \quad x > 0, \tag{17}$$

where $a_n'(r_1)$ denotes $\dfrac{da_n}{dr}$ evaluated at $r = r_1$.

Although equation (17) provides an explicit expression for a second solution $y_2(x)$, it may turn out that it is difficult to determine $a_n(r)$ as a function of r from the recurrence relation (8) and then to differentiate the resulting expression with respect to r. An alternative is simply to assume that y has the *form* of equation (17). That is, assume that

$$y = y_1(x)\ln x + x^{r_1}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n x^n, \quad x > 0, \tag{18}$$

where $y_1(x)$ has already been found. The coefficients b_n are calculated, as usual, by substituting into the differential equation, collecting terms, and setting the coefficient of each power of x equal to zero. A third possibility is to use the method of reduction of order to find $y_2(x)$ once $y_1(x)$ is known.

Roots r_1 and r_2 Differing by an Integer N. For this case the derivation of the second solution is considerably more complicated and will not be given here. The form of this solution is stated in equation (24) in the following theorem. The coefficients $c_n(r_2)$ in equation (24) are given by

$$c_n(r_2) = \frac{d}{dr}[(r - r_2)a_n(r)]\Big|_{r=r_2}, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{19}$$

where $a_n(r)$ is determined from the recurrence relation (8) with $a_0 = 1$. Further, the coefficient a in equation (24) is

$$a = \lim_{r \to r_2}(r - r_2)a_N(r). \tag{20}$$

If $a_N(r_2)$ is finite, then $a = 0$ and there is no logarithmic term in y_2. A full derivation of formulas (19) and (20) may be found in Coddington (Chapter 4).

In practice, the best way to determine whether a is zero in the second solution is simply to try to compute the a_n corresponding to the root r_2 and to see whether it is possible to determine $a_N(r_2)$. If so, there is no further problem. If not, we must use the form (24) with $a \neq 0$.

When $r_1 - r_2 = N$, there are again three ways to find a second solution. First, we can calculate a and $c_n(r_2)$ directly by substituting the expression (24) for y in equation (1). Second, we can calculate $c_n(r_2)$ and a of equation (24) using the formulas (19) and (20). If this is the planned procedure, then in calculating the solution corresponding to $r = r_1$, be sure to obtain the general formula for $a_n(r)$ rather than just $a_n(r_1)$. The third alternative is to use the method of reduction of order.

The following theorem summarizes the results that we have obtained in this section.

Theorem 5.6.1

Consider the differential equation (1)

$$x^2y'' + x(xp(x))y' + \left(x^2q(x)\right)y = 0,$$

where $x = 0$ is a regular singular point. Then $xp(x)$ and $x^2q(x)$ are analytic at $x = 0$ with convergent power series expansions

$$xp(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n x^n, \quad x^2q(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} q_n x^n$$

for $|x| < \rho$, where $\rho > 0$ is the minimum of the radii of convergence of the power series for $xp(x)$ and $x^2q(x)$. Let r_1 and r_2 be the roots of the indicial equation

$$F(r) = r(r-1) + p_0 r + q_0 = 0,$$

with $r_1 \geq r_2$ if r_1 and r_2 are real. Then in either the interval $-\rho < x < 0$ or the interval $0 < x < \rho$, there exists a solution of the form

$$y_1(x) = |x|^{r_1}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r_1)x^n\right), \tag{21}$$

where the $a_n(r_1)$ are given by the recurrence relation (8) with $a_0 = 1$ and $r = r_1$.

CASE 1 If $r_1 - r_2$ is not zero or a positive integer, then in either the interval $-\rho < x < 0$ or the interval $0 < x < \rho$, there exists a second solution of the form

$$y_2(x) = |x|^{r_2}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n(r_2)x^n\right). \tag{22}$$

The $a_n(r_2)$ are also determined by the recurrence relation (8) with $a_0 = 1$ and $r = r_2$. The power series in equations (21) and (22) converge at least for $|x| < \rho$.

CASE 2 If $r_1 = r_2$, then the second solution is

$$y_2(x) = y_1(x)\ln|x| + |x|^{r_1}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(r_1)x^n. \tag{23}$$

CASE 3 If $r_1 - r_2 = N$, a positive integer, then

$$y_2(x) = ay_1(x)\ln|x| + |x|^{r_2}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n(r_2)x^n\right). \tag{24}$$

The coefficients $a_n(r_1)$, $b_n(r_1)$, and $c_n(r_2)$ and the constant a can be determined by substituting the form of the series solutions for y in equation (1). The constant a may turn out to be zero, in which case there is no logarithmic term in the solution (24). Each of the series in equations (23) and (24) converges at least for $|x| < \rho$ and defines a function that is analytic in some neighborhood of $x = 0$.

In all three cases, the two solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the given differential equation.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8:

a. Find all the regular singular points of the given differential equation.

b. Determine the indicial equation and the exponents at the singularity for each regular singular point.

1. $xy'' + 2xy' + 6e^x y = 0$

2. $x^2y'' - x(2+x)y' + (2+x^2)y = 0$

3. $y'' + 4xy' + 6y = 0$

4. $2x(x+2)y'' + y' - xy = 0$

5. $x^2y'' + \frac{1}{2}(x + \sin x)y' + y = 0$

6. $x^2(1-x)y'' - (1+x)y' + 2xy = 0$

7. $(x-2)^2(x+2)y'' + 2xy' + 3(x-2)y = 0$

8. $(4-x^2)y'' + 2xy' + 3y = 0$

In each of Problems 9 through 12:

a. Show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point of the given differential equation.

b. Find the exponents at the singular point $x = 0$.

c. Find the first three nonzero terms in each of two solutions (not multiples of each other) about $x = 0$.

9. $xy'' + y' - y = 0$

10. $xy'' + 2xy' + 6e^x y = 0$ (see Problem 1)

11. $xy'' + y = 0$

12. $x^2y'' + (\sin x)y' - (\cos x)y = 0$

13. **a.** Show that

$$(\ln x)y'' + \frac{1}{2}y' + y = 0$$

has a regular singular point at $x = 1$.

b. Determine the roots of the indicial equation at $x = 1$.

c. Determine the first three nonzero terms in the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-1)^{r+n}$ corresponding to the larger root. You can assume $x - 1 > 0$.

d. What would you expect the radius of convergence of the series to be?

14. In several problems in mathematical physics, it is necessary to study the differential equation

$$x(1-x)y'' + (\gamma - (1+\alpha+\beta)x)y' - \alpha\beta y = 0, \qquad (25)$$

where α, β, and γ are constants. This equation is known as the **hypergeometric equation**.

a. Show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point and that the roots of the indicial equation are 0 and $1 - \gamma$.

b. Show that $x = 1$ is a regular singular point and that the roots of the indicial equation are 0 and $\gamma - \alpha - \beta$.

c. Assuming that $1 - \gamma$ is not a positive integer, show that, in the neighborhood of $x = 0$, one solution of equation (25) is

$$y_1(x) = 1 + \frac{\alpha\beta}{\gamma \cdot 1!}x + \frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)\beta(\beta+1)}{\gamma(\gamma+1)2!}x^2 + \cdots.$$

What would you expect the radius of convergence of this series to be?

d. Assuming that $1 - \gamma$ is not an integer or zero, show that a second solution for $0 < x < 1$ is

$$y_2(x) = x^{1-\gamma}\left(1 + \frac{(\alpha-\gamma+1)(\beta-\gamma+1)}{(2-\gamma)1!}x + \frac{(\alpha-\gamma+1)(\alpha-\gamma+2)(\beta-\gamma+1)(\beta-\gamma+2)}{(2-\gamma)(3-\gamma)2!}x^2 + \cdots\right).$$

e. Show that the point at infinity is a regular singular point and that the roots of the indicial equation are α and β. See Problem 32 of Section 5.4.

15. Consider the differential equation

$$x^3y'' + \alpha xy' + \beta y = 0,$$

where α and β are real constants and $\alpha \neq 0$.

a. Show that $x = 0$ is an irregular singular point.

b. By attempting to determine a solution of the form $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n}$, show that the indicial equation for r is linear and that, consequently, there is only one formal solution of the assumed form.

c. Show that if $\beta/\alpha = -1, 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, then the formal series solution terminates and therefore is an actual solution. For other values of β/α, show that the formal series solution has a zero radius of convergence and so does not represent an actual solution in any interval.

16. Consider the differential equation

$$y'' + \frac{\alpha}{x^s}y' + \frac{\beta}{x^t}y = 0, \qquad (26)$$

where $\alpha \neq 0$ and $\beta \neq 0$ are real numbers, and s and t are positive integers that for the moment are arbitrary.

a. Show that if $s > 1$ or $t > 2$, then the point $x = 0$ is an irregular singular point.

b. Try to find a solution of equation (26) of the form

$$y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n}, \quad x > 0. \qquad (27)$$

Show that if $s = 2$ and $t = 2$, then there is only one possible value of r for which there is a formal solution of equation (26) of the form (27).

c. Show that if $s = 1$ and $t = 3$, then there are no solutions of equation (26) of the form (27).

d. Show that the maximum values of s and t for which the indicial equation is quadratic in r [and hence we can hope to find two solutions of the form (27)] are $s = 1$ and $t = 2$. These are precisely the conditions that distinguish a "weak singularity," or a regular singular point, from an irregular singular point, as we defined them in Section 5.4.

As a note of caution, we point out that although it is sometimes possible to obtain a formal series solution of the form (27) at an irregular singular point, the series may not have a positive radius of convergence. See Problem 15 for an example.

5.7 Bessel's Equation

In this section we illustrate the discussion in Section 5.6 by considering three special cases of Bessel's[14] equation,

$$x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0, \qquad (1)$$

[14]Friedrich Wilhelm Bessel (1784–1846) left school at the age of 14 to embark on a career in the import-export business but soon became interested in astronomy and mathematics. He was appointed director of the observatory at Königsberg in 1810 and held this position until his death. His study of planetary perturbations led him in 1824 to make the first systematic analysis of the solutions, known as Bessel functions, of equation (1). He is also famous for making, in 1838, the first accurate determination of the distance from the earth to a star.

where ν is a constant. It is easy to show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point of equation (1). We have

$$p_0 = \lim_{x \to 0} x \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} = \lim_{x \to 0} x \frac{1}{x} = 1,$$

$$q_0 = \lim_{x \to 0} x^2 \frac{R(x)}{P(x)} = \lim_{x \to 0} x^2 \frac{x^2 - \nu^2}{x^2} = -\nu^2.$$

Thus the indicial equation is

$$F(r) = r(r-1) + p_0 r + q_0 = r(r-1) + r - \nu^2 = r^2 - \nu^2 = 0,$$

with the roots $r = \pm\nu$. We will consider the three cases $\nu = 0$, $\nu = \frac{1}{2}$, and $\nu = 1$ for the interval $x > 0$. Bessel functions will reappear in Sections 11.4 and 11.5.

Bessel Equation of Order Zero. In this case $\nu = 0$, so differential equation (1) reduces to

$$L[y] = x^2 y'' + x y' + x^2 y = 0, \tag{2}$$

and the roots of the indicial equation are equal: $r_1 = r_2 = 0$. Substituting

$$y = \phi(r, x) = a_0 x^r + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n} \tag{3}$$

in equation (2), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L[\phi](r, x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \big((r+n)(r+n-1) + (r+n)\big) x^{r+n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n+2} \\ &= a_0 \big(r(r-1) + r\big) x^r + a_1 \big((r+1)r + (r+1)\big) x^{r+1} \\ &\quad + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \Big(a_n \big((r+n)(r+n-1) + (r+n)\big) + a_{n-2} \Big) x^{r+n} = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

As we have already noted, the roots of the indicial equation $F(r) = r(r-1) + r = 0$ are $r_1 = 0$ and $r_2 = 0$. The recurrence relation is

$$a_n(r) = -\frac{a_{n-2}(r)}{(r+n)(r+n-1) + (r+n)} = -\frac{a_{n-2}(r)}{(r+n)^2}, \quad n \geq 2. \tag{5}$$

To determine $y_1(x)$, we set r equal to 0. Then, from equation (4), it follows that for the coefficient of x^{r+1} to be zero we must choose $a_1 = 0$. Hence, from equation (5), $a_3 = a_5 = a_7 = \cdots = 0$. Further,

$$a_n(0) = -\frac{a_{n-2}(0)}{n^2}, \quad n = 2, 4, 6, 8, \ldots,$$

or, letting $n = 2m$, we obtain

$$a_{2m}(0) = -\frac{a_{2m-2}(0)}{(2m)^2}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$$

Thus

$$a_2(0) = -\frac{a_0}{2^2}, \quad a_4(0) = \frac{a_0}{2^4 2^2}, \quad a_6(0) = -\frac{a_0}{2^6 (3 \cdot 2)^2},$$

and, in general,

$$a_{2m}(0) = \frac{(-1)^m a_0}{2^{2m} (m!)^2}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{6}$$

Hence

$$y_1(x) = a_0 \left(1 + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m x^{2m}}{2^{2m} (m!)^2} \right), \quad x > 0. \tag{7}$$

The function in brackets is known as the **Bessel function of the first kind of order zero** and is denoted by $J_0(x)$. It follows from Theorem 5.6.1 that the series converges for all x and that J_0 is analytic at $x = 0$. Some of the important properties of J_0 are discussed in the problems. Figure 5.7.1 shows the graphs of $y = J_0(x)$ and some of the partial sums of the series (7).

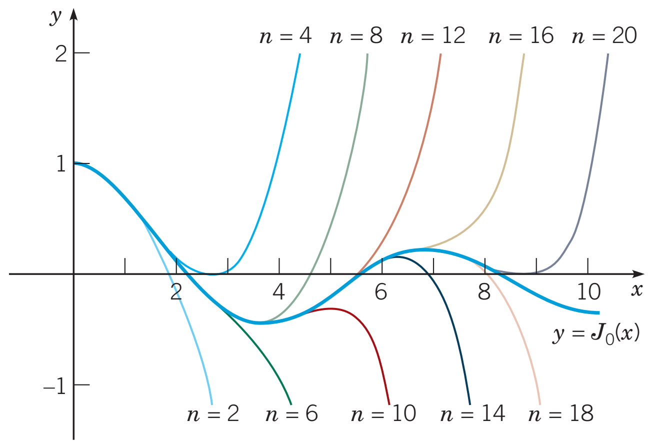


FIGURE 5.7.1 Polynomial approximations to $J_0(x)$, the Bessel function of the first kind of order zero. The value of n is the degree of the approximating polynomial.

To determine $y_2(x)$ we will use equation (17) in Section 5.6. This requires that we calculate[15] $a_n'(0)$. First we note from the coefficient of x^{r+1} in differential equation (4) that $(r+1)^2 a_1(r) = 0$. Thus $a_1(r) = 0$ for all r near $r = 0$. So not only does $a_1(0) = 0$ but also $a_1'(0) = 0$. From the recurrence relation (5) it follows that

$$a_3'(0) = a_5'(0) = \cdots = a_{2n+1}'(0) = \cdots = 0;$$

hence we need only compute $a_{2m}'(0)$, $m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. From equation (5) we have

$$a_{2m}(r) = -\frac{a_{2m-2}(r)}{(r+2m)^2}, \qquad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots .$$

By solving this recurrence relation, we obtain

$$a_2(r) = -\frac{a_0}{(r+2)^2}, \qquad a_4(r) = \frac{a_0}{(r+2)^2(r+4)^2},$$

and, in general,

$$a_{2m}(r) = \frac{(-1)^m a_0}{(r+2)^2 \cdots (r+2m)^2}, \qquad m \geq 3. \tag{8}$$

The computation of $a_{2m}'(r)$ can be carried out most conveniently by noting that if

$$f(x) = (x-\alpha_1)^{\beta_1}(x-\alpha_2)^{\beta_2}(x-\alpha_3)^{\beta_3}\cdots(x-\alpha_n)^{\beta_n},$$

and if x is not equal to $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n$, then

$$\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = \frac{\beta_1}{x-\alpha_1} + \frac{\beta_2}{x-\alpha_2} + \cdots + \frac{\beta_n}{x-\alpha_n}.$$

Applying this result to $a_{2m}(r)$ from equation (8), we find that

$$\frac{a_{2m}'(r)}{a_{2m}(r)} = -2\left(\frac{1}{r+2} + \frac{1}{r+4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{r+2m}\right),$$

and setting r equal to 0, we obtain

$$a_{2m}'(0) = -2\left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2m}\right)a_{2m}(0).$$

[15]Problem 9 outlines an alternative procedure, in which we simply substitute the form (23) of Section 5.6 in equation (2) and then determine the b_n.

Substituting for $a_{2m}(0)$ from equation (6), and letting

$$H_m = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{m}, \tag{9}$$

we obtain, finally,

$$a'_{2m}(0) = -H_m \frac{(-1)^m a_0}{2^{2m}(m!)^2}, \qquad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots .$$

The second solution of the Bessel equation of order zero is found by setting $a_0 = 1$ and substituting for $y_1(x)$ and $a'_{2m}(0) = b_{2m}(0)$ in equation (23) of Section 5.6. We obtain

$$y_2(x) = J_0(x) \ln x + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{m+1} H_m}{2^{2m}(m!)^2} x^{2m}, \qquad x > 0. \tag{10}$$

Instead of y_2, the second solution is usually taken to be a certain linear combination of J_0 and y_2. It is known as the **Bessel function of the second kind of order zero** and is denoted by Y_0. Following Copson (Chapter 12), we define[16]

$$Y_0(x) = \frac{2}{\pi}[y_2(x) + (\gamma - \ln 2) J_0(x)]. \tag{11}$$

Here γ is a constant known as the Euler–Máscheroni[17] constant; it is defined by the equation

$$\gamma = \lim_{n\to\infty} (H_n - \ln n) \cong 0.5772. \tag{12}$$

Substituting for $y_2(x)$ in equation (11), we obtain

$$Y_0(x) = \frac{2}{\pi}\left[\left(\gamma + \ln \frac{x}{2}\right) J_0(x) + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{m+1} H_m}{2^{2m}(m!)^2} x^{2m}\right], \qquad x > 0. \tag{13}$$

The general solution of the Bessel equation of order zero for $x > 0$ is

$$y = c_1 J_0(x) + c_2 Y_0(x).$$

Note that $J_0(x) \to 1$ as $x \to 0$ and that $Y_0(x)$ has a logarithmic singularity at $x = 0$; that is, $Y_0(x)$ behaves as $(2/\pi) \ln x$ when $x \to 0$ through positive values. Thus, if we are interested in solutions of Bessel's equation of order zero that are finite at the origin, which is often the case, we must discard Y_0. The graphs of the functions J_0 and Y_0 are shown in Figure 5.7.2.

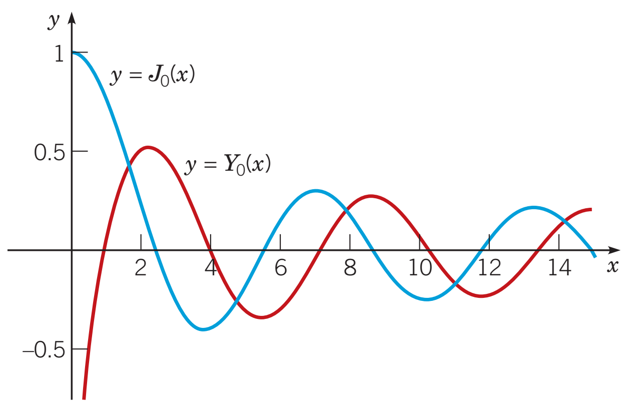


FIGURE 5.7.2 The Bessel functions of order zero: $y = J_0(x)$ (blue) and $y = Y_0(x)$ (red).

[16]Other authors use other definitions for Y_0. The present choice for Y_0 is also known as the Weber function, after Heinrich Weber (1842–1913), who taught at several German universities.

[17]The Euler–Máscheroni constant first appeared in 1734 in a paper by Euler. Lorenzo Máscheroni (1750–1800) was an Italian priest and professor at the University of Pavia. He correctly calculated the first 19 decimal places of γ in 1790.

It is interesting to note from Figure 5.7.2 that for x large, both $J_0(x)$ and $Y_0(x)$ are oscillatory. Such a behavior might be anticipated from the original equation; indeed it is true for the solutions of the Bessel equation of order ν. If we divide equation (1) by x^2, we obtain

$$y'' + \frac{1}{x}y' + \left(1 - \frac{\nu^2}{x^2}\right)y = 0.$$

For x very large, it is reasonable to conjecture that the terms $(1/x)y'$ and $(\nu^2/x^2)y$ are small and hence can be neglected. If this is true, then the Bessel equation of order ν can be approximated by

$$y'' + y = 0.$$

The solutions of this equation are $\sin x$ and $\cos x$; thus we might anticipate that the solutions of Bessel's equation for large x are similar to linear combinations of $\sin x$ and $\cos x$. This is correct insofar as the Bessel functions are oscillatory; however, it is only partly correct. For x large the functions J_0 and Y_0 also decay as x increases; thus the equation $y'' + y = 0$ does not provide an adequate approximation to the Bessel equation for large x, and a more delicate analysis is required. In fact, it is possible to show that

$$J_0(x) \cong \left(\frac{2}{\pi x}\right)^{1/2} \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \quad \text{as } x \to \infty \tag{14}$$

and that

$$Y_0(x) \cong \left(\frac{2}{\pi x}\right)^{1/2} \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \quad \text{as } x \to \infty. \tag{15}$$

These asymptotic approximations, as $x \to \infty$, are actually very good. For example, Figure 5.7.3 shows that the asymptotic approximation (14) to $J_0(x)$ is reasonably accurate for all $x \geq 1$. Thus to approximate $J_0(x)$ over the entire range from zero to infinity, you can use two or three terms of the series (7) for $x \leq 1$ and the asymptotic approximation (14) for $x \geq 1$.

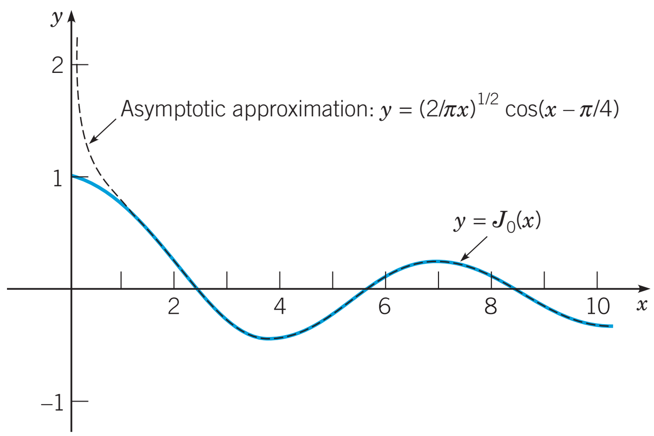


FIGURE 5.7.3 Asymptotic approximation to $J_0(x)$.

Bessel Equation of Order One-Half. This case illustrates the situation in which the roots of the indicial equation differ by a positive integer but there is no logarithmic term in the second solution. Setting $\nu = \frac{1}{2}$ in equation (1) gives

$$L[y] = x^2y'' + xy' + \left(x^2 - \frac{1}{4}\right)y = 0. \tag{16}$$

When we substitute the series (3) for $y = \phi(r, x)$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L[\phi](r, x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left((r+n)(r+n-1)+(r+n)-\frac{1}{4}\right)a_n x^{r+n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^{r+n+2} \\ &= \left(r^2-\frac{1}{4}\right)a_0 x^r + \left((r+1)^2-\frac{1}{4}\right)a_1 x^{r+1} \\ &\quad + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty}\left(\left((r+n)^2-\frac{1}{4}\right)a_n + a_{n-2}\right)x^{r+n} = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

The roots of the indicial equation $r^2 - \frac{1}{4} = 0$ are $r_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ and $r_2 = -\frac{1}{2}$; hence the roots differ by an integer. The recurrence relation is

$$\left((r+n)^2 - \frac{1}{4}\right)a_n = -a_{n-2}, \quad n \geq 2. \tag{18}$$

Corresponding to the larger root $r_1 = \frac{1}{2}$, we find, from the coefficient of x^{r+1} in equation (17), that $a_1 = 0$. Hence, from equation (18), $a_3 = a_5 = \cdots = a_{2n+1} = \cdots = 0$. Further, for $r = \frac{1}{2}$,

$$a_n = -\frac{a_{n-2}}{n(n+1)}, \quad n = 2, 4, 6 \ldots,$$

or, letting $n = 2m$, we obtain

$$a_{2m} = -\frac{a_{2m-2}}{2m(2m+1)}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$$

By solving this recurrence relation, we find that

$$a_2 = -\frac{a_0}{3!}, \quad a_4 = \frac{a_0}{5!}, \ldots$$

and, in general,

$$a_{2m} = \frac{(-1)^m a_0}{(2m+1)!}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$$

Hence, taking $a_0 = 1$, we obtain

$$y_1(x) = x^{1/2}\left(1 + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^m x^{2m}}{(2m+1)!}\right) = x^{-1/2}\sum_{m=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^m x^{2m+1}}{(2m+1)!}, \quad x > 0. \tag{19}$$

The second power series in equation (19) is precisely the Taylor series for $\sin x$; hence one solution of the Bessel equation of order one-half is $x^{-1/2}\sin x$. The **Bessel function of the first kind of order one-half**, $J_{1/2}$, is defined as $(2/\pi)^{1/2} y_1$. Thus

$$J_{1/2}(x) = \left(\frac{2}{\pi x}\right)^{1/2} \sin x, \quad x > 0. \tag{20}$$

Corresponding to the root $r_2 = -\frac{1}{2}$, it is possible that we may have difficulty in computing a_1 since $N = r_1 - r_2 = 1$. However, from equation (17) for $r = -\frac{1}{2}$, the coefficients of x^r and x^{r+1} are both zero regardless of the choice of a_0 and a_1. Hence a_0 and a_1 can be chosen arbitrarily. From the recurrence relation (18), we obtain a set of even-numbered coefficients corresponding to a_0 and a set of odd-numbered coefficients corresponding to a_1. Thus no logarithmic term is needed to obtain a second solution in this case. It is left as an exercise to show that, for $r = -\frac{1}{2}$,

$$a_{2n} = \frac{(-1)^n a_0}{(2n)!}, \quad a_{2n+1} = \frac{(-1)^n a_1}{(2n+1)!}, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots.$$

Hence

$$y_2(x) = x^{-1/2}\left(a_0 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + a_1 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}\right)$$

$$= a_0 \frac{\cos x}{x^{1/2}} + a_1 \frac{\sin x}{x^{1/2}}, \qquad x > 0. \tag{21}$$

The constant a_1 simply introduces a multiple of $y_1(x)$. The second solution of the Bessel equation of order one-half is usually taken to be the solution for which $a_0 = (2/\pi)^{1/2}$ and $a_1 = 0$. It is denoted by $J_{-1/2}$. Then

$$J_{-1/2}(x) = \left(\frac{2}{\pi x}\right)^{1/2} \cos x, \qquad x > 0. \tag{22}$$

The general solution of equation (16) is $y = c_1 J_{1/2}(x) + c_2 J_{-1/2}(x)$.

By comparing equations (20) and (22) with equations (14) and (15), we see that, except for a phase shift of $\pi/4$, the functions $J_{-1/2}$ and $J_{1/2}$ resemble J_0 and Y_0, respectively, for large x. The graphs of $J_{1/2}$ and $J_{-1/2}$ are shown in Figure 5.7.4.

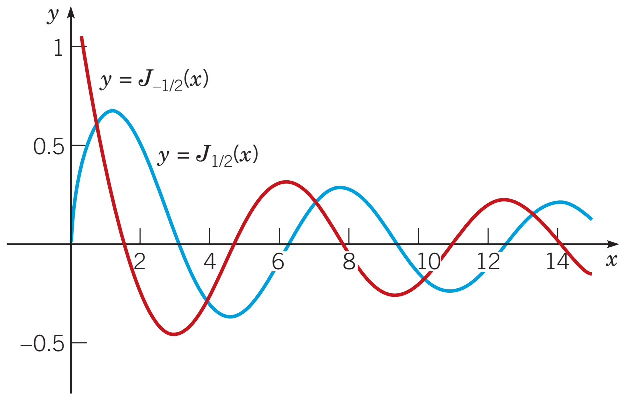


FIGURE 5.7.4 The Bessel functions of order one-half: $y = J_{1/2}(x)$ (blue) and $y = J_{-1/2}(x)$ (red).

Bessel Equation of Order One. This case illustrates the situation in which the roots of the indicial equation differ by a positive integer and the second solution involves a logarithmic term. Setting $\nu = 1$ in equation (1) gives

$$L[y] = x^2 y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 1)y = 0. \tag{23}$$

If we substitute the series (3) for $y = \phi(r, x)$ and collect terms as in the preceding cases, we obtain

$$L[\phi](r, x) = a_0(r^2 - 1)x^r + a_1\Big((r+1)^2 - 1\Big)x^{r+1}$$

$$+ \sum_{n=2}^{\infty}\Big(\Big((r+n)^2 - 1\Big)a_n + a_{n-2}\Big)x^{r+n} = 0. \tag{24}$$

The roots of the indicial equation $r^2 - 1 = 0$ are $r_1 = 1$ and $r_2 = -1$. The recurrence relation is

$$\Big((r+n)^2 - 1\Big)a_n(r) = -a_{n-2}(r), \qquad n \geq 2. \tag{25}$$

Corresponding to the larger root $r = 1$, the recurrence relation becomes

$$a_n = -\frac{a_{n-2}}{(n+2)n}, \qquad n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots .$$

We also find, from the coefficient of x^{r+1} in equation (24), that $a_1 = 0$; hence, from the recurrence relation, $a_3 = a_5 = \cdots = 0$. For even values of n, we can write $n = 2m$, where m

is a positive integer; then

$$a_{2m} = -\frac{a_{2m-2}}{(2m+2)(2m)} = -\frac{a_{2m-2}}{2^2(m+1)m}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots .$$

By solving this recurrence relation, we obtain

$$a_{2m} = \frac{(-1)^m a_0}{2^{2m}(m+1)!m!}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{26}$$

The Bessel function of the first kind of order one, denoted by J_1, is obtained by choosing $a_0 = 1/2$. Hence

$$J_1(x) = \frac{x}{2} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m x^{2m}}{2^{2m}(m+1)!m!}. \tag{27}$$

The series converges absolutely for all x, so the function J_1 is analytic everywhere.

In determining a second solution of Bessel's equation of order one, we illustrate the method of direct substitution. The calculation of the general term in equation (28) below is rather complicated, but the first few coefficients can be found fairly easily. According to Theorem 5.6.1, we assume that

$$y_2(x) = aJ_1(x)\ln x + x^{-1}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n x^n\right), \quad x > 0. \tag{28}$$

Computing $y_2'(x)$ and $y_2''(x)$, substituting in equation (23), and making use of the fact that J_1 is a solution of equation (23), we obtain

$$2axJ_1'(x) + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left((n-1)(n-2)c_n + (n-1)c_n - c_n\right)x^{n-1} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^{n+1} = 0, \tag{29}$$

where $c_0 = 1$. Substituting for $J_1(x)$ from equation (27), shifting the indices of summation in the two series, and carrying out several steps of algebra, we arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} -c_1 + \left(0 \cdot c_2 + c_0\right)x &+ \sum_{n=2}^{\infty}\left((n^2-1)c_{n+1} + c_{n-1}\right)x^n \\ &= -a\left(x + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m(2m+1)x^{2m+1}}{2^{2m}(m+1)!\,m!}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

From equation (30) we observe first that $c_1 = 0$, and $a = -c_0 = -1$. Further, since there are only odd powers of x on the right, the coefficient of each even power of x on the left must be zero. Thus, since $c_1 = 0$, we have $c_3 = c_5 = \cdots = 0$. Corresponding to the odd powers of x, writing $n = 2m+1$ on the left-hand side of equation (30), we obtain the following recurrence relation:

$$\left((2m+1)^2 - 1\right)c_{2m+2} + c_{2m} = \frac{(-1)^m(2m+1)}{2^{2m}(m+1)!\,m!}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{31}$$

When we set $m = 1$ in equation (31), we obtain

$$(3^2 - 1)c_4 + c_2 = \frac{(-1)3}{2^2 \cdot 2!}.$$

Notice that c_2 can be selected *arbitrarily*, and then this equation determines c_4. Also notice that in the equation for the coefficient of x, c_2 appeared multiplied by 0, and that equation was used to determine a. That c_2 is arbitrary is not surprising, since c_2 is the coefficient of x in the expression $x^{-1}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n x^n\right)$. Consequently, c_2 simply generates a multiple of J_1, and y_2 is determined only up to an additive multiple of J_1. In accordance with the usual practice, we choose $c_2 = 1/2^2$. Then we obtain

$$c_4 = \frac{-1}{2^4 \cdot 2}\left(\frac{3}{2}+1\right) = \frac{-1}{2^4 2!}\left(\left(1+\frac{1}{2}\right)+1\right)$$
$$= \frac{(-1)}{2^4 \cdot 2!}(H_2 + H_1).$$

It is possible to show that the solution of the recurrence relation (31) is

$$c_{2m} = \frac{(-1)^{m+1}(H_m + H_{m-1})}{2^{2m} m!(m-1)!}, \quad m = 1, 2, \ldots$$

with the understanding that $H_0 = 0$. Thus

$$y_2(x) = -J_1(x)\ln x + \frac{1}{x}\left(1 - \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m (H_m + H_{m-1})}{2^{2m} m!(m-1)!} x^{2m}\right), \quad x > 0. \tag{32}$$

The calculation of $y_2(x)$ using the alternative procedure (see equations (19) and (20) of Section 5.6) in which we determine the $c_n(r_2)$ is slightly easier. In particular, the latter procedure yields the general formula for c_{2m} without the necessity of solving a recurrence relation of the form (31) (see Problem 10). In this regard, you may also wish to compare the calculations of the second solution of Bessel's equation of order zero in the text and in Problem 9.

The second solution of equation (23), the Bessel function of the second kind of order one, Y_1, is usually taken to be a certain linear combination of J_1 and y_2. Following Copson (Chapter 12), Y_1 is defined as

$$Y_1(x) = \frac{2}{\pi}\big(-y_2(x) + (\gamma - \ln 2)J_1(x)\big), \tag{33}$$

where γ is defined in equation (12). The general solution of equation (23) for $x > 0$ is

$$y = c_1 J_1(x) + c_2 Y_1(x).$$

Notice that although J_1 is analytic at $x = 0$, the second solution Y_1 becomes unbounded in the same manner as $1/x$ as $x \to 0$. The graphs of J_1 and Y_1 are shown in Figure 5.7.5.

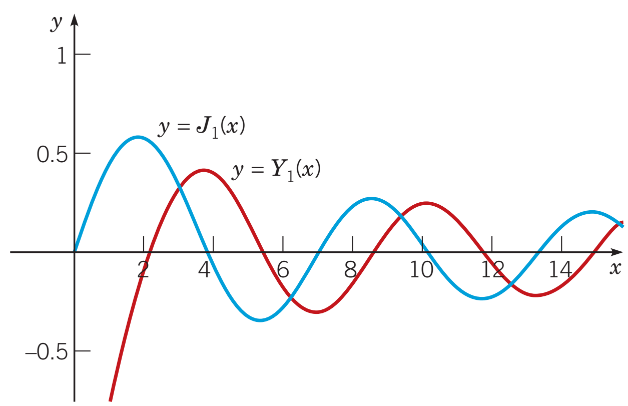


FIGURE 5.7.5 The Bessel functions of order one: $y = J_1(x)$ (blue) and $y = Y_1(x)$ (red).

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, show that the given differential equation has a regular singular point at $x = 0$, and determine two solutions for $x > 0$.

1. $x^2y'' + 2xy' + xy = 0$
2. $x^2y'' + 3xy' + (1+x)y = 0$
3. $x^2y'' + xy' + 2xy = 0$
4. Find two solutions (not multiples of each other) of the Bessel equation of order $\frac{3}{2}$

$$x^2y'' + xy' + \left(x^2 - \frac{9}{4}\right)y = 0, \quad x > 0.$$

5. Show that the Bessel equation of order one-half

$$x^2y'' + xy' + \left(x^2 - \frac{1}{4}\right)y = 0, \quad x > 0$$

can be reduced to the equation

$$v'' + v = 0$$

by the change of dependent variable $y = x^{-1/2}v(x)$. From this, conclude that $y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\cos x$ and $y_2(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x$ are solutions of the Bessel equation of order one-half.

6. Show directly that the series for $J_0(x)$, equation (7), converges absolutely for all x.
7. Show directly that the series for $J_1(x)$, equation (27), converges absolutely for all x and that $J_0'(x) = -J_1(x)$.
8. Consider the Bessel equation of order ν

$$x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0, \quad x > 0,$$

where ν is real and positive.

a. Show that $x = 0$ is a regular singular point and that the roots of the indicial equation are ν and $-\nu$.

b. Corresponding to the larger root ν, show that one solution is

$$y_1(x) = x^{\nu}\left(1 - \frac{1}{1!(1+\nu)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2!(1+\nu)(2+\nu)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^4 + \sum_{m=3}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^m}{m!(1+\nu)\cdots(m+\nu)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2m}\right).$$

c. If 2ν is not an integer, show that a second solution is

$$y_2(x) = x^{-\nu}\left(1 - \frac{1}{1!(1-\nu)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2!(1-\nu)(2-\nu)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^4 + \sum_{m=3}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^m}{m!(1-\nu)\cdots(m-\nu)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2m}\right).$$

Note that $y_1(x) \to 0$ as $x \to 0$, and that $y_2(x)$ is unbounded as $x \to 0$.

d. Verify by direct methods that the power series in the expressions for $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ converge absolutely for all x. Also verify that y_2 is a solution, provided only that ν is not an integer.

9. In this section we showed that one solution of Bessel's equation of order zero

$$L[y] = x^2y'' + xy' + x^2y = 0$$

is J_0, where $J_0(x)$ is given by equation (7) with $a_0 = 1$. According to Theorem 5.6.1, a second solution has the form $(x > 0)$

$$y_2(x) = J_0(x)\ln x + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n x^n.$$

a. Show that

$$L[y_2](x) = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n(n-1)b_n x^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n b_n x^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n x^{n+2} + 2xJ_0'(x). \tag{34}$$

b. Substituting the series representation for $J_0(x)$ in equation (34), show that

$$b_1 x + 2^2 b_2 x^2 + \sum_{n=3}^{\infty}(n^2 b_n + b_{n-2})x^n = -2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n 2n x^{2n}}{2^{2n}(n!)^2}. \tag{35}$$

c. Note that only even powers of x appear on the right-hand side of equation (35). Show that $b_1 = b_3 = b_5 = \cdots = 0$, $b_2 = \dfrac{1}{2^2(1!)^2}$, and that

$$(2n)^2 b_{2n} + b_{2n-2} = -2\frac{(-1)^n(2n)}{2^{2n}(n!)^2}, \quad n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots.$$

Deduce that

$$b_4 = -\frac{1}{2^2 4^2}\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad b_6 = \frac{1}{2^2 4^2 6^2}\left(1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3}\right).$$

The general solution of the recurrence relation is $b_{2n} = \dfrac{(-1)^{n+1}H_n}{2^{2n}(n!)^2}$. Substituting for b_n in the expression for $y_2(x)$, we obtain the solution given in equation (10).

10. Find a second solution of Bessel's equation of order one by computing the $c_n(r_2)$ and a of equation (24) of Section 5.6 according to the formulas (19) and (20) of that section. Some guidelines along the way of this calculation are the following. First, use equation (24) of this section to show that $a_1(-1)$ and $a_1'(-1)$ are 0. Then show that $c_1(-1) = 0$ and, from the recurrence relation, that $c_n(-1) = 0$ for $n = 3, 5, \ldots$. Finally, use equation (25) to show that

$$a_2(r) = -\frac{a_0}{(r+1)(r+3)},$$

$$a_4(r) = \frac{a_0}{(r+1)(r+3)(r+3)(r+5)},$$

and that

$$a_{2m}(r) = \frac{(-1)^m a_0}{(r+1)\cdots(r+2m-1)(r+3)\cdots(r+2m+1)}, \ m \geq 3.$$

Then show that

$$c_{2m}(-1) = \frac{(-1)^{m+1}(H_m + H_{m-1})}{2^{2m}m!(m-1)!}, \quad m \geq 1.$$

11. By a suitable change of variables it is sometimes possible to transform another differential equation into a Bessel equation. For example, show that a solution of

$$x^2y'' + \left(\alpha^2\beta^2x^{2\beta} + \frac{1}{4} - \nu^2\beta^2\right)y = 0, \quad x > 0$$

is given by $y = x^{1/2}f\left(\alpha x^{\beta}\right)$, where $f(\xi)$ is a solution of the Bessel equation of order ν.

12. Using the result of Problem 11, show that the general solution of the Airy equation

$$y'' - xy = 0, \quad x > 0$$

is $y = x^{1/2}\left(c_1f_1\left(\frac{2}{3}ix^{3/2}\right) + c_2f_2\left(\frac{2}{3}ix^{3/2}\right)\right)$, where $f_1(\xi)$ and $f_2(\xi)$ are a fundamental set of solutions of the Bessel equation of order one-third.

13. It can be shown that J_0 has infinitely many zeros for $x > 0$. In particular, the first three zeros are approximately 2.405, 5.520, and 8.653 (see Figure 5.7.1). Let λ_j, $j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, denote the zeros of J_0; it follows that

$$J_0(\lambda_j x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x = 0, \\ 0, & x = 1. \end{cases}$$

Verify that $y = J_0(\lambda_j x)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$y'' + \frac{1}{x}y' + \lambda_j^2 y = 0, \quad x > 0.$$

Hence show that

$$\int_0^1 xJ_0(\lambda_i x)J_0(\lambda_j x)\,dx = 0 \quad \text{if } \lambda_i \neq \lambda_j.$$

This important property of $J_0(\lambda_i x)$, which is known as the **orthogonality property**, is useful in solving boundary value problems.

Hint: Write the differential equation for $J_0(\lambda_i x)$. Multiply it by $xJ_0(\lambda_j x)$ and subtract that result from $xJ_0(\lambda_i x)$ times the differential equation for $J_0(\lambda_j x)$. Then integrate from 0 to 1.

References

Coddington, E. A., *An Introduction to Ordinary Differential Equations* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1961; New York: Dover, 1989).

Coddington, E. A., and Carlson, R., *Linear Ordinary Differential Equations* (Philadelphia, PA: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 1997).

Copson, E. T., *An Introduction to the Theory of Functions of a Complex Variable* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1935).

K. Knopp, *Theory and Applications of Infinite Series* (NewYork: Hafner, 1951).

Proofs of Theorems 5.3.1 and 5.6.1 can be found in intermediate or advanced books; for example, see Chapters 3 and 4 of Coddington, Chapters 5 and 6 of Coddington and Carlson, or Chapters 3 and 4 of

Rainville, E. D., *Intermediate Differential Equations* (2nd ed.) (New York: Macmillan, 1964).

Also see these texts for a discussion of the point at infinity, which was mentioned in Problem 32 of Section 5.4. The behavior of solutions near an irregular singular point is an even more advanced topic; a brief discussion can be found in Chapter 5 of

Coddington, E. A., and Levinson, N., *Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1955; Malabar, FL: Krieger, 1984).

Fuller discussions of the Bessel equation, the Legendre equation, and many of the other named equations can be found in advanced books on differential equations, methods of applied mathematics, and special functions. One text dealing with special functions such as the Legendre polynomials and the Bessel functions is

Hochstadt, H., *Special Functions of Mathematical Physics* (New York: Holt, 1961).

An excellent compilation of formulas, graphs, and tables of Bessel functions, Legendre functions, and other special functions of mathematical physics may be found in

Abramowitz, M., and Stegun, I. A. (eds.), *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables* (New York: Dover, 1965); originally published by the National Bureau of Standards, Washington, DC, 1964.

The digital successor to Abramowitz and Stegun is

Digital Library of Mathematical Functions. Released August 29, 2011. National Institute of Standards and Technology from http://dlmf.nist.gov/.

CHAPTER 6

The Laplace Transform

Many practical engineering problems involve mechanical or electrical systems acted on by discontinuous or impulsive forcing terms. For such problems the methods described in Chapter 3 are often rather awkward to use. Another method that is especially well suited to these problems, although useful much more generally, is based on the Laplace transform. In this chapter we describe how this important method works, emphasizing problems typical of those that arise in engineering applications.

6.1 Definition of the Laplace Transform

Improper Integrals. Since the Laplace transform involves an integral from zero to infinity, a knowledge of improper integrals of this type is necessary to appreciate the subsequent development of the properties of the transform. We provide a brief review of such improper integrals here. If you are already familiar with improper integrals, you may wish to skip over this review. On the other hand, if improper integrals are new to you, then you should probably consult a calculus book, where you will find many more details and examples.

An improper integral over an unbounded interval is defined as a limit of integrals over finite intervals; thus

$$\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_a^A f(t)\,dt, \tag{1}$$

where A is a positive real number. If the definite integral from a to A exists for each $A > a$, and if the limit of these values as $A \to \infty$ exists, then the improper integral is said to **converge** to that limiting value. Otherwise the integral is said to **diverge**, or to fail to exist. The following examples illustrate both possibilities.

EXAMPLE 1

Does the improper integral $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty \frac{dt}{t}$ diverge or converge?

Solution:

From equation (1) we have

$$\int_1^\infty \frac{dt}{t} = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_1^A \frac{dt}{t} = \lim_{A\to\infty} \ln A.$$

Since $\displaystyle\lim_{A\to\infty} \ln A = \infty$, the improper integral diverges.

EXAMPLE 2

Evaluate the improper integral $\int_0^\infty e^{ct}\,dt$. For what values of c does this improper integral converge?

Solution:

Suppose c is a real nonzero constant. Then

$$\int_0^\infty e^{ct}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_0^A e^{ct}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\left.\frac{e^{ct}}{c}\right|_0^A$$

$$= \lim_{A\to\infty}\frac{1}{c}(e^{cA}-1).$$

It follows that the improper integral converges to the value $-1/c$ if $c < 0$ and diverges if $c > 0$. If $c = 0$, the integrand e^{ct} is the constant function with value 1. In this case

$$\lim_{A\to\infty}\int_0^A 1\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}(A-0) = \infty,$$

so the integral again diverges.

EXAMPLE 3

Find all real numbers p for which the improper integral $\int_1^\infty t^{-p}\,dt$ converges. For what values of p does it diverge?

Solution:

Suppose that p is a real constant and $p \neq 1$; the case $p = 1$ was considered in Example 1. Then

$$\int_1^\infty t^{-p}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_1^A t^{-p}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\frac{1}{1-p}(A^{1-p}-1).$$

As $A \to \infty$, $A^{1-p} \to 0$ if $p > 1$, but $A^{1-p} \to \infty$ if $p < 1$. Hence $\int_1^\infty t^{-p}\,dt$ converges to the value $1/(p-1)$ for $p > 1$ but (incorporating the result of Example 1) diverges for $p \leq 1$. These results are analogous to those for the infinite series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{-p}$.

Before discussing the possible existence of $\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$, it is helpful to define certain terms. A function f is said to be **piecewise continuous** on an interval $\alpha \leq t \leq \beta$ if the interval[1] can be partitioned by a finite number of points $\alpha = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_n = \beta$ so that

1. f is continuous on each open subinterval $t_{i-1} < t < t_i$.
2. f approaches a finite limit as the endpoints of each subinterval are approached from within the subinterval.

In other words, f is piecewise continuous on $\alpha \leq t \leq \beta$ if it is continuous there except for a finite number of jump discontinuities. If f is piecewise continuous on $\alpha \leq t \leq \beta$ for every $\beta > \alpha$, then f is said to be piecewise continuous on $t \geq \alpha$. An example of a piecewise continuous function is shown in Figure 6.1.1.

The integral of a piecewise continuous function on a finite interval is just the sum of the integrals on the subintervals created by the partition points. For instance, for the function $f(t)$

[1] It is not essential that the interval be closed; the same definition applies if the interval is open at one or both ends.

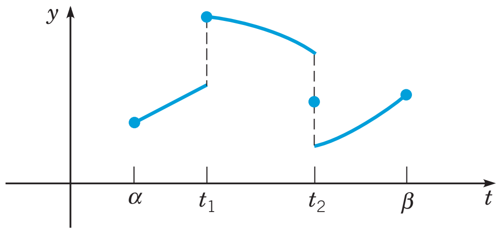


FIGURE 6.1.1 A piecewise continuous function $y = f(t)$.

shown in Figure 6.1.1, we have

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} f(t)\,dt = \int_{\alpha}^{t_1} f(t)\,dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} f(t)\,dt + \int_{t_2}^{\beta} f(t)\,dt. \tag{2}$$

For the function shown in Figure 6.1.1, we have assigned values to the function at the endpoints α and β and at the partition points t_1 and t_2. However, as far as the integrals in equation (2) are concerned, it does not matter whether $f(t)$ is defined at these points, or what values may be assigned to $f(t)$ at them. The values of the integrals in equation (2) remain the same regardless.

Thus, if f is piecewise continuous on the interval $a \le t \le A$, then $\int_a^A f(t)\,dt$ exists. Hence, if f is piecewise continuous for $t \ge a$, then $\int_a^A f(t)\,dt$ exists for each $A > a$. However, piecewise continuity is not enough to ensure convergence of the improper integral $\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$, as the preceding examples show.

If f cannot be integrated easily in terms of elementary functions, the definition of convergence of $\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$ may be difficult to apply. Frequently, the most convenient way to test the convergence or divergence of an improper integral is by the following comparison theorem, which is analogous to a similar theorem for infinite series.

Theorem 6.1.1

If f is piecewise continuous for $t \ge a$, if $|f(t)| \le g(t)$ when $t \ge M$ for some positive constant M, and if $\int_M^\infty g(t)\,dt$ converges, then $\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$ also converges.

On the other hand, if $f(t) \ge g(t) \ge 0$ for $t \ge M$, and if $\int_M^\infty g(t)\,dt$ diverges, then $\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$ also diverges.

The proof of these results from calculus will not be given here. They are made plausible, however, by comparing the areas represented by $\int_M^\infty g(t)\,dt$ and $\int_M^\infty |f(t)|\,dt$. The functions most useful for comparison purposes are e^{ct} and t^{-p}, which we considered in Examples 1, 2, and 3.

The Laplace Transform. Among the tools that are very useful for solving linear differential equations are **integral transforms**. An integral transform is a relation of the form

$$F(s) = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} K(s,t) f(t)\,dt, \tag{3}$$

where $K(s,t)$ is a given function, called the **kernel** of the transformation, and the limits of integration α and β are also given. It is possible that $\alpha = -\infty$, or $\beta = \infty$, or both. The relation (3) transforms the function f into another function F, which is called the **transform** of f.

There are several integral transforms that are useful in applied mathematics, but in this chapter we consider only the Laplace[2] transform. This transform is defined in the following

[2]The Laplace transform is named for the eminent French mathematician P. S. Laplace, who studied the relation (3) in 1782. However, the techniques described in this chapter were not developed until a century or more later. We owe them mainly to Oliver Heaviside (1850–1925), an innovative self-taught English electrical engineer, who made significant contributions to the development and application of electromagnetic theory. He was also one of the developers of vector calculus.

way. Let $f(t)$ be given for $t \geq 0$, and suppose that f satisfies certain conditions to be stated a little later. Then the Laplace transform of f, which we will denote by $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ or by $F(s)$, is defined by the equation

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = F(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} f(t)\,dt, \tag{4}$$

whenever this improper integral converges. The Laplace transform makes use of the kernel $K(s,t) = e^{-st}$. Since the solutions of linear differential equations with constant coefficients are based on the exponential function, the Laplace transform is particularly useful for such equations. The general idea in using the Laplace transform to solve a differential equation is as follows:

1. Use the relation (4) to transform an initial value problem for an unknown function f in the t-domain into a simpler problem (indeed, an algebraic problem) for F in the s-domain.
2. Solve this algebraic problem to find F.
3. Recover the desired function f from its transform F. This last step is known as "inverting the transform."

In general, the parameter s may be complex, and the full power of the Laplace transform becomes available only when we regard $F(s)$ as a function of a complex variable. However, for the problems discussed here, it is sufficient to consider only real values of s.

The Laplace transform F of a function f exists if f satisfies certain conditions, such as those stated in the following theorem.

Theorem 6.1.2

Suppose that

(i) f is piecewise continuous on the interval $0 \leq t \leq A$ for any positive A and

(ii) there exist real constants K, a, and M, with K and M positive, such that

$$|f(t)| \leq Ke^{at} \quad \text{when } t \geq M.$$

Then the Laplace transform $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = F(s)$, defined by equation (4), exists for $s > a$.

To establish this theorem, we must show that the integral in equation (4) converges for $s > a$. Splitting the improper integral into two parts, we have

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-st} f(t)\,dt = \int_0^M e^{-st} f(t)\,dt + \int_M^\infty e^{-st} f(t)\,dt. \tag{5}$$

The first integral on the right-hand side of equation (5) exists by hypothesis (i) of the theorem; hence the existence of $F(s)$ depends on the convergence of the second integral. By hypothesis (ii) we have, for $t \geq M$,

$$|e^{-st} f(t)| \leq Ke^{-st}e^{at} = Ke^{(a-s)t},$$

and thus, by Theorem 6.1.1, $F(s)$ exists provided that $\int_M^\infty e^{(a-s)t}\,dt$ converges. Referring to Example 1 with c replaced by $a - s$, we see that this latter integral converges when $a - s < 0$, which establishes Theorem 6.1.2.

In this chapter (except in Section 6.5), we deal almost exclusively with functions that satisfy the conditions of Theorem 6.1.2. Such functions are described as piecewise continuous and of **exponential order** as $t \to \infty$. Note that there are functions that are not of exponential order as $t \to \infty$. One such function is $f(t) = e^{t^2}$. As $t \to \infty$, this function increases faster than Ke^{at} regardless of how large the constants K and a may be.

The Laplace transforms of some important elementary functions are given in the following examples.

EXAMPLE 4

Find $\mathcal{L}\{1\}$.

Solution:

Let $f(t) = 1,\ t \geq 0$. Then, as in Example 2,

$$\mathcal{L}\{1\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st}\,dt = -\lim_{A\to\infty} \frac{e^{-st}}{s}\bigg|_0^A = \frac{1}{s}, \qquad s > 0.$$

EXAMPLE 5

Find $\mathcal{L}\left\{e^{at}\right\}$.

Solution:

Let $f(t) = e^{at},\ t \geq 0$. Then, again referring to Example 2,

$$\mathcal{L}\{e^{at}\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st}e^{at}\,dt = \int_0^\infty e^{-(s-a)t}\,dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{s-a}, \qquad s > a.$$

EXAMPLE 6

Find the Laplace transform of the function graphed in Figure 6.1.2.

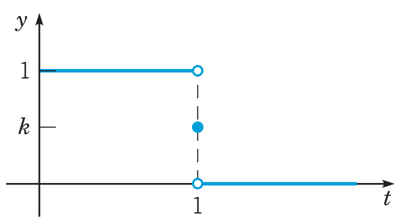


FIGURE 6.1.2 Graph of the piecewise-defined function in Example 6.

Solution:

Let

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq t < 1, \\ k, & t = 1, \\ 0, & t > 1, \end{cases}$$

where k is a constant. In engineering contexts $f(t)$ often represents a unit pulse, perhaps of force or voltage.

Note that f is a piecewise continuous function. Then

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st}f(t)\,dt = \int_0^1 e^{-st}\,dt = -\frac{e^{-st}}{s}\bigg|_0^1 = \frac{1-e^{-s}}{s}, \qquad s > 0.$$

Observe that $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ does not depend on k, the function value at the point of discontinuity. Even if $f(t)$ is not defined at this point, the Laplace transform of f remains the same. Thus there are many functions, differing only in their value at a single point, that have the same Laplace transform.

EXAMPLE 7

Find $\mathcal{L}\{\sin(at)\}$. For what values of s is this transform defined?

Solution:

Let $f(t) = \sin(at),\ t \geq 0$. Then

$$\mathcal{L}\{\sin(at)\} = F(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-st}\sin(at)\,dt, \quad s > 0.$$

Since

$$F(s) = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_0^A e^{-st}\sin(at)\,dt,$$

upon integrating by parts, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} F(s) &= \lim_{A\to\infty}\left[-\frac{e^{-st}\cos(at)}{a}\bigg|_0^A - \frac{s}{a}\int_0^A e^{-st}\cos(at)\,dt\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{a} - \frac{s}{a}\int_0^\infty e^{-st}\cos(at)\,dt. \end{aligned}$$

A second integration by parts then yields

$$\begin{aligned} F(s) &= \frac{1}{a} - \frac{s^2}{a^2}\int_0^\infty e^{-st}\sin(at)\,dt \\ &= \frac{1}{a} - \frac{s^2}{a^2}F(s). \end{aligned}$$

Now, solving for $F(s)$, we have

$$F(s) = \frac{a}{s^2+a^2}, \quad s > 0.$$

In Problem 5 you will use a similar process to find $\mathcal{L}\{\cos(at)\} = \dfrac{s}{s^2+a^2}$ for $s > 0$. Now let us suppose that f_1 and f_2 are two functions whose Laplace transforms exist for $s > a_1$ and $s > a_2$, respectively. Then, for s greater than the maximum of a_1 and a_2,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{c_1 f_1(t) + c_2 f_2(t)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st}\big(c_1 f_1(t) + c_2 f_2(t)\big)dt \\ &= c_1\int_0^\infty e^{-st} f_1(t)\,dt + c_2\int_0^\infty e^{-st} f_2(t)\,dt; \end{aligned}$$

hence

$$\mathcal{L}\{c_1 f_1(t) + c_2 f_2(t)\} = c_1\mathcal{L}\{f_1(t)\} + c_2\mathcal{L}\{f_2(t)\}. \tag{6}$$

Equation (6) states that the Laplace transform is a **linear operator**, and we make frequent use of this property later. The sum in equation (6) can be readily extended to an arbitrary number of terms.

EXAMPLE 8

Find the Laplace transform of $f(t) = 5e^{-2t} - 3\sin(4t),\ t \geq 0$.

Solution:

Using equation (6), we write

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = 5\mathcal{L}\{e^{-2t}\} - 3\mathcal{L}\{\sin(4t)\}.$$

Then, from Examples 5 and 7, we obtain

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \frac{5}{s+2} - \frac{12}{s^2+16}, \quad s > 0.$$

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, sketch the graph of the given function. In each case determine whether f is continuous, piecewise continuous, or neither on the interval $0 \le t \le 3$.

1. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t^2, & 0 \le t \le 1 \\ 2+t, & 1 < t \le 2 \\ 6-t, & 2 < t \le 3 \end{cases}$

2. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t^2, & 0 \le t \le 1 \\ (t-1)^{-1}, & 1 < t \le 2 \\ 1, & 2 < t \le 3 \end{cases}$

3. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t^2, & 0 \le t \le 1 \\ 1, & 1 < t \le 2 \\ 3-t, & 2 < t \le 3 \end{cases}$

4. Find the Laplace transform of each of the following functions:

a. $f(t) = t$

b. $f(t) = t^2$

c. $f(t) = t^n$, where n is a positive integer

5. Find the Laplace transform of $f(t) = \cos(at)$, where a is a real constant.

Recall that

$$\cosh(bt) = \frac{1}{2}(e^{bt} + e^{-bt}) \text{ and } \sinh(bt) = \frac{1}{2}(e^{bt} - e^{-bt}).$$

In each of Problems 6 through 7, use the linearity of the Laplace transform to find the Laplace transform of the given function; a and b are real constants.

6. $f(t) = \cosh(bt)$

7. $f(t) = \sinh(bt)$

Recall that

$$\cos(bt) = \frac{1}{2}(e^{ibt} + e^{-ibt}) \text{ and } \sin(bt) = \frac{1}{2i}(e^{ibt} - e^{-ibt}).$$

In each of Problems 8 through 11, use the linearity of the Laplace transform to find the Laplace transform of the given function; a and b are real constants. Assume that the necessary elementary integration formulas extend to this case.

8. $f(t) = \sin(bt)$

9. $f(t) = \cos(bt)$

10. $f(t) = e^{at}\sin(bt)$

11. $f(t) = e^{at}\cos(bt)$

In each of Problems 12 through 15, use integration by parts to find the Laplace transform of the given function; n is a positive integer and a is a real constant.

12. $f(t) = te^{at}$

13. $f(t) = t\sin(at)$

14. $f(t) = t^n e^{at}$

15. $f(t) = t^2\sin(at)$

In each of Problems 16 through 18, find the Laplace transform of the given function.

16. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < \pi \\ 0, & \pi \le t < \infty \end{cases}$

17. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 1, & 1 \le t < \infty \end{cases}$

18. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 2-t, & 1 \le t < 2 \\ 0, & 2 \le t < \infty \end{cases}$

In each of Problems 19 through 21, determine whether the given integral converges or diverges.

19. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty (t^2+1)^{-1}\,dt$

20. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty te^{-t}\,dt$

21. $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty t^{-2}e^t\,dt$

22. Suppose that f and f' are continuous for $t \ge 0$ and of exponential order as $t \to \infty$. Use integration by parts to show that if $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$, then $\lim\limits_{s\to\infty} F(s) = 0$. The result is actually true under less restrictive conditions, such as those of Theorem 6.1.2.

23. The Gamma Function. The gamma function is denoted by $\Gamma(p)$ and is defined by the integral

$$\Gamma(p+1) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^p\,dx. \tag{7}$$

The integral converges as $x \to \infty$ for all p. For $p < 0$ it is also improper at $x = 0$, because the integrand becomes unbounded as $x \to 0$. However, the integral can be shown to converge at $x = 0$ for $p > -1$.

a. Show that, for $p > 0$,

$$\Gamma(p+1) = p\Gamma(p).$$

b. Show that $\Gamma(1) = 1$.

c. If p is a positive integer n, show that

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n!.$$

Since $\Gamma(p)$ is also defined when p is not an integer, this function provides an extension of the factorial function to nonintegral values of the independent variable. Note that it is also consistent to define $0! = 1$.

d. Show that, for $p > 0$,

$$p(p+1)(p+2)\cdots(p+n-1) = \frac{\Gamma(p+n)}{\Gamma(p)}.$$

Thus $\Gamma(p)$ can be determined for all positive values of p if $\Gamma(p)$ is known in a single interval of unit length—say, $0 < p \le 1$. It is possible to show that $\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi}$. Find $\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$ and $\Gamma\left(\frac{11}{2}\right)$.

24. Consider the Laplace transform of t^p, where $p > -1$.

a. Referring to Problem 23, show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^p\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} t^p \, dt = \frac{1}{s^{p+1}} \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^p \, dx$$
$$= \frac{\Gamma(p)}{s^{p+1}}, \quad s > 0.$$

b. Let p be a positive integer n in part a; show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^n\} = \frac{n!}{s^{n+1}}, \quad s > 0.$$

c. Show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^{-1/2}\} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{s}} \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} \, dx, \quad s > 0.$$

It is possible to show that

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2};$$

hence

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^{-1/2}\} = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{s}}, \quad s > 0.$$

d. Show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^{1/2}\} = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2s^{3/2}}, \quad s > 0.$$

6.2 Solution of Initial Value Problems

In this section we show how the Laplace transform can be used to solve initial value problems for linear differential equations with constant coefficients. The usefulness of the Laplace transform for this purpose rests primarily on the fact that the transform of f' is related in a simple way to the transform of f. The relationship is expressed in the following theorem.

Theorem 6.2.1

Suppose that f is continuous and f' is piecewise continuous on any interval $0 \le t \le A$. Suppose further that there exist constants K, a, and M such that $|f(t)| \le Ke^{at}$ for $t \ge M$. Then $\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\}$ exists for $s > a$, and moreover,

$$\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\} = s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0). \tag{1}$$

To prove this theorem, we consider the integral

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t) \, dt,$$

whose limit as $A \to \infty$, if it exists, is the Laplace transform of f'. To calculate this limit we first need to write the integral in a suitable form. If f' has points of discontinuity in the interval $0 \le t \le A$, let them be denoted by $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_k$. Then we can write the integral as

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t) \, dt = \int_0^{t_1} e^{-st} f'(t) \, dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} e^{-st} f'(t) \, dt + \cdots + \int_{t_k}^A e^{-st} f'(t) \, dt.$$

Integrating each term on the right by parts yields

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t) \, dt = e^{-st} f(t) \Big|_0^{t_1} + e^{-st} f(t) \Big|_{t_1}^{t_2} + \cdots + e^{-st} f(t) \Big|_{t_k}^{A}$$
$$+ s \left[\int_0^{t_1} e^{-st} f(t) \, dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} e^{-st} f(t) \, dt + \cdots + \int_{t_k}^A e^{-st} f(t) \, dt \right].$$

Since f is continuous, the contributions of the integrated terms at $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_k$ cancel. Further, the integrals on the right-hand side can be combined into a single integral so that we obtain

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t)\,dt = e^{-sA} f(A) - f(0) + s \int_0^A e^{-st} f(t)\,dt. \tag{2}$$

Now we let $A \to \infty$ in equation (2). The integral on the right-hand side of this equation approaches $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$. Further, for $A \geq M$, we have $|f(A)| \leq Ke^{aA}$; consequently, $|e^{-sA} f(A)| \leq Ke^{-(s-a)A}$. Hence $e^{-sA} f(A) \to 0$ as $A \to \infty$ whenever $s > a$. Thus the right-hand side of equation (2) has the limit $s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0)$. Consequently, the left-hand side of equation (2) also has a limit, and as noted above, this limit is $\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\}$. Therefore, for $s > a$, we conclude that

$$\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\} = s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0),$$

which completes the proof of Theorem 6.2.1.

If f' and f'' satisfy the same conditions that are imposed on f and f', respectively, in Theorem 6.2.1, then it follows that the Laplace transform of f'' also exists for $s > a$ and is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{f''(t)\} &= s\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\} - f'(0) \\ &= s(s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0)) - f'(0) \\ &= s^2\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - sf(0) - f'(0). \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

Indeed, provided the function f and its derivatives satisfy suitable conditions, an expression for the transform of the n^{th} derivative $f^{(n)}$ can be derived by n successive applications of this theorem. The result is given in the following corollary.

Corollary 6.2.2

Suppose that the functions $f, f', \ldots, f^{(n-1)}$ are continuous and that $f^{(n)}$ is piecewise continuous on any interval $0 \leq t \leq A$. Suppose further that there exist constants K, a, and M such that $|f(t)| \leq Ke^{at}, |f'(t)| \leq Ke^{at}, \ldots, |f^{(n-1)}(t)| \leq Ke^{at}$ for $t \geq M$. Then $\mathcal{L}\{f^{(n)}(t)\}$ exists for $s > a$ and is given by

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{f^{(n)}(t)\right\} = s^n\mathcal{L}\left\{f(t)\right\} - s^{n-1}f(0) - \cdots - sf^{(n-2)}(0) - f^{(n-1)}(0). \tag{4}$$

We now show how the Laplace transform can be used to solve initial value problems. It is most useful for problems involving nonhomogeneous differential equations, as we will demonstrate in later sections of this chapter. However, we begin by looking at some homogeneous equations, which are a bit simpler.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the solution of the differential equation

$$y'' - y' - 2y = 0 \tag{5}$$

that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0. \tag{6}$$

Solution:

This initial value problem is easily solved by the methods of Section 3.1. The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 - r - 2 = (r-2)(r+1) = 0,$$

and consequently, the general solution of equation (5) is

$$y = c_1 e^{-t} + c_2 e^{2t}. \tag{7}$$

To satisfy the initial conditions (6), we must have $c_1 + c_2 = 1$ and $-c_1 + 2c_2 = 0$; hence $c_1 = \frac{2}{3}$ and $c_2 = \frac{1}{3}$, so the solution of the initial value problem (4) and (5) is

$$y = \phi(t) = \frac{2}{3}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{3}e^{2t}. \tag{8}$$

Now let us solve the same problem using the Laplace transform. To do this, we must assume that the problem has a solution $y = y(t)$, which with its first two derivatives satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2. Then, taking the Laplace transform of the differential equation (5), we obtain

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{y'' - y' - 2y\right\} = \mathcal{L}\{y''\} - \mathcal{L}\{y'\} - 2\mathcal{L}\{y\} = 0, \tag{9}$$

where we have used the linearity of the Laplace transform to write the transform of a sum as the sum of the separate transforms. Upon using Corollary 6.2.2 to express $\mathcal{L}\{y''\}$ and $\mathcal{L}\{y'\}$ in terms of $\mathcal{L}\{y\}$, we find that equation (9) becomes

$$s^2\mathcal{L}\{y\} - sy(0) - y'(0) - (s\mathcal{L}\{y\} - y(0)) - 2\mathcal{L}\{y\} = 0,$$

or

$$(s^2 - s - 2)Y(s) + (1 - s)y(0) - y'(0) = 0, \tag{10}$$

where $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{y\}$. Substituting for $y(0)$ and $y'(0)$ in equation (10) from the initial conditions (6), and then solving for $Y(s)$, we obtain

$$Y(s) = \frac{s-1}{s^2 - s - 2} = \frac{s-1}{(s-2)(s+1)}. \tag{11}$$

We have thus obtained an expression for the Laplace transform $Y(s)$ of the solution $y(t)$ of the given initial value problem. To determine the solution, $y(t)$, we must find the function whose Laplace transform is $Y(s)$, as given in equation (11).

This can be done most easily by expanding the right-hand side of equation (11) in partial fractions. Thus we write

$$Y(s) = \frac{s-1}{(s-2)(s+1)} = \frac{a}{s-2} + \frac{b}{s+1} = \frac{a(s+1) + b(s-2)}{(s-2)(s+1)}, \tag{12}$$

where the coefficients a and b are to be determined. By equating numerators of the second and fourth members of equation (12), we obtain

$$s - 1 = a(s+1) + b(s-2),$$

an equation that must hold for all s. In particular, if we set $s = 2$ then it follows that $a = \frac{1}{3}$. Similarly, if we set $s = -1$ then we find that $b = \frac{2}{3}$. Substituting these values for a and b into equation (12), we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{1/3}{s-2} + \frac{2/3}{s+1}. \tag{13}$$

Finally, if we use the result of Example 5 of Section 6.1, it follows that $\frac{1}{3}e^{2t}$ has the transform $\frac{1}{3}(s-2)^{-1}$; similarly, $\frac{2}{3}e^{-t}$ has the transform $\frac{2}{3}(s+1)^{-1}$. Hence, by the linearity of the Laplace transform,

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{3}e^{2t} + \frac{2}{3}e^{-t}$$

has the transform (13) and is therefore the solution of the initial value problem (4), (5). Observe that it does satisfy the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2, as we assumed initially. Of course, this is the same solution that we obtained earlier.

The same procedure can be applied to the general second-order linear equation with constant coefficients

$$ay'' + by' + cy = f(t). \tag{14}$$

Assuming that the solution $y(t)$ satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2 for $n = 2$, we can take the transform of equation (14) and thereby obtain

$$a\left(s^2Y(s) - sy(0) - y'(0)\right) + b(sY(s) - y(0)) + cY(s) = F(s), \tag{15}$$

where $F(s)$ is the transform of $f(t)$. By solving equation (15) for $Y(s)$, we find that

$$Y(s) = \frac{(as + b)\,y(0) + ay'(0)}{as^2 + bs + c} + \frac{F(s)}{as^2 + bs + c}. \tag{16}$$

The problem is then solved, provided that we can find the function $y(t)$ whose transform is $Y(s)$.

Even at this early stage of our discussion we can point out four essential features of the Laplace transform method. In the first place, the transform $Y(s)$ of the unknown function $y(t)$ is found by solving an *algebraic equation* rather than a *differential equation*, algebraic equation (10) rather than differential equation (5) in Example 1, or in general algebraic equation (15) rather than differential equation (14). This is the key to the usefulness of Laplace transforms for solving linear, constant coefficient, ordinary differential equations—the problem is reduced from a differential equation to an algebraic one. Next, the solution satisfying given initial conditions is automatically found, so that the task of determining appropriate values for the arbitrary constants in the general solution does not arise. Further, as indicated in equation (15), nonhomogeneous equations are handled in exactly the same way as homogeneous ones; it is not necessary to solve the corresponding homogeneous equation first. Finally, the method can be applied in the same way to higher-order equations, as long as we assume that the solution satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2 for the appropriate value of n.

Observe that the polynomial $as^2 + bs + c$ in the denominator on the right-hand side of equation (16) is precisely the characteristic polynomial associated with equation (14). Since the use of a partial fraction expansion of $Y(s)$ to determine $y(t)$ requires us to factor this polynomial, the use of Laplace transforms does not avoid the necessity of finding roots of the characteristic equation. For equations of higher than second order, this may require a numerical approximation, particularly if the roots are irrational or complex.

The main difficulty that occurs in solving initial value problems by Laplace transforms lies in the problem of determining the function $y(t)$ corresponding to the transform $Y(s)$. This problem is known as the inversion problem for the Laplace transform; $y(t)$ is called the **inverse Laplace transform** corresponding to $Y(s)$, and the process of finding $y(t)$ from $Y(s)$ is known as *inverting the Laplace transform*. We also use the notation $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{Y(s)\}$ to denote the inverse transform of $Y(s)$. There is a general formula for the inverse Laplace transform, but its use requires a familiarity with functions of a complex variable, and we do not consider it in this book. However, it is still possible to develop many important properties of the Laplace transform, and to solve many interesting problems, without the use of complex variables.

In solving the initial value problem (4), (5), we did not consider the question of whether there may be functions other than the one given by equation (8) that also have the transform (13). By Theorem 3.2.1 we know that the initial value problem has no other solutions. We also know that the unique solution (8) of the initial value problem is continuous. Consistent with this fact, it can be shown that if f and g are continuous functions with the same Laplace transform, then f and g must be identical. On the other hand, if f and g are only piecewise continuous, then they may differ at one or more points of discontinuity and yet have the same Laplace transform; see Example 6 in Section 6.1. This lack of uniqueness of the inverse Laplace transform for piecewise continuous functions is of no practical significance in applications.

Thus there is essentially a one-to-one correspondence between functions and their Laplace transforms. This fact suggests the compilation of a table, such as Table 6.2.1, giving the Laplace transforms of functions frequently encountered, and vice versa. The entries in the second column of Table 6.2.1 are the Laplace transforms of those in the first column. Perhaps more important, the functions in the first column are the inverse Laplace transforms of those in the second column. Thus, for example, if the transform of the solution of a differential equation is known, the solution itself can often be found merely by looking it up in the table. Some of the entries in Table 6.2.1 have been used as examples, or appear as problems in Section 6.1, while others will be developed later in the chapter. The third column of the table indicates where the derivation of the given transforms may be found. Although Table 6.2.1 is sufficient for the examples and problems in this book, much larger tables are also available (see the list

TABLE 6.2.1 Elementary Laplace Transforms

$f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$	$F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$	Notes
1. 1	$\dfrac{1}{s}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 4
2. e^{at}	$\dfrac{1}{s-a}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 5
3. t^n, n a positive integer	$\dfrac{n!}{s^{n+1}}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 24
4. $t^p, \quad p > -1$	$\dfrac{\Gamma(p+1)}{s^{p+1}}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 24
5. $\sin(at)$	$\dfrac{a}{s^2+a^2}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 7
6. $\cos(at)$	$\dfrac{s}{s^2+a^2}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 5
7. $\sinh(at)$	$\dfrac{a}{s^2-a^2}, \quad s > \lvert a \rvert$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 7
8. $\cosh(at)$	$\dfrac{s}{s^2-a^2}, \quad s > \lvert a \rvert$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 6
9. $e^{at}\sin(bt)$	$\dfrac{b}{(s-a)^2+b^2}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 10
10. $e^{at}\cos(bt)$	$\dfrac{s-a}{(s-a)^2+b^2}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 11
11. $t^n e^{at}$, n a positive integer	$\dfrac{n!}{(s-a)^{n+1}}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 14
12. $u_c(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & t < c \\ 1 & t \geq c \end{cases}$	$\dfrac{e^{-cs}}{s}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.3
13. $u_c(t) f(t-c)$	$e^{-cs}F(s)$	Sec. 6.3
14. $e^{ct} f(t)$	$F(s-c)$	Sec. 6.3
15. $f(ct)$	$\dfrac{1}{c}F\left(\dfrac{s}{c}\right), \quad c > 0$	Sec. 6.3; Prob. 17
16. $(f * g)(t) = \int_0^t f(t-\tau)g(\tau)\,d\tau$	$F(s)G(s)$	Sec. 6.6
17. $\delta(t-c)$	e^{-cs}	Sec. 6.5
18. $f^{(n)}(t)$	$s^n F(s) - s^{n-1}f(0) - \cdots - f^{(n-1)}(0)$	Sec. 6.2; Cor. 6.2.2
19. $(-t)^n f(t)$	$F^{(n)}(s)$	Sec. 6.2; Prob. 21

of references at the end of the chapter). Transforms and inverse transforms can also be readily obtained electronically by using a computer algebra system.

Frequently, a Laplace transform $F(s)$ is expressible as a sum of several terms

$$F(s) = F_1(s) + F_2(s) + \cdots + F_n(s). \tag{17}$$

Suppose that $f_1(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_1(s)\}, \ldots, f_n(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_n(s)\}$. Then the function

$$f(t) = f_1(t) + \cdots + f_n(t)$$

has the Laplace transform $F(s)$. By the uniqueness property stated previously, no other continuous function f has the same transform. Thus

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_1(s)\} + \cdots + \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_n(s)\}; \tag{18}$$

that is, the inverse Laplace transform is also a linear operator.

In many problems it is convenient to make use of the linearity property by decomposing a given transform into a sum of functions whose inverse transforms are already known or can be found in the table. Partial fraction expansions are particularly useful for this purpose, and a general result covering many cases is given in Problem 29. Other useful properties of Laplace transforms are derived later in this chapter.

As further illustrations of the technique of solving initial value problems by means of the Laplace transform and partial fraction expansions, consider the following examples.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the differential equation

$$y'' + y = \sin(2t) \tag{19}$$

satisfying the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 1. \tag{20}$$

Solution:

We assume that this initial value problem has a solution $y(t)$, which with its first two derivatives satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2. Then, taking the Laplace transform of the differential equation (19), we have

$$s^2Y(s) - sy(0) - y'(0) + Y(s) = \frac{2}{s^2+4},$$

where the transform of $\sin(2t)$ has been obtained from line 5 of Table 6.2.1. Substituting for $y(0)$ and $y'(0)$ from the initial conditions (20) and solving for $Y(s)$, we obtain

$$Y(s) = \frac{2s^3 + s^2 + 8s + 6}{(s^2+1)(s^2+4)}. \tag{21}$$

Using partial fractions, we can write $Y(s)$ in the form

$$Y(s) = \frac{as+b}{s^2+1} + \frac{cs+d}{s^2+4} = \frac{(as+b)(s^2+4) + (cs+d)(s^2+1)}{(s^2+1)(s^2+4)}. \tag{22}$$

By expanding the numerator on the right-hand side of equation (22) and equating it to the numerator in equation (21), we find that

$$2s^3 + s^2 + 8s + 6 = (a+c)s^3 + (b+d)s^2 + (4a+c)s + (4b+d) \tag{23}$$

for all s. Then, comparing coefficients of like powers of s, we have[3]

$$a + c = 2, \qquad b + d = 1,$$
$$4a + c = 8, \qquad 4b + d = 6.$$

[3] We could find the value of the four coefficients by evaluating equation (23) for four different values of s, but, unlike Example 1, it is not obvious what four values of s will give trivial equations to solve for a, b, c, and d.

Consequently, $a = 2$, $c = 0$, $b = \dfrac{5}{3}$, and $d = -\dfrac{2}{3}$, from which it follows that

$$Y(s) = \frac{2s}{s^2+1} + \frac{5/3}{s^2+1} - \frac{2/3}{s^2+4}. \tag{24}$$

From lines 5 and 6 of Table 6.2.1, the solution of the given initial value problem is

$$y = 2\cos t + \frac{5}{3}\sin t - \frac{1}{3}\sin(2t). \tag{25}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y^{(4)} - y = 0, \tag{26}$$

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1, \quad y''(0) = 0, \quad y'''(0) = 0. \tag{27}$$

Solution:

In this problem we need to assume that the solution $y(t)$ satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2 for $n = 4$. The Laplace transform of the differential equation (26) is

$$s^4 Y(s) - s^3 y(0) - s^2 y'(0) - sy''(0) - y'''(0) - Y(s) = 0.$$

Then, using the initial conditions (27) and solving for $Y(s)$, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{s^2}{s^4-1}. \tag{28}$$

A partial fraction expansion of $Y(s)$ is

$$Y(s) = \frac{as+b}{s^2-1} + \frac{cs+d}{s^2+1}, \tag{29}$$

and it follows that

$$(as+b)(s^2+1) + (cs+d)(s^2-1) = s^2 \tag{30}$$

for all s. In this problem we use a combination of substituting values of s and equating coefficients of like powers of s. First, setting $s = 1$ and $s = -1$, respectively, in equation (30), we obtain the pair of equations

$$2(a+b) = 1, \quad 2(-a+b) = 1,$$

and therefore $a = 0$ and $b = \dfrac{1}{2}$. If we set $s = 0$ in equation (30), then $b - d = 0$, so $d = \dfrac{1}{2}$. Finally, equating the coefficients of the cubic terms on each side of equation (30), we find that $a + c = 0$, so $c = 0$. Thus

$$Y(s) = \frac{1/2}{s^2-1} + \frac{1/2}{s^2+1}, \tag{31}$$

and from lines 7 and 5 of Table 6.2.1, the solution of the initial value problem (26), (27) is

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2}(\sinh t + \sin t). \tag{32}$$

We conclude by noting that we could have looked for a partial fraction expansion of $Y(s)$ in the form

$$Y(s) = \frac{a}{s-1} + \frac{b}{s+1} + \frac{cs+d}{s^2+1}.$$

We used the form in equation (29) because Table 6.2.1 includes entries for both $1/(s^2 \pm 1)$ and $s/(s^2 \pm 1)$.

The most important elementary applications of the Laplace transform are in the study of mechanical vibrations and in the analysis of electric circuits; the governing equations were derived in Section 3.7. A vibrating spring-mass system has the equation of motion

$$m\frac{d^2u}{dt^2}+\gamma\frac{du}{dt}+ku=F(t), \tag{33}$$

where m is the mass, γ the damping coefficient, k the spring constant, and $F(t)$ the applied external force. The equation that describes an electric circuit containing an inductance L, a resistance R, and a capacitance C (an LRC circuit) is

$$L\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2}+R\frac{dQ}{dt}+\frac{1}{C}Q=E(t), \tag{34}$$

where $Q(t)$ is the charge on the capacitor and $E(t)$ is the applied voltage. In terms of the current $I(t)=dQ(t)/dt$, we can differentiate equation (34) and write

$$L\frac{d^2I}{dt^2}+R\frac{dI}{dt}+\frac{1}{C}I=\frac{dE}{dt}(t). \tag{35}$$

Suitable initial conditions on u, Q, or I must also be prescribed.

We have noted previously, in Section 3.7, that equation (33) for the spring-mass system and equations (34) or (35) for the electric circuit are identical mathematically, differing only in the interpretation of the constants and variables appearing in them. There are other physical problems that also lead to the same differential equation. Thus, once the mathematical problem is solved, its solution can be interpreted in terms of whichever corresponding physical problem is of immediate interest.

In the problem lists following this and other sections in this chapter are numerous initial-value problems for second-order linear differential equations with constant coefficients. Many can be interpreted as models of particular physical systems, but usually we do not point this out explicitly.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 7, find the inverse Laplace transform of the given function.

1. $F(s)=\dfrac{3}{s^2+4}$

2. $F(s)=\dfrac{4}{(s-1)^3}$

3. $F(s)=\dfrac{2}{s^2+3s-4}$

4. $F(s)=\dfrac{2s+2}{s^2+2s+5}$

5. $F(s)=\dfrac{2s-3}{s^2-4}$

6. $F(s)=\dfrac{8s^2-4s+12}{s(s^2+4)}$

7. $F(s)=\dfrac{1-2s}{s^2+4s+5}$

In each of Problems 8 through 16, use the Laplace transform to solve the given initial value problem.

8. $y''-y'-6y=0;\quad y(0)=1,\ \ y'(0)=-1$

9. $y''+3y'+2y=0;\quad y(0)=1,\ \ y'(0)=0$

10. $y''-2y'+2y=0;\quad y(0)=0,\ \ y'(0)=1$

11. $y''-2y'+4y=0;\quad y(0)=2,\ \ y'(0)=0$

12. $y''+2y'+5y=0;\quad y(0)=2,\ \ y'(0)=-1$

13. $y^{(4)}-4y'''+6y''-4y'+y=0;\quad y(0)=0,$ $y'(0)=1,\ \ y''(0)=0,\ \ y'''(0)=1$

14. $y^{(4)}-y=0;\quad y(0)=1,\ \ y'(0)=0,\ \ y''(0)=1,$ $y'''(0)=0$

15. $y''+\omega^2y=\cos(2t),\ \ \omega^2\neq 4;\quad y(0)=1,\ \ y'(0)=0$

16. $y''-2y'+2y=e^{-t};\quad y(0)=0,\ \ y'(0)=1$

In each of Problems 17 through 19, find the Laplace transform $Y(s)=\mathcal{L}\{y\}$ of the solution of the given initial value problem. A method of determining the inverse transform is developed in Section 6.3. You may wish to refer to Problems 16 through 18 in Section 6.1.

17. $y''+4y=\begin{cases}1, & 0\le t<\pi,\\ 0, & \pi\le t<\infty;\end{cases}\quad y(0)=1,\ \ y'(0)=0$

18. $y''+4y=\begin{cases}t, & 0\le t<1,\\ 1, & 1\le t<\infty;\end{cases}\quad y(0)=0,\ \ y'(0)=0$

19. $y''+y=\begin{cases}t, & 0\le t<1,\\ 2-t, & 1\le t<2,\\ 0, & 2\le t<\infty;\end{cases}\quad y(0)=0,\ \ y'(0)=0$

20. The Laplace transforms of certain functions can be found conveniently from their Taylor series expansions.

a. Using the Taylor series for $\sin t$

$$\sin t = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!},$$

and assuming that the Laplace transform of this series can be computed term-by-term, verify that

$$\mathcal{L}\{\sin t\} = \frac{1}{s^2+1}, \qquad s > 1.$$

b. Let

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin t}{t}, & t \neq 0, \\ 1, & t = 0. \end{cases}$$

Show that $f(t)$ is continuous for all real values of t. Find the Taylor series for f about $t = 0$. Assuming that the Laplace transform of this function can be computed term-by-term, verify that

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \arctan\left(\frac{1}{s}\right), \qquad s > 1.$$

c. The Bessel function of the first kind of order zero, J_0, has the Taylor series (see Section 5.7)

$$J_0(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{2n}}{2^{2n}(n!)^2}.$$

Assuming that the following Laplace transforms can be computed term-by-term, verify that

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{J_0(t)\right\} = (s^2+1)^{-1/2}, \qquad s > 1$$

and

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{J_0(\sqrt{t})\right\} = s^{-1}e^{-1/(4s)}, \qquad s > 0.$$

Problems 21 through 27 are concerned with differentiation of the Laplace transform.

21. Let

$$F(s) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-st} f(t)\, dt.$$

It is possible to show that as long as f satisfies the conditions of Theorem 6.1.2, it is legitimate to differentiate under the integral sign with respect to the parameter s when $s > a$.

a. Show that $F'(s) = \mathcal{L}\{-tf(t)\}$.

b. Show that $F^{(n)}(s) = \mathcal{L}\{(-t)^n f(t)\}$; hence differentiating the Laplace transform corresponds to multiplying the original function by $-t$.

In each of Problems 22 through 25, use the result of Problem 21 to find the Laplace transform of the given function; a and b are real numbers and n is a positive integer.

22. $f(t) = te^{at}$

23. $f(t) = t^2 \sin(bt)$

24. $f(t) = t^n e^{at}$

25. $f(t) = te^{at} \sin(bt)$

26. Consider Bessel's equation of order zero

$$ty'' + y' + ty = 0.$$

Recall from Section 5.7 that $t = 0$ is a regular singular point for this equation, and therefore solutions may become unbounded as $t \to 0$. However, let us try to determine whether there are any solutions that remain finite at $t = 0$ and have finite derivatives there. Assuming that there is such a solution $y = \phi(t)$, let $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{\phi(t)\}$.

a. Show that $Y(s)$ satisfies

$$(1+s^2)Y'(s) + sY(s) = 0.$$

b. Show that $Y(s) = c(1+s^2)^{-1/2}$, where c is an arbitrary constant.

c. Writing $(1+s^2)^{-1/2} = s^{-1}(1+s^{-2})^{-1/2}$, expanding in a binomial series valid for $s > 1$, and assuming that it is permissible to take the inverse transform term-by-term, show that

$$y = c\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{2n}}{2^{2n}(n!)^2} = cJ_0(t),$$

where J_0 is the Bessel function of the first kind of order zero. Note that $J_0(0) = 1$ and that J_0 has finite derivatives of all orders at $t = 0$. It was shown in Section 5.7 that the second solution of this equation becomes unbounded as $t \to 0$.

27. For each of the following initial value problems, use the results of Problem 21 to find the differential equation satisfied by $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{y(t)\}$, where $y(t)$ is the solution of the given initial value problem.

a. $y'' - ty = 0$; $\quad y(0) = 1$, $\; y'(0) = 0$ (Airy's equation)

b. $(1-t^2)y'' - 2ty' + \alpha(\alpha+1)y = 0$; $\quad y(0) = 0$, $\; y'(0) = 1$ (Legendre's equation)

Note that the differential equation for $Y(s)$ is of first-order in part a, but of second-order in part b. This is due to the fact that t appears at most to the first power in the equation of part a, whereas it appears to the second power in that of part b. This illustrates that the Laplace transform is not often useful in solving differential equations with variable coefficients, unless all the coefficients are at most linear functions of the independent variable.

28. Suppose that

$$g(t) = \int_0^t f(\tau)\, d\tau.$$

If $G(s)$ and $F(s)$ are the Laplace transforms of $g(t)$ and $f(t)$, respectively, show that

$$G(s) = \frac{F(s)}{s}.$$

29. In this problem we show how a general partial fraction expansion can be used to calculate many inverse Laplace transforms. Suppose that

$$F(s) = \frac{P(s)}{Q(s)},$$

where $Q(s)$ is a polynomial of degree n with n distinct zeros $r_1, \ldots, r_n$, and $P(s)$ is a polynomial of degree less than n. In this case it is possible to show that $P(s)/Q(s)$ has a partial fraction expansion of the form

$$\frac{P(s)}{Q(s)} = \frac{A_1}{s-r_1} + \cdots + \frac{A_n}{s-r_n}, \tag{36}$$

where the coefficients $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ must be determined.

a. Show that

$$A_k = \frac{P(r_k)}{Q'(r_k)}, \quad k = 1, \ldots, n.$$

Hint: One way to do this is to multiply equation (36) by $s - r_k$ and then to take the limit as $s \to r_k$. Note that limits are used because it is not appropriate to simply evaluate equation (36) multiplied by $s - r_k$ because equation (36) is not defined at each root of $Q(s)$.

b. Show that

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{P(r_k)}{Q'(r_k)} e^{r_k t}.$$

6.3 Step Functions

In Section 6.2 we outlined the general procedure involved in solving initial value problems by means of the Laplace transform. Some of the most interesting elementary applications of the transform method occur in the solution of linear differential equations with discontinuous or impulsive forcing functions. Equations of this type frequently arise in the analysis of the flow of current in electric circuits or the vibrations of mechanical systems. In this section and the remaining sections in Chapter 6, we develop some additional properties of the Laplace transform that are useful in the solution of such problems. Unless a specific statement is made to the contrary, all functions appearing below will be assumed to be piecewise continuous and of exponential order, so that their Laplace transforms exist, at least for s sufficiently large.

To deal effectively with functions having jump discontinuities, it is very helpful to introduce a function known as the **unit step function** or **Heaviside function**. This function will be denoted by u_c and is defined by

$$u_c(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < c, \\ 1, & t \geq c. \end{cases} \tag{1}$$

Since the Laplace transform involves values of t in the interval $[0, \infty)$, we are also interested only in nonnegative values of c. The graph of $y = u_c(t)$ is shown in Figure 6.3.1. We have somewhat arbitrarily assigned the value one to u_c at $t = c$. However, for a piecewise continuous function such as u_c, the value at a discontinuity point is usually irrelevant. The step can also be negative. For instance, Figure 6.3.2 shows the graph of $y = 1 - u_c(t)$.

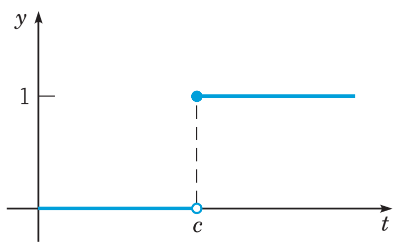


FIGURE 6.3.1 Graph of $y = u_c(t)$.

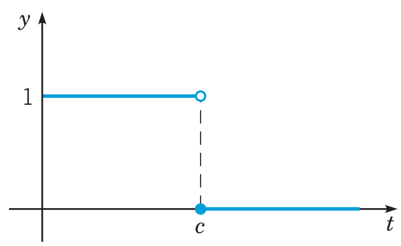


FIGURE 6.3.2 Graph of $y = 1 - u_c(t)$.

If we associate the value 1 with "on" and 0 with "off," then the function $u_c(t)$ represents a switch that is turned on at time c. Likewise, $1 - u_c(t)$ represents a switch being turned off at time c.

EXAMPLE 1

Sketch the graph of $y = h(t)$, where

$$h(t) = u_\pi(t) - u_{2\pi}(t), \quad t \geq 0.$$

Solution:

From the definition of $u_c(t)$ in equation (1), we have

$$h(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < \pi, \\ 1, & t \geq \pi \end{cases} - \begin{cases} 0, & t < 2\pi, \\ 1, & t \geq 2\pi \end{cases} = \begin{cases} 0-0, & 0 \leq t < \pi, \\ 1-0, & \pi \leq t < 2\pi, \\ 1-1, & 2\pi \leq t < \infty, \end{cases}$$
$$= \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t < \pi, \\ 1, & \pi \leq t < 2\pi, \\ 0, & 2\pi \leq t < \infty. \end{cases}$$

Thus the equation $y = h(t)$ has the graph shown in Figure 6.3.3. This function can be thought of as a switch that is initially off, turned on at $t = \pi$ and then turned off at $t = 2\pi$; this is also often referred to as a **rectangular pulse**.

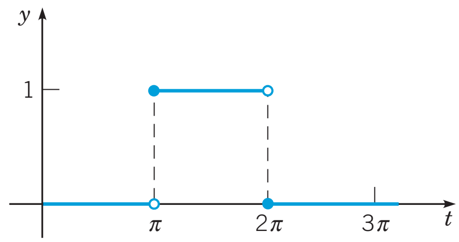


FIGURE 6.3.3 Graph of $y = u_\pi(t) - u_{2\pi}(t)$.

EXAMPLE 2

Consider the function

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 2, & 0 \leq t < 4, \\ 5, & 4 \leq t < 7, \\ -1, & 7 \leq t < 9, \\ 1, & t \geq 9. \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

Sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$. Express $f(t)$ in terms of $u_c(t)$.

Solution:

The graph of $y = f(t)$ is piecewise constant. Paying attention to include the left endpoint of each horizontal segment, we arrive at Figure 6.3.4.

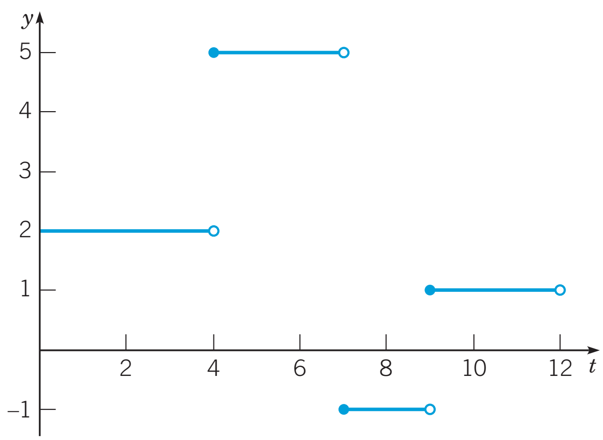


FIGURE 6.3.4 Graph of the function in equation (2).

We start with the function $f_1(t) = 2$, which agrees with $f(t)$ on $[0, 4)$. To produce the jump of three units at $t = 4$, we add $3u_4(t)$ to $f_1(t)$, obtaining

$$f_2(t) = 2 + 3u_4(t),$$

which agrees with $f(t)$ on $[0, 7)$. The negative jump of six units at $t = 7$ corresponds to adding $-6u_7(t)$, which gives

$$f_3(t) = 2 + 3u_4(t) - 6u_7(t).$$

Finally, we must add $2u_9(t)$ to match the jump of two units at $t = 9$. Thus we obtain

$$f(t) = 2 + 3u_4(t) - 6u_7(t) + 2u_9(t). \tag{3}$$

The Laplace transform of u_c for $c \geq 0$ is easily determined:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st}u_c(t)\,dt = \int_c^\infty e^{-st}\,dt \\ &= \frac{e^{-cs}}{s}, \qquad s > 0. \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

Notice that

$$\mathcal{L}\{u_0(t)\} = \frac{e^0}{s} = \frac{1}{s} = \mathcal{L}\{1\}.$$

This is true because $u_0(t) = 1$ for all $t \geq 0$.

For a given function f defined for $t \geq 0$, we will often want to consider the related function g defined by

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < c, \\ f(t-c), & t \geq c, \end{cases}$$

which represents a translation of f a distance c in the positive t direction and is zero for $t < c$; see Figure 6.3.5. Making use of the unit step function, we can write $g(t)$ in the convenient form

$$g(t) = u_c(t)f(t-c).$$

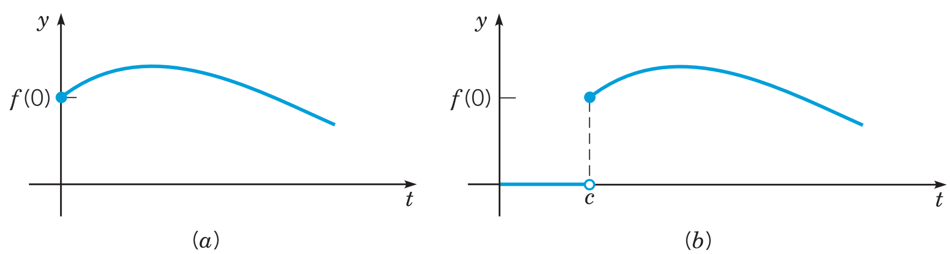


FIGURE 6.3.5 A translation of the given function. (*a*) $y = f(t)$; (*b*) $y = u_c(t)f(t-c)$.

The unit step function is particularly important in Laplace transform use because of the following relation between the transform of $f(t)$ and that of its translation $u_c(t)f(t-c)$.

Theorem 6.3.1

If the Laplace transform of $f(t)$, $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$, exists for $s > a \geq 0$, and if c is a positive constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)f(t-c)\} = e^{-cs}\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = e^{-cs}F(s), \qquad s > a. \tag{5}$$

Conversely, if $f(t)$ is the inverse Laplace transform of $F(s)$, $f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$, then

$$u_c(t)f(t-c) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{e^{-cs}F(s)\}. \tag{6}$$

Theorem 6.3.1 simply states that the translation of $f(t)$ a distance c in the positive t direction corresponds to the multiplication of $F(s)$ by e^{-cs}. To prove Theorem 6.3.1, it is sufficient to compute the transform of $u_c(t)\,f(t-c)$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)\,f(t-c)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st}u_c(t)\,f(t-c)\,dt \\ &= \int_c^\infty e^{-st}\,f(t-c)\,dt.\end{aligned}$$

Introducing a new integration variable $\sigma = t - c$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)\,f(t-c)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-(\sigma+c)s}\,f(\sigma)\,d\sigma = e^{-cs}\int_0^\infty e^{-s\sigma}\,f(\sigma)\,d\sigma \\ &= e^{-cs}F(s).\end{aligned}$$

Thus equation (5) is established; equation (6) follows by taking the inverse transform of both sides of equation (5).

A simple example of this theorem occurs if we take $f(t) = 1$. Recalling that $\mathcal{L}\{1\} = 1/s$, we immediately have from equation (5) that $\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)\} = e^{-cs}/s$. This result agrees with that of equation (4). Examples 3 and 4 illustrate further how Theorem 6.3.1 can be used in the calculation of Laplace transforms and inverse Laplace transforms.

EXAMPLE 3

Given the function f defined by

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} \sin t, & 0 \le t < \dfrac{\pi}{4}, \\ \sin t + \cos\left(t - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right), & t \ge \dfrac{\pi}{4}, \end{cases}$$

sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$ on the interval $0 \le t \le 3$. Find $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$.

Solution:

The graph of $y = f(t)$ is shown in Figure 6.3.6.

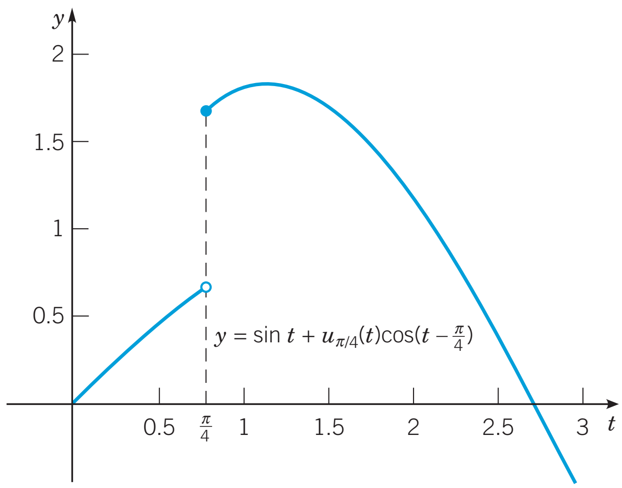


FIGURE 6.3.6 Graph of the function in Example 3.

Note that $f(t) = \sin t + g(t)$, where

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < \dfrac{\pi}{4} \\ \cos\left(t - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right), & t \geq \dfrac{\pi}{4} \end{cases} \quad = \quad u_{\pi/4}(t)\cos\left(t - \frac{\pi}{4}\right).$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} &= \mathcal{L}\{\sin t\} + \mathcal{L}\left\{u_{\pi/4}(t)\cos\left(t - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right\} \\ &= \mathcal{L}\{\sin t\} + e^{-\pi s/4}\mathcal{L}\{\cos t\}. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling the Laplace transforms of $\sin t$ and $\cos t$, we obtain

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \frac{1}{s^2+1} + e^{-\pi s/4}\frac{s}{s^2+1} = \frac{1 + se^{-\pi s/4}}{s^2+1}.$$

You should compare this method with the calculation of $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ directly from the improper integrals in the definition of the Laplace transform.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the inverse Laplace transform of

$$F(s) = \frac{1 - e^{-2s}}{s^2}.$$

Graph $y = f(t)$.

Solution:

From the linearity of the inverse transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{1}{s^2}\right\} - \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2}\right\} \\ &= t - u_2(t)(t-2). \end{aligned}$$

To facilitate the graphing of $y = f(t)$, it is helpful to write the function in a piecewise representation. Here that means

$$f(t) \quad = \quad t - \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t < 2 \\ t-2, & t \geq 2 \end{cases} \quad = \quad \begin{cases} t, & 0 \leq t < 2, \\ 2, & t \geq 2. \end{cases}$$

The graph of $y = f(t)$ is shown in Figure 6.3.7.

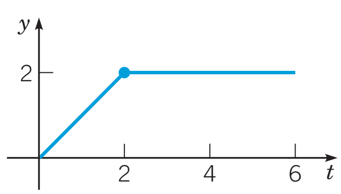


FIGURE 6.3.7

The following theorem contains another very useful property of Laplace transforms that is somewhat analogous to that given in Theorem 6.3.1.

Theorem 6.3.2

If $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ exists for $s > a \geq 0$, and if c is a constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}\{e^{ct} f(t)\} = F(s-c), \quad s > a + c. \tag{7}$$

Conversely, if $f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$, then

$$e^{ct} f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s-c)\}. \tag{8}$$

According to Theorem 6.3.2, multiplication of $f(t)$ by e^{ct} results in a translation of the transform $F(s)$ a distance c in the positive s direction, and conversely. To prove this theorem, we evaluate $\mathcal{L}\{e^{ct} f(t)\}$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}\{e^{ct} f(t)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st} e^{ct} f(t)\,dt = \int_0^\infty e^{-(s-c)t} f(t)\,dt \\ &= F(s-c),\end{aligned}$$

which is equation (7). The restriction $s > a + c$ follows from the observation that, according to hypothesis (ii) of Theorem 6.1.2, $|f(t)| \leq Ke^{at}$; hence $|e^{ct} f(t)| \leq Ke^{(a+c)t}$. Equation (8) is obtained by taking the inverse transform of equation (7), and the proof is complete.

The principal application of Theorem 6.3.2 is in the evaluation of certain inverse transforms, as illustrated by Example 5.

EXAMPLE 5

Find the inverse Laplace transform of

$$G(s) = \frac{1}{s^2 - 4s + 5}.$$

Solution:

First, to avoid dealing with the complex-valued roots of the denominator $s^2 - 4s + 5$, we complete the square in the denominator:

$$G(s) = \frac{1}{(s-2)^2 + 1} = F(s-2),$$

where $F(s) = (s^2+1)^{-1}$. Since $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \sin t$, it follows from Theorem 6.3.2 that

$$g(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{G(s)\} = e^{2t} \sin t.$$

The results of this section are often useful in solving differential equations, particularly those that have discontinuous forcing functions. The next section is devoted to examples illustrating this point.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4, sketch the graph of the given function on the interval $t \geq 0$.

1. $g(t) = u_1(t) + 2u_3(t) - 6u_4(t)$
2. $g(t) = f(t-\pi)u_\pi(t)$, where $f(t) = t^2$
3. $g(t) = f(t-3)u_3(t)$, where $f(t) = \sin t$
4. $g(t) = (t-1)u_1(t) - 2(t-2)u_2(t) + (t-3)u_3(t)$

In each of Problems 5 through 8:

a. Sketch the graph of the given function.

b. Express $f(t)$ in terms of the unit step function $u_c(t)$.

5. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \le t < 3, \\ -2, & 3 \le t < 5, \\ 2, & 5 \le t < 7, \\ 1, & t \ge 7. \end{cases}$

6. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ -1, & 1 \le t < 2, \\ 1, & 2 \le t < 3, \\ -1, & 3 \le t < 4, \\ 0, & t \ge 4. \end{cases}$

7. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 2, \\ e^{-(t-2)}, & t \ge 2. \end{cases}$

8. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 2, \\ 2, & 2 \le t < 5, \\ 7-t, & 5 \le t < 7, \\ 0, & t \ge 7. \end{cases}$

In each of Problems 9 through 12, find the Laplace transform of the given function.

9. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < 2 \\ (t-2)^2, & t \ge 2 \end{cases}$

10. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < \pi \\ t - \pi, & \pi \le t < 2\pi \\ 0, & t \ge 2\pi \end{cases}$

11. $f(t) = u_1(t) + 2u_3(t) - 6u_4(t)$

12. $f(t) = (t-3)u_2(t) - (t-2)u_3(t)$

In each of Problems 13 through 16, find the inverse Laplace transform of the given function.

13. $F(s) = \dfrac{3!}{(s-2)^4}$

14. $F(s) = \dfrac{e^{-2s}}{s^2 + s - 2}$

15. $F(s) = \dfrac{2(s-1)e^{-2s}}{s^2 - 2s + 2}$

16. $F(s) = \dfrac{e^{-s} + e^{-2s} - e^{-3s} - e^{-4s}}{s}$

17. Suppose that $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ exists for $s > a \ge 0$.

a. Show that if c is a positive constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(ct)\} = \frac{1}{c} F\left(\frac{s}{c}\right), \qquad s > ca.$$

b. Show that if k is a positive constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(ks)\} = \frac{1}{k} f\left(\frac{t}{k}\right).$$

c. Show that if a and b are constants with $a > 0$, then

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(as+b)\} = \frac{1}{a} e^{-bt/a} f\left(\frac{t}{a}\right).$$

In each of Problems 18 through 20, use the results of Problem 17 to find the inverse Laplace transform of the given function.

18. $F(s) = \dfrac{2^{n+1} n!}{s^{n+1}}$

19. $F(s) = \dfrac{2s+1}{4s^2 + 4s + 5}$

20. $F(s) = \dfrac{1}{9s^2 - 12s + 3}$

In each of Problems 21 through 23, find the Laplace transform of the given function. In Problem 23, assume that term-by-term integration of the infinite series is permissible.

21. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 0, & t \ge 1 \end{cases}$

22. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 0, & 1 \le t < 2 \\ 1, & 2 \le t < 3 \\ 0, & t \ge 3 \end{cases}$

23. $f(t) = 1 + \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k u_k(t)$. See Figure 6.3.8.

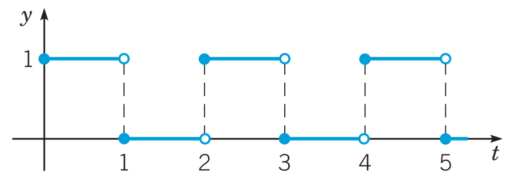


FIGURE 6.3.8 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 23; a square wave.

24. Let f satisfy $f(t+T) = f(t)$ for all $t \ge 0$ and for some fixed positive number T; f is said to be **periodic with period** T on $0 \le t < \infty$. Show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \frac{\displaystyle\int_0^T e^{-st} f(t)\,dt}{1 - e^{-sT}}.$$

In each of Problems 25 through 28, use the result of Problem 24 to find the Laplace transform of the given function.

25. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ 0, & 1 \le t < 2; \end{cases} \quad f(t+2) = f(t).$

Compare with Problem 23.

26. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ -1, & 1 \le t < 2; \end{cases} \quad f(t+2) = f(t).$

See Figure 6.3.9.

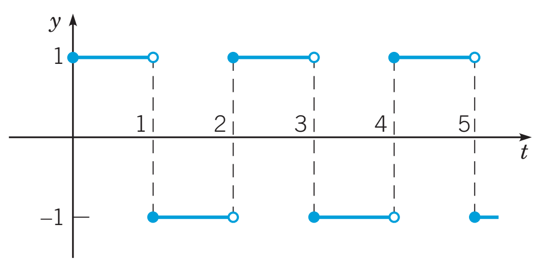


FIGURE 6.3.9 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 26; a square wave.

27. $f(t) = t, \quad 0 \le t < 1; \quad f(t+1) = f(t)$.
See Figure 6.3.10.

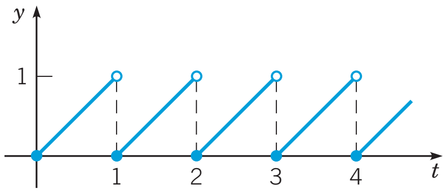


FIGURE 6.3.10 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 27; a sawtooth wave.

28. $f(t) = \sin t, \quad 0 \le t < \pi; \quad f(t+\pi) = f(t)$.
See Figure 6.3.11.

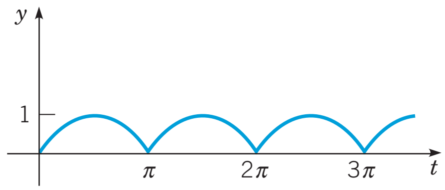


FIGURE 6.3.11 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 28; a rectified sine wave.

29. **a.** If $f(t) = 1 - u_1(t)$, find $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$. Sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$. Compare with Problem 21.

b. Let $g(t) = \int_0^t f(\xi)\, d\xi$, where the function f is defined in part a. Sketch the graph of $y = g(t)$ and find $\mathcal{L}\{g(t)\}$. Use your expression for $\mathcal{L}\{g(t)\}$ to find an explicit formula for $g(t)$. *Hint:* See Problem 28 in Section 6.2.

c. Let $h(t) = g(t) - u_1(t)g(t-1)$, where g is defined in part b. Sketch the graph of $y = h(t)$ and find $\mathcal{L}\{h(t)\}$. Use your expression for $\mathcal{L}\{h(t)\}$ to find an explicit formula for $h(t)$.

30. Consider the function p defined by

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ 2 - t, & 1 \le t < 2; \end{cases} \qquad p(t+2) = p(t).$$

a. Sketch the graph of $y = p(t)$.

b. Find $\mathcal{L}\{p(t)\}$ by noting that p is the periodic extension of the function h in Problem 29c; then use the result of Problem 24.

c. Find $\mathcal{L}\{p(t)\}$ by noting that

$$p(t) = \int_0^t f(t)\,dt,$$

where f is the function in Problem 26; then use Theorem 6.2.1.

6.4 Differential Equations with Discontinuous Forcing Functions

In this section we turn our attention to some examples in which the nonhomogeneous term, or **forcing function**, is discontinuous.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the solution of the differential equation

$$2y'' + y' + 2y = g(t), \tag{1}$$

where

$$g(t) = u_5(t) - u_{20}(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 5 \le t < 20, \\ 0, & 0 \le t < 5 \ \text{ or } \ t \ge 20. \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

Assume that the initial conditions are

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0. \tag{3}$$

This problem governs the charge on the capacitor in a simple electric circuit with a unit voltage pulse for $5 \le t < 20$. Alternatively, y may represent the response of a damped oscillator subject to the applied force $g(t)$.

Solution:

The Laplace transform of equation (1) is

$$\begin{aligned} 2s^2Y(s) - 2sy(0) - 2y'(0) + sY(s) - y(0) + 2Y(s) &= \mathcal{L}\{u_5(t)\} - \mathcal{L}\{u_{20}(t)\} \\ &= \frac{1}{s}\left(e^{-5s} - e^{-20s}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Introducing the initial values (3) and solving for $Y(s)$, we obtain

$$Y(s) = \frac{e^{-5s} - e^{-20s}}{s(2s^2 + s + 2)}. \tag{4}$$

To find $y(t)$, it is convenient to write $Y(s)$ as

$$Y(s) = (e^{-5s} - e^{-20s})H(s), \tag{5}$$

where

$$H(s) = \frac{1}{s(2s^2 + s + 2)}. \tag{6}$$

Then, if $h(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{H(s)\}$, we have

$$y(t) = u_5(t)h(t - 5) - u_{20}(t)h(t - 20). \tag{7}$$

Observe that we have used Theorem 6.3.1 to write the inverse transforms of $e^{-5s}H(s)$ and $e^{-20s}H(s)$, respectively. Finally, to determine $h(t)$, we use the partial fraction expansion of $H(s)$:

$$H(s) = \frac{a}{s} + \frac{bs + c}{2s^2 + s + 2}. \tag{8}$$

Upon determining the coefficients, we find that $a = \frac{1}{2}$, $b = -1$, and $c = -\frac{1}{2}$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} H(s) &= \frac{1}{2}s - \frac{s + \frac{1}{2}}{2s^2 + s + 2} = \frac{1}{2}s - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\left(s + \frac{1}{4}\right) + \frac{1}{4}}{\left(s + \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \frac{15}{16}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}s - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{s + \frac{1}{4}}{\left(s + \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\right)^2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{15}}\frac{\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}}{\left(s + \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\right)^2}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

Then, by referring to lines 9 and 10 of Table 6.2.1, we obtain

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\left(e^{-t/4}\cos\left(\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}t\right) + \frac{1}{\sqrt{15}}e^{-t/4}\sin\left(\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}t\right)\right). \tag{10}$$

In Figure 6.4.1 the graph of $y(t)$ from equations (7) and (10) shows that the solution consists of three distinct parts. For $0 < t < 5$, the differential equation is

$$2y'' + y' + 2y = 0, \tag{11}$$

and the initial conditions are given by equation (3). Since the initial conditions impart no energy to the system, and since there is no external forcing, the system remains at rest; that is, $y = 0$ for $0 < t < 5$. This can be confirmed by solving equation (11) subject to the initial conditions (3). In particular, evaluating the solution and its derivative at $t = 5$, or, more precisely, as t approaches 5 from below, we have

$$y(5) = 0, \quad y'(5) = 0. \tag{12}$$

Once $t > 5$, the differential equation becomes

$$2y'' + y' + 2y = 1, \tag{13}$$

whose solution is the sum of a constant (the response to the constant forcing function) and a damped oscillation (the solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation). The plot in Figure 6.4.1 shows this behavior clearly for the interval $5 \le t \le 20$. An expression for this portion of the solution can be found by solving the differential equation (13) subject to the initial conditions (12). Alternatively, since $u_5(t) = 1$ and $u_{20}(t) = 0$ for $5 \le t < 20$, equations (7) and (10) reduce to

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= h(t-5) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}e^{-(t-5)/4}\cos\left(\frac{\sqrt{15}(t-5)}{4}\right) + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{15}}e^{-(t-5)/4}\sin\left(\frac{\sqrt{15}(t-5)}{4}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

Finally, for $t > 20$ the differential equation becomes equation (11) again, and the initial conditions are obtained by evaluating the solution of equations (13), (12), that is, equation (14) and its derivative, at $t = 20$. These values are, approximately,

$$y(20) \cong 0.50162, \quad y'(20) \cong 0.01125. \tag{15}$$

The initial value problem (7), (10) contains no external forcing, so its solution is a damped oscillation about $y = 0$, as can be seen in Figure 6.4.1.

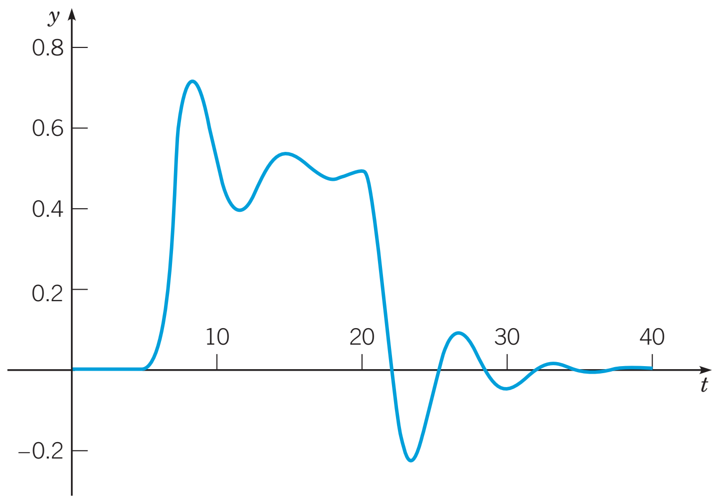


FIGURE 6.4.1 Solution of the initial value problem (1), (2), (3): $2y'' + y' + 2y = u_5(t) - u_{20}(t),\ y(0) = 0,\ y'(0) = 0.$

Although it may be helpful to visualize the solution shown in Figure 6.4.1 as composed of solutions of three separate initial value problems in three separate intervals, it is somewhat tedious to find the solution by solving these separate problems. Laplace transform methods provide a much more convenient and elegant approach to the problem in Example 1 and to others that have discontinuous forcing functions.

The effect of the discontinuity in the forcing function can be seen if we examine the solution $y(t)$ of Example 1 more closely. According to the existence and uniqueness theorem (Theorem 3.2.1), the solution $y(t)$ and its first two derivatives are continuous except possibly at the points $t = 5$ and $t = 20$, where g is discontinuous. This can also be seen at once from equation (7). One can also show by direct computation from equation (7) that $y(t)$ and $y'(t)$ are continuous even at $t = 5$ and $t = 20$. However, if we calculate $y''(t)$, we find that

$$\lim_{t\to 5^-} y''(t) = 0, \quad \lim_{t\to 5^+} y''(t) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Consequently, $y''(t)$ has a jump of $\frac{1}{2}$ at $t = 5$. In a similar way, we can show that $y''(t)$ has a jump of $-\frac{1}{2}$ at $t = 20$. Thus the jump in the forcing term $g(t)$ at these points is balanced by a corresponding jump in the highest order term $2y''$ on the left-hand side of the equation.

Consider now the general second-order linear equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{16}$$

where p and q are continuous on some interval $\alpha < t < \beta$, but g is only piecewise continuous there. If $y(t)$ is a solution of equation (16), then $y(t)$ and $y'(t)$ are continuous on $\alpha < t < \beta$, but $y''(t)$ has jump discontinuities at the same points as g. Similar remarks apply to higher-order equations; the highest derivative of the solution appearing in the differential equation has jump discontinuities at the same points as the jump discontinuities in the forcing function, but the solution itself and its lower derivatives are continuous even at those points.

EXAMPLE 2

Describe the qualitative nature of the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + 4y = g(t), \tag{17}$$

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \tag{18}$$

where

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \le t < 5, \\ \frac{1}{5}(t-5), & 5 \le t < 10, \\ 1, & t \ge 10, \end{cases} \tag{19}$$

and then find the solution.

Solution:

In this example the forcing function has the graph shown in Figure 6.4.2 and is known as **ramp loading**. It is relatively easy to identify the general form of the solution. For $t < 5$, the solution is simply $y = 0$. On the other hand, for $t > 10$, the solution has the form

$$y = c_1 \cos(2t) + c_2 \sin(2t) + \frac{1}{4}. \tag{20}$$

The constant $1/4$ is a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation, while the other two terms are the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation. Thus the solution (20) is a simple harmonic oscillation about $y = 1/4$. Similarly, in the intermediate range $5 < t < 10$, the solution is an oscillation about a certain linear function. In an engineering context, for example, we might be interested in knowing the amplitude of the eventual steady oscillation.

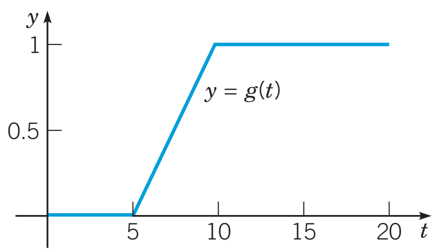


FIGURE 6.4.2 Ramp loading; $y = g(t)$ from equation (19) or equation (21).

To solve the problem, it is convenient to write

$$g(t) = \frac{1}{5}\big(u_5(t)(t-5) - u_{10}(t)(t-10)\big), \tag{21}$$

as you may verify. Then we take the Laplace transform of the differential equation and use the initial conditions, thereby obtaining

$$(s^2+4)Y(s) = \frac{e^{-5s} - e^{-10}}{5s^2}$$

or

$$Y(s) = \frac{1}{5}\left(e^{-5s} - e^{-10s}\right)H(s), \tag{22}$$

where

$$H(s) = \frac{1}{s^2(s^2+4)}. \tag{23}$$

Thus the solution of the initial value problem (17), (18), (19) is

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{5}\big(u_5(t)h(t-5) - u_{10}(t)h(t-10)\big), \tag{24}$$

where $h(t)$ is the inverse transform of $H(s)$.

The partial fraction expansion of $H(s)$ is

$$H(s) = \frac{1/4}{s^2} - \frac{1/4}{s^2+4}, \tag{25}$$

and it then follows from lines 3 and 5 of Table 6.2.1 that

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{4}t - \frac{1}{8}\sin(2t). \tag{26}$$

The graph of $y(t)$ is shown in Figure 6.4.3. Observe that it has the qualitative form that we indicated earlier. To find the amplitude of the eventual steady oscillation, it is sufficient to locate one of the maximum or minimum points for $t > 10$. Setting the derivative of the solution (24) equal to zero, we find that the first maximum is located approximately at $(10.642, 0.2979)$, so the amplitude of the oscillation is approximately $0.2979 - 0.25 = 0.0479$.

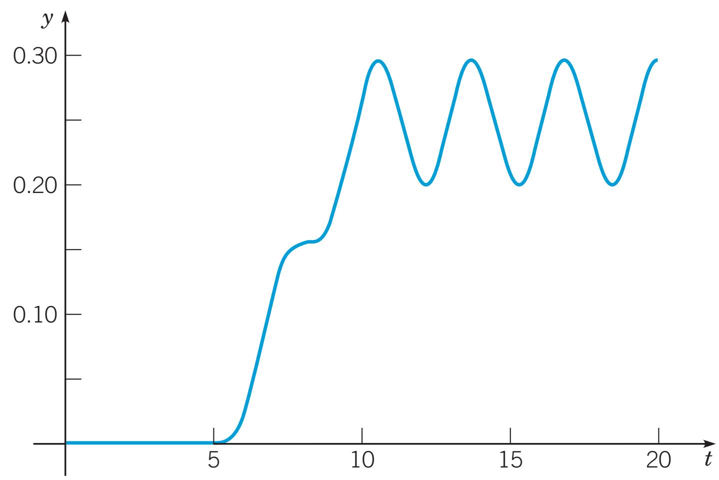


FIGURE 6.4.3 Solution of the initial value problem (12), (13), (14).

Note that in this example, the forcing function g is continuous, but g' is discontinuous at $t = 5$ and $t = 10$. It follows that the solution $y(t)$ and its first two derivatives are continuous everywhere, but $y'''(t)$ has discontinuities at $t = 5$ and at $t = 10$ that match the discontinuities in g' at those points.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8:

a. Sketch the graph of the forcing function on an appropriate interval.

b. Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

G c. Plot the graph of the solution.

d. Explain how the graphs of the forcing function and the solution are related.

1. $y'' + y = f(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \;\; y'(0) = 1;$

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 3\pi \\ 0, & 3\pi \le t < \infty \end{cases}$$

2. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = h(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \;\; y'(0) = 1;$

$$h(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & \pi \le t < 2\pi \\ 0, & 0 \le t < \pi \quad \text{or} \quad t \ge 2\pi \end{cases}$$

3. $y'' + 4y = \sin t - u_{2\pi}(t)\sin(t - 2\pi); \quad y(0) = 0, \;\; y'(0) = 0$

4. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = f(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \;\; y'(0) = 0;$

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 10 \\ 0, & t \ge 10 \end{cases}$$

5. $y'' + y' + \frac{5}{4}y = t - u_{\pi/2}(t)\left(t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right); \quad y(0) = 0, \;\; y'(0) = 0$

6. $y'' + y' + \frac{5}{4}y = g(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \;\; y'(0) = 0;$

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} \sin t, & 0 \le t < \pi \\ 0, & t \ge \pi \end{cases}$$

7. $y'' + 4y = u_\pi(t) - u_{3\pi}(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \;\; y'(0) = 0$

8. $y^{(4)} + 5y'' + 4y = 1 - u_\pi(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = 0, \quad y'''(0) = 0$

9. Find an expression involving $u_c(t)$ for a function f that ramps up from zero at $t = t_0$ to the value h at $t = t_0 + k$.

10. Find an expression involving $u_c(t)$ for a function g that ramps up from zero at $t = t_0$ to the value h at $t = t_0 + k$ and then ramps back down to zero at $t = t_0 + 2k$.

11. A certain spring-mass system satisfies the initial value problem

$$u'' + \frac{1}{4}u' + u = kg(t), \quad u(0) = 0, \quad u'(0) = 0,$$

where $g(t) = u_{3/2}(t) - u_{5/2}(t)$ and $k > 0$ is a parameter.

a. Sketch the graph of $g(t)$. Observe that it is a pulse of unit magnitude extending over one time unit.
b. Solve the initial value problem.
G c. Plot the solution for $k = 1/2$, $k = 1$, and $k = 2$. Describe the principal features of the solution and how they depend on k.
N d. Find, to two decimal places, the smallest value of k for which the solution $u(t)$ reaches the value 2.
N e. Suppose $k = 2$. Find the time τ after which $|u(t)| < 0.1$ for all $t > \tau$.

12. Modify the problem in Example 2 of this section by replacing the given forcing function $g(t)$ by

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{k}\Big(u_5(t)(t-5) - u_{5+k}(t)(t-5-k)\Big)/k.$$

a. Sketch the graph of $f(t)$ and describe how it depends on k. For what value of k is $f(t)$ identical to $g(t)$ in the example?
b. Solve the initial value problem

$$y'' + 4y = f(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0.$$

G c. The solution in part b depends on k, but for sufficiently large t, the solution is always a simple harmonic oscillation about $y = 1/4$. Try to decide how the amplitude of this eventual oscillation depends on k. Then confirm your conclusion by plotting the solution for a few different values of k.

Resonance and Beats. In Section 3.8 we observed that an undamped harmonic oscillator (such as a spring-mass system) with a sinusoidal forcing term experiences resonance if the frequency of the forcing term is the same as the natural frequency. If the forcing frequency is slightly different from the natural frequency, then the system exhibits a beat. In Problems 13 through 17 we explore the effect of some nonsinusoidal periodic forcing functions.

13. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = f(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where

$$f(t) = u_0(t) + 2\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k u_{k\pi}(t).$$

a. Draw the graph of $f(t)$ on an interval such as $0 \le t \le 6\pi$.
b. Find the solution of the initial value problem.
G c. Let $n = 15$. Plot the graph of the solution for $0 \le t \le 60$. Describe the solution and explain why it behaves as it does.
d. Investigate how the solution changes as n increases. What happens as $n \to \infty$?

14. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + 0.1y' + y = f(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where $f(t)$ is the same as in Problem 13.

G a. Plot the graph of the solution. Use a large enough value of n and a long enough t-interval so that the transient part of the solution has become negligible and the steady state is clearly shown.
b. Estimate the amplitude and frequency of the steady-state part of the solution.
c. Compare the results of part b with those from Section 3.8 for a sinusoidally forced oscillator.

15. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = g(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where

$$g(t) = u_0(t) + \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k u_{k\pi}(t).$$

a. Draw the graph of $g(t)$ on an interval such as $0 \le t \le 6\pi$. Compare the graph with that of $f(t)$ in Problem 13a.
b. Find the solution of the initial value problem.
G c. Let $n = 15$. Plot the graph of the solution for $0 \le t \le 60$. Describe the solution and explain why it behaves as it does. Compare it with the solution of Problem 13.
d. Investigate how the solution changes as n increases. What happens as $n \to \infty$?

16. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + 0.1y' + y = g(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where $g(t)$ is the same as in Problem 15.

G a. Plot the graph of the solution. Use a large enough value of n and a long enough t-interval so that the transient part of the solution has become negligible and the steady state is clearly shown.
N b. Estimate the amplitude and frequency of the steady-state part of the solution.
c. Compare the results of part b with those from Problem 15 and from Section 3.8 for a sinusoidally forced oscillator.

17. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = h(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where

$$h(t) = u_0(t) + 2\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k u_{11k/4}(t).$$

Observe that this problem is identical to Problem 15, except that the frequency of the forcing term has been increased somewhat.

a. Find the solution of this initial value problem.
G b. Let $n \ge 33$ and plot the solution for $0 \le t \le 90$ or longer. Your plot should show a clearly recognizable beat.
N c. From the graph in part b, estimate the "slow period" and the "fast period" for this oscillator.
d. For a sinusoidally forced oscillator, it was shown in Section 3.8 that the "slow frequency" is given by $\frac{1}{2}|\omega - \omega_0|$, where ω_0 is the natural frequency of the system and ω is the forcing frequency. Similarly, the "fast frequency" is $\frac{1}{2}(\omega + \omega_0)$. Use these expressions to calculate the "fast period" and the "slow period" for the oscillator in this problem. How well do the results compare with your estimates from part c?

6.5 Impulse Functions

In some applications it is necessary to deal with phenomena of an impulsive nature—for example, voltages or forces of large magnitude that act over very short time intervals. Such problems often lead to differential equations of the form

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \tag{1}$$

where $g(t)$ is large during a short interval $t_0 - \tau < t < t_0 + \tau$ for some $\tau > 0$, and is otherwise zero.

The integral $I(\tau)$, defined by

$$I(\tau) = \int_{t_0-\tau}^{t_0+\tau} g(t)\,dt, \tag{2}$$

or, since $g(t) = 0$ outside of the interval $(t_0 - \tau, t_0 + \tau)$, by

$$I(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(t)\,dt, \tag{3}$$

is a measure of the strength of the forcing function. In a mechanical system, where $g(t)$ is a force, $I(\tau)$ is the total **impulse** of the force $g(t)$ over the time interval $(t_0 - \tau, t_0 + \tau)$. Similarly, if y is the current in an electric circuit and $g(t)$ is the time derivative of the voltage, then $I(\tau)$ represents the total voltage impressed on the circuit during the interval $(t_0 - \tau, t_0 + \tau)$.

In particular, let us suppose that t_0 is zero and that $g(t)$ is given by

$$g(t) = d_\tau(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{2\tau}, & -\tau < t < \tau, \\ 0, & t \le -\tau \quad \text{or} \quad t \ge \tau, \end{cases} \tag{4}$$

where τ is a small positive constant (see Figure 6.5.1). According to equation (2) or (3), it follows immediately that in this case, $I(\tau) = 1$ independent of the value of τ, as long as $\tau \ne 0$. Now let us idealize the forcing function d_τ by prescribing it to act over shorter and shorter time intervals; that is, we consider the functions $d_\tau(t)$ as $\tau \to 0^+$ (see Figure 6.5.2). As a result of this limiting operation, we obtain

$$\lim_{\tau \to 0^+} d_\tau(t) = 0, \qquad t \ne 0. \tag{5}$$

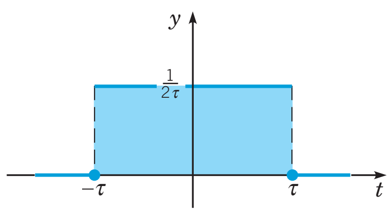


FIGURE 6.5.1 Graph of $y = d_\tau(t)$.

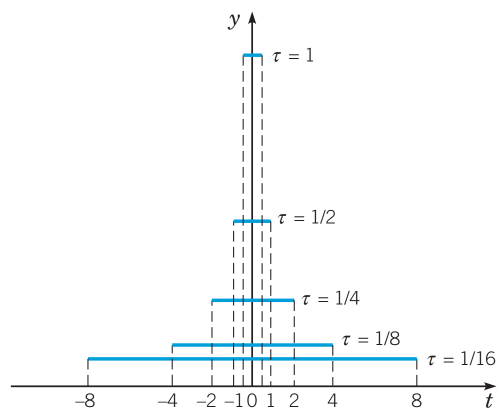


FIGURE 6.5.2 Graphs of $y = d_\tau(t)$ as $\tau \to 0^+$.

Further, since $I(\tau) = 1$ for each $\tau \ne 0$, it follows that

$$\lim_{\tau \to 0^+} I(\tau) = 1. \tag{6}$$

Equations (5) and (6) are used to define an idealized **unit impulse function** δ, which imparts an impulse of magnitude one at $t = 0$ but is zero for all values of t other than zero. That is, the "function" δ is defined to have the properties

$$\delta(t) = 0, \quad t \neq 0; \tag{7}$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t)\,dt = 1. \tag{8}$$

There is no ordinary function of the kind studied in elementary calculus that satisfies both equations (7) and (8). The "function" δ, defined by those equations, is an example of what are known as **generalized functions**; it is usually called the **Dirac**[4] **delta function**. Since $\delta(t)$ corresponds to a unit impulse at $t = 0$, a unit impulse at an arbitrary point $t = t_0$ is given by $\delta(t - t_0)$. From equations (7) and (8), it follows that

$$\delta(t - t_0) = 0, \quad t \neq t_0; \tag{9}$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - t_0)\,dt = 1. \tag{10}$$

The Dirac delta function does not satisfy the conditions of Theorem 6.1.2, but its Laplace transform can nevertheless be formally defined. Since $\delta(t)$ is defined as the limit of $d_\tau(t)$ as $\tau \to 0^+$, it is natural to define the Laplace transform of δ as a similar limit of the transform of d_τ. In particular, we will assume that $t_0 > 0$ and will define $\mathcal{L}\{\delta(t - t_0)\}$ by the equation

$$\mathcal{L}\{\delta(t - t_0)\} = \lim_{\tau \to 0^+} \mathcal{L}\{d_\tau(t - t_0)\}. \tag{11}$$

To evaluate the limit in equation (11), we first observe that if $\tau < t_0$, which must eventually be the case as $\tau \to 0^+$, then $t_0 - \tau > 0$. Since $d_\tau(t - t_0)$ is nonzero only in the interval from $t_0 - \tau$ to $t_0 + \tau$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{d_\tau(t - t_0)\} &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-st} d_\tau(t - t_0)\,dt \\ &= \int_{t_0-\tau}^{t_0+\tau} e^{-st} d_\tau(t - t_0)\,dt. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting for $d_\tau(t - t_0)$ from equation (4), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{d_\tau(t - t_0)\} &= \frac{1}{2\tau} \int_{t_0-\tau}^{t_0+\tau} e^{-st}\,dt = -\frac{1}{2s\tau} e^{-st} \Bigg|_{t=t_0-\tau}^{t=t_0+\tau} \\ &= \frac{1}{2s\tau} e^{-st_0}(e^{s\tau} - e^{-s\tau}) \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\mathcal{L}\{d_\tau(t - t_0)\} = \frac{\sinh(s\tau)}{s\tau} e^{-st_0}. \tag{12}$$

The quotient $\sinh(s\tau)/(s\tau)$ is indeterminate as $\tau \to 0^+$, but its limit can be evaluated by l'Hôpital's[5] rule. We obtain

$$\lim_{\tau \to 0^+} \frac{\sinh(s\tau)}{s\tau} = \lim_{\tau \to 0^+} \frac{s\cosh(s\tau)}{s} = 1.$$

[4] Paul A. M. Dirac (1902–1984), English mathematical physicist, received his Ph.D. from Cambridge in 1926 and was professor of mathematics there until 1969. He was awarded the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1933 (with Erwin Schrödinger) for fundamental work in quantum mechanics. His most celebrated result was the relativistic equation for the electron, published in 1928. From this equation he predicted the existence of an "anti-electron," or positron, which was first observed in 1932. Following his retirement from Cambridge, Dirac moved to the United States and held a research professorship at Florida State University.

[5] Marquis Guillaume de l'Hôpital (1661–1704) was a French nobleman with deep interest in mathematics. For a time he employed Johann Bernoulli as his private tutor in calculus. L'Hôpital published the first textbook on differential calculus in 1696; in it appears the property of limits that is named for him.

Then from equation (11) it follows that

$$\mathcal{L}\{\delta(t-t_0)\} = e^{-st_0}. \tag{13}$$

Equation (13) defines $\mathcal{L}\{\delta(t-t_0)\}$ for any $t_0 > 0$. We extend this result, to allow t_0 to be zero, by letting $t_0 \to 0^+$ on the right-hand side of equation (13); thus

$$\mathcal{L}\{\delta(t)\} = \lim_{t_0 \to 0^+} e^{-st_0} = 1. \tag{14}$$

It is reassuring to see that the Laplace transform formulas derived in equations (13) and (14) are consistent with the Laplace transform of a horizontally shifted function:

$$\mathcal{L}\{\delta(t-t_0)\} = e^{-st_0}\mathcal{L}\{\delta(t)\} = e^{-st_0}.$$

In a similar way, it is possible to define the integral of the product of the delta function and any continuous function f. We have

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t-t_0)\, f(t)\,dt = \lim_{\tau \to 0^+} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d_\tau(t-t_0)\, f(t)\,dt. \tag{15}$$

Using the definition (4) of $d_\tau(t)$ and the mean value theorem for integrals, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d_\tau(t-t_0)\, f(t)\,dt &= \frac{1}{2\tau}\int_{t_0-\tau}^{t_0+\tau} f(t)\,dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\tau}\cdot 2\tau \cdot f(t^*) = f(t^*),\end{aligned}$$

where $t_0 - \tau < t^* < t_0 + \tau$. Hence $t^* \to t_0$ as $\tau \to 0^+$, and it follows from equation (15) that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t-t_0)\, f(t)\,dt = f(t_0). \tag{16}$$

The following example illustrates the use of the delta function in solving an initial value problem with an impulsive forcing function.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$2y'' + y' + 2y = \delta(t-5), \tag{17}$$

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0. \tag{18}$$

Solution:

This initial value problem arises from the study of the same electric circuit or mechanical oscillator as in Example 1 of Section 6.4. The only difference is in the forcing term.

To solve the given problem, we first take the Laplace transform of the differential equation and use the initial conditions, obtaining

$$(2s^2 + s + 2)Y(s) = e^{-5s}.$$

Thus

$$Y(s) = \frac{e^{-5s}}{2s^2+s+2} = \frac{e^{-5s}}{2}\,\frac{1}{\left(s+\frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \frac{15}{16}}. \tag{19}$$

By Theorem 6.3.2, or from line 9 of Table 6.2.1,

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{1}{\left(s+\frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \frac{15}{16}}\right\} = \frac{4}{\sqrt{15}}\,e^{-t/4}\sin\left(\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}t\right). \tag{20}$$

Hence, by Theorem 6.3.1, we have

$$y(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{Y(s)\} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{15}} u_5(t) e^{-(t-5)/4} \sin\left(\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}(t-5)\right) \tag{21}$$

which is the formal solution of the given problem. It is also possible to write $y(t)$ in the form

$$y = \begin{cases} 0, & t < 5, \\ \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{15}} e^{-(t-5)/4} \sin\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{15}}{4}(t-5)\right), & t \geq 5. \end{cases} \tag{22}$$

The graph of equation (22) is shown in Figure 6.5.3. Since the initial conditions at $t = 0$ are homogeneous and there is no external excitation until $t = 5$, there is no response in the interval $0 < t < 5$. The impulse at $t = 5$ produces a decaying oscillation that persists indefinitely. The response is continuous at $t = 5$ despite the singularity in the forcing function at that point. However, the first derivative of the solution has a jump discontinuity at $t = 5$, and the second derivative has an infinite discontinuity there. This is required by the differential equation (17), since a singularity on one side of the equation must be balanced by a corresponding singularity on the other side.

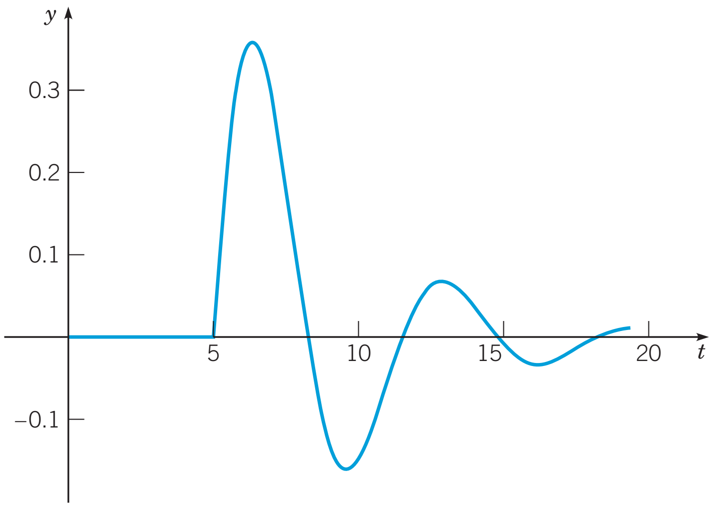


FIGURE 6.5.3 Solution of the initial value problem (17), (18): $2y'' + y' + 2y = \delta(t-5)$, $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 0$.

In dealing with problems that involve impulsive forcing, the use of the delta function usually simplifies the mathematical calculations, often quite significantly. However, if the actual excitation extends over a short, but nonzero, time interval, then an error will be introduced by modeling the excitation as taking place instantaneously. This error may be negligible, but in a practical problem it should not be dismissed without consideration. In Problem 12 you are asked to investigate this issue for a simple harmonic oscillator.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8:

a. Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

G **b.** Plot a graph of the solution.

1. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = \delta(t-\pi)$; $\quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

2. $y'' + 4y = \delta(t-\pi) - \delta(t-2\pi)$; $\quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

3. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = \delta(t-5) + u_{10}(t)$; $\quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1/2$

4. $y'' + 2y' + 3y = \sin t + \delta(t-3\pi)$; $\quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

5. $y'' + y = \delta(t-2\pi)\cos t$; $\quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

6. $y'' + 4y = 2\delta(t-\pi/4)$; $\quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

7. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = \cos t + \delta(t-\pi/2)$; $\quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

8. $y^{(4)} - y = \delta(t-1)$; $\quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$ $y''(0) = 0, \quad y'''(0) = 0$

9. Consider again the system in Example 1 of this section, in which an oscillation is excited by a unit impulse at $t = 5$. Suppose that it is desired to bring the system to rest again after exactly one cycle—that is, when the response first returns to equilibrium moving in the positive direction.

N **a.** Determine the impulse $k\delta(t - t_0)$ that should be applied to the system in order to accomplish this objective. Note that k is the magnitude of the impulse and t_0 is the time of its application.

G **b.** Solve the resulting initial value problem, and plot its solution to confirm that it behaves in the specified manner.

N **10.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + \gamma y' + y = \delta(t - 1), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where γ is the damping coefficient (or resistance).

G **a.** Let $\gamma = \frac{1}{2}$. Find the solution of the initial value problem and plot its graph.

b. Find the time t_1 at which the solution attains its maximum value. Also find the maximum value y_1 of the solution.

G **c.** Let $\gamma = \frac{1}{4}$ and repeat parts a and b.

d. Determine how t_1 and y_1 vary as γ decreases. What are the values of t_1 and y_1 when $\gamma = 0$?

11. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + \gamma y' + y = k\delta(t - 1), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where k is the magnitude of an impulse at $t = 1$, and γ is the damping coefficient (or resistance).

G **a.** Let $\gamma = \dfrac{1}{2}$. Find the value of k for which the response has a peak value of 2; call this value k_1.

G **b.** Repeat part (a) for $\gamma = \dfrac{1}{4}$.

c. Determine how k_1 varies as γ decreases. What is the value of k_1 when $\gamma = 0$?

12. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = f_k(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where $f_k(t) = \dfrac{1}{2k}\big(u_{4-k}(t) - u_{4+k}(t)\big)$ with $0 < k \le 1$.

a. Find the solution $y = \phi(t, k)$ of the initial value problem.

b. Calculate $\lim\limits_{k\to 0^+} \phi(t, k)$ from the solution found in part a.

c. Observe that $\lim\limits_{k\to 0^+} f_k(t) = \delta(t-4)$. Find the solution $\phi_0(t)$ of the given initial value problem with $f_k(t)$ replaced by $\delta(t-4)$. Is it true that $\phi_0(t) = \lim\limits_{k\to 0^+} \phi(t, k)$?

G **d.** Plot $\phi\left(t, \dfrac{1}{2}\right)$, $\phi\left(t, \dfrac{1}{4}\right)$, and $\phi_0(t)$ on the same axes. Describe the relation between $\phi(t, k)$ and $\phi_0(t)$.

Problems 13 through 16 deal with the effect of a sequence of impulses on an undamped oscillator. Suppose that

$$y'' + y = f(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0.$$

For each of the following choices for $f(t)$:

a. Try to predict the nature of the solution without solving the problem.

G **b.** Test your prediction by finding the solution and plotting its graph.

c. Determine what happens after the sequence of impulses ends.

13. $f(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{20} \delta(t - k\pi)$

14. $f(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{20} (-1)^{k+1}\delta(t - k\pi)$

15. $f(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{15} \delta(t - (2k - 1)\pi)$

16. $f(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{40} (-1)^{k+1}\delta\left(t - \frac{11}{4}k\right)$

17. The position of a certain lightly damped oscillator satisfies the initial value problem

$$y'' + 0.1y' + y = \sum_{k=1}^{20} (-1)^{k+1}\delta(t - k\pi), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0.$$

Observe that, except for the damping term, this problem is the same as Problem 14.

a. Try to predict the nature of the solution without solving the problem.

G **b.** Test your prediction by finding the solution and drawing its graph.

c. Determine what happens after the sequence of impulses ends.

G **18.** Proceed as in Problem 17 for the oscillator satisfying

$$y'' + 0.1y' + y = \sum_{k=1}^{15} \delta(t - (2k - 1)\pi), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0.$$

Observe that, except for the damping term, this problem is the same as Problem 15.

19. **a.** By the method of variation of parameters, show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + 2y' + 2y = f(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$$

is

$$y = \int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)} f(\tau) \sin(t - \tau)\, d\tau.$$

b. Show that if $f(t) = \delta(t - \pi)$, then the solution of part a reduces to

$$y = u_\pi(t) e^{-(t-\pi)} \sin(t - \pi).$$

c. Use a Laplace transform to solve the given initial value problem with $f(t) = \delta(t - \pi)$, and confirm that the solution agrees with the result of part b.

6.6 The Convolution Integral

Sometimes it is possible to identify a Laplace transform $H(s)$ as the product of two other Laplace transforms $F(s)$ and $G(s)$, the latter transforms corresponding to known functions f and g, respectively. In this event, we might anticipate that $H(s)$ would be the transform of the product of f and g. However, this is not the case; in other words, the Laplace transform cannot be commuted with ordinary multiplication. On the other hand, if an appropriately defined "generalized product" is introduced, then the situation changes, as stated in the following theorem.

Theorem 6.6.1 | Convolution Theorem

If $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ and $G(s) = \mathcal{L}\{g(t)\}$ both exist for $s > a \geq 0$, then

$$H(s) = F(s)G(s) = \mathcal{L}\{h(t)\}, \quad s > a, \tag{1}$$

where

$$h(t) = \int_0^t f(t-\tau)g(\tau)\,d\tau = \int_0^t f(\tau)g(t-\tau)\,d\tau. \tag{2}$$

The function h is known as the **convolution of** f **and** g; the integrals in equation (2) are called **convolution integrals**.

The equality of the two integrals in equation (2) follows by making the change of variable $t - \tau = \xi$ in the first integral. Before giving the proof of this theorem, let us make some observations about the convolution integral. According to this theorem, the transform of the convolution of two functions, rather than the transform of their ordinary product, is given by the product of the separate transforms. It is conventional to emphasize that the convolution integral can be thought of as a "generalized product" by writing

$$h(t) = (f * g)(t). \tag{3}$$

In particular, the notation $(f * g)(t)$ serves to indicate the first integral appearing in equation (2); the second integral in equation (2) is denoted as $(g * f)(t)$.

The convolution $f * g$ has many of the properties of ordinary multiplication. For example, it is relatively simple to show that

$$f * g = g * f \qquad \text{(commutative law)} \tag{4}$$

$$f * (g_1 + g_2) = f * g_1 + f * g_2 \qquad \text{(distributive law)} \tag{5}$$

$$(f * g) * h = f * (g * h) \qquad \text{(associative law)} \tag{6}$$

$$f * 0 = 0 * f = 0. \qquad \text{(zero property)} \tag{7}$$

In equation (7) the zeros denote not the number 0 but the function that has the value 0 for each value of t. The proofs of these properties are left to you as exercises.

However, there are other properties of ordinary multiplication that the convolution integral does not have. For example, it is not true in general that $f * 1$ is equal to f. To see this, note that

$$(f * 1)(t) = \int_0^t f(t-\tau)\cdot 1\,d\tau = \int_0^t f(t-\tau)\,d\tau.$$

If, for example, $f(t) = \cos t$, then

$$\begin{aligned}(f * 1)(t) &= \int_0^t \cos(t-\tau)\,d\tau = -\sin(t-\tau)\Big|_{\tau=0}^{\tau=t} \\ &= -\sin 0 + \sin t \\ &= \sin t.\end{aligned}$$

Clearly, $(f * 1)(t) \neq f(t)$ in this case. Similarly, it may not be true that $f * f$ is nonnegative. See Problem 3 for an example.

Convolution integrals arise in various applications in which the behavior of the system at time t depends not only on its state at time t but also on its past history. Systems of this kind are sometimes called **hereditary systems** and occur in such diverse fields as neutron transport, viscoelasticity, and population dynamics, among others.

Turning now to the proof of Theorem 6.6.1, we note first that if

$$F(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-s\xi} f(\xi)\, d\xi \quad \text{and} \quad G(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-s\tau} g(\tau)\, d\tau,$$

then

$$F(s)G(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-s\xi} f(\xi)\, d\xi \int_0^\infty e^{-s\tau} g(\tau)\, d\tau. \tag{8}$$

Since the integrand of the first integral does not depend on the integration variable of the second, we can write $F(s)G(s)$ as an iterated integral

$$\begin{aligned} F(s)G(s) &= \int_0^\infty e^{-s\tau} g(\tau) \left(\int_0^\infty e^{-s\xi} f(\xi)\, d\xi \right) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^\infty g(\tau) \left(\int_0^\infty e^{-s(\xi+\tau)} f(\xi)\, d\xi \right) d\tau. \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

The latter integral can be put into a more convenient form by introducing a change of variable. Let $\xi = t - \tau$, for fixed τ, so that $d\xi = dt$. Further, $\xi = 0$ corresponds to $t = \tau$, and $\xi = \infty$ corresponds to $t = \infty$; then the integral with respect to ξ in equation (9) is transformed into one with respect to t:

$$F(s)G(s) = \int_0^\infty g(\tau) \left(\int_\tau^\infty e^{-st} f(t-\tau) dt \right) d\tau. \tag{10}$$

The iterated integral on the right-hand side of equation (10) is carried out over the shaded triangular region extending to infinity in the $t\tau$-plane shown in Figure 6.6.1. Assuming that the order of integration can be reversed, we rewrite equation (10) so that the integration with respect to τ is executed first. In this way we obtain

$$F(s)G(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} \left(\int_0^t f(t-\tau) g(\tau)\, d\tau \right) dt \tag{11}$$

or

$$F(s)G(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} h(t) dt = \mathcal{L}\{h(t)\}, \tag{12}$$

where $h(t)$ is defined by equation (2). This completes the proof of Theorem 6.6.1.

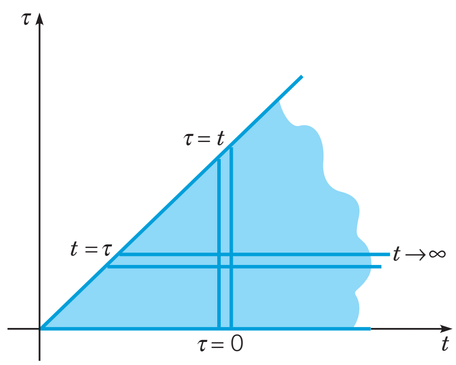


FIGURE 6.6.1 Region of integration in $F(s)G(s)$.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the inverse Laplace transform of

$$H(s) = \frac{a}{s^2(s^2 + a^2)}. \tag{13}$$

Solution:

It is convenient to think of $H(s)$ as the product of s^{-2} and $a/(s^2+a^2)$, which, according to lines 3 and 5 of Table 6.2.1, are the transforms of t and $\sin(at)$, respectively. Hence, by Theorem 6.6.1, the inverse Laplace transform of $H(s)$ is

$$h(t) = \int_0^t (t-\tau)\sin(a\tau)\,d\tau = \frac{at-\sin(at)}{a^2}. \tag{14}$$

You can verify that the same result is obtained if $h(t)$ is written in the alternative form

$$h(t) = \int_0^t \tau \sin(a(t-\tau))\,d\tau,$$

which confirms equation (2) in this case. Of course, $h(t)$ can also be found by expanding $H(s)$ in partial fractions.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + 4y = g(t), \tag{15}$$

$$y(0) = 3, \quad y'(0) = -1. \tag{16}$$

Solution:

By taking the Laplace transform of the differential equation and using the initial conditions, we obtain

$$s^2Y(s) - 3s + 1 + 4Y(s) = G(s)$$

or

$$Y(s) = \frac{3s-1}{s^2+4} + \frac{G(s)}{s^2+4}. \tag{17}$$

Observe that the first and second terms on the right-hand side of equation (17) contain the dependence of $Y(s)$ on the initial conditions and forcing function, respectively. It is convenient to write $Y(s)$ in the form

$$Y(s) = 3\frac{s}{s^2+4} - \frac{1}{2}\frac{2}{s^2+4} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{2}{s^2+4}G(s). \tag{18}$$

Then, using lines 5 and 6 of Table 6.2.1 and Theorem 6.6.1, we obtain

$$y = 3\cos(2t) - \frac{1}{2}\sin(2t) + \frac{1}{2}\int_0^t \sin(2(t-\tau))g(\tau)\,d\tau. \tag{19}$$

If a specific forcing function g is given, then the integral in equation (19) can be evaluated (by numerical means, if necessary).

Example 2 illustrates the power of the convolution integral as a tool for writing the solution of an initial value problem in terms of an integral. In fact, it is possible to proceed in much the same way in more general problems. Consider the problem consisting of the differential equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \tag{20}$$

where a, b, and c are real constants and g is a given function, together with the initial conditions

$$y(0) = y_0, \quad y'(0) = y_0'. \tag{21}$$

The Laplace transform approach yields some important insights concerning the structure of the solution of any problem of this type.

The initial value problem (15), (16) is often referred to as an input-output problem. The coefficients a, b, and c describe the properties of some physical system, and $g(t)$ is the input to the system. The values y_0 and y_0' describe the initial state, and the solution y is the output at time t.

Taking the Laplace transform of equation (20) and using initial conditions (21), we obtain

$$(as^2 + bs + c)Y(s) - (as + b)y_0 - ay_0' = G(s).$$

If we let

$$\Phi(s) = \frac{(as + b)y_0 + ay_0'}{as^2 + bs + c} \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi(s) = \frac{G(s)}{as^2 + bs + c}, \tag{22}$$

then we can write

$$Y(s) = \Phi(s) + \Psi(s). \tag{23}$$

Consequently,

$$y(t) = \phi(t) + \psi(t), \tag{24}$$

where $\phi(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{\Phi(s)\}$ and $\psi(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{\Psi(s)\}$. Observe that $\phi(t)$ is the solution of the initial value problem

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \quad y(0) = y_0, \ \ y'(0) = y_0', \tag{25}$$

obtained from equations (20) and (21) by setting $g(t)$ equal to zero. Similarly, $\psi(t)$ is the solution of

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \ \ y'(0) = 0, \tag{26}$$

in which the initial values y_0 and y_0' are each replaced by zero.

Once specific values of a, b, and c are given, we can use Table 6.2.1 to find $\phi(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{\Phi(s)\}$, possibly in conjunction with a translation or a partial fraction expansion. To find $\psi(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{\Psi(s)\}$, it is convenient to write $\Psi(s)$ as

$$\Psi(s) = H(s)G(s), \tag{27}$$

where $H(s) = (as^2 + bs + c)^{-1}$. The function H is known as the **transfer function**[6] and depends only on the properties of the system under consideration; that is, $H(s)$ is determined entirely by the coefficients a, b, and c. On the other hand, $G(s)$ depends only on the external excitation $g(t)$ that is applied to the system. By the Convolution Theorem (Theorem 6.6.1) we can write

$$\psi(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{H(s)G(s)\} = \int_0^t h(t - \tau)g(\tau)\,d\tau, \tag{28}$$

where $h(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{H(s)\}$, and $g(t)$ is the given forcing function.

To obtain a better understanding of the significance of $h(t)$, we consider the case in which $G(s) = 1$; consequently, $g(t) = \delta(t)$ and $\Psi(s) = H(s)$. This means that $y = h(t)$ is the solution of the initial value problem

$$ay'' + by' + cy = \delta(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \ \ y'(0) = 0, \tag{29}$$

obtained from equation (26) by replacing $g(t)$ by $\delta(t)$. Thus $h(t)$ is the response of the system to a unit impulse applied at $t = 0$, and it is natural to call $h(t)$ the **impulse response** of the system. Equation (28) then says that $\psi(t)$ is the convolution of the impulse response and the forcing function.

Referring to Example 2, we note that the transfer function is $H(s) = 1/(s^2 + 4)$ and the impulse response is $h(t) = \frac{1}{2}\sin(2t)$. Also, the first two terms on the right-hand side of equation (19) constitute the function $\phi(t)$, the solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation that satisfies the given initial conditions.

[6]This terminology arises from the fact that $H(s)$ is the ratio of the transforms of the output and the input of the problem (20).

Problems

1. Prove the commutative, distributive, and associative properties of the convolution integral.

a. $f * g = g * f$
b. $f * (g_1 + g_2) = f * g_1 + f * g_2$
c. $f * (g * h) = (f * g) * h$

2. Find an example different from the one in the text showing that $(f * 1)(t)$ need not be equal to $f(t)$.

3. Show, by means of the example $f(t) = \sin t$, that $f * f$ is not necessarily nonnegative.

In each of Problems 4 through 6, find the Laplace transform of the given function.

4. $f(t) = \int_0^t (t-\tau)^2 \cos(2\tau)\, d\tau$

5. $f(t) = \int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)} \sin\tau\, d\tau$

6. $f(t) = \int_0^t \sin(t-\tau)\cos\tau\, d\tau$

In each of Problems 7 through 9, find the inverse Laplace transform of the given function by using the convolution theorem.

7. $F(s) = \dfrac{1}{s^4(s^2+1)}$

8. $F(s) = \dfrac{s}{(s+1)(s^2+4)}$

9. $F(s) = \dfrac{1}{(s+1)^2(s^2+4)}$

10. **a.** If $f(t) = t^m$ and $g(t) = t^n$, where m and n are positive integers, show that

$$f * g = t^{m+n+1}\int_0^1 u^m(1-u)^n\, du.$$

b. Use the convolution theorem to show that

$$\int_0^1 u^m(1-u)^n\, du = \frac{m!\,n!}{(m+n+1)!}.$$

c. Extend the result of part b to the case where m and n are positive numbers but not necessarily integers.

In each of Problems 11 through 15, express the solution of the given initial value problem in terms of a convolution integral.

11. $y'' + \omega^2 y = g(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

12. $4y'' + 4y' + 17y = g(t); \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

13. $y'' + y' + \frac{5}{4}y = 1 - u_\pi(t); \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = -1$

14. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = \cos(\alpha t); \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

15. $y^{(4)} + 5y'' + 4y = g(t); \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = 0, \quad y'''(0) = 0$

16. Consider the equation

$$\phi(t) + \int_0^t k(t-\xi)\phi(\xi)\, d\xi = f(t),$$

in which f and k are known functions, and ϕ is to be determined. Since the unknown function ϕ appears under an integral sign, the given equation is called an **integral equation**; in particular, it belongs to a class of integral equations known as **Volterra integral equations**[7]. Take the Laplace transform of the given integral equation and obtain an expression for $\mathcal{L}\{\phi(t)\}$ in terms of the transforms $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ and $\mathcal{L}\{k(t)\}$ of the given functions f and k. The inverse transform of $\mathcal{L}\{\phi(t)\}$ is the solution of the original integral equation.

17. Consider the Volterra integral equation (see Problem 16)

$$\phi(t) + \int_0^t (t-\xi)\phi(\xi)\, d\xi = \sin(2t). \tag{30}$$

a. Solve the integral equation (30) by using the Laplace transform.
b. By differentiating equation (30) twice, show that $\phi(t)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$\phi''(t) + \phi(t) = -4\sin(2t).$$

Show also that the initial conditions are

$$\phi(0) = 0, \quad \phi'(0) = 2.$$

c. Solve the initial value problem in part b, and verify that the solution is the same as the one in part a.

In each of Problems 18 and 19:

a. Solve the given Volterra integral equation by using the Laplace transform.
b. Convert the integral equation into an initial value problem, as in Problem 17b.
c. Solve the initial value problem in part b, and verify that the solution is the same as the one in part a.

18. $\phi(t) + \int_0^t (t-\xi)\phi(\xi)\, d\xi = 1$

19. $\phi(t) + 2\int_0^t \cos(t-\xi)\phi(\xi)\, d\xi = e^{-t}$

There are also equations, known as **integro-differential equations**, in which both derivatives and integrals of the unknown function appear. In each of Problems 20 and 21:

a. Solve the given integro-differential equation by using the Laplace transform.
b. By differentiating the integro-differential equation a sufficient number of times, convert it into an initial value problem.
c. Solve the initial value problem in part b, and verify that the solution is the same as the one in part a.

20. $\phi'(t) + \int_0^t (t-\xi)\phi(\xi)\, d\xi = t, \quad \phi(0) = 0$

21. $\phi'(t) - \frac{1}{2}\int_0^t (t-\xi)^2\phi(\xi)\, d\xi = -t, \quad \phi(0) = 1$

[7] See the footnote about **Vito Volterra** in Section 9.5.

22. **The Tautochrone.** A problem of interest in the history of mathematics is that of finding the **tautochrone**[8]—the curve down which a particle will slide freely under gravity alone, reaching the bottom in the same time regardless of its starting point on the curve. This problem arose in the construction of a clock pendulum whose period is independent of the amplitude of its motion. The tautochrone was found by Christian Huygens (1629–1695) in 1673 by geometric methods, and later by Leibniz and Jakob Bernoulli using analytic arguments. Bernoulli's solution (in 1690) was one of the first occasions on which a differential equation was explicitly solved. The geometric configuration is shown in Figure 6.6.2. The starting point $P(a, b)$ is joined to the terminal point $(0, 0)$ by the arc C. Arc length s is measured from the origin, and $f(y)$ denotes the rate of change of s with respect to y:

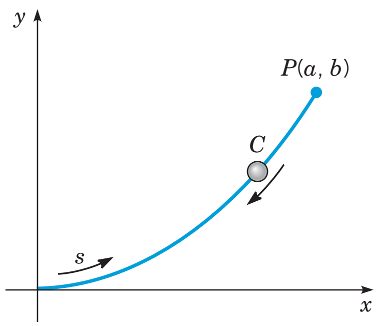


FIGURE 6.6.2 The tautochrone.

$$f(y) = \frac{ds}{dy} = \left(1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)^2\right)^{1/2}. \tag{31}$$

Then it follows from the **principle of conservation of energy** that the time $T(b)$ required for a particle to slide from P to the origin is

$$T(b) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2g}} \int_0^b \frac{f(y)}{\sqrt{b-y}}\,dy. \tag{32}$$

a. Assume that $T(b) = T_0$, a constant, for each b. By taking the Laplace transform of equation (32) in this case, and using the convolution theorem, Theorem 6.6.1, show that

$$F(s) = \sqrt{\frac{2g}{\pi}}\,\frac{T_0}{\sqrt{s}}; \tag{33}$$

then show that

$$f(y) = \frac{\sqrt{2g}}{\pi}\,\frac{T_0}{\sqrt{y}}. \tag{34}$$

Hint: See Problem 24 of Section 6.1.

b. Combining equations (32) and (34), show that

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = \sqrt{\frac{2\alpha - y}{y}}, \tag{35}$$

where $\alpha = gT_0^2/\pi^2$.

c. Use the substitution $y = 2\alpha \sin^2(\theta/2)$ to solve equation (35), and show that

$$x = \alpha(\theta + \sin\theta), \quad y = \alpha(1 - \cos\theta). \tag{36}$$

Equations (36) can be identified as parametric equations of a cycloid. Thus the tautochrone is an arc of a cycloid.

[8] The word "tautochrone" comes from the Greek words *tauto*, which means "same," and *chronos*, which means "time."

References

The books listed below contain additional information on the Laplace transform and its applications.

Churchill, R. V., *Operational Mathematics* (3rd ed.) (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1971).

Doetsch, G., *Introduction to the Theory and Application of the Laplace Transform* (trans. W. Nader) (New York: Springer, 1974).

Kaplan, W., *Operational Methods for Linear Systems* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1962).

Kuhfittig, P. K. F., *Introduction to the Laplace Transform* (New York: Plenum, 1978).

Miles, J. W., *Integral Transforms in Applied Mathematics* (Oxford: Cambridge University Press, 2008).

Rainville, E. D., *The Laplace Transform: An Introduction* (New York: Macmillan, 1963).

Each of the books just mentioned contains a table of transforms. Extensive tables are also available. See, for example,

Erdelyi, A. (ed.), *Tables of Integral Transforms* (Vol. 1) (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1954).

Roberts, G. E., and Kaufman, H., *Table of Laplace Transforms* (Philadelphia: Saunders, 1966).

A further discussion of generalized functions can be found in

Lighthill, M. J., *An Introduction to Fourier Analysis and Generalized Functions* (Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1958).

CHAPTER 7

Systems of First-Order Linear Equations

Many physical problems involve a number of separate but interconnected components. For example, the current and voltage in an electrical network, each mass in a mechanical system, each element (or compound) in a chemical system, or each species in a biological system have this character. In these and similar cases, the corresponding mathematical problem consists of a *system* of two or more differential equations, which can always be written as first-order differential equations. In this chapter we focus on systems of first-order *linear* differential equations and, in particular, differential equations having constant coefficients, utilizing some of the elementary aspects of linear algebra to unify the presentation. In many respects this chapter follows the same lines as the treatment of second-order linear differential equations in Chapter 3.

7.1 Introduction

Systems of simultaneous ordinary differential equations arise naturally in problems involving several dependent variables, each of which is a function of the same single independent variable. We will denote the independent variable by t and will let $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ represent dependent variables that are functions of t. Differentiation[1] with respect to t will be denoted by, for example, $\dfrac{dx_1}{dt}$ or x_1'.

Let us begin by considering the spring–mass system in Figure 7.1.1. The two masses move on a frictionless surface under the influence of external forces $F_1(t)$ and $F_2(t)$, and they are also constrained by the three springs whose constants are k_1, k_2, and k_3, respectively. We regard motion and displacement to the right as being positive.

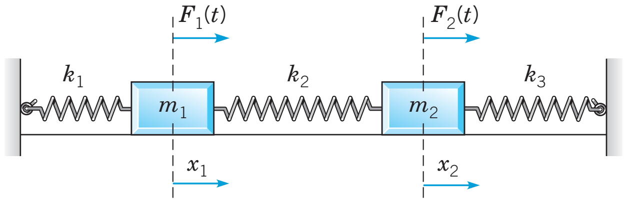


FIGURE 7.1.1 A two-mass, three-spring system.

Using arguments similar to those in Section 3.7, we find the following equations for the coordinates x_1 and x_2 of the two masses:

$$\begin{aligned} m_1\frac{d^2x_1}{dt^2} &= k_2(x_2 - x_1) - k_1x_1 + F_1(t) = -(k_1+k_2)x_1 + k_2x_2 + F_1(t), \\ m_2\frac{d^2x_2}{dt^2} &= -k_3x_2 - k_2(x_2 - x_1) + F_2(t) = k_2x_1 - (k_2+k_3)x_2 + F_2(t). \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

See Problem 14 for a full derivation of the system of differential equations (1).

Next, consider the parallel *LRC* circuit shown in Figure 7.1.2. Let V be the voltage drop across the capacitor and I the current through the inductor. Then, referring to Section 3.7 and

[1] In some treatments you will see differentiation with respect to time represented with a dot over the function, as in $\dot{x}_1 = \dfrac{dx_1}{dt}$ and $\ddot{x}_1 = \dfrac{d^2x_1}{dt^2}$. We reserve this notation for a specific purpose, which will be introduced in Section 9.6.

to Problem 16 of this section, we can show that the voltage and current are described by the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dI}{dt} &= \frac{V}{L},\\ \frac{dV}{dt} &= -\frac{I}{C} - \frac{V}{RC},\end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

where L is the inductance, C is the capacitance, and R is the resistance.

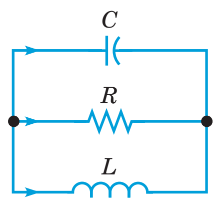


FIGURE 7.1.2 A parallel *LRC* circuit.

One reason why systems of first-order equations are particularly important is that equations of higher order can always be transformed into such systems. This is usually required if a numerical approach is planned, because, as we will see in Chapter 8, almost all codes for generating numerical approximations to solutions of differential equations are written for systems of first-order equations. The following example illustrates how easy it is to make the transformation from a second-order differential equation to a system of two first-order differential equations.

EXAMPLE 1

The motion of a certain spring–mass system (see Example 3 of Section 3.7) is described by the second-order differential equation

$$u'' + \frac{1}{8}u' + u = 0. \tag{3}$$

Rewrite this equation as a system of first-order equations.

Solution:

Let $x_1 = u$ and $x_2 = u'$. Then it follows that $x_1' = x_2$. Further, $u'' = x_2'$. Then, by substituting for u, u', and u'' in equation (3), we obtain

$$x_2' + \frac{1}{8}x_2 + x_1 = 0.$$

Thus x_1 and x_2 satisfy the following system of two first-order differential equations:

$$\begin{aligned}x_1' &= x_2,\\ x_2' &= -x_1 - \frac{1}{8}x_2.\end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

The general equation of motion of a spring–mass system

$$mu'' + \gamma u' + ku = F(t) \tag{5}$$

can be transformed into a system of first-order differential equations in the same manner. If we let $x_1 = u$ and $x_2 = u'$, and proceed as in Example 1, we quickly obtain the system

$$\begin{aligned}x_1' &= x_2,\\ x_2' &= -\frac{k}{m}x_1 - \frac{\gamma}{m}x_2 + \frac{1}{m}F(t)\end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

To transform an arbitrary n^{th} order equation

$$y^{(n)} = F(t, y, y', \ldots, y^{(n-1)}) \tag{7}$$

into a system of n first-order differential equations, we extend the method of Example 1 by introducing the variables $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ defined by

$$x_1 = y, \quad x_2 = y', \quad x_3 = y'', \dots, \quad x_n = y^{(n-1)}. \tag{8}$$

It then follows immediately that

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= x_2, \\ x_2' &= x_3, \\ &\vdots \\ x_{n-1}' &= x_n, \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

and, from equation (7),

$$x_n' = F(t, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n). \tag{10}$$

Equations (9) and (10) are a special case of the more general system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= F_1(t, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n), \\ x_2' &= F_2(t, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n), \\ &\vdots \\ x_n' &= F_n(t, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n). \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

In a similar way, the system (1) can be reduced to a system of four first-order equations of the form (11), and the system (2) is already in this form. In fact, systems of the form (11) include almost all cases of interest. Much of the more advanced theory of differential equations is devoted to such systems.

A **solution** of the system (11) on the interval $I\colon \alpha < t < \beta$ consists of n functions

$$x_1 = \phi_1(t), \quad x_2 = \phi_2(t), \dots, x_n = \phi_n(t) \tag{12}$$

where each function is differentiable at all points in interval I and the system of equations (11) is satisfied at all points in interval I. In addition to the given system of differential equations, there may also be given n initial conditions of the form

$$x_1(t_0) = x_1^0, \quad x_2(t_0) = x_2^0, \dots, x_n(t_0) = x_n^0, \tag{13}$$

where t_0 is a specified value of t in I, and $x_1^0, \dots, x_n^0$ are prescribed numbers. The differential equations (11) and the initial conditions (13) together form an **initial value problem**.

A solution (12) can be viewed as a set of parametric equations in an n-dimensional space. For a given value of t, equations (12) give values for the coordinates $x_1, \dots, x_n$ of a point in the space. As t changes, the coordinates in general also change. The collection of points corresponding to $\alpha < t < \beta$ forms a curve in the space. It is often helpful to think of the curve as the trajectory, or path, of a particle moving in accordance with the system of differential equations (11). The initial conditions (13) determine the starting point of the moving particle. This curve is most easily visualized when $n = 2$ and the curve lies in the x_1x_2-plane.

The following conditions on $F_1, F_2, \dots, F_n$, which are easily checked in specific problems, are sufficient to ensure that the initial value problem (11), (13) has a unique solution. Theorem 7.1.1 is analogous to Theorem 2.4.2, the existence and uniqueness theorem for a single first-order equation.

Theorem 7.1.1

Let each of the n functions $F_1, \dots, F_n$ and the n^2 first partial derivatives $\dfrac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1}, \dots, \dfrac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_n}, \dots, \dfrac{\partial F_n}{\partial x_1}, \dots, \dfrac{\partial F_n}{\partial x_1}$ be continuous in a region R of $tx_1x_2\cdots x_n$-space defined by $\alpha < t < \beta, \alpha_1 < x_1 < \beta_1, \dots, \alpha_n < x_n < \beta_n$, and let the point $\left(t_0, x_1^0, x_2^0, \dots, x_n^0\right)$ be in R. Then there is an interval $|t - t_0| < h$ in which there exists a unique solution $x_1 = \phi_1(t), \dots, x_n = \phi_n(t)$ of the system of differential equations (11) that also satisfies the initial conditions (13).

The proof of this theorem can be constructed by generalizing the argument in Section 2.8, but we do not give it here. However, note that, in the hypotheses of the theorem, nothing is said about the partial derivatives of $F_1, \ldots, F_n$ with respect to the independent variable t. Also, in the conclusion, the length $2h$ of the interval in which the solution exists is not specified exactly, and in some cases it may be very short. Finally, the same result can be established on the basis of somewhat weaker but more complicated hypotheses, so the theorem as stated is not the most general one known, and the given conditions are sufficient, but not necessary, for the conclusion to hold.

If each of the functions $F_1, \ldots, F_n$ in equations (11) is a linear function of the dependent variables $x_1, \ldots, x_n$, then the system of differential equations is said to be **linear**; otherwise, it is **nonlinear**. Thus the most general system of n first-order linear differential equations has the form

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= p_{11}(t)x_1 + \cdots + p_{1n}(t)x_n + g_1(t), \\ x_2' &= p_{21}(t)x_1 + \cdots + p_{2n}(t)x_n + g_2(t), \\ &\vdots \\ x_n' &= p_{n1}(t)x_1 + \cdots + p_{nn}(t)x_n + g_n(t). \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

If each of the functions $g_1(t), \ldots, g_n(t)$ is zero for all t in the interval I, then the system (14) is said to be **homogeneous**; otherwise, it is **nonhomogeneous**. Observe that the systems (1) and (2) are both linear. The system (1) is nonhomogeneous unless $F_1(t) = F_2(t) = 0$, while the system (2) is homogeneous.

For the linear system (14), the existence and uniqueness theorem is simpler and also has a stronger conclusion. It is analogous to Theorems 2.4.1 and 3.2.1.

Theorem 7.1.2

If the functions $p_{11}, p_{12}, \ldots, p_{nn}, g_1, \ldots, g_n$ are continuous on an open interval $I\colon \alpha < t < \beta$, then there exists a unique solution $x_1 = \phi_1(t), \ldots, x_n = \phi_n(t)$ of the system (14) that also satisfies the initial conditions (13), where t_0 is any point in I, and $x_1^0, \ldots, x_n^0$ are any prescribed numbers. Moreover, the solution exists throughout the interval I.

Note that, in contrast to the situation for a nonlinear system, the existence and uniqueness of the solution of a linear system are guaranteed throughout the interval in which the hypotheses are satisfied. Furthermore, for a linear system the initial values $x_1^0, \ldots, x_n^0$ at $t = t_0$ are completely arbitrary, whereas in the nonlinear case the initial point must lie in the region R defined in Theorem 7.1.1.

The rest of this chapter is devoted to systems of linear first-order differential equations (nonlinear systems are included in the discussions in Chapters 8 and 9). Our presentation makes use of matrix notation and assumes that you have some familiarity with the properties of matrices. The basic facts about matrices needed for this discussion are presented in Sections 7.2 and 7.3; some more advanced material is reviewed as needed in later sections.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, transform the given equation into a system of first-order equations.

1. $u'' + 0.5u' + 2u = 0$
2. $t^2u'' + tu' + (t^2 - 0.25)u = 0$
3. $u^{(4)} - u = 0$

In each of Problems 4 and 5, transform the given initial value problem into an initial value problem for two first-order equations.

4. $u'' + 0.25u' + 4u = 2\cos(3t), \quad u(0) = 1, \quad u'(0) = -2$
5. $u'' + p(t)u' + q(t)u = g(t), \quad u(0) = u_0, \quad u'(0) = u_0'$

6. Systems of first-order equations can sometimes be transformed into a single equation of higher-order. Consider the system

$$x_1' = -2x_1 + x_2, \quad x_2' = x_1 - 2x_2.$$

a. Solve the first differential equation for x_2.
b. Substitute the result of a into the second differential equation, thereby obtaining a second-order differential equation for x_1.
c. Solve the differential equation found in b for x_1.
d. Use the results of a and c to find x_2.

In each of Problems 7 through 9, proceed as in Problem 6.

a. Transform the given system into a single equation of second-order.
b. Find x_1 and x_2 that also satisfy the given initial conditions.
c. Sketch the graph of the solution in the x_1x_2-plane for $t \geq 0$.

7. $x_1' = 3x_1 - 2x_2, \quad x_1(0) = 3$
$x_2' = 2x_1 - 2x_2, \quad x_2(0) = \dfrac{1}{2}$

8. $x_1' = 2x_2, \quad x_1(0) = 3$
$x_2' = -2x_1, \quad x_2(0) = 4$

9. $x_1' = -\frac{1}{2}x_1 + 2x_2, \quad x_1(0) = -2$
$x_2' = -2x_1 - \frac{1}{2}x_2, \quad x_2(0) = 2$

10. Transform equations (2) for the parallel circuit into a single second-order equation.

11. Show that if a_{11}, a_{12}, a_{21}, and a_{22} are constants with a_{12} and a_{21} not both zero, and if the functions g_1 and g_2 are differentiable, then the initial value problem

$$x_1' = a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + g_1(t), \quad x_1(0) = x_1^0$$
$$x_2' = a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + g_2(t), \quad x_2(0) = x_2^0$$

can be transformed into an initial value problem for a single second-order equation. Can the same procedure be carried out if $a_{11}, \ldots, a_{22}$ are functions of t?

12. Consider the linear homogeneous system

$$x' = p_{11}(t)x + p_{12}(t)y,$$
$$y' = p_{21}(t)x + p_{22}(t)y.$$

Show that if $x = x_1(t)$, $y = y_1(t)$ and $x = x_2(t)$, $y = y_2(t)$ are two solutions of the given system, then $x = c_1x_1(t) + c_2x_2(t)$, $y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$ is also a solution for any constants c_1 and c_2. This is the principle of superposition; it will be discussed in much greater detail in Section 7.4.

13. Let $x = x_1(t)$, $y = y_1(t)$ and $x = x_2(t)$, $y = y_2(t)$ be any two solutions of the linear nonhomogeneous system

$$x' = p_{11}(t)x + p_{12}(t)y + g_1(t),$$
$$y' = p_{21}(t)x + p_{22}(t)y + g_2(t).$$

Show that $x = x_1(t) - x_2(t)$, $y = y_1(t) - y_2(t)$ is a solution of the corresponding homogeneous system.

14. Equations (1) can be derived by drawing a free-body diagram showing the forces acting on each mass. Figure 7.1.3*a* shows the situation when the displacements x_1 and x_2 of the two masses are both positive (to the right) and $x_2 > x_1$. Then springs 1 and 2 are elongated and spring 3 is compressed, giving rise to forces as shown in Figure 7.1.3*b*. Use Newton's law ($F = ma$) to derive equations (1).

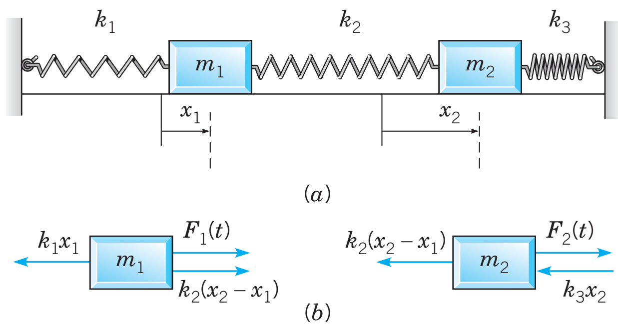


FIGURE 7.1.3 (*a*) The displacements x_1 and x_2 are both positive. (*b*) The free-body diagram for the spring–mass system.

15. Transform the system (1) into a system of first-order differential equations by letting $y_1 = x_1$, $y_2 = x_2$, $y_3 = x_1'$, and $y_4 = x_2'$.

Electric Circuits. The theory of electric circuits, such as that shown in Figure 7.1.2, consisting of inductors, resistors, and capacitors, is based on Kirchhoff's laws: (1) The net flow of current into each node (or junction) is zero, and (2) the net voltage drop around each closed loop is zero. In addition to Kirchhoff's laws, we also have the relation between the current I, with units of amperes through each circuit element and the voltage drop V, measured in volts, across the element:

$$V = RI, \quad R = \text{resistance in ohms;}$$
$$C\frac{dV}{dt} = I, \quad C = \text{capacitance in farads;}^2$$
$$L\frac{dI}{dt} = V, \quad L = \text{inductance in henrys.}$$

Kirchhoff's laws and the current-voltage relation for each circuit element provide a system of algebraic and differential equations from which the voltage and current throughout the circuit can be determined. Problems 16 through 18 illustrate the procedure just described.

16. Consider the circuit shown in Figure 7.1.2. Let I_1, I_2, and I_3 be the currents through the capacitor, resistor, and inductor, respectively. Likewise, let V_1, V_2, and V_3 be the corresponding voltage drops. The arrows denote the arbitrarily chosen directions in which currents and voltage drops will be taken to be positive.

a. Applying Kirchhoff's second law to the upper loop in the circuit, show that

$$V_1 - V_2 = 0. \tag{15}$$

In a similar way, show that

$$V_2 - V_3 = 0. \tag{16}$$

b. Applying Kirchhoff's first law to either node in the circuit, show that

$$I_1 + I_2 + I_3 = 0. \tag{17}$$

c. Use the current-voltage relation through each element in the circuit to obtain the equations

$$CV_1' = I_1, \quad V_2 = RI_2, \quad LI_3' = V_3. \tag{18}$$

d. Eliminate V_2, V_3, I_1, and I_2 among equations (15) through (18) to obtain

$$CV_1' = -I_3 - \frac{V_1}{R}, \quad LI_3' = V_1. \tag{19}$$

Observe that if we omit the subscripts in equations (19), then we have the system (2) of this section.

[2] Actual capacitors typically have capacitances measured in microfarads. We use farad as the unit for numerical convenience.

17. Consider the circuit shown in Figure 7.1.4. Use the method outlined in Problem 16 to show that the current I through the inductor and the voltage V across the capacitor satisfy the system of differential equations

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = -I - V, \quad \frac{dV}{dt} = 2I - V.$$

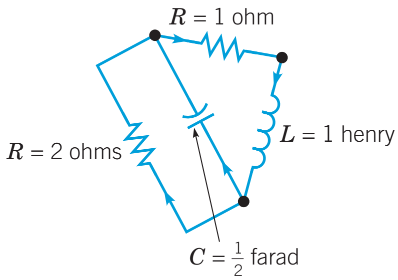


FIGURE 7.1.4 The circuit in Problem 17.

18. Consider the circuit shown in Figure 7.1.5. Use the method outlined in Problem 16 to show that the current I through the inductor and the voltage V across the capacitor satisfy the system of differential equations

$$L\frac{dI}{dt} = -R_1 I - V, \quad C\frac{dV}{dt} = I - \frac{V}{R_2}.$$

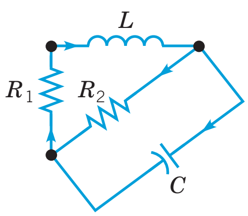


FIGURE 7.1.5 The circuit in Problem 18.

19. Consider the two interconnected tanks shown in Figure 7.1.6. Tank 1 initially contains 30 gal of water and 25 oz of salt, and Tank 2 initially contains 20 gal of water and 15 oz of salt. Water containing 1 oz/gal of salt flows into Tank 1 at a rate of 1.5 gal/min. The mixture flows from Tank 1 to Tank 2 at a rate of 3 gal/min. Water containing 3 oz/gal of salt also flows into Tank 2 at a rate of 1 gal/min (from the outside). The mixture drains from Tank 2 at a rate of 4 gal/min, of which some flows back into Tank 1 at a rate of 1.5 gal/min, while the remainder leaves the system.

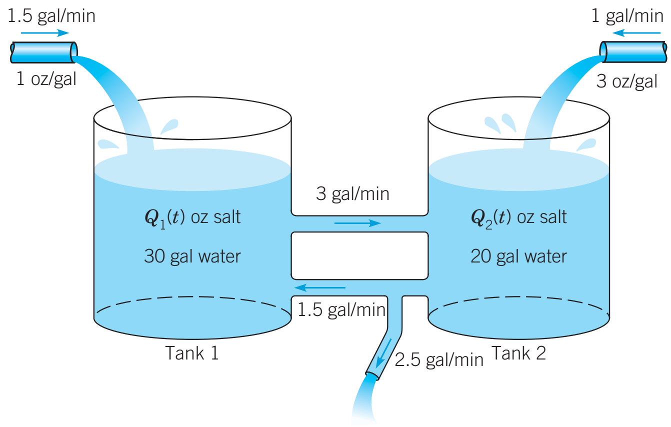


FIGURE 7.1.6 Two interconnected tanks (Problem 19).

a. Let $Q_1(t)$ and $Q_2(t)$, respectively, be the amount of salt in each tank at time t. Write down differential equations and initial conditions that model the flow process. Observe that the system of differential equations is nonhomogeneous.
b. Find the values of Q_1 and Q_2 for which the system is in equilibrium—that is, does not change with time. Let Q_1^E and Q_2^E be the equilibrium values. Can you predict which tank will approach its equilibrium state more rapidly?
c. Let $x_1 = Q_1(t) - Q_1^E$ and $x_2 = Q_2(t) - Q_2^E$. Determine an initial value problem for x_1 and x_2. Observe that the system of equations for x_1 and x_2 is homogeneous.

20. Consider two interconnected tanks similar to those in Figure 7.1.6. Initially, Tank 1 contains 60 gal of water and Q_1^0 oz of salt, and Tank 2 contains 100 gal of water and Q_2^0 oz of salt. Water containing q_1 oz/gal of salt flows into Tank 1 at a rate of 3 gal/min. The mixture in Tank 1 flows out at a rate of 4 gal/min, of which half flows into Tank 2, while the remainder leaves the system. Water containing q_2 oz/gal of salt also flows into Tank 2 from the outside at the rate of 1 gal/min. The mixture in Tank 2 leaves it at a rate of 3 gal/min, of which some flows back into Tank 1 at a rate of 1 gal/min, while the rest leaves the system.
a. Draw a diagram that depicts the flow process described above. Let $Q_1(t)$ and $Q_2(t)$, respectively, be the amount of salt in each tank at time t. Write down differential equations and initial conditions for Q_1 and Q_2 that model the flow process.
b. Find the equilibrium values Q_1^E and Q_2^E in terms of the concentrations q_1 and q_2.
c. Is it possible (by adjusting q_1 and q_2) to obtain $Q_1^E = 60$ and $Q_2^E = 50$ as an equilibrium state?
d. Describe which equilibrium states are possible for this system for various values of q_1 and q_2.

7.2 Matrices

For both theoretical and computational reasons, it is advisable to bring some of the results of matrix algebra[3] to bear on the initial value problem for a system of linear differential equations.

[3] The properties of matrices were first extensively explored in 1858 in a paper by the English algebraist Arthur Cayley (1821–1895), although the word “matrix” was introduced by his good friend James Sylvester (1814–1897) in 1850. Cayley did some of his best mathematical work while practicing law from 1849 to 1863; he then became professor of mathematics at Cambridge, a position he held for the rest of his life. After Cayley’s groundbreaking work, the development of matrix theory proceeded rapidly, with significant contributions by Charles Hermite, Georg Frobenius, and Camille Jordan, among others.

This section and the next are devoted to a brief summary of the facts that will be needed later. More details can be found in any elementary book on linear algebra. We assume, however, that you are familiar with determinants and how to evaluate them.

We designate matrices by boldfaced capitals $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{B}$, $\mathbf{C}$, . . . , occasionally using boldfaced Greek capitals $\mathbf{\Phi}$, $\mathbf{\Psi}$, ... A matrix $\mathbf{A}$ consists of a rectangular array of numbers, or elements, arranged in m rows and n columns—that is,

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{1}$$

We speak of $\mathbf{A}$ as an $\mathbf{m \times n}$ **matrix**. Although later in the chapter we will often assume that the elements of certain matrices are real numbers, in this section we allow for the possibility that the elements of matrices may be complex numbers. The element lying in the i^{th} row and j^{th} column is designated by a_{ij}, the first subscript identifying its row and the second its column. Sometimes the notation (a_{ij}) is used to denote the matrix whose generic element is a_{ij}.

Associated with each matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is the matrix $\mathbf{A}^T$, which is known as the **transpose** of $\mathbf{A}$ and is obtained from $\mathbf{A}$ by interchanging the rows and columns of $\mathbf{A}$. Thus, if $\mathbf{A} = (a_{ij})$, then $\mathbf{A}^T = (a_{ji})$. Also, we will denote by $\overline{a_{ij}}$ the complex conjugate of a_{ij}, and by $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$ the matrix obtained from $\mathbf{A}$ by replacing each element a_{ij} by its conjugate $\overline{a_{ij}}$. The matrix $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$ is called the **conjugate** of $\mathbf{A}$. It will also be necessary to consider the transpose of the conjugate matrix $\overline{\mathbf{A}}^T$. This matrix is called the **adjoint** of $\mathbf{A}$ and will be denoted by $\mathbf{A}^*$.

For example, let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 - i \\ 4 + 3i & -5 + 2i \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then

$$\mathbf{A}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 + 3i \\ 2 - i & -5 + 2i \end{pmatrix}, \quad \overline{\mathbf{A}} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 + i \\ 4 - 3i & -5 - 2i \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{A}^* = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 - 3i \\ 2 + i & -5 - 2i \end{pmatrix}.$$

We are particularly interested in two somewhat special kinds of matrices: **square matrices**, which have the same number of rows and columns—that is, $m = n$; and **vectors** (or **column vectors**), which can be thought of as $n \times 1$ matrices, or matrices having only one column. Square matrices having n rows and n columns are said to be of order n. We denote (column) vectors by boldfaced lowercase letters: $\mathbf{x}$, $\mathbf{y}$, $\boldsymbol{\xi}$, $\boldsymbol{\eta}$, ... The transpose $\mathbf{x}^T$ of an $n \times 1$ column vector is a $1 \times n$ row vector—that is, the matrix consisting of one row whose elements are the same as the elements in the corresponding positions of $\mathbf{x}$.

Properties of Matrices.

1. **Equality.** Two $m \times n$ matrices $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are said to be equal if all corresponding elements are equal—that is, if $a_{ij} = b_{ij}$ for each i and j.

2. **Zero.** The symbol $\mathbf{0}$ will be used to denote the matrix (or vector) each of whose elements is zero.

3. **Addition.** The sum of two $m \times n$ matrices $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ is defined as the matrix obtained by adding corresponding elements:

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = (a_{ij}) + (b_{ij}) = (a_{ij} + b_{ij}). \tag{2}$$

With this definition, it follows that matrix addition is commutative and associative, so that

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{A} + (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{C}. \tag{3}$$

4. **Multiplication by a Number.** The product of a matrix $\mathbf{A}$ by a real or complex number α is defined as follows:

$$\alpha\mathbf{A} = \alpha(a_{ij}) = (\alpha a_{ij}); \tag{4}$$

that is, each element of $\mathbf{A}$ is multiplied by α. The distributive laws

$$\alpha(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) = \alpha\mathbf{A} + \alpha\mathbf{B}, \quad (\alpha + \beta)\mathbf{A} = \alpha\mathbf{A} + \beta\mathbf{A} \tag{5}$$

are satisfied for this type of multiplication. In particular, the negative of $\mathbf{A}$, denoted by $-\mathbf{A}$, is defined by

$$-\mathbf{A} = (-1)\mathbf{A}. \tag{6}$$

5. **Subtraction.** The difference $\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}$ of two $m \times n$ matrices is defined by

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A} + (-\mathbf{B}). \tag{7}$$

Thus

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = (a_{ij}) - (b_{ij}) = (a_{ij} - b_{ij}). \tag{8}$$

6. **Multiplication.** The product $\mathbf{AB}$ of two matrices is defined whenever the number of columns in the first factor is the same as the number of rows in the second. If $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are $m \times n$ and $n \times r$ matrices, respectively, then the product $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB}$ is an $m \times r$ matrix. The element in the i^{th} row and j^{th} column of $\mathbf{C}$ is found by multiplying each element of the i^{th} row of $\mathbf{A}$ by the corresponding element of the j^{th} column of $\mathbf{B}$ and then adding the resulting products. In symbols,

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik} b_{kj}. \tag{9}$$

By direct calculation, it can be shown that matrix multiplication satisfies the associative law

$$(\mathbf{AB})\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{BC}) \tag{10}$$

and the distributive law

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{AB} + \mathbf{AC}. \tag{11}$$

However, in general, *matrix multiplication is not commutative*. For both products $\mathbf{AB}$ and $\mathbf{BA}$ to exist and to be of the same size, it is necessary that $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ be square matrices of the same order. Even in that case the two products are usually unequal. In general,

$$\mathbf{AB} \neq \mathbf{BA}. \tag{12}$$

EXAMPLE 1

To illustrate the multiplication of matrices, and also the fact that matrix multiplication is not necessarily commutative, consider the matrices

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Solution:

From the definition of multiplication given in equation (9), we have

$$\mathbf{AB} = \begin{pmatrix} 2-2+2 & 1+2-1 & -1+0+1 \\ 0+2-2 & 0-2+1 & 0+0-1 \\ 4+1+2 & 2-1-1 & -2+0+1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \\ 7 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Similarly, we find that

$$\mathbf{BA} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 2 \\ 4 & -5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Clearly, $\mathbf{AB} \neq \mathbf{BA}$.

7. **Multiplication of Vectors.** There are several ways of forming a product of two vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$, each with n components. One is a direct extension to n dimensions of the familiar **dot product** from physics and calculus; we denote it by $\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y}$ and write

$$\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i y_i. \tag{13}$$

The result of equation (13) is a real or complex number, and it follows directly from equation (13) that

$$\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}^T\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}^T(\mathbf{y}+\mathbf{z}) = \mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{z}, \quad (\alpha\mathbf{x})^T\mathbf{y} = \alpha(\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{x}^T(\alpha\mathbf{y}). \tag{14}$$

There is another vector product that is also defined for any two vectors having the same number of components. This product, denoted by $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$, is called the **scalar** or **inner product** and is defined by

$$(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \overline{y}_i. \tag{15}$$

The scalar product is also a real or complex number, and by comparing equations (13) and (15), we see that they are related:

$$(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{x}^T\overline{\mathbf{y}}. \tag{16}$$

Thus, if all the elements of $\mathbf{y}$ are real, then the two products (13) and (15) are identical. From equation (15) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) &= \overline{(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x})}, \qquad (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}+\mathbf{z}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) + (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}), \\ (\alpha\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) &= \alpha(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}), \qquad (\mathbf{x}, \alpha\mathbf{y}) = \overline{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}). \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

Note that even if the vector $\mathbf{x}$ has elements with nonzero imaginary parts, the scalar product of $\mathbf{x}$ with itself yields a nonnegative real number

$$(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \overline{x}_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} |x_i|^2. \tag{18}$$

The nonnegative quantity $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x})^{1/2}$, often denoted by $\|\mathbf{x}\|$, is called the **length**, or **magnitude**, of $\mathbf{x}$. The only vector $\mathbf{x}$ with length zero, $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$, is the zero vector $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$; every other vector has positive length. If $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$, then the two vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ are said to be **orthogonal**. For example, the unit vectors $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$ of three-dimensional vector geometry form an orthogonal set. On the other hand, if some of the elements of $\mathbf{x}$ are not real, then the product

$$\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i^2 \tag{19}$$

may not be a real number. Moreover, $\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{x}$ can be zero for some nonzero vectors.

For example, let

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} i \\ -2 \\ 1+i \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} 2-i \\ i \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{z} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ i \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} &= (i)(2-i) + (-2)(i) + (1+i)(3) = 4 + 3i, \\
(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) &= (i)(2+i) + (-2)(-i) + (1+i)(3) = 2 + 7i, \\
\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{x} &= (i)^2 + (-2)^2 + (1+i)^2 = 3 + 2i, \\
(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) &= (i)(-i) + (-2)(-2) + (1+i)(1-i) = 7, \\
\mathbf{z}^T\mathbf{z} &= (1)(1) + (0)(0) + (i)(i) = 1 + 0 - 1 = 0, \\
(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}) &= (1)(1) + (0)(0) + (i)(-i) = 1 + 0 + 1 = 2.
\end{aligned}$$

8. **Identity.** The $n \times n$ multiplicative identity, or simply the $n \times n$ identity matrix $\mathbf{I}$, is given by

$$\mathbf{I} = \overbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix}}^{n \text{ columns}} \left.\vphantom{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}\right\} n \text{ rows}. \tag{20}$$

From the definition of matrix multiplication, we have

$$\mathbf{AI} = \mathbf{IA} = \mathbf{A} \tag{21}$$

for any (square) matrix $\mathbf{A}$. Hence the commutative law does hold for square matrices if one of the matrices is the identity.

9. **Inverse and Determinant.** The $n \times n$ square matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is said to be **nonsingular** or **invertible** if there is another matrix $\mathbf{B}$ such that $\mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{I}$ and $\mathbf{BA} = \mathbf{I}$, where $\mathbf{I}$ is the $n \times n$ identity matrix. If there is such a $\mathbf{B}$, it can be shown that there is only one. It is called the multiplicative inverse, or simply the **inverse**, of $\mathbf{A}$, and we write $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}$. Then

$$\mathbf{AA}^{-1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}. \tag{22}$$

Matrices that do not have an inverse are called **singular** or **noninvertible**.

There are various ways to compute $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ from $\mathbf{A}$, assuming that it exists. One way involves the use of determinants. Associated with each element a_{ij} of a given matrix is the **minor** M_{ij}, which is the determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting the i^{th} row and j^{th} column of the original matrix—that is, the row and column containing a_{ij}. Also associated with each element a_{ij} is the **cofactor** C_{ij} defined by the equation

$$C_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} M_{ij}. \tag{23}$$

The **determinant** of $\mathbf{A}$, written $\det \mathbf{A}$, can be found as the sum of the cofactors along any row or column of $\mathbf{A}$. For example, expanding along the first row yields the formula

$$\det \mathbf{A} = C_{11} + C_{12} + \cdots + C_{1n}.$$

When $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$, $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular and $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ exists. If we write $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}$, then it can be shown that the general element b_{ij} is given by

$$b_{ij} = \frac{C_{ji}}{\det \mathbf{A}}. \tag{24}$$

Although formula (24) is not an efficient way[4] to calculate $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$, it does suggest a condition that $\mathbf{A}$ must satisfy for it to have an inverse. In fact, the condition is both necessary and

[4]For large n the number of multiplications required to evaluate $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ by equation (24) is proportional to $n!$. If we use a more efficient method, such as the row reduction procedure described in this section, the number of multiplications is proportional only to n^3. Even for small values of n (such as $n = 4$), determinants are not an economical tool in calculating inverses, and row reduction methods are preferred.

sufficient: $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular if and only if $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$. Equivalently, $\mathbf{A}$ is singular if and only if $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$.

Another (and usually better) way to compute $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ is by means of elementary row operations. There are three such operations:

1. Interchange of two rows.
2. Multiplication of a row by a nonzero scalar.
3. Addition of any multiple of one row to another row.

The transformation of a matrix by a sequence of elementary row operations is referred to as **row reduction** or **Gaussian**[5] **elimination**. Any nonsingular matrix $\mathbf{A}$ can be transformed into the identity $\mathbf{I}$ by a systematic sequence of these operations. It is possible to show that if the same sequence of operations is then performed on $\mathbf{I}$, it is transformed into $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$. It is most efficient to perform the sequence of operations on both matrices at the same time by forming the augmented matrix $(\mathbf{A}\,|\,\mathbf{I})$. The following example illustrates the calculation of an inverse matrix in this way.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the inverse of

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Solution:

The first step in finding $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ is to form the augmented matrix $(\mathbf{A}\,|\,\mathbf{I})$:

$$(\mathbf{A}\,|\,\mathbf{I}) = \left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right).$$

The vertical line is a visual reminder that this 3×6 matrix is formed from two 3×3 matrices. The matrix $\mathbf{A}$ can be transformed into $\mathbf{I}$ by the following sequence of operations, and at the same time, $\mathbf{I}$ is transformed into $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$. The result of each step appears below the statement.

(a) Obtain zeros in the off-diagonal positions (shaded) in the first column by adding (-3) times the first row to the second row and adding (-2) times the first row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 5 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

(b) Obtain a 1 in the diagonal position (shaded) in the second column by multiplying the second row by $\frac{1}{2}$.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 5 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

[5]Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855) was born in Brunswick (Germany) and spent most of his life as professor of astronomy and director of the Observatory at the University of Göttingen. Gauss made major contributions to many areas of mathematics, including number theory, algebra, non-Euclidean and differential geometry, and analysis, as well as to more applied fields such as geodesy, statistics, and celestial mechanics. He is generally considered to be among the half-dozen best mathematicians of all time.

(c) Obtain zeros in the off-diagonal positions (shaded) in the second column by adding the second row to the first row and adding (-4) times the second row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -5 & 4 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

(d) Obtain a 1 in the diagonal position (shaded) in the third column by multiplying the third row by $-\frac{1}{5}$.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{4}{5} & \frac{2}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \end{array}\right)$$

(e) Obtain zeros in the off-diagonal positions (shaded) in the third column by adding $\left(-\frac{3}{2}\right)$ times the third row to the first row and adding $\left(-\frac{5}{2}\right)$ times the third row to the second row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{7}{10} & -\frac{1}{10} & \frac{3}{10} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{4}{5} & \frac{2}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \end{array}\right) = \left(\mathbf{I} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^{-1}\right).$$

Thus

$$\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{7}{10} & -\frac{1}{10} & \frac{3}{10} \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{4}{5} & \frac{2}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \end{pmatrix}.$$

That this matrix is, in fact, the inverse of **A** can be verified by direct multiplication with the original matrix **A**.

This example was made slightly simpler by the fact that the given matrix **A** had a 1 in the upper left corner $(a_{11} = 1)$. If this is not the case, then the first step is to produce a 1 there by multiplying the first row by $1/a_{11}$, as long as $a_{11} \neq 0$. If $a_{11} = 0$, then the first row must be interchanged with some other row to bring a nonzero element into the upper left position before proceeding. If this cannot be done, because every element in the first column is zero, then the matrix has no inverse and is singular. A similar situation may occur at later stages of the process as well, and the remedy is the same: interchange the given row with a lower row so as to bring a nonzero element to the desired diagonal location. If, at any stage, this cannot be done, then the original matrix is singular.

Matrix Functions. We sometimes need to consider vectors or matrices whose elements are functions of a real variable t. We write

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} x_1(t) \\ \vdots \\ x_n(t) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{A}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}(t) & \cdots & a_{1n}(t) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1}(t) & \cdots & a_{mn}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{25}$$

respectively.

The matrix $\mathbf{A}(t)$ is said to be continuous at $t = t_0$ or on an interval $\alpha < t < \beta$ if each element of **A** is a continuous function at the given point or on the given interval. Similarly, $\mathbf{A}(t)$ is said to be differentiable if each of its elements is differentiable, and its derivative $d\mathbf{A}/dt$ is defined by

$$\frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt} = \left(\frac{da_{ij}}{dt}\right); \tag{26}$$

that is, each element of $d\mathbf{A}/dt$ is the derivative of the corresponding element of $\mathbf{A}$. In the same way, the integral of a matrix function is defined as

$$\int_a^b \mathbf{A}(t)\,dt = \left(\int_a^b a_{ij}(t)\,dt\right). \tag{27}$$

For example, if

$$\mathbf{A}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \sin t & t \\ 1 & \cos t \end{pmatrix},$$

then

$$\mathbf{A}'(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & 1 \\ 0 & -\sin t \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \int_0^\pi \mathbf{A}(t)\,dt = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & \pi^2/2 \\ \pi & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Many of the rules of elementary calculus extend easily to matrix functions; in particular,

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{CA}) = \mathbf{C}\frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt}, \quad \text{where } \mathbf{C} \text{ is a constant matrix;} \tag{28}$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}) = \frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{B}}{dt}; \tag{29}$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{AB}) = \mathbf{A}\frac{d\mathbf{B}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt}\mathbf{B}. \tag{30}$$

In equations (28) and (30), care must be taken in each term to avoid interchanging the order of multiplication. The definitions expressed by equations (26) and (27) also apply as special cases to vectors.

We conclude this section with an important reminder: some operations on matrices are accomplished by applying the operation separately to each element of the matrix. Examples include multiplication by a number, differentiation, and integration. However, this is not true of many other operations. For instance, the square of a matrix is not calculated by squaring each of its elements.

Problems

1. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 & 3 \\ -1 & 5 & 0 \\ 6 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, find

- **a.** $2\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$
- **b.** $\mathbf{A} - 4\mathbf{B}$
- **c.** $\mathbf{AB}$
- **d.** $\mathbf{BA}$

2. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1+i & -1+2i \\ 3+2i & 2-i \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} i & 3 \\ 2 & -2i \end{pmatrix}$, find

- **a.** $\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{B}$
- **b.** $3\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$
- **c.** $\mathbf{AB}$
- **d.** $\mathbf{BA}$

3. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & -3 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -1 & -1 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, find

- **a.** $\mathbf{A}^T$
- **b.** $\mathbf{B}^T$
- **c.** $\mathbf{A}^T + \mathbf{B}^T$
- **d.** $(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B})^T$

4. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3-2i & 1+i \\ 2-i & -2+3i \end{pmatrix}$, find

- **a.** $\mathbf{A}^T$
- **b.** $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$
- **c.** $\mathbf{A}^*$

5. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, and

$\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$, verify that

a. $(\mathbf{AB})\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{BC})$
b. $(\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B})+\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A}+(\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{C})$
c. $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{AB}+\mathbf{AC}$
d. $\alpha(\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}) = \alpha\mathbf{A}+\alpha\mathbf{B}$

6. Prove each of the following laws of matrix algebra:
a. $\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}+\mathbf{A}$
b. $\mathbf{A}+(\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B})+\mathbf{C}$
c. $\alpha(\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}) = \alpha\mathbf{A}+\alpha\mathbf{B}$
d. $(\alpha+\beta)\mathbf{A} = \alpha\mathbf{A}+\beta\mathbf{A}$
e. $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{BC}) = (\mathbf{AB})\mathbf{C}$
f. $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{AB}+\mathbf{AC}$

7. If $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3i \\ 1-i \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} -1+i \\ 2 \\ 3-i \end{pmatrix}$, find

a. $\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y}$
b. $\mathbf{y}^T\mathbf{y}$
c. $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$
d. $(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y})$

In each of Problems 8 through 14, if the given matrix is nonsingular, find its inverse. If the matrix is singular, verify that its determinant is zero.

8. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

9. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 6 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

10. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$

11. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 1 & 8 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \end{pmatrix}$

12. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

13. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

14. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

15. If $\mathbf{A}$ is a square matrix, and if there are two matrices $\mathbf{B}$ and $\mathbf{C}$ such that $\mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{I}$ and $\mathbf{CA} = \mathbf{I}$, show that $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{C}$. Thus, if a matrix has an inverse, it can have only one.

16. If $\mathbf{A}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^t & 2e^{-t} & e^{2t} \\ 2e^t & e^{-t} & -e^{2t} \\ -e^t & 3e^{-t} & 2e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$ and

$\mathbf{B}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 2e^t & e^{-t} & 3e^{2t} \\ -e^t & 2e^{-t} & e^{2t} \\ 3e^t & -e^{-t} & -e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$, find

a. $\mathbf{A}+3\mathbf{B}$
b. $\mathbf{AB}$
c. $\dfrac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt}$
d. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \mathbf{A}(t)\,dt$

In each of Problems 17 and 18, verify that the given vector satisfies the given differential equation.

17. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^t,$

$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} (1+2t)e^t \\ 2te^t \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^t + 2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}te^t$

18. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x},$

$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 6e^{-t} \\ -8e^{-t}+2e^{2t} \\ -4e^{-t}-2e^{2t} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -8 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + 2\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t}$

In each of Problems 19 and 20, verify that the given matrix satisfies the given differential equation.

19. $\mathbf{\Psi}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{\Psi}, \quad \mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-3t} & e^{2t} \\ -4e^{-3t} & e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$

20. $\mathbf{\Psi}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{\Psi}, \quad \mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^t & e^{-2t} & e^{3t} \\ -4e^t & -e^{-2t} & 2e^{3t} \\ -e^t & -e^{-2t} & e^{3t} \end{pmatrix}$

7.3 Systems of Linear Algebraic Equations; Linear Independence, Eigenvalues, Eigenvectors

In this section we review some results from linear algebra that are particularly important for the solution of systems of linear differential equations. Some of these results are easily proved and others are not; since we are interested simply in summarizing some useful information in compact form, we give no indication of proofs in either case. All the results in this section depend on some basic facts about the solution of systems of linear algebraic equations.

Systems of Linear Algebraic Equations. A set of n simultaneous linear algebraic equations in n variables

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n &= b_1, \\ &\vdots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nn}x_n &= b_n \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

can be written in matrix form as

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}, \tag{2}$$

where the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and the n-dimensional vector $\mathbf{b}$ are given, and the components of the n-dimensional vector $\mathbf{x}$ are to be determined. If $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$, the system is said to be **homogeneous**; otherwise, it is **nonhomogeneous**.

If the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular—that is, if $\det \mathbf{A}$ is not zero—then there is a unique solution of the system (2) for any vector $\mathbf{b}$. Since $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular, $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ exists, and the solution can be found by multiplying each side of equation (2) on the left by $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$; thus

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{b}. \tag{3}$$

In particular, the homogeneous problem $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0}$, corresponding to $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$ in equation (2), has only the trivial solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$.

On the other hand, if $\mathbf{A}$ is singular—that is, if $\det \mathbf{A}$ is zero—then, depending on the specific right-hand side $\mathbf{b}$, solutions of equation (2) either do not exist, or do exist but are not unique. Since $\mathbf{A}$ is singular, $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ does not exist, so equation (3) is no longer valid.

When $\mathbf{A}$ is singular, the homogeneous system

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0} \tag{4}$$

has (infinitely many) nonzero solutions in addition to the trivial solution. The situation for the nonhomogeneous system (2) is more complicated. This system has no solution unless the vector $\mathbf{b}$ satisfies a certain further condition. This condition is that

$$(\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{y}) = 0, \tag{5}$$

for all vectors $\mathbf{y}$ satisfying $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$, where $\mathbf{A}^*$ is the adjoint of $\mathbf{A}$. If condition (5) is met, then the system (2) has (infinitely many) solutions. These solutions are of the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)} + \boldsymbol{\xi}, \tag{6}$$

where $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ is a particular solution of equation (2), and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is the most general solution of the homogeneous system (4). Note the resemblance between equation (6) and the solution of a nonhomogeneous linear differential equation. The proofs of some of the preceding statements are outlined in Problems 21 through 25.

The results in the preceding paragraph are important as a means of classifying the solutions of linear systems. However, for solving particular systems, it is generally best to use row reduction to transform the system into a much simpler one from which the solution(s), if there are any, can be written down easily. To do this efficiently, we can form the augmented matrix

$$(\mathbf{A} \mid \mathbf{b}) = \left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1n} & b_1 \\ \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \cdots & a_{nn} & b_n \end{array}\right) \tag{7}$$

by adjoining the vector **b** to the coefficient matrix **A** as an additional column. The vertical line replaces the equals sign and is said to partition the augmented matrix. We now perform row operations on the augmented matrix so as to transform **A** into an **upper triangular matrix**—that is, a matrix whose elements below the main diagonal are all zero. Once this is done, it is easy to see whether the system has solutions, and to find them if it does. Observe that elementary row operations on the augmented matrix (7) correspond to legitimate operations on the equations in the system (1). The following examples illustrate the process.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 7, \\ -x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 &= -5, \\ 2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 &= 4. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

Solution:

The augmented matrix for the system (8) is

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 & -5 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 & 4 \end{array}\right). \tag{9}$$

We now perform row operations on the matrix (9) with a view to introducing zeros in the lower left part of the matrix. Each step is described and the result recorded below.

(a) Add the first row to the second row, and add (-2) times the first row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & -7 & -10 \end{array}\right)$$

(b) Multiply the second row by -1.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 3 & -7 & -10 \end{array}\right)$$

(c) Add (-3) times the second row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & -4 & -4 \end{array}\right)$$

(d) Divide the third row by -4.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

The matrix obtained in this manner corresponds to the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 7, \\ x_2 - x_3 &= -2, \\ x_3 &= 1, \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

which is equivalent to the original system (8). Note that the coefficients in equations (10) form a triangular matrix. From the last of equations (10) we conclude that $x_3 = 1$, from the second equation $x_2 = -2 + x_3 = -1$, and from the first equation $x_1 = 7 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 = 2$. Thus we obtain

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

which is the solution of the given system (8). Incidentally, since the solution is unique, we conclude that the coefficient matrix is nonsingular.

EXAMPLE 2

Discuss solutions of the system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= b_1, \\ -x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 &= b_2, \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 &= b_3 \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

for various values of b_1, b_2, and b_3.

Solution:

Observe that the coefficients in the system (11) are the same as those in the system (8) except for the coefficient of x_3 in the third equation. The augmented matrix for the system (11) is

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|c} 1 & -2 & 3 & b_1 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 & b_2 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 & b_3 \end{array}\right). \tag{12}$$

By performing steps (a), (b), and (c) as in Example 1, we transform the augmented matrix (12) into

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|l} 1 & -2 & 3 & b_1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -b_1 - b_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & b_1 + 3b_2 + b_3 \end{array}\right). \tag{13}$$

The equation corresponding to the third row of the matrix (13) is

$$b_1 + 3b_2 + b_3 = 0; \tag{14}$$

thus the system (11) has no solution unless the condition (14) is satisfied by b_1, b_2, and b_3. It is possible to show that this condition is just equation (5) for the system (11).

Let us now assume that $b_1 = 2$, $b_2 = 1$, and $b_3 = -5$, in which case equation (14) is satisfied. Then the first two rows of the matrix (13) correspond to the equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 2, \\ x_2 - x_3 &= -3. \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

To solve the system (15), we can choose one of the unknowns arbitrarily and then solve for the other two. If we let $x_3 = \alpha$, where α is arbitrary, it then follows that

$$x_2 = x_3 - 3 = \alpha - 3,$$

$$x_1 = 2x_2 - 3x_3 + 2 = 2(\alpha - 3) - 3\alpha + 2 = -\alpha - 4.$$

If we write the solution in vector notation, we have

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -\alpha - 4 \\ \alpha - 3 \\ \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \alpha \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{16}$$

It is easy to verify that the second term on the right-hand side of equation (16) is a solution of the nonhomogeneous system (11) and that the first term is the most general solution of the homogeneous system corresponding to (11).

Row reduction is also useful in solving homogeneous systems and systems in which the number of equations is different from the number of unknowns.

Linear Dependence and Independence. A collection of k vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ is said to be **linearly dependent** if there exists a set of real or complex numbers $c_1, \dots, c_k$, at least one of which is nonzero, such that

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{x}^{(k)} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{17}$$

In other words, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ are linearly dependent if there is a linear relation among them. On the other hand, if the only values of the coefficients $c_1, \dots, c_k$ for which equation (17) is satisfied are $c_1 = c_2 = \cdots = c_k = 0$, then $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ are said to be **linearly independent**.

Consider now a collection of n vectors, each of which has n components. Form the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{X}$ by putting the vector $\mathbf{x}^{(j)}$ into column j of $\mathbf{X}$. Thus $\mathbf{X} = (x_{ij})$, where $x_{ij} = x_i^{(j)}$, the i^{th} component of the vector $\mathbf{x}^{(j)}$. Also let $\mathbf{c} = (c_j)$. Then equation (17) can be written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1^{(1)}c_1 & + \cdots + & x_1^{(n)}c_n \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ x_n^{(1)}c_1 & + \cdots + & x_n^{(n)}c_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_{11}c_1 & + \cdots + & x_{1n}c_n \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ x_{n1}c_1 & + \cdots + & x_{nn}c_n \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{0},$$

or, equivalently,

$$\mathbf{Xc} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{18}$$

If $\det \mathbf{X} \neq 0$, then the only solution of equation (18) is $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$, but if $\det \mathbf{X} = 0$, there are nonzero solutions. Thus the set of vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ is linearly independent if and only if $\det \mathbf{X} \neq 0$.

For instance, the vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, and $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ are linearly independent; see Example 1. Similarly, from Example 2, we know the vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, and $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ are linearly dependent.

EXAMPLE 3

Determine whether the vectors

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 1 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix} \tag{19}$$

are linearly independent or linearly dependent. If they are linearly dependent, find a linear relation among them.

Solution:

To determine whether $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ are linearly dependent, we seek constants c_1, c_2, and c_3 such that

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} + c_3\mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{20}$$

Equation (20) can also be written in the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & -11 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ c_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{21}$$

and solved by means of elementary row operations starting from the augmented matrix

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & -11 & 0 \end{array}\right). \tag{22}$$

We proceed as in Examples 1 and 2.

(a) Add (-2) times the first row to the second row, and add the first row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 & 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -15 & 0 \end{array}\right)$$

(b) Divide the second row by -3; then add (-5) times the second row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right)$$

Thus we obtain the equivalent system

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 + 2c_2 - 4c_3 &= 0, \\ c_2 - 3c_3 &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{23}$$

At this point we know there will be a nontrivial solution to equation (20) and so $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ are linearly dependent.

To find a linear relation among $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$, note that the second of equations (23) can be rewritten as $c_2 = 3c_3$, and then from the first we obtain $c_1 = 4c_3 - 2c_2 = -2c_3$. Thus we have solved for c_1 and c_2 in terms of c_3, with the latter remaining arbitrary. If we choose $c_3 = -1$ for convenience, then $c_1 = 2$ and $c_2 = -3$. In this case the linear relation (20) becomes

$$2\mathbf{x}^{(1)} - 3\mathbf{x}^{(2)} - \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \mathbf{0},$$

and the given vectors are linearly dependent.

Alternatively, if the 3×3 coefficient matrix in equation (21) is called $\mathbf{X}$, we can compute $\det \mathbf{X}$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \det \mathbf{X} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & -11 \end{vmatrix} &= (1)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 3 & -11 \end{vmatrix} - (2)\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & -11 \end{vmatrix} + (-4)\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= -14 - 2(-21) - 4(7) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Hence $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ are linearly dependent. However, if the coefficients c_1, c_2, and c_3 in the linear relation among these three vectors are required, we still need to solve equation (20) to find them.

Frequently, it is useful to think of the columns (or rows) of a matrix $\mathbf{A}$ as vectors. These column (or row) vectors are linearly independent if and only if $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$. Further, if $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB}$, then it can be shown that $\det \mathbf{C} = (\det \mathbf{A})(\det \mathbf{B})$. Therefore, if the columns (or rows) of both $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are linearly independent, then the columns (or rows) of $\mathbf{C}$ are also linearly independent.

Now let us extend the concepts of linear dependence and independence to a collection of vector functions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ defined on an interval $\alpha < t < \beta$. The vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are said to be linearly dependent on $\alpha < t < \beta$ if there exists a set of constants $c_1, \ldots, c_k$, not all of which are zero, such that

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t) = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{for all } t \text{ in the interval.}$$

Otherwise, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are said to be linearly independent. Note that if $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are linearly dependent on an interval, they are linearly dependent at each point in the interval. However, if $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are linearly independent on an interval, they may or may not be linearly independent at each point; they may, in fact, be linearly dependent at each point, but with different sets of constants at different points. See Problem 13 for an example.

Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors. The equation

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{y} \tag{24}$$

can be viewed as a linear transformation that maps (or transforms) a given vector $\mathbf{x}$ into a new vector $\mathbf{y}$. Vectors that are transformed into multiples of themselves are important in many applications, including finding solutions to systems of first-order linear differential equations with constant coefficients.[6]

To find such vectors, we set $\mathbf{y} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$, where λ is a scalar proportionality factor, and seek solutions of the equation

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \lambda\mathbf{x}, \tag{25}$$

or

$$(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{26}$$

The latter equation has nonzero solutions if and only if λ is chosen so that

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) = 0. \tag{27}$$

Equation (27) is a polynomial equation of degree n in λ and is called the **characteristic equation** of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$. Values of λ that satisfy equation (27) may be either real- or complex-valued and are called **eigenvalues** of $\mathbf{A}$. The nonzero solutions $\mathbf{x}$ of equation (25) or (26) that are obtained by using such a value of λ are called the **eigenvectors** corresponding to that eigenvalue.

The following example illustrates how eigenvalues and eigenvectors are found.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

Solution:

The eigenvalues λ and eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}$ satisfy the equation $(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3-\lambda & -1 \\ 4 & -2-\lambda \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{29}$$

The eigenvalues are the roots of the characteristic equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) = \begin{vmatrix} 3-\lambda & -1 \\ 4 & -2-\lambda \end{vmatrix} = \lambda^2 - \lambda - 2 = (\lambda - 2)(\lambda + 1) = 0. \tag{30}$$

Thus the eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = 2$ and $\lambda_2 = -1$.

[6]For example, this problem is encountered in finding the principal axes of stress or strain in an elastic body, and in finding the modes of free vibration in a conservative system with a finite number of degrees of freedom.

To find the eigenvectors, we return to equation (29) and replace λ by each of the eigenvalues in turn. For $\lambda = 2$ we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 4 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{31}$$

Hence each row of this vector equation leads to the condition $x_1 - x_2 = 0$, so x_1 and x_2 are equal but their value is not determined. If $x_1 = c$, then $x_2 = c$ also, and the eigenvector $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = c \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad c \neq 0. \tag{32}$$

Thus, for the eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = 2$ there is an infinite family of eigenvectors, indexed by the arbitrary constant c. We will choose a single member of this family as a representative of the rest; in this example it seems simplest to let $c = 1$. Then, instead of equation (32) we write

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{33}$$

and remember that any nonzero multiple of this vector is also an eigenvector. We say that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ is the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = 2$.

Now, setting $\lambda = -1$ in equation (29), we obtain

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{34}$$

Again, we obtain a single condition on x_1 and x_2, namely, $4x_1 - x_2 = 0$. Thus the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda_2 = -1$ is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{35}$$

or any nonzero multiple of this vector.

As Example 4 illustrates, eigenvectors are determined only up to an arbitrary nonzero multiplicative constant; if this constant is specified in some way, then the eigenvectors are said to be **normalized**. In Example 4, we chose the constant c so that the components of the eigenvectors would be small integers. However, any other nonzero choice of c is equally valid, although perhaps less convenient. Sometimes it is useful to normalize an eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$ by choosing the constant so that its length $\|\mathbf{x}\| = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x})^{1/2} = 1$.

Since the characteristic equation (27) for an $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is a polynomial equation of degree n in λ, each $n \times n$ matrix has n eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n$, some of which may be repeated. If a given eigenvalue appears m times as a root of equation (27), then that eigenvalue is said to have **algebraic multiplicity** m. Each eigenvalue has at least one associated eigenvector, but can have other linearly independent eigenvectors. If an eigenvalue has q linearly independent eigenvectors. we say the eigenvalue has **geometric multiplicity** q. It is possible to show that

$$1 \leq q \leq m. \tag{36}$$

That is, the geometric multiplicity never exceeds the algebraic multiplicity. Examples demonstrate that q may be any integer in this interval. If each eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$ is **simple** (has algebraic multiplicity 1), then each eigenvalue also has geometric multiplicity 1.

It is possible to show that if λ_1 and λ_2 are two eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ and if $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then their corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent (Problem 29). This result extends to any collection of distinct eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k$: their eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ are linearly independent. Thus, if each eigenvalue of an $n \times n$ matrix is simple, then the n eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$, one for each eigenvalue, are linearly independent. On the other hand, if $\mathbf{A}$ has one or more repeated eigenvalues, then there may be fewer than n linearly independent eigenvectors associated with $\mathbf{A}$, since for a repeated eigenvalue we may have $q < m$. As we will see in Section 7.8, this fact may lead to complications later on in the solution of systems of differential equations.

EXAMPLE 5

Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{37}$$

Solution:

The eigenvalues λ and eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}$ satisfy the equation $(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -\lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{38}$$

The eigenvalues are the roots of the equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) = \begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} = -\lambda^3 + 3\lambda + 2 = 0. \tag{39}$$

The roots of equation (39) are $\lambda_1 = 2$, $\lambda_2 = -1$, and $\lambda_3 = -1$. Thus 2 is a simple eigenvalue, and -1 is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 2, or a double eigenvalue.

To find the eigenvector $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue λ_1, we substitute $\lambda = 2$ in equation (38); this gives the system

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{40}$$

We can use elementary row operations to reduce this to the equivalent system

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{41}$$

Solving this system yields the eigenvector

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{42}$$

For $\lambda = -1$, equations (38) reduce immediately to the single equation

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 0. \tag{43}$$

Thus values for two of the quantities x_1, x_2, x_3 can be chosen arbitrarily, and the third is determined from equation (43). For example, if $x_1 = c_1$ and $x_2 = c_2$, then $x_3 = -c_1 - c_2$. In vector notation we have

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ -c_1 - c_2 \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{44}$$

For example, by choosing $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = 0$, we obtain the eigenvector

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{45}$$

Any nonzero multiple of $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ is also an eigenvector, but a second linearly independent eigenvector can be found by making another choice of c_1 and c_2—for instance, $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 1$. In this case we obtain

$$\mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{46}$$

which is linearly independent of $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$. Therefore, in this example, two linearly independent eigenvectors are associated with the double eigenvalue.

An important special class of matrices, called **self-adjoint** or **Hermitian** matrices, are those for which $\mathbf{A}^* = \mathbf{A}$; that is, $\overline{a}_{ji} = a_{ij}$. Hermitian matrices include as a subclass real symmetric matrices—that is, matrices that have real elements and for which $\mathbf{A}^T = \mathbf{A}$. The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of Hermitian matrices always have the following useful properties:

1. All eigenvalues are real.
2. There always exists a full set of n linearly independent eigenvectors, regardless of the algebraic multiplicities of the eigenvalues.
3. If $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are eigenvectors that correspond to different eigenvalues, then $(\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}) = 0$. Thus, if all eigenvalues are simple, then the associated eigenvectors form an orthogonal set of vectors.
4. Corresponding to an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity m, it is possible to choose m eigenvectors that are mutually orthogonal. Thus the full set of n eigenvectors can always be chosen to be orthogonal as well as linearly independent.

The proofs of statements 1 and 3 above are outlined in Problems 27 and 28. Example 5 involves a real symmetric matrix and illustrates properties 1, 2, and 3, but the choice we have made for $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ does not illustrate property 4. However, it is always possible to choose an $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ so that $\left(\mathbf{x}^{(2)}, \mathbf{x}^{(3)}\right) = 0$. For instance, in Example 5 we could have chosen $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ as before and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ by using $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = -2$ in equation (46). In this way we obtain

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

as the eigenvectors associated with the eigenvalue $\lambda = -1$. These eigenvectors are orthogonal to each other as well as to the eigenvector $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ that corresponds to the eigenvalue $\lambda = 2$.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 5, either solve the given system of equations, or else show that there is no solution.

1.
$$\begin{aligned} x_1 \qquad - x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ -x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

2.
$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

3.
$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 2 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

4.
$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

5.
$$\begin{aligned} x_1 \qquad - x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

In each of Problems 6 through 9, determine whether the members of the given set of vectors are linearly independent. If they are linearly dependent, find a linear relation among them. In Problems 6 to 9, 11, and 12, vectors are written as row vectors to save space but may be considered as column vectors; that is, the transposes of the given vectors may be used instead of the vectors themselves.

6. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (1, 1, 0), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (0, 1, 1), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (1, 0, 1)$

7. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (2, 1, 0), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (0, 1, 0), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (-1, 2, 0)$

8. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (1, 2, -1, 0), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (2, 3, 1, -1),$
$\mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (-1, 0, 2, 2), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(4)} = (3, -1, 1, 3)$

9. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (1, 2, -2), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (3, 1, 0),$
$\mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (2, -1, 1), \quad \mathbf{x}^{(4)} = (4, 3, -2)$

10. Suppose that each of the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}$ has n components, where $n < m$. Show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}$ are linearly dependent.

In each of Problems 11 and 12, determine whether the members of the given set of vectors are linearly independent for $-\infty < t < \infty$. If they are linearly dependent, find the linear relation among them.

11. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = (e^{-t}, 2e^{-t}),\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = (e^{-t}, e^{-t}),$
$\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = (3e^{-t}, 0)$

12. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = (2\sin t, \sin t),\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = (\sin t, 2\sin t)$

13. Let

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^t \\ te^t \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ t \end{pmatrix}.$$

Show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ are linearly dependent at each point in the interval $0 \le t \le 1$. Nevertheless, show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ are linearly independent on $0 \le t \le 1$.

In each of Problems 14 through 20, find all eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the given matrix.

14. $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

15. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

16. $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

17. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \sqrt{3} \\ \sqrt{3} & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

18. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & -2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

19. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -2 & -4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

20. $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{11}{9} & -\frac{2}{9} & \frac{8}{9} \\ -\frac{2}{9} & \frac{2}{9} & \frac{10}{9} \\ \frac{8}{9} & \frac{10}{9} & \frac{5}{9} \end{pmatrix}$

Problems 21 through 25 deal with the problem of solving $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ when $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$.

21. a. Suppose that $\mathbf{A}$ is a real-valued $n \times n$ matrix. Show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{y}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{y})$ for any vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$. *Hint:* You may find it simpler to consider first the case $n = 2$; then extend the result to an arbitrary value of n.

b. If $\mathbf{A}$ is not necessarily real, show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{y}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y})$ for any vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$.

c. If $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian, show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{y}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{Ay})$ for any vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$.

22. Suppose that, for a given matrix $\mathbf{A}$, there is a nonzero vector $\mathbf{x}$ such that $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0}$. Show that there is also a nonzero vector $\mathbf{y}$ such that $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$.

23. Suppose that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$ and that $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ has solutions. Show that $(\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$, where $\mathbf{y}$ is any solution of $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$. Verify that this statement is true for the set of equations in Example 2. *Hint:* Use the result of Problem 21b.

24. Suppose that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$ and that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ is a solution of $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$. Show that if $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is a solution of $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}$ and α is any constant, then $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)} + \alpha\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is also a solution of $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$.

25. Suppose that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$ and that $\mathbf{y}$ is a solution of $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$. Show that if $(\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$ for every such $\mathbf{y}$, then $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ has solutions. Note that this is the converse of Problem 23; the form of the solution is given by Problem 24. *Hint:* What does the relation $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ say about the rows of $\mathbf{A}$? It may be helpful to consider the case $n = 2$ first.

26. Prove that $\lambda = 0$ is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$ if and only if $\mathbf{A}$ is singular.

27. In this problem we show that the eigenvalues of a Hermitian matrix $\mathbf{A}$ are real. Let $\mathbf{x}$ be an eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue λ.

a. Show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{Ax})$. *Hint:* See Problem 21c.

b. Show that $\lambda(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) = \overline{\lambda}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x})$. *Hint:* Recall that $\mathbf{Ax} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$.

c. Show that $\lambda = \overline{\lambda}$; that is, the eigenvalue λ is real.

28. Show that if λ_1 and λ_2 are eigenvalues of a Hermitian matrix $\mathbf{A}$, and if $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then the corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are orthogonal. *Hint:* Use the results of Problems 21c and 27 to show that $(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)(\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}) = 0$.

29. Show that if λ_1 and λ_2 are eigenvalues of any matrix $\mathbf{A}$, and if $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then the corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent. *Hint:* Start from $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$; multiply by $\mathbf{A}$ to obtain $c_1\lambda_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\lambda_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$. Then show that $c_1 = c_2 = 0$.

7.4 Basic Theory of Systems of First-Order Linear Equations

The general theory of a system of n first-order linear equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= p_{11}(t)x_1 + \cdots + p_{1n}(t)x_n + g_1(t), \\ &\vdots \\ x_n' &= p_{n1}(t)x_1 + \cdots + p_{nn}(t)x_n + g_n(t) \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

closely parallels that of a single linear equation of nth order. The discussion in this section therefore follows the same general lines as that in Sections 3.2 and 4.1. To discuss the system (1) most effectively, we write it in matrix notation. That is, we consider $x_1 = x_1(t), \ldots, x_n = x_n(t)$ to be components of a vector $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$; similarly,

$g_1(t), \ldots, g_n(t)$ are components of a vector $\mathbf{g}(t)$, and $p_{11}(t), \ldots, p_{nn}(t)$ are elements of an $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{P}(t)$. Equation (1) then takes the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{2}$$

The use of vectors and matrices not only saves a great deal of space and facilitates calculations but also emphasizes the similarity between systems of differential equations and single (scalar) differential equations.

A vector $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$ is said to be a solution of equation (2) if its components satisfy the system of equations (1). Throughout this section we assume that $\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{g}$ are continuous on some interval $\alpha < t < \beta$; that is, each of the scalar functions $p_{11}, \ldots, p_{nn}, g_1, \ldots, g_n$ is continuous there. According to Theorem 7.1.2, this is sufficient to guarantee the existence of solutions of equation (2) on the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$.

It is convenient to consider first the homogeneous equation

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} \tag{3}$$

obtained from equation (2) by setting $\mathbf{g}(t) = \mathbf{0}$. Just as we have seen for a single linear differential equation (of any order), once the homogeneous equation has been solved, there are several methods that can be used to solve the nonhomogeneous equation (2); this is taken up in Section 7.9.

We use the notation

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} x_{11}(t) \\ x_{21}(t) \\ \vdots \\ x_{n1}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} x_{1k}(t) \\ x_{2k}(t) \\ \vdots \\ x_{nk}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \ldots \tag{4}$$

to designate specific solutions of the system (3). Note that $x_{ij}(t) = x_i^{(j)}(t)$ refers to the i^{th} component of the j^{th} solution $\mathbf{x}^{(j)}(t)$. The main facts about the structure of solutions of the system (3) are stated in Theorems 7.4.1 to 7.4.5. They closely resemble the corresponding theorems in Sections 3.2 and 4.1; some of the proofs are left to you as exercises.

Theorem 7.4.1 | Principle of Superposition

If the vector functions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are solutions of the system (3), then the linear combination $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ is also a solution for any constants c_1 and c_2.

The **principle of superposition** is proved simply by differentiating $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ and using the facts that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ satisfy equation (3). As an example, it can be verified that

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} \\ 2e^{3t} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t} \\ -2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} \tag{5}$$

satisfy the equation

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{6}$$

Then, according to Theorem 7.4.1,

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} = \begin{pmatrix} c_1e^{3t} + c_2e^{-t} \\ 2c_1e^{3t} - 2c_2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix} \tag{7}$$

also satisfies equation (6).

By repeated application of Theorem 7.4.1, we can conclude that if $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ are solutions of equation (3), then

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t) \tag{8}$$

is also a solution for any constants $c_1, \dots, c_k$. Thus every finite linear combination of solutions of equation (3) is also a solution. The question that now arises is whether all solutions of equation (3) can be found in this way. By analogy with previous cases, it is reasonable to expect that for the system (3) of n first-order differential equations it is sufficient to form linear combinations of n properly chosen solutions. Therefore, let $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ be n solutions of the system (3), and consider the matrix $\mathbf{X}(t)$ whose columns are the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$:

$$\mathbf{X}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} x_{11}(t) & \cdots & x_{1n}(t) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ x_{n1}(t) & \cdots & x_{nn}(t) \end{pmatrix}. \tag{9}$$

Recall from Section 7.3 that the columns of $\mathbf{X}(t)$ are linearly independent for a given value of t if and only if $\det \mathbf{X} \neq 0$ for that value of t. This determinant is called the Wronskian of the n solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ and is also denoted by $W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right]$; that is,

$$W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right](t) = \det \mathbf{X}(t). \tag{10}$$

The solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ are then linearly independent at a point if and only if $W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right]$ is not zero there.

Theorem 7.4.2

If the vector functions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ are linearly independent solutions of the system (3) for each point in the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$, then each solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$ of the system (3) can be expressed as a linear combination of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) \tag{11}$$

in exactly one way.

Before proving Theorem 7.4.2, note that according to Theorem 7.4.1, all expressions of the form (11) are solutions of the system (3), while by Theorem 7.4.2 all solutions of equation (3) can be written in the form (11). If the constants $c_1, \dots, c_n$ are thought of as arbitrary, then equation (11) includes all solutions of the system (3), and it is customary to call it the **general solution.** Any set of solutions $\{\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\}$ of equation (3) that is linearly independent at each point in the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$ is said to be a **fundamental set of solutions** for that interval.

To prove Theorem 7.4.2, we will show that any solution $\mathbf{x}(t)$ of equation (3) can be written as $\mathbf{x}(t) = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ for suitable values of $c_1, \dots, c_n$. Let $t = t_0$ be some point in the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$ and let $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}(t_0)$. We now wish to determine whether there is any solution of the form $\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ that also satisfies the same initial condition $\mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{y}$. That is, we wish to know whether there are values of $c_1, \dots, c_n$ such that

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t_0) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t_0) = \mathbf{y}, \tag{12}$$

or, in scalar form,

$$\begin{aligned} c_1x_{11}(t_0) + \cdots + c_nx_{1n}(t_0) &= y_1, \\ &\ \vdots \\ c_1x_{n1}(t_0) + \cdots + c_nx_{nn}(t_0) &= y_n. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

The necessary and sufficient condition that equations (13) possess a unique solution $c_1, \dots, c_n$ is precisely the nonvanishing of the determinant of coefficients, which is the Wronskian $W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right]$ evaluated at $t = t_0$. The hypothesis that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ are linearly independent throughout $\alpha < t < \beta$ guarantees that $W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right]$ is not zero at $t = t_0$, and therefore there is a (unique) solution of equation (3) of the form

$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ that also satisfies the initial condition (12). By the uniqueness part of Theorem 7.1.2, this solution is $\mathbf{x}(t)$, and hence $\mathbf{x}(t) = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$, as was to be proved.

Theorem 7.4.3 | Abel's Theorem

If $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ are solutions of equation (3) on the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$, then in this interval $W[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}]$ either is identically zero or else never vanishes.

The significance of Theorem 7.4.3 lies in the fact that it relieves us of the necessity of examining $W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right]$ at all points in the interval of interest and enables us to determine whether $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions merely by evaluating their Wronskian at any convenient point in the interval.

Theorem 7.4.3 is proved by first establishing that the Wronskian of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ satisfies the differential equation (see Problem 8)

$$\frac{dW}{dt} = \big(p_{11}(t) + p_{22}(t) + \cdots + p_{nn}(t)\big)W. \tag{14}$$

Hence

$$W(t) = c\exp\left(\int [p_{11}(t) + \cdots + p_{nn}(t)]dt\right), \tag{15}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant, and the conclusion of the theorem follows immediately. The expression for $W(t)$ in equation (15) is known as **Abel's formula**; note the similarity of this result to Theorem 3.2.7 and especially to equation (23) of Section 3.2.

Alternatively, Theorem 7.4.3 can be established by showing that if n solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ of equation (3) are linearly dependent at one point $t = t_0$, then they must be linearly dependent at each point in $\alpha < t < \beta$ (see Problem 14). Consequently, if $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ are linearly independent at one point, they must be linearly independent at each point in the interval.

The next theorem states that the system (3) always has at least one fundamental set of solutions.

Theorem 7.4.4

Let

$$\mathbf{e}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{e}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \ldots, \mathbf{e}^{(n)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix};$$

further, let $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ be the solutions of the system (3) that satisfy the initial conditions

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t_0) = \mathbf{e}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t_0) = \mathbf{e}^{(n)}, \tag{16}$$

respectively, where t_0 is any point in $\alpha < t < \beta$. Then $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the system (3).

To prove this theorem, note that the existence and uniqueness of the solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ mentioned in Theorem 7.4.4 are ensured by Theorem 7.1.2. It is not hard to see that the Wronskian of these solutions is equal to 1 when $t = t_0$; therefore, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ are a fundamental set of solutions.

Once one fundamental set of solutions has been found, other sets can be generated by forming (independent) linear combinations of the first set. For theoretical purposes, the set given by Theorem 7.4.4 is usually the simplest.

Finally, it may happen (just as for second-order linear equations) that a system whose coefficients are all real-valued may give rise to solutions that are complex-valued. In this case, the following theorem is analogous to Theorem 3.2.6 and enables us to obtain real-valued solutions instead.

Theorem 7.4.5

Consider the system (3)

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x},$$

where each element of $\mathbf{P}$ is a real-valued continuous function. If $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u}(t) + i\mathbf{v}(t)$ is a complex-valued solution of equation (3), then its real part $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and its imaginary part $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are also solutions of this equation.

To prove this result, we substitute $\mathbf{u}(t) + i\mathbf{v}(t)$ for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (3), thereby obtaining

$$\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u}'(t) - \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{u}(t) + i(\mathbf{v}'(t) - \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{v}(t)) = \mathbf{0}. \tag{17}$$

We have used the assumption that $\mathbf{P}(t)$ is real-valued to separate equation (17) into its real and imaginary parts. Since a complex number is zero if and only if its real and imaginary parts are both zero, we conclude that $\mathbf{u}'(t) - \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{u}(t) = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{v}'(t) - \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{v}(t) = \mathbf{0}$. Therefore, $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are solutions of equation (3).

To summarize the results of this section:

1. Any set of n linearly independent solutions of the system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x}$ constitutes a fundamental set of solutions.
2. Under the conditions given in this section, such fundamental sets always exist.
3. Every solution of the system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x}$ can be represented as a linear combination of any fundamental set of solutions.

Problems

In Problems 1 through 6 you are given a homogeneous system of first-order linear differential equations and two vector-valued functions, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$.

a. Show that the given functions are solutions of the given system of differential equations.

b. Show that $\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ is also a solution of the given system for any values of c_1 and c_2.

c. Show that the given functions form a fundamental set of solutions of the given system.

d. Find the solution of the given system that satisfies the initial condition $\mathbf{x}(0) = (1, 2)^T$.

e. Find $W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}\right](t)$.

f. Show that the Wronskian, $W = W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}\right]$, found in e is a solution of Abel's equation: $W' = (p_{11}(t) + p_{22}(t))W$.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$; $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$; $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}e^{-3t}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$; $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 5\cos t \\ 2\cos t + \sin t \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 5\sin t \\ 2\sin t - \cos t \end{pmatrix}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 8 & -4 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$; $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}t + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

5. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$ $(t > 0)$; $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}t$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}t^{-1}$

6. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$ $(t > 0)$; $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}t^{-1}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}t^{2}$

7. Prove the generalization of Theorem 7.4.1, as expressed in the sentence that includes equation (8), for an arbitrary value of the integer k.

8. In this problem we outline a proof of Theorem 7.4.3 in the case $n = 2$. Let $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ be solutions of equation (3) for $\alpha < t < \beta$, and let W be the Wronskian of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$.

a. Show that

$$\frac{dW}{dt} = \begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{dx_1^{(1)}}{dt} & \dfrac{dx_1^{(2)}}{dt} \\ x_2^{(1)} & x_2^{(2)} \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} x_1^{(1)} & x_1^{(2)} \\ \dfrac{dx_2^{(1)}}{dt} & \dfrac{dx_2^{(2)}}{dt} \end{vmatrix}.$$

b. Using equation (3), show that

$$\frac{dW}{dt} = (p_{11} + p_{22})W.$$

c. Find $W(t)$ by solving the differential equation obtained in part b. Use this expression to obtain the conclusion stated in Theorem 7.4.3.

d. Prove Theorem 7.4.3 for an arbitrary value of n by generalizing the procedure of parts a, b, and c.

9. Show that the Wronskians of two fundamental sets of solutions of the system (3) can differ at most by a multiplicative constant. *Hint:* Use equation (15).

10. If $x_1 = y$ and $x_2 = y'$, then the second-order equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0 \tag{18}$$

corresponds to the system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= x_2, \\ x_2' &= -q(t)x_1 - p(t)x_2. \end{aligned} \tag{19}$$

Show that if $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are a fundamental set of solutions of equations (19), and if $y^{(1)}$ and $y^{(2)}$ are a fundamental set of solutions of equation (18), then $W[y^{(1)}, y^{(2)}] = cW[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}]$, where c is a nonzero constant. *Hint:* $y^{(1)}(t)$ and $y^{(2)}(t)$ must be linear combinations of $x_{11}(t)$ and $x_{12}(t)$.

11. Show that the general solution of $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t)$ is the sum of any particular solution $\mathbf{x}^{(p)}$ of this equation and the general solution $\mathbf{x}^{(c)}$ of the corresponding homogeneous equation.

12. Consider the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t^2 \\ 2t \end{pmatrix}$.

a. Compute the Wronskian of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$.

b. In what intervals are $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ linearly independent?

c. What conclusion can be drawn about the coefficients in the system of homogeneous differential equations satisfied by $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$?

d. Find this system of equations and verify the conclusions of part c.

13. Consider the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t^2 \\ 2t \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^t \\ e^t \end{pmatrix}$, and answer the same questions as in Problem 12.

Problems 14 and 15 indicate an alternative derivation of Theorem 7.4.2.

14. Let $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}$ be solutions of $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x}$ on the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$. Assume that $\mathbf{P}$ is continuous, and let t_0 be an arbitrary point in the given interval. Show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}$ are linearly dependent for $\alpha < t < \beta$ if (and only if) $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t_0), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}(t_0)$ are linearly dependent. In other words, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}$ are linearly dependent on the interval (α, β) if they are linearly dependent at any point in it. *Hint:* There are constants $c_1, \ldots, c_m$ that satisfy

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t_0) + \cdots + c_m\mathbf{x}^{(m)}(t_0) = \mathbf{0}.$$

Let $\mathbf{z}(t) = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_m\mathbf{x}^{(m)}(t)$, and use the uniqueness theorem to show that $\mathbf{z}(t) = \mathbf{0}$ for each t in $\alpha < t < \beta$.

15. Let $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ be linearly independent solutions of $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x}$, where $\mathbf{P}$ is continuous on $\alpha < t < \beta$.

a. Show that any solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{z}(t)$ can be written in the form

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$$

for suitable constants $c_1, \ldots, c_n$. *Hint:* Use the result of Problem 10 of Section 7.3, and also Problem 14 above.

b. Show that the expression for the solution $\mathbf{z}(t)$ in part a is unique; that is, if $\mathbf{z}(t) = k_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + k_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$, then $k_1 = c_1, \ldots, k_n = c_n$.

Hint: Show that $(k_1 - c_1)\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + (k_n - c_n)\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) = \mathbf{0}$ for each t in $\alpha < t < \beta$, and use the linear independence of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$.

7.5 Homogeneous Linear Systems with Constant Coefficients

We will concentrate most of our attention on systems of homogeneous linear equations with constant coefficients—that is, systems of the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{1}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant $n \times n$ matrix. Unless stated otherwise, we will assume further that all the elements of $\mathbf{A}$ are real (rather than complex) numbers.

If $n = 1$, then the system reduces to a single first-order equation

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = ax, \tag{2}$$

whose solution is $x(t) = ce^{at}$. Note that $x = 0$ is the only critical point when $a \neq 0$. If $a < 0$, then all nontrivial solutions approach $x(t) = 0$ as t increases, and in this case we say that $x(t) = 0$ is an asymptotically stable equilibrium solution. On the other hand, if $a > 0$, then every solution (except the equilibrium solution $x(t) = 0$ itself) moves further from the equilibrium solution as t increases. Thus, in this case, $x(t) = 0$ is unstable.

For systems of n equations, the situation is similar but more complicated. Equilibrium solutions are found by solving $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. We usually assume that $\det\mathbf{A} \neq 0$, so $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is the only equilibrium solution. An important question is whether other solutions approach this equilibrium solution or depart from it as t increases; in other words, is $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ asymptotically stable or unstable? Or are there still other possibilities?

The case $n = 2$ is particularly important and lends itself to visualization in the x_1x_2-plane, called the **phase plane**. By evaluating $\mathbf{Ax}$ at a large number of points and plotting the resulting vectors, we obtain a direction field of tangent vectors to solutions of the system of differential equations. A qualitative understanding of the behavior of solutions can usually be gained from a direction field. More precise information results from including in the plot some solution curves, or trajectories. A plot that shows a representative sample of trajectories for a given system is called a **phase portrait**. A well-constructed phase portrait provides easily understood information about all solutions of a two-dimensional system in a single graphical display. Although creating quantitatively accurate phase portraits generally requires computer assistance, it is usually possible to sketch qualitatively accurate phase portraits by hand, as we demonstrate in Examples 2 and 3 below.

Our first task, however, is to show how to find solutions of systems such as equation (1). We start with a particularly simple example.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{3}$$

Solution:

The most important feature of this system is that the off-diagonal entries of the coefficient matrix are zero; that is, it is a **diagonal matrix**. Thus, by writing the system in scalar form, we obtain

$$x_1' = 2x_1, \quad x_2' = -3x_2.$$

Each of these equations involves only one of the unknown variables, so we can solve the two equations separately. In this way we find that

$$x_1 = c_1 e^{2t}, \quad x_2 = c_2 e^{-3t},$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. Then, by writing the solution in vector form, we have

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 e^{2t} \\ c_2 e^{-3t} \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{-3t} \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-3t}. \tag{4}$$

Now we define the two solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ so that

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-3t}. \tag{5}$$

The Wronskian of these solutions is

$$W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}\right](t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{2t} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-3t} \end{vmatrix} = e^{-t}, \tag{6}$$

which is never zero. Therefore, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution of equation (3) is given by equation (4).

In Example 1 we found two independent solutions of the given system (3) in the form of an exponential function multiplied by a vector. This was perhaps to be expected since we have found other linear equations with constant coefficients to have exponential solutions, and the unknown $\mathbf{x}$ in the system (3) is a vector. So let us try to extend this idea to the general system (1) by seeking solutions of the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}, \tag{7}$$

where the exponent r and the vector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ are to be determined. Substituting from equation (7) for $\mathbf{x}$ in the system (1) gives

$$r\boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt} = \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}.$$

Upon canceling the nonzero scalar factor e^{rt}, we obtain $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi} = r\boldsymbol{\xi}$, or

$$(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}, \tag{8}$$

where $\mathbf{I}$ is the $n \times n$ identity matrix. Thus, to solve the system of differential equations (1), we must solve the system of algebraic equations (8). This latter problem is precisely the one that determines the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$. Therefore, the vector $\mathbf{x}$ given by equation (7) is a solution of equation (1), provided that r is an eigenvalue and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ an associated eigenvector of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

The following two examples are typical of 2×2 systems with eigenvalues that are real and different. In each example we will solve the system and construct a corresponding phase portrait. We will see that solutions have very distinct geometrical patterns, depending on whether the eigenvalues have the same sign or different signs. Later in the section we return to a further discussion of the general $n \times n$ system.

EXAMPLE 2

Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{9}$$

Plot a direction field and determine the qualitative behavior of solutions. Then find the general solution and draw a phase portrait showing several trajectories.

Solution:

The direction field shown in Figure 7.5.1 consists of 441 arrows drawn on the 21×21 grid of the square $-2.5 \le x_1 \le 2.5$, $-2.5 \le x_2 \le 2.5$. (The step size in both x_1 and x_2 is 0.25.) At each gridpoint (x_1, x_2), the arrow is drawn in the *direction*

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

For example, at $(1, 0)$ the direction vector is $(1, 4)^T$ and at $(-1, -1)$ it is $(-2, -5)^T$. (These two direction vectors appear in green.) All direction vectors are drawn with the same length, which is short enough to keep nearby arrows from crossing.

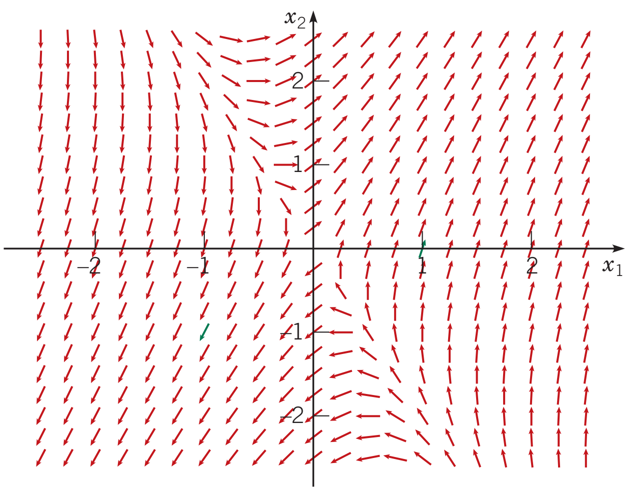


FIGURE 7.5.1 Direction field for the system (9).

Solution trajectories follow the arrows in the direction field. In particular, observe that a typical solution in the second quadrant eventually moves into the first or third quadrant, and likewise for a typical solution in the fourth quadrant. On the other hand, no solution leaves either the first or the third quadrant. Further, it appears that a typical solution departs from the neighborhood of the origin and ultimately has a slope of approximately 2.

To find solutions explicitly, we assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$ and substitute for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (9). We are led to the system of algebraic equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1-r & 1 \\ 4 & 1-r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{10}$$

Equations (10) have a nontrivial solution if and only if the determinant of coefficients is zero. Thus allowable values of r are found from the equation

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1-r & 1 \\ 4 & 1-r \end{vmatrix} = (1-r)^2 - 4 = r^2 - 2r - 3 = (r-3)(r+1) = 0. \tag{11}$$

Equation (11) has the roots $r_1 = 3$ and $r_2 = -1$; these are the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix in equation (9).

When $r = 3$, the two equations in system (10) reduce to the single equation

$$-2\xi_1 + \xi_2 = 0. \tag{12}$$

Thus $\xi_2 = 2\xi_1$, and the eigenvector corresponding to $r_1 = 3$ can be taken as

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{13}$$

Similarly, corresponding to $r_2 = -1$, we find that $\xi_2 = -2\xi_1$, so the eigenvector is

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{14}$$

The corresponding solutions of the differential equation are

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}. \tag{15}$$

The Wronskian of these solutions is

$$W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}\right](t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{3t} & e^{-t} \\ 2e^{3t} & -2e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = -4e^{2t}, \tag{16}$$

which is never zero. Hence the solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ form a fundamental set, and the general solution of the system (9) is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= c_1 \mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + c_2 \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) \\ &= c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants.

To visualize the solution (17), it is helpful to consider its graph in the x_1x_2-plane for various values of the constants c_1 and c_2. We start with $\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ or, in scalar form,

$$x_1 = c_1 e^{3t}, \quad x_2 = 2c_1 e^{3t}.$$

By eliminating t between these two equations, we see that this solution lies on the straight line $x_2 = 2x_1$; see Figure 7.5.2*a*. This is the line through the origin in the direction of the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. If we look at the solution as the trajectory of a moving particle, then the particle is in the first quadrant when $c_1 > 0$ and in the third quadrant when $c_1 < 0$. In either case the particle departs from the origin as t increases.

Next consider $\mathbf{x} = c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$, or

$$x_1 = c_2 e^{-t}, \quad x_2 = -2c_2 e^{-t}.$$

This solution lies on the line $x_2 = -2x_1$, whose direction is determined by the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$. The solution is in the fourth quadrant when $c_2 > 0$ and in the second quadrant when $c_2 < 0$, as shown in Figure 7.5.2*a*. In both cases the particle moves toward the origin as t increases.

The general solution (17) is a linear combination of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$. For large t, the term $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ is dominant and the term $c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ becomes negligible. Thus all solutions for which $c_1 \neq 0$ are asymptotic to the line $x_2 = 2x_1$ as $t \to \infty$. Similarly, all solutions for which $c_2 \neq 0$ are asymptotic to the line $x_2 = -2x_1$ as $t \to -\infty$. Figure 7.5.2(a) is a phase portrait for the system (9). The fundamental solutions of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are the solid and dashed black curves, respectively; several other trajectories are also displayed. The pattern of trajectories in this figure is typical of all 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ for which the eigenvalues are real and of opposite signs. The origin is called a **saddle point** in this case. Saddle points are always unstable because almost all trajectories depart from them as t increases.

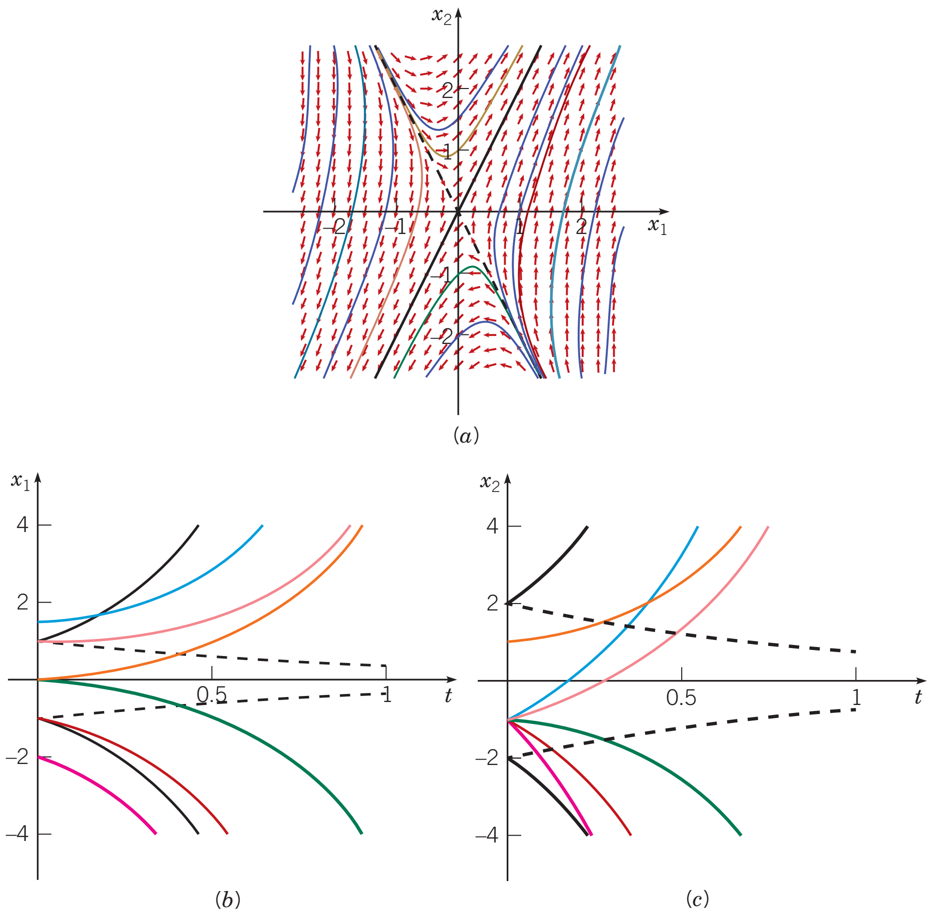


FIGURE 7.5.2 (*a*) A phase portrait for the system (9); the origin is a saddle point. (*b*) Typical plots of x_1 versus t for the system (9). (*c*) Typical plots of x_2 versus t for the system (9). The component plots in (b) and (c) are color-coded with their trajectory in (a). The solid black and dashed black curves show the fundamental solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, respectively. The purple curves are for the solution that passes through $(-2, -1)$, red through $(-1, -1)$, green $(0, -1)$, orange $(1, -1)$, blue $(3/2, -1)$, and gold $(0, 1)$.

In the preceding paragraph, we have described how to draw by hand a qualitatively correct sketch of the trajectories of a system such as equation (9), once the eigenvalues and eigenvectors have been determined. However, to produce a detailed and accurate drawing, such as Figure 7.5.2(*a*) and other figures that appear later in this chapter, a computer is extremely helpful, if not indispensable.

As an alternative to Figure 7.5.2(*a*), you can also plot x_1 or x_2 as a function of t; some typical plots of x_1 versus t are shown in Figure 7.5.2(*b*), and those of x_2 versus t are shown in Figure 7.5.2c. For certain initial conditions it follows that $c_1 = 0$ in equation (17) so that $x_1 = c_2e^{-t}$ and $x_1 \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$. One such graph is shown in Figure 7.5.2(*b*), corresponding to a trajectory that approaches the origin in Figure 7.5.2(*a*). For most initial conditions, however, $c_1 \neq 0$ and x_1 is given by $x_1 = c_1e^{3t} + c_2e^{-t}$. Then the presence of the positive exponential term causes x_1 to grow exponentially in magnitude as t increases. Several graphs of this type are shown in Figure 7.5.2(*b*), corresponding to trajectories that depart from the neighborhood of the origin in Figure 7.5.2(*a*). It is important to understand the relation between the direction field in (a) and the component plots in (b) and (c) of Figure 7.5.2 and other similar figures that appear later, since you may want to visualize solutions either in the x_1x_2-plane or as functions of the independent variable t.

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & \sqrt{2} \\ \sqrt{2} & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{18}$$

Draw a direction field for this system and find its general solution. Then plot a phase portrait showing several typical trajectories in the phase plane.

Solution:

The direction field for the system (18) in Figure 7.5.3 shows clearly that all solutions approach the origin.

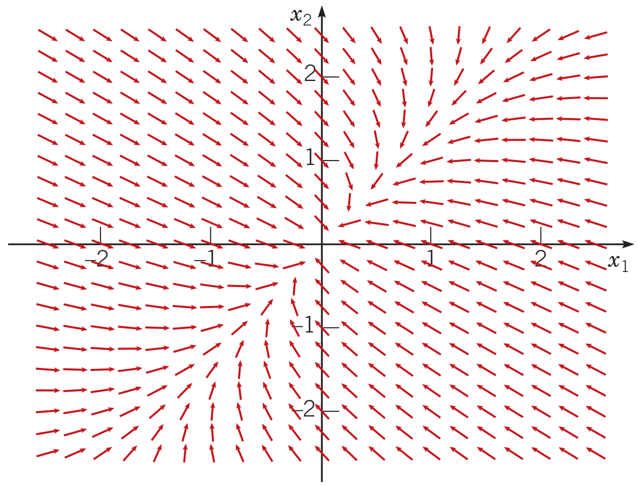


FIGURE 7.5.3 Direction field for the system (18).

To find the solutions, we assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$; then we obtain the algebraic system

$$\begin{pmatrix} -3 - r & \sqrt{2} \\ \sqrt{2} & -2 - r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{19}$$

The eigenvalues satisfy

$$(-3 - r)(-2 - r) - 2 = r^2 + 5r + 4 = (r + 1)(r + 4) = 0, \tag{20}$$

so $r_1 = -1$ and $r_2 = -4$. For $r = -1$, equation (19) becomes

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2 & \sqrt{2} \\ \sqrt{2} & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{21}$$

Hence $\xi_2 = \sqrt{2}\,\xi_1$, and the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $r_1 = -1$ can be taken as

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{22}$$

Similarly, corresponding to the eigenvalue $r_2 = -4$, we have $\xi_1 = -\sqrt{2}\,\xi_2$, so the eigenvector is

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{23}$$

Thus a fundamental set of solutions of the system (18) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-4t}, \tag{24}$$

and the general solution is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = c_1\begin{pmatrix}1\\ \sqrt{2}\end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix}-\sqrt{2}\\ 1\end{pmatrix}e^{-4t}. \tag{25}$$

A phase portrait for the system (18) shown in Figure 7.5.4(a). The trajectory corresponding to the solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ is the solid black curve; it approaches the origin along the line $x_2 = \sqrt{2}\,x_1$. The dashed black curve is the trajectory for the solution $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$; it approaches the origin along the line $x_1 = -\sqrt{2}\,x_2$. The slopes of these lines are determined by the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$, respectively. In general, we have a combination of these two fundamental solutions. As $t \to \infty$, because e^{-4t} is much smaller than e^{-t}, the solution $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ is negligible compared to $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$. Thus, unless $c_1 = 0$, the solution (25) approaches the origin tangent to the line $x_2 = \sqrt{2}x_1$. The pattern of trajectories shown in Figure 7.5.4(a) is typical of all 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ for which the eigenvalues are real, different, and of the same sign. The origin is called a **node** for such a system. If the eigenvalues were positive rather than negative, then the trajectories would be similar but traversed in the outward direction. Nodes are asymptotically stable if the eigenvalues are negative and unstable if the eigenvalues are positive.

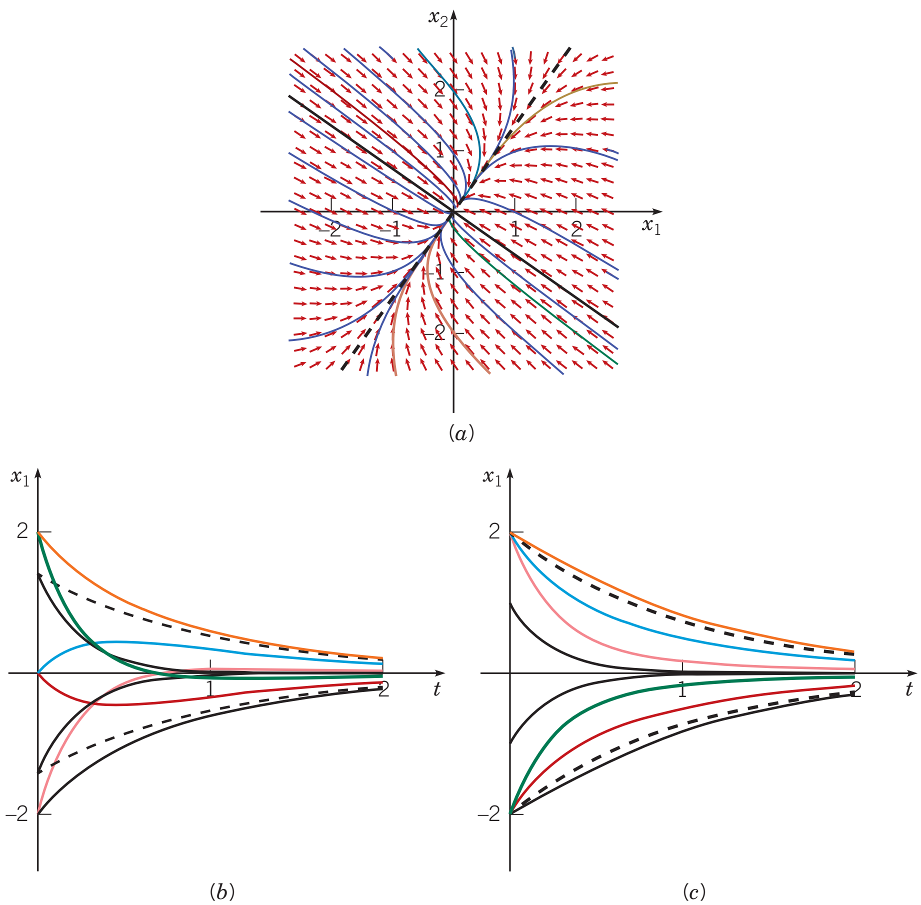


FIGURE 7.5.4 (a) A phase portrait for the system (18); the origin is an asymptotically stable node. (b) Typical plots of x_1 versus t for the system (18). (c) Typical plots of x_2 versus t for the system (18). The component plots in (b) and (c) are color-coded to their trajectories in (a). The solid black and dashed black curves show the fundamental solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, respectively. The purple curves are for the solution that passes through $(-2, -2)$, red through $(0, -2)$, green $(2, -2)$, orange $(-2, 2)$, blue $(0, 2)$, and gold $(2, 2)$.

Although Figure 7.5.4(a) was computer-generated, a qualitatively correct sketch of the trajectories can be drawn quickly by hand on the basis of a knowledge of the eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

Some typical plots of x_1 versus t are shown in Figure 7.5.4(b); the corresponding x_2 versus t plots appear in Figure 7.5.4(c). Observe that each of the coordinate graphs in Figures 7.5.4(b) and 7.5.4(c) approaches the t-axis asymptotically as t increases, corresponding to a trajectory that approaches the origin in Figure 7.5.2(a).

Examples 2 and 3 illustrate the two main cases for 2×2 systems having eigenvalues that are real and different. The eigenvalues have either opposite signs (Example 2) or the same sign (Example 3). The other possibility is that zero is an eigenvalue, but in this case it follows that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$, which violates the assumption made at the beginning of this section. However, see Problems 5 and 6.

Returning to the general $n \times n$ system (1), we proceed as in the examples. To find solutions of the differential equation (1), we must find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ from the associated algebraic system (8). The eigenvalues $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ (which need not all be different) are roots of the n^{th} degree polynomial equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0. \tag{26}$$

The nature of the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenvectors determines the nature of the general solution of the system (1). If we assume that $\mathbf{A}$ is a real-valued matrix, then we must consider the following possibilities for the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$:

1. All eigenvalues are real and different from each other.
2. Some eigenvalues occur in complex conjugate pairs.
3. Some eigenvalues, either real or complex, are repeated.

If the n eigenvalues are all real and different, as in the three preceding examples, then each eigenvalue has algebraic and geometric multiplicity one. Thus, associated with each eigenvalue r_i is a real eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}$, and the n eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ are linearly independent. The corresponding solutions of the differential system (1) are

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{r_1 t}, \ \ldots, \ \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)} e^{r_n t}. \tag{27}$$

To show that these solutions form a fundamental set, we evaluate their Wronskian:

$$W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right](t) = \begin{vmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \cdots & \xi_1^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \cdots & \xi_n^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \end{vmatrix} = e^{(r_1 + \cdots + r_n)t} \begin{vmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_1^{(n)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_n^{(n)} \end{vmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

First, we observe that the exponential function is never zero. Next, since the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ are linearly independent, the determinant in the last term of equation (28) is nonzero. As a consequence, the Wronskian $W\left[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}\right](t)$ is never zero; hence $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions. Thus the general solution of equation (1) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1 \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} + \cdots + c_n \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)} e^{r_n t}. \tag{29}$$

If $\mathbf{A}$ is real and symmetric (a special case of Hermitian matrices), recall from Section 7.3 that all the eigenvalues $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ must be real. Further, even if some of the eigenvalues are repeated, there is always a full set of n eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ that are linearly independent (in fact, orthogonal). Hence the corresponding solutions of the differential system (1) given by equation (27) again form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution is again given by equation (29). The following example illustrates this case.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the general solution of

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{30}$$

Solution:

Observe that the coefficient matrix is real and symmetric. The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of this matrix were found in Example 5 of Section 7.3:

$$r_1 = 2, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}; \tag{31}$$

$$r_2 = -1, \quad r_3 = -1; \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{32}$$

Hence a fundamental set of solutions of equation (30) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \tag{33}$$

and the general solution is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + c_3 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}. \tag{34}$$

This example illustrates the fact that even though an eigenvalue ($r = -1$) has algebraic multiplicity 2, it may still be possible to find two linearly independent eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}$ and, as a consequence, to construct the general solution (34).

The behavior of the solution (34) depends critically on the initial conditions. For large t, the first term on the right-hand side of equation (34), because of its positive exponential, is the dominant one; therefore, if $c_1 \neq 0$, all components of $\mathbf{x}$ become unbounded as $t \to \infty$. On the other hand, for certain initial points c_1 will be zero. In these cases, the solution involves only the negative exponential terms, and $\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{0}$ as $t \to \infty$. The initial points that cause c_1 to be zero are precisely those that lie in the plane determined by the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}$ corresponding to the two negative eigenvalues. Thus solutions that start in this plane approach the origin as $t \to \infty$, while all other solutions become unbounded.

If some of the eigenvalues occur in complex conjugate pairs, then there are still n linearly independent solutions of the form (27), provided that all the eigenvalues are different. Of course, the solutions arising from complex eigenvalues are complex-valued. However, as in Section 3.3, it is possible to obtain a full set of real-valued solutions. This is discussed in Section 7.6.

More serious difficulties can occur if an eigenvalue is repeated. In this event the number of corresponding linearly independent eigenvectors may be smaller than the algebraic multiplicity of the eigenvalue. If so, the number of linearly independent solutions of the form $\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$ will be smaller than n. To construct a fundamental set of solutions, it is then necessary to seek additional solutions of another form. The situation is somewhat analogous to that for an n^{th} order linear equation with constant coefficients; a repeated root of the characteristic equation gave rise to solutions of the form $e^{rt}, te^{rt}, t^2e^{rt}, \ldots$. The case of repeated eigenvalues is treated in Section 7.8.

Finally, if $\mathbf{A}$ is complex, then complex eigenvalues need not occur in conjugate pairs, and the eigenvectors are normally complex-valued even though the associated eigenvalue may be real-valued. The solutions of the differential equation (1) are still of the form (27), provided that there are n linearly independent eigenvectors, but in general all the solutions are complex-valued.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4:

G **a.** Draw a direction field.

b. Find the general solution of the given system of equations and describe the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

G **c.** Plot a few trajectories of the system.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 3 & -4 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{5}{4} & \frac{3}{4} \\ \frac{3}{4} & \frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 5 and 6 the coefficient matrix has a zero eigenvalue. As a result, the pattern of trajectories is different from those in the examples in the text. For each system:

G **a.** Draw a direction field.

b. Find the general solution of the given system of equations.

G **c.** Draw a few of the trajectories.

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ 8 & -6 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 7 through 9, find the general solution of the given system of equations.

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

9. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 10 through 12, solve the given initial value problem. Describe the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

10. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

11. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ -5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

12. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 5 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

13. The system $t\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ is analogous to the second-order Euler equation (Section 5.4). Assuming that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} t^r$, where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is a constant vector, show that $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and r must satisfy $(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}$ in order to obtain nontrivial solutions of the given differential equation.

Referring to Problem 13, solve the given system of equations in each of Problems 14 through 16. Assume that $t > 0$.

14. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

15. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

16. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ 8 & -6 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 17 through 19, the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a matrix $\mathbf{A}$ are given. Consider the corresponding system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$.

G **a.** Sketch a phase portrait of the system.

G **b.** Sketch the trajectory passing through the initial point $(2, 3)$.

G **c.** For the trajectory in part b, sketch the graphs of x_1 versus t and of x_2 versus t.

17. $r_1 = -1, \ \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = -2, \ \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

18. $r_1 = 1, \ \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = -2, \ \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

19. $r_1 = 1, \ \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = 2, \ \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

20. Consider a 2×2 system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$. If we assume that $r_1 \neq r_2$, the general solution is $\mathbf{x} = c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1 t} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{r_2 t}$, provided that $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent. In this problem we establish the linear independence of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ by assuming that they are linearly dependent and then showing that this leads to a contradiction.

a. Explain how we know that $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ satisfies the matrix equation $(\mathbf{A} - r_1\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{0}$; similarly, explain why $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$.

b. Show that $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = (r_1 - r_2)\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$.

c. Suppose that $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are linearly dependent. Then $c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$ and at least one of c_1 and c_2 (say, c_1) is not zero. Show that $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})(c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}) = \mathbf{0}$, and also show that $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})(c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}) = c_1(r_1 - r_2)\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. Hence $c_1 = 0$, which is a contradiction. Therefore, $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent.

d. Modify the argument of part c if we assume that $c_2 \neq 0$.

e. Carry out a similar argument for the case $\mathbf{A}$ is 3×3; note that the procedure can be extended to an arbitrary value of n.

21. Consider the equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \tag{35}$$

where a, b, and c are constants with $a \neq 0$. In Chapter 3 it was shown that the general solution depended on the roots of the characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{36}$$

a. Transform equation (35) into a system of first-order equations by letting $x_1 = y$, $x_2 = y'$. Find the system of equations $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ satisfied by $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix}$.

b. Find the equation that determines the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ in part a. Note that this equation is just the characteristic equation (36) of equation (35).

22. The two-tank system of Problem 19 in Section 7.1 leads to the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{10} & \frac{3}{40} \\ \frac{1}{10} & -\frac{1}{5} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} -17 \\ -21 \end{pmatrix},$$

where x_1 and x_2 are the deviations of the salt levels Q_1 and Q_2 from their respective equilibria.

a. Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

G **b.** Plot x_1 versus t and x_2 versus t on the same set of axes.

N **c.** Find the smallest time T such that $|x_1(t)| \leq 0.5$ and $|x_2(t)| \leq 0.5$ for all $t \geq T$.

23. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ -\alpha & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}.$$

a. Solve the system for $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$. What are the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix? Classify the equilibrium point at the origin as to type.

b. Solve the system for $\alpha = 2$. What are the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix? Classify the equilibrium point at the origin as to type.

c. In parts a and b, solutions of the system exhibit two quite different types of behavior. Find the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix in terms of α, and determine the value of α between $\frac{1}{2}$ and 2 where the transition from one type of behavior to the other occurs. This value of α is called a **bifurcation value** for this problem.

Electric Circuits. Problems 24 and 25 are concerned with the electric circuit described by the system of differential equations in Problem 18 of Section 7.1:

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{R_1}{L} & -\frac{1}{L} \\ \frac{1}{C} & -\frac{1}{CR_2} \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}, \; I(0) = I_0, \; V(0) = V_0. \tag{37}$$

24. **a.** Find the general solution of equation (37) if $R_1 = 1\ \Omega$, $R_2 = \frac{3}{5}\ \Omega$, $L = 2$ H, and $C = \frac{2}{3}$ F.

b. Show that $I(t) \to 0$ and $V(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$, regardless of the initial values I_0 and V_0.

25. Consider the preceding system of differential equations (37).

a. Find a condition on R_1, R_2, C, and L that must be satisfied if the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix are to be real and different.

b. If the condition found in part a is satisfied, show that both eigenvalues are negative. Then show that both $I(t) \to 0$ and $V(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$, regardless of the initial conditions.

c. If the condition found in part a is not satisfied, then the eigenvalues are either complex or repeated. Do you think that $I(t) \to 0$ and $V(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$ in these cases as well? *Hint:* In part c, one approach is to change the system (37) into a single second-order equation. We also discuss complex and repeated eigenvalues in Sections 7.6 and 7.8.

7.6 Complex-Valued Eigenvalues

In this section we consider again a system of n linear homogeneous equations with constant coefficients

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{1}$$

where the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is real-valued. If we seek solutions of the form $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$, then it follows, as in Section 7.5, that r must be an eigenvalue and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ a corresponding eigenvector of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$. Recall that the eigenvalues $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ of $\mathbf{A}$ are the roots of the characteristic equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0 \tag{2}$$

and that the corresponding eigenvectors are nonzero vectors that satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{3}$$

If $\mathbf{A}$ is real-valued, then the coefficients in the polynomial equation (2) for r are real-valued, and any complex-valued eigenvalues must occur in conjugate pairs. For example, if $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$, where λ and μ are real, is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$, then so is $r_2 = \lambda - i\mu$. To explore the effect of complex-valued eigenvalues, we begin with an example.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a fundamental set of real-valued solutions of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{4}$$

Plot a phase portrait and graphs of components of typical solutions.

Solution:

A direction field for the system (4) is shown in Figure 7.6.1. This plot suggests that the trajectories in the phase plane spiral clockwise toward the origin.

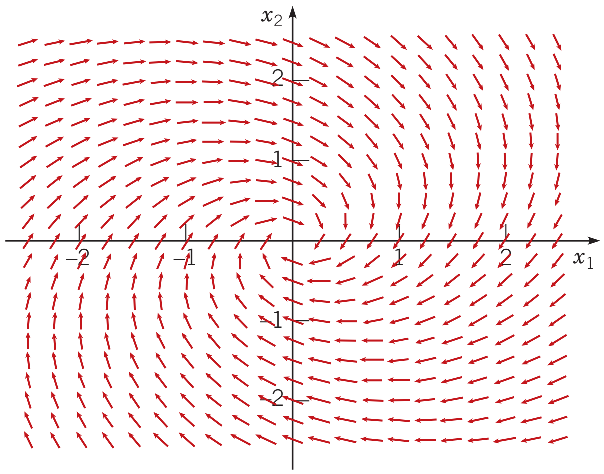


FIGURE 7.6.1 A direction field for the system (4).

To find a fundamental set of solutions, we assume that

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt} \tag{5}$$

and obtain the set of linear algebraic equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} - r & 1 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{2} - r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6}$$

for the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$. The characteristic equation is

$$\begin{vmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} - r & 1 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{2} - r \end{vmatrix} = r^2 + r + \frac{5}{4} = 0; \tag{7}$$

therefore, the eigenvalues are $r_1 = -\frac{1}{2} + i$ and $r_2 = -\frac{1}{2} - i$. From equation (6), a straightforward calculation shows that the corresponding eigenvectors are

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8}$$

Observe that the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are also complex conjugates. Hence a fundamental set of solutions of the system (4) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{pmatrix} e^{(-1/2+i)t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{pmatrix} e^{(-1/2-i)t}. \tag{9}$$

To obtain a set of real-valued solutions, we can (by Theorem 7.4.5) choose the real and imaginary parts of either $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ or $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$. In fact,

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}(\cos t + i \sin t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}\cos t \\ -e^{-t/2}\sin t \end{pmatrix} + i \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}\sin t \\ e^{-t/2}\cos t \end{pmatrix}. \tag{10}$$

Hence a pair of real-valued solutions of equation (4) is

$$\mathbf{u}(t) = e^{-t/2}\begin{pmatrix} \cos t \\ -\sin t \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}(t) = e^{-t/2}\begin{pmatrix} \sin t \\ \cos t \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11}$$

To verify that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are linearly independent, we compute their Wronskian:

$$W[\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}](t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{-t/2}\cos t & e^{-t/2}\sin t \\ -e^{-t/2}\sin t & e^{-t/2}\cos t \end{vmatrix} = e^{-t}(\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t) = e^{-t}.$$

The Wronskian $W[\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}](t)$ is never zero, so it follows that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ constitute a fundamental set of (real-valued) solutions of the system (4).

The graphs of the solutions $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are shown as the solid and dashed black curves in Figure 7.6.2(*a*), a phase portrait for the system (4). Since

$$\mathbf{u}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

the graphs of $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ pass through the points $(1, 0)$ and $(0, 1)$, respectively. Other solutions of the system (4) are linear combinations of $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$, and graphs of a few of these solutions are also shown in Figure 7.6.2(*a*). Each trajectory approaches the origin along a spiral path as $t \to \infty$, making infinitely many circuits about the origin; this is due to the fact that the solutions (11) are products of decaying exponential and sine or cosine factors. Some typical graphs of x_1 versus t are shown in Figure 7.6.2(*b*); each one represents a decaying oscillation in time. The corresponding graphs of x_2 versus t are shown in Figure 7.6.2(*c*).

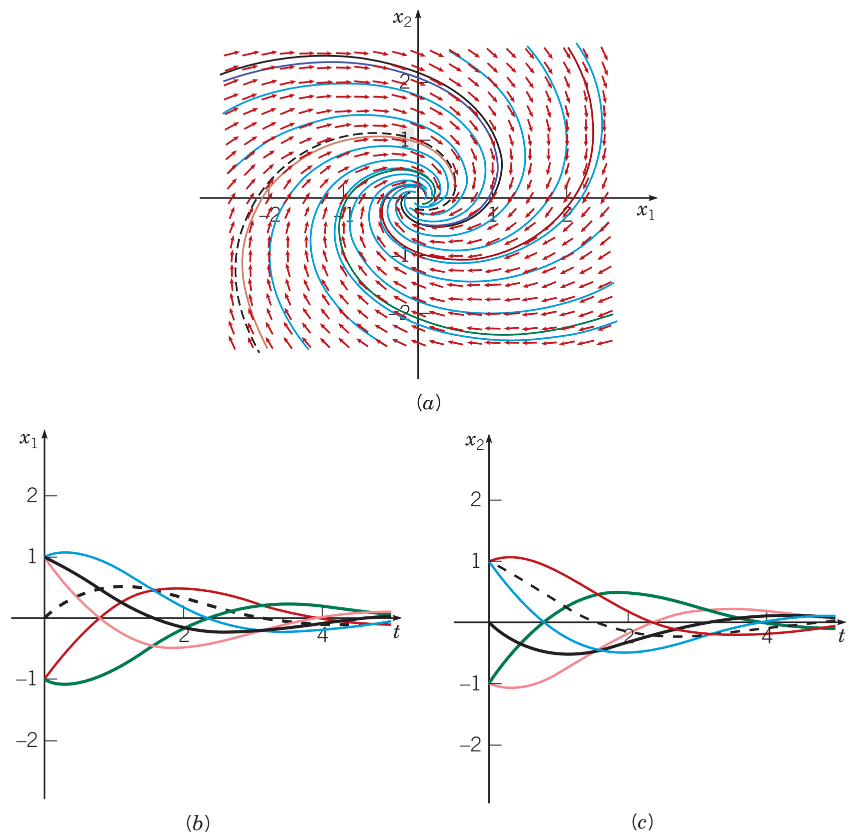


FIGURE 7.6.2 (*a*) A phase portrait for the system (4); the origin is a spiral point. (*b*) Plots of x_1 versus t for the system (4). (*c*) Plots of x_2 versus t for the system (4). The component plots in (*b*) and (*c*) are color-coded to their trajectories in (*a*). The solid black curves are for the solution $\mathbf{u}(t)$ that passes through $(1, 0)$, the dashed black curves are $\mathbf{v}(t)$ that passes through (0.1), the purple curves pass through $(1, 1)$, red through $(-1, 1)$, green through $(-1, -1)$, and orange through $(1, -1)$.

Figure 7.6.2(*a*) is typical of all 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ whose eigenvalues are complex with negative real part. The origin is called a **spiral point** and is asymptotically stable because all trajectories approach it as t increases. For a system whose eigenvalues have a positive real part, the trajectories are similar to those in Figure 7.6.2(*a*), but the direction of motion is away from the origin, and the trajectories become unbounded. In this case, the origin is unstable.

If the real part of the eigenvalues is zero, then the trajectories neither approach the origin nor become unbounded, but instead repeatedly traverse a closed curve about the origin. Examples of this behavior can be seen in Figures 7.6.3(b) and 7.6.4(b) below. In this case, the origin is called a **center** and is said to be stable, but not asymptotically stable. In all three cases, the direction of motion may be either clockwise, as in this example, or counterclockwise, depending on the elements of the coefficient matrix **A**.

The phase portrait in Figure 7.6.2(a) was drawn by a computer, but it is possible to produce a useful sketch of the phase portrait by hand. We have noted that when the eigenvalues $\lambda \pm i\mu$ are complex, then the trajectories either spiral in ($\lambda < 0$), spiral out ($\lambda > 0$), or repeatedly traverse a closed curve ($\lambda = 0$). To determine whether the direction of motion is clockwise or counterclockwise, we only need to determine the direction of motion at a single convenient point. For instance, in the system (4) we might choose $\mathbf{x} = (0, 1)^T$. Then $\mathbf{Ax} = \left(1, -\frac{1}{2}\right)^T$. Thus at the point $(0, 1)$ in the phase plane, the tangent vector $\mathbf{x}'$ to the trajectory at that point has a positive x_1-component and therefore is directed from the second quadrant into the first. The direction of motion is thus clockwise for each trajectory of this system.

Returning to the general system of linear differential equations (1)

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax},$$

we can proceed just as in the example. Suppose that there is a pair of complex conjugate eigenvalues, $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$ and $r_2 = \lambda - i\mu$. Then the corresponding eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are also complex conjugates. To see that this is so, recall that r_1 and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - r_1\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{12}$$

On taking the complex conjugate of this equation and noting that **A** and **I** are real-valued, we obtain

$$\overline{(A - r_1 I)\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}} = (\mathbf{A} - \overline{r_1}\,\mathbf{I})\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}} = \mathbf{0}, \tag{13}$$

where $\overline{r_1}$ and $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}}$ are the complex conjugates of r_1 and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$, respectively. In other words, $r_2 = \overline{r_1}$ is also an eigenvalue, and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}}$ is a corresponding eigenvector. The corresponding solutions

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{r_1 t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}} e^{\overline{r_1} t} \tag{14}$$

of the differential equation (1) are then complex conjugates of each other. Therefore, as in Example 1, we can find two real-valued solutions of equation (1) corresponding to the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2 by taking the real and imaginary parts of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ or $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ given by equation (14).

Let us write $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b}$, where **a** and **b** are real; then we have

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = (\mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b})e^{(\lambda + i\mu)t} = (\mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b})e^{\lambda t}(\cos(\mu t) + i\sin(\mu t)). \tag{15}$$

Upon separating $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ into its real and imaginary parts, we obtain

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = e^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\cos(\mu t) - \mathbf{b}\sin(\mu t)) + ie^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\sin(\mu t) + \mathbf{b}\cos(\mu t)). \tag{16}$$

If we write $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \mathbf{u}(t) + i\mathbf{v}(t)$, then the vectors

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{u}(t) &= e^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\cos(\mu t) - \mathbf{b}\sin(\mu t)), \\ \mathbf{v}(t) &= e^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\sin(\mu t) + \mathbf{b}\cos(\mu t)) \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

are real-valued solutions of equation (1). It is possible to show that **u** and **v** are linearly independent solutions (see Problem 22).

For example, suppose that the matrix **A** has two complex eigenvalues $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$, $r_2 = \lambda - i\mu$, and that $r_3, \ldots, r_n$ are all real and distinct. Let the corresponding eigenvectors be $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b}$, $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \mathbf{a} - i\mathbf{b}$, $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$. Then the general solution of equation (1) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{u}(t) + c_2\mathbf{v}(t) + c_3\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}e^{r_3 t} + \cdots + c_n\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}e^{r_n t}, \tag{18}$$

where $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are given by equations (17). We emphasize that this analysis applies only if the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ in equation (1) is real, for it is only then that complex-valued eigenvalues and eigenvectors must occur in conjugate pairs.

For 2×2 systems with real-valued coefficients, we have now completed our description of the three main cases that can occur. The three main cases are:

1. Eigenvalues are real and have opposite signs; $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is a saddle point.
2. Eigenvalues are real and have the same sign but are unequal; $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is a node.
3. Eigenvalues are complex with nonzero real part; $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is a spiral point.

Other possibilities occur as transitions between two of the cases just listed and are less likely to be encountered in real-world applications. For example, a zero eigenvalue occurs during the transition between a saddle point and a node. Purely imaginary eigenvalues occur during a transition between asymptotically stable and unstable spiral points. Finally, real and equal eigenvalues appear during the transition between nodes and spiral points.

EXAMPLE 2

The system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & 2 \\ -2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} \tag{19}$$

contains a parameter α. Describe how the solutions depend qualitatively on α; in particular, find the bifurcation values of α, that is, the values of α where the qualitative behavior of the trajectories in the phase plane changes markedly.

Solution:

The behavior of the trajectories is controlled by the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix. The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 - \alpha r + 4 = 0, \tag{20}$$

so the eigenvalues are

$$r = \frac{\alpha \pm \sqrt{\alpha^2 - 16}}{2}. \tag{21}$$

From equation (21) it follows that the eigenvalues are complex conjugates for $-4 < \alpha < 4$ and are real otherwise.

Two bifurcation values are $\alpha = -4$ and $\alpha = 4$, where the eigenvalues change from real-valued to complex-valued, or vice versa. For $\alpha < -4$ both eigenvalues are negative, so all trajectories approach the origin, which is an asymptotically stable node. For $\alpha > 4$ both eigenvalues are positive, so the origin is again a node, this time unstable; all trajectories (except $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$) become unbounded. In the intermediate range, $-4 < \alpha < 4$, the eigenvalues are complex and the trajectories are spirals. However, for $-4 < \alpha < 0$ the real part of the eigenvalues is negative, the spirals are directed inward, and the origin is asymptotically stable, whereas for $0 < \alpha < 4$ the real part of the eigenvalues is positive and the origin is unstable.

A third bifurcation value is $\alpha = 0$, where the direction of the spirals changes from inward to outward. When $\alpha = 0$ the origin is a center and the trajectories are closed curves about the origin, corresponding to solutions that are periodic in time. The other bifurcation values, $\alpha = \pm 4$, yield eigenvalues that are real and equal. In this case the origin is again a node, but the phase portrait differs somewhat from those in Section 7.5. We take up this case in Section 7.8.

A Multiple Spring-Mass System. Consider the system of two masses and three springs shown in Figure 7.1.1, whose equations of motion are given by equations (1) in Section 7.1.

If we assume that there are no external forces, then $F_1(t) = 0$, $F_2(t) = 0$, and the resulting equations are

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 \frac{d^2 x_1}{dt^2} &= -(k_1 + k_2)x_1 + k_2 x_2, \\ m_2 \frac{d^2 x_2}{dt^2} &= k_2 x_1 - (k_2 + k_3)x_2. \end{aligned} \tag{22}$$

These equations can be solved as a system of two second-order equations (see Problem 24), but, as is consistent with our approach in this chapter, we will transform them into a system of four first-order equations. Let $y_1 = x_1$, $y_2 = x_2$, $y_3 = x_1'$, and $y_4 = x_2'$. Then

$$y_1' = y_3, \quad y_2' = y_4, \tag{23}$$

and, from equations (22),

$$m_1 y_3' = -(k_1 + k_2)y_1 + k_2 y_2, \quad m_2 y_4' = k_2 y_1 - (k_2 + k_3)y_2. \tag{24}$$

The following example deals with a particular case of this two-mass, three-spring system.

EXAMPLE 3

Suppose that $m_1 = 2$, $m_2 = 9/4$, $k_1 = 1$, $k_2 = 3$, and $k_3 = 15/4$ in equations (23) and (24) so that these equations become

$$y_1' = y_3, \quad y_2' = y_4, \quad y_3' = -2y_1 + \frac{3}{2}y_2, \quad y_4' = \frac{4}{3}y_1 - 3y_2. \tag{25}$$

Analyze the possible motions described by equations (25), and draw graphs showing typical behavior.

Solution:

Let $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4)^T$. We can write the system (25) in matrix form as

$$\mathbf{y}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & \frac{3}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{4}{3} & -3 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ay}. \tag{26}$$

Keep in mind that y_1 and y_2 are the positions of the two masses, relative to their equilibrium positions, and that y_3 and y_4 are their velocities. We assume, as usual, that $\mathbf{y} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$, where r must be an eigenvalue of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ a corresponding eigenvector. It is possible, though a bit tedious, to find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ by hand, but it is easy with appropriate computational resources. The characteristic polynomial of $\mathbf{A}$ is

$$r^4 + 5r^2 + 4 = (r^2 + 1)(r^2 + 4), \tag{27}$$

so the eigenvalues are $r_1 = i$, $r_2 = -i$, $r_3 = 2i$, and $r_4 = -2i$. The corresponding eigenvectors are

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 3i \\ 2i \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ -3i \\ -2i \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ 6i \\ -8i \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(4)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ -6i \\ 8i \end{pmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

The complex-valued solutions $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{it}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} e^{-it}$ are complex conjugates, so two real-valued solutions can be determined by finding the real and imaginary parts of either of them. For instance, we have

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{it} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 3i \\ 2i \end{pmatrix} (\cos t + i \sin t)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \\ -3\sin t \\ -2\sin t \end{pmatrix} + i \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin t \\ 2\sin t \\ 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t) + i\mathbf{v}^{(1)}(t). \tag{29}$$

In a similar way, we obtain

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)} e^{2it} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ 6i \\ -8i \end{pmatrix} (\cos(2t) + i \sin(2t))$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos(2t) \\ -4\cos(2t) \\ -6\sin(2t) \\ 8\sin(2t) \end{pmatrix} + i \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin(2t) \\ -4\sin(2t) \\ 6\cos(2t) \\ -8\cos(2t) \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t) + i\mathbf{v}^{(2)}(t). \tag{30}$$

We leave it to you to verify that $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{v}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent and therefore form a fundamental set of solutions. Thus the general solution of equation (26) is

$$\mathbf{y} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \\ -3\sin t \\ -2\sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin t \\ 2\sin t \\ 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \end{pmatrix} + c_3 \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos(2t) \\ -4\cos(2t) \\ -6\sin(2t) \\ 8\sin(2t) \end{pmatrix} + c_4 \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin(2t) \\ -4\sin(2t) \\ 6\cos(2t) \\ -8\cos(2t) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{31}$$

where c_1, c_2, c_3, and c_4 are arbitrary constants.

The phase space for this system is four-dimensional, and each solution, obtained by a particular set of values for c_1, c_2, c_3, and c_4 in equation (31), corresponds to a trajectory in this space. Since each solution, given by equation (31), is periodic with period 2π, each trajectory is a closed curve. No matter where the trajectory starts at $t = 0$, it returns to that point at $t = 2\pi$, $t = 4\pi$, and so forth, repeatedly traversing the same curve in each time interval of length 2π. We do not attempt to show any of these four-dimensional trajectories here. Instead, in the figures below we show projections of certain trajectories in the y_1y_3- or y_2y_4-plane, thereby showing the motion of each mass separately.

The first two terms on the right-hand side of equation (31) describe motions with frequency 1 and period 2π. Note that $y_2 = \frac{2}{3}y_1$ in these terms and that $y_4 = \frac{2}{3}y_3$. This means that the two masses move back and forth together, always going in the same direction, but with the second mass moving only two-thirds as far, and two-thirds as fast, as the first mass. If we focus on the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t)$ and plot y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t on the same axes, we obtain the cosine graphs of amplitude 3 and 2, respectively, shown in Figure 7.6.3(a). The trajectory of the first mass in the y_1y_3-plane lies on the circle of radius 3 shown in Figure 7.6.3(b), traversed clockwise starting at the point $(3, 0)$ and completing a circuit in time 2π. Also shown in this figure is the trajectory of the second mass in the y_2y_4-plane, which lies on the circle of radius 2, also traversed clockwise starting at $(2, 0)$ and also completing a circuit in time 2π. The origin is a center in the respective y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes. Similar graphs (with an appropriate shift in time) are obtained from $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}$ or from a linear combination of $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}$.

The remaining terms on the right-hand side of equation (31) describe motions with frequency 2 and period π. Observe that in this case, $y_2 = -\frac{4}{3}y_1$ and $y_4 = -\frac{4}{3}y_3$. This means that the two masses are always moving in opposite directions and that the second mass moves four-thirds as far, and four-thirds as fast, as the first mass. If we look only at $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t)$ and plot y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t on the same axes, we obtain Figure 7.6.4(a). There is a phase difference of π, and the amplitude of y_2 is four-thirds that of y_1, confirming the preceding statements about the motions of the masses.

Figure 7.6.4(b) shows a superposition of the trajectories for the two masses in their respective phase planes. Both graphs are ellipses, the inner one corresponding to the first mass and the outer one to the second. The trajectory on the inner ellipse starts at $(3, 0)$, and the trajectory on the outer ellipse starts at $(-4, 0)$. Both are traversed clockwise, and a circuit is completed in time π. The origin is a center in the respective y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes. Once again, similar graphs are obtained from $\mathbf{v}^{(2)}$ or from a linear combination of $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}$ and $\mathbf{v}^{(2)}$.

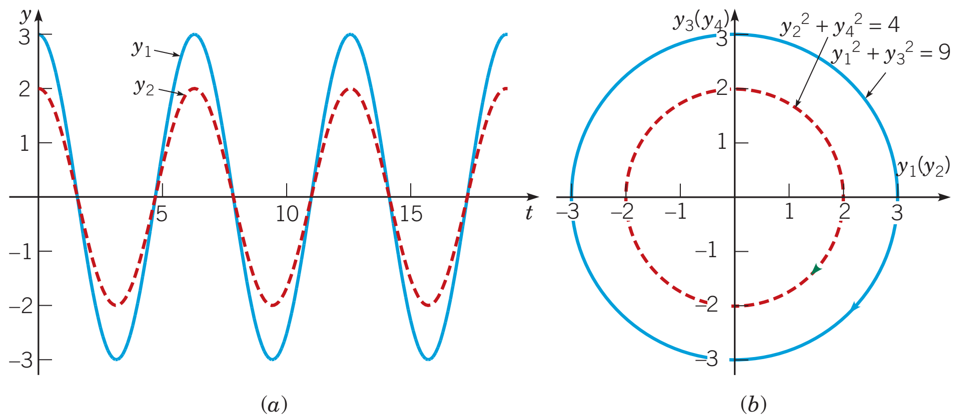


FIGURE 7.6.3 (a) A plot of y_1 versus t (solid blue) and y_2 versus t (dashed red) for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t)$. (b) Superposition of projections of trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t)$.

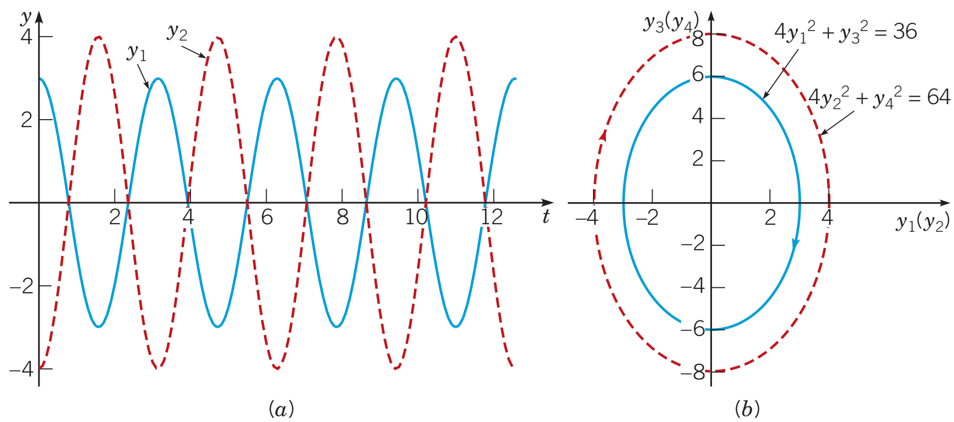


FIGURE 7.6.4 (a) A plot of y_1 versus t (solid blue) and y_2 versus t (dashed red) for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t)$. (b) Superposition of projections of trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t)$.

The types of motion described in the two preceding paragraphs are called **fundamental modes** of vibration for the two-mass system. Each of them results from fairly special initial conditions. For example, to obtain the fundamental mode of frequency 1, both of the constants c_3 and c_4 in equation (31) must be zero. This occurs only for initial conditions in which $3y_2(0) = 2y_1(0)$ and $3y_4(0) = 2y_3(0)$. Similarly, the mode of frequency 2 is obtained only when both of the constants c_1 and c_2 in equation (31) are zero—that is, when the initial conditions are such that $3y_2(0) = -4y_1(0)$ and $3y_4(0) = -4y_3(0)$.

For more general initial conditions the solution is a combination of the two fundamental modes. A plot of y_1 versus t for a typical case is shown in Figure 7.6.5(a), and the projection of the corresponding trajectory in the y_1y_3-plane is shown in Figure 7.6.5(b). Observe that this latter figure may be a bit misleading in that it shows the projection of the trajectory crossing itself. This cannot be the case for the actual trajectory in four dimensions, because it would violate the general uniqueness theorem: there cannot be two different solutions issuing from the same initial point.

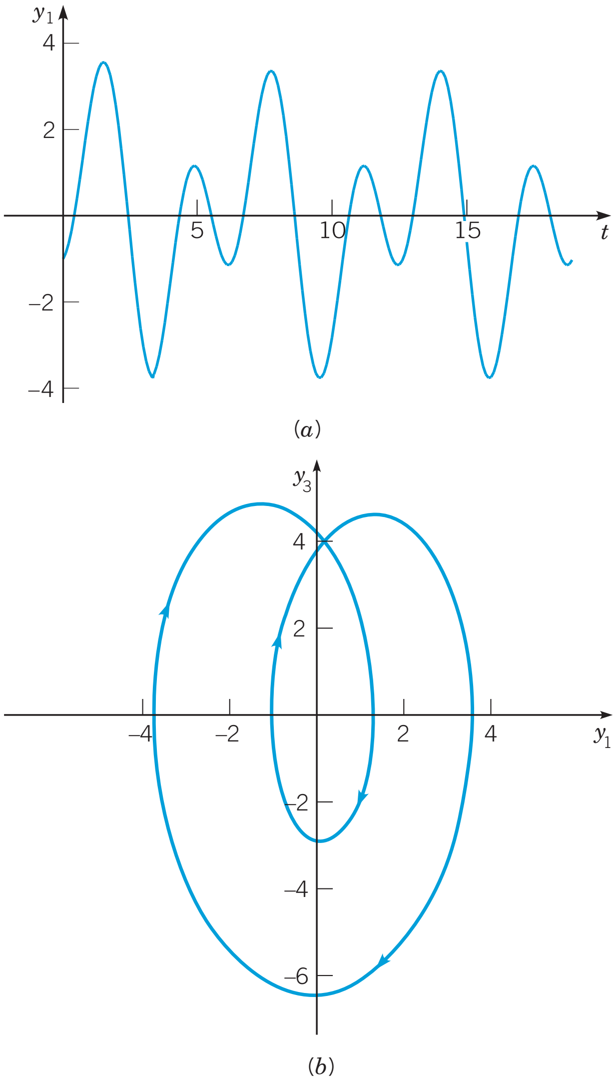


FIGURE 7.6.5 A solution of the system (25) satisfying the initial condition $\mathbf{y}(0) = (-1, 4, 1, 1)^T$. (a) A plot of y_1 versus t. (b) The projection of the trajectory in the y_1y_3-plane. As stated in the text, the actual trajectory in four dimensions does not intersect itself.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 4:

G **a.** Draw a direction field and sketch a few trajectories.

b. Express the general solution of the given system of equations in terms of real-valued functions.

c. Describe the behavior of the solutions as $t \to \infty$.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -5 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 5 and 6, express the general solution of the given system of equations in terms of real-valued functions.

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & -2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 7 and 8, find the solution of the given initial-value problem. Describe the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 \\ 1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

In each of Problems 9 and 10:

a. Find the eigenvalues of the given system.
G **b.** Choose an initial point (other than the origin) and draw the corresponding trajectory in the x_1x_2-plane.
G **c.** For your trajectory in part b, draw the graphs of x_1 versus t and of x_2 versus t.
G **d.** For your trajectory in part b, draw the corresponding graph in three-dimensional tx_1x_2-space. Note that the projections of this plot onto each of the coordinate planes should produce the three plots produced in parts b and c.

9. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{4} & -2 \\ 1 & -\frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

10. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{4}{5} & 2 \\ -1 & \frac{6}{5} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 11 through 15, the coefficient matrix contains a parameter α. In each of these problems:

a. Determine the eigenvalues in terms of α.
b. Find the bifurcation value or values of α where the qualitative nature of the phase portrait for the system changes.
G **c.** Draw a phase portrait for a value of α slightly below, and for another value slightly above, each bifurcation value.

11. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & 1 \\ -1 & \alpha \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

12. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -5 \\ 1 & \alpha \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

13. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{5}{4} & \frac{3}{4} \\ \alpha & \frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

14. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & \alpha \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

15. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & \alpha \\ 8 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 16 and 17, solve the given system of equations by the method of Problem 13 of Section 7.5. Assume that $t > 0$.

16. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

17. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 18 and 19:

a. Find the eigenvalues of the given system.
G **b.** Choose an initial point (other than the origin) and draw the corresponding trajectory in the x_1x_2-plane. Also draw the trajectories in the x_1x_3- and x_2x_3-planes.
G **c.** For the initial point in part b, draw the corresponding trajectory in $x_1x_2x_3$-space.

18. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{4} & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

19. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{4} & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{10} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

20. Consider the electric circuit shown in Figure 7.6.6. Suppose that $R_1 = R_2 = 4\,\Omega$, $C = \frac{1}{2}$ F, and $L = 8$ H.

a. Show that this circuit is described by the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{8} \\ 2 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}, \tag{32}$$

where I is the current through the inductor and V is the voltage drop across the capacitor. *Hint:* See Problem 18 of Section 7.1.
b. Find the general solution of equations (32) in terms of real-valued functions.
c. Find $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ if $I(0) = 2$ A and $V(0) = 3$ V.
d. Determine the limiting values of $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ as $t \to \infty$. Do these limiting values depend on the initial conditions?

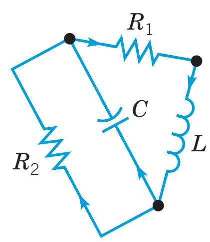


FIGURE 7.6.6 The circuit in Problem 20.

21. The electric circuit shown in Figure 7.6.7 is described by the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{L} \\ -\frac{1}{C} & -\frac{1}{RC} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}, \tag{33}$$

where I is the current through the inductor and V is the voltage drop across the capacitor. These differential equations were derived in Problem 16 of Section 7.1.

a. Show that the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix are real and different if $L > 4R^2C$; show that they are complex conjugates if $L < 4R^2C$.
b. Suppose that $R = 1\,\Omega$, $C = \frac{1}{2}$ F, and $L = 1$ H. Find the general solution of the system (33) in this case.

c. Find $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ if $I(0) = 2$ A and $V(0) = 1$ V.
d. For the circuit of part b, determine the limiting values of $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ as $t \to \infty$. Do these limiting values depend on the initial conditions?

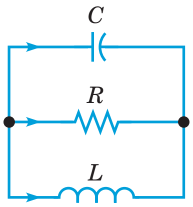


FIGURE 7.6.7 The circuit in Problem 21.

22. In this problem we indicate how to show that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$, as given by equations (17), are linearly independent. Let $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$ and $\overline{r_1} = \lambda - i\mu$ be a pair of conjugate eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ of equation (1); let $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b}$ and $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}} = \mathbf{a} - i\mathbf{b}$ be the corresponding eigenvectors. Recall that it was stated in Section 7.3 that two different eigenvalues have linearly independent eigenvectors, so if $r_1 \neq \overline{r_1}$, then $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}}$ are linearly independent.
a. First we show that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are linearly independent. Consider the equation $c_1\mathbf{a} + c_2\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$. Express $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}}$, and then show that $(c_1 - ic_2)\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + (c_1 + ic_2)\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}} = \mathbf{0}$.
b. Show that $c_1 - ic_2 = 0$ and $c_1 + ic_2 = 0$ and then that $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 0$. Consequently, $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are linearly independent.
c. To show that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are linearly independent, consider the equation $c_1\mathbf{u}(t_0) + c_2\mathbf{v}(t_0) = \mathbf{0}$, where t_0 is an arbitrary point. Rewrite this equation in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, and then proceed as in part b to show that $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 0$. Hence $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are linearly independent at the arbitrary point t_0. Therefore, they are linearly independent at every point and on every interval.

23. A mass m on a spring with constant k satisfies the differential equation (see Section 3.7)

$$mu'' + ku = 0,$$

where $u(t)$ is the displacement at time t of the mass from its equilibrium position.
a. Let $x_1 = u$, $x_2 = u'$, and show that the resulting system is

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\dfrac{k}{m} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}.$$

b. Find the eigenvalues of the matrix for the system in part a.
c. Sketch several trajectories of the system. Choose one of your trajectories, and sketch the corresponding graphs of x_1 versus t and x_2 versus t. Sketch both graphs on one set of axes.
d. What is the relation between the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix and the natural frequency of the spring-mass system?

24. Consider the two-mass, three-spring system of Example 3 in the text. Instead of converting the problem into a system of four first-order equations, we indicate here how to proceed directly from equations (22).
a. Show that equations (22) can be written in the form

$$\mathbf{x}'' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & \dfrac{3}{2} \\ \dfrac{4}{3} & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}. \tag{34}$$

b. Assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$ and show that

$$(\mathbf{A} - r^2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}.$$

Note that r^2 (rather than r) is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to an eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$.
c. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$.
d. Write down expressions for x_1 and x_2. There should be four arbitrary constants in these expressions.
e. By differentiating the results from part d, write down expressions for x_1' and x_2'. Your results from parts d and e should agree with equation (31) in the text.

25. Consider the two-mass, three-spring system whose equations of motion are equations (22). Let $m_1 = 1$, $m_2 = 4/3$, $k_1 = 1$, $k_2 = 3$, and $k_3 = 4/3$.
a. As in Example 3, convert the system to four first-order equations of the form $\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{y}$. Determine the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$.
b. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$.
c. Write down the general solution of the system.
G **d.** Describe the fundamental modes of vibration. For each fundamental mode, draw graphs of y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t. Also draw the corresponding trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes.
G **e.** Consider the initial conditions $\mathbf{y}(0) = (2, 1, 0, 0)^T$. Evaluate the arbitrary constants in the general solution in part c. What is the period of the motion in this case? Plot graphs of y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t. Also plot the corresponding trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes. Be sure you understand how the trajectories are traversed for a full period.
G **f.** Consider other initial conditions of your own choice, and plot graphs similar to those requested in part e.

7.7 Fundamental Matrices

The structure of the solutions of systems of linear differential equations can be further illuminated by introducing the idea of a fundamental matrix. Suppose that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions for the equation

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} \tag{1}$$

on some interval $\alpha < t < \beta$. Then the matrix

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \left(\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) \,\middle|\, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) \,\middle|\, \cdots \,\middle|\, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)\right) = \begin{pmatrix} x_1^{(1)}(t) & \cdots & x_1^{(n)}(t) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ x_n^{(1)}(t) & \cdots & x_n^{(n)}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{2}$$

whose columns are the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$, is said to be a **fundamental matrix** for the system (1). Note that a fundamental matrix is nonsingular since its columns are linearly independent vectors.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a fundamental matrix for the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{3}$$

Solution:

In Example 2 of Section 7.5, we found that

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} \\ 2e^{3t} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t} \\ -2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}$$

are linearly independent solutions of equation (3). Thus a fundamental matrix for the system (3) is

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & e^{-t} \\ 2e^{3t} & -2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4}$$

The solution of an initial value problem can be written very compactly in terms of a fundamental matrix. The general solution of equation (1) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) \tag{5}$$

or, in terms of $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$,

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{c}, \tag{6}$$

where $\mathbf{c}$ is a constant vector with arbitrary components $c_1, \ldots, c_n$. For an initial value problem consisting of the differential equation (1) and the initial condition

$$\mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}^0, \tag{7}$$

where t_0 is a given point in $\alpha < t < \beta$ and $\mathbf{x}^0$ is a given initial vector, it is only necessary to choose the vector $\mathbf{c}$ in equation (6) so as to satisfy the initial condition (7). Hence $\mathbf{c}$ must satisfy

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t_0)\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{x}^0. \tag{8}$$

Therefore, since $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t_0)$ is nonsingular,

$$\mathbf{c} = \boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)\mathbf{x}^0 \tag{9}$$

and

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)\boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)\mathbf{x}^0 \tag{10}$$

is the solution of the initial value problem (1), (5). We emphasize, however, that to solve a given initial value problem, we would ordinarily solve equation (8) by row reduction and then substitute for $\mathbf{c}$ in equation (6), rather than compute $\boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)$ and use equation (10).

Recall that each column of the fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}$ is a solution of equation (1). It follows that $\boldsymbol{\Psi}$ satisfies the matrix differential equation

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\boldsymbol{\Psi}. \tag{11}$$

This relation is readily confirmed by comparing the two sides of equation (11) column by column.

Sometimes it is convenient to make use of the special fundamental matrix, denoted by $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$, whose columns are the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ designated in Theorem 7.4.4. Besides the differential equation (1), these vectors satisfy the initial conditions

$$\mathbf{x}^{(j)}(t_0) = \mathbf{e}^{(j)}, \tag{12}$$

where $\mathbf{e}^{(j)}$ is the unit vector, defined in Theorem 7.4.4, with a 1 in the j^{th} position and zeros elsewhere. Thus $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ has the property that

$$\mathbf{\Phi}(t_0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{I}. \tag{13}$$

We will always reserve the symbol $\mathbf{\Phi}$ to denote the fundamental matrix satisfying the initial condition (13) and use $\mathbf{\Psi}$ when an arbitrary fundamental matrix is intended. In terms of $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$, the solution of the initial value problem (1), (7) is even simpler in appearance; since $\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(t_0) = \mathbf{I}$, it follows from equation (10) that

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{14}$$

Although the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ is often more complicated than $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$, it is especially helpful if the same system of differential equations is to be solved repeatedly subject to many different initial conditions. This corresponds to a given physical system that can be started from many different initial states. If the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ has been determined, then the solution for each set of initial conditions can be found simply by matrix multiplication, as indicated by equation (14). The matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ thus represents a transformation of the initial conditions $\mathbf{x}^0$ into the solution $\mathbf{x}(t)$ at an arbitrary time t. Comparing equations (10) and (14) makes it clear that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)$.

EXAMPLE 2

For the system (3)

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$$

in Example 1, find the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}$ such that $\mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$.

Solution:

The columns of $\mathbf{\Phi}$ are solutions of equation (3) that satisfy the initial conditions

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{15}$$

Since the general solution of equation (3) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{3t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t},$$

we can find the solution satisfying the first set of these initial conditions by choosing $c_1 = c_2 = \frac{1}{2}$; similarly, we obtain the solution satisfying the second set of initial conditions by choosing $c_1 = \frac{1}{4}$ and $c_2 = -\frac{1}{4}$. Hence

$$\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} & \frac{1}{4}e^{3t} - \frac{1}{4}e^{-t} \\ e^{3t} - e^{-t} & \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{16}$$

Note that the elements of $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ are more complicated than those of the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ given by equation (4); however, it is now easy to determine the solution corresponding to any set of initial conditions.

The Matrix exp($\mathbf{A}t$). Recall that the solution of the scalar initial value problem

$$x' = ax, \quad x(0) = x_0, \tag{17}$$

where a is a constant, is

$$x = x_0 \exp(at). \tag{18}$$

Now consider the corresponding initial value problem for an $n \times n$ system, namely,

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0, \tag{19}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant matrix. Applying the results of this section to the initial value problem (19), we can write its solution as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}^0, \tag{20}$$

where $\mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$. Comparing the initial value problems (17) and (19), and their solutions (18) and (20), suggests that the matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ might have an exponential character. We now explore this possibility.

The scalar exponential function $\exp(at)$ can be represented by the power series

$$\exp(at) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a^n t^n}{n!} = 1 + at + \frac{a^2t^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{a^n t^n}{n!} + \cdots, \tag{21}$$

which converges for all t. Let us now replace the scalar a by the $n \times n$ constant matrix $\mathbf{A}$, the scalar 1 by the $n \times n$ identity matrix $\mathbf{I}$, and consider the corresponding series

$$\mathbf{I} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!} = \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}t + \frac{\mathbf{A}^2t^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!} + \cdots. \tag{22}$$

Each term in the series (22) is an $n \times n$ matrix. It is possible to show that each element of this matrix sum converges for all t as $n \to \infty$. Thus the series (22) defines as its sum a new matrix, which we denote by $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$; that is,

$$\exp(\mathbf{A}t) = \mathbf{I} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!}, \tag{23}$$

analogous to the expansion (21) of the scalar function $\exp(at)$.

By differentiating the series (23) term by term, we obtain

$$\frac{d}{dt}\exp(\mathbf{A}t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} = \mathbf{A}\left(\mathbf{I} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!}\right) = \mathbf{A}\exp(\mathbf{A}t). \tag{24}$$

Therefore, $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}\exp(\mathbf{A}t) = \mathbf{A}\exp(\mathbf{A}t). \tag{25}$$

Further, by setting $t = 0$ in equation (23), we find that $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ satisfies the initial condition

$$\exp(\mathbf{A}t)\Big|_{t=0} = \mathbf{I} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n 0^n}{n!} = \mathbf{I}. \tag{26}$$

The fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}$ satisfies the same initial value problem as $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$, namely,

$$\mathbf{\Phi}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{\Phi}, \quad \mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}. \tag{27}$$

Then, by the uniqueness part of Theorem 7.1.2 (extended to matrix differential equations), we conclude that $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ and the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ are the same. Thus we can write the solution of the initial value problem (19) in the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \exp(\mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0, \tag{28}$$

which is analogous to the solution (18) of the initial value problem (17).

In order to justify more conclusively the use of $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ for the sum of the series (22), we should demonstrate that this matrix function does indeed have the properties we associate with the exponential function. One way to do this is outlined in Problem 12.

Diagonalizable Matrices. The basic reason why a system of linear (algebraic or differential) equations presents some difficulty is that the equations are usually *coupled*. In other words, some or all of the equations involve more than one—often all—of the unknown variables. Hence the equations in the system must be solved *simultaneously*. In contrast, if each equation involves only a single variable, then each equation can be solved independently of all the others, which is a much easier task. This observation suggests that one way to solve a system of equations might be by transforming it into an equivalent *uncoupled* system in which each equation contains only one unknown variable. This corresponds to transforming the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ into a *diagonal* matrix.

Eigenvectors are useful in accomplishing such a transformation. Suppose that the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ has a full set of n linearly independent eigenvectors. Recall that this will certainly be the case if the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ are all different, or if $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian. Letting $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ denote these eigenvectors and $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n$ the corresponding eigenvalues, form the matrix $\mathbf{T}$ whose columns are the eigenvectors—that is,

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_1^{(n)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_n^{(n)} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{29}$$

Since the columns of $\mathbf{T}$ are linearly independent vectors, $\det \mathbf{T} \neq 0$; hence $\mathbf{T}$ is nonsingular and $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ exists. A straightforward calculation shows that the columns of the matrix $\mathbf{AT}$ are just the vectors $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$. Since $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(k)} = \lambda_k \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(k)}$, it follows that

$$\mathbf{AT} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1\xi_1^{(1)} & \cdots & \lambda_n\xi_1^{(n)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \lambda_1\xi_n^{(1)} & \cdots & \lambda_n\xi_n^{(n)} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{TD}, \tag{30}$$

where

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \tag{31}$$

is a diagonal matrix whose diagonal elements are the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$. From equation (30) it follows that

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{AT} = \mathbf{D}. \tag{32}$$

Thus, if the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ are known, $\mathbf{A}$ can be transformed into a diagonal matrix by the process shown in equation (32). This process is known as a **similarity transformation**, and equation (32) is summed up in words by saying that $\mathbf{A}$ is **similar** to the diagonal matrix $\mathbf{D}$. Alternatively, we may say that $\mathbf{A}$ is **diagonalizable**. Observe that a similarity transformation leaves the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ unchanged and transforms its eigenvectors into the coordinate vectors $\mathbf{e}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{e}^{(n)}$.

If $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian, then the determination of $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ is very simple. The eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ of $\mathbf{A}$ are known to be mutually orthogonal, so let us choose them so that they are also normalized by $\left(\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}\right) = 1$ for each i. Then it is easy to verify that $\mathbf{T}^{-1} = \mathbf{T}^*$; in other words, the inverse of $\mathbf{T}$ is the same as its adjoint (the transpose of its complex conjugate).

Finally, we note that if $\mathbf{A}$ has fewer than n linearly independent eigenvectors, then there is no matrix $\mathbf{T}$ such that $\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{AT} = \mathbf{D}$. In this case, $\mathbf{A}$ is not similar to a diagonal matrix and is not diagonalizable. This situation is discussed in more detail in Section 7.8.

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{33}$$

Find the similarity transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ and show that $\mathbf{A}$ can be diagonalized.

Solution:

In Example 2 of Section 7.5, we found that the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ are

$$r_1 = 3, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad r_2 = -1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{34}$$

Thus the transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ and its inverse $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ are

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{T}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{35}$$

Consequently, you can check that

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{D}. \tag{36}$$

Now let us turn again to the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{37}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant matrix. In Sections 7.5 and 7.6 we described how to solve such a system by starting from the assumption that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$. Now we provide another viewpoint, one based on diagonalizing the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

According to the results stated earlier in this section, it is possible to diagonalize $\mathbf{A}$ whenever $\mathbf{A}$ has a full set of n linearly independent eigenvectors. Let $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ be eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to the eigenvalues $r_1 \cdots, r_n$ and form the transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ whose columns are $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$. Then, defining a new dependent variable $\mathbf{y}$ by the relation

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}, \tag{38}$$

we have from equation (37) that

$$\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}. \tag{39}$$

Multiplying by $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$, we then obtain

$$\mathbf{y}' = (\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T})\mathbf{y}, \tag{40}$$

or, using equation (32),

$$\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{y}. \tag{41}$$

Recall that $\mathbf{D}$ is the diagonal matrix with the eigenvalues $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ of $\mathbf{A}$ along the diagonal. A fundamental matrix for the system (41) is the diagonal matrix (see Problem 13)

$$\mathbf{Q}(t) = \exp(\mathbf{D}t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{r_1 t} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & e^{r_2 t} & \ldots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & e^{r_n t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{42}$$

A fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}$ for the system (37) is then found from $\mathbf{Q}$ by the transformation (38)

$$\mathbf{\Psi} = \mathbf{TQ}; \tag{43}$$

that is,

$$\mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \cdots & \xi_1^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \cdots & \xi_n^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{44}$$

The columns of $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ are the same as the solutions in equation (27) of Section 7.5. Thus the diagonalization procedure does not offer any computational advantage over the method of Section 7.5, since in either case it is necessary to calculate the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the coefficient matrix in the system of differential equations.

EXAMPLE 4

Consider once again the system of differential equations

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}, \tag{45}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is given by equation (33). Using the transformation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{Ty}$, where $\mathbf{T}$ is given by equation (35), the system (45) reduces to the diagonal system

$$\mathbf{y}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Dy}. \tag{46}$$

Obtain a fundamental matrix for the system (46), and then transform it to obtain a fundamental matrix for the original system (45).

Solution:

By multiplying $\mathbf{D}$ repeatedly with itself, we find that

$$\mathbf{D}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{D}^3 = \begin{pmatrix} 27 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \; \ldots . \tag{47}$$

Therefore, it follows from equation (23) that $\exp(\mathbf{D}t)$ is a diagonal matrix with the entries e^{3t} and e^{-t} on the diagonal; that is,

$$e^{\mathbf{D}t} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{48}$$

Finally, we obtain the required fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ by multiplying $\mathbf{T}$ and $\exp(\mathbf{D}t)$:

$$\mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-t} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & e^{-t} \\ 2e^{3t} & -2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{49}$$

Observe that this fundamental matrix is the same as the one found in Example 1.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8:

a. Find a fundamental matrix for the given system of equations.

b. Find the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ satisfying $\mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{8} & -\frac{3}{4} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -8 & -5 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

9. Use the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ found in Problem 4 to solve the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

10. Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)$, where $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ and $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ are as defined in this section.

11. The fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ for the system (3) was found in Example 2. Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(s) = \mathbf{\Phi}(t+s)$ by multiplying $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ and $\mathbf{\Phi}(s)$.

12. Let $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ denote the fundamental matrix satisfying $\mathbf{\Phi}' = \mathbf{A\Phi}$, $\mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$. In the text we also denoted this matrix by $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$. In this problem we show that $\mathbf{\Phi}$ does indeed have the principal algebraic properties associated with the exponential function.

a. Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(s) = \mathbf{\Phi}(t+s)$; that is, show that $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)\exp(\mathbf{A}s) = \exp(\mathbf{A}(t+s))$. *Hint:* Show that if s is fixed and t is variable, then both $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(s)$ and $\mathbf{\Phi}(t+s)$ satisfy the initial value problem $\mathbf{Z}' = \mathbf{AZ}$, $\mathbf{Z}(0) = \mathbf{\Phi}(s)$.

b. Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(-t) = \mathbf{I}$; that is, $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)\exp(\mathbf{A}(-t)) = \mathbf{I}$. Then show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(-t) = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(t)$.

c. Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t-s) = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(s)$.

13. Show that if $\mathbf{A}$ is a diagonal matrix with diagonal elements $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$, then $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ is also a diagonal matrix with diagonal elements $\exp(a_1 t), \exp(a_2 t), \ldots, \exp(a_n t)$.

14. Consider an oscillator satisfying the initial value problem

$$u'' + \omega^2 u = 0, \quad u(0) = u_0, \quad u'(0) = v_0. \tag{50}$$

a. Let $x_1 = u$, $x_2 = u'$, and transform equations (53) into the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0. \tag{51}$$

b. Use the series (23) to show that

$$\exp(\mathbf{A}t) = \mathbf{I}\cos(\omega t) + \mathbf{A}\frac{\sin(\omega t)}{\omega}. \tag{52}$$

c. Find the solution of the initial value problem (51).

15. The method of successive approximations (see Section 2.8) can also be applied to systems of equations. For example, consider the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0, \tag{53}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant matrix and $\mathbf{x}^0$ is a prescribed vector.

a. Assuming that a solution $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\phi}(t)$ exists, show that it must satisfy the integral equation

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}(t) = \mathbf{x}^0 + \int_0^t \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\phi}(s)\,ds. \tag{54}$$

b. Start with the initial approximation $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(0)}(t) = \mathbf{x}^0$. Substitute this expression for $\boldsymbol{\phi}(s)$ on the right-hand side of equation (51) and obtain a new approximation $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(1)}(t)$. Show that

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(1)}(t) = (\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{55}$$

c. Repeat this process and thereby obtain a sequence of approximations $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(0)}, \boldsymbol{\phi}^{(1)}, \boldsymbol{\phi}^{(2)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\phi}^{(n)}, \ldots$. Use an inductive argument to show that

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(n)}(t) = \left(\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}t + \mathbf{A}^2\frac{t^2}{2!} + \cdots + \mathbf{A}^n\frac{t^n}{n!}\right)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{56}$$

d. Let $n \to \infty$ and show that the solution of the initial value problem (53) is

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}(t) = \exp(\mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{57}$$

7.8 Repeated Eigenvalues

We conclude our consideration of the linear homogeneous system of differential equations with constant coefficients

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \tag{1}$$

with a discussion of the case in which the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ has a repeated eigenvalue. Recall that in Section 7.3 we stated that a repeated eigenvalue with algebraic multiplicity $m \geq 2$ may have a geometric multiplicity less than m. In other words, there may be fewer than m linearly independent eigenvectors associated with this eigenvalue. The following example illustrates this possibility.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2}$$

Solution:

The eigenvalues r and eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfy the equation $(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}$, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1-r & -1 \\ 1 & 3-r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3}$$

The eigenvalues are the roots of the equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = \begin{vmatrix} 1-r & -1 \\ 1 & 3-r \end{vmatrix} = r^2 - 4r + 4 = (r-2)^2 = 0. \tag{4}$$

Thus the two eigenvalues are $r_1 = r_2 = 2$; that is, the eigenvalue 2 has algebraic multiplicity 2.

To determine the eigenvectors, we must return to equation (3) and use $r = 2$. This gives

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{5}$$

Hence we obtain the single condition $\xi_1 + \xi_2 = 0$, which determines ξ_2 in terms of ξ_1, or vice versa. Thus the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue $r = 2$ is

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6}$$

or any nonzero multiple of this vector. Observe that there is only one linearly independent eigenvector associated with the double eigenvalue.

Returning to the system (1), suppose that $r = \rho$ is an m-fold root of the characteristic equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0. \tag{7}$$

Then ρ is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity m of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$. In this event, there are two possibilities: either there are m linearly independent eigenvectors corresponding to the eigenvalue ρ, or else, as in Example 1, there are fewer than m linearly independent eigenvectors.

In the first case, let $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(m)}$ be m linearly independent eigenvectors associated with the eigenvalue ρ of algebraic multiplicity m. Then there are m linearly independent solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{\rho t}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(m)}e^{\rho t}$ of equation (1). Thus in this case, it makes no difference that the eigenvalue $r = \rho$ is repeated; there is still a fundamental set of solutions of equation (1) of the form $\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$. This case always occurs if the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian (or real and symmetric).

However, if the coefficient matrix is not Hermitian, then there may be fewer than m independent eigenvectors corresponding to an eigenvalue ρ of algebraic multiplicity m, and if so, there will be fewer than m solutions of equation (1) of the form $\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{\rho t}$ associated with this eigenvalue. Therefore, to construct the general solution of equation (1), it is necessary to find other solutions of a different form. Recall that a similar situation occurred in Section 3.4 for the linear equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ when the characteristic equation has a double root r. In that case we found one exponential solution $y_1(t) = e^{rt}$, but a second independent solution had the form $y_2(t) = te^{rt}$. With that result in mind, consider the following example.

EXAMPLE 2

Find a fundamental set of solutions of

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} \tag{8}$$

and draw a phase portrait for this system.

Solution:

A direction field for the system (8) is shown in Figure 7.8.1. From this figure it appears that all nonzero solutions depart from the origin.

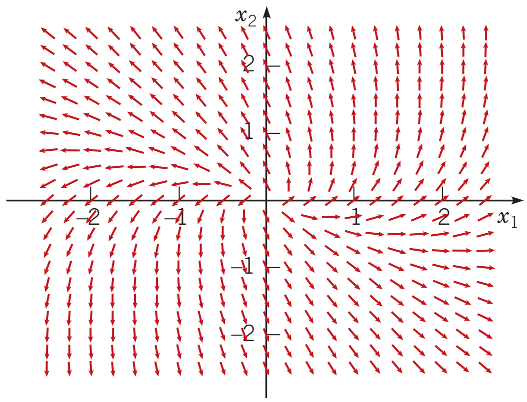


FIGURE 7.8.1 A direction field for the system (8).

To solve the system, observe that the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is the same matrix as in Example 1. Thus we know that $r = 2$ is a double eigenvalue and that it has only a single corresponding eigenvector, which we may take as $\boldsymbol{\xi} = (1, -1)^T$. Thus one solution of the system (8) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \tag{9}$$

but there is no second solution of the form $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$.

Based on the procedure used for second-order linear differential equations in Section 3.4, it may be natural to attempt to find a second independent solution of the system (8) of the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}te^{2t}, \tag{10}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is a constant vector to be determined. Substituting for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (8), we obtain

$$2\boldsymbol{\xi}te^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{2t} = \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}te^{2t}. \tag{11}$$

For equation (11) to be satisfied for all t, it is necessary to equate the coefficients of te^{2t} and e^{2t} on each side of equation (11). From the term in e^{2t}, we find that

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{12}$$

Hence there is no nonzero solution of the system (8) of the form (10).

Since equation (11) contains terms in both te^{2t} and e^{2t}, it appears that in addition to $\boldsymbol{\xi} te^{2t}$, the second solution must contain a term of the form $\boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t}$; in other words, we need to assume that

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} te^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t}, \tag{13}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ are constant vectors to be determined. Upon substituting this expression for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (8), we obtain

$$2\boldsymbol{\xi} te^{2t} + (\boldsymbol{\xi} + 2\boldsymbol{\eta})e^{2t} = \mathbf{A}(\boldsymbol{\xi} te^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t}). \tag{14}$$

Equating coefficients of te^{2t} and e^{2t} on each side of equation (14) gives the two conditions

$$2\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}$$

and

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} + 2\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\eta}$$

for the determination of $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. It is helpful to rewrite these conditions as

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0} \tag{15}$$

and

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}, \tag{16}$$

respectively. Equation (15) is satisfied if $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $r = 2$, such as $\boldsymbol{\xi} = (1, -1)^T$. Since $\det(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})$ is zero, equation (16) is solvable only if the right-hand side $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfies a certain condition. Fortunately, $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and its multiples are exactly the vectors that allow equation (16) to be solved.[7] The augmented matrix for equation (16) is

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc|c} -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{array}\right).$$

The second row of this matrix is proportional to the first, so the system is solvable. We have

$$-\eta_1 - \eta_2 = 1,$$

so if $\eta_1 = k$, where k is arbitrary, then $\eta_2 = -k - 1$. If we write

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = \begin{pmatrix} k \\ -1 - k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + k\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{17}$$

then by substituting for $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ in equation (13), we obtain

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} te^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + k\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}. \tag{18}$$

The last term in equation (18) is merely a multiple of the first solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and may be ignored, but the first two terms constitute a new solution:

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}. \tag{19}$$

An elementary calculation shows that $W[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}](t) = -e^{4t} \neq 0$, and therefore $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the system (8). The general solution is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) \\ &= c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + c_2\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

The main features of a phase portrait for the solution (20) follow from the presence of the exponential factor e^{2t} in every term. Therefore $\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{0}$ as $t \to -\infty$ and, unless both c_1 and c_2 are zero, $\mathbf{x}$ becomes

[7] This condition is that $(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$ for any nontrivial solution $\mathbf{y}$ of $(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$. From the fact that every matrix and its adjoint have the same eigenvalues (see Problems 21-25 in Section 7.3), we conclude that the vectors $\mathbf{y}$ are the eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}^*$ corresponding to its (repeated) eigenvalue $r = 2$. An easy calculation shows that $\mathbf{y} = c(1, 1)^T$ (see Problem 16). Since $\boldsymbol{\xi} = (1, -1)^T$, we see that $(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$. Thus, equation (16) is solvable.

unbounded as $t \to \infty$. If c_1 and c_2 are not both zero, then along any trajectory we have

$$\lim_{t\to-\infty} \frac{x_2(t)}{x_1(t)} = \frac{-c_1e^{2t} + c_2\left(-te^{2t} - e^{2t}\right)}{c_1e^{2t} + c_2te^{2t}} = \lim_{t\to-\infty} \frac{-c_1 - c_2t - c_2}{c_1 + c_2t} = -1.$$

Therefore, as $t \to -\infty$, every trajectory approaches the origin tangent to the line $x_2 = -x_1$ determined by the eigenvector; this behavior is clearly evident in Figure 7.8.2(*a*). Further, as $t \to \infty$, the slope of each trajectory also approaches -1. However, it is possible to show that trajectories do not approach any single asymptote as $t \to \infty$. Several trajectories, including $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ (the solid black curve) and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ (the dashed black curve), of the system (8) are shown in Figure 7.8.2(*a*), and some typical plots of x_1 versus t and of x_2 versus t are shown in Figures 7.8.2(*b*) and 7.8.2(*c*), respectively.

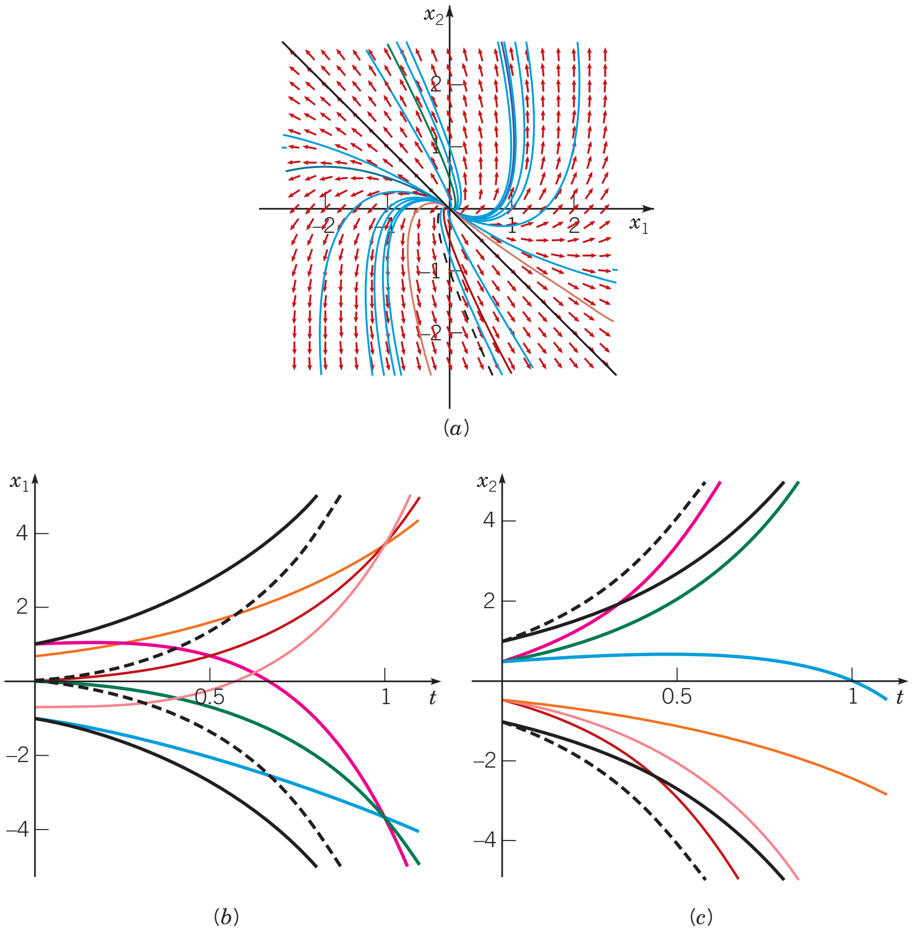


FIGURE 7.8.2 (*a*) Phase portrait of the system (8); the origin is an improper node. (*b*) Plots of x_1 versus t for the system (8). (*c*) Plots of x_2 versus t for the system (8). The component plots in (*b*) and (*c*) are color-coded to their trajectories in (*a*). The purple curves are for the solution that passes through $(-1, 1/2)$, red through $(-1, -1/2)$, green $(0, 1/2)$, orange $(0, -1/2)$, blue $(1, 1/2)$, and gold $(1, -1/2)$.

The pattern of trajectories in Figure 7.8.2(*a*) is typical of 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ with equal eigenvalues and only one independent eigenvector. The origin is called an **improper node** in this case. If the eigenvalues are negative, then the trajectories are similar but are traversed in the inward direction. An improper node is asymptotically stable or unstable, depending on whether the eigenvalues are negative or positive.

One difference between a system of two first-order equations and a single second-order equation is evident from the preceding example. For a second-order linear equation with a repeated root r_1 of the characteristic equation, a term ce^{r_1t} in the second solution is not required since it is a multiple of the first solution. On the other hand, for a system of two first-order equations, the term $\boldsymbol{\eta}e^{r_1t}$ of equation (13) with $r_1 = 2$ is not, in general, a multiple of the first solution $\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{r_1t}$, so the term $\boldsymbol{\eta}e^{r_1t}$ must be retained.

Example 2 is entirely typical of the general case when there is a double eigenvalue and a single associated eigenvector. Consider again the system (1), and suppose that $r = \rho$ is a double eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$, but that there is only one corresponding eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$. Then one solution, similar to equation (9), is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{\rho t}, \tag{21}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfies

$$(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{22}$$

Following the process introduced in Example 2, we find that a second solution, similar to equation (19), is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{\rho t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{\rho t}, \tag{23}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfies equation (22) and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ is determined from

$$(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}. \tag{24}$$

Even though $\det(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I}) = 0$, it can be shown that it is always possible to solve equation (24) for $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. While we will not present all of the details, an important step is to note that if we multiply equation (24) by $\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I}$ and use equation (22), then we obtain

$$(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I})^2\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{0}.$$

The vector $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ is called a **generalized eigenvector** of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue ρ.

Fundamental Matrices. As explained in Section 7.7, fundamental matrices are formed by arranging linearly independent solutions in columns. Thus, for example, a fundamental matrix for the system (8) can be formed from the solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ from equations (9) and (19), respectively:

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} & te^{2t} \\ -e^{2t} & -te^{2t} - e^{2t} \end{pmatrix} = e^{2t}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ -1 & -1-t \end{pmatrix}. \tag{25}$$

The particular fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Phi}$ that satisfies $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$ can also be readily found from the relation $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(t) = \boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)\boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(0)$. From equation (25), we have

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{so that} \quad \boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{26}$$

and then

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\Phi}(t) = \boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)\boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(0) &= e^{2t}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ -1 & -1-t \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= e^{2t}\begin{pmatrix} 1-t & -t \\ t & 1+t \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned} \tag{27}$$

Recall that the fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(t)$ with $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$ can also be written as $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$. For the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ in Example 2, the solution to $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ with $\mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0$ is $\mathbf{x}(t) = \exp(\mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0$, or $\mathbf{x}(t) = \boldsymbol{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}^0$ with $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(t)$ given by equation (27).

Jordan Forms. An $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ can be diagonalized as discussed in Section 7.7 only if it has a full complement of n linearly independent eigenvectors. If there is a shortage of eigenvectors (because of repeated eigenvalues), then $\mathbf{A}$ can always be transformed into a nearly diagonal matrix called its Jordan[8] form, which has the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ on the main diagonal, ones in certain positions on the diagonal above the main diagonal, and zeros elsewhere.

[8]Marie Ennemond Camille Jordan (1838–1922) was professor at the École Polytechnique and the Collège de France. He is known for his important contributions to analysis and to topology (the Jordan curve theorem) and especially for his foundational work in group theory. The Jordan form of a matrix appeared in his influential book *Traité des substitutions et des équations algébriques*, published in 1870.

Consider again the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ given by equation (2). To transform $\mathbf{A}$ into its Jordan form, we construct the transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ with the single eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ from equation (6) in its first column and the generalized eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ from equation (17) with $k = 0$ in the second column. Then $\mathbf{T}$ and its inverse are given by

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{T}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

As you can verify, it follows that

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{J}. \tag{29}$$

The matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in equation (29) is the **Jordan form** of $\mathbf{A}$. It is typical of all Jordan forms in that it has a 1 above the main diagonal in the column corresponding to the eigenvector that is lacking (and is replaced in $\mathbf{T}$ by the generalized eigenvector).

If we start again from equation (1)

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x},$$

the transformation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}$, where $\mathbf{T}$ is given by equation (28), produces the system

$$\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{J}\mathbf{y}, \tag{30}$$

where $\mathbf{J}$ is given by equation (29). In scalar form the system (30) is

$$y_1' = 2y_1 + y_2, \quad y_2' = 2y_2. \tag{31}$$

These equations can be solved readily in reverse order—that is, by starting with the equation for y_2. In this way we obtain

$$y_2(t) = c_1 e^{2t} \quad \text{and} \quad y_1(t) = c_1 t e^{2t} + c_2 e^{2t}. \tag{32}$$

Thus two independent solutions of the system (30) are

$$\mathbf{y}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{y}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \tag{33}$$

and the corresponding fundamental matrix is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Psi}}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} & te^{2t} \\ 0 & e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{34}$$

Since $\hat{\boldsymbol{\Psi}}(0) = \mathbf{I}$, we can also identify the matrix in equation (34) as $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$. The same result can be reached by calculating powers of $\mathbf{J}$ and substituting them into the exponential series (see Problems 19 through 21). To obtain a fundamental matrix for the original system, we now form the product

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \mathbf{T}\exp(\mathbf{J}t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} & te^{2t} \\ -e^{2t} & -e^{2t} - te^{2t} \end{pmatrix}, \tag{35}$$

which is the same as the fundamental matrix given in equation (25).

We will not discuss $n \times n$ systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ in more detail here. For large n it is possible that there may be eigenvalues of high algebraic multiplicity m, perhaps with much lower geometric multiplicity q, thus giving rise to $m - q$ generalized eigenvectors. Problems 17 and 18 explore the use of Jordan forms for systems of three differential equations. For $n \geq 4$ there may also be repeated complex eigenvalues. A full discussion[9] of the Jordan form of a general $n \times n$ matrix requires a greater background in linear algebra than we assume for most readers of this book.

[9]For example, see the books listed in the References at the end of this chapter.

The amount of arithmetic required in the analysis of a general $n \times n$ system may be prohibitive to do by hand even if n is no greater than 3 or 4. Consequently, suitable computer software should be used routinely in most cases. This does not overcome all difficulties by any means, but it does make many problems much more tractable. Finally, for a set of equations arising from modeling a physical system, it is likely that some of the elements in the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ result from measurements of some physical quantity. The inevitable uncertainties in such measurements lead to uncertainties in the values of the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$. For example, in such a case it may not be clear whether two eigenvalues are actually equal or are merely close together.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3:

a. Draw a direction field and sketch a few trajectories.

G **b.** Describe how the solutions behave as $t \to \infty$.

c. Find the general solution of the system of equations.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 8 & -4 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} & 1 \\ -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 4 and 5, find the general solution of the given system of equations.

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 6 through 8:

a. Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

b. Sketch the trajectory of the solution in the x_1x_2-plane, and also sketch the graph of x_1 versus t.

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 4 & -7 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{5}{2} & \frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 9 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

In each of Problems 9 and 10:

a. Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

G **b.** Draw the corresponding trajectory in $x_1x_2x_3$-space.

c. Sketch the graph of x_1 versus t.

9. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 6 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -30 \end{pmatrix}$

10. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{5}{2} & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\frac{5}{2} & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -\frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

In each of Problems 11 and 12, solve the given system of equations by the method of Problem 13 of Section 7.5. Assume that $t > 0$.

11. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

12. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 4 & -7 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

13. Show that all solutions of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$$

approach zero as $t \to \infty$ if and only if $a + d < 0$ and $ad - bc > 0$. Compare this result with that of Problem 28 in Section 3.4.

14. Consider again the electric circuit in Problem 21 of Section 7.6. This circuit is described by the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{L} \\ -\frac{1}{C} & -\frac{1}{RC} \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}.$$

a. Show that the eigenvalues are real and equal if $L = 4R^2C$.

b. Suppose that $R = 1\ \Omega$, $C = 1$ F, and $L = 4$ H. Suppose also that $I(0) = 1$ A and $V(0) = 2$ V. Find $I(t)$ and $V(t)$.

15. Consider again the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} \tag{36}$$

that we discussed in Example 2. We found there that $\mathbf{A}$ has a double eigenvalue $r_1 = r_2 = 2$ with a single independent eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = (1, -1)^T$, or any nonzero multiple thereof. Thus one solution of the system (36) is $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{2t}$ and a second independent solution has the form

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}te^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta}e^{2t},$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}, \quad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}. \tag{37}$$

In the text we solved the first equation for $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and then the second equation for $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. Here, we ask you to proceed in the reverse order.

a. Show that η satisfies $(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})^2\eta = \mathbf{0}$.
b. Show that $(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})^2 = \mathbf{0}$. Thus the generalized eigenvector η can be chosen arbitrarily, except that it must be independent of $\xi^{(1)}$.
c. Let $\eta = (0, -1)^T$. Then determine ξ from the second of equations (37) and observe that $\xi = (1, -1)^T = \xi^{(1)}$. This choice of η reproduces the solution found in Example 2.
d. Let $\eta = (1, 0)^T$ and determine the corresponding eigenvector ξ.
e. Let $\eta = (k_1, k_2)^T$, where k_1 and k_2 are arbitrary numbers. What condition on k_1 and k_2 ensures that η and $\xi^{(1)}$ are linearly independent? Then determine ξ. How is it related to the eigenvector $\xi^{(1)}$?

16. In Example 2, with $\mathbf{A}$ given in equation (36) above, it was claimed that equation (16) is solvable even though the matrix $\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I}$ is singular. This problem justifies that claim.
a. Find all eigenvalues and eigenvectors for $\mathbf{A}^*$, the adjoint of $\mathbf{A}$.
b. Show that the eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ and the corresponding eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}^*$ are orthogonal.
c. Explain why this proves that equation (16) is solvable.

Eigenvalues of Multiplicity 3. If the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ has an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 3, then there may be either one, two, or three corresponding linearly independent eigenvectors. The general solution of the system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ is different, depending on the number of eigenvectors associated with the triple eigenvalue. As noted in the text, there is no difficulty if there are three eigenvectors, since then there are three independent solutions of the form $\mathbf{x} = \xi e^{rt}$. The following two problems illustrate the solution procedure for a triple eigenvalue with one or two eigenvectors, respectively.

17. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}. \tag{38}$$

a. Show that $r = 2$ is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 3 of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and that there is only one corresponding eigenvector, namely,

$$\xi^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

b. Using the information in part a, write down one solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ of the system (38). There is no other solution of the purely exponential form $\mathbf{x} = \xi e^{rt}$.
c. To find a second solution, assume that $\mathbf{x} = \xi t e^{2t} + \eta e^{2t}$. Show that ξ and η satisfy the equations

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\xi = \mathbf{0}, \qquad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\eta = \xi.$$

Since ξ has already been found in part a, solve the second equation for η. Neglect the multiple of $\xi^{(1)}$ that appears in η, since it leads only to a multiple of the first solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$. Then write down a second solution $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ of the system (38).
d. To find a third solution, assume that

$$\mathbf{x} = \xi \frac{t^2}{2} e^{2t} + \eta t e^{2t} + \zeta e^{2t}.$$

Show that ξ, η, and ζ satisfy the equations

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\xi = \mathbf{0}, \qquad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\eta = \xi, \qquad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\zeta = \eta.$$

The first two equations are the same as in part c, so solve the third equation for ζ, again neglecting the multiple of $\xi^{(1)}$ that appears. Then write down a third solution $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t)$ of the system (38).
e. Write down a fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$ for the system (38).
f. Form a matrix $\mathbf{T}$ with the eigenvector $\xi^{(1)}$ in the first column and the generalized eigenvectors η and ζ in the second and third columns. Then find $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ and form the product $\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T}$. The matrix $\mathbf{J}$ is the Jordan form of $\mathbf{A}$.

18. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -3 & -2 \\ 8 & -5 & -4 \\ -4 & 3 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}. \tag{39}$$

a. Show that $r = 1$ is a triple eigenvalue of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and that there are only two linearly independent eigenvectors, which we may take as

$$\xi^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \xi^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{40}$$

Write down two linearly independent solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ of equation (39).
b. To find a third solution, assume that $\mathbf{x} = \xi t e^t + \eta e^t$; then show that ξ and η must satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{I})\xi = \mathbf{0}, \tag{41}$$

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{I})\eta = \xi. \tag{42}$$

c. Equation (41) is satisfied if ξ is an eigenvector, so one way to proceed is to choose ξ to be a suitable linear combination of $\xi^{(1)}$ and $\xi^{(2)}$ so that equation (42) is solvable, and then to solve that equation for η. However, let us proceed in a different way and follow the pattern of Problem 15. First, show that η satisfies

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{I})^2\eta = \mathbf{0}.$$

Further, show that $(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{I})^2 = \mathbf{0}$. Thus η can be chosen arbitrarily, except that it must be independent of $\xi^{(1)}$ and $\xi^{(2)}$.
d. A convenient choice for η is $\eta = (0, 0, 1)^T$. Find the corresponding ξ from equation (42). Verify that ξ is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{A}$.
e. Write down a fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$ for the system (39).
f. Form a matrix $\mathbf{T}$ with the eigenvector $\xi^{(1)}$ in the first column and with the eigenvector ξ from part d and the generalized eigenvector η in the other two columns. Find $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ and form the product $\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T}$. The matrix $\mathbf{J}$ is the Jordan form of $\mathbf{A}$.

19. Let $\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 1 \\ 0 & \lambda \end{pmatrix}$, where λ is an arbitrary real number.
a. Find $\mathbf{J}^2$, $\mathbf{J}^3$, and $\mathbf{J}^4$.
b. Use an inductive argument to show that $\mathbf{J}^n = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1} \\ 0 & \lambda^n \end{pmatrix}$.
c. Determine $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$.
d. Use $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$ to solve the initial value problem $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{J}\mathbf{x}$, $\mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0$.

20. Let

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda \end{pmatrix},$$

where λ is an arbitrary real number.

a. Find $\mathbf{J}^2$, $\mathbf{J}^3$, and $\mathbf{J}^4$.
b. Use an inductive argument to show that

$$\mathbf{J}^n = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^n & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1} \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda^n \end{pmatrix}.$$

c. Determine $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$.
d. Observe that if you choose $\lambda = 1$, then the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in this problem is the same as the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in Problem 18f. Using the matrix $\mathbf{T}$ from Problem 18f, form the product $\mathbf{T}\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$ with $\lambda = 1$.
e. Is the resulting matrix the same as the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ in Problem 18e? If not, explain the discrepancy.

21. Let

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda \end{pmatrix},$$

where λ is an arbitrary real number.
a. Find $\mathbf{J}^2$, $\mathbf{J}^3$, and $\mathbf{J}^4$.
b. Use an inductive argument to show that

$$\mathbf{J}^n = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1} & \frac{1}{2}n(n-1)\lambda^{n-2} \\ 0 & \lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1} \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda^n \end{pmatrix}.$$

c. Determine $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$.
d. Note that if you choose $\lambda = 2$, then the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in this problem is the same as the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in Problem 17f. Using the matrix $\mathbf{T}$ from Problem 17f, form the product $\mathbf{T}\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$ with $\lambda = 2$. The resulting matrix is the same as the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ in Problem 17e. If not, explain the discrepancy.

7.9 Nonhomogeneous Linear Systems

In this section we turn to the nonhomogeneous system of linear first-order differential equations

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t), \tag{1}$$

where the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{P}(t)$ and $n \times 1$ vector $\mathbf{g}(t)$ are continuous for $\alpha < t < \beta$. By the same argument as in Section 3.5 (see also Problem 12 in this section), the general solution of equation (1) can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) + \mathbf{v}(t), \tag{2}$$

where $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ is the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x}$, and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ is a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous system (1). We will briefly describe several methods for determining $\mathbf{v}(t)$.

Diagonalization. We begin with systems of the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t), \tag{3}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is an $n \times n$ diagonalizable constant matrix. By diagonalizing the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$, as indicated in Section 7.7, we can transform equation (3) into a system of equations that is readily solved.

Let $\mathbf{T}$ be the matrix whose columns are the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ of $\mathbf{A}$, and define a new dependent variable $\mathbf{y}$ by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}. \tag{4}$$

Then, substituting for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (3), we obtain

$$\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{g}(t).$$

When we multiply this equation (on the left) by $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$, it follows that

$$\mathbf{y}' = (\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T})\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{g}(t) = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{h}(t), \tag{5}$$

where $\mathbf{h}(t) = \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{g}(t)$ and where $\mathbf{D}$ is the diagonal matrix whose diagonal entries are the eigenvalues $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ of $\mathbf{A}$, arranged in the same order as the corresponding eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ that appear as columns of $\mathbf{T}$. Equation (5) is a system of n *uncoupled* first-order linear differential equations for $y_1(t), \ldots, y_n(t)$; as a consequence, the differential equations can be solved separately. In scalar form, equation (5) has the form

$$y_j'(t) = r_j y_j(t) + h_j(t), \quad j = 1, \ldots, n, \tag{6}$$

where $h_j(t)$ is a certain linear combination of $g_1(t), \ldots, g_n(t)$. Equation (6) is a first-order linear differential equation and can be solved by the methods of Section 2.1. In fact, we have

$$y_j(t) = e^{r_j t}\int_{t_0}^{t} e^{-r_j s} h_j(s)\,ds + c_j e^{r_j t}, \qquad j = 1, \ldots, n, \tag{7}$$

where the c_j are arbitrary constants. Finally, the solution $\mathbf{x}$ of equation (3) is obtained from equation (4). When multiplied by the transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$, the second term on the right-hand side of equation (7) produces the general solution of the homogeneous equation $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$, while the first term on the right-hand side of equation (7) yields a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous system (3).

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 2e^{-t} \\ 3t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{8}$$

Solution:

Proceeding as in Section 7.5, we find that the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix are $r_1 = -3$ and $r_2 = -1$ and that the corresponding eigenvectors are

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{9}$$

Thus the general solution of the homogeneous system is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-3t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}. \tag{10}$$

Before writing down the matrix $\mathbf{T}$ of eigenvectors, we recall that eventually we must find $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$. The coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is real and symmetric, so we can use the result stated just above Example 3 in Section 7.7: $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ is simply the adjoint, which here (since $\mathbf{T}$ is real) is just the transpose of $\mathbf{T}$, provided that the eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ are normalized to have length 1, that is, $(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\xi}) = 1$. Hence, because both $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ have length $\sqrt{2}$, we define

$$\mathbf{T} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{and so} \quad \mathbf{T}^{-1} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11}$$

Letting $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}$ and substituting for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (8), we obtain the following system of equations for the new dependent variable $\mathbf{y}$:

$$\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{g}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{y} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{pmatrix} 2e^{-t} - 3t \\ 2e^{-t} + 3t \end{pmatrix}. \tag{12}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} y_1' + 3y_1 &= \sqrt{2}e^{-t} - \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}t, \\ y_2' + y_2 &= \sqrt{2}e^{-t} + \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}t. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

Each of equations (13) is a first-order linear differential equation and so can be solved by the methods of Section 2.1. In this way we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{-t} - \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{t}{3} - \frac{1}{9}\right) + c_1 e^{-3t}, \\ y_2 &= \sqrt{2}te^{-t} + \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}(t-1) + c_2 e^{-t}. \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

Finally, we write the solution in terms of the original variables:

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{pmatrix} y_1 + y_2 \\ -y_1 + y_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \dfrac{c_1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-3t} + \left(\dfrac{c_2}{\sqrt{2}} + \dfrac{1}{2}\right)e^{-t} + t - \dfrac{4}{3} + te^{-t} \\ -\dfrac{c_1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-3t} + \left(\dfrac{c_2}{\sqrt{2}} - \dfrac{1}{2}\right)e^{-t} + 2t - \dfrac{5}{3} + te^{-t} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= k_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-3t} + k_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}te^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}t - \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{15}$$

where $k_1 = c_1/\sqrt{2}$ and $k_2 = c_2/\sqrt{2}$. The first two terms on the right-hand side of equation (15) form the general solution of the homogeneous system corresponding to equation (8). The remaining terms are a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous system.

If the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ in equation (3) is not diagonalizable (because of repeated eigenvalues and a shortage of eigenvectors), it can nevertheless be reduced to a Jordan form $\mathbf{J}$ by a suitable transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ involving both eigenvectors and generalized eigenvectors. In this case the differential equations for $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ are not totally uncoupled since some rows of $\mathbf{J}$ have two nonzero elements: an eigenvalue in the diagonal position and a 1 in the adjacent position to the right. However, the equations for $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ can still be solved consecutively, starting with y_n. Then the solution of the original system (3) can be found by the relation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}$.

Undetermined Coefficients. A second way to find a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous system (1) is the method of undetermined coefficients that we first discussed in Section 3.5. To use this method, we assume the form of the solution with some or all of the coefficients unspecified, and then seek to determine these coefficients so as to satisfy the differential equation. As a practical matter, this method is applicable only if the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{P}$ is a constant matrix, and if the components of $\mathbf{g}$ are polynomial, exponential, or sinusoidal functions, or sums or products of these. In these cases the correct form of the solution can be predicted in a simple and systematic manner. The procedure for choosing the form of the solution is substantially the same as that given in Section 3.5 for a single linear second-order differential equation. The main difference is illustrated by the case of a nonhomogeneous term of the form $\mathbf{u}e^{\lambda t}$, where λ is a simple root of the characteristic equation. In this situation, rather than assuming a solution of the form $\mathbf{a}te^{\lambda t}$, it is necessary to use $\mathbf{a}te^{\lambda t} + \mathbf{b}e^{\lambda t}$, where $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are determined by substituting into the differential equation.

EXAMPLE 2

Use the method of undetermined coefficients to find a particular solution of

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 2e^{-t} \\ 3t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{16}$$

Solution:

This is the same system of equations as in Example 1. To use the method of undetermined coefficients, we write $\mathbf{g}(t)$ in the form

$$\mathbf{g}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}t. \tag{17}$$

Observe that $r = -1$ is an eigenvalue of the coefficient matrix, and therefore we must include both $\mathbf{a}te^{-t}$ and $\mathbf{b}e^{-t}$ in the assumed solution. Thus we assume that

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v}(t) = \mathbf{a}te^{-t} + \mathbf{b}e^{-t} + \mathbf{c}t + \mathbf{d}, \tag{18}$$

where **a**, **b**, **c**, and **d** are vectors to be determined. Substituting equation (18) into equation (16) and collecting like terms, we obtain the following algebraic equations for **a**, **b**, **c**, and **d**:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Aa} &= -\mathbf{a}, \\ \mathbf{Ab} &= \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \mathbf{Ac} &= -\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \mathbf{Ad} &= \mathbf{c}. \end{aligned} \tag{19}$$

From the first of equations (19), we see that **a** is an eigenvector of **A** corresponding to the eigenvalue $r = -1$. Thus $\mathbf{a} = (\alpha, \alpha)^T$, where α is any nonzero constant. Then we find that the second of equations (19) can be solved only if $\alpha = 1$ and that, in this case,

$$\mathbf{b} = k\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{20}$$

for any constant k. The simplest choice is $k = 0$, from which $\mathbf{b} = (0, -1)^T$.

Then the third and fourth of equations (19) yield $\mathbf{c} = (1, 2)^T$ and $\mathbf{d} = -\frac{1}{3}(4, 5)^T$, respectively. Then, substituting **a**, **b**, **c**, and **d** into equation (18) we obtain the particular solution

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} te^{-t} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} t - \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{21}$$

The particular solution (21) is not identical to the one contained in equation (15) of Example 1 because the term in e^{-t} is different. However, if we choose $k = \frac{1}{2}$ in equation (20), then $\mathbf{b} = -\frac{1}{2}(1, 1)^T$ and the two particular solutions agree.

Variation of Parameters. Now let us turn to more general problems in which the coefficient matrix is not constant or not diagonalizable. Let

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t), \tag{22}$$

where $\mathbf{P}(t)$ and $\mathbf{g}(t)$ are continuous on $\alpha < t < \beta$. Assume that a fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ for the corresponding homogeneous system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} \tag{23}$$

has been found. We use the method of variation of parameters to construct a particular solution, and hence the general solution, of the nonhomogeneous system (22).

Since the general solution of the homogeneous system (23) is $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{c}$, it is natural to proceed as in Section 3.6 and to seek a solution of the nonhomogeneous system (22) by replacing the constant vector **c** by a vector function $\mathbf{u}(t)$. Thus we assume that

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}(t), \tag{24}$$

where $\mathbf{u}(t)$ is a vector to be found. Upon differentiating **x** as given by equation (24) and requiring that equation (22) be satisfied, we obtain

$$\mathbf{\Psi}'(t)\mathbf{u}(t) + \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}'(t) = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}(t) + \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{25}$$

Since $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ is a fundamental matrix, $\mathbf{\Psi}'(t) = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$; hence equation (25) reduces to

$$\mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}'(t) = \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{26}$$

Recall that $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ is nonsingular on any interval where **P** is continuous. Hence $\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t)$ exists, and therefore

$$\mathbf{u}'(t) = \mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t)\mathbf{g}(t). \tag{27}$$

Thus for $\mathbf{u}(t)$ we can select any vector from the class of vectors that satisfy equation (27). These vectors are determined only up to an arbitrary additive constant vector; therefore, we denote $\mathbf{u}(t)$ by

$$\mathbf{u}(t) = \int \mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t)\mathbf{g}(t)\,dt + \mathbf{c}, \tag{28}$$

where the constant vector $\mathbf{c}$ is arbitrary. If the integrals in equation (28) can be evaluated, then the general solution of the system (22) is found by substituting for $\mathbf{u}(t)$ from equation (28) in equation (24). However, even if the integrals cannot be evaluated, we can still write the general solution of equation (22) in the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\int_{t_1}^{t} \mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(s)\mathbf{g}(s)\,ds, \tag{29}$$

where t_1 is any point in the interval (α, β). The first term on the right-hand side of equation (29) is the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous system (23), and the second term is a particular solution of equation (22).

Now let us consider the initial value problem consisting of the differential equation (22) and the initial condition

$$\mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}^0. \tag{30}$$

We can find the solution of this problem most conveniently if we choose the lower limit of integration in equation (29) to be the initial point t_0. Then the general solution of the differential equation is

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(s)\mathbf{g}(s)\,ds. \tag{31}$$

For $t = t_0$ the integral in equation (31) is zero, so the initial condition (30) is also satisfied if we choose

$$\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{32}$$

Therefore,

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)\mathbf{x}^0 + \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(s)\mathbf{g}(s)\,ds \tag{33}$$

is the solution of the given initial value problem. Again, although it is helpful to use $\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}$ to write the solutions (29) and (33), it is usually better in particular cases to solve the necessary equations by row reduction than to calculate $\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}$ and to substitute into equations (29) and (33).

The solution (33) takes a slightly simpler form if we use the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ satisfying $\mathbf{\Phi}(t_0) = \mathbf{I}$. In this case we have

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}^0 + \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(s)\mathbf{g}(s)\,ds. \tag{34}$$

Equation (34) can be simplified further if the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{P}(t)$ is a constant matrix (see Problem 16).

EXAMPLE 3

Use the method of variation of parameters to find the general solution of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 2e^{-t} \\ 3t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{35}$$

This is the same system of equations as in Examples 1 and 2.

Solution:

The general solution of the corresponding homogeneous system was given in equation (10). Thus

$$\mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-3t} & e^{-t} \\ -e^{-3t} & e^{-t} \end{pmatrix} \tag{36}$$

is a fundamental matrix. Then the solution $\mathbf{x}$ of equation (35) is given by $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}(t)$, where $\mathbf{u}(t)$ satisfies $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}'(t) = \mathbf{g}(t)$, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} e^{-3t} & e^{-t} \\ -e^{-3t} & e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u_1' \\ u_2' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2e^{-t} \\ 3t \end{pmatrix}. \tag{37}$$

Solving equation (37) by row reduction, we obtain

$$u_1' = e^{2t} - \frac{3}{2}te^{3t},$$

$$u_2' = 1 + \frac{3}{2}te^{t}.$$

Hence

$$u_1(t) = \frac{1}{2}e^{2t} - \frac{1}{2}te^{3t} + \frac{1}{6}e^{3t} + c_1,$$

$$u_2(t) = t + \frac{3}{2}te^{t} - \frac{3}{2}e^{t} + c_2,$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}(t) \\ &= c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-3t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}te^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}t - \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix},\end{aligned} \tag{38}$$

which is the same as the solution obtained in Example 1 (compare with equation (15)) and is equivalent to the solution obtained in Example 2 (compare with equation (21)).

Laplace Transforms. We used the Laplace transform in Chapter 6 to solve linear equations of arbitrary order. It can also be used in very much the same way to solve systems of equations. Since the transform is an integral, the transform of a vector is computed component by component. Thus $\mathcal{L}\{\mathbf{x}(t)\}$ is the vector whose components are the transforms of the respective components of $\mathbf{x}(t)$, and similarly for $\mathcal{L}\{\mathbf{x}'(t)\}$. We will denote $\mathcal{L}\{\mathbf{x}(t)\}$ by $\mathbf{X}(s)$. Then, by an extension of Theorem 6.2.1 to vectors, we also have

$$\mathcal{L}\{\mathbf{x}'(t)\} = s\mathbf{X}(s) - \mathbf{x}(0). \tag{39}$$

EXAMPLE 4

Use the method of Laplace transforms to solve the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 2e^{-t} \\ 3t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{40}$$

This is the same system of equations as in Examples 1, 2, and 3.

Solution:

We take the Laplace transform of each term in equation (40), obtaining

$$s\mathbf{X}(s) - \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{X}(s) + \mathbf{G}(s), \tag{41}$$

where $\mathbf{G}(s)$ is the transform of $\mathbf{g}(t)$. The transform $\mathbf{G}(s)$ is given by

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = \begin{pmatrix} \dfrac{2}{s+1} \\ \dfrac{3}{s^2} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{42}$$

To proceed further we need to choose the initial vector $\mathbf{x}(0)$. For simplicity let us choose $\mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{0}$. Then equation (41) becomes

$$(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})\mathbf{X}(s) = \mathbf{G}(s), \tag{43}$$

where, as usual, $\mathbf{I}$ is the 2×2 identity matrix. Consequently, $\mathbf{X}(s)$ is given by

$$\mathbf{X}(s) = (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{G}(s). \tag{44}$$

The matrix $(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}$ is called the **transfer matrix** because multiplying it by the transform of the input vector $\mathbf{g}(t)$ yields the transform of the output vector $\mathbf{x}(t)$. In this example we have

$$s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} s+2 & -1 \\ -1 & s+2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{45}$$

and by a straightforward calculation, we obtain

$$(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1} = \frac{1}{(s+1)(s+3)} \begin{pmatrix} s+2 & 1 \\ 1 & s+2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{46}$$

Then, substituting from equations (42) and (46) in equation (44) and carrying out the indicated multiplication, we find that

$$\mathbf{X}(s) = \begin{pmatrix} \dfrac{2(s+2)}{(s+1)^2(s+3)} + \dfrac{3}{s^2(s+1)(s+3)} \\[2ex] \dfrac{2}{(s+1)^2(s+3)} + \dfrac{3(s+2)}{s^2(s+1)(s+3)} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{47}$$

Finally, we need to obtain the solution $\mathbf{x}(t)$ from its transform $\mathbf{X}(s)$. This can be done by expanding the expressions in equation (47) in partial fractions and using Table 6.2.1, or (more efficiently) by using appropriate computational tools. In any case, after some simplification the result is

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} - \frac{2}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-3t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} te^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} t - \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{48}$$

Equation (48) gives the particular solution of system (40) that satisfies the initial condition $\mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{0}$. As a result, it differs slightly from the particular solutions obtained in the preceding three examples. To obtain the general solution of equation (40), you must add to the expression in equation (48) the general solution (10) of the homogeneous system corresponding to equation (40).

Each of the methods for solving nonhomogeneous equations has its own advantages and disadvantages. The method of undetermined coefficients requires no integration, but it is limited in scope and may entail the solution of several sets of algebraic equations. The method of diagonalization requires finding the inverse of the transformation matrix and the solution of a set of uncoupled first-order linear differential equations, followed by a matrix multiplication. Its main advantage is that for Hermitian coefficient matrices, the inverse of the transformation matrix can be written down without calculation—a feature that is more important for large systems. The method of Laplace transforms involves a matrix inversion to find the transfer matrix, followed by a multiplication, and finally by the determination of the inverse transform of each term in the resulting expression. It is particularly useful in problems with forcing functions that involve discontinuous or impulsive terms. Variation of parameters is the most general method. On the other hand, it involves the solution of a set of linear algebraic equations with variable coefficients, followed by an integration and a matrix multiplication, so it may also be the most complicated from a computational viewpoint. For many small systems with constant coefficients, such as the one in the examples in this section, all of these methods work well, and there may be little reason to select one over another.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8 find the general solution of the given system of equations.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} e^t \\ t \end{pmatrix}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} -\cos t \\ \sin t \end{pmatrix}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} e^{-2t} \\ -2e^t \end{pmatrix}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 8 & -4 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} t^{-3} \\ -t^{-2} \end{pmatrix}, \quad t > 0$

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^t$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^t$

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & \sqrt{2} \\ \sqrt{2} & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \cos t \end{pmatrix}, \quad 0 < t < \pi$

9. The electric circuit shown in Figure 7.9.1 is described by the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{8} \\ 2 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} I(t), \tag{49}$$

where x_1 is the current through the inductor, x_2 is the voltage drop across the capacitor, and $I(t)$ is the current supplied by the external source.

a. Determine a fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ for the homogeneous system corresponding to equation (49). Refer to Problem 20 of Section 7.6.

b. If $I(t) = e^{-t/2}$, determine the solution of the system (49) that also satisfies the initial conditions $\mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{0}$.

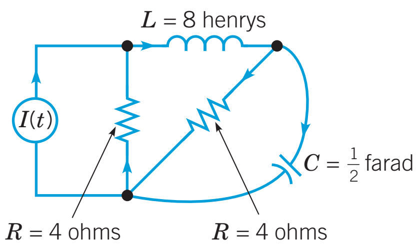


FIGURE 7.9.1 The circuit in Problem 9.

In each of Problems 10 and 11, verify that the given vector is the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous system, and then solve the nonhomogeneous system. Assume that $t > 0$.

10. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 - t^2 \\ 2t \end{pmatrix}$,

$\mathbf{x}^{(c)} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}t + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}t^{-1}$

11. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} -2t \\ t^4 - 1 \end{pmatrix}$,

$\mathbf{x}^{(c)} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}t^{-1} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}t^2$

12. Let $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\phi}(t)$ be the general solution of $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t)$, and let $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v}(t)$ be some particular solution of the same system. By considering the difference $\boldsymbol{\phi}(t) - \mathbf{v}(t)$, show that $\boldsymbol{\phi}(t) = \mathbf{u}(t) + \mathbf{v}(t)$, where $\mathbf{u}(t)$ is the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x}$.

Alternate Derivation of Variation of Parameters. When we first encountered variation of parameters for a second-order linear differential equation in Section 3.6 and again for higher-order linear differential equations in Section 4.4, some of the equations used to determine the unknown variable coefficients appeared to have been chosen primarily to prevent higher-order derivatives of the unknown variable coefficients from entering into the process. In fact, as we show in Problems 13 through 15, the variation of parameter equations are completely explained when viewed from the perspective of the equivalent system of first-order linear differential equations. Problems 13 and 14 reconsider two problems from Section 3.6; Problem 15 shows that this connection is true for any second-order linear differential equation. The same ideas can be used to explain variation of parameters for higher-order linear differential equations.[10]

In Problems 13 and 14, you are given a nonhomogeneous second-order linear differential equation and two linearly independent solutions, y_1 and y_2, to the corresponding homogeneous differential equation. Use this information to complete the following steps:

a. Find the equivalent nonhomogeneous system of first-order linear differential equations for $x_1 = y$ and $x_2 = y'$.

b. Show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (y_1, y_1')^T$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (y_2, y_2')^T$ are solutions to the homogeneous system of differential equations corresponding to the system found in a. (As a consequence, $\mathbf{\Psi} = \left(\mathbf{x}^{(1)} | \mathbf{x}^{(2)}\right)$ is a fundamental matrix for the same homogeneous system.)

c. Find the variation of parameters equations that have to be satisfied for $y = y_1(t)u_1(t) + y_2(t)u_2(t)$ to be a particular solution of the given nonhomogeneous second-order differential equation.

d. Find the variation of parameters equations that have to be satisfied for $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{u}(t)$ to be a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous system of first-order linear differential equations found in a.

e. Use the definition of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ in b to show that the systems of equations found in c and the equations found in d are equivalent.

13. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 2e^t$, $y_1 = e^{2t}$, $y_2 = e^{3t}$ (Problem 1, Section 3.6)

14. $t^2y'' - t(t+2)y' + (t+2)y = 2t^3$ $(t > 0)$, $y_1 = t$, $y_2 = te^t$ (Problem 11, Section 3.6)

15. Carry out steps a through e for the general nonhomogeneous second-order linear differential equation $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t)$, where $y_1 = y_1(t)$ and $y_2 = y_2(t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions to the corresponding homogeneous differential equation.

16. Consider the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t), \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0.$$

a. By referring to Problem 12c in Section 7.7, show that

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}^0 + \int_0^t \mathbf{\Phi}(t-s)\mathbf{g}(s)\,ds.$$

b. Show also that

$$\mathbf{x} = \exp(\mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0 + \int_0^t \exp(\mathbf{A}(t-s))\mathbf{g}(s)\,ds.$$

Compare these results with those of Problem 22 in Section 3.6.

[10] These problems were motivated by correspondence with Weishi Liu, University of Kansas.

17. Use the Laplace transform to solve the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 2e^{-t} \\ 3t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t) \tag{50}$$

used in the examples in this section. Instead of using zero initial conditions, as in Example 4, let

$$\mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{51}$$

where α_1 and α_2 are arbitrary. How must α_1 and α_2 be chosen so that the solution is identical to equation (38)?

References

Further information on matrices and linear algebra is available in any introductory book on the subject. Here is a representative sample:

Anton, H. and Rorres, C., *Elementary Linear Algebra* (10th ed.) (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2010).

Johnson, L. W., Riess, R. D., and Arnold, J. T., *Introduction to Linear Algebra* (6th ed.) (Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2008).

Kolman, B. and Hill, D. R., *Elementary Linear Algebra* (8th ed.) (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson, 2004).

Lay, D. C., *Linear Algebra and Its Applications* (4th ed.)(Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2012).

Leon, S. J., *Linear Algebra with Applications* (8th ed.) (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson/Prentice-Hall, 2010).

Strang, G., *Linear Algebra and Its Applications* (4th ed.)(Belmont, CA: Thomson, Brooks/Cole, 2006).

A more extended treatment of systems of first-order linear equations may be found in many books, including the following:

Coddington, E. A. and Carlson, R., *Linear Ordinary Differential Equations* (Philadelphia, PA: Society for Industrial and Applied Mahematics, 1997).

Hirsch, M. W., Smale, S., and Devaney, R. L., *Differential Equations, Dynamical Systems, and an Introduction to Chaos* (2nd ed.)(San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 2004).

The following book treats elementary differential equations with a particular emphasis on systems of first-order equations:

Brannan, J. R. and Boyce, W. E., *Differential Equations: An Introduction to Modern Methods and Applications* (3rd ed.) (New York: Wiley, 2015).

CHAPTER 8

Numerical Methods

Up to this point we have discussed methods for solving differential equations by using analytical techniques such as integration or series expansions. Usually, the emphasis was on finding an exact expression for the solution. Unfortunately, there are many important problems in engineering and science, especially nonlinear ones, to which these methods either do not apply or are very complicated to use. In this chapter we discuss an alternative approach, the use of numerical approximation methods to obtain an accurate approximation to the solution of an initial value problem. We present these methods in the simplest possible context, namely, a single scalar first-order equation. However, they can readily be extended to systems of first-order equations, and this is outlined briefly in Section 8.5. The procedures described here can be executed easily on a wide variety of computational devices, from smartphones to supercomputers.

8.1 The Euler or Tangent Line Method

To discuss the development and use of numerical approximation procedures, we will concentrate mainly on the first-order initial value problem consisting of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y) \tag{1}$$

and the initial condition

$$y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{2}$$

We assume that the functions f and f_y are continuous on some rectangle in the ty-plane containing the point (t_0, y_0). Then, by Theorem 2.4.2, there exists a unique solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the given problem in some interval about t_0. If equation (1) is nonlinear, then the interval of existence of the solution may be difficult to determine and may have no simple relationship to the function f. However, in all our discussions we assume that there is a unique solution of the initial value problem (1), (2) in the interval of interest.

In Section 2.7 we described the oldest and simplest numerical approximation method, namely, the Euler or tangent line method. To derive this method, let us write the differential equation (1) at the point $t = t_n$ in the form

$$\frac{d\phi}{dt}(t_n) = f(t_n, \phi(t_n)). \tag{3}$$

Then we approximate the derivative in equation (3) by the corresponding (forward) difference quotient, obtaining

$$\frac{\phi(t_{n+1}) - \phi(t_n)}{t_{n+1} - t_n} \cong f(t_n, \phi(t_n)). \tag{4}$$

Finally, if we replace $\phi(t_{n+1})$ and $\phi(t_n)$ by their approximate values y_{n+1} and y_n, respectively, and solve for y_{n+1}, we obtain the Euler formula

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + f(t_n, y_n)(t_{n+1} - t_n), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots . \tag{5}$$

If the step size $t_{n+1} - t_n$ has a uniform value h for all n and if we denote $f(t_n, y_n)$ by f_n, then equation (5) simplifies to

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf_n, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots . \tag{6}$$

Euler's method consists of repeatedly evaluating equation (5) or (6), using the result of each step to execute the next step. In this way we obtain a sequence of values $y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n, \ldots$ that approximate the values of the solution $\phi(t)$ at the points $t_0, t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_n, \ldots$.

A computer program for Euler's method has a structure such as that shown below. The specific instructions can be written in any convenient programming language.

The Euler Method

Step 1.	**define** $f(t, y)$
Step 2.	**input** initial values $t = t0$ and $y = y0$
Step 3.	**input** step size h and number of steps n
Step 4.	**output** $t0$ and $y0$
Step 5.	**for** j from 1 to n **do**
Step 6.	$f_n = f(t, y)$
	$y = y + h * f_n$
	$t = t + h$
Step 7.	**output** t and y
Step 8.	**end**

Some examples of Euler's method appear in Section 2.7. As another example, consider the initial value problem

$$y' = 1 - t + 4y, \tag{7}$$

$$y(0) = 1. \tag{8}$$

Equation (7) is a first-order linear equation, and you can easily verify that the solution satisfying the initial condition (8) is

$$y = \phi(t) = \frac{1}{4}t - \frac{3}{16} + \frac{19}{16}e^{4t}. \tag{9}$$

Since the exact solution is known, we do not need numerical methods to approximate the solution of the initial value problem (7), (8). On the other hand, the availability of the exact solution makes it easy to monitor the accuracy of any numerical procedure that we use on this problem. We will use this problem throughout the chapter to illustrate and to compare different numerical methods. The solutions of equation (7) diverge rather rapidly from each other, so we should expect that it will be fairly difficult to approximate the solution (9) well over any interval of moderate length. Indeed, this is the reason for choosing this particular problem; it will be relatively easy to observe the benefits of using more efficient methods.

EXAMPLE 1

Using the Euler formula (6) and step sizes $h = 0.05, 0.025, 0.01$, and 0.001, determine approximate values of the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the problem (7), (8) on the interval $0 \le t \le 2$.

Solution:

The indicated calculations were carried out on a computer, and some of the results are shown in Table 8.1.1. Their accuracy is not particularly impressive. For $h = 0.01$ the percentage error is 3.85% at $t = 0.5$, 7.49% at $t = 1.0$, and 14.4% at $t = 2.0$. The corresponding percentage errors for $h = 0.001$ are 0.40%, 0.79%, and 1.58%, respectively. Observe that if $h = 0.001$, then it requires 2000 steps to traverse the interval from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$. Thus considerable computation is needed to obtain even reasonably good accuracy for this problem using the Euler method. When we discuss other numerical approximation methods later in this chapter, we will find that it is possible to obtain comparable or better accuracy with much larger step sizes and many fewer computational steps.

TABLE 8.1.1 **A Comparison of Results for the Numerical Approximation of the Solution of $y' = 1 - t + 4y$, $y(0) = 1$ Using the Euler Method for Different Step Sizes h**

t	$h = 0.05$	$h = 0.025$	$h = 0.01$	$h = 0.001$	Exact
0.0	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000
0.1	1.5475000	1.5761188	1.5952901	1.6076289	1.6090418
0.2	2.3249000	2.4080117	2.4644587	2.5011159	2.5053299
0.3	3.4333560	3.6143837	3.7390345	3.8207130	3.8301388
0.4	5.0185326	5.3690304	5.6137120	5.7754845	5.7942260
0.5	7.2901870	7.9264062	8.3766865	8.6770692	8.7120041
1.0	45.588400	53.807866	60.037126	64.382558	64.897803
1.5	282.07187	361.75945	426.40818	473.55979	479.25919
2.0	1745.6662	2432.7878	3029.3279	3484.1608	3540.2001

To begin to investigate the errors in using numerical approximations, and also to suggest ways to construct more accurate algorithms, it is helpful to mention some alternative ways to look at the Euler method.

One way to proceed is to write the problem as an integral equation. Let $y = \phi(t)$ be the solution of the initial value problem (1), (2); then, by integrating from t_n to t_{n+1}, we obtain

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \phi'(t)\,dt = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, \phi(t))\,dt,$$

or

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) = \phi(t_n) + \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, \phi(t))\,dt. \tag{10}$$

The integral in equation (10) is represented geometrically as the area under the curve in Figure 8.1.1 between $t = t_n$ and $t = t_{n+1}$. If we approximate the integral by replacing $f(t, \phi(t))$ by its value $f(t_n, \phi(t_n))$ at $t = t_n$, then we are approximating the actual area by the area of the shaded rectangle. Assuming each step is of size h, that is, $t_{n+1} - t_n = h$ for all n, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(t_{n+1}) &\cong \phi(t_n) + f(t_n, \phi(t_n))(t_{n+1} - t_n) \\ &= \phi(t_n) + hf(t_n, \phi(t_n)). \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

Finally, to obtain an approximation y_{n+1} for $\phi(t_{n+1})$, we make a second approximation by replacing $\phi(t_n)$ by its approximate value y_n in equation (11). This gives the Euler formula $y_{n+1} = y_n + hf(t_n, y_n)$. A more accurate algorithm can be obtained by approximating the integral more accurately. This is discussed in Section 8.2.

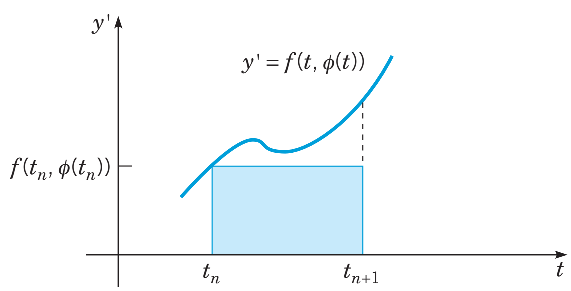


FIGURE 8.1.1 Integral derivation of the Euler method.

Another approach is to assume that the solution $y = \phi(t)$ has a Taylor series about the point t_n. Then

$$\phi(t_n + h) = \phi(t_n) + \phi'(t_n)h + \phi''(t_n)\frac{h^2}{2!} + \cdots,$$

or

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) = \phi(t_n) + f(t_n, \phi(t_n))h + \phi''(t_n)\frac{h^2}{2!} + \cdots. \tag{12}$$

If the series is terminated after the first two terms, and $\phi(t_{n+1})$ and $\phi(t_n)$ are replaced by their approximate values y_{n+1} and y_n, we again obtain the Euler formula (6). If more terms in the series are retained, a more accurate formula is obtained. Further, by using a Taylor series with a remainder, it is possible to estimate the magnitude of the error in the formula. This is discussed later in this section.

The Backward Euler Formula. A variation on the Euler formula can be obtained by approximating the definite integral in integral equation (10) by the area of the rectangle with height determined by the value of the function at the right-hand end of the interval. That is,

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) \cong \phi(t_n) + f\big(t_{n+1}, \phi(t_{n+1})\big)(t_{n+1} - t_n).$$

This yields what is commonly known as the **backward Euler formula**

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1}). \tag{13}$$

Assuming that y_n is known and y_{n+1} is to be calculated, observe that equation (13) does not provide an explicit formula for y_{n+1}. Rather, it is an equation that implicitly defines y_{n+1} and must be solved to determine the value of y_{n+1}. For this reason this method is sometimes referred to as the **implicit Euler formula**. How difficult it is to solve for y_{n+1} depends entirely on the nature of the function f.

EXAMPLE 2

Use the backward Euler formula (13) and step sizes $h = 0.05$, 0.025, 0.01, and 0.001 to find approximate values of the solution of the initial value problem (7), (8) on the interval $0 \leq t \leq 2$.

Solution:

For this problem, the backward Euler formula (13) becomes

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + h(1 - t_{n+1} + 4y_{n+1}).$$

Because the differential equation (7) is linear, the above equation for y_{n+1} is also linear. Solving this equation for y_{n+1}, we obtain

$$y_{n+1} = \frac{y_n + h\big(1 - t_{n+1}\big)}{1 - 4h}.$$

At the first step with $h = 0.05$ and $n = 0$, we have

$$y_1 = y_0 + h(1 - t_1 + 4y_1) = 1 + (0.05)(1 - 0.05 + 4y_1).$$

Solving this equation for y_1, we obtain

$$y_1 = \frac{1.0475}{0.8} = 1.309375.$$

Then, using the formula for y_{n+1} with $n = 1$, we find that

$$y_2 = y_1 + h(1 - t_2 + 4y_2) = 1.309375 + (0.05)(1 - 0.1 + 4y_2),$$

and thus

$$y_2 = \frac{1.354375}{0.8} = 1.69296875.$$

Continuing the computations, we obtain the results shown in Table 8.1.2. The values given by the backward Euler method are uniformly too large for this problem, whereas the values obtained from the Euler method were too small. In this problem the errors are somewhat larger for the backward Euler method than for the Euler method, although for small values of h the differences are insignificant.

TABLE 8.1.2 **A Comparison of Results for the Numerical Approximation of the Solution of $y' = 1 - t + 4y$, $y(0) = 1$ Using the Backward Euler Method for Different Step Sizes h**

t	$h = 0.05$	$h = 0.025$	$h = 0.01$	$h = 0.001$	Exact
0.0	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000
0.1	1.6929688	1.6474375	1.6236638	1.6104634	1.6090418
0.2	2.7616699	2.6211306	2.5491368	2.5095731	2.5053299
0.3	4.4174530	4.0920886	3.9285724	3.8396379	3.8301388
0.4	6.9905516	6.3209569	5.9908303	5.8131282	5.7942260
0.5	10.996956	9.7050002	9.0801473	8.7472667	8.7120041
1.0	103.06171	80.402761	70.452395	65.419964	64.897803
1.5	959.44236	661.00731	542.12432	485.05825	479.25919
2.0	8934.0696	5435.7294	4172.7228	3597.4478	3540.2001

Observe that the backward Euler formula gets its name from the fact that it can be obtained by using the backward difference quotient $\frac{1}{n}\big(\phi(t_n) - \phi(t_{n-1})\big)$ to approximate the derivative in the differential equation (3) instead of the forward difference quotient used in equation (4).

Since the backward Euler method appears to be no more accurate than the Euler method, and is somewhat more complicated, a natural question is why it should even be mentioned. The answer is that it is the simplest example of a class of methods known as backward differentiation formulas that are very useful and more accurate for certain types of differential equations. We will return to this issue at the end of Section 8.4.

Errors in Numerical Approximations. The use of a numerical procedure, such as the Euler formula, on an initial value problem raises a number of questions that must be answered before the approximate numerical solution can be accepted as satisfactory. One of these is the question of **convergence**. That is, as the step size h tends to zero, do the values of the numerical approximation $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n, \ldots$ approach the corresponding values of the actual solution? If we assume that the answer is affirmative, there remains the important practical question of how rapidly the numerical approximation converges to the solution. In other words, how small a step size is needed in order to guarantee a given level of accuracy? We want to use a step size that is small enough to ensure the required accuracy, but not too small. An unnecessarily small step size slows down the calculations and in some cases may even cause a loss of accuracy.

There are three fundamental sources of error in approximating the solution of an initial value problem numerically.

1. The formula, or algorithm, used in the calculations is an approximate one. For instance, the Euler formula uses straight-line approximations to the actual solution.
2. Except for the first step, the input data used in the calculations are only approximations to the actual values of the solution at the specified points.

3. The computer used for the calculations has finite precision; in other words, at each stage only a finite number of digits can be retained.

Let us temporarily assume that our computer can execute all computations exactly; that is, it can retain infinitely many digits (if necessary) at each step. Then the difference E_n between the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the initial value problem (1), (2) and its numerical approximation y_n at the point $t = t_n$ is given by

$$E_n = \phi(t_n) - y_n. \tag{14}$$

The error E_n is known as the **global truncation error**. It arises entirely from the first two error sources listed above—that is, by applying an approximate formula to approximate data.

However, in reality we must carry out the computations using finite-precision arithmetic, which means that we can keep only a finite number of digits at each step. This leads to a **round-off error** R_n defined by

$$R_n = y_n - Y_n, \tag{15}$$

where Y_n is the value *actually computed* from the given numerical method.

The absolute value of the total error in computing $\phi(t_n)$ is given by

$$|\phi(t_n) - Y_n| = |\phi(t_n) - y_n + y_n - Y_n|. \tag{16}$$

Making use of the triangle inequality, $|a + b| \le |a| + |b|$, we obtain, from equation (16),

$$\begin{aligned} |\phi(t_n) - Y_n| &\le |\phi(t_n) - y_n| + |y_n - Y_n| \\ &\le |E_n| + |R_n|. \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

Thus the total error is bounded by the sum of the absolute values of the global truncation and round-off errors.

For the numerical procedures discussed in this book, it is possible to obtain useful estimates of the global truncation error. The round-off error is more difficult to analyze, since it depends on the type of computer used, the sequence in which the computations are carried out, the method of rounding off, and so forth. A careful examination of round-off error is beyond the scope of this book, but see, for example, the book by Henrici listed in the references. Some of the dangers of round-off error are discussed in Problems 22 through 24 and in Section 8.6.

It is often useful to consider separately the part of the global truncation error that is due only to the use of an approximate formula. We can do this by assuming at the nth step that the input data are accurate—that is, that $y_n = \phi(t_n)$. This error is known as the **local truncation error**; we will denote it by e_n.

Local Truncation Error for the Euler Method. Assume that the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the initial value problem (1), (2) has a continuous second derivative in the interval of interest. To ensure this, we can assume that f, f_t, and f_y are continuous. For if f has these properties and if ϕ is a solution of the initial value problem (1), (2), then

$$\phi'(t) = f(t, \phi(t)),$$

and, by the chain rule,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi''(t) &= f_t(t, \phi(t)) + f_y(t, \phi(t))\phi'(t) \\ &= f_t(t, \phi(t)) + f_y(t, \phi(t)) f(t, \phi(t)). \end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

Since the right-hand side of this equation is continuous, ϕ'' is also continuous.

Then, making use of a Taylor polynomial with a remainder to expand ϕ about t_n, we obtain

$$\phi(t_n + h) = \phi(t_n) + \phi'(t_n)h + \frac{1}{2}\phi''(\overline{t_n})h^2, \tag{19}$$

where $\overline{t_n}$ is some point in $t_n < \overline{t_n} < t_n + h$. Then, noting that $\phi(t_n + h) = \phi(t_{n+1})$ and $\phi'(t_n) = f(t_n, \phi(t_n))$, we can rewrite equation (19) as

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) = \phi(t_n) + hf(t_n, \phi(t_n)) + \frac{1}{2}\phi''(\overline{t_n})h^2. \tag{20}$$

Now let us use the Euler formula to calculate an approximation to $\phi(t_{n+1})$ under the assumption that we know the correct value for y_n at t_n, namely $y_n = \phi(t_n)$. The result is

$$y^*_{n+1} = \phi(t_n) + hf(t_n, \phi(t_n)), \tag{21}$$

where the asterisk is used to designate this hypothetical approximate value for $\phi(t_{n+1})$. The difference between $\phi(t_{n+1})$ and y^*_{n+1} is the local truncation error for the $(n+1)^{\text{st}}$ step in the Euler method, which we will denote by e_{n+1}. Thus, by subtracting equation (21) from equation (20), we find that

$$e_{n+1} = \phi(t_{n+1}) - y^*_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\phi''(\overline{t_n})h^2, \tag{22}$$

since the remaining terms in equations (20) and (21) cancel.

Thus the local truncation error for the Euler method is proportional to the square of the step size h, and the proportionality factor depends on the second derivative of the solution ϕ. The expression given by equation (22) depends on n and, in general, is different for each step. A uniform bound, valid on an interval $[a, b]$, is given by

$$|e_n| \le \frac{1}{2}Mh^2, \tag{23}$$

where M is the maximum of $\left|\phi''(t)\right|$ on the interval $[a, b]$. Since equation (23) is based on a consideration of the worst possible case—that is, the largest possible value of $\left|\phi''(t)\right|$—it may well be a considerable overestimate of the actual local truncation error in some parts of the interval $[a, b]$.

One use of equation (23) is to choose a step size that will result in a local truncation error no greater than some given tolerance level. For example, if the local truncation error must be no greater than ϵ, then from equation (23) we have

$$\frac{1}{2}Mh^2 \le \epsilon \quad \text{or} \quad h \le \sqrt{\frac{2\epsilon}{M}}. \tag{24}$$

The primary difficulty in using equation (22), (23), or (24) lies in estimating $\left|\phi''(t)\right|$ or M. However, the central fact expressed by these equations is that the local truncation error is proportional to h^2. For example, if a new value of h is used that is one-half of its original value, then the resulting error will be reduced to one-fourth of its previous value.

More important than the local truncation error is the global truncation error E_n. The analysis for estimating E_n is much more difficult than that for e_n. Nevertheless, it can be shown that the global truncation error in using the Euler method on a finite interval is no greater than a constant times h. Thus

$$|E_n| \le Kh \tag{25}$$

for some constant K; see Problem 20 for more details. The Euler method is called a **first-order method** because its global truncation error is proportional to the first power of the step size.

Because it is more accessible, we will hereafter use the local truncation error as our principal measure of the accuracy of a numerical method and for comparing different methods. If we have *a priori* information about the solution of the given initial value problem, we can use the result (22) to obtain more precise information about how the local truncation error varies with t.

As an example, consider the illustrative problem

$$y' = 1 - t + 4y, \quad y(0) = 1 \tag{26}$$

on the interval $0 \le t \le 2$. Let $y = \phi(t)$ be the solution of the initial value problem (26). Then, as noted previously,

$$\phi(t) = \frac{1}{16}\left(4t - 3 + 19e^{4t}\right)$$

and therefore

$$\phi''(t) = 19e^{4t}.$$

Equation (22) then states that

$$e_{n+1} = \frac{19e^{4\overline{t_n}}h^2}{2}, \quad t_n < \overline{t_n} < t_n + h. \tag{27}$$

The appearance of the factor 19 and the rapid growth of e^{4t} explain why the results in Table 8.1.1 are not very accurate.

For instance, for $h = 0.05$ the error in the first step is

$$e_1 = \phi(t_1) - y_1 = \frac{19e^{4\overline{t_0}}(0.0025)}{2}, \quad 0 < \overline{t_0} < 0.05.$$

It is clear that e_1 is positive, and since $e^{4\overline{t_0}} < e^{0.2}$, we have

$$e_1 \leq \frac{19e^{0.2}(0.0025)}{2} \cong 0.02901. \tag{28}$$

Note also that $e^{4\overline{t_0}} > 1$; hence $e_1 > \dfrac{19}{2}(0.0025) = 0.02375$. The actual error is 0.02542. It follows from equation (27) that the error becomes progressively worse with increasing t; this is also clearly shown by the results in Table 8.1.1. Similar computations for bounds for the local truncation error give

$$1.0617 \cong \frac{19e^{3.8}(0.0025)}{2} \leq e_{20} \leq \frac{19e^{4}(0.0025)}{2} \cong 1.2967 \tag{29}$$

in going from 0.95 to 1.0 and

$$57.96 \cong \frac{19e^{7.8}(0.0025)}{2} \leq e_{40} \leq \frac{19e^{8}(0.0025)}{2} \cong 70.80 \tag{30}$$

in going from 1.95 to 2.0.

These results indicate that for this problem, the local truncation error is about 2500 times larger near $t = 2$ than near $t = 0$. Thus, to reduce the local truncation error to an acceptable level throughout $0 \leq t \leq 2$, we must choose a step size h based on an analysis near $t = 2$. Of course, this step size will be much smaller than necessary near $t = 0$. For example, to achieve a local truncation error of 0.01 for this problem, we need a step size of about 0.00059 near $t = 2$ and a step size of about 0.032 near $t = 0$. The use of a uniform step size that is smaller than necessary over much of the interval results in more calculations than necessary, more time consumed, and possibly more danger of unacceptable round-off errors.

Another approach is to keep the local truncation error approximately constant throughout the interval by gradually reducing the step size as t increases. In the example problem, we would need to reduce h by a factor of about 50 in going from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$. A method that provides for variations in the step size is called **adaptive**. All modern computer codes for solving differential equations have the capability of adjusting the step size as needed. We will return to this question in the next section.

Problems

N **1.** Complete the calculations leading to the entries in columns three and four of Table 8.1.1.

N **2.** Complete the calculations leading to the entries in columns three and four of Table 8.1.2.

In each of Problems 3 through 7, find approximate values of the solution of the initial value problem at $t = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3,$ and 0.4.

N **a.** Use the Euler method with $h = 0.05$.
N **b.** Use the Euler method with $h = 0.025$.
N **c.** Use the backward Euler method with $h = 0.05$.
N **d.** Use the backward Euler method with $h = 0.025$.

3. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

4. $y' = 2y - 3t, \quad y(0) = 1$

5. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

6. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

7. $y' = (t^2 - y^2) \sin y, \quad y(0) = -1$

In each of Problems 8 through 12, find approximate values of the solution of the initial value problem at $t = 0.5, 1.0, 1.5,$ and 2.0.

N **a.** Use the Euler method with $h = 0.025$.
N **b.** Use the Euler method with $h = 0.0125$.
N **c.** Use the backward Euler method with $h = 0.025$.
N **d.** Use the backward Euler method with $h = 0.0125$.

8. $y' = 0.5 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

9. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

10. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

11. $y' = (4 - ty)/(1 + y^2), \quad y(0) = -2$

12. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

13. Using three terms in the Taylor series given in equation (12) and taking $h = 0.1$, determine approximate values of the solution of the illustrative example $y' = 1 - t + 4y$, $y(0) = 1$ at $t = 0.1$ and 0.2. Compare the results with those using the Euler method and with the exact values. *Hint:* If $y' = f(t, y)$, what is y''?

In each of Problems 14 and 15,

N **a.** Estimate the local truncation error for the Euler method in terms of the solution $y = \phi(t)$.
N **b.** Obtain a bound for e_{n+1} in terms of t and $\phi(t)$ that is valid on the interval $0 \le t \le 1$.
N **c.** By using a formula for the solution, obtain a more accurate error bound for e_{n+1}.
N **d.** For $h = 0.1$ compute a bound for e_1 and compare it with the actual error at $t = 0.1$.
N **e.** Compute a bound for the error e_4 in the fourth step.

14. $y' = 2y - 1, \quad y(0) = 1$

15. $y' = \frac{1}{2} - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

In each of Problems 16 through 18, obtain a formula for the local truncation error for the Euler method in terms of t and the exact solution $y = \phi(t)$.

16. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

17. $y' = \sqrt{t + y}, \quad y(1) = 3$

18. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

19. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = \cos(5\pi t), \quad y(0) = 1.$$

N **a.** Determine approximate values of $\phi(t)$ at $t = 0.2, 0.4,$ and 0.6 using the Euler method with $h = 0.2$.
N **b.** Determine the solution $y = \phi(t)$, and draw a graph of $y = \phi(t)$ for $0 \le t \le 1$.
G **c.** Draw a broken-line graph for the approximate solution, and compare it with the graph of the exact solution.
N **d.** Repeat the computation of part a for $0 \le t \le 0.4$, but take $h = 0.1$.
N **e.** Show by computing the local truncation error that neither of these step sizes is sufficiently small.
N **f.** Determine a value of h to ensure that the local truncation error is less than 0.05 throughout the interval $0 \le t \le 1$. That such a small value of h is required results from the fact that $\max |\phi''(t)|$ is large.

20. In this problem we discuss the global truncation error associated with the Euler method for the initial value problem $y' = f(t, y)$, $y(t_0) = y_0$. When the functions f and f_y are continuous in a closed, bounded region R of the ty-plane that includes the point (t_0, y_0), it can be shown that there exists a constant L such that $\left|f(t, y) - f(t, \tilde{y})\right| \le L\left|y - \tilde{y}\right|$, where (t, y) and $(t, \tilde{y})$ are any two points in R with the same t coordinate (see Problem 14 of Section 2.8). Further, we assume that f_t is continuous, so the solution ϕ has a continuous second derivative.

a. Using equation (20), show that

$$\begin{aligned} |E_{n+1}| &\le |E_n| + h\left|f(t_n, \phi(t_n)) - f(t_n, y_n)\right| \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}h^2|\phi''(\overline{t_n})| \\ &\le \alpha|E_n| + \beta h^2, \end{aligned} \tag{31}$$

where $\alpha = 1 + hL$ and $\beta = \max \frac{1}{2}|\phi''(t)|$ on $t_0 \le t \le t_n$.

b. Assume that if $E_0 = 0$, and if $|E_n|$ satisfies equation (31), then $|E_n| \le \beta h^2(\alpha^n - 1)/(\alpha - 1)$ for $\alpha \ne 1$. Use this result to show that

$$|E_n| \le \frac{(1 + hL)^n - 1}{L}\beta h. \tag{32}$$

Equation (32) gives a bound for $|E_n|$ in terms of h, L, n, and β. Notice that for a fixed h, this error bound increases with increasing n; that is, the error bound increases with distance from the starting point t_0.

c. Show that $(1 + hL)^n \le e^{nhL}$; hence

$$|E_n| \le \frac{e^{nhL} - 1}{L}\beta h.$$

If we select an ending point T greater than t_0 and then choose the step size h so that n steps are required to traverse the interval $[t_0, T]$, then $nh = T - t_0$, and

$$|E_n| \le \frac{e^{(T - t_0)L} - 1}{L}\beta h = Kh,$$

which is equation (25). Note that K depends on the length $T - t_0$ of the interval and on the constants L and β that are determined from the function f.

21. Derive an expression analogous to equation (22) for the local truncation error for the backward Euler formula. *Hint:* Construct a suitable Taylor approximation to $\phi(t)$ about $t = t_{n+1}$.

22. Using a step size $h = 0.05$ and the Euler method, but retaining only three digits throughout the computations, determine approximate values of the solution at $t = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3,$ and 0.4 for each of the following initial value problems:

N **a.** $y' = 1 - t + 4y, \quad y(0) = 1$
N **b.** $y' = 3 + t - y, \quad y(0) = 1$
N **c.** $y' = 2y - 3t, \quad y(0) = 1$

Compare the results of a with those obtained in Example 1 and in Problem 1 and the results of c with those obtained in Problem 4. The small differences between some of those results rounded to three digits and the present results are due to round-off error. The round-off error would become important if the computation required many steps.

23. The following problem illustrates a danger that occurs because of round-off error when nearly equal numbers are subtracted and the difference is then multiplied by a large number. Evaluate the quantity

$$1000 \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 6.010 & 18.04 \\ 2.004 & 6.000 \end{vmatrix}$$

in the following ways:

N **a.** First round each entry in the determinant to two digits.

N **b.** First round each entry in the determinant to three digits.

N **c.** Retain all four digits. Compare this value with the results in parts a and b.

24. The distributive law $a(b - c) = ab - ac$ does not hold, in general, if the products are rounded off to a smaller number of digits. To show this in a specific case, take $a = 0.22$, $b = 3.19$, and $c = 2.17$. After each multiplication, round off the last digit.

8.2 Improvements on the Euler Method

For many problems the Euler method requires a very small step size to produce sufficiently accurate results. Much effort has been devoted to the development of more accurate methods. In the next three sections, we will discuss some of these methods. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0 \tag{1}$$

and let $y = \phi(t)$ denote its solution. Recall from equation (10) of Section 8.1 that by integrating the given differential equation from t_n to t_{n+1}, we obtain

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) = \phi(t_n) + \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, \phi(t))\, dt. \tag{2}$$

The Euler formula

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf(t_n, y_n) \tag{3}$$

is obtained by replacing the integrand $f(t, \phi(t))$ in equation (2) by its approximate value $f(t_n, y_n)$ at the left endpoint of the interval of integration. Other approximations of the definite integral lead to other numerical solution methods for initial value problems.

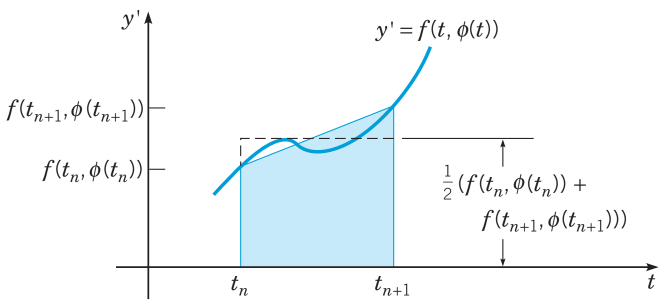


FIGURE 8.2.1 Derivation of the improved Euler method.

Improved Euler Formula. A better approximate formula for the solution of initial value problem (1) can be obtained if the definite integral in equation (2) is approximated more accurately. One way to do this is to replace the integrand by the average of its values at the two endpoints, namely, $\frac{1}{2}\big(f(t_n, \phi(t_n)) + f(t_{n+1}, \phi(t_{n+1}))\big)$. This is equivalent to approximating the area under the curve in Figure 8.2.1 between $t = t_n$ and $t = t_{n+1}$ by the area of the shaded trapezoid. Further, we replace $\phi(t_n)$ and $\phi(t_{n+1})$ by their respective approximate values y_n and y_{n+1}. In this way we obtain, from equation (2),

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{f(t_n, y_n) + f(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1})}{2} h. \tag{4}$$

Since the unknown y_{n+1} appears as one of the arguments of f on the right-hand side of equation (4), this equation defines y_{n+1} implicitly rather than explicitly. Depending on the nature of the function f, it might be fairly difficult to solve equation (4) for y_{n+1}. This difficulty can be overcome by replacing y_{n+1} on the right-hand side of equation (4) by the value obtained using the Euler formula (3). Thus

$$\begin{aligned} y_{n+1} &= y_n + \frac{f(t_n, y_n) + f(t_n + h, y_n + hf(t_n, y_n))}{2}h \\ &= y_n + \frac{f_n + f(t_n + h, y_n + hf_n)}{2}h, \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

where t_{n+1} has been replaced by $t_n + h$.

Equation (5) gives an explicit formula for computing y_{n+1}, the approximate value of $\phi(t_{n+1})$, in terms of the data at t_n. This formula is known as the **improved Euler formula** or the **Heun**[1] **formula**. The improved Euler formula is an example of a two-stage method; that is, we first calculate $y_n + hf_n$ from the Euler formula and then use this result to calculate y_{n+1} from equation (5).

The improved Euler formula (5) is an improvement over the Euler formula (3) because the local truncation error in using equation (5) is proportional to h^3, while for the Euler method it is proportional to h^2. This error estimate for the improved Euler formula is established in Problem 12. It can also be shown that for a finite interval, the global truncation error for the improved Euler formula is bounded by a constant times h^2, so this method is a second-order method. Note that this greater accuracy is achieved at the expense of more computational work, since it is now necessary to evaluate $f(t, y)$ twice in order to go from t_n to t_{n+1}.

If $f(t, y)$ depends only on t and not on y, then solving the differential equation $y' = f(t, y)$ reduces to integrating $f(t)$. In this case the improved Euler formula (5) becomes

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_n) + f(t_n + h)), \tag{6}$$

which is just the trapezoid rule for numerical integration.

EXAMPLE 1

Use the improved Euler formula (5) with step sizes of $h = 0.025$ and $h = 0.01$ to calculate approximate values of the solution of the initial value problem

$$y' = 1 - t + 4y, \quad y(0) = 1 \tag{7}$$

on the interval $0 \le t \le 2$.

Solution:

To make clear exactly what computations are required, we show a couple of steps in detail. For this problem $f(t, y) = 1 - t + 4y$; hence

$$f_n = 1 - t_n + 4y_n$$

and

$$f(t_n + h, y_n + hf_n) = 1 - (t_n + h) + 4(y_n + hf_n).$$

Further, $t_0 = 0$, $y_0 = 1$, and $f_0 = 1 - t_0 + 4y_0 = 5$. When $h = 0.025$, then

$$f(t_0 + h, y_0 + hf_0) = 1 - 0.025 + 4(1 + (0.025)(5)) = 5.475.$$

Then, from equation (5),

$$y_1 = 1 + (0.5)(5 + 5.475)(0.025) = 1.1309375. \tag{8}$$

At the second step we must calculate

$$\begin{aligned} f_1 &= 1 - 0.025 + 4(1.1309375) = 5.49875, \\ y_1 + hf_1 &= 1.1309375 + (0.025)(5.49875) = 1.26840625, \end{aligned}$$

[1] The formula is named for the German mathematician Karl Heun (1859–1929), who was a professor at Technische Hochschule Karlsruhe.

and

$$f(t_2, y_1 + hf_1) = 1 - 0.05 + 4(1.26840625) = 6.023625.$$

Then, from equation (5),

$$y_2 = 1.1309375 + (0.5)(5.49875 + 6.023625)(0.025) = 1.2749671875. \tag{9}$$

Further results for $0 \le t \le 2$ obtained by using the improved Euler method with $h = 0.025$ and $h = 0.01$ are given in Table 8.2.1. To compare the results of the improved Euler method with those of the Euler method, note that the improved Euler method requires two evaluations of f at each step, while the Euler method requires only one. This is significant because typically, most of the computing time in each step is spent in evaluating f, so counting these evaluations is a reasonable way to estimate the total computing effort. Thus, for a given step size h, the improved Euler method requires twice as many evaluations of f as the Euler method. Alternatively, the improved Euler method for step size h requires the same number of evaluations of f as the Euler method for step size $h/2$.

The approximate solutions shown in Table 8.2.1 confirm that the improved Euler method with $h = 0.025$ gives much better results than the Euler method with $h = 0.01$. Note that to reach $t = 2$ with these step sizes, the improved Euler method requires 160 evaluations of f, while the Euler method requires 200. More noteworthy is that the improved Euler method with $h = 0.025$ is also slightly more accurate than the Euler method with $h = 0.001$ (2000 evaluations of f). In other words, with something like one-twelfth of the computing effort, the improved Euler method yields results for this problem that are comparable to, or a bit better than, those generated by the Euler method. This illustrates that, compared to the Euler method, the improved Euler method is clearly more efficient, yielding substantially better results or requiring much less total computing effort, or both.

The percentage errors at $t = 2$ for the improved Euler method are 1.23% for $h = 0.025$ and 0.21% for $h = 0.01$.

TABLE 8.2.1 **A Comparison of Results Using the Euler and Improved Euler Methods for the Initial Value Problem $y' = 1 - t + 4y$, $y(0) = 1$**

	Euler		Improved Euler		
t	$h = 0.01$	$h = 0.001$	$h = 0.025$	$h = 0.01$	Exact
0.0	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000
0.1	1.5952901	1.6076289	1.6079462	1.6088585	1.6090418
0.2	2.4644587	2.5011159	2.5020618	2.5047827	2.5053299
0.3	3.7390345	3.8207130	3.8228282	3.8289146	3.8301388
0.4	5.6137120	5.7754845	5.7796888	5.7917911	5.7942260
0.5	8.3766865	8.6770692	8.6849039	8.7074637	8.7120041
1.0	60.037126	64.382558	64.497931	64.830722	64.897803
1.5	426.40818	473.55979	474.83402	478.51588	479.25919
2.0	3029.3279	3484.1608	3496.6702	3532.8789	3540.2001

A computer program for the Euler method can be readily modified to implement the improved Euler method instead. All that is required is to replace Step 6 in the algorithm in Section 8.1 by the following:

The Improved Euler Method

Step 6. $k1 = f(t, y)$

$k2 = f(t + h, y + h * k1)$

$y = y + (h/2) * (k1 + k2)$

$t = t + h$

Variation of Step Size. In Section 8.1 we mentioned the possibility of adjusting the step size as a calculation proceeds so as to maintain the local truncation error at a more or less constant level. The goal is to use no more steps than necessary and, at the same time, to keep some control over the accuracy of the approximation. Here, we will describe how this can be done. First, we choose the error tolerance ϵ, which is the local truncation error that we are willing to accept. Suppose that after n steps we have reached the point (t_n, y_n). We choose a step size h and calculate y_{n+1}. Next we need to estimate the error we have made in calculating y_{n+1}. Not knowing the actual solution, the best that we can do is to use a more accurate method and repeat the calculation starting from (t_n, y_n). For example, if we used the Euler method for the original calculation, we might repeat it with the improved Euler method. Then the difference between the two calculated values is an estimate e_{n+1}^{est} of the error in using the original method. If the estimated error is larger than the error tolerance ϵ, then we adjust the step size and repeat the calculation. The key to making this adjustment efficiently is knowing how the local truncation error e_{n+1} depends on the step size h. For the Euler method, the local truncation error is proportional to h^2, so to bring the estimated error down (or up) to the tolerance level ϵ, we must multiply the original step size by the factor $\sqrt{\epsilon / e_{n+1}^{\text{est}}}$.

To illustrate this procedure, consider the example problem (7):

$$y' = 1 - t + 4y, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

Suppose that we choose the error tolerance ϵ to be 0.05. You can verify that after one step with $h = 0.1$, we obtain the values 1.5 and 1.595 from the Euler method and the improved Euler method, respectively. Thus the estimated error in using the Euler method is 0.095. Since this is larger than the tolerance level of 0.05, we need to adjust the step size downward by the factor $\sqrt{0.05/0.095} \cong 0.73$. Rounding downward to be conservative, let us choose the adjusted step size $h = 0.07$. Then, from the Euler formula, we obtain

$$y_1 = 1 + (0.07) f(0, 1) = 1.35 \cong \phi(0.07).$$

Then, using the improved Euler method with $h = 0.07$, we obtain $y_1 = 1.39655$, so the estimated error in using the Euler formula is 0.04655, which is slightly less than the specified tolerance. The actual error, based on a comparison with the exact solution, is somewhat greater, namely, 0.05122.

We can follow the same procedure at each step of the calculation, thereby keeping the local truncation error approximately constant throughout the entire numerical process. Modern adaptive codes for solving differential equations adjust the step size in very much this way as they proceed, although they usually use more accurate formulas than the Euler and improved Euler formulas. Consequently, they are able to achieve both efficiency and accuracy by using very small steps only where they are really needed.

Problems

N **1.** Complete the calculations leading to the entries in columns four and five of Table 8.2.1.

In each of Problems 2 through 6, find approximate values of the solution of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3$, and 0.4. Compare the results with those obtained by the Euler method and the backward Euler method in Section 8.1 and with the exact solution (if available).

- N **a.** Use the improved Euler method with $h = 0.05$.
- N **b.** Use the improved Euler method with $h = 0.025$.
- N **c.** Use the improved Euler method with $h = 0.0125$.

2. $y' = 3 + t - y, \quad y(0) = 1$

3. $y' = 2y - 3t, \quad y(0) = 1$

4. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

5. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

6. $y' = (t^2 - y^2)\sin y, \quad y(0) = -1$

In each of Problems 7 through 11, find approximate values of the solution of the initial value problem at $t = 0.5, 1.0, 1.5$, and 2.0.

- N **a.** Use the improved Euler method with $h = 0.025$.
- N **b.** Use the improved Euler method with $h = 0.0125$.

7. $y' = 0.5 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

8. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

9. $y' = \sqrt{t + y}, \quad y(0) = 3$

10. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

11. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

12. In this problem we establish that the local truncation error for the improved Euler formula is proportional to h^3. If we assume that the solution ϕ of the initial value problem $y' = f(t, y)$, $y(t_0) = y_0$ has derivatives that are continuous through the third order (f has continuous second partial derivatives), then it follows that

$$\phi(t_n + h) = \phi(t_n) + \phi'(t_n)h + \frac{\phi''(t_n)}{2!}h^2 + \frac{\phi'''(\overline{t_n})}{3!}h^3,$$

where $t_n < \overline{t_n} < t_n + h$. Assume that $y_n = \phi(t_n)$.

a. Show that, for y_{n+1} as given by equation (5),

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= \phi(t_{n+1}) - y_{n+1} \\ &= \frac{\phi''(t_n)h - (f(t_n + h, y_n + hf(t_n, y_n)) - f(t_n, y_n))}{2!}h \\ &\quad + \frac{\phi'''(\overline{t_n})h^3}{3!}. \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

b. Use the facts that $\phi''(t) = f_t(t, \phi(t)) + f_y(t, \phi(t))\phi'(t)$ and that the Taylor approximation with a remainder for a function $F(t, y)$ of two variables is

$$F(a + h, b + k) = F(a, b) + F_t(a, b)h + F_y(a, b)k + \frac{1}{2!}(h^2 F_{tt} + 2hkF_{ty} + k^2 F_{yy})\Big|_{t=\xi, y=\eta},$$

where ξ lies between a and $a + h$, and η lies between b and $b + k$, to show that the first term on the right-hand side of equation (10) is proportional to h^3 plus higher-order terms. This is the critical estimate needed to prove that the local truncation error is proportional to h^3.

c. Show that if $f(t, y)$ is linear in t and y, then $e_{n+1} = \frac{1}{6}\phi'''(\overline{t_n})h^3$ for some $\overline{t_n}$ with $t_n < \overline{t_n} < t_{n+1}$.
Hint: What are f_{tt}, f_{ty}, and f_{yy}?

13. Consider the improved Euler method for solving the illustrative initial value problem $y' = 1 - t + 4y$, $y(0) = 1$.

a. Using the result of Problem 12c and the exact solution of the initial value problem, determine e_{n+1} and a bound for the error at any step on $0 \le t \le 2$.

b. Compare the error found in a with the one obtained in equation (27) of Section 8.1 using the Euler method.

c. Also obtain a bound for e_1 for $h = 0.05$, and compare it with equation (28) of Section 8.1.

In each of Problems 14 and 15,

a. Use the actual solution $\phi(t)$ to determine e_{n+1} and a bound for e_{n+1} at any step on $0 \le t \le 1$ for the improved Euler method for the given initial value problem.

b. Also obtain a bound for e_1 for $h = 0.1$, and compare it with the similar estimate for the Euler method and with the actual error for the improved Euler method.

14. $y' = 2y - 1, \quad y(0) = 1$

15. $y' = 0.5 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

In each of Problems 16 through 19, carry out one step of the Euler method and of the improved Euler method, using the step size $h = 0.1$. Suppose that a local truncation error no greater than $\epsilon = 0.0025$ is required. Estimate the step size that is needed for the Euler method to satisfy this requirement at the first step.

N **16.** $y' = 0.5 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

N **17.** $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

N **18.** $y' = \sqrt{t + y}, \quad y(0) = 3$

N **19.** $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

20. The **modified Euler formula** for the initial value problem $y' = f(t, y)$, $y(t_0) = y_0$ is given by

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf\left(t_n + \frac{1}{2}h, y_n + \frac{1}{2}hf(t_n, y_n)\right).$$

Following the procedure outlined in Problem 12, show that the local truncation error in the modified Euler formula is proportional to h^3.

In each of Problems 21 through 24, use the modified Euler formula of Problem 20 with $h = 0.05$ to compute approximate values of the solution of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3$, and 0.4.

N **21.** $y' = 3 + t - y, \quad y(0) = 1$ (Compare with Problem 2)

N **22.** $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

N **23.** $y' = 2y - 3t, \quad y(0) = 1$ (Compare with Problem 3)

N **24.** $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$ (Compare with Problem 4)

25. Show that the modified Euler formula of Problem 20 is identical to the improved Euler formula of equation (5) for $y' = f(t, y)$ if f is linear in both t and y.

8.3 The Runge-Kutta Method

The Euler formula, the backward Euler formula, and the improved Euler formula were introduced, in Sections 8.1 and 8.2, as ways to numerically approximate the solution of the initial value problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{1}$$

The local truncation errors for these methods are proportional to h^2, h^2, and h^3, respectively. The Euler and improved Euler methods belong to what is now called the Runge-Kutta[2] class of methods.

In this section we discuss the method originally developed by Runge and Kutta. This method is now called the classic **fourth-order four-stage Runge-Kutta method**, but it is often referred to simply as *the* Runge-Kutta method, and we will follow this practice for

[2]Carl David Runge (1856–1927), a German mathematician and physicist, worked for many years in spectroscopy. The analysis of data led him to consider problems in numerical computation, and the Runge-Kutta method originated in his paper on the numerical solution of differential equations in 1895. The method was extended to systems of equations in 1901 by Martin Wilhelm Kutta (1867–1944). Kutta was a German mathematician and aerodynamicist who is also well known for his important contributions to classical airfoil theory.

brevity. This method has a local truncation error that is proportional to h^5. Thus it is two orders of magnitude more accurate than the improved Euler method and three orders of magnitude better than the Euler method. It is relatively simple to use and is sufficiently accurate to handle many problems efficiently. This is especially true of adaptive Runge-Kutta methods, in which provision is made to vary the step size as needed. We return to this issue at the end of the section.

The Runge-Kutta formula involves a weighted average of values of $f(t, y)$ at four different points in the interval $t_n \leq t \leq t_{n+1}$. It is given by

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + h\left(\frac{k_{n1} + 2k_{n2} + 2k_{n3} + k_{n4}}{6}\right), \tag{2}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} k_{n1} &= f(t_n, y_n), \\ k_{n2} &= f\left(t_n + \frac{1}{2}h,\ y_n + \frac{1}{2}hk_{n1}\right), \\ k_{n3} &= f\left(t_n + \frac{1}{2}h,\ y_n + \frac{1}{2}hk_{n2}\right), \\ k_{n4} &= f(t_n + h,\ y_n + hk_{n3}). \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

The sum $\frac{1}{6}(k_{n1} + 2k_{n2} + 2k_{n3} + k_{n4})$ can be interpreted as an average slope. Note that k_{n1} is the slope at the left end of the interval, k_{n2} is the slope at the midpoint using the Euler formula to go from t_n to $t_n + h/2$, k_{n3} is a second approximation to the slope at the midpoint, and k_{n4} is the slope at $t_n + h$ using the Euler formula and the slope k_{n3} to go from t_n to $t_n + h$.

Although in principle it is not difficult to show that equation (2) differs from the Taylor expansion of the solution ϕ by terms that are proportional to h^5, the algebra is rather lengthy.[3] Thus we simply state without proof that the local truncation error in using equation (2) is proportional to h^5 and that for a finite interval the global truncation error is at most a constant times h^4. The earlier description of this method as a fourth-order four-stage method reflects the facts that the global truncation error is of fourth order in the step size h and that there are four intermediate stages in the calculation (the calculation of $k_{n1}, \ldots, k_{n4}$).

It is obvious that the Runge-Kutta formula, equations (2) and (3), is more complicated than any of the formulas discussed previously. This is of relatively little significance, however, since it is not hard to write a computer program to implement this method. Such a program has the same structure as the algorithm for the Euler method outlined in Section 8.1. To be specific, the lines in Step 6 in the Euler algorithm must be replaced by the following:

The Runge-Kutta Method

Step 6.
$k1 = f(t, y)$
$k2 = f(t + h/2, y + (h/2) * k1)$
$k3 = f(t + h/2, y + (h/2) * k2)$
$k4 = f(t + h, y + h * k3)$
$y = y + (h/6) * (k1 + 2 * k2 + 2 * k3 + k4)$
$t = t + h$

Note that if f does not depend on y, then

$$k_{n1} = f(t_n), \quad k_{n2} = k_{n3} = f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}\right), \quad k_{n4} = f(t_n + h), \tag{4}$$

and equation (2) reduces to

$$y_{n+1} - y_n = \frac{h}{6}\left(f(t_n) + 4f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}\right) + f(t_n + h)\right). \tag{5}$$

Equation (5) can be identified as Simpson's[4] rule for the approximate evaluation of the integral of $y' = f(t)$. The fact that Simpson's rule has an error proportional to h^5 is consistent with the local truncation error in the Runge-Kutta formula.

---

[3] See, for example, Chapter 3 of the book by Henrici listed in the references.

[4] Simpson's rule is named for Thomas Simpson (1710–1761), an English mathematician and textbook author, who published it in 1743.

EXAMPLE 1

Use the Runge-Kutta method to calculate approximate values of the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the initial value problem

$$y' = 1 - t + 4y, \quad y(0) = 1. \tag{6}$$

Solution:

Taking $h = 0.2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
k_{01} &= f(0, 1) = 5; & \tfrac{1}{2}hk_{01} &= 0.5, \\
k_{02} &= f(0 + 0.1, 1 + 0.5) = 6.9; & \tfrac{1}{2}hk_{02} &= 0.69, \\
k_{03} &= f(0 + 0.1, 1 + 0.69) = 7.66; & hk_{03} &= 1.532, \\
k_{04} &= f(0 + 0.2, 1 + 1.532) = 10.928.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
y_1 &= 1 + \frac{0.2}{6}(5 + 2(6.9) + 2(7.66) + 10.928) \\
&= 1 + 1.5016 = 2.5016.
\end{aligned}$$

Further results using the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.2$, $h = 0.1$, and $h = 0.05$ are given in Table 8.3.1. Note that the Runge-Kutta method yields a value at $t = 2$ that differs from the exact solution by only 0.122% if the step size is $h = 0.1$, and by only 0.00903% if $h = 0.05$. In the latter case, the error is less than one part in 10,000, and the calculated value at $t = 2$ is correct to four digits.

To compare the computational requirements of these methods, note that both the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.05$ and the improved Euler method with $h = 0.025$ require 160 evaluations of f to reach $t = 2$. The improved Euler method yields a result at $t = 2$ that is in error by 1.23%. Although this error may be acceptable for some purposes, it is more than 135 times the error yielded by the Runge-Kutta method with comparable computing effort. Note also that the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.2$, or 40 evaluations of f, produces a value at $t = 2$ with an error of 1.40%, which is only slightly greater than the error in the improved Euler method with $h = 0.025$, or 160 evaluations of f. Thus we see again that a more accurate algorithm is more efficient; it produces better results with similar effort, or similar results with less effort.

TABLE 8.3.1 A Comparison of Results for the Numerical Approximation of the Solution of the Initial Value Problem $y' = 1 - t + 4y, y(0) = 1$

	Improved Euler	Runge – Kutta			
t	$h = 0.025$	$h = 0.2$	$h = 0.1$	$h = 0.05$	Exact
0.0	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000	1.0000000
0.1	1.6079462		1.6089333	1.6090338	1.6090418
0.2	2.5020618	2.5016000	2.5050062	2.5053060	2.5053299
0.3	3.8228282		3.8294145	3.8300854	3.8301388
0.4	5.7796888	5.7776358	5.7927853	5.7941197	5.7942260
0.5	8.6849039		8.7093175	8.7118060	8.7120041
1.0	64.497931	64.441579	64.858107	64.894875	64.897803
1.5	474.83402		478.81928	479.22674	479.25919
2.0	3496.6702	3490.5574	3535.8667	3539.8804	3540.2001

The classic Runge-Kutta method suffers from the same shortcoming as other methods with a fixed step size for problems in which the local truncation error varies widely over the interval of interest. That is, a step size that is small enough to achieve satisfactory accuracy in some parts of the interval may be much smaller than necessary in other parts of the interval.

This has stimulated the development of adaptive Runge-Kutta methods that provide for modifying the step size automatically as the computation proceeds, so as to maintain the local truncation error near or below a specified tolerance level. As explained in Section 8.2, this requires the estimation of the local truncation error at each step. One way to do this is to repeat the computation with a fifth-order method—which has a local truncation error proportional to h^6—and then to use the difference between the two results as an estimate of the error. If this is done in a straightforward manner, then the use of the fifth-order method requires at least five more evaluations of f at each step, in addition to those required originally by the fourth-order method. However, if we make an appropriate choice of the intermediate points and the weighting coefficients in the expressions for $k_{n1}, \ldots, k_{n4}$ in a certain fourth-order Runge-Kutta method, then these expressions can be used again, together with one additional stage, in a corresponding fifth-order method. This results in a substantial gain in efficiency. It turns out that this can be done in more than one way.

The first fourth- and fifth-order Runge-Kutta pair was developed by Erwin Fehlberg[5] in the late 1960s and is now called the Runge-Kutta-Fehlberg, or RKF,[6] method. The popularity of the RKF method was considerably enhanced by the appearance in 1977 of its Fortran implementation RKF45 by Lawrence F. Shampine and H. A. Watts. The RKF method and other adaptive Runge-Kutta methods are very powerful and efficient means of approximating numerically the solutions of an enormous class of initial value problems. Specific implementations of one or more of them are widely available in commercial software packages.

Problems

N **1.** Confirm the results in Table 8.3.1 by executing the indicated computations.

In each of Problems 2 through 6, find approximate values of the solution of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3$, and 0.4. Compare the results with those obtained by using other methods and with the exact solution (if available).

N **a.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.1$.
N **b.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.05$.

2. $y' = 3 + t - y, \quad y(0) = 1$

3. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

4. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

5. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

6. $y' = (t^2 - y^2)\sin y, \quad y(0) = -1$

In each of Problems 7 through 11, find approximate values of the solution of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.5, 1.0, 1.5$, and 2.0. Compare the results with those obtained by other methods and with the exact solution (if available).

N **a.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.1$.
N **b.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.05$.

7. $y' = 0.5 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

8. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

9. $y' = \sqrt{t + y}, \quad y(0) = 3$

10. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

11. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

12. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = 3t^2/(3y^2 - 4), \quad y(0) = 0.$$

Let t_M be the right-hand endpoint of the interval of existence of this solution.

G **a.** Draw a direction field for this equation.
b. Use the direction field created in a to estimate t_M. What happens at t_M to prevent the solution from continuing farther?
N **c.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with various step sizes to determine an approximate value of t_M.
d. If you continue the Runge-Kutta computation for $t > t_m$, you can continue to generate values of y. What significance, if any, do these values have?
N **e.** Suppose that the initial condition is changed to $y(0) = 1$. Repeat parts b and c for this problem.

[5] Erwin Fehlberg (1911–1990) was born in Germany, received his doctorate from the Technical University of Berlin in 1942, emigrated to the United States after World War II, and was employed by NASA for many years. The Runge-Kutta-Fehlberg method was first published in a NASA Technical Report in 1969.

[6] The details of the RKF method may be found, for example, in the books by Ascher and Petzold and by Mattheij and Molenaar that are listed in the References.

8.4 Multistep Methods

In previous sections we have discussed numerical procedures for approximating the solution of the initial value problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0, \tag{1}$$

in which data at the point $t = t_n$ are used to calculate an approximate value of the solution $\phi(t_{n+1})$ at the next mesh point $t = t_{n+1}$. In other words, the calculated value of the exact solution ϕ at any mesh point depends only on the data at the preceding mesh point. Such methods are called **one-step methods**. However, once approximate values of the exact solution $y = \phi(t)$ have been obtained at a few points beyond t_0, it is natural to ask whether we can make use of more of this information—not just the value at the last point—to calculate the value of $\phi(t)$ at the next point. Specifically, if y_1 at t_1, y_2 at t_2, . . . , y_n at t_n are known, how can we use this information to determine y_{n+1} at t_{n+1}? Methods that use information at more than the last mesh point are referred to as **multistep methods**. In this section we will describe two types of multistep methods: Adams[7] methods and backward differentiation methods. Within each type, we can achieve various levels of accuracy, depending on the number of preceding data points that are used. For simplicity, we will assume throughout our discussion that the step size h is constant.

Adams Methods. Recall that the solution $\phi(t)$ of the initial value problem (1) satisfies

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) - \phi(t_n) = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \phi'(t)\, dt. \tag{2}$$

The basic idea of an Adams method is to approximate $\phi'(t)$ by a polynomial $P_k(t)$ of degree k and to use the polynomial to evaluate the integral on the right-hand side of equation (2). The coefficients in $P_k(t)$ are determined by using $k + 1$ previously calculated data points.

For example, suppose that we wish to use a first-degree polynomial $P_1(t) = At + B$. Then we need only the two data points (t_n, y_n) and (t_{n-1}, y_{n-1}). For P_1 to interpolate ϕ' at both $t = t_n$ and $t = t_{n-1}$, we require both that $P_1(t_n) = \phi'(t_n) = f(t_n, y_n)$ and that $P_1(t_{n-1}) = \phi'(t_{n-1}) = f(t_{n-1}, y_{n-1})$. Recall that we denote $f(t_j, y_j)$ by f_j for an integer j. Thus A and B must satisfy the equations

$$\begin{aligned} At_n + B &= f_n, \\ At_{n-1} + B &= f_{n-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

Solving for A and B, we obtain

$$A = \frac{f_n - f_{n-1}}{h} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \frac{f_{n-1}t_n - f_n t_{n-1}}{h}. \tag{4}$$

Replacing $\phi'(t)$ by $P_1(t)$ and evaluating the integral in equation (2), we find that

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) - \phi(t_n) = \int_{t_{n+1}}^{t_n} (At + B)\, dt = \frac{A}{2}\left(t_{n+1}^2 - t_n^2\right) + B(t_{n+1} - t_n).$$

Finally, we replace $\phi(t_{n+1})$ and $\phi(t_n)$ by y_{n+1} and y_n, respectively, and carry out some algebraic simplification. For a constant step size h, we obtain

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{3}{2}hf_n - \frac{1}{2}hf_{n-1}. \tag{5}$$

Equation (5) is the **second-order Adams-Bashforth[8] formula**. It is an explicit formula for y_{n+1} in terms of y_n and y_{n-1} and has a local truncation error proportional to h^3.

[7] John Couch Adams (1819–1892), an English mathematician and astronomer, is most famous as codiscoverer, with Joseph Leverrier, of the planet Neptune in 1846. He was associated with Cambridge University for most of his life, as student (1839–1843), fellow, Lowdean Professor, and director of the Observatory. Adams was extremely skilled at computation; his procedure for numerical integration of differential equations appeared in 1883 in a book on capillary action written with Francis Bashforth.

[8] Francis Bashforth (1819–1912), English mathematician and Anglican priest, was a classmate of J. C. Adams at Cambridge. He was particularly interested in ballistics and invented the Bashforth chronograph for measuring the velocity of artillery projectiles.

We note in passing that the **first-order Adams-Bashforth formula**, based on the polynomial $P_0(t) = f_n$ of degree zero, is just the original Euler formula. (See Problem 11a.)

More accurate Adams formulas can be obtained by following the procedure outlined above, but using a higher degree polynomial and correspondingly more data points. For example, suppose that a polynomial $P_3(t)$ of degree three is used. The coefficients are determined from the four points (t_n, y_n), (t_{n-1}, y_{n-1}), (t_{n-2}, y_{n-2}), and (t_{n-3}, y_{n-3}). Substituting this polynomial for $\phi'(t)$ in equation (2), evaluating the integral, and simplifying the result, we eventually obtain the **fourth-order Adams-Bashforth formula**

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{24}(55f_n - 59f_{n-1} + 37f_{n-2} - 9f_{n-3}). \tag{6}$$

The local truncation error of this fourth-order formula is proportional to h^5.

A variation on the derivation of the Adams-Bashforth formulas gives another set of formulas called the **Adams-Moulton[9] formulas**. To see the difference, let us again consider the second-order case. Again we use a first-degree polynomial $Q_1(t) = \alpha t + \beta$, but we determine the coefficients by using the points (t_n, y_n) and (t_{n+1}, y_{n+1}). Thus α and β must satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha t_n + \beta &= f_n, \\ \alpha t_{n+1} + \beta &= f_{n+1}, \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

and it follows that

$$\alpha = \frac{f_{n+1} - f_n}{h}, \quad \beta = \frac{f_n t_{n+1} - f_{n+1} t_n}{h}. \tag{8}$$

Substituting $Q_1(t)$ for $\phi'(t)$ in equation (2) and simplifying, we obtain

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{1}{2}hf_n + \frac{1}{2}hf(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1}), \tag{9}$$

which is the **second-order Adams-Moulton formula**. We have written $f(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1})$ in the last term to emphasize that the Adams-Moulton formula is implicit, rather than explicit, since the unknown y_{n+1} appears on both sides of the equation. The local truncation error for the second-order Adams-Moulton formula is proportional to h^3.

The **first-order Adams-Moulton formula** is just the backward Euler formula, as you might anticipate by analogy with the first-order Adams-Bashforth formula. (See Problem 11b.)

More accurate higher-order formulas can be obtained by using an approximating polynomial of higher degree. The **fourth-order Adams-Moulton formula**, with a local truncation error proportional to h^5, is

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{24}(9f_{n+1} + 19f_n - 5f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}). \tag{10}$$

Observe that this is also an implicit formula, because y_{n+1} appears in f_{n+1}.

Although both the Adams-Bashforth and Adams-Moulton formulas of the same order have local truncation errors proportional to the same power of h, the Adams-Moulton formulas of moderate order are in fact considerably more accurate. For example, while the two fourth-order formulas (6) and (10) both have local truncation errors proportional to h^5, the proportionality constant for the Adams-Moulton formula is less than $\frac{1}{10}$ of the proportionality constant for the Adams-Bashforth formula.

Is it better to use the explicit (and faster) Adams-Bashforth formula or the more accurate but implicit (and slower) Adams-Moulton formula? The answer depends on whether, by using the more accurate formula, you can increase the step size, and thereby reduce the number of steps enough to compensate for the additional computations required at each step.

In fact, numerical analysts have attempted to achieve both simplicity and accuracy by combining the two formulas in what is called a **predictor-corrector method**. Once y_{n-3}, y_{n-2}, y_{n-1}, and y_n are known, we can compute f_{n-3}, f_{n-2}, f_{n-1}, and f_n, and then use the

[9]Forest Ray Moulton (1872–1952), an American astronomer and administrator of science, was for many years professor of astronomy at the University of Chicago. During World War I, he was in charge of the Ballistics Branch of the U.S. Army at Aberdeen (MD) Proving Ground. In the course of calculating ballistics trajectories he devised substantial improvements in the Adams formula.

Adams-Bashforth (predictor) formula (6) to obtain a first value for y_{n+1}. Then we compute f_{n+1} and use the Adams-Moulton (corrector) formula (10), which is no longer implicit, to obtain an improved value of y_{n+1}. We can, of course, continue to use the corrector formula (10) if the change in y_{n+1} is too large. However, if it is necessary to use the corrector formula more than once or perhaps twice, it means that the step size h is too large and should be reduced.

In order to use any of the multistep methods, it is necessary first to calculate a few y_j by some other method. For example, the fourth-order Adams-Moulton method requires values for y_1 and y_2, while the fourth-order Adams-Bashforth method also requires a value for y_3. One way to proceed is to use a one-step method of comparable accuracy to calculate the necessary starting values. Thus, for a fourth-order multistep method, we might use the fourth-order Runge-Kutta method to calculate the starting values. This is the method used in the next example.

Another approach is to use a low-order method with a very small h to calculate y_1, and then to increase gradually both the order and the step size until enough starting values have been determined.

EXAMPLE 1

Consider again the initial value problem

$$y' = 1 - t + 4y, \quad y(0) = 1. \tag{11}$$

With a step size of $h = 0.1$, determine an approximate value of the solution $y = \phi(t)$ at $t = 0.4$ using the fourth-order Adams-Bashforth formula, the fourth-order Adams-Moulton formula, and the associated fourth-order predictor–corrector method.

Solution:

For starting data, we use the values of y_1, y_2, and y_3 found by the Runge-Kutta method. These are tabulated in Table 8.3.1. Next, calculating the corresponding values of $f(t, y)$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
y_0 &= 1, & f_0 &= 5,\\
y_1 &= 1.6089333, & f_1 &= 7.3357332,\\
y_2 &= 2.5050062, & f_2 &= 10.820025,\\
y_3 &= 3.8294145, & f_3 &= 16.017658.
\end{aligned}$$

Then, from the Adams-Bashforth formula, (6), we find that $y_4 = 5.7836305$. The exact value of the solution at $t = 0.4$, correct through eight digits, is 5.7942260, so the error is -0.0105955.

The Adams-Moulton formula, (10), leads to the equation

$$y_4 = 4.9251275 + 0.15y_4,$$

from which it follows that $y_4 = 5.7942676$ with an error of only 0.0000416.

Finally, using the result from the Adams-Bashforth formula as a predicted value of $\phi(0.4)$, we can then use equation (10) as a corrector. Corresponding to the predicted value of y_4, we find that $f_4 = 23.734522$. Hence, from equation (10), the corrected value of y_4 is 5.7926721. This result is in error by -0.0015539.

Observe that the Adams-Bashforth method is the simplest and fastest of these methods, since it involves only the evaluation of a single explicit formula. It is also the least accurate. Using the Adams-Moulton formula as a corrector increases the amount of calculation that is required, but the method is still explicit. In this problem the error in the corrected value of y_4 is reduced by approximately a factor of 7 (14.7%) when compared to the error in the predicted value. The Adams-Moulton method alone yields by far the best result, with an error that is about $\frac{1}{40}$ as large (2.7%) as the error from the predictor–corrector method.

Remember, however, that the Adams-Moulton method is implicit, which means that an equation must be solved at each step. In the problem considered here this equation is linear, so the solution is quickly found, but in nonlinear problems this part of the procedure may be much more time-consuming.

The Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.1$ gives $y_4 = 5.7927853$ with an error of -0.0014407; see Table 8.3.1. Thus, for this problem, the Runge-Kutta method is comparable in accuracy to the predictor–corrector method.

Backward Differentiation Formulas. Another type of multistep method uses a polynomial $P_k(t)$ to approximate the solution $\phi(t)$ of the initial value problem (1) rather than its derivative $\phi'(t)$, as in the Adams methods. We then differentiate $P_k(t)$ and set $P_k'(t_{n+1})$ equal to $f(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1})$ to obtain an implicit formula for y_{n+1}. These are called **backward differentiation formulas**. These methods became widely used in the 1970s because of the work of C. William Gear[10] on so-called *stiff differential equations*, whose solutions are very difficult to approximate by the methods discussed up to now; see Section 8.6.

The simplest case uses a first-degree polynomial $P_1(t) = At + B$. The coefficients are chosen so that $P_1(t_n)$ and $P_1(t_{n+1})$ agree with the computed values of the solution y_n and y_{n+1}, respectively: $P_1(t_n) = y_n$ and $P_1(t_{n+1}) = y_{n+1}$. Thus A and B must satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} At_n + B &= y_n, \\ At_{n+1} + B &= y_{n+1}. \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

Solving the linear algebraic equations (12) for A and B yields

$$A = \frac{y_{n+1} - y_n}{h} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \frac{y_{n+1}t_n - y_n t_{n+1}}{h}. \tag{13}$$

Since $P_1'(t) = A$, the requirement that $P_1'(t_{n+1}) = f(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1})$ is just $A = f(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1})$. Equating this value of A and the value of A given in equation (13) and rearranging terms, we obtain the **first-order backward differentiation formula**

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1}). \tag{14}$$

Note that equation (14) is just the backward Euler formula that we first saw in Section 8.1.

By using higher-order polynomials and correspondingly more data points, we can obtain backward differentiation formulas of any order. The **second-order backward differentiation formula** is

$$y_{n+1} = \frac{1}{3}\big(4y_n - y_{n-1} + 2hf(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1})\big), \tag{15}$$

and the **fourth-order backward differentiation formula** is

$$y_{n+1} = \frac{1}{25}\big(48y_n - 36y_{n-1} + 16y_{n-2} - 3y_{n-3} + 12hf(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1})\big). \tag{16}$$

These formulas have local truncation errors proportional to h^3 and h^5, respectively.

EXAMPLE 2

Use the fourth-order backward differentiation formula with $h = 0.1$ and the data given in Example 1 to determine an approximate value of the solution $y = \phi(t)$ at $t = 0.4$ for the initial value problem (11).

Solution:

Using equation (16) with $n = 3$, $h = 0.1$, and with $y_0, \ldots, y_3$ given in Example 1, we obtain the equation

$$y_4 = 4.6837842 + 0.192y_4.$$

[10]C. William Gear (1935–), born in London, England, received his undergraduate education at Cambridge University and his doctorate in 1960 from the University of Illinois. He was a member of the faculty at the University of Illinois for most of his career and made significant contributions to both computer design and numerical analysis. His influential book on numerical methods for differential equations is listed in the References.

Thus

$$y_4 = 5.7967626.$$

Comparing the calculated value with the exact value $\phi(0.4) = 5.7942260$, we find that the error is 0.0025366. This is somewhat better than the result using the fourth-order Adams-Bashforth method, but it is not as good as the result using the fourth-order predictor–corrector method, and not nearly as good as the result using the fourth-order Adams-Moulton method.

A comparison between one-step and multistep methods must take several factors into consideration. The fourth-order Runge-Kutta method requires four evaluations of f at each step, while the fourth-order Adams-Bashforth method (once past the starting values) requires only one, and the predictor–corrector method only two. Thus, for a given step size h, the latter two methods may well be considerably faster than Runge-Kutta. However, if Runge-Kutta is more accurate and therefore can use fewer steps, the difference in speed will be reduced and perhaps eliminated.

The Adams-Moulton and backward differentiation formulas also require that the difficulty in solving the implicit equation at each step be taken into account. All multistep methods have the possible disadvantage that errors in earlier steps can feed back into later calculations with unfavorable consequences. On the other hand, the underlying polynomial approximations in multistep methods make it easy to approximate the solution at points between the mesh points, should this be desirable. Multistep methods have become popular largely because it is relatively easy to estimate the error at each step and to adjust the order or the step size to control it. For a further discussion of such questions as these, see the books listed at the end of this chapter; in particular, Shampine (1994) continues to be an authoritative source.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 5, determine an approximate value of the solution at $t = 0.4$ and $t = 0.5$ using the specified method. For starting values, use the values given by the Runge-Kutta method; see Problems 2 through 6 of Section 8.3. Compare the results of the various methods with each other and with the actual solution (if available).

N **a.** Use the fourth-order predictor–corrector method with $h = 0.1$. Use the corrector formula once at each step.

N **b.** Use the fourth-order Adams-Moulton method with $h = 0.1$.

N **c.** Use the fourth-order backward differentiation method with $h = 0.1$.

1. $y' = 3 + t - y, \quad y(0) = 1$

2. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

3. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

4. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

5. $y' = (t^2 - y^2)\sin y, \quad y(0) = -1$

In each of Problems 6 through 10, find approximate values of the solution of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.5, 1.0, 1.5,$ and 2.0, using the specified method. For starting values, use the values given by the Runge-Kutta method; see Problems 7 through 11 in Section 8.3. Compare the results of the various methods with each other and with the actual solution (if available).

N **a.** Use the fourth-order predictor–corrector method with $h = 0.05$. Use the corrector formula once at each step.

N **b.** Use the fourth-order Adams-Moulton method with $h = 0.05$.

N **c.** Use the fourth-order backward differentiation method with $h = 0.05$.

6. $y' = 0.5 - t + 2y, \quad y(0) = 1$

7. $y' = 5t - 3\sqrt{y}, \quad y(0) = 2$

8. $y' = \sqrt{t + y}, \quad y(0) = 3$

9. $y' = 2t + e^{-ty}, \quad y(0) = 1$

10. $y' = (y^2 + 2ty)/(3 + t^2), \quad y(0) = 0.5$

11. **a.** Show that the first-order Adams-Bashforth method is the Euler method.

b. Show that the first-order Adams-Moulton method is the backward Euler method.

12. Show that the third-order Adams-Bashforth formula is

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{12}\left(23f_n - 16f_{n-1} + 5f_{n-2}\right).$$

13. Show that the third-order Adams-Moulton formula is

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{12}\left(5f_{n+1} + 8f_n - f_{n-1}\right).$$

14. Derive the second-order backward differentiation formula given by equation (15) in this section.

8.5 Systems of First-Order Equations

So far in this chapter we have discussed only numerical methods for approximating the solution of an initial value problem associated with a single first-order differential equation. These methods can also be applied to a system of first-order differential equations. Since a higher-order differential equation can always be reduced to a system of first-order differential equations, it is sufficient to deal with systems of first-order differential equations alone. For simplicity, we consider a system of two first-order differential equations

$$x' = f(t, x, y), \quad y' = g(t, x, y), \tag{1}$$

with the initial conditions

$$x(t_0) = x_0, \quad y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{2}$$

The functions f and g are assumed to satisfy the conditions of Theorem 7.1.1 so that the initial value problem (1) has a unique solution in some interval of the t-axis containing the point t_0. We wish to determine approximate values $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n, \ldots$ and $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n, \ldots$ of the solution $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ at the points $t_n = t_0 + nh$ with $n = 1, 2, \ldots$.

In vector notation, the initial value problem (1) can be written as

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}), \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0, \tag{3}$$

where $\mathbf{x}$ is the vector with components x and y, $\mathbf{f}$ is the vector function with components f and g, and $\mathbf{x}_0$ is the vector with components x_0 and y_0. One advantage of the vector notation is that, regardless of the number of equations in the system, the initial value problem always has the same form. All that changes is the number of components in the vectors $\mathbf{x}$, $\mathbf{f}$, and $\mathbf{x}_0$.

The methods of the previous sections can be readily generalized to handle systems of two (or more) equations. All that is needed (formally) is to replace the scalar variable y by the vector $\mathbf{x}$ and the scalar function f by the vector function $\mathbf{f}$ in the appropriate equations. For example, the Euler formula becomes

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + h\mathbf{f}_n, \tag{4}$$

where $\mathbf{f}_n = \mathbf{f}(t_n, \mathbf{x}_n)$, or, in component form,

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1} \\ y_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_n \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} + h \begin{pmatrix} f(t_n, x_n, y_n) \\ g(t_n, x_n, y_n) \end{pmatrix}. \tag{5}$$

The initial conditions are used to determine $\mathbf{f}_0 = \mathbf{f}(t_0, \mathbf{x}_0)$. The observation that $\mathbf{f}_0 = \boldsymbol{\phi}(t_0)$ means that $\mathbf{f}_0$ is the vector tangent to the graph of the solution $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\phi}(t)$ at the initial point $\mathbf{x}_0$ in the xy-plane. The approximate solution moves in the direction of this tangent vector for a time step h in order to find the next point $\mathbf{x}_1$. Then we calculate a new tangent vector $\mathbf{f}_1$ at $\mathbf{x}_1$, move along it for a time step h to find $\mathbf{x}_2$, and so forth.

In a similar way, the Runge-Kutta method can be extended to a system. For the step from t_n to t_{n+1} we have

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{6}(\mathbf{k}_{n1} + 2\mathbf{k}_{n2} + 2\mathbf{k}_{n3} + \mathbf{k}_{n4}), \tag{6}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{k}_{n1} &= \mathbf{f}(t_n, \mathbf{x}_n), \\ \mathbf{k}_{n2} &= \mathbf{f}\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}\mathbf{k}_{n1}\right), \\ \mathbf{k}_{n3} &= \mathbf{f}\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}\mathbf{k}_{n2}\right), \\ \mathbf{k}_{n4} &= \mathbf{f}(t_n + h, \mathbf{x}_n + h\mathbf{k}_{n3}). \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

The formulas for the fourth-order Adams-Moulton predictor-corrector method as it applies to the initial value problem (1) is given in Problem 8.

Building on the previous observation that every system of first-order differential equations can be written in the form given in (3), equation (4) is the Euler formula and equations (6) and (7) are the fourth-order Runge-Kutta formulas for any system of first-order differential equations. All that changes is the number of components in the vectors.

EXAMPLE 1

Determine approximate values of the solution $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ of the initial value problem

$$x' = x - 4y, \quad x(0) = 1 \quad y' = -x + y, \quad y(0) = 0$$

at the point $t = 0.2$. Use the Euler method with $h = 0.1$ and the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.2$. Compare the results with the values of the exact solution:

$$\phi(t) = \frac{e^{-t} + e^{3t}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi(t) = \frac{e^{-t} - e^{3t}}{4}. \tag{8}$$

Solution:

Let us first use the Euler method. For this problem, $f_n = x_n - 4y_n$ and $g_n = -x_n + y_n$; hence

$$f_0 = 1 - (4)(0) = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad g_0 = -1 + 0 = -1.$$

Then, from the Euler formula (5), we obtain

$$x_1 = 1 + (0.1)(1) = 1.1 \quad \text{and} \quad y_1 = 0 + (0.1)(-1) = -0.1.$$

At the next step,

$$f_1 = 1.1 - (4)(-0.1) = 1.5 \quad \text{and} \quad g_1 = -1.1 + (-0.1) = -1.2.$$

Consequently,

$$x_2 = 1.1 + (0.1)(1.5) = 1.25 \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = -0.1 + (0.1)(-1.2) = -0.22.$$

The values of the exact solution, correct to eight digits, are $\phi(0.2) = 1.3204248$ and $\psi(0.2) = -0.25084701$. Thus the values calculated from the Euler method are in error by about 0.0704 and 0.0308, respectively, corresponding to percentage errors of about 5.3% and 12.3%.

Now let us use the Runge-Kutta method to approximate $\phi(0.2)$ and $\psi(0.2)$. To make use of the vector-valued equations (7), define

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{pmatrix} f(x, y) \\ g(x, y) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x - 4y \\ -x + y \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

With $h = 0.2$ we obtain the following values from equations (7):

$$\mathbf{k}_{01} = \mathbf{f}\left(0, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix};$$

$$\mathbf{k}_{02} = \mathbf{f}\left(0.1, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 0.1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \mathbf{f}\left(0.1, \begin{pmatrix} 1.1 \\ -0.1 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \begin{pmatrix} 1.5 \\ -1.2 \end{pmatrix};$$

$$\mathbf{k}_{03} = \mathbf{f}\left(0.1, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 0.1\begin{pmatrix} 1.5 \\ -1.2 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \mathbf{f}\left(0.1, \begin{pmatrix} 1.15 \\ -0.12 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \begin{pmatrix} 1.63 \\ -1.27 \end{pmatrix};$$

$$\mathbf{k}_{04} = \mathbf{f}\left(0.2, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 0.2\begin{pmatrix} 1.63 \\ -1.27 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \mathbf{f}\left(0.2, \begin{pmatrix} 1.326 \\ -0.254 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \begin{pmatrix} 2.342 \\ -1.580 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then, substituting these values in equation (6), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}_1 &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{0.2}{6}\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + 2\begin{pmatrix} 1.5 \\ -1.2 \end{pmatrix} + 2\begin{pmatrix} 1.63 \\ -1.27 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2.342 \\ -1.580 \end{pmatrix}\right) \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1.3200667 \\ -0.25066667 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

These values of x_1 and y_1 are in error by about 0.000358 and 0.000180, respectively, with percentage errors much less than one-tenth of 1%.

This example again illustrates the great gains in accuracy that are obtainable by using a more accurate approximation method, such as the Runge-Kutta method. In the calculations we have just outlined, the Runge-Kutta method requires only twice as many function evaluations as the Euler method, but the error in the Euler method is about 200 times greater than that in the Runge-Kutta method.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 5, determine approximate values of the solution $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ of the given initial value problem at $t = 0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8,$ and 1.0. Compare the results obtained by different methods and different step sizes.

N **a.** Use the Euler method with $h = 0.1$.
N **b.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.2$.
N **c.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.1$.

1. $x' = x + y + t, \quad y' = 4x - 2y; \quad x(0) = 1, \quad y(0) = 0$

2. $x' = -tx - y - 1, \quad y' = x; \quad x(0) = 1, \quad y(0) = 1$

3. $x' = x - y + xy, \quad y' = 3x - 2y - xy; \quad x(0) = 0, \quad y(0) = 1$

4. $x' = x(1 - 0.5x - 0.5y), \quad y' = y(-0.25 + 0.5x);$ $x(0) = 4, \quad y(0) = 1$

5. $x' = \exp(-x + y) - \cos x, \quad y' = \sin(x - 3y);$ $x(0) = 1, \quad y(0) = 2$

N **6.** Consider the example problem $x' = x - 4y$, $y' = -x + y$ with the initial conditions $x(0) = 1$ and $y(0) = 0$. Use the Runge-Kutta method to find approximate values of the solution of this problem on the interval $0 \le t \le 1$. Start with $h = 0.2$, and then repeat the calculation with step sizes $h = 0.1, 0.05, \ldots$, each half as long as in the preceding case. Continue the process until the first five digits of the solution at $t = 1$ are unchanged for successive step sizes. Determine whether these digits are accurate by comparing them with the exact solution given in equations (8) in the text.

N **7.** Consider the initial value problem

$$x'' + t^2x' + 3x = t, \quad x(0) = 1, \quad x'(0) = 2.$$

Convert this problem to a system of two first-order equations, and determine approximate values of the solution at $t = 0.5$ and $t = 1.0$ using the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.1$.

N **8.** Consider the general initial value problem $x' = f(t, x, y)$ and $y' = g(t, x, y)$ with $x(t_0) = x_0$ and $y(t_0) = y_0$. The Adams-Moulton predictor-corrector method of Section 8.4 generalizes to

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{1}{24}h(55f_n - 59f_{n-1} + 37f_{n-2} - 9f_{n-3}),$$

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{1}{24}h(55g_n - 59g_{n-1} + 37g_{n-2} - 9g_{n-3})$$

and

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{1}{24}h(9f_{n+1} + 19f_n - 5f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}),$$

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{1}{24}h(9g_{n+1} + 19g_n - 5g_{n-1} + g_{n-2}).$$

Determine an approximate value of the solution at $t = 0.4$ for the example initial value problem $x' = x - 4y$, $y' = -x + y$ with $x(0) = 1$, $y(0) = 0$. Take $h = 0.1$. Correct the predicted value once. For the values of $x_1, \ldots, y_3$ use the values of the exact solution rounded to six digits: $x_1 = 1.12735$, $x_2 = 1.32042$, $x_3 = 1.60021$, $y_1 = -0.111255$, $y_2 = -0.250847$, and $y_3 = -0.429696$.

8.6 More on Errors; Stability

In Section 8.1 we discussed some ideas related to the errors that can occur in a numerical approximation of the solution of the initial value problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{1}$$

In this section we continue that discussion and also point out some other difficulties that can arise. Some of the points that we wish to make are fairly difficult to treat in detail, so we will illustrate them by means of examples.

Truncation and Round-Off Errors. Recall that, for the Euler method with equal time steps of size h, we showed the local truncation error is proportional to h^2 and, for a finite interval, the global truncation error is at most a constant times h. In general, for a method of order p, the local truncation error is proportional to h^{p+1} and the global truncation error on a finite interval is bounded by a constant times h^p. For example, Euler's method is an order 1 method.

To achieve high accuracy, we normally use a numerical procedure for which p is fairly large, perhaps 4 or higher. As p increases, the formula used in computing y_{n+1} normally becomes more complicated, and hence more calculations are required at each step. However, this is usually not a serious problem unless $f(t, y)$ is very complicated or the calculation must be repeated very many times.

If the step size h is decreased, the global truncation error is decreased by the same factor raised to the power p. However, as we mentioned in Section 8.1, if h is very small, a great many steps will be required to cover a fixed interval, and the global round-off error may be larger than the global truncation error. The situation is shown schematically in Figure 8.6.1. We assume that the round-off error R_n is proportional to the number of computations performed

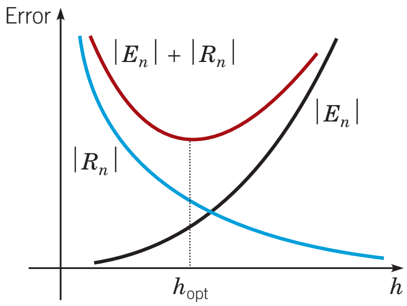


FIGURE 8.6.1 The dependence of truncation error $|E_n|$ (black), round-off error $|R_n|$ (blue), and total error $|E_n| + |R_n|$ (red) on the step size h.

and therefore is inversely proportional to the step size h. On the other hand, the truncation error E_n is proportional to a positive power of h. From equation (17) of Section 8.1, we know that the total error is bounded by $|E_n| + |R_n|$; hence we wish to choose h so as to minimize this quantity. The optimum value of h occurs when the rate of increase of the truncation error (as h increases) is balanced by the rate of decrease of the round-off error, as indicated in Figure 8.6.1.

EXAMPLE 1

Consider the example problem

$$y' = 1 - t + 4y, \quad y(0) = 1. \tag{2}$$

Using the Euler method with various step sizes, calculate approximate values for the solution $\phi(t)$ at $t = 0.5$ and $t = 1$. Try to determine the optimum step size.

Solution:

Table 8.6.1 shows the results of applying Euler's method for nine different values of h. The results were obtained using software configured to use only four significant digits. This was done on purpose to have round-off errors become significant for larger values of h than if more significant digits are used in floating-point operations. The first two columns are the step size h and the number of steps N required to traverse the interval $0 \le t \le 1$. Then $y_{N/2}$ and y_N are approximations to $\phi(0.5) = 8.712$ and $\phi(1) = 64.90$, respectively. These quantities appear in the third and fifth columns. The fourth and sixth columns display the differences between the calculated values and the actual value of the solution.

TABLE 8.6.1 Approximations to the Solution of the Initial Value Problem $y' = 1 - t + 4y, y(0) = 1$ Using the Euler Method with Different Step Sizes

h	N	$y_{N/2}$	Error	y_N	Error
0.01	100	8.390	−0.322	60.12	−4.78
0.005	200	8.551	−0.161	62.51	−2.39
0.002	500	8.633	−0.079	63.75	−1.15
0.001	1000	8.656	−0.056	63.94	−0.96
0.0008	1250	8.636	−0.076	63.78	−1.12
0.000625	1600	8.616	−0.096	64.35	−0.55
0.0005	2000	8.772	0.060	64.00	−0.90
0.0004	2500	8.507	0.205	63.40	−1.50
0.00025	4000	8.231	0.481	56.77	−8.13

For relatively large step sizes, the round-off error is much less than the global truncation error. Consequently, the total error is approximately the same as the global truncation error, which for the Euler method is bounded by a constant times h. Thus, as the step size is reduced, the error is reduced proportionally. The first three lines in Table 8.6.1 show this type of behavior. For $h = 0.001$ the error has been further reduced, but much less than proportionally; this indicates that round-off error is becoming important. As h is reduced still more, the total error begins to fluctuate, and further improvements in accuracy become problematic. For values of h less than 0.0005, the total error is clearly increasing, which indicates that round-off error is now the dominant part of the error.

These results can also be expressed in terms of the number of steps N. For N less than about 1000, accuracy is improved by taking more steps, while for N greater than about 2000, using more steps has an adverse effect. Thus for this problem it is best to use an N somewhere between 1000 and 2000. For the calculations shown in Table 8.6.1, the best result at $t = 0.5$ occurs for $N = 1000$, while at $t = 1.0$ the best result is for $N = 1600$.

You should be careful not to read too much into the results shown in Example 1. The optimum ranges for h and N depend on the differential equation, the numerical method that is used, and the number of digits that are retained in floating-point calculations. Nevertheless, it is generally true that if too many steps are required in a calculation, then eventually round-off error is likely to accumulate to the point where it seriously degrades the accuracy of the procedure. For many problems this is not a concern: for them, any of the fourth-order methods we have discussed in Sections 8.3 and 8.4 will produce good results with a number of steps far less than the level at which round-off error becomes important. For some problems, however, round-off error does become vitally important. For such problems, the choice of method may be crucial. This is also one reason why modern codes provide a means of adjusting the step size as they go along, using a larger step size wherever possible and a very small step size only where necessary.

Vertical Asymptotes. As a second example, consider the problem of approximating the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of

$$y' = t^2 + y^2, \quad y(0) = 1. \tag{3}$$

Since the differential equation is nonlinear, the existence and uniqueness theorem (Theorem 2.4.2) guarantees only that there is a solution in *some* interval about $t = 0$. Suppose that we try to compute an approximation to the solution of the initial value problem on the interval $0 \leq t \leq 1$ using different numerical procedures.

If we use the Euler method with $h = 0.1$, 0.05, and 0.01, we find the following approximate values at $t = 1$: 7.189548, 12.32093, and 90.75551, respectively. The large differences among the computed values are convincing evidence that we should use a more accurate numerical procedure—the Runge-Kutta method, for example. Using the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.1$, we find the approximate value 735.0991 at $t = 1$, which is quite different from those obtained using the Euler method. Repeating the calculations using step sizes of $h = 0.05$ and $h = 0.01$, we obtain the information shown in Table 8.6.2.

TABLE 8.6.2 Approximations to the Solution of the Initial Value Problem $y' = t^2 + y^2$, $y(0) = 1$ Using the Runge-Kutta Method

h	$t = 0.90$	$t = 1.0$
0.1	14.02182	735.0991
0.05	14.27117	1.75863×10^5
0.01	14.30478	2.0913×10^{2893}
0.001	14.30486	

The values at $t = 0.9$ are reasonable, and we might well believe that the solution has a value of about 14.305 at $t = 0.9$. However, it is not clear what is happening between $t = 0.9$ and $t = 1.0$. To help clarify this, let us turn to some analytical approximations to the solution of the initial value problem (3). Note that on $0 \leq t \leq 1$,

$$y^2 \leq t^2 + y^2 \leq 1 + y^2. \tag{4}$$

This suggests that the solution $y = \phi_1(t)$ of

$$y' = 1 + y^2, \quad y(0) = 1 \tag{5}$$

and the solution $y = \phi_2(t)$ of

$$y' = y^2, \quad y(0) = 1 \tag{6}$$

are upper and lower bounds, respectively, for the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the original problem, since all these solutions pass through the same initial point. Indeed, it can be shown (for example, by the iteration method of Section 2.8) that $\phi_2(t) \le \phi(t) \le \phi_1(t)$ as long as these functions exist. The important thing to note is that we can solve initial value problems (5) and (6) for ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 by separation of variables. We find that

$$\phi_1(t) = \tan\left(t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right), \quad \phi_2(t) = \frac{1}{1-t}. \tag{7}$$

Thus $\phi_2(t) \to \infty$ as $t \to 1$, and $\phi_1(t) \to \infty$ as $t \to \dfrac{\pi}{4} \cong 0.785$. These calculations show that the solution of the original initial value problem exists at least for $0 \le t < \dfrac{\pi}{4}$ and at most for $0 \le t < 1$. The solution of the problem (3) has a vertical asymptote for some t in $\dfrac{\pi}{4} \le t \le 1$ and thus does not exist on the entire interval $0 \le t \le 1$.

Our numerical calculations, however, suggest that we can go beyond $t = \dfrac{\pi}{4}$, and probably beyond $t = 0.9$. Assuming that the solution of the initial value problem exists at $t = 0.9$ and has the value 14.305, we can obtain a more accurate estimate of what happens for larger t by considering the initial value problems (5) and (6) with $y(0) = 1$ replaced by $y(0.9) = 14.305$. Then we obtain

$$\phi_1(t) = \tan(t + 0.60100), \quad \phi_2(t) = \frac{1}{0.96991 - t}, \tag{8}$$

where five decimal places have been kept in the calculation. Therefore, $\phi_1(t) \to \infty$ as $t \to \dfrac{\pi}{2} - 0.60100 \cong 0.96980$ and $\phi_2(t) \to \infty$ as $t \to 0.96991$. We conclude that the asymptote of the solution of the initial value problem (3) lies between these two values. This example illustrates the sort of information that can be obtained by a judicious combination of analytical and numerical work.

Stability. The concept of stability is associated with the possibility that small errors that are introduced in the course of a mathematical procedure may die out as the procedure continues. Conversely, instability occurs if small errors tend to increase, perhaps without bound. For example, in Section 2.5 we identified equilibrium solutions of a differential equation as (asymptotically) stable or unstable, depending on whether solutions that were initially near the equilibrium solution tended to approach it or to depart from it as t increased. Somewhat more generally, the solution of an initial value problem is asymptotically stable if initially nearby solutions tend to approach the given solution, and unstable if they tend to depart from it. Visually, in an asymptotically stable problem the graphs of solutions will come together, while in an unstable problem they will separate.

If we are investigating an initial value problem numerically, the best that we can hope for is that the numerical approximation will mimic the behavior of the actual solution. We cannot make an unstable problem into a stable one merely by approximating its solution numerically. However, it may well happen that a numerical procedure will introduce instabilities that were not part of the original problem, and this can cause trouble in approximating the solution. Avoidance of such instabilities may require us to place restrictions on the step size h.

To illustrate what can happen in the simplest possible context, consider the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ry, \tag{9}$$

where r is a constant. Suppose that in approximating the solution of this equation, we have reached the point (t_n, y_n). Let us compare the exact solution of equation (9) that passes through this point, namely,

$$\phi(t) = y_n \exp(r(t - t_n)), \tag{10}$$

with numerical approximations obtained from the Euler formula

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf(t_n, y_n) \tag{11}$$

and from the backward Euler formula

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf(t_{n+1}, y_{n+1}). \tag{12}$$

From the Euler formula (11) we obtain

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hry_n = y_n(1 + rh). \tag{13}$$

Similarly, from the backward Euler formula (12) we have

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hry_{n+1},$$

or

$$y_{n+1} = \frac{y_n}{1 - rh} = y_n\Big(1 + rh + (rh)^2 + \cdots\Big). \tag{14}$$

Finally, evaluating the solution (10) at $t_n + h$, we find that

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) = y_n \exp(rh) = y_n\left(1 + rh + \frac{(rh)^2}{2} + \cdots\right). \tag{15}$$

Comparing equations (13), (14), and (15), we see that the errors $y_{n+1} - \phi(t_{n+1})$ in both the Euler formula and the backward Euler formula are of order h^2, as the theory predicts.

Now suppose that we change the value y_n to $y_n + \delta$. Think, if you wish, of δ as the error that has accumulated by the time we reach $t = t_n$. The question is whether this error increases or decreases in going one more step to t_{n+1}.

For the exact solution (15), the change in $\phi(t_{n+1})$ due to the change δ in y_n is just $\delta \exp(rh)$. This quantity is less than δ if $\exp(rh) < 1$, or in other words if $r < 0$. This confirms our conclusion in Chapter 2 that equation (9) is asymptotically stable if $r < 0$, and is unstable if $r > 0$.

For the backward Euler method, the change in y_{n+1} in equation (14) due to replacing y_n by $y_n + \delta$ is $\delta/(1 - rh)$. For $r < 0$ the quantity $1/(1 - rh)$ is always nonnegative and less than 1. Thus, if the differential equation is stable, then so is the backward Euler method for an arbitrary step size h.

On the other hand, for the Euler method, the change in y_{n+1} in equation (13) due to replacing y_n by $y_n + \delta$ is $\delta(1 + rh)$. For $r < 0$ we can write $1 + rh$ as $1 - |r|h$. Then the requirement that $|1 + rh| < 1$ is equivalent to

$$-1 < 1 - |r|h < 1, \quad \text{or} \quad 0 < |r|h < 2.$$

Consequently, h must satisfy $h < \dfrac{2}{|r|}$. Thus the Euler method is not stable for this problem unless h is sufficiently small.

The restriction on the step size h in using the Euler method in the preceding example is rather mild unless $|r|$ is quite large. Nonetheless, the example illustrates that it may be necessary to restrict h in order to achieve stability in the numerical method, even though the initial value problem itself is stable for all values of h. Problems for which a much smaller step size is needed for stability than for accuracy are called **stiff**. The backward differentiation formulas described in Section 8.4 (of which the backward Euler formula is the lowest order example) are the most popular formulas for dealing with stiff problems. The following example illustrates the kind of instability that can occur when we try to approximate the solution of a stiff problem.

EXAMPLE 2 | A Stiff Problem

Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = -100y + 100t + 1, \quad y(0) = 1. \tag{16}$$

Find numerical approximations to the solution for $0 \le t \le 1$ using the Euler, backward Euler, and Runge-Kutta methods. Compare the numerical results with the exact solution.

Solution:

Since the differential equation is linear, it is easy to solve, and the solution of the initial value problem (16) is

$$y = \phi(t) = e^{-100t} + t. \tag{17}$$

A graph of the solution is shown in Figure 8.6.2. There is a thin layer (sometimes called a **boundary layer**) to the right of $t = 0$ in which the exponential term is significant and the solution varies rapidly. Once past this layer, however, $\phi(t) \cong t$ and the graph of the solution is essentially a straight line. The width of the boundary layer is somewhat arbitrary, but it is certainly small. At $t = 0.1$, for example, $\exp(-100t) \cong 0.000045$.

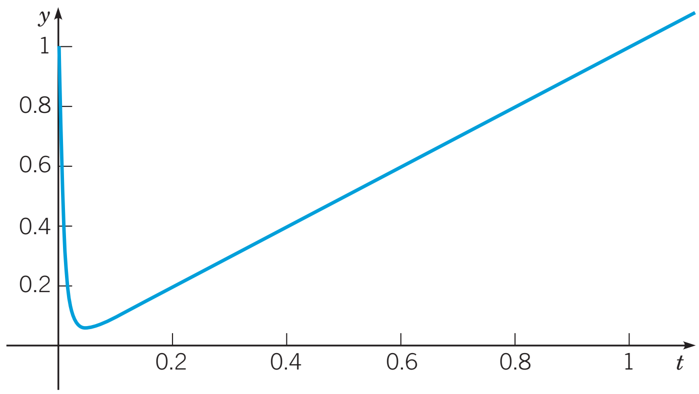


FIGURE 8.6.2 The solution of the initial value problem $y' = -100y + 100t + 1,\ y(0) = 1$.

Some values of the solution $\phi(t)$, correct to six significant digits, are given in the second column of Table 8.6.3.

If we plan to approximate the solution (17) numerically, we might intuitively expect that a small step size will be needed only in the boundary layer. To make this expectation a bit more precise, recall from Section 8.1 that the local truncation errors for the Euler and backward Euler methods are proportional to $\phi''(t)$. For this problem $\phi''(t) = 10^4 e^{-100t}$, which varies from a value of 10^4 at $t = 0$ to nearly zero for $t > 0.2$. Thus a very small step size is needed for accuracy near $t = 0$, but a much larger step size is adequate once t is a little larger.

On the other hand, the stability analysis in equations (9) through (15) also applies to this problem. Since $r = -100$ for equation (16), it follows that for stability we need $h < 2/|r| = 0.02$ for the Euler method, but there is no corresponding restriction for the backward Euler method.

Some results obtained from the Euler method are shown in columns three ($h = 0.025$) and four ($h = 0.01666\ldots$) of Table 8.6.3. The values for $h = 0.025$ are worthless because of instability, while those for $h = 0.01666\ldots$ are reasonably accurate for $t \geq 0.2$. However, comparable accuracy for this range of t is obtained for $h = 0.1$ by using the backward Euler method, as shown by the results in column seven of the table.

TABLE 8.6.3 Numerical Approximations to the Solution of the Initial Value Problem $y' = -100y + 100t + 1,\ y(0) = 1$

t	Exact	Euler $h = 0.025$	Euler $h = 0.0166\ldots$	Runge-Kutta $h = 0.0333\ldots$	Runge-Kutta $h = 0.025$	Backward Euler $h = 0.1$
0.0	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
0.05	0.056738	2.300000	−0.246296		0.470471	
0.1	0.100045	5.162500	0.187792	10.6527	0.276796	0.190909
0.2	0.200000	25.8289	0.207707	111.559	0.231257	0.208264
0.4	0.400000	657.241	0.400059	1.24×10^4	0.400977	0.400068
0.6	0.600000	1.68×10^4	0.600000	1.38×10^6	0.600031	0.600001
0.8	0.800000	4.31×10^5	0.800000	1.54×10^8	0.800001	0.800000
1.0	1.000000	1.11×10^7	1.000000	1.71×10^{10}	1.000000	1.000000

The situation is not improved by using, instead of the Euler method, a more accurate one, such as Runge-Kutta. For this problem the Runge-Kutta method is unstable for $h = 0.033 \ldots$ but stable for $h = 0.025$, as shown by the results in columns five and six of Table 8.6.3.

The results given in the table for $t = 0.05$ and for $t = 0.1$ show that in the boundary layer, a smaller step size is needed to obtain an accurate approximation. You are invited to explore this matter further in Problem 3.

The following example illustrates some other difficulties that may be encountered in dealing with numerical approximations for unstable differential equations.

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the task of finding numerical approximations to two linearly independent solutions of the second-order linear differential equation

$$y'' - 10\pi^2 y = 0 \tag{18}$$

for $t > 0$. Note any difficulties that may arise.

Solution:

Since we contemplate a numerical approach to this problem, we first convert equation (18) into a system of two first-order differential equations so that we can use the methods of Section 8.5. Thus we let $x_1 = y$ and $x_2 = y'$. In this way we obtain the system

$$x_1' = x_2, \quad x_2' = 10\pi^2 x_1,$$

or, if $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)^T$,

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 10\pi^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}. \tag{19}$$

The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the coefficient matrix in equation (19) are

$$r_1 = \sqrt{10}\pi, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{10}\pi \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = -\sqrt{10}\pi, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\sqrt{10}\pi \end{pmatrix}, \tag{20}$$

so two linearly independent solutions of the system (19) are

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{10}\pi \end{pmatrix} e^{\sqrt{10}\pi t}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\sqrt{10}\pi \end{pmatrix} e^{-\sqrt{10}\pi t}. \tag{21}$$

The corresponding solutions of the second-order differential equation (18) are the first components of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$: $y_1(t) = e^{\sqrt{10}\pi t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-\sqrt{10}\pi t}$, respectively.

We also wish to consider another pair of linearly independent solutions obtained by forming linear combinations of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$:

$$\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh\left(\sqrt{10}\pi t\right) \\ \sqrt{10}\pi \sinh\left(\sqrt{10}\pi t\right) \end{pmatrix} \tag{22}$$

and

$$\mathbf{x}^{(4)}(t) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \sinh\left(\sqrt{10}\pi t\right) \\ \sqrt{10}\pi \cosh\left(\sqrt{10}\pi t\right) \end{pmatrix} \tag{23}$$

Although the expressions for $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(4)}(t)$ are quite different, recall that for large t we have $\cosh\left(\sqrt{10}\pi t\right) \cong \frac{1}{2}e^{\sqrt{10}\pi t}$ and $\sinh\left(\sqrt{10}\pi t\right) \cong \frac{1}{2}e^{\sqrt{10}\pi t}$. Thus if t is large enough and only a fixed number of digits are retained, then numerically the two vector functions $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(4)}(t)$ look exactly the same. For instance, correct to eight digits, we have, for $t = 1$,

$$\sinh\left(\sqrt{(10}\pi\right) = \cosh\left(\sqrt{10}\pi\right) = 10{,}315.894.$$

If we retain only eight digits, then the two solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(4)}(t)$ are identical at $t = 1$ and indeed for all $t > 1$. Even if we retain more digits, eventually the two solutions will appear (numerically) to be identical. This phenomenon is called **numerical dependence**.

Which solution a numerical method produces depends on the initial condition. In particular, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ is obtained with the initial condition $\mathbf{x}(0) = \left(1, \sqrt{10\pi}\right)^T$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ from $\mathbf{x}(0) = \left(1, -\sqrt{10\pi}\right)^T$, $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ from $\mathbf{x}(0) = (1, 0)^T$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(4)}$ from $\mathbf{x}(0) = (0, 1)^T$.

For the system (19) we can avoid the issue of numerical dependence by calculating instead the solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$. From equation (21) we know that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ is proportional to $e^{\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$, while $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ is proportional to $e^{-\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$, so they behave very differently as t increases. Even so, we encounter difficulty in calculating $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ correctly on a large interval. Recall that $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ is the solution of equation (19) subject to the initial condition

$$\mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\sqrt{10\pi} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{24}$$

If we attempt to approximate the solution of the initial value problem (19), (24) numerically, then at each step of the calculation we introduce truncation and round-off errors. Thus, at any point t_n, the data to be used in advancing to the next point are not precisely the values of the components of $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t_n)$. The solution of the initial value problem with these data at t_n involves not only $e^{-\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$ but also $e^{\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$. Because the error in the data at t_n is small, the latter function appears with a very small coefficient. Nevertheless, since $e^{-\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$ tends to zero and $e^{\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$ grows very rapidly, the latter eventually dominates, and ultimately the calculated solution is very far from $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$.

To be specific, suppose that we try to approximate the solution of the initial value problem (19), (24), the first component of which is the solution $y_2(t) = e^{-\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$ of the second-order initial value problem

$$y'' - 10\pi^2 y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = -\sqrt{10\pi}. \tag{25}$$

Using the Runge-Kutta method with a step size $h = 0.01$ and keeping eight digits in the calculations, we obtain the results in Table 8.6.4. It is clear from these results that the numerical approximation begins to deviate significantly from the exact solution for $t > 0.5$, and soon differs from it by many orders of magnitude. The reason is the presence, in the numerical approximation, of a small component of the exponentially growing quantity $e^{\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$. With eight-digit arithmetic we can expect a round-off error of the order of 10^{-8} at each step. Since $e^{\sqrt{10\pi}\,t}$ grows by a factor of 3.7×10^{21} from $t = 0$ to $t = 5$, an error of order 10^{-8} near $t = 0$ can produce an error of order 10^{13} at $t = 5$ even if no further errors are introduced in the intervening calculations. The results given in Table 8.6.4 demonstrate that this is exactly what happens.

TABLE 8.6.4 **Exact Solution of $y'' - 10\pi^2 y = 0$, $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = -\sqrt{10\pi}$ and Numerical Approximation Using the Runge-Kutta Method with $h = 0.01$**

	y	
t	Runge-Kutta ($h = 0.001$)	Exact
0.0	1.0000	1.0000
0.25	8.3439×10^{-2}	8.3438×10^{-2}
0.5	6.9623×10^{-3}	6.9620×10^{-3}
0.75	5.8409×10^{-4}	5.8089×10^{-4}
1.0	8.6688×10^{-5}	4.8469×10^{-5}
1.5	5.4900×10^{-3}	3.3744×10^{-7}
2.0	7.8852×10^{-1}	2.3492×10^{-9}
2.5	1.1326×10^{2}	1.6355×10^{-11}
3.0	1.6268×10^{4}	1.1386×10^{-13}
3.5	2.3368×10^{6}	7.9272×10^{-16}
4.0	3.3565×10^{8}	5.5189×10^{-18}
4.5	4.8211×10^{10}	3.8422×10^{-20}
5.0	6.9249×10^{12}	2.6749×10^{-22}

You should bear in mind that the numerical values of the entries in the second column of Table 8.6.4 are extremely sensitive to slight variations in how the calculations are executed. Regardless of such details, however, the exponential growth of the approximation will be clearly evident.

Equation (18) is highly unstable, and the behavior shown in this example is typical of unstable problems. We can track a solution accurately for a while, and the interval can be extended by using smaller step sizes or more accurate methods, but eventually the instability in the problem itself takes over and leads to large errors.

Some Comments on the Selection of a Numerical Method. In this chapter we have introduced several numerical methods for approximating the solution of an initial value problem. We have tried to emphasize some important ideas while limiting the level of complexity. For one thing, except for the comments at the end of Section 8.2, we have always used a uniform step size, whereas production codes that are currently in use provide for varying the step size as the calculation proceeds.

There are several considerations that must be taken into account in choosing step sizes. Of course, one is accuracy; too large a step size leads to an inaccurate result. Normally, an error tolerance is prescribed in advance, and the step size at each step must be consistent with this requirement. As we have seen, the step size must also be chosen so that the method is stable. Otherwise, small errors could grow and render the subsequent computations worthless. Finally, for implicit methods an equation must be solved at each step, and the method used to solve the equation may impose additional restrictions on the step size.

In choosing a method, one must also balance the considerations of accuracy and stability against the amount of time required to execute each step. An implicit method, such as the Adams-Moulton method, requires more calculations for each step, but if its accuracy and stability permit a larger step size (and consequently fewer steps), then this may more than compensate for the additional calculations. The backward differentiation formulas of moderate order (say, four) are highly stable and are therefore indicated for stiff problems, for which stability is the controlling factor.

Some current production codes also permit the order of the method to be varied, as well as the step size, as the calculation proceeds. The error is estimated at each step, and the order and step size are chosen to satisfy the prescribed error tolerance. In practice, Adams methods up to order twelve and backward differentiation formulas up to order five are in use. Higher-order backward differentiation formulas are unsuitable because of a lack of stability.

Finally, we note that the smoothness of the function f—that is, the number of continuous derivatives that it possesses—is a factor in choosing the order of the method to be used. High-order methods lose some of their accuracy if f is not smooth to a corresponding order.

A numerical analysis course is likely to provide a more in-depth investigation of errors, stability, and efficiency. Similar information can be found in the References at the end of this chapter.

Problems

1. To obtain some idea of the possible dangers of small errors in the initial conditions, such as those due to round-off, consider the initial value problem

$$y' = t + y - 3, \quad y(0) = 2.$$

a. Show that the solution is $y = \phi_1(t) = 2 - t$.

b. Suppose that in the initial condition a mistake is made, and 2.001 is used instead of 2. Determine the solution $y = \phi_2(t)$ in this case, and compare the difference $\phi_2(t) - \phi_1(t)$ at $t = 1$ and as $t \to \infty$.

2. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = t^2 + e^y, \quad y(0) = 0. \tag{26}$$

Using the Runge-Kutta method with step size h, we obtain the results in Table 8.6.5. These results suggest that the solution has a vertical asymptote between $t = 0.9$ and $t = 1.0$.

TABLE 8.6.5 Approximations to the Solution of the Initial Value Problem $y' = t^2 + e^y$, $y(0) = 0$ Using the Runge-Kutta Method

h	$y(0.9)$	$y(1.0)$
0.02	3.42985	$> 10^{38}$
0.01	3.42982	$> 10^{38}$

a. Let $y = \phi(t)$ be the solution of initial value problem (27). Further, let $y = \phi_1(t)$ be the solution of

$$y' = 1 + e^y, \quad y(0) = 0, \tag{27}$$

and let $y = \phi_2(t)$ be the solution of

$$y' = e^y, \quad y(0) = 0. \tag{28}$$

Show that

$$\phi_2(t) \le \phi(t) \le \phi_1(t) \tag{29}$$

on some interval, contained in $0 \le t \le 1$, where all three solutions exist.

b. Determine $\phi_1(t)$ and $\phi_2(t)$. Then show that $\phi(t) \to \infty$ for some t between $t = \ln 2 \cong 0.69315$ and $t = 1$.

c. Solve the differential equations $y' = e^y$ and $y' = 1 + e^y$, respectively, with the initial condition $y(0.9) = 3.4298$. Use the results to show that $\phi(t) \to \infty$ when $t \cong 0.932$.

3. Consider again the initial value problem (16) from Example 2. Investigate how small a step size h must be chosen to ensure that the error at $t = 0.05$ and at $t = 0.1$ is less than 0.0005.

N **a.** Use the Euler method.

N **b.** Use the backward Euler method.

N **c.** Use the Runge-Kutta method.

4. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = -10y + 2.5t^2 + 0.5t, \quad y(0) = 4.$$

a. Find the solution $y = \phi(t)$ and draw its graph for $0 \le t \le 5$.

N **b.** The stability analysis in the text suggests that for this problem, the Euler method is stable only for $h < 0.2$. Confirm that this is true by applying the Euler method to this problem for $0 \le t \le 5$ with step sizes near 0.2.

N **c.** Apply the Runge-Kutta method with various step sizes to this problem for $0 \le t \le 5$. What can you conclude about the stability of this method?

N **d.** Apply the backward Euler method with various step sizes to this problem for $0 \le t \le 5$. What step size is needed to ensure that the error at $t = 5$ is less than 0.01?

In each of Problems 5 and 6:

a. Find a formula for the solution of the initial value problem, and note that it is independent of λ.

N **b.** Use the Runge-Kutta method with $h = 0.01$ to compute approximate values of the solution for $0 \le t \le 1$ for various values of λ such as $\lambda = 1, 10, 20$, and 50.

c. Explain the differences, if any, between the exact solution and the numerical approximations.

5. $y' - \lambda y = 1 - \lambda t, \quad y(0) = 0$

6. $y' - \lambda y = 2t - \lambda t^2, \quad y(0) = 0$

References

There are many books of varying degrees of sophistication that deal with numerical analysis in general and the numerical approximation of solutions of ordinary differential equations in particular. Among these are:

Ascher, Uri M., and Petzold, Linda R., *Computer Methods for Ordinary Differential Equations and Differential-Algebraic Equations* (Philadelphia: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 1998).

Atkinson, Kendall E., Han, Weimin, and Stewart, David, *Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations* (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2009).

Gautschi, W. *Numerical Analysis* (2nd ed.) (New York: Birkhäuser, 2011).

Gear, C. William, *Numerical Initial Value Problems in Ordinary Differential Equations* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1971).

Henrici, Peter, *Discrete Variable Methods in Ordinary Differential Equations* (New York: Wiley, 1962).

Henrici, Peter, *Error Propagation for Difference Methods* (New York: Wiley, 1963; Huntington, NY: Krieger, 1977).

Iserles, A., *A First Course in Numerical Analysis of Differential Equations* (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2009).

Mattheij, Robert, and Molenaar, Jaap, *Ordinary Differential Equations in Theory and Practice* (New York: Wiley, 1996; Philadelphia: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 2002).

Shampine, Lawrence F., *Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations* (New York: Chapman and Hall, 1994).

A detailed exposition of Adams predictor–corrector methods, including practical guidelines for implementation, may be found in

Shampine, L. F., and Gordon, M. K., *Computer Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations: The Initial Value Problem* (San Francisco: Freeman, 1975).

Many books on numerical analysis have chapters on differential equations. For example, at an elementary level, see

Burden, Richard L., and Faires, J. Douglas, *Numerical Analysis* (9th ed.) (Boston: Brooks/Cole, Cengage Learning, 2011).

The following three books are at a slightly higher level and include information on implementing the algorithms in MATLAB.

Atkinson, Kendall E., and Han, Weimin, *Elementary Numerical Analysis* (3rd ed.) (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2004).

Shampine, L. F., Gladwell, I., and Thompson, S., *Solving ODEs with MATLAB* (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2003).

Stoer, J., and Bulirsch, R., *Introduction to Numerical Analysis* (3rd ed.) (New York: Springer, 2002).

CHAPTER 9

Nonlinear Differential Equations and Stability

There are many differential equations, especially nonlinear ones, that are not susceptible to analytical solution in any reasonably convenient manner. Numerical approximation methods, such as those discussed in Chapter 8, provide one means of dealing with these equations. Another approach, presented in this chapter, is geometric in character and leads to a qualitative understanding of the behavior of solutions rather than to detailed quantitative information.

9.1 The Phase Plane: Linear Systems

Since many differential equations cannot be solved conveniently by analytical methods, it is important to consider what qualitative[1] information can be obtained about their solutions without actually solving the equations. The questions that we consider in this chapter are associated with the idea of stability of a solution, and the methods that we employ are basically geometric. Both the concept of stability and the use of geometric analysis were introduced in Chapter 1 and used in Section 2.5 for first-order autonomous equations

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(y). \tag{1}$$

In this chapter we refine the ideas and extend the discussion to autonomous systems of equations. We are particularly interested in nonlinear systems because they typically cannot be solved in terms of elementary functions. Further, we consider primarily systems of two equations because they lend themselves to geometric analysis in a plane, rather than in a higher-dimensional space.

However, before taking up nonlinear systems, we want to summarize some of the results that we obtained in Chapter 7 for two-dimensional systems of first-order linear homogeneous equations with constant coefficients. Such a system has the form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{2}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a 2×2 constant matrix and $\mathbf{x}$ is a 2×1 vector. In Sections 7.5 through 7.8, we found that we could solve such systems by seeking solutions of the form $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$. By substituting for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (2), we find that

$$(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{3}$$

[1]The qualitative theory of differential equations was created by Henri Poincaré (1854–1912) in several major papers between 1880 and 1886. Poincaré was a professor at the University of Paris and is generally considered the leading mathematician of his time. He made fundamental discoveries in several different areas of mathematics, including complex function theory, partial differential equations, and celestial mechanics. In a series of papers beginning in 1894, he initiated the use of modern methods in topology. In differential equations he was a pioneer in the use of asymptotic series, one of the most powerful tools of contemporary applied mathematics. Among other things, he used asymptotic expansions to obtain solutions about irregular singular points, thereby extending the work of Fuchs and Frobenius discussed in Chapter 5.

Thus r must be an eigenvalue and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ a corresponding eigenvector of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$. The eigenvalues are the roots of the polynomial equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0, \tag{4}$$

and the eigenvectors are determined from equation (3) up to an arbitrary multiplicative constant. Although we presented graphs of solutions of equations of the form (2) in Sections 7.5, 7.6, and 7.8, our main emphasis there was on finding a convenient expression for the general solution. Our goal in this section is to bring together the geometric information for linear systems in one place and to develop the ability to sketch trajectories in the phase plane by hand. We use this information in the rest of the chapter to introduce comparable qualitative methods that can be applied to much more difficult nonlinear systems.

In Section 2.5 we found that points where the right-hand side of equation (1) is zero are of special importance. Such points correspond to constant solutions, or **equilibrium solutions**, of equation (1) and are often called **critical points**. Similarly, for the system (2), points where $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0}$ correspond to equilibrium (constant) solutions, and again they are called critical points. We will assume that $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular, or that $\det\mathbf{A} \neq 0$. It follows that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is the only critical point of the system (2).

Recall that a solution of equation (2) is a vector function $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$ that satisfies the differential equation. Such a function can be viewed as a parametric representation for a curve in the x_1x_2-plane. It is often useful to regard this curve as the path, or **trajectory**, traversed by a moving particle whose velocity $d\mathbf{x}/dt$ is specified by the differential equation. The x_1x_2-plane itself is called the **phase plane**, and a representative set of trajectories is referred to as a **phase portrait**.

In analyzing the system (2), we must consider several different cases, depending on the nature of the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$. We will characterize the differential equation according to the geometric pattern formed by its trajectories in a phase portrait. In each case we discuss the behavior of the trajectories in general and illustrate it with an example. With a little practice it is easy to visualize or to sketch a qualitatively correct phase portrait once you know the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the system. It is important that you become familiar with the types of behavior that the trajectories have for each case, because these are the basic ingredients of the qualitative theory of linear and nonlinear differential equations.

CASE 1 **Real, Unequal Eigenvalues of the Same Sign.** In this case, the general solution of equation (2) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1t} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{r_2t}, \tag{5}$$

where r_1 and r_2 are either both positive or both negative. Suppose first that $r_1 < r_2 < 0$ and that the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are as shown in Figure 9.1.1. It follows from equation (5) that $\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{0}$ as $t \to \infty$ regardless of the values of c_1 and c_2; in other words, all solutions approach the critical point at the origin as $t \to \infty$.

If the solution starts at an initial point on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$, then $c_2 = 0$. This solution remains on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ for all t and approaches the origin as $t \to \infty$. Similarly, if the initial point is on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$, then the solution approaches the origin along that line.

In the general situation, it is helpful to rewrite equation (5) in the form

$$\mathbf{x} = e^{r_2t}\left(c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{(r_1-r_2)t} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}\right). \tag{6}$$

Observe that $r_1 - r_2 < 0$. Therefore, as long as $c_2 \neq 0$, the term $c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}\exp\big((r_1-r_2)t\big)$ is of negligible magnitude compared to that of $c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ for t sufficiently large. Thus, as $t \to \infty$, the trajectory not only approaches the origin but also tends toward the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$. Hence all solutions are tangent to $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ at the critical point except for those solutions that start exactly on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. Several trajectories are sketched in Figure 9.1.1. This type of critical point is called a **node** or a **nodal sink**.

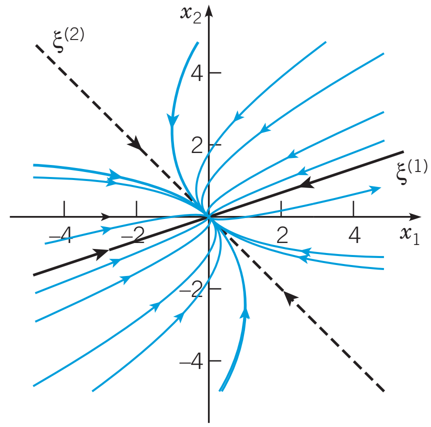


FIGURE 9.1.1 Trajectories in the phase plane when the origin is a node with $r_1 < r_2 < 0$. The solid black and dashed black curves show the fundamental solutions $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1 t}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{r_2 t}$, respectively.

Let us now look backward in time and inquire what happens as $t \to -\infty$. Still assuming that $r_1 < r_2 < 0$, we note that if $c_1 \neq 0$, then the dominant term in equation (5) as $t \to -\infty$ is the term involving $e^{r_1 t}$. Thus, except for the trajectories lying along the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$, for large negative t the trajectories have slopes that are very nearly that of the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. This is also indicated in Figure 9.1.1.

If r_1 and r_2 are both positive, and $0 < r_2 < r_1$, then the trajectories have the same pattern as in Figure 9.1.1, but the direction of motion is away from, rather than toward, the critical point at the origin. In this case x_1 and x_2 grow exponentially as functions of t. Again, the critical point is called a **node** or a **nodal source**.

Another example of a node occurs in Example 3 of Section 7.5, and its trajectories and component plots are shown in Figure 7.5.4.

CASE 2 Real Eigenvalues of Opposite Sign. The general solution of equation (2) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1 t} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{r_2 t}, \tag{7}$$

where $r_1 > 0$ and $r_2 < 0$. Suppose that the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are as shown by the solid and dashed black curves in Figure 9.1.2. If the solution starts at an initial point on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$, then it follows that $c_2 = 0$. Consequently, the solution remains on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ for all t, and since $r_1 > 0$, $\|\mathbf{x}\| \to \infty$ as $t \to \infty$.

If the solution starts at an initial point on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$, then it always remains on this line and $\|\mathbf{x}\| \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$ because $r_2 < 0$. For solutions starting at other initial points the positive exponential is the dominant term in equation (7) for large t, so eventually all these solutions approach infinity asymptotic to the line determined by the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ corresponding to the positive eigenvalue r_1. The only solutions that approach the critical point at the origin are those that start precisely on the line determined by $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$.

For large negative t, the dominant term in equation (7) is the negative exponential, so a typical solution is asymptotic to the line through the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ as $t \to -\infty$. The exceptions are those solutions that lie exactly on the line through the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$; these solutions approach the origin as $t \to -\infty$. The phase portrait shown in Figure 9.1.2 is typical of the case in which the eigenvalues are real and of opposite sign. The origin is called a **saddle point** in this case.

Another example of a saddle point occurs in Example 2 of Section 7.5, and its trajectories and component plots are shown in Figure 7.5.2.

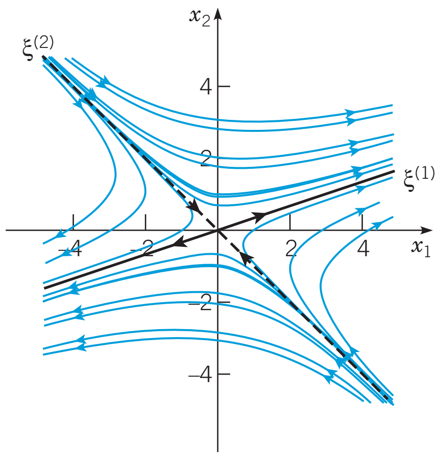


FIGURE 9.1.2 Trajectories in the phase plane when the origin is a saddle point with $r_1 > 0$, $r_2 < 0$. The solid black and dashed black curves show the fundamental solutions $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1 t}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{r_2 t}$, respectively.

CASE 3 **Equal Eigenvalues.** We now suppose that $r_1 = r_2 = r$. We consider the case in which the eigenvalues are negative; if they are positive, the trajectories are similar but the direction of motion is reversed. There are two subcases, depending on whether the repeated eigenvalue has two independent eigenvectors or only one.

(a) Two independent eigenvectors. The general solution of equation (2) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{rt} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{rt}, \tag{8}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are the independent eigenvectors. The ratio x_2/x_1 is independent of t but depends on the components of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ and on the arbitrary constants c_1 and c_2. Thus every trajectory lies on a straight line through the origin, as shown in Figure 9.1.3a and the graphs of the x_1 and x_2 components are exponential curves, as shown in Figures 9.1.3b and 9.1.3c, respectively. The critical point is called a **proper node**, or sometimes a **star point**.

(b) One independent eigenvector. As shown in Section 7.8, the general solution of equation (2) in this case is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt} + c_2(\boldsymbol{\xi}te^{rt} + \boldsymbol{\eta}e^{rt}), \tag{9}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is an eigenvector and η is a generalized eigenvector associated with the repeated eigenvalue, that is, $(\boldsymbol{A} - r\boldsymbol{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}$ and $(\boldsymbol{A} - r\boldsymbol{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}$. For large t the dominant term in equation (9) is $c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}te^{rt}$. Thus, as $t \to \infty$, every trajectory approaches the origin tangent to the line through the eigenvector. This is true even if $c_2 = 0$, for then the solution $\mathbf{x} = c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$ lies on this line. Similarly, for large negative t the term $c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}te^{rt}$ is again the dominant one, so as $t \to -\infty$, the slope of each trajectory approaches the slope of the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$.

The orientation of the trajectories depends on the relative positions of $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. One possible situation is shown in Figure 9.1.4a. To locate the trajectories, it is helpful to write the solution (9) in the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \big((c_1\boldsymbol{\xi} + c_2\boldsymbol{\eta}) + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}t\big)e^{rt} = \mathbf{y}e^{rt}, \tag{10}$$

where $\mathbf{y} = (c_1\boldsymbol{\xi} + c_2\boldsymbol{\eta}) + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}t$. Observe that the vector $\mathbf{y}$ determines the direction of $\mathbf{x}$, whereas the scalar quantity e^{rt} affects only the magnitude of $\mathbf{x}$. Also note that for fixed values of c_1 and c_2, the expression for $\mathbf{y}$ is a vector equation of the straight line through the point $c_1\boldsymbol{\xi} + c_2\boldsymbol{\eta}$ and parallel to $\boldsymbol{\xi}$.

To sketch the trajectory corresponding to a given pair of values of c_1 and c_2, you can proceed in the following way. First, draw the line given by $(c_1\boldsymbol{\xi} + c_2\boldsymbol{\eta}) + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}t$

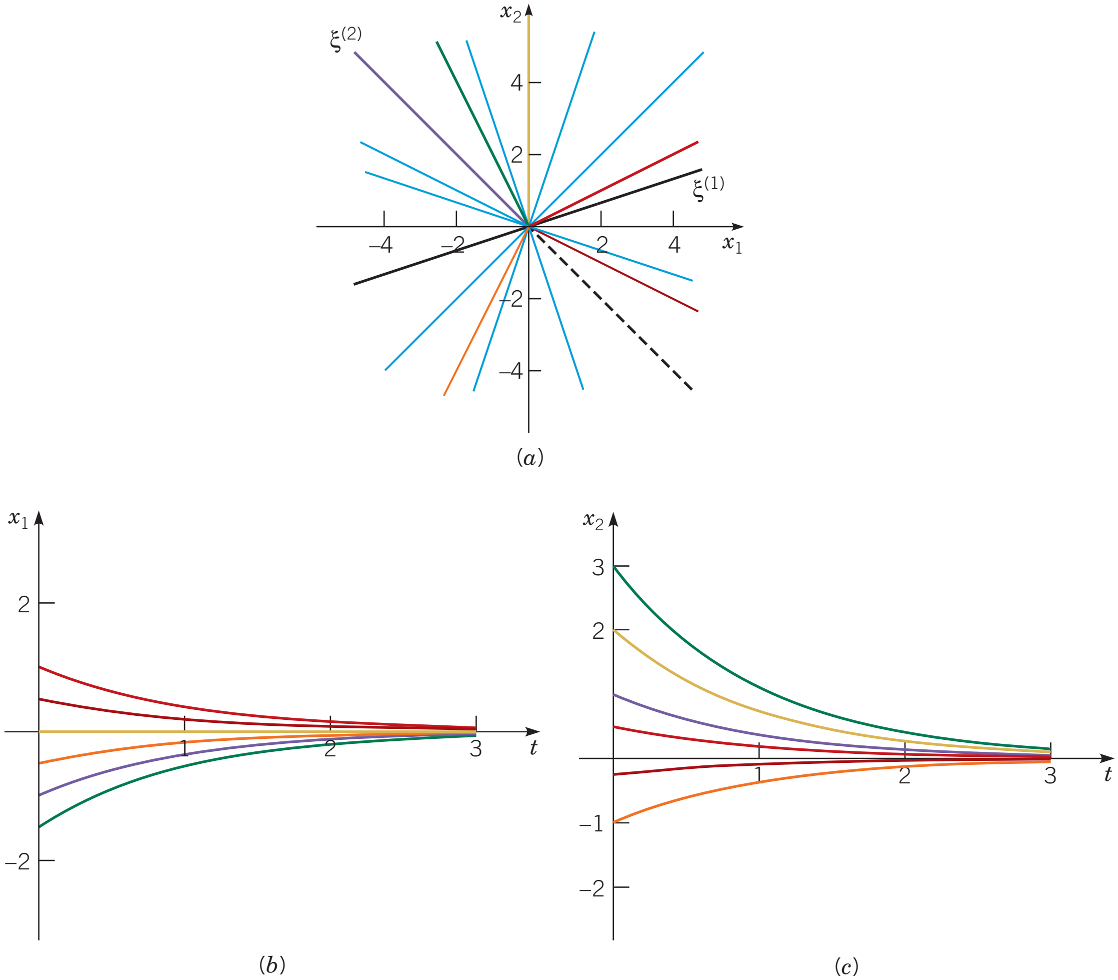


FIGURE 9.1.3 (*a*) Trajectories in the phase plane when the origin is a proper node with $r_1 = r_2 < 0$. (*b*) and (*c*) show the corresponding component plots for x_1 vs. t and x_2 vs. t, respectively. The solid black and dashed black curves show the fundamental solutions $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1 t}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{r_2 t}$, respectively. The purple curve is for the solution that passes through $(-1, 1)$, orange through $(-1/2, -1)$, green $(-3/2, 3)$, red $(1, 1/2)$, brown $(1/2, -1/4)$, and gold $(0, 2)$.

and note the direction of increasing t on this line. Two such lines are shown in Figure 9.1.4*a*, one for $c_2 > 0$ and the other for $c_2 < 0$. Next, note that the given trajectory passes through the point $c_1\boldsymbol{\xi} + c_2\boldsymbol{\eta}$ when $t = 0$. Further, as t increases, the direction of the vector $\mathbf{x}$ given by equation (10) follows the direction of increasing t on the line, but the magnitude of $\mathbf{x}$ rapidly decreases and approaches zero because of the decaying exponential factor e^{rt}. Finally, as t decreases toward $-\infty$, the direction of $\mathbf{x}$ is determined by points on the corresponding part of the line, and the magnitude of $\mathbf{x}$ approaches infinity. In this way we obtain the black trajectories in Figure 9.1.4*a*. A few other trajectories are sketched as well, to help complete the diagram.

The other possible situation is shown in Figure 9.1.4*b*, where the relative orientation of $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ is reversed. This reverses the orientation of the trajectories, as can be seen in Figure 9.1.4*b*.

If $r_1 = r_2 > 0$, you can sketch the trajectories by following the same procedure. In this event the trajectories are traversed in the outward direction, and the orientation of the trajectories with respect to that of $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ is also reversed.

When a double eigenvalue has only a single independent eigenvector, the critical point is called an **improper** or **degenerate node**. A specific example of this case is Example 2 in Section 7.8; the trajectories are shown in Figure 7.8.2.

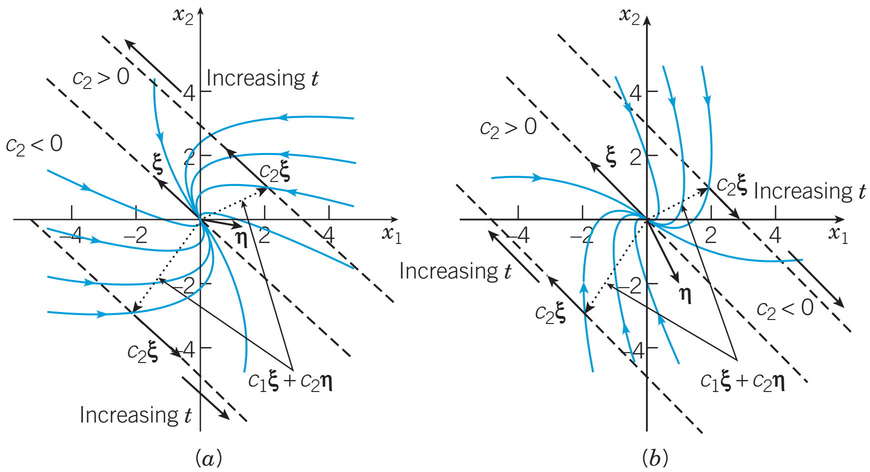


FIGURE 9.1.4 (*a*) The phase plane for an improper node with eigenvalues $r_1 = r_2 < 0$ and one independent eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$. (*b*) The phase plane for a system with the same eigenvalues $r_1 = r_2 < 0$ and eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ but a different generalized eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\eta}$.

CASE 4 Complex Eigenvalues with Nonzero Real Part. Suppose that the eigenvalues are $\lambda \pm i\mu$, where λ and μ are real, $\lambda \neq 0$, and $\mu > 0$. In Section 7.6 it was shown that it is possible to write the general solution in terms of the eigenvalues and eigenvectors. However, we proceed in a different way.

Let us consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & \mu \\ -\mu & \lambda \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \tag{11}$$

whose scalar form is

$$x_1' = \lambda x_1 + \mu x_2, \quad x_2' = -\mu x_1 + \lambda x_2. \tag{12}$$

It is sufficient to examine the system (11) since every 2×2 system with eigenvalues $\lambda \pm i\mu$ can be converted into the form (11) by a linear transformation (an example of how this can be done is found in Problem 19). We introduce the polar coordinates r, θ given by

$$r^2 = x_1^2 + x_2^2, \quad \tan\theta = \frac{x_2}{x_1}.$$

By differentiating these equations, we obtain

$$rr' = x_1 x_1' + x_2 x_2', \quad (\sec^2\theta)\theta' = \frac{x_1 x_2' - x_2 x_1'}{x_1^2}. \tag{13}$$

Substituting from equations (12) in the first of equations (13), we find that

$$r' = \lambda r, \tag{14}$$

and hence

$$r = ce^{\lambda t}, \tag{15}$$

where c is a constant. Similarly, substituting from equations (12) in the second of equations (13), and using the fact that $\sec^2\theta = r^2/x_1^2$, we have

$$\theta' = -\mu. \tag{16}$$

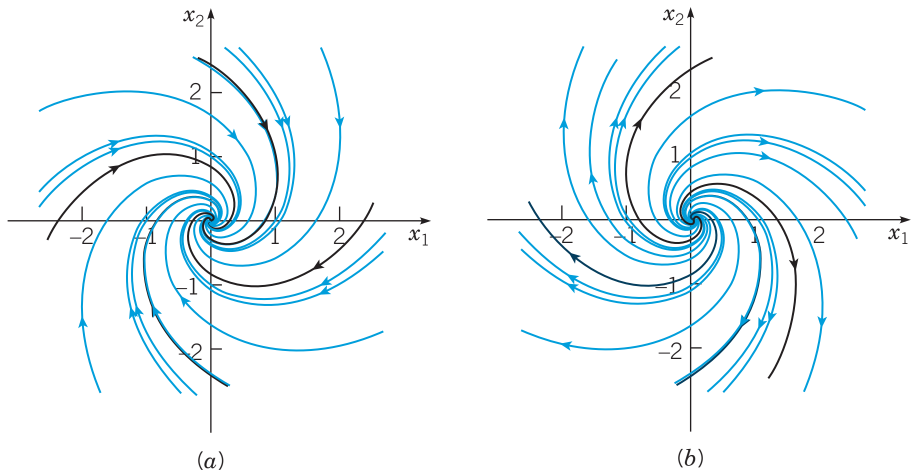


FIGURE 9.1.5 Trajectories in the phase plane for a linear system with eigenvalues $\lambda \pm i\mu$. (a) A spiral sink, $\lambda < 0$, and (b) a spiral source, $\lambda > 0$.

Hence

$$\theta = -\mu t + \theta_0, \tag{17}$$

where θ_0 is the value of θ when $t = 0$.

Equations (15) and (17) are parametric equations in polar coordinates of the trajectories of the system (11). Since $\mu > 0$, it follows from equation (17) that θ decreases as t increases, so the direction of motion on a trajectory is clockwise. As $t \to \infty$, we see from equation (15) that $r \to 0$ if $\lambda < 0$ and $r \to \infty$ if $\lambda > 0$. Thus the trajectories are spirals, which approach or recede from the origin, depending on the sign of λ. The case when $\lambda < 0$ is shown in Figure 9.1.5a. Figure 9.1.5b shows the corresponding graph when $\lambda > 0$. The critical point is called a **spiral point** in these cases. Frequently, the terms **spiral sink** and **spiral source**, respectively, are used to refer to spiral points whose trajectories approach ($\lambda < 0$), or depart from ($\lambda > 0$), the critical point.

More generally, the trajectories are spirals for any system with complex eigenvalues $\lambda \pm i\mu$, where $\lambda \neq 0$. The spirals are traversed in the inward or outward direction, depending on whether λ is negative or positive. They may be elongated and skewed with respect to the coordinate axes, and the direction of motion may be either clockwise or counterclockwise. Further, it is easy to obtain a general idea of the orientation of the trajectories directly from the differential equations. Suppose that

$$\begin{pmatrix} \dfrac{dx}{dt} \\ \dfrac{dy}{dt} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \tag{18}$$

has complex eigenvalues $\lambda \pm i\mu$, and look at the point (0, 1) on the positive y-axis. At this point it follows from equations (18) that $dx/dt = b$ and $dy/dt = d$. Depending on the signs of b and d, we can infer the direction of motion and the approximate orientation of the trajectories. For instance, if b is positive and d is negative, then the trajectories cross the positive y-axis so as to move up and into the second quadrant. If $\lambda < 0$ also, then the trajectories must be inward-pointing spirals such as those in Figure 9.1.5(a); when $\lambda > 0$ the trajectories spiral away from the origin as in Figure 9.1.5(b). Another case was given in Example 1 of Section 7.6, whose trajectories and component plots are shown in Figure 7.6.2.

CASE 5 Pure Imaginary Eigenvalues. In this case $\lambda = 0$, and the system (11) reduces to

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mu \\ -\mu & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} \tag{19}$$

with eigenvalues $\pm i\mu$. Using the same argument as in Case 4, we find that

$$r' = 0, \quad \theta' = -\mu, \tag{20}$$

and consequently,

$$r = c, \quad \theta = -\mu t + \theta_0, \tag{21}$$

where c and θ_0 are constants. Thus the trajectories are circles, with center at the origin, that are traversed clockwise if $\mu > 0$ and counterclockwise if $\mu < 0$. A complete circuit about the origin is made in a time interval of length $2\pi/\mu$, so all solutions are periodic with period $2\pi/\mu$. The critical point is called a **center**.

In general, when the eigenvalues are pure imaginary, it is possible to show (see Problem 16) that the trajectories are ellipses centered at the origin. A typical situation is shown in Figure 9.1.6, which also includes some typical graphs of x_1 versus t and x_2 versus t. See also Example 3 in Section 7.6, especially Figures 7.6.3 and 7.6.4.

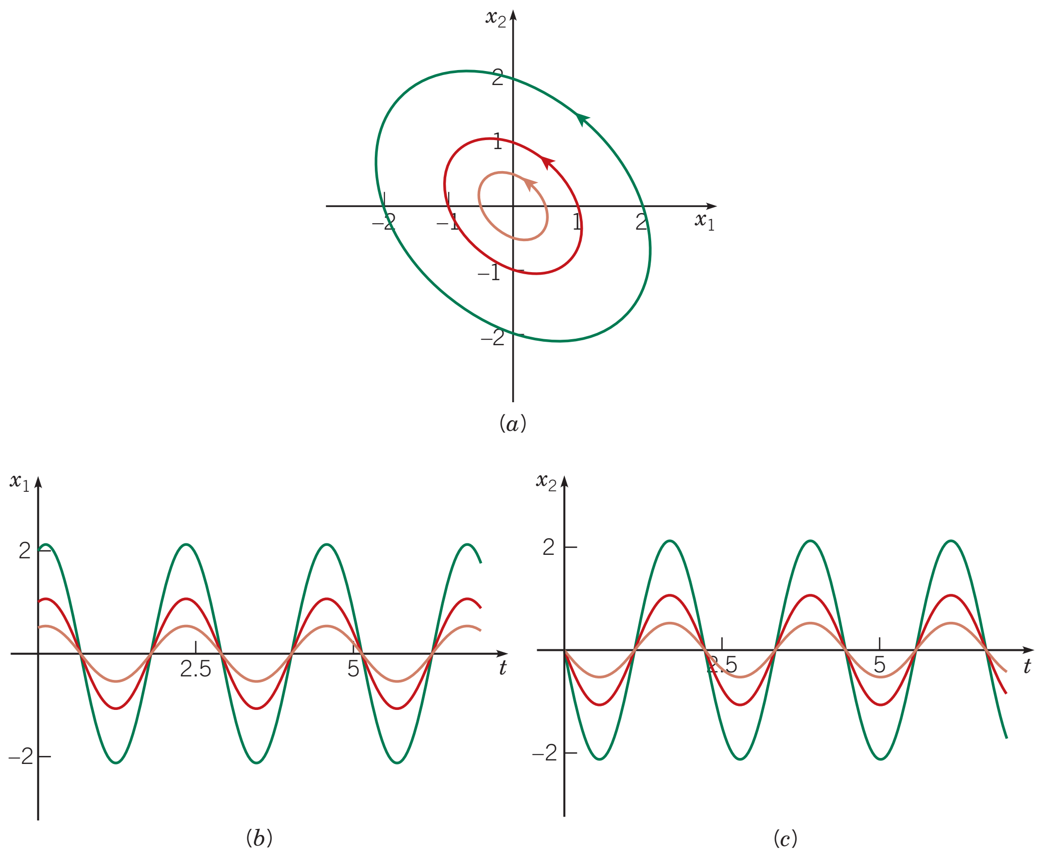


FIGURE 9.1.6 (a) Trajectories in the phase plane when the linear system has eigenvalues $\pm i\mu$. (b) and (c) show the component plots for x_1 vs. t and x_2 vs. t, respectively. The orange curves pass through $(1/2, 0)$, red through $(1, 0)$, and the green through $(2, 0)$.

Reflecting on these five cases and examining the corresponding figures, we can make several observations:

1. After a long time, each individual trajectory exhibits one of only three types of behavior. As $t \to \infty$, each trajectory approaches the critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, repeatedly traverses a closed curve (corresponding to a periodic solution) that surrounds the critical point, or becomes unbounded.
2. Viewed as a whole, the pattern of trajectories in each case is relatively simple. To be more specific, through each point (x_0, y_0) in the phase plane there is only one trajectory; thus trajectories do not cross each other. Do not be misled by the figures, in which it sometimes appears that many trajectories pass through the critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. In fact, the only solution passing through the origin is the equilibrium solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. The other solutions that appear to pass through the origin actually only approach this point as $t \to \infty$ or $t \to -\infty$.
3. In each case, the set of all trajectories is such that one of three situations occurs.

   (a) All trajectories approach the critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ as $t \to \infty$. This is the case if the eigenvalues are real and negative or complex with negative real part. The origin is either a nodal sink or a spiral sink.

   (b) All trajectories remain bounded but do not approach the origin as $t \to \infty$. This is the case if the eigenvalues are pure imaginary. The origin is a center.

   (c) Some trajectories, and possibly all trajectories except $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, become unbounded as $t \to \infty$. This is the case if at least one of the eigenvalues is positive or if the eigenvalues have positive real part. The origin is a nodal source, a spiral source, or a saddle point.

The situations described in 3(a), (b), and (c) above illustrate the concepts of asymptotic stability, stability, and instability, respectively, of the equilibrium solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ of the system (2). The precise definitions of these terms will be given in Section 9.2, but their basic meaning should be clear from the geometric discussion in this section. The information that we have obtained about the system (2) is summarized in Table 9.1.1. Also see Problems 17 and 18.

TABLE 9.1.1 **Stability Properties of Linear Systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ with $\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0$ and $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$**

Eigenvalues	Type of Critical Point	Stability
$r_1 > r_2 > 0$	Node	Unstable
$r_1 < r_2 < 0$	Node	Asymptotically stable
$r_2 < 0 < r_1$	Saddle point	Unstable
$r_1 = r_2 > 0$	Proper or improper node	Unstable
$r_1 = r_2 < 0$	Proper or improper node	Asymptotically stable
$r_1, r_2 = \lambda \pm i\mu$		
$\lambda > 0$	Spiral point	Unstable
$\lambda < 0$	Spiral point	Asymptotically stable
$\lambda = 0$	Center	Stable

The analysis in this section applies only to second-order systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ with $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$ whose solutions can be visualized as curves in the phase plane. A similar, though more complicated, analysis can be carried out for an n^{th} order system, with an $n \times n$ coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$, whose solutions are represented geometrically by curves in an n-dimensional phase space. The cases that can occur in higher-order systems are essentially combinations of those we have seen in two dimensions. For instance, in a third-order system with a three-dimensional phase space, one possibility is that solutions in a certain plane may spiral toward the origin, while other solutions may tend to infinity along a line transverse to this plane. This will be the case if the coefficient matrix has two complex eigenvalues with negative real part and one positive real eigenvalue. However, because of their complexity, we will not discuss systems of higher than second order.

Problems

For each of the systems in Problems 1 through 10:

a. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

b. Classify the critical point $(0, 0)$ as to type, and determine whether it is stable, asymptotically stable, or unstable.

c. Sketch, by hand (without using any graphing device), several trajectories in the phase plane.

G d. Use an appropriate graphing device to plot accurately several trajectories in the phase plane and the corresponding graphs of x_1 versus t and x_2 versus t.

1. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

2. $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

3. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

4. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 4 & -7 \end{pmatrix}$

5. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 \\ 1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$

6. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

7. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

8. $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 0 & -0.25 \end{pmatrix}$

9. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -5 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

10. $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

In each of Problems 11 through 13, determine the critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^0$, and then classify its type and examine its stability by making the transformation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^0 + \mathbf{u}$.

11. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

12. $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

13. $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\beta \\ \delta & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ -\gamma \end{pmatrix}$; $\quad \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta > 0$

14. The equation of motion of a spring–mass system with damping (see Section 3.7) is

$$m\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} + c\frac{du}{dt} + ku = 0,$$

where m, c, and k are positive. Write this second-order equation as a system of two first-order equations for $x = u,\ y = du/dt$. Show that $x = 0,\ y = 0$ is a critical point, and analyze the nature and stability of the critical point as a function of the parameters m, c, and k. Note that the same analysis can be applied to the electric circuit equation (see Section 3.7)

$$L\frac{d^2I}{dt^2} + R\frac{dI}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}I = 0.$$

15. Consider the system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$, and suppose that $\mathbf{A}$ has one zero eigenvalue.

a. Show that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$.

b. Show that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is a critical point and that, in addition, every point on a certain straight line through the origin is also a critical point.

c. Let $r_1 = 0$ and $r_2 \neq 0$, and let $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ be corresponding eigenvectors. Show that the trajectories are as indicated in Figure 9.1.7.

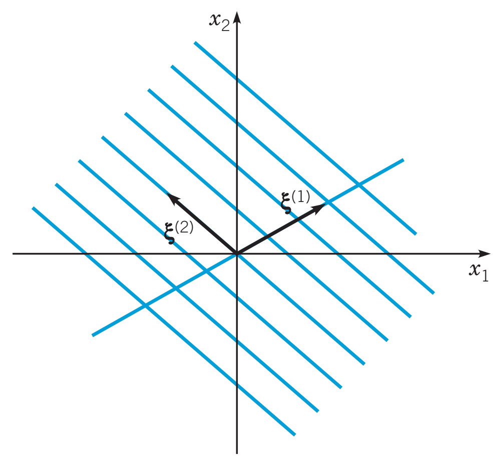


FIGURE 9.1.7 Trajectories for a linear system with nonisolated critical points, that is $r_1 = 0$ and $r_2 \neq 0$. Every point on the line through $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ is a critical point.

What is the direction of motion on the trajectories? What determines the direction of motion along a trajectory?

16. In this problem we indicate how to show that the trajectories are ellipses when the eigenvalues are pure imaginary. Consider the system

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}. \tag{22}$$

a. Show that the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix are pure imaginary if and only if

$$a_{11} + a_{22} = 0, \quad a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21} > 0. \tag{23}$$

b. The trajectories of the system (22) can be found by converting equations (22) into the single equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy/dt}{dx/dt} = \frac{a_{21}x + a_{22}y}{a_{11}x + a_{12}y}. \tag{24}$$

Use the first of equations (23) to show that equation (24) is an exact differential equation. (See Section 2.6.).

c. Solve equation (24) as an exact differential equation and show that

$$a_{21}x^2 + 2a_{22}xy - a_{12}y^2 = k, \tag{25}$$

where k is a constant. Use equations (23) to conclude that the graph of equation (25) is always an ellipse. *Hint:* What is the discriminant of the quadratic form in equation (25)?

17. Consider the linear system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = a_{11}x + a_{12}y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = a_{21}x + a_{22}y,$$

where a_{11}, a_{12}, a_{21}, and a_{22} are real-valued constants. Let $p = a_{11} + a_{22}$, $q = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}$, and $\Delta = p^2 - 4q$. Observe that p and q are the trace and determinant, respectively, of the coefficient matrix of the given system. Show that the critical point (0, 0) is a

a. Node if $q > 0$ and $\Delta \geq 0$;
b. Saddle point if $q < 0$;
c. Spiral point if $p \neq 0$ and $\Delta < 0$;
d. Center if $p = 0$ and $q > 0$.

Hint: These conclusions can be reached by studying the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2. It may also be helpful to establish, and then to use, the relations $r_1r_2 = q$ and $r_1 + r_2 = p$.

18. Continuing Problem 17, show that the critical point (0, 0) is

a. Asymptotically stable if $q > 0$ and $p < 0$;
b. Stable if $q > 0$ and $p = 0$;
c. Unstable if $q < 0$ or $p > 0$.

The results of Problems 17 and 18 are summarized visually in Figure 9.1.8.

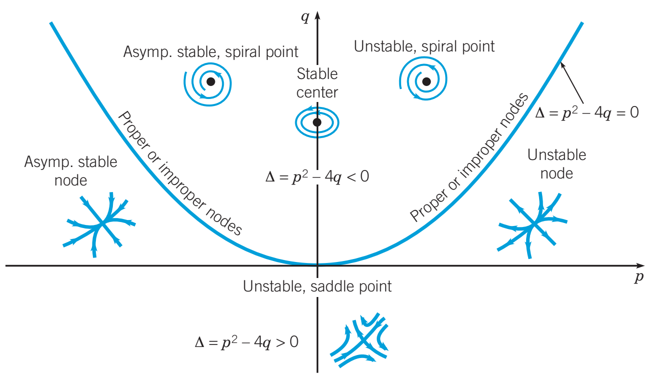


FIGURE 9.1.8 Stability and classification of critical point $(0, 0)$ as a function of $p = a_{11} + a_{22}$ and $q = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}$.

19. In this problem we illustrate how a 2×2 system with eigenvalues $\lambda \pm i\mu$ can be transformed into the system (11).

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2.5 \\ 1.8 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{Ax}. \tag{26}$$

a. Show that the eigenvalues of this system are $r_{1,2} = 0.5 \pm 1.5i$.
b. Show that the eigenvector corresponding to r_1 is

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 - 3i \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + i\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{27}$$

c. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be the matrix whose columns are the real and imaginary parts of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. Thus

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 3 & -3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

Let $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{Py}$ and substitute for $\mathbf{x}$ in equation (26). Show that

$$\mathbf{y}' = (\mathbf{P}^{-1}\mathbf{AP})\mathbf{y}. \tag{29}$$

d. Find $\mathbf{P}^{-1}$ and show that

$$\mathbf{P}^{-1}\mathbf{AP} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.5 & 1.5 \\ -1.5 & 0.5 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{30}$$

Thus equation (30) has the form of equation (11).

9.2 Autonomous Systems and Stability

In this section we begin to draw together, and to expand on, the geometric ideas introduced in Section 2.5 for certain first-order equations and in Section 9.1 for systems of two first-order linear homogeneous equations with constant coefficients. These ideas concern the qualitative study of differential equations and the concept of stability, an idea that will be defined precisely later in this section.

Autonomous Systems. We are concerned with systems of two simultaneous differential equations of the form

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y), \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y). \tag{1}$$

Assume that the functions F and G are continuous and have continuous partial derivatives in some domain D of the xy-plane. If (x_0, y_0) is a point in this domain, then by Theorem 7.1.1

there exists a unique solution $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$ of the system (1) satisfying the initial conditions

$$x(t_0) = x_0, \quad y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{2}$$

The solution is defined in some time interval I that contains the point t_0.

Frequently, we will write the initial value problem (1), (2) in the vector form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}), \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}^0, \tag{3}$$

where $\mathbf{x} = (x, y)^T$, $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) = (F(x, y), G(x, y))^T$, and $\mathbf{x}^0 = (x_0, y_0)^T$. In this case the solution is expressed as $\mathbf{x} = (x(t), y(t))^T$. As usual, we interpret a solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$ as a curve traced by a moving point in the xy-plane, the phase plane.

Observe that the functions F and G in equations (1) do not depend on the independent variable t, but only on the dependent variables x and y. A system with this property is said to be **autonomous**. The system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{4}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant 2×2 matrix, is a simple example of a two-dimensional autonomous system. On the other hand, if one or more of the elements of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is a function of the independent variable t, then the system is nonautonomous. The distinction between autonomous and nonautonomous systems is important, because the geometric qualitative analysis in Section 9.1 can be effectively extended to two-dimensional autonomous systems in general but is not nearly as useful for nonautonomous systems.

In particular, the autonomous system (1) has an associated direction field that is independent of time. Consequently, there is only one trajectory passing through each point (x_0, y_0) in the phase plane. In other words, all solutions that satisfy an initial condition of the form (2) lie on the same trajectory, regardless of the time t_0 at which they pass through (x_0, y_0). Thus, just as for the constant coefficient linear system (4), a single phase portrait simultaneously displays important qualitative information about all solutions of the system (1). We will see this fact confirmed repeatedly in this chapter.

Autonomous systems occur frequently in applications. Physically, an autonomous system is one whose configuration, including physical parameters and external forces or effects, is independent of time. The response of the system to given initial conditions is then independent of the time at which the conditions are imposed.

Stability and Instability. The concepts of stability, asymptotic stability, and instability have already been mentioned several times in this book. It is now time to give a precise mathematical definition of these concepts, at least for autonomous systems of the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}). \tag{5}$$

In the following definitions, and elsewhere, we use the notation $\|\mathbf{x}\|$ to designate the length, or magnitude, of the vector $\mathbf{x}$.

The points, if any, where $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$ are called **critical points** of the autonomous system (5). At such points, $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{0}$ also, so critical points correspond to constant, or equilibrium, solutions of the system of differential equations. A critical point $\mathbf{x}^0$ of the system (5) is said to be **stable** if, given any $\epsilon > 0$, there is a $\delta > 0$ such that every solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$ of the system (1) which at $t = 0$ satisfies

$$\left\|\mathbf{x}(0) - \mathbf{x}^0\right\| < \delta \tag{6}$$

both exists for all positive t and satisfies

$$\left\|\mathbf{x}(t) - \mathbf{x}^0\right\| < \epsilon \tag{7}$$

for all $t \geq 0$. This is illustrated geometrically in Figures 9.2.1a and 9.2.1b. These mathematical statements say that all solutions that start "sufficiently close" (i.e., within the distance δ) to $\mathbf{x}^0$ stay "close" (within the distance ϵ) to $\mathbf{x}^0$. Note that in Figure 9.2.1a the trajectory is within the circle $\left\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^0\right\| = \delta$ at $t = 0$ and, although it soon passes outside of this circle, it remains within the circle $\left\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^0\right\| = \epsilon$ for all $t \geq 0$. However, the trajectory of the solution does not have to approach the critical point $\mathbf{x}^0$ as $t \to \infty$; it only has to remain within the circle of radius ϵ, as illustrated in Figure 9.2.1b. A critical point that is not stable is said to be **unstable**.

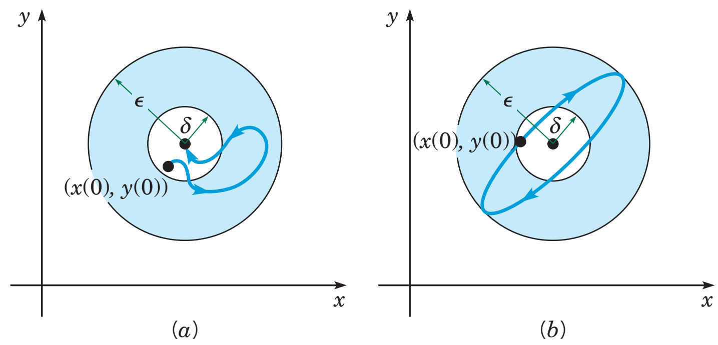


FIGURE 9.2.1 Graphical representation of trajectories that exhibit (a) asymptotic stability and (b) stability.

A critical point $\mathbf{x}^0$ is said to be **asymptotically stable** if, in addition to being stable, there exists a δ_0 ($\delta_0 > 0$) such that if a solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$ satisfies

$$\|\mathbf{x}(0) - \mathbf{x}^0\| < \delta_0, \tag{8}$$

then

$$\lim_{t\to\infty} \mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{x}^0. \tag{9}$$

Thus trajectories that start "sufficiently close" to $\mathbf{x}^0$ not only must stay "close" to $\mathbf{x}^0$ but also must eventually approach $\mathbf{x}^0$ as $t \to \infty$. This is the case for the trajectory in Figure 9.2.1a, but not for the one in Figure 9.2.1b. Note that asymptotic stability is a stronger property than stability, since a critical point must be stable before we can even consider whether it might be asymptotically stable. On the other hand, the limit condition (9), which is an essential feature of asymptotic stability, does not by itself imply even ordinary stability. Indeed, examples can be constructed in which all the trajectories approach $\mathbf{x}^0$ as $t \to \infty$, but for which $\mathbf{x}^0$ is not a stable critical point. Geometrically, all that is needed is a family of trajectories having members that start arbitrarily close to $\mathbf{x}^0$ and then depart an arbitrarily large distance before eventually approaching $\mathbf{x}^0$ as $t \to \infty$.

In this chapter we are concentrating on systems of two equations, but the definitions just given are independent of the size of the system. If you interpret the vectors in equations (5) through (9) as n-dimensional, then the definitions of stability, asymptotic stability, and instability apply also to systems of n equations. The concepts expressed in these definitions can be seen more clearly by interpreting them in terms of a specific physical problem.

The Oscillating Pendulum. The concepts of asymptotic stability, stability, and instability can be easily visualized in terms of an oscillating pendulum. Consider the configuration shown in Figure 9.2.2, in which a mass m is attached to one end of a rigid, but weightless, rod of length L. The other end of the rod is supported at the origin O, and the rod is free to rotate in the plane of the paper. The position of the pendulum is described by the angle θ between the rod and the downward vertical direction, with the counterclockwise direction taken as positive. The gravitational force mg acts downward, while the damping force $c|d\theta/dt|$, where c is positive, is always opposite to the direction of motion. We assume that both θ and $d\theta/dt$ are positive. The equation of motion can be quickly derived from the principle of angular momentum, which states that the time rate of change of angular momentum about any point is equal to the moment of the resultant force about that point. The angular momentum about the origin is $mL^2(d\theta/dt)$, so the governing equation is

$$mL^2\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -cL\frac{d\theta}{dt} - mgL\sin\theta. \tag{10}$$

The factors L and $L\sin\theta$ on the right-hand side of equation (10) are the moment arms of the resistive force and of the gravitational force, respectively; the minus signs are due to the fact that the two forces tend to make the pendulum rotate in the clockwise (negative) direction. You should verify, as an exercise, that the same equation is obtained for the other three possible sign combinations of θ and $d\theta/dt$.

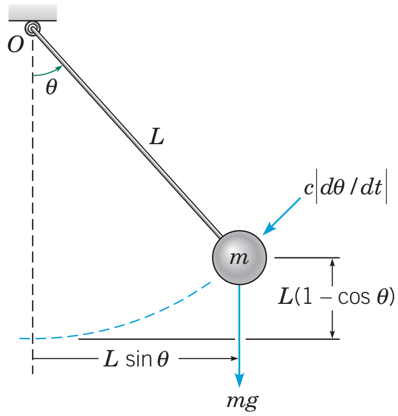


FIGURE 9.2.2 An oscillating pendulum.

By straightforward algebraic operations, we can write equation (10) in the standard form

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + \frac{c}{mL}\frac{d\theta}{dt} + \frac{g}{L}\sin\theta = 0, \tag{11}$$

or

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + \gamma\frac{d\theta}{dt} + \omega^2\sin\theta = 0, \tag{12}$$

where $\gamma = \dfrac{c}{mL}$ and $\omega^2 = \dfrac{g}{L}$. To convert equation (12) to a system of two first-order equations, we let $x = \theta$ and $y = d\theta/dt$; then

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -\omega^2\sin x - \gamma y. \tag{13}$$

Since γ and ω^2 are constants, the system (13) is an autonomous system of the form (1).

The critical points of equations (13) are found by solving the equations

$$y = 0, \qquad -\omega^2\sin x - \gamma y = 0.$$

We obtain $y = 0$ and $x = \pm n\pi$, where n is an integer. These points correspond to two physical equilibrium positions, one with the mass directly below the point of support ($\theta = 0$) and the other with the mass directly above the point of support ($\theta = \pi$). Our intuition suggests that the first is stable and the second is unstable.

More precisely, if the mass is slightly displaced from the lower equilibrium position, it will oscillate back and forth with gradually decreasing amplitude, eventually converging to the equilibrium position as the initial potential energy is dissipated by the damping force. This type of motion illustrates *asymptotic stability* and is shown in Figure 9.2.3*a*.

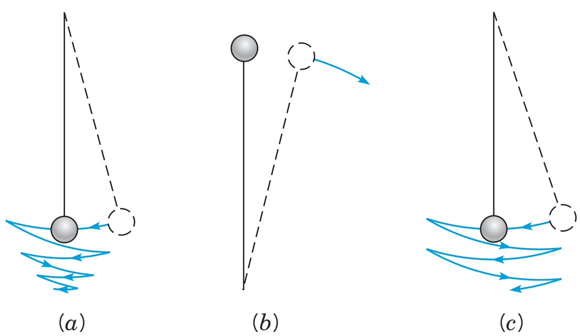


FIGURE 9.2.3 Qualitative motion of a pendulum. (*a*) With air resistance. (*b*) With or without air resistance. (*c*) Without air resistance.

On the other hand, if the mass is slightly displaced from the upper equilibrium position, it will rapidly fall, under the influence of gravity, and will ultimately converge to the lower equilibrium position in this case also. This type of motion illustrates *instability*. See Figure 9.2.3*b*. In practice, it is impossible to maintain the pendulum in its upward equilibrium position for any extended length of time without an external constraint mechanism, since the slightest perturbation will cause the mass to fall.

Finally, consider the ideal situation in which the damping coefficient c (or γ) is zero. In this case, if the mass is displaced slightly from its lower equilibrium position, it will oscillate indefinitely with constant amplitude about the equilibrium position. Since there is no dissipation in the system, the mass will remain near the equilibrium position but will not approach it asymptotically. This type of motion is *stable* but not asymptotically stable, as indicated in Figure 9.2.3*c*. In general, this motion is impossible to achieve experimentally, because the slightest degree of air resistance or friction at the point of support will eventually cause the pendulum to converge to its rest position.

Solutions of the pendulum equations are discussed in more detail in the next section.

The Importance of Critical Points. Critical points correspond to equilibrium solutions—that is, solutions for which $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are constant. For such a solution, the system described by x and y is not changing; it remains in its initial state forever. It might seem reasonable to conclude that such points are not very interesting. Recall, however, that for linear homogeneous systems with constant coefficients, $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}$, the nature of the critical point at the origin determines to a large extent the behavior of trajectories throughout the xy-plane.

For nonlinear autonomous systems this is no longer true, for at least two reasons. First, there may be several, or many, critical points that are competing, so to speak, for influence on the trajectories. Second, the nonlinearities in the system are also of great importance, especially far away from the critical points. Nevertheless, critical points of nonlinear autonomous systems can be classified just as for linear systems. We will discuss this in detail in Section 9.3. Here we illustrate how it can be done graphically, assuming that you have software that can construct direction fields and perhaps plot good numerical approximations to a few trajectories.

EXAMPLE 1

Consider the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -(x-y)(1-x-y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = x(2+y). \tag{14}$$

Find the critical points for this system, and draw direction fields on rectangles containing the critical points. By inspecting the direction fields, classify each critical point as to type, and state whether it is asymptotically stable, stable, or unstable.

Solution:

The critical points are found by solving the algebraic equations

$$(x-y)(1-x-y) = 0, \quad x(2+y) = 0. \tag{15}$$

One way to satisfy the second equation is by choosing $x = 0$. Then the first equation becomes $y(1-y) = 0$, so $y = 0$ or $y = 1$. More solutions can be found by choosing $y = -2$ in the second equation. Then the first equation becomes $(x+2)(3-x) = 0$, so $x = -2$ or $x = 3$. Thus we have obtained the four critical points $(0, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, $(-2, -2)$, and $(3, -2)$.

Figure 9.2.4 shows a direction field containing the first two of the critical points. Comparing this figure with those in Section 9.1 and in Chapter 7 should make it clear that the origin is a saddle point and that $(0, 1)$ is a spiral point (actually, a spiral sink). Of course, the saddle point is unstable. The trajectories near the spiral point appear to be approaching this point, so we conclude that it is asymptotically stable.

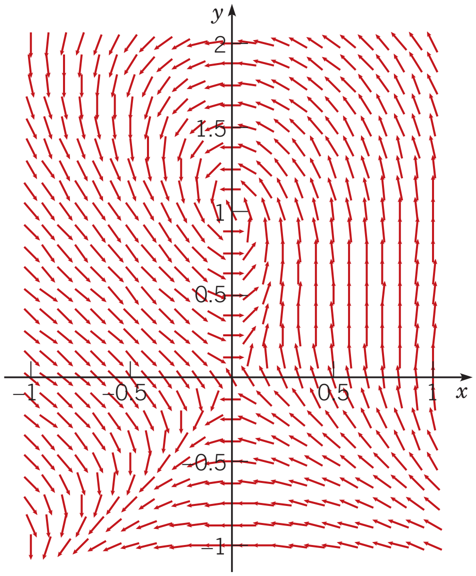


FIGURE 9.2.4 Direction field for the system (14) containing the critical points $(0, 0)$ and $(0, 1)$; the former is a saddle point and the latter is a spiral sink.

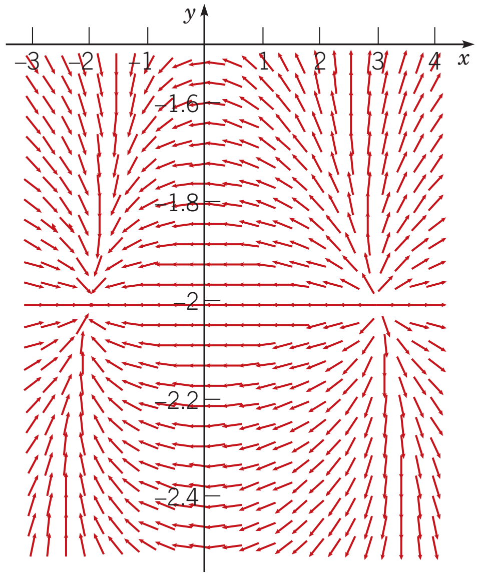


FIGURE 9.2.5 Direction field for the system (14) containing the critical points $(-2, -2)$ and $(3, -2)$; the former is a nodal sink and the latter is a nodal source.

A direction field for the other two critical points is shown in Figure 9.2.5. Each of these points is a node. The arrows point toward the point $(-2, -2)$ and away from the point $(3, -2)$; thus the former is asymptotically stable (a sink) and the latter is unstable (a source).

For a two-dimensional autonomous system with at least one asymptotically stable critical point, it is often of interest to determine where in the phase plane the trajectories lie that ultimately approach a given critical point. Let P be a point in the xy-plane with the property that a trajectory passing through P ultimately approaches the critical point as $t \to \infty$. Then this trajectory is said to be attracted by the critical point. Further, the set of all such points P is called the **basin of attraction** or the **region of asymptotic stability** of the critical point. A trajectory that bounds a basin of attraction is called a **separatrix** because it separates trajectories that approach a particular critical point from other trajectories that do not do so. Determination of basins of attraction is important in understanding the large-scale behavior of the solutions of an autonomous system.

EXAMPLE 2

Consider again the system (14) from Example 1. Describe the basin of attraction for each of the asymptotically stable critical points.

Solution:

Figure 9.2.6 shows a phase portrait for this system with a direction field in the background. Observe that there are two trajectories that approach the saddle point at the origin as $t \to \infty$. One of these lies in the fourth quadrant and is almost a straight line from the unstable node at $(3, -2)$. The other approaches the saddle point from the second quadrant, and if we follow it backward in time we find that it loops around the spiral point and ultimately approaches the unstable node $(3, -2)$ as $t \to -\infty$. These two trajectories are separatrices; the region between them (but not including the separatrices themselves) is the basin of attraction for the spiral point at $(0, 1)$. This region is shaded in Figure 9.2.6.

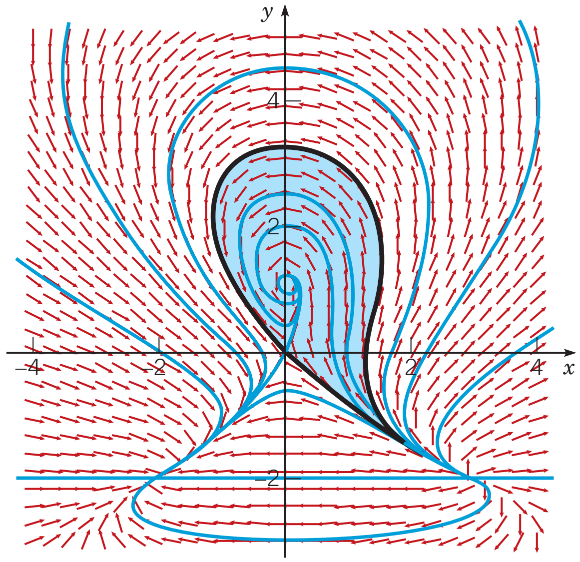


FIGURE 9.2.6 Direction field, trajectories, and critical points of the system (14). The separatrices are shown in black. The basis of attraction for the spiral point $(0, 1)$ is shaded.

The basin of attraction for the asymptotically stable node at $(-2, -2)$ consists of the rest of the xy-plane, with only a handful of exceptions. The separatrices approach the saddle point, as we have noted already, rather than the node. The saddle point itself and the unstable node are equilibrium solutions and thus remain fixed for all time. Finally, there is a trajectory lying on the line $y = -2$ for $x > 3$ on which the direction of motion is always to the right; this trajectory also does not approach the point $(-2, -2)$.

Figures 9.2.4, 9.2.5, and 9.2.6 show that in the immediate vicinity of a critical point, the direction field and pattern of trajectories resemble those for a linear system with constant coefficients. This becomes even more unmistakable if you use a graphing utility to zoom in closer and closer to a critical point. Thus we have visual evidence that a nonlinear system behaves very much like a linear system, at least in the neighborhood of a critical point. We will pursue this idea in the next section.

Determination of Trajectories. The trajectories of a two-dimensional autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y), \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y) \tag{16}$$

can sometimes be found by solving a related first-order differential equation. From equations (16) we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy/dt}{dx/dt} = \frac{G(x, y)}{F(x, y)}, \tag{17}$$

which is a first-order differential equation in the variables x and y. Observe that such a reduction is not usually possible if F and G depend also on t. If equation (17) can be solved by any of the methods of Chapter 2, and if we write solutions (implicitly) in the form

$$H(x, y) = c, \tag{18}$$

then equation (18) is an equation for the family of trajectories of the system (16). In other words, each trajectory lies on a level curve of $H(x, y)$. Keep in mind that there is no general way of solving equation (17) to obtain the function H, so this approach is applicable only in special cases.

EXAMPLE 3

Find the trajectories of the autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = x. \tag{19}$$

Solution:

In this case, equation (17) becomes

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x}{y}. \tag{20}$$

This equation is separable since it can be written as

$$y\,dy = x\,dx,$$

and its solutions are given by

$$H(x, y) = y^2 - x^2 = c, \tag{21}$$

where c is arbitrary. Therefore, the trajectories of the system (19) are the hyperbolas shown in Figure 9.2.7. The two black trajectories correspond to the two solutions with $H(x, y) = 0$, that is, $y = x$ (solid) and $y = -x$ (dashed). The direction of motion on the trajectories can be inferred from the fact that both dx/dt and dy/dt are positive in the first quadrant. The only critical point is the saddle point at the origin.

Another way to obtain the trajectories is to solve the system (19) by the methods of Section 7.5. We omit the details, but the result is

$$x = c_1e^t + c_2e^{-t}, \quad y = c_1e^t - c_2e^{-t}.$$

Eliminating t between these two equations again leads to equation (21).

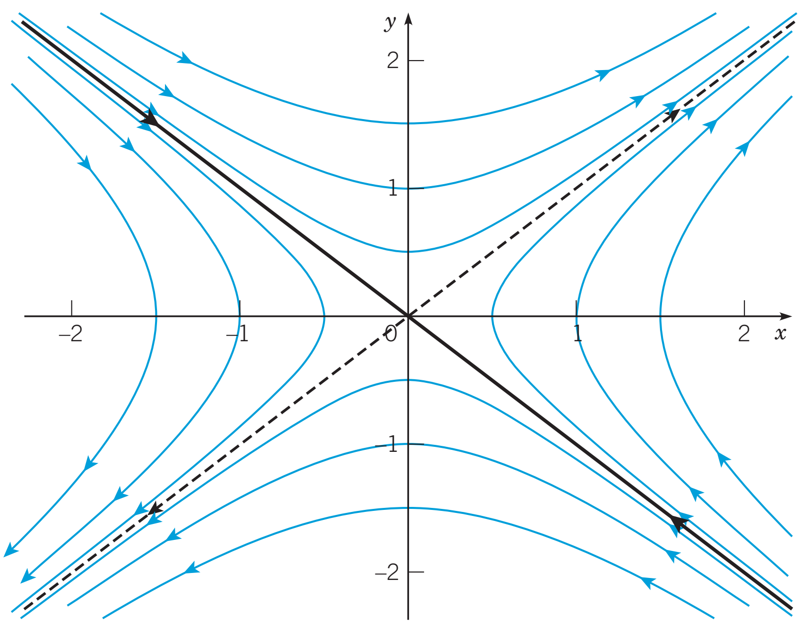


FIGURE 9.2.7 Direction field and trajectories of the system (19); the origin is a saddle point.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the trajectories of the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = 4 - 2y, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = 12 - 3x^2. \tag{22}$$

Solution:

From the equations

$$4 - 2y = 0, \quad 12 - 3x^2 = 0$$

we find that the critical points of the system (22) are the points $(-2, 2)$ and $(2, 2)$. To determine the trajectories, note that for this system, equation (17) becomes

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{12 - 3x^2}{4 - 2y}. \tag{23}$$

Separating the variables in equation (23) and integrating, we find that solutions satisfy

$$H(x, y) = 4y - y^2 - 12x + x^3 = c, \tag{24}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. A computer plotting routine is helpful in displaying the level curves of $H(x, y)$, some of which are shown in Figure 9.2.8. The direction of motion on the trajectories can be determined by drawing a direction field for the system (22), or by evaluating dx/dt and dy/dt at one or two selected points. From Figure 9.2.8 you can see that the critical point $(2, 2)$ is a saddle point and the critical point $(-2, 2)$ is a center. Observe that there is a separatrix (shown in black) that leaves the saddle point (as $t \to -\infty$), loops around the center, and returns to the saddle point (as $t \to +\infty$). Within the separatrix are closed trajectories, or periodic solutions, that surround the center. Outside the separatrix, trajectories become unbounded, except for the (red) trajectory that enters the saddle point from the right.

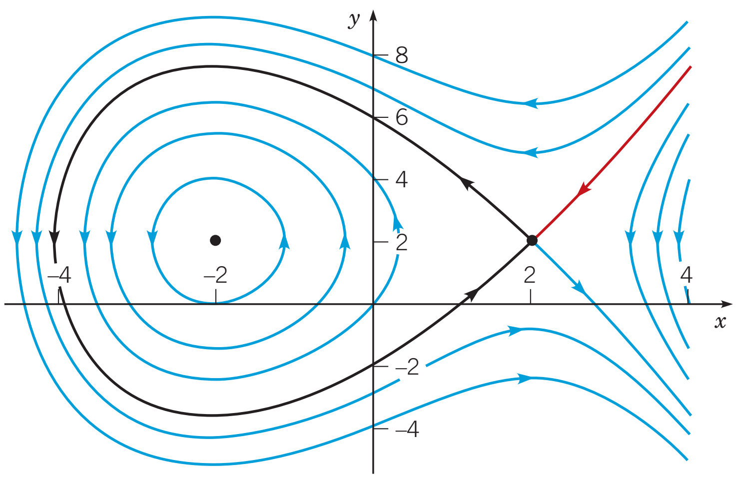


FIGURE 9.2.8 Trajectories of the system (22). The point $(-2, 2)$ is a center, and the point $(2, 2)$ is a saddle point. The black curve is a separatrix.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, use an appropriate graphing device to draw the direction field and sketch the trajectories corresponding to the solution satisfying the specified initial conditions, and indicate the direction of motion for increasing t.

G **1.** $dx/dt = -x, \quad dy/dt = -2y; \quad x(0) = 4, \quad y(0) = 2$

G **2.** $dx/dt = -x, \quad dy/dt = 2y;$
$x(0) = 4, \quad y(0) = 2$ and $x(0) = 4, \quad y(0) = 0$

G **3.** $dx/dt = ay, \quad dy/dt = -bx, \quad a > 0, \quad b > 0;$
$x(0) = \sqrt{a}, \quad y(0) = 0$

For each of the systems in Problems 4 through 13:

a. Find all the critical points (equilibrium solutions).

G **b.** Use an appropriate graphing device to draw a direction field and phase portrait for the system.

c. From the plot(s) in part b, determine whether each critical point is asymptotically stable, stable, or unstable, and classify it as to type.

d. Describe the basin of attraction for each asymptotically stable critical point.

4. $dx/dt = x - xy, \quad dy/dt = y + 2xy$

5. $dx/dt = 1 + 2y, \quad dy/dt = 1 - 3x^2$

6. $dx/dt = 2x - x^2 - xy, \quad dy/dt = 3y - 2y^2 - 3xy$

7. $dx/dt = -(2 + y)(x + y), \quad dy/dt = -y(1 - x)$

8. $dx/dt = y(2 - x - y), \quad dy/dt = -x - y - 2xy$

9. $dx/dt = (2 + x)(y - x), \quad dy/dt = y(2 + x - x^2)$

10. $dx/dt = (2 + x)(y - x), \quad dy/dt = (4 - x)(y + x)$

11. $dx/dt = (2 - x)(y - x), \quad dy/dt = y(2 - x - x^2)$

12. $dx/dt = x(2 - x - y), \quad dy/dt = -x + 3y - 2xy$

13. $dx/dt = x(2 - x - y), \quad dy/dt = (1 - y)(2 + x)$

In each of Problems 14 through 20:

a. Find an equation of the form $H(x, y) = c$ satisfied by the trajectories.

G **b.** Plot several level curves of the function H. These are trajectories of the given system. Indicate the direction of motion on each trajectory.

14. $dx/dt = 2y, \quad dy/dt = 8x$

15. $dx/dt = 2y, \quad dy/dt = -8x$

16. $dx/dt = y, \quad dy/dt = 2x + y$

17. $dx/dt = -x + y, \quad dy/dt = -x - y$

18. $dx/dt = 2x^2y - 3x^2 - 4y, \quad dy/dt = -2xy^2 + 6xy$

19. $dx/dt = y, \quad dy/dt = -\sin x \quad$ (undamped pendulum)

20. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = y, \quad \dfrac{dy}{dt} = -x + \left(\dfrac{x^3}{6}\right) \quad$ (Duffing's[2] equation)

[2] Georg Duffing (1861–1944), a German engineer, was a pioneer in the study of the oscillations of nonlinear mechanical systems. His most important work was the influential monograph *Erzwungene Schwingungen bei veränderlicher Eigenfrequenz und ihre technische Bedeutung* [Forced Oscillations with Variable Natural Frequency and Their Technical Meaning], published in 1918.

21. Given that $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ is a solution of the autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y)$$

for $\alpha < t < \beta$, show that

$$x = \Phi(t) = \phi(t - s), \quad y = \Psi(t) = \psi(t - s)$$

is a solution for $\alpha + s < t < \beta + s$ for any real number s.

22. Prove that for the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y)$$

there is at most one trajectory passing through a given point (x_0, y_0). *Hint:* Let C_0 be the trajectory generated by the solution $x = \phi_0(t)$, $y = \psi_0(t)$, with $\phi_0(t_0) = x_0$, $\psi_0(t_0) = y_0$, and let C_1 be the trajectory generated by the solution $x = \phi_1(t)$, $y = \psi_1(t)$, with $\phi_1(t_1) = x_0, \psi_1(t_1) = y_0$. Use the fact that the system is autonomous, and also the existence and uniqueness theorem, to show that C_0 and C_1 are the same.

23. Prove that if a trajectory starts at a noncritical point of the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y),$$

then it cannot reach a critical point (x_0, y_0) in a finite length of time. *Hint:* Assume the contrary; that is, assume that the solution $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ satisfies $\phi(a) = x_0$, $\psi(a) = y_0$. Then use the fact that $x = x_0$, $y = y_0$ is a solution of the given system satisfying the initial condition $x = x_0$, $y = y_0$ at $t = a$.

24. Assuming that the trajectory corresponding to a solution $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$, $-\infty < t < \infty$, of an autonomous system is closed, show that the solution is periodic.
Hint: Since the trajectory is closed, there exists at least one point (x_0, y_0) such that $\phi(t_0) = x_0$, $\psi(t_0) = y_0$ and a number $T > 0$ such that $\phi(t_0 + T) = x_0$, $\psi(t_0 + T) = y_0$. Show that $x = \Phi(t) = \phi(t + T)$ and $y = \Psi(t) = \psi(t + T)$ is a solution, and then use the existence and uniqueness theorem to show that $\Phi(t) = \phi(t)$ and $\Psi(t) = \psi(t)$ for all t.

9.3 Locally Linear Systems

In Section 9.1 we described the stability properties of the equilibrium solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ of the two-dimensional linear system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}. \tag{1}$$

The results are summarized in Table 9.1.1. Recall that we required that $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$, so $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is the only critical point of the system (1). Now that we have defined the concepts of asymptotic stability, stability, and instability more precisely, we can restate these results in the following theorem.

Theorem 9.3.1

The critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ of the linear system (1)

1. is asymptotically stable if the eigenvalues r_1, r_2 are real and negative or have negative real part;
2. is stable, but not asymptotically stable, if r_1 and r_2 are pure imaginary; and
3. is unstable if r_1 and r_2 are real and either is positive, or if they have positive real part.

Effect of Small Perturbations. It is apparent from this theorem or from Table 9.1.1 that the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2 of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ determine the type of critical point at $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ and its stability characteristics. In turn, the values of r_1 and r_2 depend on the coefficients in the system (1). When such a system arises in some applied field, the coefficients usually result from the measurements of certain physical quantities. Such measurements are often subject to small uncertainties, so it is of interest to investigate whether small changes (perturbations) in the coefficients can affect the stability or instability of a critical point and/or significantly alter the pattern of trajectories.

Recall that the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2 are the roots of the polynomial equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0. \tag{2}$$

It is possible to show that *small* perturbations in some or all of the coefficients are reflected in *small* perturbations in the eigenvalues. The most sensitive situation occurs when $r_1 = i\mu$ and $r_2 = -i\mu$. Then the critical point is a center and the trajectories are closed curves (ellipses) surrounding it. If a slight change is made in the coefficients, then the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2 will take on new values $r_1' = \lambda' + i\mu'$ and $r_2' = \lambda' - i\mu'$, where λ' is small in magnitude and $\mu' \cong \mu$ (see Figure 9.3.1). If $\lambda' \neq 0$, which almost always occurs, then the trajectories of the perturbed system are spirals rather than ellipses. The system is asymptotically stable if $\lambda' < 0$ but unstable if $\lambda' > 0$. Thus, in the case of a center, small perturbations in the coefficients may well change a stable system into an unstable one and, in any case, may be expected to change the trajectories from ellipses to spirals (see Problem 24).

Another slightly less sensitive case occurs if the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2 are equal; in this case the critical point is a node. Small perturbations in the coefficients will normally cause the two equal roots to separate (bifurcate). If the separated roots are real, then the critical point of the perturbed system remains a node, but if the separated roots are complex conjugates, then the critical point becomes a spiral point. These two possibilities are shown schematically in Figure 9.3.2. In this case the stability or instability of the system is not affected by small perturbations in the coefficients, but the type of the critical point may be changed (see Problem 25).

In all other cases the stability or instability of the system is not changed, nor is the type of critical point altered, by sufficiently small perturbations in the coefficients of the system. For example, if r_1 and r_2 are real, negative, and unequal, then a *small* change in the coefficients will neither change the sign of r_1 and r_2 nor allow them to coalesce. Thus the critical point remains an asymptotically stable node.

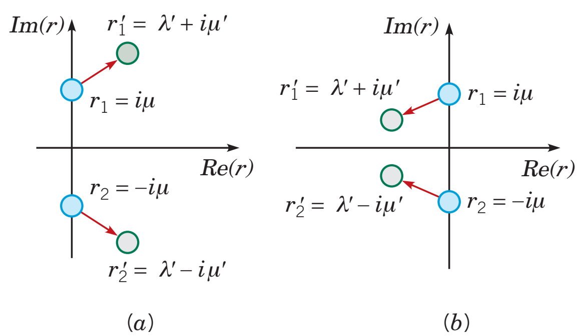


FIGURE 9.3.1 Schematic perturbation of $r_1 = i\mu, r_2 = -i\mu$ into complex conjugate eigenvalues with (a) positive real part or (b) negative real part.

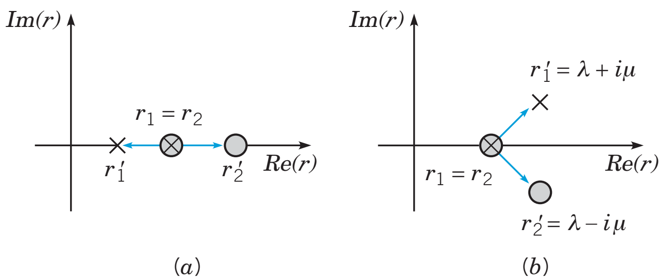


FIGURE 9.3.2 Schematic perturbation of $r_1 = r_2$ into (a) a pair of different real eigenvalues or (b) complex conjugate eigenvalues.

Linear Approximations to Nonlinear Systems. Now let us consider a nonlinear autonomous two-dimensional system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}). \tag{3}$$

Our main object is to investigate the behavior of trajectories of the system (3) near a critical point $\mathbf{x}^0$. Recall that in Example 1 in Section 9.2 we noted that near each critical point of that nonlinear system the pattern of trajectories resembles the trajectories of a certain linear system. This suggests that near a critical point we may be able to approximate the nonlinear system (3) by an appropriate linear system, whose trajectories are easy to describe. The crucial question is whether and how we can find an approximating linear system whose trajectories closely match those of the nonlinear system near the critical point.

It is convenient to choose the critical point to be the origin. This involves no loss of generality, since if $\mathbf{x}^0 \neq \mathbf{0}$, it is always possible to make the substitution $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^0$ in equation (3). Then $\mathbf{u}$ will satisfy an autonomous system with a critical point at the origin.

First, let us consider what it means for a nonlinear system (3) to be "close" to a linear system (1). Accordingly, suppose that

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{4}$$

and that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is an **isolated critical point** of the system (4). This means that there is some circle about the origin within which there are no other critical points. In addition, we assume that $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$, so that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is also an isolated critical point of the linear system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$. For the nonlinear system (4) to be close to the linear system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$, we must assume that $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$ is small. More precisely, we assume that the components of $\mathbf{g}$ have continuous first partial derivatives and satisfy the limit condition

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})\|}{\|\mathbf{x}\|} \to 0 \quad \text{as } \mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{0}; \tag{5}$$

that is, $\|\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})\|$ is small in comparison to $\|\mathbf{x}\|$ itself near the origin. Such a system is called a **locally linear system** in the neighborhood of the critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$.

It may be helpful to express the condition (5) in scalar form using polar coordinates. If we let $\mathbf{x} = (x, y)^T$, then $\|\mathbf{x}\| = (x^2 + y^2)^{1/2} = r$. Similarly, if $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) = (g_1(x, y), g_2(x, y))^T$, then $\|\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})\| = \left(g_1^2(x, y) + g_2^2(x, y)\right)^{1/2}$. Then it follows that condition (5) is satisfied if and only if

$$\frac{g_1(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)}{r} \to 0, \quad \frac{g_2(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)}{r} \to 0 \quad \text{as } r \to 0 \text{ for all } 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi. \tag{6}$$

EXAMPLE 1

Determine whether the system

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -x^2 - xy \\ -0.75xy - 0.25y^2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{7}$$

is locally linear in the neighborhood of the origin.

Solution:

Observe that the system (7) is of the form (4), that $(0, 0)$ is a critical point, and that $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$. It is not hard to show that the other critical points of equations (7) are (0, 2), (1, 0), and $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$; consequently, the origin is an isolated critical point. In checking the condition (6), it is convenient to introduce polar coordinates by letting $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$. Then

$$\frac{g_1(x, y)}{r} = \frac{-x^2 - xy}{r} = \frac{-r^2\cos^2\theta - r^2\sin\theta\cos\theta}{r}$$
$$= -r(\cos^2\theta + \sin\theta\cos\theta) \to 0$$

as $r \to 0$. In a similar way, you can show that $g_2(x, y)/r \to 0$ as $r \to 0$. Hence the system (7) is locally linear near the origin.

EXAMPLE 2

The motion of a pendulum is described by the system (see equation (13) of Section 9.2)

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = -\omega^2 \sin x - \gamma y. \tag{8}$$

The critical points are (0, 0), $(\pm\pi, 0)$, $(\pm 2\pi, 0)$, ..., so the origin is an isolated critical point of this system. Show that the system is locally linear near the origin.

Solution:

To convert equations (8) into the form of system (4), we rewrite the former so that the linear and nonlinear terms are clearly identified. If we write $\sin x = x + (\sin x - x)$ and substitute this expression in the second of equations (8), we obtain the equivalent system

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\omega^2 & -\gamma \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} - \omega^2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sin x - x \end{pmatrix}. \tag{9}$$

Thus we see that $g_1(x, y) = 0$ and $g_2(x, y) = -\omega^2(\sin x - x)$. From the Taylor series for $\sin x$, we know that $\sin x - x$ behaves like $-x^3/3! = -(r^3\cos^3\theta)/3!$ when x is small. Consequently, $(\sin x - x)/r \to 0$ as $r \to 0$. Thus the conditions (6) are satisfied, and the system (9) is locally linear near the origin.

Let us now return to the general nonlinear system (3), which we write in the scalar form

$$x' = F(x, y), \quad y' = G(x, y); \tag{10}$$

that is, $\mathbf{x} = (x, y)^T$ and $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) = (F(x, y), G(x, y))^T$.

Theorem 9.3.2

The system (10) is locally linear in the neighborhood of a critical point (x_0, y_0) whenever the functions F and G have continuous partial derivatives up to order two.

To show this, we use Taylor expansions about the point (x_0, y_0) to write $F(x, y)$ and $G(x, y)$ in the form

$$F(x, y) = F(x_0, y_0) + F_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + F_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) + \eta_1(x, y),$$

$$G(x, y) = G(x_0, y_0) + G_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + G_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) + \eta_2(x, y),$$

where $\eta_1(x, y)/\left((x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2\right)^{1/2} \to 0$ as $(x, y) \to (x_0, y_0)$, and similarly for η_2. Note that $F(x_0, y_0) = G(x_0, y_0) = 0$, and that $dx/dt = d(x - x_0)/dt$ and

$dy/dt = d(y - y_0)/dt$. Then the system (10) reduces to

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} x - x_0 \\ y - y_0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} F_x(x_0, y_0) & F_y(x_0, y_0) \\ G_x(x_0, y_0) & G_y(x_0, y_0) \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x - x_0 \\ y - y_0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \eta_1(x, y) \\ \eta_2(x, y) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{11}$$

or, in vector notation,

$$\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = \frac{d\mathbf{f}}{d\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}^0)\mathbf{u} + \boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{x}), \tag{12}$$

where $\mathbf{u} = (x - x_0, y - y_0)^T$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta} = (\eta_1, \eta_2)^T$.

The significance of Theorem 9.3.2 is twofold. First, if the functions F and G are twice differentiable, then the system (10) is locally linear, and it is unnecessary to resort to the limiting process used in Examples 1 and 2. Second, the linear system that approximates the nonlinear system (10) near (x_0, y_0) is given by the linear part of equations (11) or (12):

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} F_x(x_0, y_0) & F_y(x_0, y_0) \\ G_x(x_0, y_0) & G_y(x_0, y_0) \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{13}$$

where $u_1 = x - x_0$ and $u_2 = y - y_0$. Equation (13) provides a simple and general method for finding the linear system corresponding to a locally linear system near a given critical point.

The matrix

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}[F, G](x, y) = \begin{pmatrix} F_x(x, y) & F_y(x, y) \\ G_x(x, y) & G_y(x, y) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{14}$$

which appears as the coefficient matrix in equation (13), is called the **Jacobian**[3] **matrix** of the functions F and G with respect to x and y. We need to assume that $\det \mathbf{J}$ is not zero at (x_0, y_0) so that this point is also an isolated critical point of the linear system (13).

EXAMPLE 3

Use equation (13) to find the linear system corresponding to the pendulum equations (8) near the origin; near the critical point $(\pi, 0)$.

Solution:

In this case we have, from equation (8),

$$F(x, y) = y, \quad G(x, y) = -\omega^2 \sin x - \gamma y; \tag{15}$$

since these functions are differentiable as many times as necessary, the system (8) is locally linear near each critical point. The first partial derivatives of F and G are

$$F_x = 0, \quad F_y = 1, \quad G_x = -\omega^2 \cos x, \quad G_y = -\gamma. \tag{16}$$

Thus, at the origin the corresponding linear system is

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\omega^2 & -\gamma \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}, \tag{17}$$

which agrees with equation (9) from Example 2.

Similarly, evaluating the partial derivatives in equation (16) at $(\pi, 0)$, we obtain

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \omega^2 & -\gamma \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}, \tag{18}$$

where $u = x - \pi$, $v = y$. This is the linear system corresponding to equations (8) near the point $(\pi, 0)$.

[3]Carl Gustav Jacob Jacobi (1804–1851), a German analyst who was professor and lecturer at the Universities of Königsberg and Berlin, made important contributions to the theory of elliptic functions. The determinant of $\mathbf{J}$ and its extension to n functions of n variables is called the Jacobian because of his notable paper in 1841 on the properties of this determinant. The corresponding matrix is also named for Jacobi, even though matrices were not developed until after his death.

We now return to the locally linear system (4). Since the nonlinear term $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$ is small compared to the linear term $\mathbf{Ax}$ when $\mathbf{x}$ is small, it is reasonable to hope that the trajectories of the linear system (1) are good approximations to those of the nonlinear system (4), at least near the origin. This turns out to be true in many (but not all) cases, as the following theorem states.

Theorem 9.3.3

Let r_1 and r_2 be the eigenvalues of the linear system (1), $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}$, corresponding to the locally linear system (4), $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$. Then the type and stability of the critical point (0, 0) of the linear system (1) and the locally linear system (4) are as shown in Table 9.3.1.

TABLE 9.3.1 Stability and Instability Properties of Linear and Locally Linear Systems

	Linear System		Locally Linear System	
Eigenvalues	**Type**	**Stability**	**Type**	**Stability**
$r_1 > r_2 > 0$	N	Unstable	N	Unstable
$r_1 < r_2 < 0$	N	Asymptotically stable	N	Asymptotically stable
$r_2 < 0 < r_1$	SP	Unstable	SP	Unstable
$r_1 = r_2 > 0$	*PN or IN*	Unstable	*N or SpP*	Unstable
$r_1 = r_2 < 0$	*PN or IN*	Asymptotically stable	*N or SpP*	Asymptotically stable
$r_1, r_2 = \lambda \pm i\mu$				
$\lambda > 0$	SpP	Unstable	SpP	Unstable
$\lambda < 0$	SpP	Asymptotically stable	SpP	Asymptotically stable
$\lambda = 0$	*C*	Stable	*C or SpP*	Indeterminate

Key: N, node; IN, improper node; PN, proper node; SP, saddle point; SpP, spiral point; C, center.

At this stage, the proof of Theorem 9.3.3 is too difficult to give, so we will accept the results without proof. The statements for asymptotic stability and instability follow as a consequence of a result discussed in Section 9.6, and a proof is sketched in Problems 9 to 11 of that section. Essentially, Theorem 9.3.3 says that for small $\mathbf{x}$ (or $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^0$) the nonlinear terms are also small and do not affect the stability and type of critical point as determined by the linear terms, except in two sensitive cases. If r_1 and r_2 are pure imaginary, then the small nonlinear terms may change the stable center into a spiral point, which may be either asymptotically stable or unstable. If r_1 and r_2 are real, equal, and positive or real, equal, and negative, then the nonlinear terms may change the node into a spiral point, but its asymptotic stability or instability remains unchanged. Recall that earlier in this section we stated that small perturbations in the coefficients of the linear system (1), and hence in the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2, can alter the type and stability of the critical point only in these two cases. It is reasonable to expect that the small nonlinear term in equation (4) might have a similar substantial effect, at least in these two cases. This is so, but the main significance of Theorem 9.3.3 is that in *all other cases* the small nonlinear term does not alter the type or stability of the critical point. The essential understanding to take from this discussion is this: except in the two sensitive cases, the type and stability of the critical point of the nonlinear system (4) can be determined from a study of the much simpler linear system (1).

Even if the critical point is of the same type as that of the linear system, the trajectories of the locally linear system may be considerably different in appearance from those of the corresponding linear system, except very near the critical point. However, it can be shown that the slopes at which trajectories "enter" or "leave" the critical point are given correctly by the linear system.

Damped Pendulum. We continue the discussion of the damped pendulum begun in Examples 2 and 3. Near the origin the nonlinear equations (8) are approximated by the linear system (17), whose eigenvalues are

$$r_1, r_2 = \frac{-\gamma \pm \sqrt{\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2}}{2}. \tag{19}$$

The nature of the solutions of equations (8) and (17) depends on the sign of $\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2$ as follows:

1. If $\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2 > 0$, then the eigenvalues are real, unequal, and negative.
   The critical point $(0, 0)$ is an asymptotically stable node of the linear system (17) and of the locally linear system (8).
2. If $\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2 = 0$, then the eigenvalues are real, equal, and negative.
   The critical point $(0, 0)$ is an asymptotically stable (proper or improper) node of the linear system (17). It may be either an asymptotically stable node or spiral point of the locally linear system (8).
3. If $\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2 < 0$, then the eigenvalues are complex with negative real part.
   The critical point $(0, 0)$ is an asymptotically stable spiral point of the linear system (17) and of the locally linear system (8).

Thus the critical point $(0, 0)$ is a spiral point of the system (8) if the damping γ is small and a node if γ is large enough. In either case, the origin is asymptotically stable.

Let us now consider the case $\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2 < 0$, corresponding to small damping, in more detail. The direction of motion on the spirals near $(0, 0)$ can be obtained directly from equations (8). Consider the point at which a spiral intersects the positive y-axis ($x = 0$ and $y > 0$). It follows from equations (8) that at such a point, $dx/dt > 0$. Thus the point (x, y) on the trajectory is moving to the right, so the direction of motion on the spirals is clockwise.

The behavior of the pendulum near the critical points $(\pm n\pi, 0)$, with n even, is the same as its behavior near the origin. We expect this on physical grounds since all these critical points correspond to the downward equilibrium position of the pendulum. The conclusion can be confirmed by repeating the analysis carried out above for the origin. Figure 9.3.3 shows the clockwise spirals at a few of these critical points.

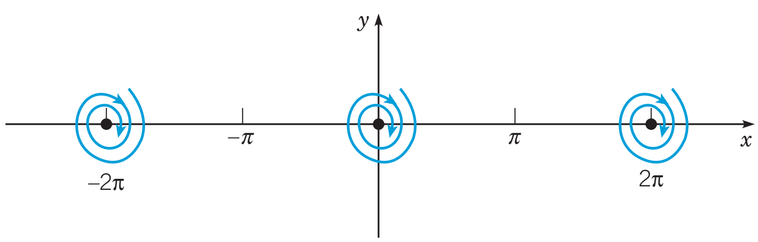


FIGURE 9.3.3 Asymptotically stable spiral points at $(\pm 2n\pi, 0)$ for the damped pendulum with small damping, $\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2 < 0$.

Now let us consider the critical point $(\pi, 0)$. Here the nonlinear equations (8) are approximated by the linear system (18), whose eigenvalues are

$$r_1, r_2 = \frac{-\gamma \pm \sqrt{\gamma^2 + 4\omega^2}}{2}. \tag{20}$$

One eigenvalue (r_1) is positive and the other (r_2) is negative. Therefore, regardless of the amount of damping, the critical point $(x, y) = (\pi, 0)$ is an unstable saddle point both of the linear system (18) and of the locally linear system (8).

To examine the behavior of trajectories near the saddle point $(\pi, 0)$ in more detail, we write down the general solution of equations (18), namely,

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = C_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ r_1 \end{pmatrix} e^{r_1 t} + C_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ r_2 \end{pmatrix} e^{r_2 t}, \tag{21}$$

where C_1 and C_2 are arbitrary constants. Since $r_1 > 0$ and $r_2 < 0$, it follows that the solution that approaches zero as $t \to \infty$ corresponds to $C_1 = 0$. For this solution $v/u = r_2$, so the slope of the entering trajectories is negative; one lies in the second quadrant $(C_2 < 0)$, and the other lies in the fourth quadrant $(C_2 > 0)$. For $C_2 = 0$ we obtain the pair of trajectories "exiting" from the saddle point. These trajectories have slope $r_1 > 0$; one lies in the first quadrant $(C_1 > 0)$, and the other lies in the third quadrant $(C_1 < 0)$.

The situation is the same at other critical points $(n\pi, 0)$ with n odd. These all correspond to the upward equilibrium position of the pendulum, so we expect them to be unstable. The analysis at $(\pi, 0)$ can be repeated to show that they are saddle points oriented in the same way as the one at $(\pi, 0)$. Diagrams of the trajectories in the neighborhood of two saddle points are shown in Figure 9.3.4.

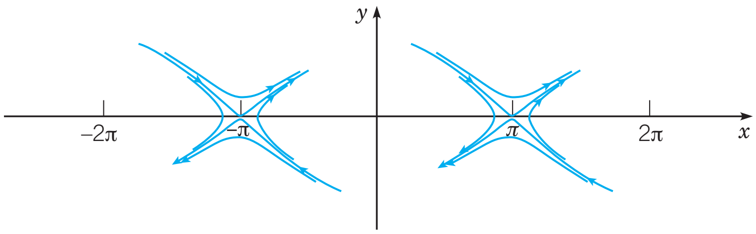


FIGURE 9.3.4 Unstable saddle points at $(\pm(2n+1)\pi, 0)$ for the damped pendulum with small damping, $\gamma^2 - 4\omega^2 < 0$.

EXAMPLE 4

The equations of motion of a certain pendulum are

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -9\sin x - \frac{1}{5}y, \tag{22}$$

where $x = \theta$ and $y = d\theta/dt$. Draw a phase portrait for this system, and explain how it shows the possible motions of the pendulum.

Solution:

By plotting the trajectories starting at various initial points in the phase plane, we obtain the phase portrait shown in Figure 9.3.5. As we have seen, the critical points (equilibrium solutions) are the points $(n\pi, 0)$, where $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$. Even values of n, including zero, correspond to the downward position of the pendulum, while odd values of n correspond to the upward position. Near each of the asymptotically stable critical points, the trajectories are clockwise spirals that represent a decaying oscillation about the downward equilibrium position. The wavy horizontal portions of the trajectories that occur for larger values of $|y|$ represent whirling motions of the pendulum. Note that

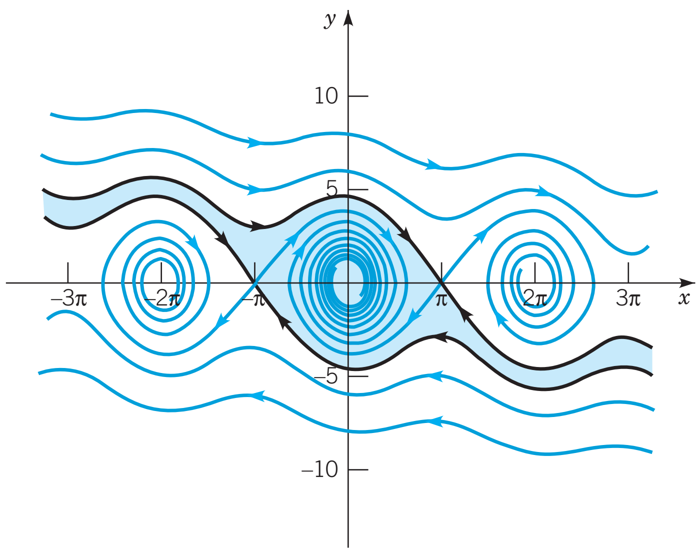


FIGURE 9.3.5 Phase portrait for the damped pendulum of Example 4. The shaded region is the basin of attraction for $(0, 0)$.

a whirling motion cannot continue indefinitely, no matter how large $|y|$ is; eventually, the angular velocity is so much reduced by the damping term that the pendulum can no longer go over the top and, instead, begins to oscillate about its downward position.

The basin of attraction for the origin is the shaded region in Figure 9.3.5. It is bounded by the (black) trajectories that enter the two adjacent saddle points at $(\pi, 0)$ and $(-\pi, 0)$. The bounding trajectories are separatrices. Each asymptotically stable critical point has its own basin of attraction, which is bounded by the separatrices entering the two neighboring saddle points. All of the basins of attraction are congruent to the shaded one; the only difference is that they are translated horizontally by integer multiples of 2π. Note that it is mathematically possible (but physically unrealizable) to choose initial conditions exactly on a separatrix so that the resulting motion leads to a balanced pendulum in a vertically upward position of unstable equilibrium.

An important difference between nonlinear autonomous systems and the linear systems discussed in Section 9.1 is illustrated by the pendulum equations. Recall that the linear system (1) has only the single critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ if $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$. Thus, if the origin is asymptotically stable, then not only do trajectories that start close to the origin approach it, but, in fact, every trajectory approaches the origin. In this case the critical point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is said to be **globally asymptotically stable**. This property of linear systems is not, in general, true for nonlinear systems, even if the nonlinear system has only one asymptotically stable critical point. Therefore, for nonlinear systems, it is important to determine (or to estimate) the basin of attraction for each asymptotically stable critical point.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, verify that $(0, 0)$ is a critical point, show that the system is locally linear, and discuss the type and stability of the critical point $(0, 0)$ by examining the corresponding linear system.

1. $dx/dt = x - y^2, \quad dy/dt = x - 2y + x^2$

2. $dx/dt = (1 + x)\sin y, \quad dy/dt = 1 - x - \cos y$

3. $dx/dt = x + y^2, \quad dy/dt = x + y$

In each of Problems 4 through 15:

a. Determine all critical points of the given system of equations.
b. Find the corresponding linear system near each critical point.
c. Find the eigenvalues of each linear system. What conclusions can you then draw about the nonlinear system?
G **d.** Draw a phase portrait of the nonlinear system to confirm your conclusions, or to extend them in those cases where the linear system does not provide definite information about the nonlinear system.

4. $dx/dt = (2 + x)(y - x), \quad dy/dt = (4 - x)(y + x)$

5. $dx/dt = x - x^2 - xy, \quad dy/dt = 3y - xy - 2y^2$

6. $dx/dt = 1 - y, \quad dy/dt = x^2 - y^2$

7. $dx/dt = (2 + y)(2y - x), \quad dy/dt = (2 - x)(2y + x)$

8. $dx/dt = x + x^2 + y^2, \quad dy/dt = y - xy$

9. $dx/dt = (1 + x)\sin y, \quad dy/dt = 1 - x - \cos y$

10. $dx/dt = x - y^2, \quad dy/dt = y - x^2$

11. $dx/dt = 1 - xy, \quad dy/dt = x - y^3$

12. $dx/dt = -2x - y - x\left(x^2 + y^2\right),$
$dy/dt = x - y + y\left(x^2 + y^2\right)$

13. $dx/dt = y + x\left(1 - x^2 - y^2\right), \quad dy/dt = -x + y\left(1 - x^2 - y^2\right)$

14. $dx/dt = 4 - y^2, \quad dy/dt = (1.5 + x)(y - x)$

15. $dx/dt = (1 - y)(2x - y), \quad dy/dt = (2 + x)(x - 2y)$

16. Consider the autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = x + 2x^3.$$

a. Show that the critical point (0, 0) is a saddle point.
b. Sketch the trajectories for the corresponding linear system by integrating the equation for dy/dx. Show from the parametric form of the solution that the only trajectory on which $x \to 0$, $y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$ is $y = -x$.
c. Determine the trajectories for the nonlinear system by integrating the equation for dy/dx. Sketch the trajectories for the nonlinear system that correspond to $y = -x$ and $y = x$ for the linear system.

17. Consider the autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = x, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = -2y + x^3.$$

a. Show that the critical point (0, 0) is a saddle point.
b. Sketch the trajectories for the corresponding linear system, and show that the trajectory for which $x \to 0$, $y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$ is given by $x = 0$.
c. Determine the trajectories for the nonlinear system for $x \neq 0$ by integrating the equation for dy/dx. Show that the trajectory corresponding to $x = 0$ for the linear system is unaltered, but that the one corresponding to $y = 0$ is $y = x^3/5$. Sketch several of the trajectories for the nonlinear system.

18. The equation of motion of an undamped pendulum is $d^2\theta/dt^2 + \omega^2 \sin\theta = 0$, where $\omega^2 = g/L$. Let $x = \theta$, $y = d\theta/dt$ to obtain the system of equations

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = -\omega^2 \sin x.$$

a. Show that the critical points are $(\pm n\pi, 0)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots,$ and that the system is locally linear in the neighborhood of each critical point.

b. Show that the critical point $(0, 0)$ is a (stable) center of the corresponding linear system. Using Theorem 9.3.3, what can you say about the nonlinear system? The situation is similar at the critical points $(\pm 2n\pi, 0)$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. What is the physical interpretation of these critical points?
c. Show that the critical point $(\pi, 0)$ is an (unstable) saddle point of the corresponding linear system. What conclusion can you draw about the nonlinear system? The situation is similar at the critical points $(\pm(2n-1)\pi, 0)$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. What is the physical interpretation of these critical points?
G **d.** Choose a value for ω^2 and plot a few trajectories of the nonlinear system in the neighborhood of the origin. Can you now draw any further conclusion about the nature of the critical point at $(0, 0)$ for the nonlinear system?
G **e.** Using the value of ω^2 from part d, draw a phase portrait for the pendulum. Compare your plot with Figure 9.3.5 for the damped pendulum.

19. **a.** By solving the equation for dy/dx, show that the equation of the trajectories of the undamped pendulum of Problem 18 can be written as

$$\frac{1}{2}y^2 + \omega^2(1 - \cos x) = c, \tag{23}$$

where c is a constant of integration.
b. Multiply equation (23) by mL^2. Then express the result in terms of θ to obtain

$$\frac{1}{2}mL^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2 + mgL(1 - \cos\theta) = E, \tag{24}$$

where $E = mL^2c$.
c. Show that the first term in equation (24) is the kinetic energy of the pendulum and that the second term is the potential energy due to gravity. Thus the total energy E of the pendulum is constant along any trajectory; its value is determined by the initial conditions.

20. The motion of a certain undamped pendulum is described by the equations

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -4\sin x.$$

If the pendulum is set in motion with an angular displacement A and no initial velocity, then the initial conditions are $x(0) = A$, $y(0) = 0$.
G **a.** Let $A = 0.25$ and plot x versus t. From the graph, estimate the amplitude R and period T of the resulting motion of the pendulum.
G **b.** Repeat part a for $A = 0.5, 1.0, 1.5$, and 2.0.
G **c.** How do the amplitude and period of the pendulum's motion depend on the initial position A? Draw a graph to show each of these relationships. Can you say anything about the limiting value of the period as $A \to 0$?
G **d.** Let $A = 4$ and plot x versus t. Explain why this graph differs from those in parts a and b. For what value of A does the transition take place?

21. Consider again the pendulum equations (see Problem 20)

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -4\sin x.$$

If the pendulum is set in motion from its downward equilibrium position with angular velocity v, then the initial conditions are $x(0) = 0$, $y(0) = v$.
G **a.** Plot x versus t for $v = 2$ and also for $v = 5$. Explain the differing motions of the pendulum that these two graphs represent.
b. There is a critical value of v, which we denote by v_c, such that one type of motion occurs for $v < v_c$ and the other for $v > v_c$. Estimate the value of v_c.

22. This problem extends Problem 21 to a damped pendulum. The equations of motion are

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -4\sin x - \gamma y,$$

where γ is the damping coefficient, with the initial conditions $x(0) = 0$, $y(0) = v$.
G **a.** For $\gamma = 0.25$, plot x versus t for $v = 2$ and for $v = 5$. Explain these plots in terms of the motions of the pendulum that they represent. Also explain how they are related to the corresponding graphs in Problem 21a.
b. Estimate the critical value v_c of the initial velocity where the transition from one type of motion to the other occurs.
c. Repeat part b for other values of γ and determine how v_c depends on γ.

23. Theorem 9.3.3 provides no information about the stability of a critical point of a locally linear system if that point is a center of the corresponding linear system. That this must be the case is illustrated by the system

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dx}{dt} &= y + \alpha x(x^2 + y^2),\\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= -x + \alpha y(x^2 + y^2)\end{aligned} \tag{25}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dx}{dt} &= y - x(x^2 + y^2),\\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= -x - y(x^2 + y^2)\end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

where α is a real-valued constant.
a. Show that, for all values of α, $(0, 0)$ is a critical point of system (25) and, furthermore, is a center of the corresponding linear system.
b. Show that, for all values of α, system (25) is locally linear.
c. Let $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$, and note that $x\,dx/dt + y\,dy/dt = r\,dr/dt$. Show that $dr/dt = \alpha r^3$.
d. Show that, for any $\alpha < 0$, r decreases to 0 as $t \to \infty$; hence the critical point is asymptotically stable.
e. Show that, for any $\alpha > 0$, the solution of the initial value problem for r with $r = r_0$ at $t = 0$ becomes unbounded as t increases towards $1/(2\alpha r_0^2)$, and hence the critical point is unstable.

24. In this problem we show how small changes in the coefficients of a system of linear equations can affect a critical point that is a center. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}.$$

Show that the eigenvalues are $\pm i$ so that $(0, 0)$ is a center. Now consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \epsilon & 1 \\ -1 & \epsilon \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x},$$

where $|\epsilon|$ is arbitrarily small. Show that the eigenvalues are $\epsilon \pm i$. Thus no matter how small $|\epsilon| \neq 0$ is, the center becomes a spiral point. If $\epsilon < 0$, the spiral point is asymptotically stable; if $\epsilon > 0$, the spiral point is unstable.

25. In this problem we show how small changes in the coefficients of a system of linear equations can affect the nature of a critical point when the eigenvalues are equal. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}.$$

Show that the eigenvalues are $r_1 = -1$, $r_2 = -1$ so that the critical point $(0, 0)$ is an asymptotically stable node. Now consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ -\epsilon & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x},$$

where $|\epsilon|$ is arbitrarily small. Show that if $\epsilon > 0$, then the eigenvalues are $-1 \pm i\sqrt{\epsilon}$, so that the asymptotically stable node becomes an asymptotically stable spiral point. If $\epsilon < 0$, then the roots are $-1 \pm \sqrt{|\epsilon|}$, and the critical point remains an asymptotically stable node.

26. In this problem we derive a formula for the natural period of an undamped nonlinear pendulum (equation (10) with $c = 0$ in Section 9.2). Suppose that the bob is pulled through a positive angle α and then released with zero velocity.

a. We usually think of θ and $d\theta/dt$ as functions of t. However, if we reverse the roles of t and θ, we can regard t as a function of θ and, consequently, can also think of $d\theta/dt$ as a function of θ. Then derive the following sequence of equations:

$$\frac{1}{2}mL^2\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\right) = -mgL\sin\theta,$$

$$\frac{1}{2}m\left(L\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2 = mgL(\cos\theta - \cos\alpha),$$

$$dt = -\sqrt{\frac{L}{2g}}\frac{d\theta}{\sqrt{\cos\theta - \cos\alpha}}.$$

Why was the negative square root chosen in the last equation?

b. If T is the natural period of oscillation, derive the formula

$$\frac{T}{4} = -\sqrt{\frac{L}{2g}}\int_\alpha^0 \frac{d\theta}{\sqrt{\cos\theta - \cos\alpha}}.$$

c. Use the identities $\cos\theta = 1 - 2\sin^2\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$ and $\cos\alpha = 1 - 2\sin^2\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)$, followed by the change of variable $\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) = k\sin\phi$ with $k = \sin\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)$, show that

$$T = 4\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}\int_0^{\pi/2}\frac{d\phi}{\sqrt{1 - k^2\sin^2\phi}}.$$

The integral is called the **elliptic integral** of the first kind. Note that the period depends on the ratio L/g and also on the initial displacement α through $k = \sin(\alpha/2)$.

N **d.** By evaluating the integral in the expression for T, obtain values for T that you can compare with the graphical estimates you obtained in Problem 20.

27. A generalization of the damped pendulum equation discussed in the text, or a damped spring-mass system, is the Liénard[4] equation

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + c(x)\frac{dx}{dt} + g(x) = 0.$$

If $c(x)$ is a constant and $g(x) = kx$, then this equation has the form of the linear pendulum equation (compare with equation (12) of Section 9.2 with $\sin\theta$ replaced by its linear approximation, θ); otherwise, the damping force $c(x)\,dx/dt$ and the restoring force $g(x)$ are nonlinear. Assume that c is continuously differentiable, g is twice continuously differentiable, and $g(0) = 0$.

a. Write the Liénard equation as a system of two first-order equations by introducing the variable $y = dx/dt$.

b. Show that $(0, 0)$ is a critical point and that the system is locally linear in the neighborhood of $(0, 0)$.

c. Show that if $c(0) > 0$ and $g'(0) > 0$, then the critical point is asymptotically stable, and that if $c(0) < 0$ or $g'(0) < 0$, then the critical point is unstable. *Hint:* Use Taylor series to approximate c and g in the neighborhood of $x = 0$.

[4] Alfred-Marie Liénard (1869–1958), a French physicist and engineer, was professor at l'École des Mines in Paris. He worked primarily in electricity, mechanics, and applied mathematics. The results of his investigation of this differential equation were published in 1928.

9.4 Competing Species

In this section and the next, we explore the application of phase plane analysis to some problems in population dynamics. These problems involve two interacting populations and are extensions of those discussed in Section 2.5, which dealt with a single population. Although the equations discussed here are extremely simple compared to the very complex relationships that exist in nature, it is still possible to acquire some insight into ecological principles from a study of these model problems. The same, or similar, models have also been used to study other types of competitive situations—for instance, businesses competing in the same market.

Suppose that in some closed environment there are two similar species competing for a limited food supply—for example, two species of fish in a pond that do not prey on each other but do compete for the available food. Let x and y be the populations of the two species at time t. As discussed in Section 2.5, we assume that the population of each of the species, in the absence of the other, is governed by a logistic equation. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dx}{dt} &= x(\epsilon_1 - \sigma_1 x), \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= y(\epsilon_2 - \sigma_2 y), \end{aligned} \qquad (1)$$

respectively, where ϵ_1 and ϵ_2 are the growth rates of the two populations, and ϵ_1/σ_1 and ϵ_2/σ_2 are their saturation levels. However, when both species are present, each will tend to diminish the available food supply for the other. In effect, they reduce each other's growth rates and saturation populations. The simplest expression for reducing the growth rate of species x due to the presence of species y is to replace the growth rate factor $\epsilon_1 - \sigma_1 x$ in the first of equations (1) by $\epsilon_1 - \sigma_1 x - \alpha_1 y$, where α_1 is a measure of the degree to which species y interferes with species x. Similarly, in the second of equations (1) we replace $\epsilon_2 - \sigma_2 y$ by $\epsilon_2 - \sigma_2 y - \alpha_2 x$. Thus we have the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dx}{dt} &= x(\epsilon_1 - \sigma_1 x - \alpha_1 y), \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= y(\epsilon_2 - \sigma_2 y - \alpha_2 x). \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

The values of the positive constants $\epsilon_1, \sigma_1, \alpha_1, \epsilon_2, \sigma_2$, and α_2 depend on the particular species under consideration and, in general, must be determined from observations. We are interested in solutions of equations (2) for which x and y are nonnegative. In the following two examples we discuss two typical problems in some detail. At the end of the section we return to the general equations (2).

EXAMPLE 1

Discuss the qualitative behavior of solutions of the system

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dx}{dt} &= x(1 - x - y), \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= \frac{y}{4}(3 - 4y - 2x). \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

Solution:

We find the critical points by solving the system of algebraic equations

$$x(1 - x - y) = 0, \qquad \frac{y}{4}(3 - 4y - 2x) = 0. \tag{4}$$

The first equation can be satisfied by choosing $x = 0$; then the second equation requires that $y = 0$ or $y = \frac{3}{4}$. Similarly, the second equation can be satisfied by choosing $y = 0$, and then the first equation requires that $x = 0$ or $x = 1$. Thus we have found three critical points, namely, $(0, 0)$, $\left(0, \frac{3}{4}\right)$, and $(1, 0)$. If neither x nor y is zero, then equations (4) are also satisfied by solutions of the system

$$1 - x - y = 0, \qquad 3 - 4y - 2x = 0, \tag{5}$$

which leads to a fourth critical point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$. These four critical points correspond to the equilibrium solutions of the system (3). The first three of these points involve the absence of one or both species; only the last corresponds to the presence of both species. Other solutions are represented as curves or trajectories in the xy-plane that describe the evolution of the populations in time. To begin to discover their qualitative behavior, we can proceed in the following way.

First, observe that the coordinate axes are themselves trajectories. This follows directly from equations (3) since $dx/dt = 0$ on the y-axis (where $x = 0$) and, similarly, $dy/dt = 0$ on the x-axis (where $y = 0$). Thus no other trajectories can cross the coordinate axes. For a population problem only nonnegative values of x and y are significant, and we conclude that any trajectory that starts in the first quadrant remains there for all time.

A direction field for the system (3) in the positive quadrant is shown in Figure 9.4.1; the black dots in this figure are the critical points or equilibrium solutions. Based on the direction field, it appears that the point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ attracts other solutions and is therefore asymptotically stable, while the other three critical points are unstable. To confirm these conclusions, we can look at the linear approximations near each critical point.

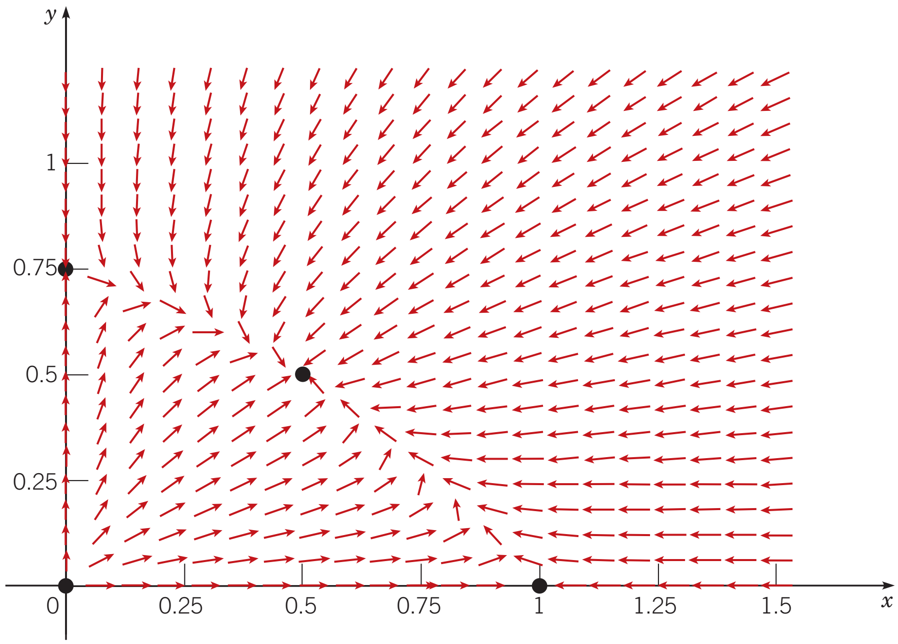


FIGURE 9.4.1 Critical points and direction field for the system (3).

The system (3) is locally linear in the neighborhood of each critical point. There are two ways to obtain the linear system near a critical point (X, Y). First, we can use the substitution $x = X + u$, $y = Y + v$ in equations (3), retaining only the terms that are linear in u and v. Or, as we saw in Section 9.3, we can evaluate the Jacobian matrix $\mathbf{J}$ at each critical point to obtain the coefficient matrix in the approximating linear system; see equation (13) in Section 9.3. When several critical points are to be investigated, it is usually better to use the Jacobian matrix. For the system (3), we have

$$F(x, y) = x(1 - x - y), \quad G(x, y) = y(0.75 - y - 0.5x), \tag{6}$$

so

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}[F, G](x, y) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - 2x - y & -x \\ -0.5y & 0.75 - 2y - 0.5x \end{pmatrix}. \tag{7}$$

We will now examine each critical point in turn.

(*x*, *y*) = (0, 0). This critical point corresponds to the state in which neither species is present. To determine what happens near the origin we can set $x = y = 0$ in equation (7), which leads to the corresponding linear system

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.75 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8}$$

The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the system (8) are

$$r_1 = 1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = 0.75, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{9}$$

so the general solution of the system is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{0.75t}. \tag{10}$$

Thus the origin is an unstable node both of the linear system (8) and of the nonlinear system (3). In the neighborhood of the origin, because $r_1 = 1$ is the dominant eigenvalue, all trajectories are tangent to the y-axis except for one trajectory that lies along the x-axis. If either or both of the species are present in small numbers, the population(s) will grow.

$(x, y) = (1, 0)$. This corresponds to a state in which species x is present but species y is not. By evaluating $\mathbf{J}$ from equation (7) at $(1, 0)$, we find that the corresponding linear system is

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1/4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11}$$

Its eigenvalues and eigenvectors are

$$r_1 = -1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = 1/4, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{12}$$

and its general solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}e^{t/4}. \tag{13}$$

Since the eigenvalues have opposite signs, the point $(1, 0)$ is a saddle point, and so it is an unstable equilibrium point of the linear system (11) and of the nonlinear system (3). The behavior of the trajectories near $(1, 0)$ can be seen from equation (13). If $c_2 = 0$, then there is one pair of trajectories that approaches the critical point along the x-axis. In other words, if the y population is initially zero, then it remains zero forever. All other trajectories depart from the neighborhood of $(1, 0)$; if y is initially small and positive, then the y population grows with time. As $t \to -\infty$, one trajectory approaches the saddle point tangent to the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ whose slope is $-5/4$.

$(x, y) = \left(0, \frac{3}{4}\right)$. This critical point is a state where species y is present but x is not. The analysis is similar to that for the point $(1, 0)$. The corresponding linear system is

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.25 & 0 \\ -0.375 & -0.75 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}. \tag{14}$$

The eigenvalues and eigenvectors are

$$r_1 = \frac{1}{4}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = -\frac{3}{4}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{15}$$

so the general solution of equation (14) is

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}e^{t/4} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-3t/4}. \tag{16}$$

The point $(0, 3/4)$ is also a saddle point. All trajectories leave the neighborhood of this point except one pair that approaches along the y-axis. The trajectory that approaches the saddle point as $t \to -\infty$ is tangent to the line with slope $-3/8 = -0.375$ determined by the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. If the x population is initially zero, it will remain zero, but a small positive x population will grow.

$(x, y) = \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$. This critical point corresponds to a mixed equilibrium state, or **coexistence**, in the competition between the two species. The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the corresponding linear system

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -0.5 & -0.5 \\ -0.25 & -0.5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \tag{17}$$

are

$$\begin{aligned} r_1 &= \frac{1}{4}\left(-2 + \sqrt{2}\right) \cong -0.146, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}; \\ r_2 &= \frac{1}{4}\left(-2 - \sqrt{2}\right) \cong -0.854, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

Therefore, the general solution of equation (17) is

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-0.146t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-0.854t}. \tag{19}$$

Since both eigenvalues are negative, the critical point (1/2, 1/2) is an asymptotically stable node of the linear system (17) and of the nonlinear system (3). All nearby trajectories approach the critical point as $t \to \infty$. One pair of trajectories approaches the critical point along the line with slope $\sqrt{2}/2 \cong 0.707$ determined from the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$. All other trajectories approach the critical point tangent to the line with slope $-\sqrt{2}/2 \cong -0.707$ determined from the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$.

A phase portrait for the system (3) is shown in Figure 9.4.2. By looking closely at the trajectories near each critical point, you can see that they behave in the manner predicted by the linear system near that point. In addition, note that the quadratic terms on the right-hand side of equations (3) are all negative. Since for x and y large and positive these terms are the dominant ones, it follows that far from the origin in the first quadrant both x' and y' are negative; that is, the trajectories are directed inward. Thus all trajectories that start at a point (x_0, y_0) with $x_0 > 0$ and $y_0 > 0$ eventually approach the point $(0.5, 0.5)$. In other words, the entire open first quadrant is the basin of attraction for $(0.5, 0.5)$.

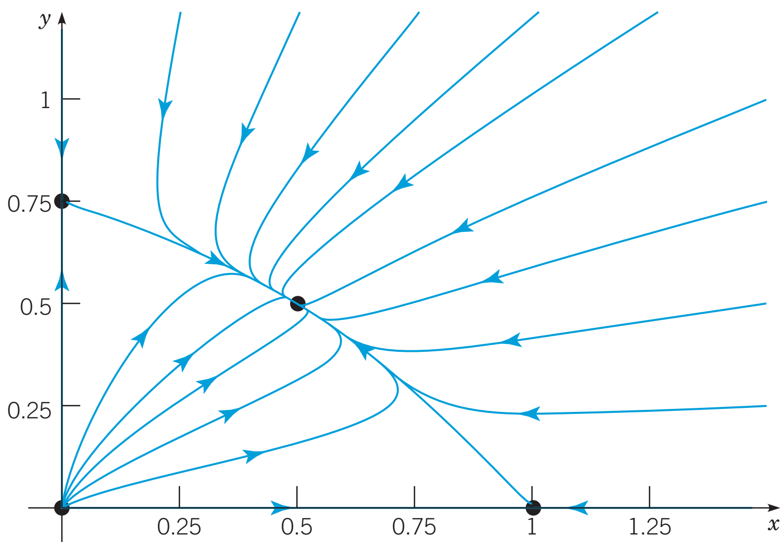


FIGURE 9.4.2 A phase portrait of the system (3). The critical points at $(0, 0)$ is an unstable node, the ones at $(1, 0)$ and $(0, 3/4)$ are saddle points, and $(1/2, 1/2)$ is an asymptotically stable node.

EXAMPLE 2

Discuss the qualitative behavior of the solutions of the system

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dx}{dt} &= x(1 - x - y), \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= y(0.5 - 0.25y - 0.75x), \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

when x and y are nonnegative. Observe that this system is also a special case of the system (2) for two competing species.

Solution:

Once again, there are four critical points, namely, $(0, 0)$, $(1, 0)$, $(0, 2)$, and $(0.5, 0.5)$, corresponding to equilibrium solutions of the system (20). Figure 9.4.3 shows a direction field for the system (20), together with the four critical points. From the direction field it appears that the mixed equilibrium solution $(0.5, 0.5)$ is a saddle point, and therefore unstable, while the points $(1, 0)$ and $(0, 2)$ are asymptotically stable. Thus, for competition described by equations (20), one species will eventually overwhelm the other and drive it to extinction. The surviving species is determined by the initial state

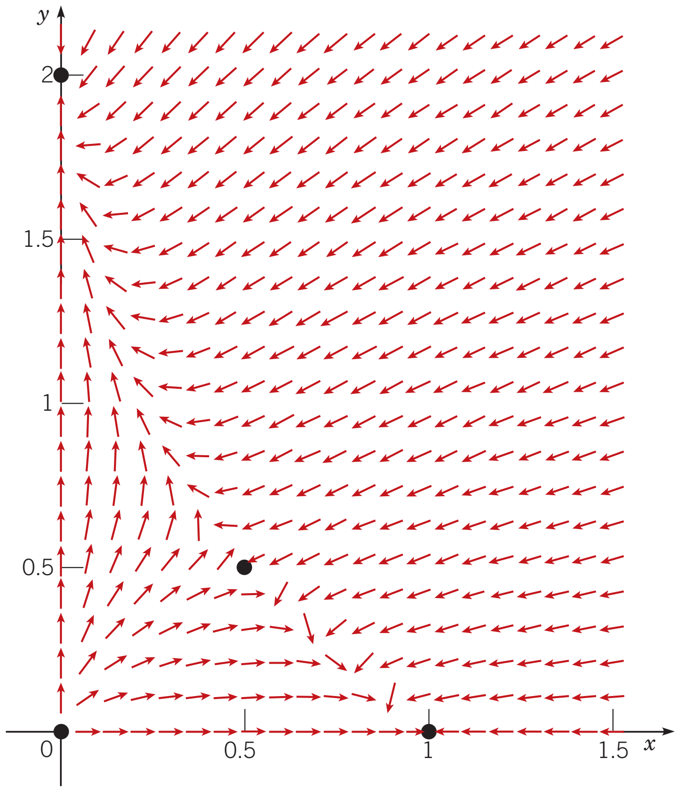


FIGURE 9.4.3 Critical points and direction field for the system (20).

of the system. To confirm these conclusions, we can look at the linear approximations near each critical point. For later use, we record the Jacobian matrix $\mathbf{J}$ for the system (20):

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} F_x(x,y) & F_y(x,y) \\ G_x(x,y) & G_y(x,y) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1-2x-y & -x \\ -0.75y & 0.5-0.5y-0.75x \end{pmatrix}. \tag{21}$$

$(x, y) = (0, 0)$. Using the Jacobian matrix $\mathbf{J}$ from equation (21) evaluated at $(0, 0)$, we obtain the linear system

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}, \tag{22}$$

which is valid near the origin. The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the system (22) are

$$r_1 = 1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = 0.5, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{23}$$

so the general solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{0.5t}. \tag{24}$$

Therefore, the origin is an unstable node of the linear system (22) and also of the nonlinear system (20). All trajectories leave the neighborhood of the origin tangent to the y-axis except for one trajectory that lies along the x-axis.

$(x, y) = (1, 0)$. The corresponding linear system is

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 0 & -0.25 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}. \tag{25}$$

Its eigenvalues and eigenvectors are

$$r_1 = -1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = -0.25, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{26}$$

and its general solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} e^{-0.25t}. \tag{27}$$

The point $(1, 0)$ is an asymptotically stable node of the linear system (25) and of the nonlinear system (20). If the initial values of x and y are sufficiently close to $(1, 0)$, then the interaction process will lead ultimately to that state—that is, to the survival of species x and the extinction of species y. There is one pair of trajectories that approaches the critical point along the x-axis. All other trajectories approach $(1, 0)$ tangent to the line with slope $-3/4$ that is determined by the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$.

$(x, y) = (0, 2)$. The analysis in this case is similar to that for the point $(1, 0)$. The appropriate linear system is

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ -1.5 & -0.5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of this system are

$$r_1 = -1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = -0.5, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{29}$$

and its general solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-0.5t}. \tag{30}$$

Thus the critical point $(0, 2)$ is an asymptotically stable node of both the linear system (28) and the nonlinear system (20). All nearby trajectories approach the critical point tangent to the y-axis except for one trajectory that approaches along the line with slope 3.

$(x, y) = \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$. The corresponding linear system is

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -0.5 & -0.5 \\ -0.375 & -0.125 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}. \tag{31}$$

The eigenvalues and eigenvectors are

$$\begin{aligned} r_1 &= \frac{1}{16}\left(-5 + \sqrt{57}\right) \cong 0.1594, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{1}{8}\left(-3 - \sqrt{57}\right) \end{pmatrix} \cong \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1.3187 \end{pmatrix}, \\ r_2 &= \frac{1}{16}\left(-5 - \sqrt{57}\right) \cong -0.7844, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{1}{8}\left(-3 + \sqrt{57}\right) \end{pmatrix} \cong \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0.5687 \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned} \tag{32}$$

so the general solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1.3187 \end{pmatrix} e^{0.1594t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0.5687 \end{pmatrix} e^{-0.7844t}. \tag{33}$$

Since the eigenvalues are of opposite signs, the critical point $(0.5, 0.5)$ is a saddle point and therefore is unstable, as we had surmised earlier. All trajectories depart from the neighborhood of the critical point except for one pair that approaches the saddle point as $t \to \infty$. As they approach the critical point, the entering trajectories are tangent to the line with slope $(\sqrt{57} - 3)/8 \cong 0.5687$ determined from the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$. There is also a pair of trajectories that approach the saddle point as t approaches $-\infty$. These trajectories are tangent to the line with slope -1.3187 corresponding to $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$.

A phase portrait for the system (20) is shown in Figure 9.4.4. Near each of the critical points, the trajectories of the nonlinear system behave as predicted by the corresponding linear approximation. Of particular interest is the pair of red trajectories that enter the saddle point. These trajectories form a separatrix that divides the first quadrant into two basins of attraction. Trajectories starting above the separatrix ultimately approach the node at $(0, 2)$, while trajectories starting below the separatrix approach the node at $(1, 0)$. If the initial state lies precisely on the separatrix, then the solution (x, y) will approach the saddle point as $t \to \infty$. However, the slightest perturbation of the point (x, y) as it follows this trajectory will dislodge the point from the separatrix and cause it to approach one of the nodes instead. Thus, in practice, one species will survive the competition and the other will not.

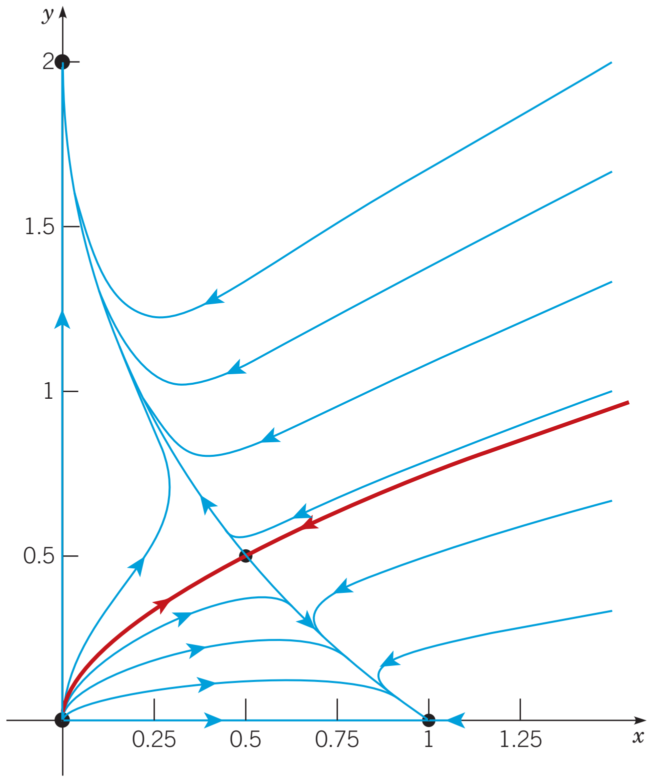


FIGURE 9.4.4 A phase portrait of the system (20). The red curve is the separatrix. Solutions with initial conditions above the separatrix approach the critical point $(0, 2)$. Solutions with initial conditions below the separatrix approach the critical point $(1, 0)$. The critical point $(0, 0)$ is an unstable node and the one at $(1/2, 1/2)$ is a saddle point.

Examples 1 and 2 show that in some cases the competition between two species leads to an equilibrium state of coexistence, while in other cases the competition results in the eventual extinction of one of the species. To understand more clearly how and why this happens, and to learn how to predict which situation will occur, it is useful to look again at the general system (2). There are four cases to be considered, depending on the relative orientation of the lines

$$\epsilon_1 - \sigma_1 x - \alpha_1 y = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \epsilon_2 - \sigma_2 y - \alpha_2 x = 0, \tag{34}$$

as shown in Figure 9.4.5. These lines are called x- and y-**nullclines**[5] of system (2), respectively, because x' is zero on the first and y' is zero on the second. In each of the four cases in Figure 9.4.5, the x-nullcline is the solid blue line and the y-nullcline is the dashed green line.

Let (X, Y) denote any critical point in any one of the four cases. As in Examples 1 and 2, the system (2) is locally linear in the neighborhood of this point because the right-hand side of each differential equation is a quadratic polynomial. To study the system (2) in the neighborhood of this critical point, we can look at the corresponding linear system obtained

[5]The vertical line $x = 0$ is also an x-nullcline of system (2). The horizontal line $y = 0$ is also a y-nullcline of system (2).

from equation (13) of Section 9.3:

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \epsilon_1 - 2\sigma_1 X - \alpha_1 Y & -\alpha_1 X \\ -\alpha_2 Y & \epsilon_2 - 2\sigma_2 Y - \alpha_2 X \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}. \tag{35}$$

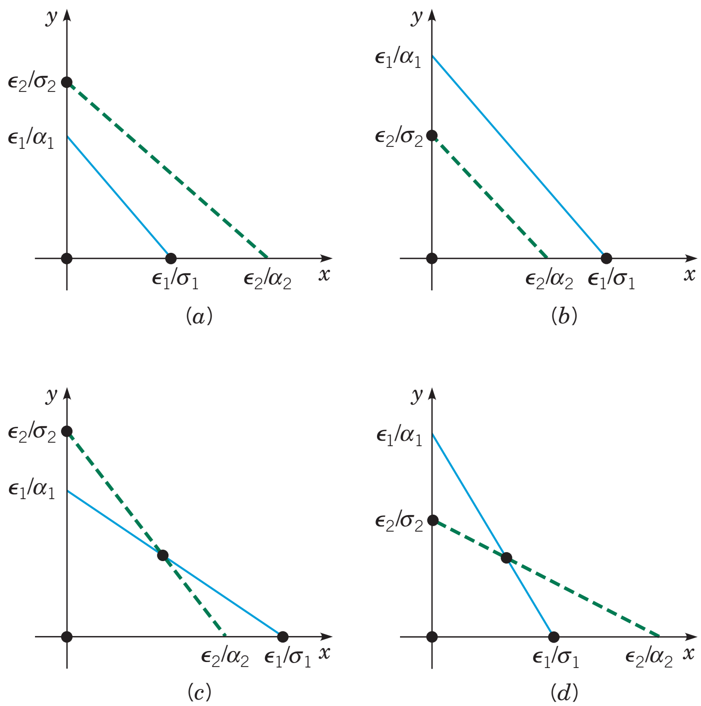


FIGURE 9.4.5 The four cases for the competing-species system (2). The x-nullcline is the solid blue line, and the y-nullcline is the dashed green line.

We now use equation (35) to determine the conditions under which the model described by equations (2) permits the coexistence of the two species x and y. Of the four possible cases shown in Figure 9.4.5, coexistence is possible only in cases (c) and (d). In these cases, the nonzero values of X and Y are obtained by solving the algebraic equations (34); the general result is

$$X = \frac{\epsilon_1\sigma_2 - \epsilon_2\alpha_1}{\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2}, \qquad Y = \frac{\epsilon_2\sigma_1 - \epsilon_1\alpha_2}{\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2}. \tag{36}$$

Further, since $\epsilon_1 - \sigma_1 X - \alpha_1 Y = 0$ and $\epsilon_2 - \sigma_2 Y - \alpha_2 X = 0$, equation (35) immediately reduces to

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sigma_1 X & -\alpha_1 X \\ -\alpha_2 Y & -\sigma_2 Y \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}. \tag{37}$$

The eigenvalues of the system (37) are found from the equation

$$r^2 + (\sigma_1 X + \sigma_2 Y)r + (\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2)XY = 0. \tag{38}$$

Thus

$$r_1, r_2 = \frac{-(\sigma_1 X + \sigma_2 Y) \pm \sqrt{(\sigma_1 X + \sigma_2 Y)^2 - 4(\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2)XY}}{2}. \tag{39}$$

If $\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2 < 0$, then the radicand of equation (39) is positive and greater than $(\sigma_1 X + \sigma_2 Y)^2$. Thus the eigenvalues are real and opposite in sign. Consequently, the critical point (X, Y) is an (unstable) saddle point, and coexistence is not possible. This is the case in Example 2, where $\sigma_1 = 1$, $\alpha_1 = 1$, $\sigma_2 = 0.25$, $\alpha_2 = 0.75$, and $\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2 = -0.5$.

On the other hand, if $\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2 > 0$, then the radicand of equation (39) is less than $(\sigma_1 X + \sigma_2 Y)^2$. In these cases the eigenvalues could be real, negative, and unequal, or they could be complex-valued with negative real part. A straightforward analysis of the radicand of equation (39) shows that the eigenvalues cannot be complex (see Problem 5). Thus the critical point is an asymptotically stable node, and sustained coexistence is possible. This is illustrated by Example 1, where $\sigma_1 = 1$, $\alpha_1 = 1$, $\sigma_2 = 1$, $\alpha_2 = \frac{1}{2}$, and $\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2 = \frac{1}{2}$.

Let us relate this result to Figures 9.4.5*c* and 9.4.5*d*. In Figure 9.4.5*c* we have

$$\frac{\epsilon_1}{\sigma_1} > \frac{\epsilon_2}{\alpha_2} \quad \text{or} \quad \epsilon_1\alpha_2 > \epsilon_2\sigma_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\epsilon_2}{\sigma_2} > \frac{\epsilon_1}{\alpha_1} \quad \text{or} \quad \epsilon_2\alpha_1 > \epsilon_1\sigma_2. \tag{40}$$

These inequalities, coupled with the condition that X and Y given by equations (36) be positive, yield the inequality $\sigma_1\sigma_2 < \alpha_1\alpha_2$. Hence in this case the critical point is a saddle point. On the other hand, in Figure 9.4.5*d* we have

$$\frac{\epsilon_1}{\sigma_1} < \frac{\epsilon_2}{\alpha_2} \quad \text{or} \quad \epsilon_1\alpha_2 < \epsilon_2\sigma_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\epsilon_2}{\sigma_2} < \frac{\epsilon_1}{\alpha_1} \quad \text{or} \quad \epsilon_2\alpha_1 < \epsilon_1\sigma_2. \tag{41}$$

Now the condition that X and Y be positive yields $\sigma_1\sigma_2 > \alpha_1\alpha_2$. Hence the critical point is asymptotically stable. For this case we can also show that the other critical points $(0, 0)$, $(\epsilon_1/\sigma_1, 0)$, and $(0, \epsilon_2/\sigma_2)$ are unstable. Thus for any positive initial values of x and y, the two populations approach the equilibrium state of coexistence given by equations (36).

Equations (2) provide the biological interpretation of the result that whether coexistence occurs depends on whether $\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2$ is positive or negative. The σ's are a measure of the inhibitory effect that the growth of each population has on itself, whereas the α's are a measure of the inhibiting effect that the growth of each population has on the other species. Thus, when $\sigma_1\sigma_2 > \alpha_1\alpha_2$, interaction (competition) is "weak" and the species can coexist; when $\sigma_1\sigma_2 < \alpha_1\alpha_2$, interaction (competition) is "strong" and the species cannot coexist—one must die out.

Problems

Each of Problems 1 through 4 can be interpreted as describing the interaction of two species with populations x and y. In each of these problems, carry out the following steps.

G **a.** Draw a direction field and describe how solutions behave.
b. Find the critical points.
c. For each critical point find the corresponding linear system. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the linear system; classify each critical point as to type, and determine whether it is asymptotically stable, stable, or unstable.
d. Sketch trajectories in the neighborhood of each critical point.
G **e.** Compute and plot enough trajectories of the given system to show clearly the behavior of the solutions.
f. Determine the limiting behavior of x and y as $t \to \infty$, and interpret the results in terms of the populations of the two species.

1. $dx/dt = x(1.5 - x - 0.5y)$
$dy/dt = y(2 - y - 0.75x)$

2. $dx/dt = x(1.5 - x - 0.5y)$
$dy/dt = y(2 - 0.5y - 1.5x)$

3. $dx/dt = x(1 - x - y)$
$dy/dt = y(1.5 - y - x)$

4. $dx/dt = x(1 - x + 0.5y)$
$dy/dt = y(2.5 - 1.5y + 0.25x)$

5. Consider the eigenvalues given by equation (39). Show that

$$(\sigma_1 X + \sigma_2 Y)^2 - 4(\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2)XY = (\sigma_1 X - \sigma_2 Y)^2 + 4\alpha_1\alpha_2 XY.$$

Hence conclude that the eigenvalues can never be complex-valued.

6. Two species of fish that compete with each other for food, but do not prey on each other, are bluegill and redear. Suppose that a pond is stocked with bluegill and redear, and let x and y be the populations of bluegill and redear, respectively, at time t. Suppose further that the competition is modeled by the equations

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = x(\epsilon_1 - \sigma_1 x - \alpha_1 y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = y(\epsilon_2 - \sigma_2 y - \alpha_2 x).$$

a. If $\epsilon_2/\alpha_2 > \epsilon_1/\sigma_1$ and $\epsilon_2/\sigma_2 > \epsilon_1/\alpha_1$, show that the only equilibrium populations in the pond are no fish, no redear, or no bluegill. What will happen for large t?
b. If $\epsilon_1/\sigma_1 > \epsilon_2/\alpha_2$ and $\epsilon_1/\alpha_1 > \epsilon_2/\sigma_2$, show that the only equilibrium populations in the pond are no fish, no redear, or no bluegill. What will happen for large t?

7. Consider the competition between bluegill and redear mentioned in Problem 6. Suppose that $\epsilon_2/\alpha_2 > \epsilon_1/\sigma_1$ and $\epsilon_1/\alpha_1 > \epsilon_2/\sigma_2$, so, as shown in the text, there is a stable equilibrium point at which both species can coexist. It is convenient to rewrite the equations of Problem 6 in terms of the carrying capacity of the pond for bluegill ($B = \epsilon_1/\sigma_1$) in the absence of redear and its carrying capacity for redear ($R = \epsilon_2/\sigma_2$) in the absence of bluegill.

a. Show that the equations of Problem 6 take the form

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \epsilon_1 x\left(1 - \frac{1}{B}x - \frac{\gamma_1}{B}y\right), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = \epsilon_2 y\left(1 - \frac{1}{R}y - \frac{\gamma_2}{R}x\right),$$

where $\gamma_1 = \alpha_1/\sigma_1$ and $\gamma_2 = \alpha_2/\sigma_2$. Determine the coexistence equilibrium point (X, Y) in terms of B, R, γ_1, and γ_2.

b. Now suppose that an angler fishes only for bluegill with the effect that B is reduced. What effect does this have on the equilibrium populations? Is it possible, by fishing, to reduce the population of bluegill to such a level that they will die out?

8. Consider the system (2), and assume that $\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \alpha_1\alpha_2 = 0$.

a. Find all the critical points of the system. Observe that the result depends on whether $\sigma_1\epsilon_2 - \alpha_2\epsilon_1$ is zero.

b. If $\sigma_1\epsilon_2-\alpha_2\epsilon_1 > 0$, classify each critical point and determine whether it is asymptotically stable, stable, or unstable. Note that Problem 3 is of this type. Then do the same if $\sigma_1\epsilon_2 - \alpha_2\epsilon_1 < 0$.

c. Analyze the nature of the trajectories when $\sigma_1\epsilon_2-\alpha_2\epsilon_1 = 0$.

9. Consider the system (3) in Example 1 of the text. Recall that this system has an asymptotically stable critical point at (0.5, 0.5), corresponding to the stable coexistence of the two population species. Now suppose that immigration or emigration occurs at the constant rates of δa and δb for the species x and y, respectively. In this case equations (3) are replaced by

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = x(1-x-y) + \delta a, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{y}{4}(3-4y-2x) + \delta b. \tag{42}$$

The question is what effect this has on the location of the stable equilibrium point.

a. To find the new critical point, we must solve the equations

$$\begin{aligned} x(1-x-y) + \delta a &= 0, \\ \frac{y}{4}(3-4y-2x) + \delta b &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{43}$$

One way to proceed is to assume that x and y are given by power series in the parameter δ; thus

$$x = x_0 + x_1\delta + \cdots, \qquad y = y_0 + y_1\delta + \cdots. \tag{44}$$

Substitute equations (44) into equations (43) and collect terms according to powers of δ.

b. From the constant terms (the terms not involving δ), show that $x_0 = 0.5$ and $y_0 = 0.5$, thus confirming that in the absence of immigration or emigration, the critical point is (0.5, 0.5).

c. From the terms that are linear in δ, show that

$$x_1 = 4a - 4b, \qquad y_1 = -2a + 4b. \tag{45}$$

d. Suppose that $a > 0$ and $b > 0$ so that immigration occurs for both species. Show that the resulting equilibrium solution may represent an increase in both populations, or an increase in one but a decrease in the other. Explain intuitively why this is a reasonable result.

10. The system

$$x' = -y, \qquad y' = -\gamma y - x(x-0.15)(x-2)$$

results from an approximation to the Hodgkin–Huxley[6] equations, which model the transmission of neural impulses along an axon.

a. Find the critical points, and classify them by investigating the approximate linear system near each one.

G **b.** Draw phase portraits for $\gamma = 0.8$ and for $\gamma = 1.5$.

G **c.** Consider the trajectory that leaves the critical point $(2, 0)$. Find the value of γ for which this trajectory ultimately approaches the origin as $t \to \infty$. Draw a phase portrait for this value of γ.

[6]Sir Alan L. Hodgkin (1914–1998) and Sir Andrew F. Huxley (1917–), British physiologists and biophysicists, studied the excitation and transmission of neural impulses at Cambridge University and the Marine Biological Association Laboratory in Plymouth. This work was both theoretical (resulting in a system of nonlinear differential equations) and experimental (involving measurements on the giant axon of the Atlantic squid). They were awarded the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine in 1963.

Bifurcation Points. Consider the system

$$x' = F(x, y, \alpha), \qquad y' = G(x, y, \alpha), \tag{46}$$

where α is a parameter. The equations

$$F(x, y, \alpha) = 0, \qquad G(x, y, \alpha) = 0 \tag{47}$$

determine the x- and y-nullclines, respectively; any point where an x-nullcline and a y-nullcline intersect is a critical point. As α varies and the configuration of the nullclines changes, it may well happen that, at a certain value of α, two critical points coalesce into one. For further variation in α, the critical point may once again separate into two critical points, or it may disappear altogether. Or the process may occur in reverse: For a certain value of α, two formerly nonintersecting nullclines may come together, creating a critical point, which, for further changes in α, may split into two. A value of α at which such phenomena occur is a bifurcation point. It is also common for a critical point to experience a change in its type and stability properties at a bifurcation point. Thus both the number and the kind of critical points may change abruptly as α passes through a bifurcation point. Since a phase portrait of a system is very dependent on the location and nature of the critical points, an understanding of bifurcations is essential to an understanding of the global behavior of the system's solutions.

In each of Problems 11 through 14:

a. Sketch the nullclines and describe how the critical points move as α increases.

b. Find the critical points.

G **c.** Let $\alpha = 2$. Classify each critical point by investigating the corresponding approximate linear system. Draw a phase portrait in a rectangle containing the critical points.

G **d.** Find the bifurcation point α_0 at which the critical points coincide. Locate this critical point, and find the eigenvalues of the approximate linear system. Draw a phase portrait.

G **e.** For $\alpha > \alpha_0$, there are no critical points. Choose such a value of α and draw a phase portrait.

11. $x' = -4x + y + x^2, \quad y' = \frac{3}{2}\alpha - y$

12. $x' = \frac{3}{2}\alpha - y, \quad y' = -4x + y + x^2$

13. $x' = -4x + y + x^2, \quad y' = -\alpha - x + y$

14. $x' = -\alpha - x + y, \quad y' = -4x + y + x^2$

Problems 15 through 17 deal with competitive systems much like those in Examples 1 and 2, except that some coefficients depend on a parameter α. In each of these problems, assume that x, y, and α are always nonnegative. In each of Problems 15 through 17:

a. Sketch, by hand, the nullclines in the first quadrant, as in Figure 9.4.5. For different ranges of α, your sketch may resemble different parts of Figure 9.4.5.

b. Find the critical points.

c. Determine the bifurcation points.

d. Find the Jacobian matrix $\mathbf{J}$, and evaluate it for each of the critical points.

e. Determine the type and stability property of each critical point. Pay particular attention to what happens as α passes through a bifurcation point.

G **f.** Draw phase portraits for the system for selected values of α to confirm your conclusions.

15. $dx/dt = x(1-x-y), \quad dy/dt = y(\alpha - y - 0.5x)$

16. $dx/dt = x(1-x-y), \quad dy/dt = y(0.75 - \alpha y - 0.5x)$

17. $dx/dt = x(1-x-y), \quad dy/dt = y(\alpha - y - (2\alpha - 1)x)$

9.5 Predator – Prey Equations

In the preceding section we discussed a model of two species that interact by competing for a common food supply or other natural resource. In this section we investigate the situation in which one species (the predator) preys on the other species (the prey), while the prey lives on a different source of food. For example, consider foxes and rabbits in a closed forest. The foxes prey on the rabbits, the rabbits live on the vegetation in the forest. Other examples are bass in a lake as predators and redear as prey, and ladybugs as predators and aphids as prey. We emphasize again that a model involving only two species cannot fully describe the complex relationships among species that actually occur in nature. Nevertheless, the study of simple models is the first step toward an understanding of more complicated phenomena.

We will denote by x and y the populations of the prey and predator, respectively, at time t. In constructing a model of the interaction of the two species, we make the following assumptions:

1. In the absence of the predator, the prey grows at a rate proportional to the current population; thus $dx/dt = ax$, $a > 0$, when $y = 0$.
2. In the absence of the prey, the predator dies out; thus $dy/dt = -cy$, $c > 0$, when $x = 0$.
3. The number of encounters between predator and prey is proportional to the product of their populations. Each such encounter tends to promote the growth of the predator and to inhibit the growth of the prey. Thus the growth rate of the predator is increased by a term of the form γxy, while the growth rate of the prey is decreased by a term $-\alpha xy$, where γ and α are positive constants.

As a consequence of these assumptions, we are led to the equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{dx}{dt} &= ax - \alpha xy = x(a - \alpha y), \\
\frac{dy}{dt} &= -cy + \gamma xy = y(-c + \gamma x).
\end{aligned}
\tag{1}
$$

The constants a, c, α, and γ are all positive; a and c are the growth rate of the prey and the death rate of the predator, respectively, and α and γ are measures of the effect of the interaction between the two species. Equations (1) are known as the **Lotka – Volterra equations**. They were developed in papers by Lotka[7] in 1925 and by Volterra[8] in 1926. Although these are rather simple equations, they do characterize a wide class of problems. Ways of making them more realistic are discussed at the end of this section and in the problems. Our goal here is to determine the qualitative behavior of the solutions (trajectories) of the system (1) for arbitrary positive initial values of x and y. We first do this for a specific example and then return to the general equations (1) at the end of the section.

---

[7] Alfred J. Lotka (1880–1949), an American biophysicist, was born in what is now Ukraine and was educated mainly in Europe. He is remembered chiefly for his formulation of the Lotka – Volterra equations. He was also the author, in 1924, of the first book on mathematical biology; it is now available as *Elements of Mathematical Biology* (New York: Dover, 1956).

[8] Vito Volterra (1860–1940), a distinguished Italian mathematician, held professorships at Pisa, Turin, and Rome. He is particularly famous for his work in integral equations and functional analysis. Indeed, one of the major classes of integral equations is named for him; see Problem 16 of Section 6.6. His theory of interacting species was motivated by data collected by his son-in-law, Humberto d'Ancona, concerning fish catches in the Adriatic Sea. A translation of his 1926 paper can be found in an appendix to R. N. Chapman, *Animal Ecology with Special Reference to Insects* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1931).

EXAMPLE 1

Discuss the solutions of the system

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dx}{dt} &= x(1-0.5y) = x - 0.5xy = F(x,y),\\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= y(-0.75+0.25x) = -0.75y + 0.25xy = G(x,y)\end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

for x and y positive.

Solution:

The critical points of this system are the solutions of the algebraic equations

$$x(1-0.5y) = 0, \quad y(-0.75+0.25x) = 0, \tag{3}$$

namely, the points $(0, 0)$ and $(3, 2)$. Figure 9.5.1 shows the critical points and a direction field for the system (2). From this figure, it appears that trajectories in the first quadrant encircle the critical point $(3, 2)$. Whether the trajectories are actually closed curves, or whether they slowly spiral in or out, cannot be definitely determined from the direction field. The origin appears to be a saddle point. Just as for the competition equations in Section 9.4, the coordinate axes are trajectories of equations (1) or (2). Consequently, no other trajectory can cross a coordinate axis, which means that every solution starting in the first quadrant remains there for all time.

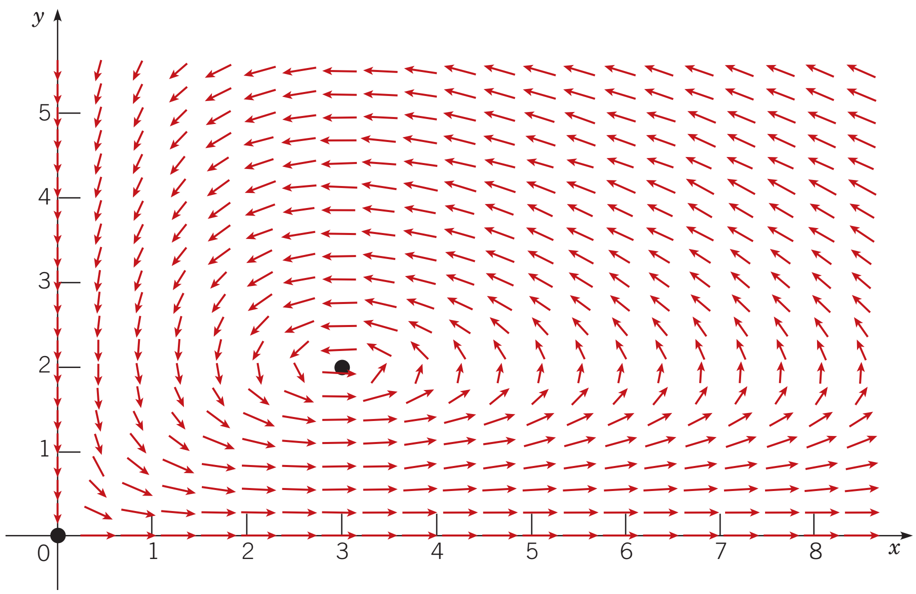


FIGURE 9.5.1 Critical points and direction field for the predator–prey system (2).

Next we examine the local behavior of solutions near each critical point.

(x, y) = (0, 0). Near the origin we can neglect the nonlinear terms in equations (2) to obtain the corresponding linear system

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -0.75 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4}$$

The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of equation (4) are

$$r_1 = 1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad r_2 = -0.75, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5}$$

so its general solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-0.75t}. \tag{6}$$

Thus the origin is a saddle point both of the linear system (4) and of the nonlinear system (2) and therefore is unstable. One trajectory enters the origin along the y-axis; all other trajectories depart from the neighborhood of the origin.

$(x, y) = (3, 2)$. To examine the critical point $(3, 2)$, we can use the Jacobian matrix

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}[F, G](x, y) = \begin{pmatrix} F_x(x, y) & F_y(x, y) \\ G_x(x, y) & G_y(x, y) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - 0.5y & -0.5x \\ 0.25y & -0.75 + 0.25x \end{pmatrix}. \tag{7}$$

Evaluating $\mathbf{J}$ at the point $(3, 2)$, we obtain the linear system

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1.5 \\ 0.5 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}, \tag{8}$$

where $u = x - 3$ and $v = y - 2$. The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of this system are

$$r_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}\,i}{2}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -i/\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = -\frac{\sqrt{3}\,i}{2}, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i/\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{9}$$

Since the eigenvalues are imaginary, the critical point $(3, 2)$ is a center of the linear system (8) and is therefore a stable critical point for that system. Recall from Section 9.3 that this is one of the cases in which the behavior of the linear system may or may not carry over to the nonlinear system, so the nature of the point $(3, 2)$ for the nonlinear system (2) cannot be determined from this information.

The simplest way to find the trajectories of the linear system (8) is to divide the second of equations (8) by the first so as to obtain the differential equation

$$\frac{dv}{du} = \frac{dv/dt}{du/dt} = \frac{0.5u}{-1.5v} = -\frac{u}{3v},$$

or

$$u\,du + 3v\,dv = 0. \tag{10}$$

Consequently,

$$u^2 + 3v^2 = k, \tag{11}$$

where k is an arbitrary nonnegative constant of integration. Thus the trajectories of the linear system (8) are ellipses centered at the critical point and elongated somewhat in the horizontal direction.

Now let us return to the nonlinear system (2). Dividing the second of equations (2) by the first, we obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y(-0.75 + 0.25x)}{x(1 - 0.5y)}. \tag{12}$$

Equation (12) is a separable equation and can be put in the form

$$\frac{1 - 0.5y}{y}\,dy = \frac{-0.75 + 0.25x}{x}\,dx,$$

from which it follows that

$$0.75 \ln x + \ln y - 0.5y - 0.25x = c, \tag{13}$$

where c is a constant of integration. Although by using only elementary functions we cannot solve equation (13) explicitly for either variable in terms of the other, it is possible to show that the graph of the equation for a fixed value of c is a closed curve surrounding the critical point $(3, 2)$. Thus the critical point is also a center of the nonlinear system (2), and the predator and prey populations exhibit a cyclic variation.

Figure 9.5.2 shows a phase portrait of the system (2). For some initial conditions, the trajectory represents small variations in x and y about the critical point and is almost elliptical in shape, as the linear analysis suggests. For other initial conditions, the oscillations in x and y are more pronounced, and the shape of the trajectory is significantly different from an ellipse. Observe that the trajectories are traversed in the counterclockwise direction. The dependence of x and y on t for the red trajectory in Figure 9.5.2 is shown in Figure 9.5.3. Note that x and y are periodic functions of t, as they must be since the trajectories are closed curves. Further, the oscillation of the predator population lags behind that of the prey. Starting from a state in which both predator and prey populations are relatively small, the prey first increase because there is little predation. Then the predators, with abundant food, increase in population also. This causes heavier predation, and the prey tend to decrease. Finally, with a diminished food supply, the predator population also decreases, and the system returns to its original state. From here the trajectory begins to repeat itself.

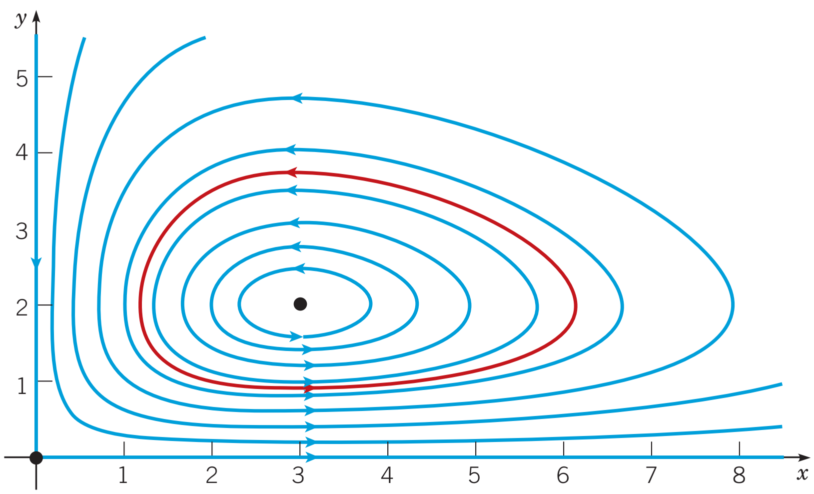


FIGURE 9.5.2 A phase portrait of the system (2). The critical point at $(3, 2)$ is a center and the one at $(0, 0)$ is a saddle point. The component plots for the red curve, with initial condition $x(0) = 2$, $y(0) = 1$ are shown in Figure 9.5.3.

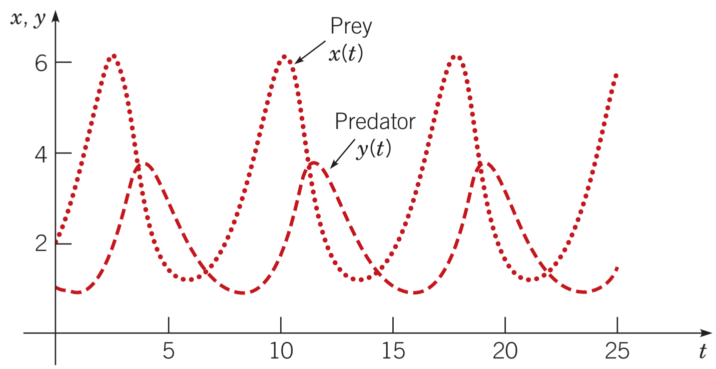


FIGURE 9.5.3 Variations of the prey (dotted red curve) and predator (dashed red curve) populations with time for the system (2) with initial condition $x(0) = 2$, $y(0) = 1$.

The general system (1) can be analyzed in exactly the same way as in the example. The critical points of the system (1) are the solutions of

$$x(a - \alpha y) = 0, \quad y(-c + \gamma x) = 0,$$

that is, the points $(0, 0)$ and $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$. We first examine the solutions of the corresponding linear system near each critical point.

In the neighborhood of the origin, the corresponding linear system is

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & -c \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}. \tag{14}$$

The eigenvalues and eigenvectors are

$$r_1 = a, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = -c, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{15}$$

so the general solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^{at} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-ct}. \tag{16}$$

Thus the origin is a saddle point and hence unstable. Entrance to the saddle point is along the (positive) y-axis; all other trajectories depart from the neighborhood of the critical point.

Next consider the critical point $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$. The Jacobian matrix is

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} a - \alpha y & -\alpha x \\ \gamma y & -c + \gamma x \end{pmatrix}.$$

Evaluating $\mathbf{J}$ at $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$, we obtain the approximate linear system

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\alpha c/\gamma \\ \gamma a/\alpha & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}, \tag{17}$$

where $u = x - c/\gamma$ and $v = y - a/\alpha$. The eigenvalues of the system (17) are $r = \pm i\sqrt{ac}$, so the critical point is a (stable) center of the linear system. To find the trajectories of the system (17), we can divide the second equation by the first to obtain

$$\frac{dv}{du} = \frac{dv/dt}{du/dt} = -\frac{(\gamma a/\alpha)u}{(\alpha c/\gamma)v}, \tag{18}$$

or

$$\gamma^2 au\,du + \alpha^2 cv\,dv = 0. \tag{19}$$

Consequently,

$$\gamma^2 au^2 + \alpha^2 cv^2 = k, \tag{20}$$

where k is a nonnegative constant of integration. Thus the trajectories of the linear system (17) are ellipses, just as in the example.

Returning briefly to the nonlinear system (1), observe that it can be reduced to the single equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy/dt}{dx/dt} = \frac{y(-c + \gamma x)}{x(a - \alpha y)}. \tag{21}$$

Equation (21) is separable and has the solution

$$a \ln y - \alpha y + c \ln x - \gamma x = C, \tag{22}$$

where C is a constant of integration. Again, it is possible to show that for fixed C, the graph of equation (22) is a closed curve surrounding the critical point $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$. Thus this critical point is also a center for the general nonlinear system (1).

The cyclic variation of the predator and prey populations can be analyzed in more detail when the deviations from the point $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$ are small and the linear system (17) can be used. The solution of the system (17) can be written in the form

$$u = \frac{c}{\gamma}K\cos\left(\sqrt{ac}\,t + \phi\right), \qquad v = \frac{a}{\alpha}\sqrt{\frac{c}{a}}K\sin\left(\sqrt{ac}\,t + \phi\right), \tag{23}$$

where the constants K and ϕ are determined by the initial conditions. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{c}{\gamma} + \frac{c}{\gamma}K\cos\left(\sqrt{ac}\,t + \phi\right), \\ y &= \frac{a}{\alpha} + \frac{a}{\alpha}\sqrt{\frac{c}{a}}K\sin\left(\sqrt{ac}\,t + \phi\right). \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

These equations are good approximations for the nearly elliptical trajectories close to the critical point $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$. We can use them to draw several conclusions about the cyclic variation of the predator and prey on such trajectories.

1. The sizes of the predator and prey populations vary sinusoidally with period $2\pi/\sqrt{ac}$. This period of oscillation is independent of the initial conditions.
2. The predator and prey populations are out of phase by one-quarter of a cycle. The prey leads and the predator lags, as explained in the example.
3. The amplitudes of the oscillations are Kc/γ for the prey and $\sqrt{ac}K/\alpha$ for the predator, and hence depend on the initial conditions as well as on the parameters of the problem.
4. The average populations of predator and prey over one complete cycle are c/γ and a/α, respectively. These are the same as the equilibrium populations; see Problem 10.

Cyclic variations of predator and prey as predicted by equations (1) have been observed in nature. One striking example is described by Odum (pp. 191–192); based on the records of the Hudson's Bay Company of Canada, the abundance of lynx and snowshoe hare, as indicated by the number of pelts turned in over the period 1845–1935, shows a distinct periodic variation with a period of 9 to 10 years. The peaks of abundance are followed by very rapid declines, and the peaks of abundance of the lynx and hare are out of phase, with that of the hare preceding that of the lynx by a year or more.

Since the critical point $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$ is a center, we expect that small perturbations of the Lotka–Volterra equations may well lead to solutions that are not periodic. To put it another way, unless the Lotka–Volterra equations exactly describe a given predator–prey relationship, the actual fluctuations of the populations may differ substantially from those predicted by the Lotka–Volterra equations, due to small inaccuracies in the model equations. This has led to many attempts[9] to replace the Lotka–Volterra equations by other systems that are less susceptible to the effects of small perturbations. Problem 13 introduces one such alternative model.

Another criticism of the Lotka–Volterra equations is that in the absence of the predator, the prey will grow without bound. This can be corrected by allowing for the natural inhibiting effect that an increasing population has on the growth rate of that population. For example, the first of equations (1) can be modified so that when $y = 0$, it reduces to a logistic equation for x. The effects of this modification are explored in Problems 11 and 12. Problems 14 through 16 deal with harvesting in a predator–prey relationship. The results may seem rather counterintuitive.

Finally, we repeat a warning stated earlier: relationships among species in the natural world are often complex and subtle. You should not expect too much of a simple system of two differential equations in describing such relationships. Even if you are convinced that the general form of the equations is sound, the determination of numerical values for the coefficients may present serious difficulties.

[9] See the book by Brauer and Castillo-Chávez listed in the References for an extensive discussion of alternative models for predator–prey relationships.

Problems

Each of Problems 1 through 5 can be interpreted as describing the interaction of two species with population densities x and y. In each of these problems, carry out the following steps.

G **a.** Draw a direction field and describe how solutions seem to behave.

b. Find the critical points.

c. For each critical point, find the corresponding linear system. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the linear system; classify each critical point as to type, and determine whether it is asymptotically stable, stable, or unstable.

d. Sketch the trajectories in the neighborhood of each critical point.

G **e.** Draw a phase portrait for the system.

f. Determine the limiting behavior of x and y as $t \to \infty$.

g. Interpret the results in terms of the populations of the two species.

1. $dx/dt = x(1.5 - 0.5y)$
$dy/dt = y(-0.5 + x)$

2. $dx/dt = x(1 - 0.5y)$
$dy/dt = y(-0.25 + 0.5x)$

3. $dx/dt = x(1 - 0.5x - 0.5y)$
$dy/dt = y(-0.25 + 0.5x)$

4. $dx/dt = x\left(-1 + 2.5x - 0.3y - x^2\right)$
$dy/dt = y(-1.5 + x)$

5. $dx/dt = x(-0.5 + y)$
$dy/dt = y\left(-0.25 + y - 0.5x - y^2\right)$

6. In this problem we examine the phase difference between the cyclic variations of the predator and prey populations as given by equations (24) of this section. Suppose we assume that $K > 0$ and that t is measured from the time that the prey population x is a maximum; then $\phi = 0$.

a. Show that the predator population y reaches a maximum at $t = \pi/(2\sqrt{ac}) = T/4$, where T is the period of the oscillation.

b. When is the prey population increasing most rapidly? decreasing most rapidly? a minimum?

c. Answer the questions in part b for the predator population.

d. Draw a typical elliptic trajectory enclosing the point $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$, and mark on it the points found in parts a, b, and c.

7. a. Find the ratio of the amplitudes of the oscillations of the prey and predator populations about the critical point $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$, using the approximation (24), which is valid for small oscillations. Observe that the ratio is independent of the initial conditions.

b. Evaluate the ratio found in part a for the system (2).

c. Estimate the amplitude ratio for the solution of the nonlinear system (2) shown in Figure 9.5.3. Does the result agree with that obtained from the linear approximation?

G **d.** Determine the prey–predator amplitude ratio for other solutions of the system (2)—that is, for solutions satisfying other initial conditions. Is the ratio independent of the initial conditions?

8. a. Find the period of the oscillations of the prey and predator populations, using the approximation (24), which is valid for small oscillations. Note that the period is independent of the amplitude of the oscillations.

b. For the solution of the nonlinear system (2) shown in Figure 9.5.3, estimate the period as well as possible. Is the result the same as for the linear approximation?

G **c.** Calculate other solutions of the system (2)—that is, solutions satisfying other initial conditions—and determine their periods. Is the period the same for all initial conditions?

9. Consider the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = ax\left(1 - \frac{y}{2}\right), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = by\left(-1 + \frac{x}{3}\right),$$

where a and b are positive constants. Observe that this system is the same as in the example in the text if $a = 1$ and $b = 0.75$. Suppose the initial conditions are $x(0) = 5$ and $y(0) = 2$.

G **a.** Let $a = 1$ and $b = 1$. Plot the trajectory in the phase plane, and determine (or estimate) the period of the oscillation.

G **b.** Repeat part a for $a = 3$ and $a = 1/3$, with $b = 1$.

G **c.** Repeat part a for $b = 3$ and $b = 1/3$, with $a = 1$.

d. Describe how the period and the shape of the trajectory depend on a and b.

10. The average sizes of the prey and predator populations are defined as

$$\overline{x} = \frac{1}{T}\int_A^{A+T} x(t)\,dt, \quad \overline{y} = \frac{1}{T}\int_A^{A+T} y(t)\,dt,$$

respectively, where T is the period of a full cycle, and A is any nonnegative constant.

a. Using the approximation (24), which is valid near the critical point, show that $\overline{x} = c/\gamma$ and $\overline{y} = a/\alpha$.

N **b.** For the solution of the nonlinear system (2) shown in Figure 9.5.3, estimate $\overline{x}$ and $\overline{y}$ as well as you can. Try to determine whether $\overline{x}$ and $\overline{y}$ are given by c/γ and a/α, respectively, in this case. *Hint:* Consider how you might estimate the value of an integral even though you do not have a formula for the integrand.

G **c.** Calculate other solutions of the system (2)—that is, solutions satisfying other initial conditions—and determine $\overline{x}$ and $\overline{y}$ for these solutions. Are the values of $\overline{x}$ and $\overline{y}$ the same for all solutions?

In Problems 11 and 12, we consider the effect of modifying the equation for the prey x by including a term $-\sigma x^2$ so that this equation reduces to a logistic equation in the absence of the predator y. Problem 11 deals with a specific system of this kind, and Problem 12 takes up this modification to the general Lotka-Volterra system. The system in Problem 3 is another example of this type.

11. Consider the system

$$x' = x(1 - \sigma x - 0.5y), \quad y' = y(-0.75 + 0.25x),$$

where $\sigma > 0$. Observe that this system is a modification of the system (2) in Example 1.

a. Find all of the critical points. How does their location change as σ increases from zero? Observe that there is a critical point in the interior of the first quadrant only if $\sigma < 1/3$.

b. Determine the type and stability property of each critical point. Find the value $\sigma_1 < 1/3$ where the nature of the critical point in the interior of the first quadrant changes. Describe the change that takes place in this critical point as σ passes through σ_1.

G **c.** Draw a direction field and phase portrait for a value of σ between zero and σ_1; for a value of σ between σ_1 and $1/3$.

d. Describe the effect on the two populations as σ increases from zero to $1/3$.

12. Consider the system

$$dx/dt = x(a - \sigma x - \alpha y), \quad dy/dt = y(-c + \gamma x),$$

where a, σ, α, c, and γ are positive constants.

a. Find all critical points of the given system. How does their location change as σ increases from zero? Assume that $a/\sigma > c/\gamma$, that is, $\sigma < a\gamma/c$. Why is this assumption necessary?

b. Determine the nature and stability characteristics of each critical point.

c. Show that there is a value of σ between zero and $a\gamma/c$ where the critical point in the interior of the first quadrant changes from a spiral point to a node.

d. Describe the effect on the two populations as σ increases from zero to $a\gamma/c$.

13. In the Lotka–Volterra equations, the interaction between the two species is modeled by terms proportional to the product xy of the respective populations. If the prey population is much larger than the predator population, this may overstate the interaction; for example, a predator may hunt only when it is hungry and ignore the prey at other times. In this problem we consider an alternative model proposed by Rosenzweig and MacArthur.[10]

a. Consider the system

$$x' = x\left(1 - \frac{x}{5} - \frac{2y}{x+6}\right), \quad y' = y\left(-\frac{1}{4} + \frac{x}{x+6}\right).$$

Find all of the critical points of this system.

b. Determine the type and stability characteristics of each critical point.

G **c.** Draw a direction field and phase portrait for this system.

Harvesting in a Predator–Prey Relationship. In a predator–prey situation, it may happen that one or perhaps both species are valuable sources of food. Or, the prey species may be regarded as a pest, leading to efforts to reduce its numbers. In a constant-effort model of harvesting, we introduce a term $-E_1 x$ in the prey equation and a term $-E_2 y$ in the predator equation, where E_1 and E_2 are measures of the effort invested in harvesting the respective species. A constant-yield model of harvesting is obtained by including the term $-H_1$ in the prey equation and the term $-H_2$ in the predator equation. The constants E_1, E_2, H_1, and H_2 are always nonnegative. Problems 14 and 15 deal with constant-effort harvesting, and Problem 16 deals with constant-yield harvesting.

[10] See the book by Brauer and Castillo-Chávez for further details.

14. Applying a constant-effort model of harvesting to the Lotka–Volterra equations (1), we obtain the system

$$x' = x(a - \alpha y - E_1), \quad y' = y(-c + \gamma x - E_2).$$

When there is no harvesting, the equilibrium solution is $(c/\gamma, a/\alpha)$.

a. Before doing any mathematical analysis, think about the situation intuitively. How do you think the populations will change if the prey alone is harvested? if the predator alone is harvested? if both are harvested?

b. How does the equilibrium solution change if the prey is harvested, but not the predator ($E_1 > 0$, $E_2 = 0$)?

c. How does the equilibrium solution change if the predator is harvested, but not the prey ($E_1 = 0$, $E_2 > 0$)?

d. How does the equilibrium solution change if both are harvested ($E_1 > 0$, $E_2 > 0$)?

15. If we modify the Lotka–Volterra equations by including a self-limiting term $-\sigma x^2$ in the prey equation, and then assume constant-effort harvesting, we obtain the equations

$$x' = x(a - \sigma x - \alpha y - E_1), \quad y' = y(-c + \gamma x - E_2).$$

In the absence of harvesting, the equilibrium solution of interest is $x = c/\gamma$, $y = (a/\alpha) - (\sigma c)/(\alpha\gamma)$.

a. How does the equilibrium solution change if the prey is harvested ($E_1 > 0$), but not the predator ($E_2 = 0$)?

b. How does the equilibrium solution change if the predator is harvested ($E_2 > 0$), but not the prey ($E_1 = 0$)?

c. How does the equilibrium solution change if both predator and prey are harvested ($E_1 > 0$, $E_2 > 0$)?

16. In this problem we apply a constant-yield model of harvesting to the situation in Example 1. Consider the system

$$x' = x(1 - 0.5y) - H_1, \quad y' = y(-0.75 + 0.25x) - H_2,$$

where H_1 and H_2 are nonnegative constants. Recall that if $H_1 = H_2 = 0$, then $(3, 2)$ is an equilibrium solution for this system.

a. Before doing any mathematical analysis, think about the situation intuitively. How do you think the populations will change if the prey alone is harvested? if the predator alone is harvested? if both are harvested?

b. How does the equilibrium solution change if the prey is harvested ($H_1 > 0$), but not the predator ($H_2 = 0$)?

c. How does the equilibrium solution change if the predator is harvested ($H_2 > 0$), but not the prey ($H_1 = 0$)?

d. How does the equilibrium solution change if both predator and prey are harvested ($H_1 > 0$, $H_2 > 0$)?

9.6 Liapunov's Second Method

In Section 9.3 we showed how the stability of a critical point of a locally linear system can usually be determined from a study of the corresponding linear system. However, no conclusion can be drawn when the critical point is a center of the corresponding linear system. Examples of this situation are the undamped pendulum, equations (1) and (2) below, and the predator–prey problem discussed in Section 9.5. Also, for an asymptotically stable critical point, it may be important to investigate the basin of attraction—that is, the domain such that all solutions starting within that domain approach the critical point. The theory of locally linear systems does not help us to answer this question.

In this section we discuss another approach, known as **Liapunov's**[11] **second method** or **direct method**. The method is referred to as a direct method because no knowledge of the solution of the system of differential equations is required. Rather, conclusions about the stability or instability of a critical point are obtained by constructing a suitable auxiliary function. The technique is a very powerful one that provides a more global type of information—for example, an estimate of the extent of the basin of attraction of a critical point. Liapunov's second method can also be used to study systems of differential equations that are not locally linear; however, we will not discuss such problems.

The Pendulum Equations. Basically, Liapunov's second method is a generalization of two physical principles for conservative systems, namely, (i) a rest position is stable if the potential energy is a local minimum, otherwise it is unstable, and (ii) the total energy is a constant during any motion. To illustrate these concepts, again consider the undamped pendulum (a conservative mechanical system), which is governed by the equation

$$m\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + \frac{mg}{L}\sin\theta = 0. \tag{1}$$

[11] Alexander M. Liapunov (1857–1918), a student of Chebyshev at St. Petersburg, taught at the University of Kharkov from 1885 to 1901, when he became an academician in applied mathematics at the St. Petersburg Academy of Sciences. In 1917 he moved to Odessa because of his wife's frail health. His research in stability encompassed both theoretical analysis and applications to various physical problems. His second method formed part of his most influential work, *General Problem of Stability of Motion*, published in 1892.

The corresponding system of first-order equations is

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = -\frac{g}{L}\sin x, \tag{2}$$

where $x = \theta$ and $y = d\theta/dt$. If we omit an arbitrary constant, the potential energy U is the work done in lifting the pendulum above its lowest position, namely,

$$U(x, y) = mgL(1 - \cos x); \tag{3}$$

see Figure 9.2.2. The critical points of the system (2) are $(x, y) = (\pm n\pi, 0)$, for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, corresponding to $\theta = \pm n\pi$, $d\theta/dt = 0$. Physically, we expect the points $(x, y) = (0, 0), (\pm 2\pi, 0) \ldots$, corresponding to $\theta = 0, \pm 2\pi, \ldots$, to be stable, since for them the pendulum bob is vertical with the weight down. Further, we expect the points $(x, y) = (\pm\pi, 0), (\pm 3\pi, 0), \ldots$, corresponding to $\theta = \pm\pi, \pm 3\pi, \ldots$, to be unstable, since for them the pendulum bob is vertical with the weight up. This agrees with statement (i), for at the former points U is a minimum equal to zero, and at the latter points U is a maximum equal to $2mgL$.

Next consider the total energy V, which is the sum of the potential energy U and the kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}mL^2(d\theta/dt)^2$. In terms of x and y,

$$V(x, y) = U(x, y) + \frac{1}{2}mL^2y^2 = mgL(1 - \cos x) + \frac{1}{2}mL^2y^2. \tag{4}$$

On a trajectory corresponding to a solution $(x, y) = (x(t), y(t))$ of equations (2), V can be considered a function of t. The derivative of $V(x(t), y(t))$ with respect to t is called the rate of change of V along the trajectory. By the chain rule,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dV(x(t), y(t))}{dt} &= V_x(x(t), y(t))\,\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + V_y(x(t), y(t))\,\frac{dy(t)}{dt} \\ &= (mgL\sin x)\,\frac{dx}{dt} + mL^2y\,\frac{dy}{dt},\end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

where it is understood that x and y are actually functions of t: $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$. Finally, because (x, y) is a solution of system (2), we know $dx/dt = y$ and $dy/dt = -(g/L)\sin x$; substituting these in equation (5) for dx/dt and dy/dt, we find that $dV/dt = 0$. Hence V is a constant along any trajectory of the system (2), which is principle (ii).

It is important to note that at any point (x, y), the rate of change of V along the trajectory through that point was computed without actually solving the system (2). It is precisely this fact that enables us to use Liapunov's second method for systems whose solution we do not know, which is the main reason for its importance.

At the stable critical points, $(x, y) = (\pm 2n\pi, 0)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, the energy V is zero. If the initial state (x_1, y_1) of the pendulum is sufficiently near a stable critical point, then the energy $V(x_1, y_1)$ is small, and the motion (trajectory) associated with this energy stays close to the critical point. It can be shown that if $V(x_1, y_1)$ is sufficiently small, then the trajectory is closed and encloses the critical point. For example, suppose that (x_1, y_1) is near $(0, 0)$ and that $V(x_1, y_1)$ is very small. The equation of the trajectory with energy $V(x_1, y_1)$ is

$$V(x, y) = mgL(1 - \cos x) + \frac{1}{2}mL^2y^2 = V(x_1, y_1).$$

For x small, we have $1 - \cos x = 1 - (1 - x^2/2! + \cdots) \cong x^2/2$. Thus the equation of the trajectory is approximately

$$\frac{1}{2}mgLx^2 + \frac{1}{2}mL^2y^2 = V(x_1, y_1),$$

or

$$\frac{x^2}{2V\left(x_1, y_1\right)/(mgL)} + \frac{y^2}{2V\left(x_1, y_1\right)/\left(mL^2\right)} = 1.$$

This is an ellipse enclosing the critical point $(0, 0)$; the smaller $V(x_1, y_1)$ is, the shorter are the major and minor axes of the ellipse. Physically, the closed trajectory corresponds to a solution that is periodic in time—the motion is a small oscillation about the equilibrium point.

If damping is present, however, it is natural to expect that the amplitude of the motion decays in time and that the stable critical point (center) becomes an asymptotically stable critical point (spiral point). See the phase portrait for the damped pendulum in Figure 9.3.5. This can almost be argued from a consideration of $\frac{dV}{dt}$. For the damped pendulum, the total energy is still given by equation (4), but now, when $(x, y) = (x(t), y(t))$ is a solution of equations (13) of Section 9.2, $\frac{dx}{dt} = y$ and $\frac{dy}{dt} = -\frac{g}{L}\sin x - \frac{c}{mL}y$. Substituting these expressions for dx/dt and dy/dt in equation (5) gives $\frac{dV}{dt} = -cLy^2 \le 0$. Thus the energy is nonincreasing along any trajectory and, except for the trajectory approaching the origin along the line $y = 0$, the motion is such that the energy decreases. Hence each trajectory must approach a point of minimum energy—a stable equilibrium point. If $\frac{dV}{dt} < 0$ instead of $\frac{dV}{dt} \le 0$, it is reasonable to expect *all* trajectories that start sufficiently close to the origin, a stable equilibrium point, will approach the origin as t increases.

General Systems. To pursue these ideas further, consider the autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y), \tag{6}$$

and suppose that the point $(x, y) = (0, 0)$ is an asymptotically stable critical point. Then there exists some domain D containing $(0, 0)$ such that every trajectory that starts in D must approach the origin as $t \to \infty$. Suppose that there exists an "energy" function V such that $V \ge 0$ for (x, y) in D with $V = 0$ only at the origin. Since each trajectory in D approaches the origin as $t \to \infty$, then following any particular trajectory, V decreases to zero as t approaches infinity. The type of result we want to prove is essentially the converse: if, on every trajectory, V decreases to zero as t increases, then the trajectories must approach the origin as $t \to \infty$, and hence the origin is asymptotically stable. First, however, it is necessary to make several definitions.

Let V be defined on some domain D containing the origin. Then V is said to be **positive definite** on D if $V(0, 0) = 0$ and $V(x, y) > 0$ for all other points in D. Similarly, V is said to be **negative definite** on D if $V(0, 0) = 0$ and $V(x, y) < 0$ for all other points in D. If the inequalities $>$ and $<$ are replaced by $\ge$ and $\le$, then V is said to be **positive semidefinite** and **negative semidefinite**, respectively. We emphasize that when we speak of a positive definite (negative definite, ...) function on a domain D containing the origin, the function must be zero at the origin in addition to satisfying the proper inequality at all other points in D.

EXAMPLE 1

Verify that

$$V(x, y) = \sin\left(x^2 + y^2\right)$$

is positive definite on $x^2 + y^2 < \pi/2$.

Also, verify that

$$W(x, y) = (x + y)^2$$

is positive semidefinite for all (x, y).

Solution:

Since $V(0, 0) = 0$ and $V(x, y) > 0$ for $0 < x^2 + y^2 < \pi/2$, V is positive definite on $0 < x^2 + y^2 < \pi/2$.

Likewise, $W(0, 0) = 0$ and $W(x, y) \ge 0$ for all (x, y). But, the fact that $W(x, y) = 0$ along the line $y = -x$ means that W is only positive semidefinite.

We also want to consider the function

$$\dot{V}(x, y) = V_x(x, y)F(x, y) + V_y(x, y)G(x, y), \tag{7}$$

where F and G are the same functions as in equations (6). We choose this notation because $\dot{V}(x, y)$ can be identified as the rate of change of V *along the trajectory of the system* (6) that passes through the point (x, y). That is, if $(x, y) = (x(t), y(t))$ is a solution of the system (6), then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dV(x(t), y(t))}{dt} &= V_x(x(t), y(t))\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + V_y(x(t), y(t))\frac{dy(t)}{dt}\\ &= V_x(x, y)F(x, y) + V_y(x, y)G(x, y)\\ &= \dot{V}(x, y). \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

The function $\dot{V}$ is often referred to as the **derivative of** V **with respect to the system** (6).

We now state two Liapunov theorems, one dealing with stability, the other with instability.

Theorem 9.6.1 | Liapunov Stability Theorem

Suppose that the autonomous system (6) has an isolated critical point at the origin. If there exists a function V that is continuous and has continuous first partial derivatives, that is positive definite, and for which the function $\dot{V}$ given by equation (7) is negative definite on some domain D in the xy-plane containing $(0, 0)$, then the origin is an asymptotically stable critical point. If $\dot{V}$ is negative semidefinite, then the origin is a stable critical point.

Theorem 9.6.2 | Liapunov Instability Theorem

Let the origin be an isolated critical point of the autonomous system (6). Let V be a function that is continuous and has continuous first partial derivatives. Suppose that $V(0, 0) = 0$ and that in every neighborhood of the origin there is at least one point at which V is positive (negative). If there exists a domain D containing the origin such that the function $\dot{V}$ given by equation (7) is positive definite (negative definite) on D, then the origin is an unstable critical point.

The function V is called a **Liapunov function**. Before sketching geometric arguments for Theorems 9.6.1 and 9.6.2, we note that the difficulty in using these theorems is that they tell us nothing about how to construct a Liapunov function, assuming that one exists. In cases where the autonomous system (6) represents a physical problem, it is natural to consider first the actual total energy function of the system as a possible Liapunov function. However, Theorems 9.6.1 and 9.6.2 are applicable in cases where the concept of physical energy is not pertinent. In such cases a judicious trial–and–error approach may be necessary.

Now consider the second part of Theorem 9.6.1—that is, the case $\dot{V} \le 0$. Let $c \ge 0$ be a constant, and consider the curve in the xy-plane given by $V(x, y) = c$. For $c = 0$, the curve reduces to the single point $(x, y) = (0, 0)$. We assume that if $0 < c_1 < c_2$, then the curve $V(x, y) = c_1$ contains the origin and lies within the curve $V(x, y) = c_2$, as illustrated in Figure 9.6.1*a*. We show that a trajectory starting inside a closed curve $V(x, y) = c$ cannot cross to the outside. Thus, given a circle of radius ϵ about the origin, by taking c sufficiently small, we can ensure that every trajectory starting inside the closed curve $V(x, y) = c$ stays within the circle of radius ϵ; indeed, it stays within the closed curve $V(x, y) = c$ itself. Thus the origin is a stable critical point.

To show this, recall from calculus that the vector

$$\nabla V(x, y) = V_x(x, y)\mathbf{i} + V_y(x, y)\mathbf{j}, \tag{9}$$

known as the **gradient of** V, is normal to the level curve $V(x, y) = c$ and points in the direction of increasing V. In the present case, V increases outward from the origin, so ∇V points away from the origin, as indicated in Figure 9.6.1*b*. Next, consider a trajectory $(x, y) = (x(t), y(t))$ of the system (6), and recall that the vector $\mathbf{T}(t) = x'(t)\mathbf{i} + y'(t)\mathbf{j}$ is tangent to the trajectory at each point; see Figure 9.6.1*b*. Let $(x_1, y_1) = (x(t_1), y(t_1))$ be a point of intersection of the trajectory and a closed curve $V(x, y) = c$. At this point $x'(t_1) = F(x_1, y_1)$, $y'(t_1) = G(x_1, y_1)$, so from equation (7) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}(x_1, y_1) &= V_x(x_1, y_1)x'(t_1) + V_y(x_1, y_1)y'(t_1)\\ &= \big(V_x(x_1, y_1)\mathbf{i} + V_y(x_1, y_1)\mathbf{j}\big)\cdot\big(x'(t_1)\mathbf{i} + y'(t_1)\mathbf{j}\big)\\ &= \nabla V(x_1, y_1)\cdot\mathbf{T}(t_1).\end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

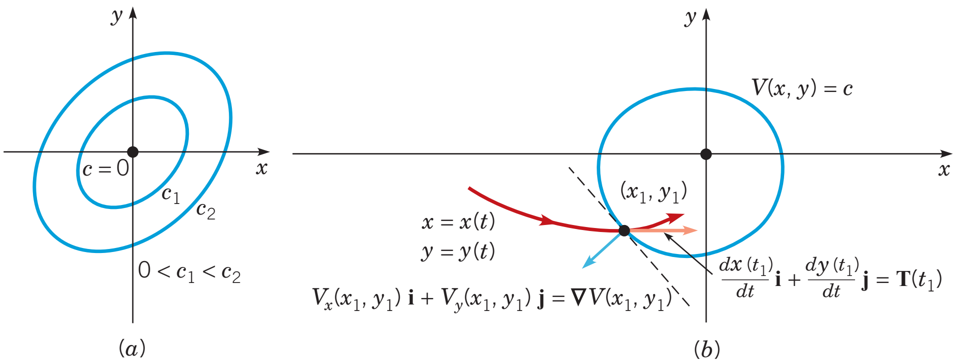


FIGURE 9.6.1 (a) The point $V(x, y) = 0$ and the level curves $V(x, y) = c_1$ and $V(x, y) = c_2$ with $0 < c_1 < c_2$. (b) Geometric interpretation of Liapunov's second method.

From this construction we recognize $\dot{V}(x_1, y_1)$ as the scalar product of the vector $\nabla V(x_1, y_1)$ and the vector $\mathbf{T}(t_1)$. Since $\dot{V}(x_1, y_1) \le 0$, it follows that the cosine of the angle between $\nabla V(x_1, y_1)$ and $\mathbf{T}(t_1)$ is also less than or equal to zero; hence the angle itself is in the closed interval $\left[\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right]$. Thus the direction of motion on the trajectory is inward with respect to $V(x_1, y_1) = c$ or, at worst, tangent to this curve. Trajectories starting inside a closed curve $V(x_1, y_1) = c$ (no matter how small c is) cannot escape, so the origin is a stable point. If $\dot{V}(x_1, y_1) < 0$, then the angle between $\nabla V(x_1, y_1)$ and $\mathbf{T}(t_1)$ is in the open interval $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$, and the trajectories passing through points on the curve are actually pointed inward. As a consequence, it can be shown that trajectories starting sufficiently close to the origin must approach the origin; hence the origin is asymptotically stable.

A geometric argument for Theorem 9.6.2 follows in a somewhat similar manner. Briefly, suppose that $\dot{V}$ is positive definite, and suppose that given any circle about the origin, there is an interior point (x_1, y_1) at which $V(x_1, y_1) > 0$. Consider a trajectory that starts at (x_1, y_1). It follows from equation (8) that along this trajectory, V must increase since $\dot{V}(x_1, y_1) > 0$; furthermore, since $V(x_1, y_1) > 0$, the trajectory cannot approach the origin because $V(0, 0) = 0$. This shows that the origin cannot be asymptotically stable. By further exploiting the fact that $\dot{V}(x, y) > 0$, it is possible to show that the origin is an unstable critical point; however, we will not pursue this argument.

EXAMPLE 2

Use Theorem 9.6.1 to show that $(x, y) = (0, 0)$ is a stable critical point for the undamped pendulum equations (2).

Solution:

Before we begin, observe that the stability of the origin cannot be determined by Theorem 9.3.2 because $(0, 0)$ is a center of the corresponding linear system. To apply the Liapunov Stability Theorem (Theorem 9.6.1), let V be the total energy given by equation (4):

$$V(x, y) = mgL(1 - \cos x) + \frac{1}{2}mL^2y^2. \tag{4}$$

If we take D to be the domain $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$, $-\infty < y < \infty$, then V is positive there except at the origin, where it is zero. Thus V is positive definite on D. Further, as we have already seen,

$$\dot{V} = (mgL \sin x)(y) + (mL^2 y)\left(-\frac{g}{L} \sin x\right) = 0$$

for all x and y. Thus $\dot{V}$ is negative semidefinite on D; and so, by the last statement in Theorem 9.6.1, the origin is a stable critical point for the undamped pendulum.

EXAMPLE 3

Use the Liapunov Instability Theorem (Theorem 9.6.2) to show that $(x, y) = (\pi, 0)$ is an unstable critical point for the undamped pendulum equations (2).

Solution:

For the critical point $(\pi, 0)$ the Liapunov function given by equation (4) is no longer suitable because Theorem 9.6.2 calls for a function V for which $\dot{V}$ is either positive or negative definite. To analyze the point $(\pi, 0)$, it is convenient to move this point to the origin by the change of variables $x = \pi + u$, $y = v$. Then the differential equations (2) become

$$\frac{du}{dt} = v, \quad \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{g}{L} \sin u, \tag{11}$$

and the critical point is $(0, 0)$ in the uv-plane. Consider the function

$$V(u, v) = v \sin u \tag{12}$$

and let D be the domain $-\pi/4 < u < \pi/4$, $-\infty < v < \infty$. Then

$$\dot{V} = (v \cos u)(v) + (\sin u)\left(\frac{g}{L} \sin u\right) = v^2 \cos u + \frac{g}{L} \sin^2 u \tag{13}$$

is positive definite in D. The only remaining question is whether there are points in every neighborhood of the origin where V itself is positive. From equation (12) we see that $V(u, v) > 0$ in the first quadrant (where both $\sin u$ and v are positive) and in the third quadrant (where both are negative). Thus the conditions of Theorem 9.6.2 are satisfied, and the point $(0, 0)$ in the uv-plane, corresponding to the point $(\pi, 0)$ in the xy-plane, is unstable.

The damped pendulum equations are discussed in Problem 6.

From a practical point of view, we are often interested in the basin of attraction. The following theorem provides some information on this subject.

Theorem 9.6.3

Let the origin be an isolated critical point of the autonomous system (6). Let the function V be continuous and have continuous first partial derivatives. If there is a bounded domain D_K containing the origin where $V(x, y) < K$ for some positive K, V is positive definite, and $\dot{V}$ is negative definite, then every solution of equations (6) that starts at a point in D_K approaches the origin as t approaches infinity.

In other words, Theorem 9.6.3 says that if $(x, y) = (x(t), y(t))$ is the solution of equations (6) for initial data lying in D_K, then (x, y) approaches the critical point (0, 0) as $t \to \infty$. Thus D_K gives a region of asymptotic stability; of course, it may not be the entire basin of attraction. This theorem is proved by showing that (i) there are no periodic solutions of the system (6) in D_K, and (ii) there are no other critical points in D_K. It then follows that trajectories starting in D_K cannot escape and therefore must tend to the origin as t tends to infinity.

Theorems 9.6.1 and 9.6.2 give sufficient conditions for stability and instability, respectively, but these conditions are not necessary. Also, our failure to find a suitable Liapunov function does not mean that there is no such function. Unfortunately, there are no general methods for the construction of Liapunov functions; however, there has been extensive work on the construction of Liapunov functions for special classes of equations. An elementary algebraic result that is often useful in constructing positive definite or negative definite functions is stated without proof in the following theorem.

Theorem 9.6.4

The function

$$V(x, y) = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 \tag{14}$$

is positive definite if, and only if,

$$a > 0 \text{ and } 4ac - b^2 > 0 \tag{15}$$

and is negative definite if, and only if,

$$a < 0 \text{ and } 4ac - b^2 > 0. \tag{16}$$

The use of Theorem 9.6.4 is illustrated in the following example.

EXAMPLE 4

Show that the critical point $(x, y) = (0, 0)$ of the autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -x - xy^2, \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = -y - x^2 y \tag{17}$$

is asymptotically stable.

Solution:

The only equilibrium solution of system (17) is $(x, y) = (0, 0)$. We try to construct a Liapunov function of the form (14). Then $V_x(x, y) = 2ax + by$, $V_y(x, y) = bx + 2cy$, so

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}(x, y) &= (2ax + by)\left(-x - xy^2\right) + (bx + 2cy)\left(-y - x^2 y\right)\\ &= -\left(2a\left(x^2 + x^2y^2\right) + b\left(2xy + xy^3 + x^3y\right) + 2c\left(y^2 + x^2y^2\right)\right).\end{aligned}$$

If we choose $b = 0$, and a and c to be any positive numbers, then $\dot{V}$ is negative definite and V is positive definite by Theorem 9.6.4. Thus, by Theorem 9.6.1, the origin is an asymptotically stable critical point.

EXAMPLE 5

Consider the system

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dx}{dt} &= x(1 - x - y),\\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= \frac{y}{4}(3 - 4y - 2x).\end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

In Example 1 of Section 9.4, we found that this system models a certain pair of competing species and that the critical point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ is asymptotically stable. Confirm this conclusion by finding a suitable Liapunov function.

Solution:

It is helpful to transform the point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ to the origin. To accomplish this, let

$$x = \frac{1}{2} + u, \quad y = \frac{1}{2} + v. \tag{19}$$

Then, substituting for x and y in equations (18), we obtain the new system

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{du}{dt} &= -\frac{1}{2}u - \frac{1}{2}v - u^2 - uv,\\ \frac{dv}{dt} &= -\frac{1}{4}u - \frac{1}{2}v - \frac{1}{2}uv - v^2.\end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

To keep the calculations relatively simple, consider the function $V(u, v) = u^2 + v^2$ as a possible Liapunov function. This function is clearly positive definite, so we need only to determine whether there is a region containing the origin in the uv-plane where the derivative $\dot{V}$ with respect to the system (20) is negative definite. We compute $\dot{V}(u, v)$ and find that

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}(u, v) &= V_u\frac{du}{dt} + V_v\frac{dv}{dt}\\ &= 2u\left(-\frac{1}{2}u - \frac{1}{2}v - u^2 - uv\right) + 2v\left(-\frac{1}{4}u - \frac{1}{2}v - \frac{1}{2}uv - v^2\right),\end{aligned}$$

or

$$\dot{V}(u, v) = -\left(\left[u^2 + \frac{3}{2}uv + v^2\right] + \left(2u^3 + 2u^2v + uv^2 + 2v^3\right)\right), \tag{21}$$

where we have collected together the quadratic and cubic terms. We want to show that the expression in square brackets in equation (21) is positive definite, at least for u and v sufficiently small. By Theorem 9.6.4 with $a = c = 1$ and $b = 1.5$, the quantity $4ac - b^2$ is positive so that $u^2 + 1.5uv + v^2$ is positive definite. On the other hand, the cubic terms in equation (21) may be of either sign. Thus we must show that, in some neighborhood of $(u, v) = (0, 0)$, the cubic terms are smaller in magnitude than the quadratic terms. Toward this end, we will find it helpful to observe that the quadratic terms can be written as

$$u^2 + \frac{3}{2}uv + v^2 = \frac{1}{4}\left(u^2 + v^2\right) + \frac{3}{4}(u + v)^2. \tag{22}$$

Thus, our goal is to show that, for u and v sufficiently small,

$$\left|2u^3 + 2u^2v + uv^2 + 2v^3\right| < \frac{1}{4}\left(u^2 + v^2\right) + \frac{3}{4}(u + v)^2. \tag{23}$$

To estimate the left-hand side of equation (23), we introduce polar coordinates $u = r\cos\theta$, $v = r\sin\theta$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\left|2u^3 + 2u^2v + uv^2 + 2v^3\right| &= r^3\left|2\cos^3\theta + 2\cos^2\theta\sin\theta + \cos\theta\sin^2\theta + 2\sin^3\theta\right|\\ &\le r^3\left(2\left|\cos^3\theta\right| + 2\cos^2\theta\left|\sin\theta\right| + \left|\cos\theta\right|\sin^2\theta + 2\left|\sin^3\theta\right|\right)\\ &\le 7r^3,\end{aligned}$$

since both $|\sin\theta|$ and $|\cos\theta|$ are bounded above by 1. To satisfy equation (23), it is now certainly sufficient to satisfy the more stringent requirement

$$7r^3 < \frac{1}{4}(u^2 + v^2) = \frac{1}{4}r^2,$$

which yields $r < \frac{1}{28}$. Thus, at least in this disk, the hypotheses of Theorem 9.6.1 are satisfied, so the origin is an asymptotically stable critical point of the system (20). The same is then true of the critical point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ of the original system (18).

If we refer to Theorem 9.6.3, the preceding argument also shows that the disk with center $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ and radius $\frac{1}{28}$ is a region of asymptotic stability for the system (18). This is a severe underestimate of the full basin of attraction, as the discussion in Section 9.4 shows. To obtain a better estimate of the actual basin of attraction from Theorem 9.6.3, we would have to estimate the terms in equation (23) more accurately, or use a better (and presumably more complicated) Liapunov function, or both.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 3, construct a suitable Liapunov function of the form $ax^2 + cy^2$, where a and c are to be determined. Then show that the critical point at the origin is of the indicated type.

1. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = -x^3 + xy^2$, $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dt} = -2x^2y - y^3$; asymptotically stable

2. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = -x^3 + 2y^3$, $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dt} = -2xy^2$; stable (at least)

3. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = x^3 - y^3$, $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dt} = 2xy^2 + 4x^2y + 2y^3$; unstable

4. Consider the system of equations

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y - xf(x, y), \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -x - yf(x, y),$$

where f is continuous and has continuous first partial derivatives. Show that if $f(x, y) > 0$ in some neighborhood of the origin, then the origin is an asymptotically stable critical point, and that if $f(x, y) < 0$ in some neighborhood of the origin, then the origin is an unstable critical point. *Hint:* Construct a Liapunov function of the form $c(x^2 + y^2)$.

5. A generalization of the undamped pendulum equation is

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} + g(u) = 0, \tag{24}$$

where $g(0) = 0$, $g(u) > 0$ for $0 < u < k$, and $g(u) < 0$ for $-k < u < 0$; that is, $ug(u) > 0$ for $u \neq 0$, $-k < u < k$. Notice that $g(u) = \sin u$ has this property on $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$.

a. Letting $x = u$, $y = du/dt$, write equation (24) as a system of two equations, and show that $x = 0$, $y = 0$ is a critical point.

b. Show that

$$V(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}y^2 + \int_0^x g(s)\,ds, \qquad -k < x < k \tag{25}$$

is positive definite, and use this result to show that the critical point $(0, 0)$ is stable. Note that the Liapunov function V given by equation (25) corresponds to the energy function $V(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}y^2 + (1 - \cos x)$ for the case $g(u) = \sin u$.

6. By introducing suitable dimensionless variables, we can write the system of nonlinear equations for the damped pendulum (Equations (8) of Section 9.3) as

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -y - \sin x.$$

a. Show that the origin is a critical point.

b. Show that although $V(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ is positive definite, $\dot{V}(x, y)$ takes on both positive and negative values in any domain containing the origin, so V is not a Liapunov function. *Hint:* $x - \sin x > 0$ for $x > 0$, and $x - \sin x < 0$ for $x < 0$. Consider these cases with y positive but y so small that y^2 can be ignored compared to y.

c. Using the energy function $V(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}y^2 + (1 - \cos x)$ mentioned in Problem 5b, show that the origin is a stable critical point. Since there is damping in the system, we can expect that the origin is asymptotically stable. However, it is not possible to draw this conclusion using this Liapunov function.

d. To show asymptotic stability, it is necessary to construct a better Liapunov function than the one used in part c. Show that $V(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}(x + y)^2 + x^2 + \frac{1}{2}y^2$ is such a Liapunov function, and conclude that the origin is an asymptotically stable critical point. *Hint:* From Taylor's formula with a remainder, it follows that $\sin x = x - \alpha x^3/3!$, where α depends on x but $0 < \alpha < 1$ for $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$. Then, letting $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$, show that $\dot{V}(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta) = -r^2(1 + h(r, \theta))$, where $|h(r, \theta)| < 1$ if r is sufficiently small.

7. The Liénard equation (Problem 27 of Section 9.3) is

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} + c(u)\frac{du}{dt} + g(u) = 0,$$

where g satisfies the conditions of Problem 5 and $c(u) \geq 0$. Show that the point $u = 0$, $du/dt = 0$ is a stable critical point.

8. a. A special case of the Liénard equation of Problem 7 is

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} + \frac{du}{dt} + g(u) = 0,$$

where g satisfies the conditions of Problem 5. Letting $x = u$, $y = du/dt$, show that the origin is a critical point of the resulting system. This equation can be interpreted as describing the motion of a spring–mass system with damping proportional to the velocity and a nonlinear restoring force. Using the Liapunov function of Problem 5, show that the origin is a stable critical point, but note that even with damping, we cannot conclude asymptotic stability using this Liapunov function.

b. Asymptotic stability of the critical point $(0, 0)$ can be shown by constructing a better Liapunov function, as was done in part d of Problem 6. However, the analysis for a general function g is somewhat sophisticated, and we mention only that an appropriate form for V is

$$V(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}y^2 + Ayg(x) + \int_0^x g(s)\,ds,$$

where A is a positive constant to be chosen so that V is positive definite and $\dot{V}$ is negative definite. For the pendulum problem $g(x) = \sin x$, use V as given by the preceding equation with $A = \frac{1}{2}$ to show that the origin is asymptotically stable.

Hint: Use $\sin x = x - \alpha x^3/3!$ and $\cos x = 1 - \beta x^2/2!$, where α and β depend on x, and $0 < \alpha < 1$ and $0 < \beta < 1$ for $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$; let $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$, and show that $\dot{V}(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta) = -\frac{1}{2}r^2\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta + h(r,\theta)\right)$, where $|h(r,\theta)| < \frac{1}{2}$ if r is sufficiently small. To show that V is positive definite, use $\cos x = 1 - x^2/2 + \gamma x^4/4!$, where γ depends on x, and $0 < \gamma < 1$ for $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$.

In Problems 9 and 10, we will prove part of Theorem 9.3.2: If the critical point $(0,0)$ of the locally linear system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = a_{11}x + a_{12}y + F_1(x,y), \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = a_{21}x + a_{22}y + G_1(x,y) \quad (26)$$

is an asymptotically stable critical point of the corresponding linear system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = a_{11}x + a_{12}y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = a_{21}x + a_{22}y, \tag{27}$$

then it is an asymptotically stable critical point of the locally linear system (26). Problem 11 deals with the corresponding result for instability.

9. Consider the linear system (27).

a. Since $(0,0)$ is an asymptotically stable critical point, show that $a_{11} + a_{22} < 0$ and $a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21} > 0$. (See Problem 18 of Section 9.1.)

b. Construct a Liapunov function $V(x,y) = Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2$ such that V is positive definite and $\dot{V}$ is negative definite. One way to ensure that $\dot{V}$ is negative definite is to choose A, B, and C so that $\dot{V}(x,y) = -x^2 - y^2$. Show that this leads to the result

$$A = -\frac{a_{21}^2 + a_{22}^2 + (a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21})}{2\Delta}, \qquad B = \frac{a_{12}a_{22} + a_{11}a_{21}}{\Delta},$$

$$C = -\frac{a_{11}^2 + a_{12}^2 + (a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21})}{2\Delta},$$

where $\Delta = (a_{11} + a_{22})(a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21})$.

c. Using the result of part a, show that $A > 0$, and then show (several steps of algebra are required) that

$$4AC - B^2 = \frac{\left(a_{11}^2 + a_{12}^2 + a_{21}^2 + a_{22}^2\right)(a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}) + 2(a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21})^2}{\Delta^2} > 0.$$

Thus, by Theorem 9.6.4, V is positive definite.

10. In this problem we show that the Liapunov function constructed in the preceding problem is also a Liapunov function for the locally linear system (26). We must show that there is some region containing the origin for which $\dot{V}$ is negative definite.

a. Show that

$$\dot{V}(x,y) = -\left(x^2 + y^2\right) + (2Ax + By)F_1(x,y) + (Bx + 2Cy)G_1(x,y).$$

b. Recall that $F_1(x,y)/r \to 0$ and $G_1(x,y)/r \to 0$ as $r = (x^2 + y^2)^{1/2} \to 0$. This means that, given any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a circle $r = R$ about the origin such that for $0 < r < R$, $|F_1(x,y)| < \epsilon r$ and $|G_1(x,y)| < \epsilon r$. Letting M be the maximum of $|2A|$, $|B|$, and $|2C|$, show by introducing polar coordinates that R can be chosen so that $\dot{V}(x,y) < 0$ for $r < R$. *Hint:* Choose ϵ sufficiently small in terms of M.

11. In this problem we prove a part of Theorem 9.3.2 related to instability.

a. Show that if $a_{11} + a_{22} > 0$ and $a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21} > 0$, then the critical point $(0,0)$ of the linear system (27) is unstable.

b. The same result holds for the locally linear system (26). As in Problems 9 and 10, construct a positive definite function V such that $\dot{V}(x,y) = x^2 + y^2$ and hence is positive definite, and then invoke Theorem 9.6.2.

9.7 Periodic Solutions and Limit Cycles

In this section we discuss further the possible existence of periodic solutions of two-dimensional autonomous systems

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}). \tag{1}$$

Such solutions satisfy the relation

$$\mathbf{x}(t + T) = \mathbf{x}(t) \tag{2}$$

for all t and for some positive constant T called the period. The corresponding trajectories are *closed curves* in the phase plane. Periodic solutions often play an important role in physical problems because they represent phenomena that occur repeatedly. In many situations a periodic solution represents a “final state” that is approached by all “neighboring” solutions as the transients due to the initial conditions die out.

A special case of a periodic solution is a constant solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^0$, which corresponds to a critical point of the autonomous system. Such a solution is clearly periodic with any period. In this section, when we speak of a periodic solution, we mean a nonconstant periodic solution. In this case the period T is usually chosen as the smallest positive number for which equation (2) is valid.

Recall that the solutions of the linear autonomous system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \tag{3}$$

are periodic if and only if the eigenvalues of **A** are pure imaginary. In this case the critical point at the origin is a center, as discussed in Section 9.1. We emphasize that if the eigenvalues of **A** are pure imaginary, then every solution of the linear system (3) is periodic, while if the eigenvalues are not pure imaginary, then there are no (nonconstant) periodic solutions. The predator–prey equations discussed in Section 9.5, although nonlinear, behave similarly: all solutions in the first quadrant are periodic. The following example illustrates a different way in which periodic solutions of nonlinear autonomous systems can occur.

EXAMPLE 1

Discuss the qualitative properties of the solutions of the system

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} x + y - x\left(x^2 + y^2\right) \\ -x + y - y\left(x^2 + y^2\right) \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4}$$

Solution:

It is not difficult to show that $(0, 0)$ is the only critical point of the system (4) and also that the system is locally linear in the neighborhood of the origin. The corresponding linear system

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \tag{5}$$

has eigenvalues $1 \pm i$. Therefore, the origin is an unstable spiral point for both the linear system (5) and the nonlinear system (4). Thus any solution that starts near the origin in the phase plane will spiral away from the origin.

Since there are no other critical points, we might think that all solutions of equations (4) correspond to trajectories that spiral out to infinity. However, we now show that this is incorrect, because far away from the origin the trajectories are directed inward.

The presence of $x^2 + y^2$ in system (4) suggests the introduction of polar coordinates r and θ, where

$$x = r\cos\theta, \quad y = r\sin\theta, \tag{6}$$

and $r \geq 0$. Differentiation of both sides of $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$, with respect to t, gives

$$2r\frac{dr}{dt} = 2x\frac{dx}{dt} + 2y\frac{dy}{dt}.$$

If we multiply the first of equations (4) by x, multiply the second by y, and add (and divide by 2), we obtain

$$x\frac{dx}{dt} + y\frac{dy}{dt} = \left(x^2 + y^2\right) - \left(x^2 + y^2\right)^2. \tag{7}$$

In terms of polar coordinates, equation (7) can be written as

$$r\frac{dr}{dt} = r^2\left(1 - r^2\right). \tag{8}$$

This equation is similar to the equations discussed in Section 2.5. The critical points (for $r \geq 0$) are the origin and the point $r = 1$, which corresponds to the unit circle in the phase plane. From equation (8) it follows that $\frac{dr}{dt} > 0$ if $r < 1$ and $\frac{dr}{dt} < 0$ if $r > 1$. Thus, inside the unit circle the trajectories are directed outward, while outside the unit circle they are directed inward. Apparently, the circle $r = 1$ is a limiting trajectory for this system.

To complete the conversion of system (4) to polar coordinates, we need an equation involving $\frac{d\theta}{dt}$. To find this equation, notice that upon calculating $\frac{dx}{dt}$ and $\frac{dy}{dt}$ from equations (6), we can see that

$$y\frac{dx}{dt} - x\frac{dy}{dt} = -r^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}. \tag{9}$$

Thus, when the two equations in system (4) are used to replace $\frac{dx}{dt}$ and $\frac{dy}{dt}$ in equation (9), we arrive at

$$-r^2\frac{d\theta}{dt} = y\frac{dx}{dt} - x\frac{dy}{dt} = x^2 + y^2 = r^2.$$

Cancelling the common factor of r^2, this reduces to

$$\frac{d\theta}{dt} = -1. \tag{10}$$

The system of equations (8), (10) for r and θ is equivalent to the original system (4). One solution of the system (8), (10) is

$$r = 1, \quad \theta = -t + t_0, \tag{11}$$

where t_0 is an arbitrary constant. As t increases, a point satisfying equations (11) moves clockwise around the unit circle. Thus the autonomous system (4) has a periodic solution. Other solutions can be obtained by solving equation (8) by separation of variables; if $r \neq 0$ and $r \neq 1$, then

$$\frac{dr}{r(1-r^2)} = dt. \tag{12}$$

Equation (12) can be solved by using partial fractions to rewrite the left-hand side and then integrating. By performing these calculations, we find that the solution of equations (10) and (12) is

$$r = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + c_0 e^{-2t}}}, \quad \theta = -t + t_0, \tag{13}$$

where c_0 and t_0 are arbitrary constants. The solution (13) also contains the solution (11), which is obtained by setting $c_0 = 0$ in the first of equations (13).

The solution satisfying the initial conditions $r = \rho$, $\theta = \alpha$ at $t = 0$ is given by

$$r = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left((1/\rho^2) - 1\right)e^{-2t}}}, \quad \theta = -(t - \alpha). \tag{14}$$

If $\rho < 1$, then $r \to 1$ from the inside as $t \to \infty$; if $\rho > 1$, then $r \to 1$ from the outside as $t \to \infty$. Thus in all cases, the trajectories spiral toward the red circle $r = 1$ as $t \to \infty$. Several trajectories are shown in Figure 9.7.1.

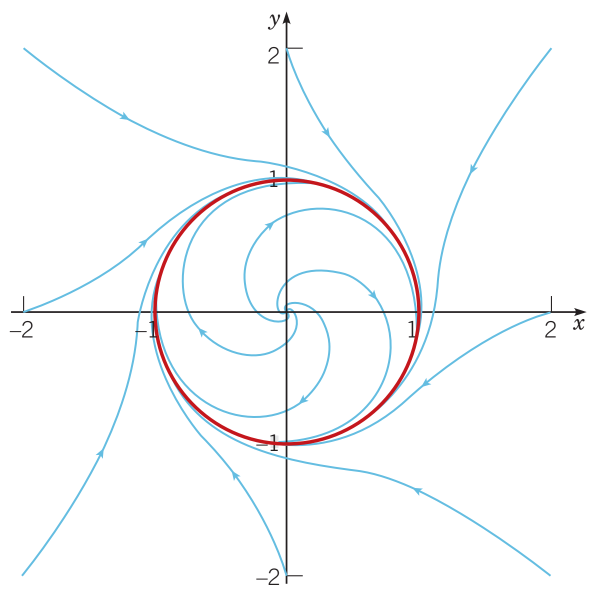


FIGURE 9.7.1 All trajectories of the system (4) spiral toward the red circle $r = 1$ as $t \to \infty$.

In this example, the circle $r = 1$ not only corresponds to periodic solutions of the system (4), but it also attracts other nonclosed trajectories that spiral toward it as $t \to \infty$. In general, a closed trajectory in the phase plane such that other nonclosed trajectories spiral toward it, from either the inside or the outside, as $t \to \infty$, is called a **limit cycle**. Thus the circle $r = 1$ is a limit cycle for the system (4). If all trajectories that start near a closed trajectory (both inside and outside) spiral toward the closed trajectory as $t \to \infty$, then the limit cycle is **asymptotically stable**.

Since the limiting trajectory is itself a periodic orbit rather than an equilibrium point, this type of stability is often called **orbital stability**. If the trajectories on one side spiral toward the closed trajectory, while those on the other side spiral away as $t \to \infty$, then the limit cycle is said to be **semistable**. If the trajectories on both sides of the closed trajectory spiral away as $t \to \infty$, then the closed trajectory is **unstable**. It is also possible to have closed trajectories that other trajectories neither approach nor depart from—for example, the periodic solutions of the predator–prey equations in Section 9.5. In this case the closed trajectory is **stable**.

In Example 1 the existence of an asymptotically stable limit cycle was established by solving the equations explicitly. Unfortunately, this is usually not possible, so it is worthwhile to know general theorems concerning the existence or nonexistence of limit cycles of nonlinear autonomous systems. In discussing these theorems, it is convenient to rewrite the system (1) in the scalar form

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y), \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y). \tag{15}$$

Theorem 9.7.1

Let the functions F and G have continuous first partial derivatives in a domain D of the xy-plane. A closed trajectory of the system (15) must necessarily enclose at least one critical (equilibrium) point. If it encloses only one critical point, the critical point cannot be a saddle point.

Although we omit the proof of this theorem, it is easy to show examples of it. One is given by Example 1 and Figure 9.7.1, in which the closed trajectory encloses the critical point $(0, 0)$, a spiral point. Another example is the system of predator-prey equations in Section 9.5; see Figure 9.5.2. Each closed trajectory surrounds the critical point $(3, 2)$; in this case the critical point is a center.

Theorem 9.7.1 is also useful in a negative sense. If a given region contains no critical points, then there can be no closed trajectory lying entirely in the region. The same conclusion is true if the region contains only one critical point, and this point is a saddle point. For instance, in Example 2 of Section 9.4, which deals with two competing species, the only critical point in the interior of the first quadrant is the saddle point $(0.5, 0.5)$. Therefore, using the contrapositive of Theorem 9.7.1, this system has no closed trajectory lying in the first quadrant.

A second result about the nonexistence of closed trajectories is given in the following theorem.

Theorem 9.7.2

Let the functions F and G have continuous first partial derivatives in a simply connected domain D of the xy-plane. If $F_x + G_y$ has the same sign throughout D, then there is no closed trajectory of the system (15) lying entirely in D.

A **simply connected** two-dimensional domain is one with no holes. Theorem 9.7.2 is a straightforward consequence of Green's theorem in the plane; see Problem 13. The quantity $F_x + G_y$ that appears in Theorem 9.7.3 can be recognized as the divergence of the vector field $F\mathbf{i} + G\mathbf{j}$. Note that if $F_x + G_y$ changes sign in the domain, then no conclusion can be drawn; there may or may not be closed trajectories in D.

To illustrate Theorem 9.7.2, consider the system (4). A routine calculation shows that

$$F_x(x, y) + G_y(x, y) = 2 - 4\left(x^2 + y^2\right) = 2\left(1 - 2r^2\right), \tag{16}$$

where, as usual, $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$. Hence $F_x + G_y$ is positive for $0 \le r < 1/\sqrt{2}$, so there is no closed trajectory in this circular disk. Of course, we showed in Example 1 that there is no closed trajectory in the larger region $r < 1$. This illustrates that the information given by Theorem 9.7.2 may not be the best possible result. Again referring to equation (16), note that $F_x + G_y < 0$ for $r > 1/\sqrt{2}$. However, the theorem is not applicable in this case because this annular region is not simply connected. Indeed, as shown in Example 1, the unit circle is a limit cycle for system (4).

The following theorem gives conditions that guarantee the existence of a closed trajectory.

Theorem 9.7.3 | Poincaré–Bendixson[12] Theorem

Let the functions F and G have continuous first partial derivatives in a domain D of the xy-plane. Let D_1 be a bounded subdomain in D, and let R be the region that consists of D_1 plus its boundary (all points of R are in D). Suppose that R contains no critical point of the system (15). If there is a solution of the system (15) that exists and stays in R for all $t \geq t_0$ (for some constant t_0), then either the solution is a periodic solution (closed trajectory), or the solution spirals toward a closed trajectory as $t \to \infty$. In either case, the system (15) has a periodic solution in R.

Note that if R does contain a closed trajectory, then necessarily, by Theorem 9.7.1, this trajectory must enclose a critical point. However, this critical point cannot be in R. Thus R cannot be simply connected; it must have a hole.

As an application of the Poincaré–Bendixson theorem, consider again the system (4). Since the origin is a critical point, it must be excluded. For instance, we can consider the region R defined by $0.5 \leq r \leq 2$. Next, we must show that there is a solution whose trajectory stays in R for all t greater than or equal to some t_0. This follows immediately from equation (8). For $r = 0.5$, $dr/dt > 0$, so r increases, while for $r = 2$, $dr/dt < 0$, so r decreases. Thus any trajectory that crosses the boundary of R is entering R. Consequently, any solution of equations (4) that starts in R at $t = t_0$ cannot leave but must stay in R for $t > t_0$. Of course, other numbers could be used instead of 0.5 and 2; all that is important is that $r = 1$ is included.

One should not infer from this discussion of the preceding theorems that it is easy to determine whether a given nonlinear autonomous system has periodic solutions; often it is not a simple matter at all. Theorems 9.7.1 and 9.7.2 are frequently inconclusive, and for Theorem 9.7.3 it is often difficult to determine a region R and a solution that always remains within it.

We close this section with another example of a nonlinear system that has a limit cycle.

EXAMPLE 2

The **van der Pol**[13] **equation**

$$u'' - \mu(1 - u^2)u' + u = 0, \tag{17}$$

where μ is a nonnegative constant, describes the current u in a triode oscillator. Discuss the solutions of this equation.

Solution:

If $\mu = 0$, equation (17) reduces to $u'' + u = 0$, whose solutions are sine or cosine waves of period 2π. For $\mu > 0$, the second term on the left-hand side of equation (17) must also be considered. This is the resistance term, proportional to u', with a coefficient $-\mu(1 - u^2)$ that depends on u. For large u, this term is positive and acts as usual to reduce the amplitude of the response. However, for small u, the resistance term is negative and so causes the response to grow. This suggests that perhaps there is a solution of intermediate size that other solutions approach as t increases.

To analyze equation (17) more carefully, we write it as a system of two equations by introducing the variables $x = u$ and $y = u'$. Then it follows that

$$x' = y \quad \text{and} \quad y' = -x + \mu(1 - x^2)y. \tag{18}$$

[12] Ivar Otto Bendixson (1861–1935), a Swedish mathematician, received his doctorate from Uppsala University and was professor and for many years rector of Stockholm University. This theorem improved on an earlier result of Poincaré and was published in a paper by Bendixson in *Acta Mathematica* in 1901.

[13] Balthasar van der Pol (1889–1959) was a Dutch physicist and electrical engineer who worked at the Philips Research Laboratory in Eindhoven. He was a pioneer in the experimental study of nonlinear phenomena and investigated the equation that bears his name in a paper published in 1926.

The only critical point of the system (18) is the origin. Near the origin the corresponding linear system of differential equations is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & \mu \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}, \tag{19}$$

whose eigenvalues are $\frac{1}{2}\left(\mu \pm \sqrt{\mu^2 - 4}\right)$. Thus the origin is an unstable spiral point for $0 < \mu < 2$ and an unstable node for $\mu \geq 2$. In all cases, a solution that starts near the origin grows as t increases.

With regard to periodic solutions, Theorems 9.7.1 and 9.7.2 provide only partial information. From Theorem 9.7.1 we conclude that if there are closed trajectories, they must enclose the origin. Next, with $F(x, y) = y$ and $G(x, y) = -x + \mu\left(1 - x^2\right)y$, we calculate

$$F_x(x, y) + G_y(x, y) = \mu(1 - x^2). \tag{20}$$

Then, because $F_x + G_y > 0$ when $|x| < 1$, it follows from Theorem 9.7.2 that closed trajectories, if there are any, are not contained in the vertical strip $|x| < 1$.

The application of the Poincaré–Bendixson theorem to this problem is not nearly as simple as for Example 1. If we introduce polar coordinates, we find that the equation for the radial variable r is (see Problem 12)

$$r' = \mu(1 - r^2 \cos^2\theta) r \sin^2\theta. \tag{21}$$

As in Example 1, consider an annular region R given by $r_1 \leq r \leq r_2$, where r_1 is small and r_2 is large. When $r = r_1$, the linear term on the right-hand side of equation (21) dominates, and $r' > 0$ except on the x-axis, where $\sin\theta = 0$ and consequently $r' = 0$ also. Thus trajectories are entering R at every point on the circle $r = r_1$, except possibly for those on the x-axis, where the trajectories are tangent to the circle. When $r = r_2$, the cubic term on the right-hand side of equation (21) is the dominant one. Thus $r' < 0$, except for points on the x-axis where $r' = 0$ and for points near the y-axis where $r^2\cos^2\theta < 1$ and the linear term makes $r' > 0$. Thus, no matter how large a circle is chosen, there will be points on it (namely, the points on or near the y-axis) where trajectories are leaving R. Therefore, the Poincaré–Bendixson theorem is not applicable unless we consider more complicated regions.

It is possible to show, by a more intricate analysis, that the van der Pol equation does have a unique limit cycle. However, we will not follow this line of argument further. We turn instead to a different approach in which we plot numerically-computed approximations to solutions. Experimental observations indicate that the van der Pol equation has an asymptotically stable periodic solution whose period and amplitude depend on the parameter μ. By looking at graphs of trajectories in the phase plane and of u versus t, we can gain some understanding of this periodic behavior.

Figure 9.7.2 shows two trajectories of the van der Pol equation in the phase plane for $\mu = 0.2$. The trajectory passing through $(0, 1/3)$ spirals outward in the clockwise direction; this is consistent with the behavior of the linear approximation near the origin. The other trajectory passes through $(-3, 2)$ and spirals inward, again in the clockwise direction. Both trajectories approach a closed curve that corresponds to a stable periodic solution. In Figure 9.7.3 we show the plots of u versus t for the solutions corresponding to the trajectories in

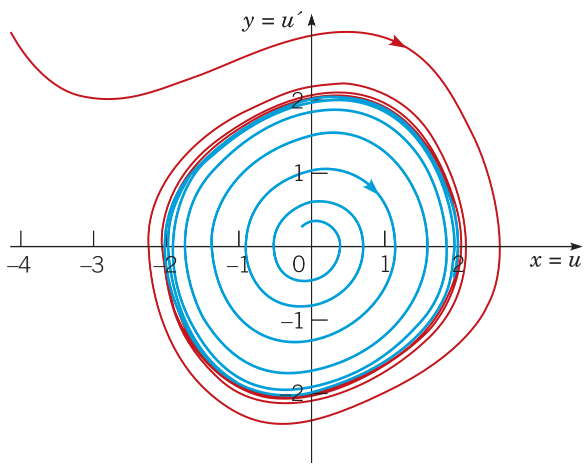


FIGURE 9.7.2 Two trajectories of the van der Pol equation (17) for $\mu = 0.2$. The red trajectory passes through $(-3, 2)$; the blue trajectory passes through $(0, 1/3)$.

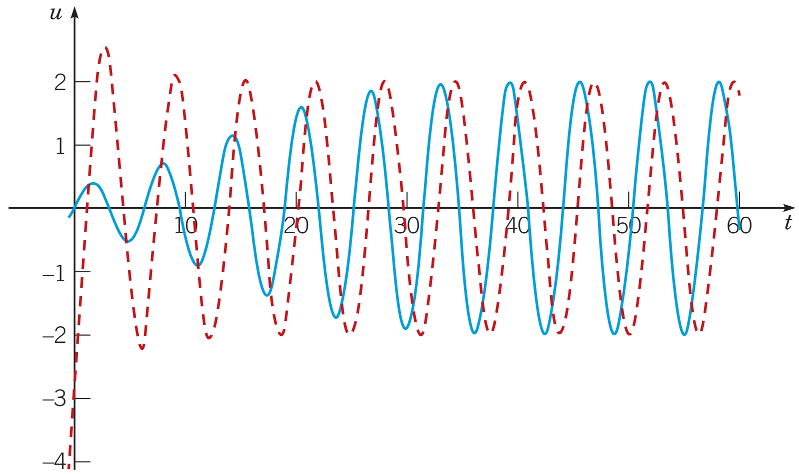


FIGURE 9.7.3 Plots of u versus t for the trajectories in Figure 9.7.2. The blue curve is the trajectory through $(0, 1/3)$; the red curve passes through $(-3, 2)$.

Figure 9.7.2. The solution that is initially smaller gradually increases in amplitude, while the larger solution gradually decays. Both solutions approach a stable periodic motion that corresponds to the limit cycle. Figure 9.7.3 also shows that there is a phase difference between the two solutions as they approach the limit cycle. The plots of u versus t are nearly sinusoidal in shape, consistent with the nearly circular limit cycle in this case.

Figures 9.7.4 and 9.7.5 show similar plots for the case $\mu = 1$. Trajectories again move clockwise in the phase plane, but the limit cycle is considerably different from a circle. The plots of u versus t tend more rapidly to the limiting oscillation, and again show a phase difference. The oscillations are somewhat less symmetric in this case, rising somewhat more steeply than they fall.

Figure 9.7.6 shows the phase plane for $\mu = 5$. The motion remains clockwise, and the limit cycle is even more elongated, especially in the y direction. Figure 9.7.7 is a plot of u versus t. Although the solution starts far from the limit cycle, convergence to the limiting oscillation is virtually complete in a fraction of a period. Starting from one of its extreme values on the x-axis in the phase plane, the solution moves toward the other extreme position slowly at first, but once a certain point on the

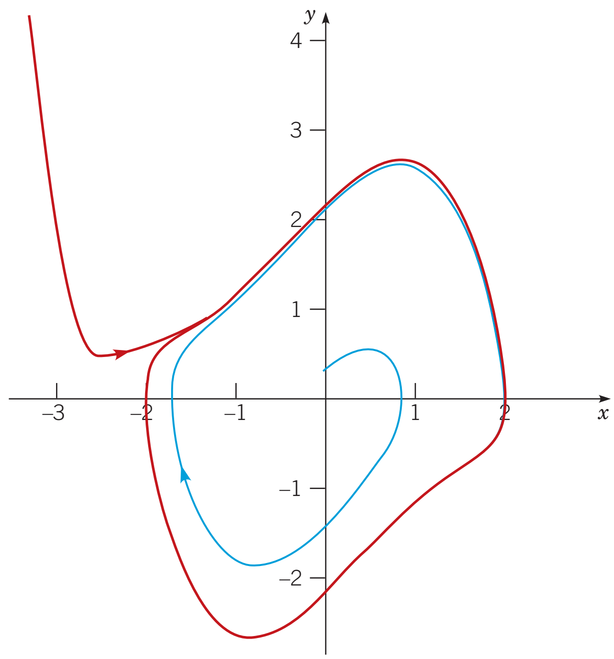


FIGURE 9.7.4 Two trajectories of the van der Pol equation (17) for $\mu = 1$.

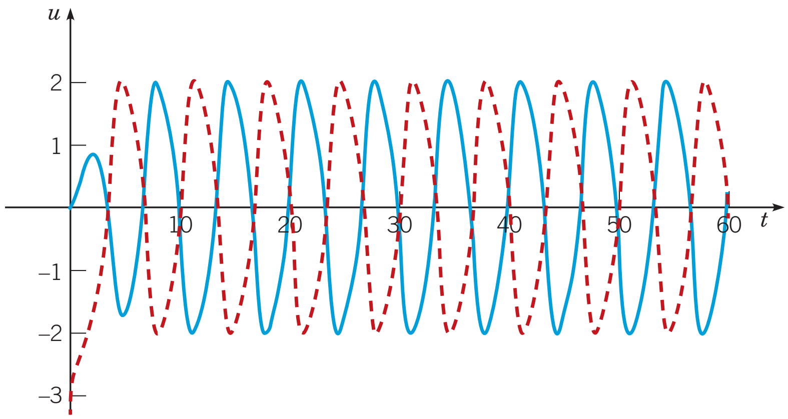


FIGURE 9.7.5 Plots of u versus t for the trajectories in Figure 9.7.4. Note that the waveforms are periodic and completely out of phase.

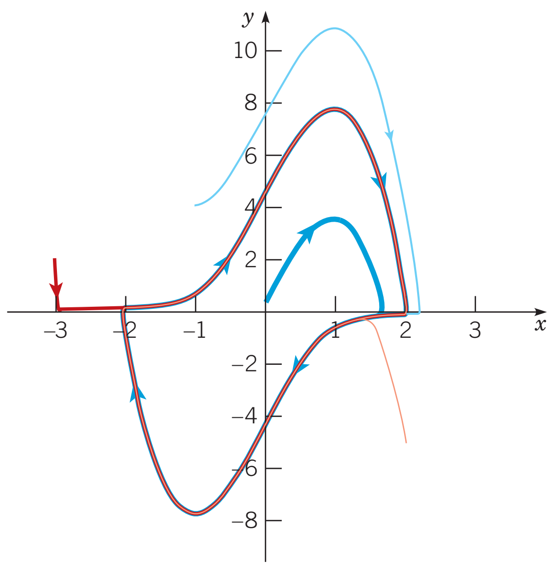


FIGURE 9.7.6 Four trajectories of the van der Pol equation (17) for $\mu = 5$.

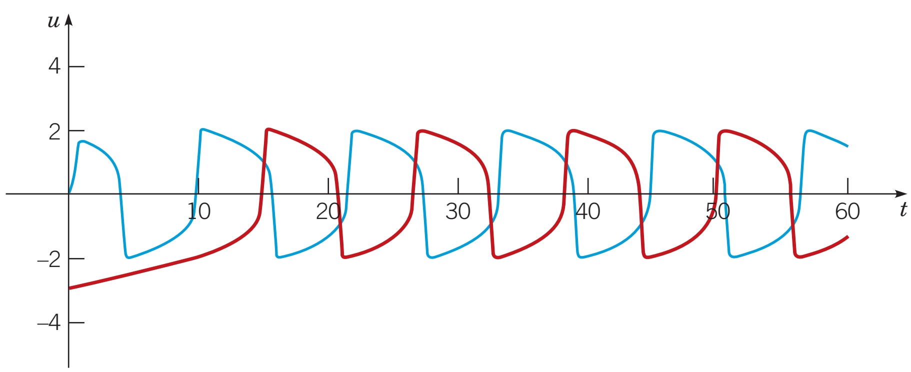


FIGURE 9.7.7 Plot of u versus t for the outward spiralling trajectory through $(0, 1/3)$ (blue) and the inward spiralling trajectory through $(-3, 2)$ (red). While these waveforms for $\mu = 5$ are much less smooth than the waveforms for $\mu = 1$, they are still periodic and out of phase.

trajectory is reached, the remainder of the transition is completed very swiftly. The process is then repeated in the opposite direction. The waveform of the limit cycle, as shown in Figure 9.7.7, is quite different from a sine wave.

These graphs clearly show that in the absence of external excitation, the van der Pol oscillator has a certain characteristic mode of vibration for each value of μ. The graphs of u versus t show that the amplitude of this oscillation changes very little with μ, but the period increases as μ increases. We emphasize that for small values of μ the limit cycle is nearly a circle of radius 2. As μ increases, the limit cycle is stretched in the y direction but remains in the interval $[-2, 2]$ horizontally. At the same time, the waveform changes from a smooth oscillation to a much more jumpy type of motion.

The presence of a single periodic motion that attracts all (nearby) solutions—that is, an asymptotically stable limit cycle—is one of the characteristic phenomena present in many nonlinear differential equations.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, an autonomous system is expressed in polar coordinates. Determine all periodic solutions, all limit cycles, and the stability characteristics of all periodic solutions.

1. $\dfrac{dr}{dt} = r^2\left(1 - r^2\right), \quad \dfrac{d\theta}{dt} = 1$

2. $\dfrac{dr}{dt} = r(1 - r)^2, \quad \dfrac{d\theta}{dt} = -1$

3. $\dfrac{dr}{dt} = r(r - 1)(r - 3), \quad \dfrac{d\theta}{dt} = 1$

4. $\dfrac{dr}{dt} = r(1 - r)(r - 2), \quad \dfrac{d\theta}{dt} = -1$

5. $\dfrac{dr}{dt} = \sin(\pi r), \quad \dfrac{d\theta}{dt} = 1$

6. $\dfrac{dr}{dt} = r|r - 2|(r - 3), \quad \dfrac{d\theta}{dt} = -1$

7. a. Show that the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -y + xf(r)/r, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = x + yf(r)/r$$

has periodic solutions corresponding to the zeros of $f(r)$. What is the direction of motion on the closed trajectories in the phase plane?

b. Let $f(r) = r(r - 2)^2\left(r^2 - 4r + 3\right)$. Determine all periodic solutions, and determine their stability characteristics.

8. Determine the periodic solutions, if any, of the system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = y + \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}\left(x^2 + y^2 - 2\right),$$
$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -x + \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}\left(x^2 + y^2 - 2\right).$$

9. Using Theorem 9.7.2, show that the linear autonomous system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = a_{11}x + a_{12}y, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = a_{21}x + a_{22}y$$

does not have a periodic solution (other than $x = 0$, $y = 0$) if $a_{11} + a_{22} \neq 0$.

In each of Problems 10 and 11, show that the given system has no periodic solutions other than constant solutions.

10. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = x + y + x^3 - y^2, \quad \dfrac{dy}{dt} = -x + 2y + x^2y + \frac{1}{3}y^3$

11. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = -2x - 3y - xy^2, \quad \dfrac{dy}{dt} = y + x^3 - x^2y$

12. Derive equation (21) in Example 2.

13. Prove Theorem 9.7.2 by completing the following argument. According to Green's theorem in the plane, if C is a sufficiently smooth simple closed curve, and if F and G are continuous and have continuous first partial derivatives, then

$$\int_C (F(x, y)dy - G(x, y)dx) = \iint_R (F_x(x, y) + G_y(x, y))\, dA,$$

where C is traversed counterclockwise and R is the region enclosed by C. Assume that $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ is a solution of the system (15) that is periodic with period T. Let C be the closed curve given by $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ for $0 \le t \le T$. Show that for this curve, the line integral is zero. Then show that the conclusion of Theorem 9.7.2 must follow.

14. G **a.** By examining the graphs of u versus t in Figures 9.7.3, 9.7.5, and 9.7.7, estimate the period T of the van der Pol oscillator in these cases.

G **b.** Plot the graphs of solutions of the van der Pol equation for other values of the parameter μ. Estimate the period T in these cases also.

G **c.** Plot the estimated values of T versus μ. Describe how T depends on μ.

15. The equation

$$u'' - \mu\left(1 - \frac{1}{3}u'^2\right)u' + u = 0$$

is often called the Rayleigh[14] equation.

[14]John William Strutt (1842–1919), the third Lord Rayleigh, made notable contributions in several areas of mathematical physics. His theory of scattering (1871) provided the first correct explanation of why the sky is blue, and his two-volume treatise *The Theory of Sound*, published in 1877 and 1878, is one of the classics of applied mathematics. Apart from five years as Cavendish Professor of Physics at Cambridge, he worked primarily in his private laboratory at home. He was awarded the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1904 for the discovery of argon.

a. Write the Rayleigh equation as a system of two first-order equations.

b. Show that the origin is the only critical point of this system. Determine its type and whether it is asymptotically stable, stable, or unstable.

G **c.** Let $\mu = 1$. Choose initial conditions, and graph the corresponding solution of the system on an interval such as $0 \le t \le 20$ or longer. Plot u versus t, and also plot the trajectory in the phase plane. Observe that the trajectory approaches a closed curve (limit cycle). Estimate the amplitude A and the period T of the limit cycle.

G **d.** Repeat part c for other values of μ, such as $\mu = 0.2, 0.5, 2$, and 5. In each case estimate the amplitude A and the period T.

e. Describe how the limit cycle changes as μ increases. For example, make a table of values and/or plot A and T as functions of μ.

16. Consider the system of equations

$$x' = \mu x + y - x\left(x^2 + y^2\right), \quad y' = -x + \mu y - y\left(x^2 + y^2\right), \quad (22)$$

where μ is a parameter. Observe that this system is the same as the one in Example 1, except for the introduction of μ.

a. Show that the origin is the only critical point.

b. Find the linear system that approximates equations (22) near the origin, and find its eigenvalues. Determine the type and stability of the critical point at the origin. How does this classification depend on μ?

c. Referring to Example 1 if necessary, rewrite equations (22) in polar coordinates.

G **d.** Show that when $\mu > 0$, there is a periodic solution $r = \sqrt{\mu}$. By solving the system found in part c, or by plotting numerically computed approximate solutions, conclude that this periodic solution attracts all other nonzero solutions.

Note: As the parameter μ increases through the value zero, the previously asymptotically stable critical point at the origin loses its stability, and simultaneously a new asymptotically stable solution (the limit cycle) emerges. Thus the point $\mu = 0$ is a bifurcation point; this type of bifurcation is called a **Hopf**[15] **bifurcation**.

C **17.** Consider the van der Pol system

$$x' = y, \quad y' = -x + \mu\left(1 - x^2\right)y,$$

where now we allow the parameter μ to be any real number.

a. Show that the origin is the only critical point. Determine its type, its stability property, and how these depend on μ.

G **b.** Let $\mu = -1$; draw a phase portrait, and conclude that there is a periodic solution that surrounds the origin. Observe that this periodic solution is unstable. Compare your plot with Figure 9.7.4.

G **c.** Draw a phase portrait for a few other negative values of μ. Describe how the shape of the periodic solution changes with μ.

G **d.** Consider small positive or negative values of μ. By drawing phase portraits, determine how the periodic solution changes as $\mu \to 0$. Compare the behavior of the van der Pol system as μ increases through zero with the behavior of the system in Problem 16.

[15] Eberhard Hopf (1902–1983) was born in Austria and educated at the University of Berlin but spent much of his life in the United States, mainly at Indiana University. He was one of the founders of ergodic theory. Hopf bifurcations are named for him in honor of his rigorous treatment of them in a 1942 paper.

Problems 18 and 19 extend the consideration of the Rosenzweig–MacArthur predator–prey model introduced in Problem 13 of Section 9.5.

C **18.** Consider the system

$$x' = x\left(2.4 - 0.2x - \frac{2y}{x+6}\right), \quad y' = y\left(-0.25 + \frac{x}{x+6}\right).$$

Observe that this system differs from that in Problem 13 of Section 9.5 only in the growth rate for the prey.

a. Find all of the critical points.

b. Determine the type and stability of each critical point.

G **c.** Draw a phase portrait in the first quadrant, and conclude that there is an asymptotically stable limit cycle. Thus this model predicts a stable long-term oscillation of the prey and predator populations.

C **19.** Consider the system

$$x' = x\left(a - 0.2x - \frac{2y}{x+6}\right), \quad y' = y\left(-0.25 + \frac{x}{x+6}\right),$$

where a is a positive parameter. Observe that this system includes the one in Problem 18 above and the one in Problem 13 in Section 9.5.

a. Find all of the critical points.

b. Consider the critical point in the interior of the first quadrant. Find the eigenvalues of the approximate linear system. Determine the value a_0 where this critical point changes from asymptotically stable to unstable.

G **c.** Draw a phase portrait for a value of a slightly greater than a_0. Observe that a limit cycle has appeared. How does the limit cycle change as a increases further?

20. There are certain chemical reactions in which the constituent concentrations oscillate periodically over time. The system

$$x' = 1 - (b+1)x + \frac{1}{4}x^2 y, \quad y' = bx - \frac{1}{4}x^2 y$$

is a special case of a model, known as the **Brusselator**, of this kind of reaction. Assume that b is a positive parameter, and consider solutions in the first quadrant of the xy-plane.

a. Show that the only critical point is $(1, 4b)$.

b. Find the eigenvalues of the approximate linear system at the critical point.

c. Classify the critical point as to type and stability. How does the classification depend on b?

d. As b increases through a certain value b_0, the critical point changes from asymptotically stable to unstable. What is that value b_0?

G **e.** Plot trajectories in the phase plane for values of b slightly less than and slightly greater than b_0. Observe the limit cycle when $b > b_0$; the Brusselator has a Hopf bifurcation point at b_0.

G **f.** Plot trajectories for several values of $b > b_0$ and observe how the limit cycle deforms as b increases.

C **21.** The system

$$x' = 3\left(x + y - \frac{1}{3}x^3 - k\right), \quad y' = -\frac{1}{3}(x + 0.8y - 0.7)$$

is a special case of the Fitzhugh–Nagumo[16] equations, which model the transmission of neural impulses along an axon. The parameter k is the external stimulus.

[16] Richard Fitzhugh (1922–2007) of the United States Public Health Service and Jin-Ichi Nagumo (1926–1999) of the University of Tokyo independently proposed a simplification of the Hodgkin–Huxley model of neural transmission around 1961.

a. Show that the system has one critical point regardless of the value of k.

G **b.** Find the critical point for $k = 0$, and show that it is an asymptotically stable spiral point. Repeat the analysis for $k = 0.5$, and show that the critical point is now an unstable spiral point. Draw a phase portrait for the system in each case.

G **c.** Find the value k_0 where the critical point changes from asymptotically stable to unstable. Find the critical point and draw a phase portrait for the system for $k = k_0$.

G **d.** For $k > k_0$, the system exhibits an asymptotically stable limit cycle; the system has a Hopf bifurcation point at k_0. Draw a phase portrait for $k = 0.4$, 0.5, and 0.6; observe that the limit cycle is not small when k is near k_0. Also plot x versus t and estimate the period T in each case.

e. As k increases further, there is a value k_1 at which the critical point again becomes asymptotically stable and the limit cycle vanishes. Find k_1.

9.8 Chaos and Strange Attractors: The Lorenz Equations

In principle, the methods described in this chapter for two-dimensional autonomous systems can be applied to higher dimensional systems as well. In practice, several difficulties arise when we try to do this. One problem is that there is simply a greater number of possible cases that can occur, and the number increases with the number of equations in the system (and the dimension of the phase space). Another problem is the difficulty of graphing trajectories accurately in a phase space of more than two dimensions; even in three dimensions it may not be easy to construct a clear and understandable plot of the trajectories, and it becomes more difficult as the number of variables increases. Finally—and this has been widely recognized only since the 1970s—there are different and very complex phenomena that can occur, and frequently do occur, in n-dimensional systems with $n \geq 3$ that are not present in two-dimensional systems. Our goal in this section is to provide a brief introduction to some of these phenomena by discussing one particular three-dimensional autonomous system that has been intensively studied. In some respects, the presentation here is similar to the treatment of the logistic difference equation in Section 2.9.

An important problem in meteorology, and in other applications of fluid dynamics, concerns the motion of a layer of fluid, such as the earth's atmosphere, that is warmer at the bottom than at the top; see Figure 9.8.1. If the vertical temperature difference ΔT is small, then there is a linear variation of temperature with altitude but no significant motion of the fluid layer. However, if ΔT is large enough, then the warmer air rises, displacing the cooler air above it, and a steady convective motion results. If the temperature difference increases further, then eventually the steady convective flow breaks up and a more complex and turbulent motion ensues.

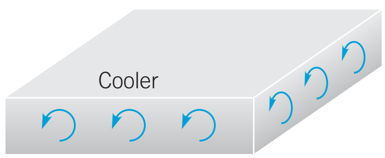


FIGURE 9.8.1 A layer of fluid heated from below.

While investigating this phenomenon, Edward N. Lorenz[17] was led (by a process too involved to describe here) to the nonlinear autonomous three-dimensional system

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \sigma(-x + y), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = rx - y - xz, \quad \frac{dz}{dt} = -bz + xy. \tag{1}$$

[17]Edward N. Lorenz (1917–2008), an American meteorologist, received his Ph.D. from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in 1948 and was associated with that institution throughout his scientific career. His first studies of the system (1) appeared in a famous 1963 paper (cited in the References) dealing with the stability of fluid flows in the atmosphere.

The system of differential equations (1) is now commonly referred to as the **Lorenz equations**.[18] Observe that the first equation is linear, but that the second and third equations involve quadratic nonlinearities. However, except for being a system of three equations, superficially the Lorenz equations appear no more complicated than the competing species and predator–prey equations discussed in Sections 9.4 and 9.5.

The variable x in equations (1) is related to the intensity of the fluid motion, while the variables y and z are related to the temperature variations in the horizontal and vertical directions. The Lorenz equations also involve three parameters σ, r, and b, all of which are real and positive. The parameters σ and b depend on the material and geometric properties of the fluid layer. For the earth's atmosphere, reasonable values of these parameters are $\sigma = 10$ and $b = \frac{8}{3}$; they will be assigned these values in much of what follows in this section. The parameter r, on the other hand, is proportional to the temperature difference ΔT, and our purpose is to investigate how the nature of the solutions of equations (1) changes with r.

Before proceeding further, we note that for an autonomous system of three first-order equations

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = F(x, y, z), \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = G(x, y, z), \quad \frac{dz}{dt} = H(x, y, z), \tag{2}$$

the Jacobian matrix $\mathbf{J}$ is defined by

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}[F, G, H](x, y, z) = \begin{pmatrix} F_x & F_y & F_z \\ G_x & G_y & G_z \\ H_x & H_y & H_z \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3}$$

Thus, for the Lorenz equations (1), the Jacobian matrix is

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sigma & \sigma & 0 \\ r - z & -1 & -x \\ y & x & -b \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4}$$

The first step in analyzing the Lorenz equations is to locate the critical points by solving the (nonlinear) algebraic system

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma x - \sigma y &= 0, \\ rx - y - xz &= 0, \\ -bz + xy &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

From the first equation we have $y = x$. Then, eliminating y from the second and third equations, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} x(r - 1 - z) &= 0, \\ -bz + x^2 &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

One way to satisfy the first equation in (6) is to choose $x = 0$. Then it follows that $y = 0$ and, from the second equation in (6), $z = 0$. Alternatively, we can satisfy the first equation in (6) by choosing $z = r - 1$. Then the second equation in (6) requires that $x = \pm\sqrt{b(r-1)}$ and then $y = \pm\sqrt{b(r-1)}$ also. Observe that these expressions for x and y are real only when $r \geq 1$. Thus (0, 0, 0), which we will denote by P_0, is a critical point for all values of r, and it is the only critical point for $r \leq 1$. However, when $r > 1$, there are also two other critical points, namely, $(\sqrt{b(r-1)}, \sqrt{b(r-1)}, r-1)$ and $(-\sqrt{b(r-1)}, -\sqrt{b(r-1)}, r-1)$. We will denote the latter two points by P_1 and P_2, respectively. Note that all three critical points coincide when $r = 1$. As r increases through the value 1, the critical point P_0 at the origin bifurcates,[19] and, in addition to P_0, the critical points P_1 and P_2 come into existence.

Next we will determine the local behavior of solutions in the neighborhood of each critical point. Although much of the following analysis can be carried out for arbitrary values of σ

[18] A very thorough treatment of the Lorenz equations appears in the book by Sparrow listed in the References at the end of this chapter.

[19] Because this transition is from one critical point for $r < 1$ to three critical points for $r > 1$, technically, we should say that at $r = 1$ the critical point P_0 **trifurcates** into P_0, P_1, and P_2. But, it is customary to use bifurcate whenever there is a change in the number or classification of the critical points of a problem.

and b, we will simplify our work by using the values $\sigma = 10$ and $b = \frac{8}{3}$. Near the origin (the critical point P_0), the approximating linear system is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} -10 & 10 & 0 \\ r & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -8/3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}. \tag{7}$$

The eigenvalues[20] are determined from the equation

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} -10-\lambda & 10 & 0 \\ r & -1-\lambda & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -8/3-\lambda \end{vmatrix} &= -\left(\frac{8}{3}+\lambda\right)((10+\lambda)(1+\lambda)-10r) \\ &= -\left(\frac{8}{3}+\lambda\right)\left(\lambda^2+11\lambda-10(r-1)\right) = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

Therefore,

$$\lambda_1 = -\frac{8}{3}, \quad \lambda_2 = \frac{-11-\sqrt{81+40r}}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_3 = \frac{-11+\sqrt{81+40r}}{2}. \tag{9}$$

Note that all three eigenvalues are negative for $r < 1$; for example, when $r = 1/2$, the eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = -8/3$, $\lambda_2 = -10.52494$, and $\lambda_3 = -0.47506$. Hence the origin is asymptotically stable for $0 \le r < 1$ both for the linear approximation (8) and for the original system (1). However, λ_3 changes sign when $r = 1$ and is positive for $r > 1$. The value $r = 1$ corresponds to the initiation of convective flow in the physical problem described earlier. When $r > 1$ the origin is an unstable equilibrium solution for both the linearized problem and for the nonlinear Lorenz equations. All solutions to the linearized system starting near the origin tend to grow, except for those lying precisely in the plane determined by the eigenvectors associated with λ_1 and λ_2. For the nonlinear system (1), the same is true except that the exceptional solutions are those lying in a certain surface tangent to the plane determined by the eigenvectors associated with λ_1 and λ_2 at the origin.

The second critical point is $P_1 = (\sqrt{8(r-1)/3}, \sqrt{8(r-1)/3}, r-1)$ for $r > 1$. To consider the neighborhood of this critical point, let u, v, and w be the perturbations from the critical point in the x-, y-, and z-directions, respectively. The approximating linear system is

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix}' = \begin{pmatrix} -10 & 10 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & -\sqrt{\frac{8}{3}(r-1)} \\ \sqrt{\frac{8}{3}(r-1)} & \sqrt{\frac{8}{3}(r-1)} & -\frac{8}{3} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix}. \tag{10}$$

The eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix of equation (10) are determined from the equation

$$3\lambda^3 + 41\lambda^2 + 8(r+10)\lambda + 160(r-1) = 0, \tag{11}$$

which is obtained by straightforward algebraic steps that are omitted here. (See Problem 2.) The solutions of equation (11) depend on r in the following way:

For $1 < r < r_1 \cong 1.3456$ there are three distinct negative real eigenvalues.

For $r_1 < r < r_2 \cong 24.737$ there are one negative real eigenvalue and two complex eigenvalues with negative real part.

For $r > r_2$, there are one negative real eigenvalue and two complex eigenvalues with positive real part.

The same results are obtained for the critical point P_2. Thus there are several different situations.

For $0 < r < 1$ the only critical point is P_0 and it is asymptotically stable. All solutions approach this point (the origin) as $t \to \infty$.

[20]Since r appears as a parameter in the Lorenz equations, we will use λ to denote the eigenvalues.

For $1 < r < r_1$, the critical points P_1 and P_2 are asymptotically stable and P_0 is unstable. All nearby solutions approach one or the other of the points P_1 and P_2 exponentially.

For $r_1 < r < r_2$, the critical points P_1 and P_2 are asymptotically stable and P_0 is unstable. All nearby solutions approach one or the other of the points P_1 and P_2; most of them spiral inward to the critical point.

For $r > r_2$, all three critical points are unstable. Most solutions near P_1 or P_2 spiral away from the critical point.

However, this is by no means the end of the story. Let us consider solutions for r somewhat greater than r_2. In this case P_0 has one positive eigenvalue, and each of P_1 and P_2 has a pair of complex eigenvalues with positive real part. A trajectory can approach any one of the critical points, but only when it starts on one of several highly restricted paths. The slightest deviation from these paths causes the trajectory to depart from the critical point. Since none of the critical points are stable, one might expect that most trajectories would approach infinity for large t. However, it can be shown that all solutions remain bounded as $t \to \infty$; see Problem 5. In fact, it can be shown that all solutions ultimately approach a certain limiting set of points that has zero volume. Indeed, this is true not only for $r > r_2$ but for all positive values of r.

A plot of computed values of x, y, and z versus t for a typical solution with $r > r_2$ is shown in Figure 9.8.2. Note that the x and y solutions oscillate back and forth between positive and negative values in a rather erratic manner. Indeed, the graphs of x versus t and y versus t resemble a random vibration, although the Lorenz equations are entirely deterministic and the solution is completely determined by the initial conditions. Nevertheless, the solution also exhibits a certain regularity in that the frequency and amplitude of the oscillations are essentially constant in time.

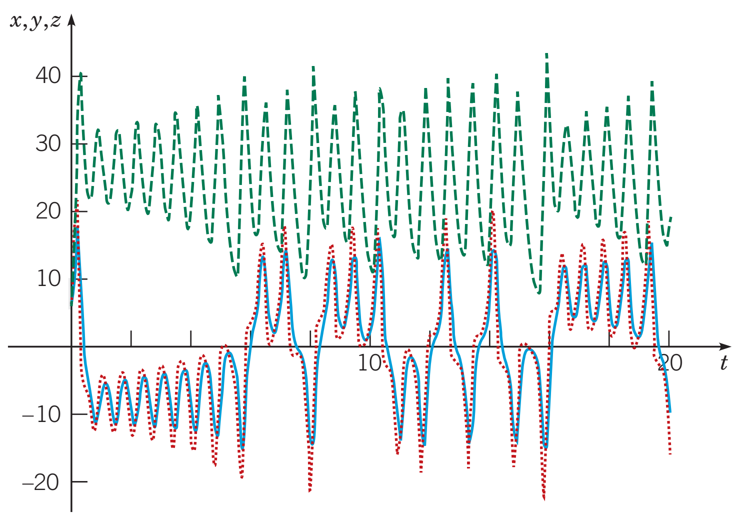


FIGURE 9.8.2 A plot of x (solid blue), y (dotted red), and z (dashed green) versus t for the Lorenz equations (1) with $r = 28$; the initial point is $(5, 5, 5)$.

The solutions of the Lorenz equations are also extremely sensitive to perturbations in the initial conditions. Figure 9.8.3 shows the graphs of computed values of x versus t for the two solutions whose initial points are $(5, 5, 5)$ and $(5.01, 5, 5)$. The solid blue graph is the same as the one in Figure 9.8.2, while the solid black graph starts at a nearby point. The two solutions remain close until t is near 10, after which they are quite different and, indeed, seem to have no relation to each other. (The y and z components of the solution exhibit similar differences starting a little after $t = 10$.) It was this property that particularly attracted the attention of Lorenz in his original study of these equations, and it caused him to conclude that accurate detailed long-range weather predictions are probably not possible.

The attracting set in this case, although of zero volume, has a rather complicated structure and is called a **strange attractor**. The term **chaotic** has come into general use to describe systems of differential equations with the property that solutions with similar initial conditions can have very different solutions, such as the ones in Figure 9.8.3.

To determine how and when the strange attractor is created, it is illuminating to investigate solutions for smaller values of r. For $r = 21$, solutions starting at three different initial points

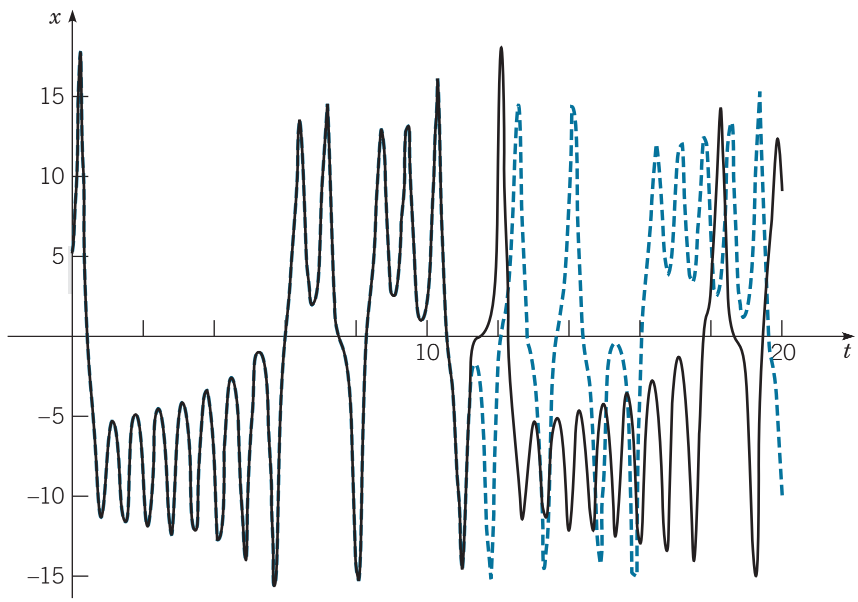


FIGURE 9.8.3 Plots of x versus t for two initially nearby solutions of Lorenz equations with $r = 28$; the initial point is $(5, 5, 5)$ for the dashed blue curve and is $(5.01, 5, 5)$ for the solid black curve.

are shown in Figure 9.8.4. For the initial point $(3, 8, 0)$, the solution begins to converge to the point $P_2 = (7.303, 7.303, 20)$ almost at once; see Figure 9.8.4*a*. For the second initial point $(5, 5, 5)$, there is a fairly short interval of transient behavior, after which the solution converges to $P_1 = (-7.303, -7.303, 20)$; see Figure 9.8.4*b*. However, as shown in Figure 9.8.4*c*, for the third initial point $(5, 5, 10)$, there is a much longer interval of transient chaotic behavior before the solution eventually converges to P_2. As r increases, the duration of the chaotic transient behavior also increases. When $r = r_3 \cong 24.06$, the chaotic transients appear to continue indefinitely, and the strange attractor comes into being.

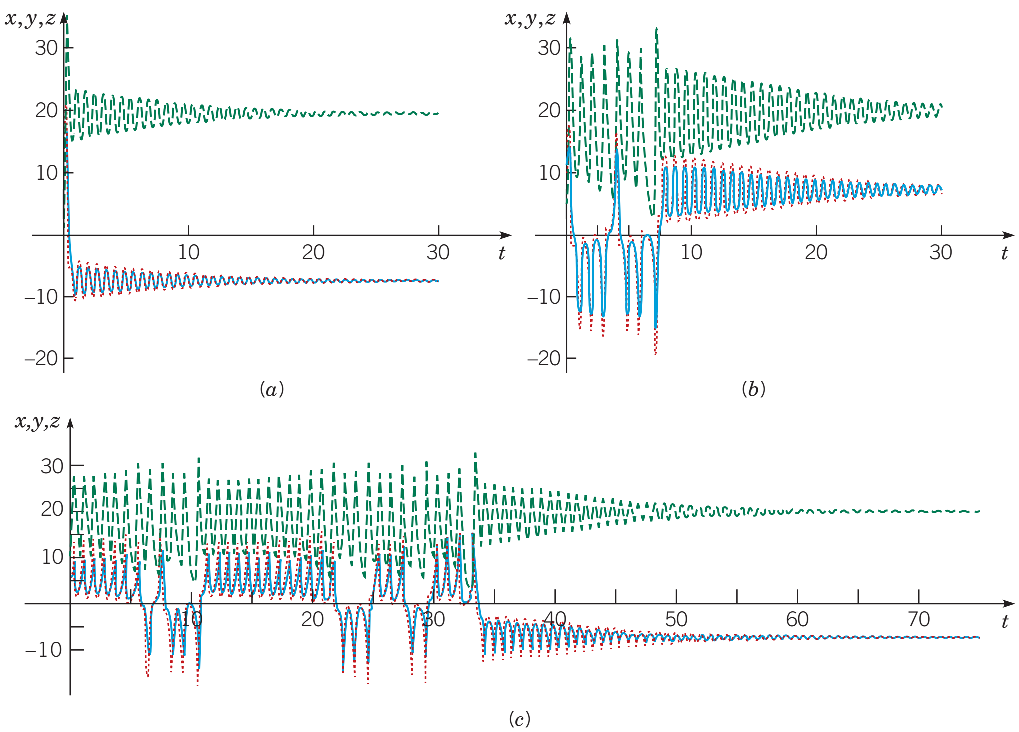


FIGURE 9.8.4 Plots of x (solid blue), y (dotted red), and z (dashed green) versus t for solutions of Lorenz equations with $r = 21$ with three different initial conditions. (*a*) Initial point is (3, 8, 0); solution converges to P_2. (*b*) Initial point is (5, 5, 5); solution converges to P_1. (*c*) Initial point is (5, 5, 10); solution converges (eventually) to P_2.

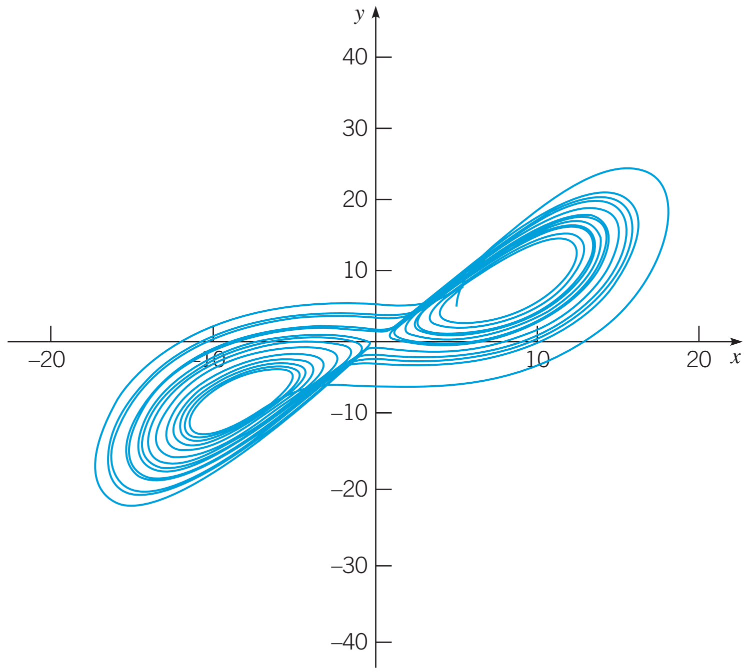


FIGURE 9.8.5 Projection in the xy-plane of a trajectory of the Lorenz equations (with $r = 28$) with initial condition $(5, 5, 5)$.

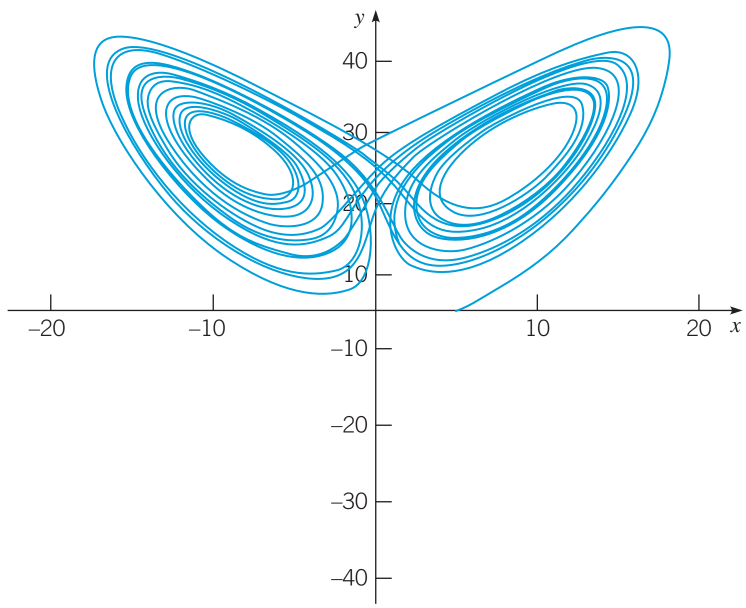


FIGURE 9.8.6 Projection in the xz-plane of a trajectory of the Lorenz equations (with $r = 28$) with initial condition $(5, 5, 5)$.

We can also show the trajectories of the Lorenz equations in the three-dimensional phase space, or at least projections of them in various planes. Figures 9.8.5 and 9.8.6 show projections in the xy- and xz-planes, respectively, of the trajectory starting at $(5, 5, 5)$. Observe that while the graphs in these figures appear to cross over themselves repeatedly, the general uniqueness theorem ensures this cannot be true for the actual trajectories in three-dimensional space. The apparent crossings are due wholly to the two-dimensional character of the figures.

The sensitivity of solutions to perturbations of the initial data also has implications for numerical computations, such as those reported here. Different step sizes, different numerical algorithms, and even the execution of the same algorithm on different machines can introduce small differences in the computed solution, which can eventually lead to large deviations. For example, the exact sequence of positive and negative loops in the calculated solution depends strongly on the precise numerical algorithm and its implementation, as well as on the initial conditions. However, the general appearance of the solution and the structure of the attracting set are independent of all these factors.

Solutions of the Lorenz equations for other parameter ranges exhibit other interesting types of behavior. For example, for certain values of r greater than r_2, intermittent bursts of chaotic behavior separate long intervals of apparently steady periodic oscillation. For other ranges of r, solutions show the period-doubling property that we saw in Section 2.9 for the logistic difference equation. Some of these features are taken up in the problems.

Since about 1975, the Lorenz equations and other higher-dimensional autonomous systems have been studied intensively, and this is one of the most active areas of current mathematical research. Chaotic behavior of solutions appears to be much more common than was suspected at first, and many questions remain unanswered. Some of these are mathematical in nature, while others relate to the physical applications or interpretations of solutions.

Problems

Problems 1 through 3 ask you to fill in some of the details of the analysis of the Lorenz equations in this section.

1. **a.** Show that the eigenvalues of the linear system (8), valid near the origin, are given by equation (9).
b. Determine the corresponding eigenvectors.
c. Determine the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the system (7) in the case where $r = 28$.

2. **a.** Show that the linear approximation valid near the critical point P_1 is given by equation (10).
b. Show that the eigenvalues of the system (10) satisfy equation (11).
N **c.** For $r = 28$, solve equation (11) and thereby determine the eigenvalues of the system (10).

3. N **a.** By solving equation (11) numerically, show that the real part of the complex roots changes sign when $r \cong 24.737$.
b. Show that a cubic polynomial $x^3 + Ax^2 + Bx + C$ has one real zero and two pure imaginary zeros only if $AB = C$.
c. Apply the result of part b to equation (11) to show that the real part of the complex roots changes sign when $r = \dfrac{470}{19}$.

4. Use the Liapunov function $V(x, y, z) = x^2 + \sigma y^2 + \sigma z^2$ to show that the origin is a globally asymptotically stable critical point for the Lorenz equations (1) if $r < 1$.

5. Consider the ellipsoid

$$V(x, y, z) = rx^2 + \sigma y^2 + \sigma(z - 2r)^2 = c > 0.$$

a. Calculate $\frac{dV}{dt}$ along trajectories of the Lorenz equations (1).
b. Determine a sufficient condition on c so that every trajectory crossing $V(x, y, z) = c$ is directed inward.
c. Evaluate the condition found in part b for the case $\sigma = 10$, $b = 8/3$, $r = 28$.

Problems 6 through 10 suggest some further investigations of the Lorenz equations.

G **6.** For $r = 28$, plot x versus t for the cases shown in Figures 9.8.2 and 9.8.3. Do your graphs agree with those shown in the figures? Recall the discussion of numerical computation in the text.

G **7.** For $r = 28$, plot the projections in the xy- and xz-planes, respectively, of the trajectory starting at the point $(5, 5, 5)$. Do the graphs agree with those in Figures 9.8.5 and 9.8.6?

8. G **a.** For $r = 21$, plot x versus t for the solutions starting at initial points $(3, 8, 0)$, $(5, 5, 5)$, and $(5, 5, 10)$. Use a t-interval of at least $0 \le t \le 30$. Compare your graphs with those in Figure 9.8.4.
G **b.** Repeat part a for $r = 22$, $r = 23$, and $r = 24$. Increase the t interval as necessary so that you can determine when each solution begins to converge to one of the critical points. Record the approximate duration of the chaotic transient in each case. Describe how this quantity depends on the value of r.
G **c.** Repeat parts a and b for values of r slightly greater than 24. Try to estimate the value of r for which the duration of the chaotic transient approaches infinity.

9. For certain r intervals, or windows, the Lorenz equations exhibit a period-doubling property similar to that of the logistic difference equation discussed in Section 2.9. Careful calculations may reveal this phenomenon.
G **a.** One period-doubling window contains the value $r = 100$. Let $r = 100$ and plot the trajectory starting at $(5, 5, 5)$ or some other initial point of your choice. Does the solution appear to be periodic? What is the period?
G **b.** Repeat part a for slightly smaller values of r. When $r \cong 99.98$, you may be able to observe that the period of the solution doubles. Try to observe this result by performing calculations with nearby values of r.
G **c.** As r decreases further, the period of the solution doubles repeatedly. The next period doubling occurs at about $r = 99.629$. Try to observe this by plotting trajectories for nearby values of r.

10. Now consider values of r slightly larger than those in Problem 9.
G **a.** Plot trajectories of the Lorenz equations for values of r between 100 and 100.78. You should observe a steady periodic solution for this range of r values.
G **b.** Plot trajectories for values of r between 100.78 and 100.8. Determine as best you can how and when the periodic trajectory breaks up.

The Rössler[21] System. The system

$$x' = -y - z, \quad y' = x + ay, \quad z' = b + z(x - c), \tag{12}$$

where a, b, and c are positive parameters, is known as the Rössler system[22]. It is a relatively simple system, consisting of two linear

[21] Otto E. Rössler (1940–), a German medical doctor and biochemist, was a student and later became a faculty member at the University of Tübingen. The equations named for him first appeared in a paper he published in 1976.

[22] See the book by Strogatz for a more extensive discussion and further references.

equations and a third equation with a single quadratic nonlinearity. In Problems 11 through 15, we ask you to carry out some numeric investigations of this system, with the goal of exploring its period-doubling property. To simplify matters, set $a = 1/4$, set $b = 1$, and let $c > 0$ remain arbitrary.

11. C **a.** Show that there are no critical points when $c < 1/\sqrt{2}$, there is one critical point for $c = 1/\sqrt{2}$, and there are two critical points when $c > 1/\sqrt{2}$.

b. Find the critical point(s) and determine the eigenvalues of the associated Jacobian matrix when $c = 1/\sqrt{2}$ and when $c = 1$.

G **c.** How do you think trajectories of the system will behave for $c = 1$? Plot the trajectory starting at the origin. Does it behave the way that you expected?

G **d.** Choose one or two other initial points, and plot the corresponding trajectories. Do these plots agree with your expectations?

12. **a.** Let $c = 1.3$. Find the critical points and the corresponding eigenvalues. What conclusions, if any, can you draw from this information?

G **b.** Plot the trajectory starting at the origin. What is the limiting behavior of this trajectory? To see the limiting behavior clearly, you may wish to choose a t-interval for your plot so that the initial transients are eliminated.

G **c.** Choose one or two other initial points, and plot the corresponding trajectories. Are the limiting behavior(s) the same as in part b?

G **d.** Observe that there is a limit cycle whose basin of attraction is fairly large (although not all of xyz-space). Draw a plot of x, y, or z versus t, and estimate the period T_1 of motion around the limit cycle.

13. The limit cycle found in Problem 12 comes into existence as a result of a Hopf bifurcation at a value c_1 of c between 1 and 1.3. Determine, or at least estimate more precisely, the value of c_1. There are several ways in which you might do this.

G **a.** Draw plots of trajectories for different values of c.

b. Calculate eigenvalues at critical points for different values of c.

c. Use the result of Problem 3b above.

14. **a.** Let $c = 3$. Find the critical points and the corresponding eigenvalues.

G **b.** Plot the trajectory starting at the point $(1, 0, -2)$. Observe that the limit cycle now consists of two loops before it closes; it is often called a 2-cycle.

G **c.** Plot x, y, or z versus t, and show that the period T_2 of motion on the 2-cycle is very nearly double the period T_1 of the simple limit cycle in Problem 12. There has been a period-doubling bifurcation of cycles for a certain value of c between 1.3 and 3.

15. **a.** Let $c = 3.8$. Find the critical points and the corresponding eigenvalues.

G **b.** Plot the trajectory starting at the point $(1, 0, -2)$. Observe that the limit cycle is now a 4-cycle. Find the period T_4 of motion. Another period-doubling bifurcation has occurred for c between 3 and 3.8.

G **c.** For $c = 3.85$, show that the limit cycle is an 8-cycle. Verify that its period is very close to eight times the period of the simple limit cycle in Problem 12.

Note: As c increases further, there is an accelerating cascade of period-doubling bifurcations. The bifurcation values of c converge to a limit, which marks the onset of chaos.

References

There are many books that expand on the material treated in this chapter. They include

Drazin, P. G., *Nonlinear Systems* (Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1992).

Glendinning, P., *Stability, Instability, and Chaos* (Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1994).

Grimshaw, R., *Nonlinear Ordinary Differential Equations* (Oxford: Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1990; New York: CRC Press, 1991).

Hirsch, M. W., Smale, S., and Devaney, R. L., *Differential Equations, Dynamical Systems, and an Introduction to Chaos* (2nd ed.) (San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 2004).

Hubbard, J. H., and West, B. H., *Differential Equations: A Dynamical Systems Approach, Higher Dimensional Systems* (New York/Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1995).

Two books that are especially notable from the point of view of applications are

Danby, J. M. A., *Computer Applications to Differential Equations* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1985).

Strogatz, S. H., *Nonlinear Dynamics and Chaos* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1994).

Good references on Liapunov's second method are

LaSalle, J., and Lefschetz, S., *Stability by Liapunov's Direct Method with Applications* (New York: Academic Press, 1961).

Lyapunov, A. M., *The general problem of the stability of motion, translated by A. T. Fuller* (London: Taylor & Francis 1992), ISBN 978-0-7484-0062-1, reviewed in detail by M. C. Smith: Automatica 1995 vol. 3(2), pp. 353–356.

Among the large number of more comprehensive books on differential equations are

Arnol'd, V. I., *Ordinary Differential Equations*, translated by Roger Cooke (New York/Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1992). Translation of the third Russian edition.

Brauer, F., and Nohel, J., *Qualitative Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations* (New York: Benjamin, 1969; New York: Dover, 1989).

Guckenheimer, J. C., and Holmes, P., *Nonlinear Oscillations, Dynamical Systems, and Bifurcations of Vector Fields* (New York/Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1983).

A classic reference on ecology is

Odum, E. P., and Barrett, G. W., *Fundamentals of Ecology* (5th ed.) (Belmont, CA: Thompson Brooks/Cole, 2005).

Three books dealing with ecology and population dynamics on a more mathematical level are

Brauer, F., and Castillo-Chávez, C., *Mathematical Models in Population Biology and Epidemiology* (New York/Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 2001).

May, R. M., *Stability and Complexity in Model Ecosystems* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1973).

Pielou, E. C., *Mathematical Ecology* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1977).

The original paper on the Lorenz equations is

Lorenz, E. N., "Deterministic Nonperiodic Flow," *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences 20* (1963), pp. 130–141.

A very detailed treatment of the Lorenz equations is

Sparrow, C., *The Lorenz Equations: Bifurcations, Chaos, and Strange Attractors* (New York/Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1982).

An excellent nontechnical exposition of the early development of chaos may be found in

Gleick, J., *Chaos: Making a New Science* (New York: Viking Penguin, 1987).

Teschi, G., *Ordinary Differential Equations and Dynamical Systems, American Mathematical Society, Graduate Studies in Mathematics*, Volume 140, 2012, ISBN 978-0-8218-8328-0.

CHAPTER **10**

Partial Differential Equations and Fourier Series

In many important physical problems there are two or more independent variables, so the corresponding mathematical models involve partial, rather than ordinary, differential equations. This chapter treats one important method for solving partial differential equations, a method known as separation of variables. Its essential feature is the replacement of the partial differential equation by a set of ordinary differential equations, which must be solved subject to given initial or boundary conditions. The first section of this chapter deals with some basic properties of boundary value problems for ordinary differential equations. The desired solution of the partial differential equation is expressed as a sum, usually an infinite series, formed from solutions of the ordinary differential equations. In many cases we ultimately need to deal with a series of sines and/or cosines, so part of the chapter is devoted to a discussion of such series, which are known as Fourier series. With the necessary mathematical background in place, we then illustrate the use of separation of variables in a variety of problems arising from heat conduction, wave propagation, and potential theory.

10.1 Two-Point Boundary Value Problems

Up to this point in the book we have dealt with initial value problems, consisting of a differential equation together with suitable initial conditions at a given point. A typical example, which was discussed at length in Chapter 3, is the differential equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{1}$$

with the initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y'_0. \tag{2}$$

Physical applications often lead to another type of problem, one in which the value of the dependent variable y or its derivative is specified at two *different* points. Such conditions are called **boundary conditions** to distinguish them from initial conditions that specify the value of y and y' at the *same* point. A differential equation and suitable boundary conditions form a **two-point boundary value problem**. A typical example is the differential equation

$$y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = g(x) \tag{3}$$

with the boundary conditions

$$y(\alpha) = y_0, \quad y(\beta) = y_1. \tag{4}$$

The natural occurrence of boundary value problems usually involves a space coordinate as the independent variable, so we have used x rather than t in equations (3) and (4). To solve the boundary value problem (3), (4), we need to find a function $y = y(x)$ that satisfies the differential equation (3) in the interval $\alpha < x < \beta$ and that takes on the specified values y_0 and y_1 at the endpoints of the interval. Usually, we first seek the general solution of the differential equation and then use the boundary conditions to determine the values of the arbitrary constants.

Boundary value problems can also be posed for nonlinear differential equations, but we will restrict ourselves to a consideration of linear equations only. It is important to determine whether a linear boundary value problem is homogeneous or nonhomogeneous. If the function g has the value zero for each x, and if the boundary values y_0 and y_1 are also zero, then the problem (3), (4) is called **homogeneous**. Otherwise, the problem is **nonhomogeneous**.

Although the initial value problem (1), (2) and the boundary value problem (3), (4) may superficially appear to be quite similar, they actually differ in some very important ways. Under mild conditions on the coefficients, initial value problems are certain to have a unique solution. On the other hand, boundary value problems under similar conditions may have a unique solution, but they may also have no solution or, in some cases, infinitely many solutions. In this respect, linear boundary value problems resemble systems of linear algebraic equations.

Let us recall some facts (see Section 7.3) about the system

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}, \tag{5}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a given $n \times n$ matrix, $\mathbf{b}$ is a given $n \times 1$ vector, and $\mathbf{x}$ is an $n \times 1$ vector to be determined. If $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular, then the system (5) has a unique solution for any $\mathbf{b}$. However, if $\mathbf{A}$ is singular, then the system (5) has no solution unless $\mathbf{b}$ satisfies a certain additional condition, in which case the system has infinitely many solutions. Now consider the corresponding homogeneous system

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0}, \tag{6}$$

obtained from the system (5) when $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$. The homogeneous system (6) always has the solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, which is often referred to as the *trivial solution*. If $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular, then this is the only solution, but if $\mathbf{A}$ is singular, then there are infinitely many nonzero, or *nontrivial*, solutions. Note that it is impossible for the homogeneous system to have no solution. These results can also be stated in the following way: the nonhomogeneous system (5) has a unique solution if and only if the homogeneous system (6) has only the solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, and the nonhomogeneous system (5) has either no solution or infinitely many solutions if and only if the homogeneous system (6) has nonzero solutions.

We now turn to some examples of linear boundary value problems that illustrate very similar behavior. A more general discussion of linear boundary value problems appears in Chapter 11.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the boundary value problem

$$y'' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y(\pi) = 0. \tag{7}$$

Solution:

The general solution of the differential equation (7) is

$$y = c_1 \cos\left(\sqrt{2}\,x\right) + c_2 \sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,x\right). \tag{8}$$

The first boundary condition requires that $c_1 = 1$. The second boundary condition implies that $c_1 \cos\left(\sqrt{2}\,\pi\right) + c_2 \sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,\pi\right) = 0$, so $c_2 = -\cot\left(\sqrt{2}\,\pi\right) \cong -0.2762$. Thus the solution of the boundary value problem (7) is

$$y = \cos\left(\sqrt{2}\,x\right) - \cot\left(\sqrt{2}\,\pi\right) \sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,x\right). \tag{9}$$

This example illustrates the case of a nonhomogeneous boundary value problem with a unique solution.

EXAMPLE 2

Solve the boundary value problem

$$y'' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y(\pi) = a, \tag{10}$$

where a is a given number.

Solution:

The general solution of this differential equation is

$$y = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x, \tag{11}$$

and from the first boundary condition we find that $c_1 = 1$. The second boundary condition now requires that $-c_1 = a$. These two conditions on c_1 are incompatible if $a \neq -1$, so the problem has no solution in that case. However, if $a = -1$, then both boundary conditions are satisfied provided that $c_1 = 1$, regardless of the value of c_2. In this case there are infinitely many solutions of the form

$$y = \cos x + c_2 \sin x, \tag{12}$$

where c_2 remains arbitrary. This example illustrates that a nonhomogeneous boundary value problem may have no solution—and also that under special circumstances it may have infinitely many solutions.

The nonhomogeneous boundary value problem (3), (4) has a corresponding homogeneous problem consisting of the differential equation

$$y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = 0 \tag{13}$$

and the boundary conditions

$$y(\alpha) = 0, \quad y(\beta) = 0. \tag{14}$$

Observe that this problem has the solution $y = 0$ for all x, regardless of the coefficients $p(x)$ and $q(x)$. This (trivial) solution is rarely of interest. What we usually want to know is whether the problem has other, nonzero solutions. Consider the following two examples.

EXAMPLE 3

Solve the boundary value problem

$$y'' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0. \tag{15}$$

Solution:

The general solution of the differential equation is again given by equation (8),

$$y = c_1 \cos\left(\sqrt{2}\,x\right) + c_2 \sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,x\right).$$

The first boundary condition requires that $c_1 = 0$, and the second boundary condition leads to $c_2 \sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,\pi\right) = 0$. Since $\sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,\pi\right) \neq 0$, it follows that $c_2 = 0$ also. Consequently, $y = 0$ for all x is the only solution of the problem (15). This example illustrates that a homogeneous boundary value problem may have only the trivial solution $y = 0$.

EXAMPLE 4

Solve the boundary value problem

$$y'' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0. \tag{16}$$

Solution:

The general solution is given by equation (11),

$$y = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x,$$

and the first boundary condition requires that $c_1 = 0$. Since $\sin \pi = 0$, the second boundary condition is also satisfied when $c_1 = 0$, regardless of the value of c_2. Thus the solution of problem (16) is $y = c_2 \sin x$, where c_2 remains arbitrary. This example illustrates that a homogeneous boundary value problem may have infinitely many solutions.

Examples 1 through 4 illustrate (but, of course, do not prove) that there is the same relationship between homogeneous and nonhomogeneous linear boundary value problems as there is between homogeneous and nonhomogeneous linear algebraic systems. The nonhomogeneous boundary value problem (Example 1) has a unique solution, and the corresponding homogeneous problem (Example 3) has only the trivial solution. Further, the nonhomogeneous problem (Example 2) has either no solution or infinitely many, and the corresponding homogeneous problem (Example 4) has nontrivial solutions.

Eigenvalue Problems. Recall the matrix equation

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \lambda \mathbf{x} \tag{17}$$

that we discussed in Section 7.3. Equation (17) has the solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ for every value of λ, but for certain values of λ, called eigenvalues, there are also nonzero solutions, called eigenvectors. The situation is similar for boundary value problems.

Consider the problem consisting of the differential equation

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \tag{18}$$

together with the boundary conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0. \tag{19}$$

Observe that the boundary value problem (18), (19) is the same as the problems in Examples 3 and 4 if $\lambda = 2$ and $\lambda = 1$, respectively. Recalling the results of these examples, we note that for $\lambda = 2$, equations (18), (19) have only the trivial solution $y = 0$, while for $\lambda = 1$, the problem (18), (19) has other, nontrivial solutions. By extension of the terminology associated with equation (17), the values of λ for which nontrivial solutions of (18), (19) occur are called **eigenvalues**, and the nontrivial solutions themselves are called **eigenfunctions**. Restating the results of Examples 3 and 4, we have found that $\lambda = 1$ is an eigenvalue of the problem (18), (19) and that $\lambda = 2$ is not. Further, any nonzero multiple of $\sin x$ is an eigenfunction corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda = 1$.

Let us now turn to the problem of finding other eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the problem (18), (19). We need to consider separately the cases $\lambda > 0$, $\lambda = 0$, and $\lambda < 0$, because the form of the solution of equation (18) is different in each of these cases.

Case I: $\lambda > 0$. To avoid the frequent appearance of radical signs, it is convenient in this case to let $\lambda = \mu^2$ and to rewrite equation (18) as

$$y'' + \mu^2 y = 0. \tag{20}$$

The characteristic polynomial equation for equation (20) is $r^2 + \mu^2 = 0$ with roots $r = \pm i\mu$, so the general solution is

$$y = c_1 \cos(\mu x) + c_2 \sin(\mu x). \tag{21}$$

Note that μ is nonzero (since $\lambda > 0$) and there is no loss of generality if we also assume that μ is positive. The first boundary condition requires that $c_1 = 0$, and then the second boundary condition reduces to

$$c_2 \sin(\mu\pi) = 0. \tag{22}$$

We are seeking nontrivial solutions, so we must require that $c_2 \neq 0$. Consequently, $\sin \mu\pi$ must be zero, and our task is to choose μ so that this will occur. We know that the sine function has the value zero at every integer multiple of π, so we can choose μ to be any (positive) integer. The corresponding values of λ are the squares of the positive integers, so we have determined that

$$\lambda_1 = 1, \quad \lambda_2 = 4, \quad \lambda_3 = 9, \ \ldots, \lambda_n = n^2, \ \ldots \tag{23}$$

are eigenvalues of the problem (18), (19). The eigenfunctions are given by equation (21) with $c_1 = 0$, so they are just multiples of the functions $\sin nx$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Observe that the constant c_2 in equation (21) is never determined, so eigenfunctions are determined only up to an arbitrary multiplicative constant [just as are the eigenvectors of the matrix problem (17)]. We will usually choose the multiplicative constant to be 1 and write the eigenfunctions as

$$y_1(x) = \sin x, \quad y_2(x) = \sin(2x), \ \ldots, \quad y_n(x) = \sin(nx), \ \ldots, \tag{24}$$

remembering that multiples of these functions are also eigenfunctions.

Case II: $\lambda < 0$. In this case we let $\lambda = -\mu^2$, so that equation (18) becomes

$$y'' - \mu^2 y = 0. \tag{25}$$

The characteristic equation for equation (25) is $r^2 - \mu^2 = 0$ with roots $r = \pm\mu$, so its general solution can be written as

$$y = c_1 \cosh(\mu x) + c_2 \sinh(\mu x). \tag{26}$$

We have chosen the hyperbolic functions $\cosh \mu x$ and $\sinh \mu x$, rather than the exponential functions $\exp(\mu x)$ and $\exp(-\mu x)$, as a fundamental set of solutions for convenience in applying the boundary conditions. The first boundary condition requires that $c_1 = 0$; then the second boundary condition gives $c_2 \sinh(\mu\pi) = 0$. Since $\sinh(\mu\pi) = 0$ if and only if $\mu\pi = 0$, the fact that $\mu \neq 0$ means that $\sinh(\mu\pi) \neq 0$, and therefore we must have $c_2 = 0$. Consequently, $y = 0$ and there are no nontrivial solutions for $\lambda < 0$. In other words, the problem (18), (19) has no negative eigenvalues.

Case III: $\lambda = 0$. Now equation (18) becomes

$$y'' = 0, \tag{27}$$

and its general solution is

$$y = c_1 x + c_2. \tag{28}$$

The first of the boundary conditions (19) forces $c_2 = 0$; then the second boundary condition reduces to $c_1\pi = 0$, so $c_1 = 0$. There is only the trivial solution $y = 0$ in this case as well. That is, $\lambda = 0$ is not an eigenvalue of problem (18), (19).

To summarize our results: we have shown that the two-point boundary value problem (18), (19) has an infinite sequence of positive eigenvalues $\lambda_n = n^2$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ and that the corresponding eigenfunctions are proportional to $\sin(nx)$. Further, there are no other real eigenvalues. There remains the possibility that there might be some complex eigenvalues; recall that a matrix with real elements may very well have complex eigenvalues. In Problem 23 we outline an argument showing that the particular problem (18), (19) cannot have complex eigenvalues. Later, in Section 11.2, we discuss an important class of boundary value problems that includes (18), (19). One of the useful properties of this class of problems is that all their eigenvalues are real.

In later sections of this chapter, we will often encounter the problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = 0, \tag{29}$$

which differs from the problem (18), (19) only in that the second boundary condition is imposed at an arbitrary point $x = L$ rather than at $x = \pi$. The solution process for $\lambda > 0$ is exactly the same as before, up to the step where the second boundary condition is applied. For problem (29) this condition requires that

$$c_2 \sin(\mu L) = 0 \tag{30}$$

rather than equation (22), as in the former case. Consequently, μL must be an integer multiple of π, so $\mu = n\pi/L$, where n is a positive integer. Hence the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of problem (29) are given by

$$\lambda_n = \frac{n^2\pi^2}{L^2}, \quad y_n(x) = \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{31}$$

As usual, the eigenfunctions $y_n(x)$ are determined only up to an arbitrary multiplicative constant. In the same way as for the problem (18), (19), you can show that the problem (29) has no eigenvalues or eigenfunctions other than those in equation (31).

The problems following this section explore to some extent the effect of different boundary conditions on the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions. A more systematic discussion of two-point boundary and eigenvalue problems appears in Chapter 11.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 13, either solve the given boundary value problem or else show that it has no solution. (Problems 11 through 13 involve Euler equations; see Section 5.4.)

1. $y'' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(\pi) = 1$

2. $y'' + 2y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1, \quad y'(\pi) = 0$

3. $y'' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = 0$

4. $y'' + y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1, \quad y(L) = 0$

5. $y'' + y = x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0$

6. $y'' + 2y = x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0$

7. $y'' + 4y = \cos x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0$

8. $y'' + 4y = \sin x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0$

9. $y'' + 4y = \cos x, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(\pi) = 0$

10. $y'' + 3y = \cos x, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(\pi) = 0$

11. $x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 0, \quad y(1) = -1, \quad y(2) = 1$

12. $x^2y'' + 3xy' + y = x^2, \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y(e) = 0$

13. $x^2y'' + 5xy' + (4 + \pi^2)y = \ln x, \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y(e) = 0$

In each of Problems 14 through 20, find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the given boundary value problem. Assume that all eigenvalues are real.

14. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(\pi) = 0$

15. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0$

16. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(\pi) = 0$

17. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = 0$

18. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(L) = 0$

19. $y'' - \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(L) = 0$

20. $x^2y'' - xy' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y(L) = 0, \quad L > 1$

21. The axially symmetric laminar flow of a viscous incompressible fluid through a long straight tube of circular cross section under a constant axial pressure gradient is known as Poiseuille[1] flow. The axial velocity w is a function of the radial variable r only and satisfies the boundary value problem

$$w'' + \frac{1}{r}w' = -\frac{G}{\mu}, \quad w(R) = 0, \quad w(r) \text{ bounded for } 0 < r < R,$$

where R is the radius of the tube, G is the pressure gradient, and μ is the coefficient of viscosity of the fluid.

a. Find the velocity profile $w(r)$.

b. By integrating $w(r)$ over a cross section, show that the total flow rate Q is given by

$$Q = \frac{\pi R^4 G}{8\mu}.$$

Since Q, R, and G can be measured, this result provides a practical way to determine the viscosity μ.

c. Suppose that R is reduced to $3/4$ of its original value. What is the corresponding reduction in Q? This result has implications for blood flow through arteries constricted by plaque.

22. Consider a horizontal metal beam of length L subject to a vertical load $f(x)$ per unit length. The resulting vertical displacement in the beam $y(x)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$EI\frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = f(x),$$

where E is Young's modulus and I is the moment of inertia of the cross section about an axis through the centroid perpendicular to the xy-plane. Suppose that $f(x)/EI$ is a constant k. For each of the boundary conditions given below, solve for the displacement $y(x)$, and plot y versus x in the case that $L = 1$ and $k = -1$.

a. Simply supported at both ends:
$y(0) = y''(0) = y(L) = y''(L) = 0$

b. Clamped at both ends: $y(0) = y'(0) = y(L) = y'(L) = 0$

c. Clamped at $x = 0$, free at $x = L$:
$y(0) = y'(0) = y''(L) = y'''(L) = 0$

23. In this problem we outline a proof that the eigenvalues of the boundary value problem (18), (19) are real.

a. Write the solution of equation (18) as $y = k_1 \exp(i\mu x) + k_2 \exp(-i\mu x)$, where $\lambda = \mu^2$, and impose the boundary conditions (19). Show that nontrivial solutions exist if and only if

$$e^{i\mu x} - e^{-i\mu x} = 0. \tag{32}$$

b. Let $\mu = \nu + i\sigma$ and use Euler's relation $\exp(i\nu\pi) = \cos(\nu\pi) + i\sin(\nu\pi)$ to determine the real and imaginary parts of equation (32).

c. By considering the equations found in part (b), show that ν is an integer and that $\sigma = 0$. Consequently, μ is real and so is λ.

[1] Jean Louis Marie Poiseuille (1797–1869) was a French physician who was also trained in mathematics and physics. He was particularly interested in the flow of blood and published his first paper on the subject in 1840.

10.2 Fourier Series

Later in this chapter you will find that you can solve many important problems involving partial differential equations, provided that you can express a given function as an infinite sum of sines and/or cosines. In this and the following two sections we explain in detail how this can be done. These trigonometric series are called **Fourier series**[2]; they are somewhat analogous to Taylor series in that both types of series provide a means of expressing quite complicated functions in terms of certain familiar elementary functions.

We begin with a series of the form

$$\frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\left(a_m \cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right) + b_m \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\right). \tag{1}$$

On the set of points where the series (1) converges, it defines a function f, whose value at each point is the sum of the series for that value of x. In this case the series (1) is said to be the **Fourier series** for f. Our immediate goals are to determine what functions can be represented as a sum of a Fourier series and to find some means of computing the coefficients in the series corresponding to a given function. The first term in the series (1) is written as $a_0/2$ rather than as a_0 to simplify a formula for the coefficients that we derive below. Besides their association with the method of separation of variables and partial differential equations, Fourier series are also useful in various other ways, such as in the analysis of mechanical or electrical systems acted on by periodic external forces.

Periodicity of the Sine and Cosine Functions. To discuss Fourier series, it is necessary to develop certain properties of the trigonometric functions $\sin(m\pi x/L)$ and $\cos(m\pi x/L)$, where m is a positive integer. The first property is their periodic character. A function f is said to be **periodic** with period $T > 0$ if the domain of f contains $x + T$ whenever it contains x, and if

$$f(x + T) = f(x) \tag{2}$$

for every value of x. An example of a periodic function is shown in Figure 10.2.1. It follows immediately from the definition that if T is a period of f, then $2T$ is also a period, and so indeed is any integral multiple of T. The smallest value of T for which equation (2) holds is called the **fundamental period** of f. A constant function is a periodic function with an arbitrary period but no fundamental period.

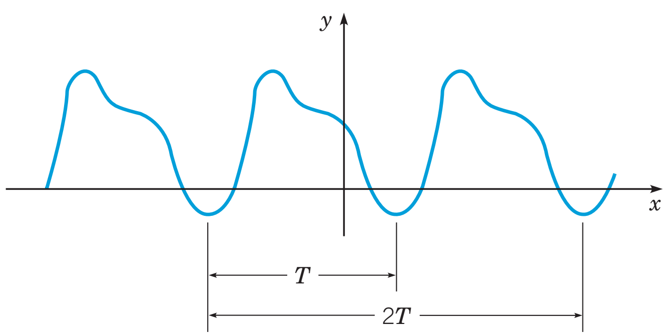


FIGURE 10.2.1 A periodic function of period T.

[2]Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1768–1830) was twice imprisoned during the French Revolution, later served as scientific advisor in Napoleon's army in Egypt, and was prefect of the department of Isère (Grenoble) from 1801 to 1815. He made the first systematic use, although not a completely rigorous investigation, of trigonometric series in 1807 and 1811 in his papers on heat conduction. The papers were not published due to objections from the referees, principally Lagrange. Although it turned out that Fourier's claim of generality was somewhat too strong, his results inspired a flood of important research that has continued to the present day. See Grattan-Guinness or Carslaw (Historical Introduction) for a detailed history of Fourier series.

If f and g are any two periodic functions with common period T, then any linear combination $c_1 f + c_2 g$ is also periodic with period T. To prove this statement, begin by defining $F(x) = c_1 f(x) + c_2 g(x)$; then, for any x,

$$F(x+T) = c_1 f(x+T) + c_2 g(x+T) = c_1 f(x) + c_2 g(x) = F(x). \tag{3}$$

Moreover, it can be shown that the sum of any finite number, or even the sum of a convergent infinite series, of functions of period T is also periodic with period T. In a similar way, you can show that the product fg is periodic with period T.

In particular, the functions $\sin(m\pi x/L)$ and $\cos(m\pi x/L)$, $m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, are periodic with fundamental period $T = 2L/m$. To see this, recall that $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ have fundamental period 2π and that $\sin \alpha x$ and $\cos \alpha x$ have fundamental period $2\pi/\alpha$. If we choose $\alpha = m\pi/L$, then the period T of $\sin(m\pi x/L)$ and $\cos(m\pi x/L)$ is given by $T = 2\pi L/(m\pi) = 2L/m$.

Note also that, since every positive integral multiple of a period is also a period, each of the functions $\sin(m\pi x/L)$ and $\cos(m\pi x/L)$ has the common period $2L$.

Orthogonality of the Sine and Cosine Functions. To describe a second essential property of the functions $\sin(m\pi x/L)$ and $\cos(m\pi x/L)$, we generalize the concept of orthogonality of vectors (see Section 7.2). The standard **inner product** (u, v) of two real-valued functions u and v on the interval $\alpha \le x \le \beta$ is defined by

$$(u, v) = \int_\alpha^\beta u(x)v(x)\,dx. \tag{4}$$

The functions u and v are said to be **orthogonal** on $\alpha \le x \le \beta$ if their inner product is zero—that is, if

$$\int_\alpha^\beta u(x)v(x)\,dx = 0. \tag{5}$$

A set of functions is said to be **mutually orthogonal** if each distinct pair of functions in the set is orthogonal.

The functions $\sin(m\pi x/L)$ and $\cos(m\pi x/L)$, $m = 1, 2, \ldots$ form a mutually orthogonal set of functions on the interval $-L \le x \le L$. In fact, they satisfy the following orthogonality relations:

$$\int_{-L}^{L} \cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \ne n, \\ L, & m = n; \end{cases} \tag{6}$$

$$\int_{-L}^{L} \cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = 0, \quad \text{all } m, n; \tag{7}$$

$$\int_{-L}^{L} \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \ne n, \\ L, & m = n. \end{cases} \tag{8}$$

These results can be obtained by direct integration. For example, to derive equation (8), note that

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{-L}^{L} \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx &= \frac{1}{2}\int_{-L}^{L}\left(\cos\left(\frac{(m-n)\pi x}{L}\right) - \cos\left(\frac{(m+n)\pi x}{L}\right)\right)dx \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\frac{L}{\pi}\left(\frac{\sin((m-n)\pi x/L)}{m-n} - \frac{\sin((m+n)\pi x/L)}{m+n}\right)\Bigg|_{-L}^{L} \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

as long as $m+n$ and $m-n$ are not zero. Since m and n are positive, $m+n \ne 0$. On the other hand, if $m-n=0$, then $m=n$, and the integral must be evaluated in a different way. In this case

$$\int_{-L}^{L}\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \int_{-L}^{L}\left(\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\right)^2 dx$$
$$= \frac{1}{2}\int_{-L}^{L}\left(1-\cos\left(\frac{2m\pi x}{L}\right)\right)dx$$
$$= \frac{1}{2}\left(x-\frac{L}{2m\pi}\sin\left(\frac{2m\pi x}{L}\right)\right)\Bigg|_{-L}^{L}$$
$$= L.$$

This establishes equation (8); equations (6) and (7) can be verified by similar computations. (See Problem 12.)

The Euler-Fourier Formulas. Now let us suppose that a series of the form (1) converges for all real numbers x on the interval $-L \le x \le L$, and let us call its sum $f(x)$:

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\left(a_m\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right) + b_m\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\right). \tag{9}$$

The coefficients a_m and b_m can be related to $f(x)$ as a consequence of the orthogonality conditions (6), (7), and (8). First multiply equation (9) by $\cos(n\pi x/L)$, where n is a *fixed* positive integer $(n > 0)$, and integrate with respect to x from $-L$ to L. Assuming that the integration can be legitimately carried out term by term,[3] we obtain

$$\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \frac{a_0}{2}\int_{-L}^{L}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx$$
$$+\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} a_m\int_{-L}^{L}\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx$$
$$+\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} b_m\int_{-L}^{L}\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx. \tag{10}$$

Keeping in mind that n is fixed whereas m ranges over the positive integers, it follows from the orthogonality relations (6) and (7) that the only nonzero term on the right-hand side of equation (10) is the one for which $m = n$ in the first summation. Hence

$$\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = a_n\int_{-L}^{L}\cos^2\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = a_nL, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{11}$$

Equation (11) is valid for all $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. To determine a_0, we can integrate equation (9) from $-L$ to L, obtaining

$$\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)dx = \frac{a_0}{2}\int_{-L}^{L}dx + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}a_m\int_{-L}^{L}\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}b_m\int_{-L}^{L}\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx$$
$$= a_0L, \tag{12}$$

since each integral involving a trigonometric function over an interval of length $2L$ (one period) is zero. Thus

$$a_n = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{13}$$

By writing the constant term in equation (9) as $a_0/2$, it is possible to compute all the a_n from equation (13). Otherwise, a separate formula, with an extra factor of $1/2$, would have to be used for a_0.

[3]This is a nontrivial assumption, because not all convergent series with variable terms can be so integrated. For the special case of Fourier series, however, term-by-term integration can always be justified.

A similar expression for b_n may be obtained by multiplying equation (9) by $\sin(n\pi x/L)$, integrating termwise from $-L$ to L, and using the orthogonality relations (7) and (8); thus

$$b_n = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{14}$$

Equations (13) and (14) are known as the **Euler-Fourier formulas** for the coefficients in a Fourier series. Hence, if the series (9) converges to $f(x)$, and if the series can be integrated term-by-term, then the coefficients *must be given* by equations (13) and (14).

Note that equations (13) and (14) are explicit formulas for a_n and b_n in terms of f, and that the determination of any particular coefficient is independent of all the other coefficients. Of course, the difficulty in evaluating the integrals in equations (13) and (14) depends very much on the particular function f involved.

Note also that the formulas (13) and (14) depend only on the values of $f(x)$ in the interval $-L \le x \le L$. Since each of the terms in the Fourier series (9) is periodic with period $2L$, the series converges for all x whenever it converges in $-L \le x \le L$, and its sum is also a periodic function with period $2L$. Hence $f(x)$ is determined for all x by its values in the interval $-L \le x \le L$.

It is possible to show (see Problem 27) that if g is periodic with period T, then every integral of g over an interval of length T has the same value. If we apply this result to the Euler-Fourier formulas (13) and (14), it follows that the interval of integration, $-L \le x \le L$, can be replaced, if it is more convenient to do so, by any other interval of length $2L$.

EXAMPLE 1

Assume that there is a Fourier series converging to the function f defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -x, & -2 \le x < 0, \\ x, & 0 \le x < 2; \end{cases}$$
$$f(x+4) = f(x). \tag{15}$$

Determine the coefficients in this Fourier series.

Solution:

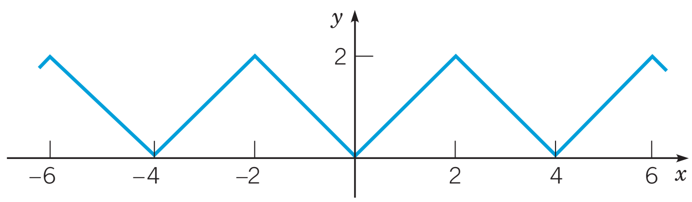


FIGURE 10.2.2 The triangular wave in Example 1.

This function represents a triangular wave (see Figure 10.2.2) and is periodic with period 4. Thus the Fourier series has the form

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\left(a_m\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right) + b_m\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right)\right), \tag{16}$$

where the coefficients are computed from equations (13) and (14) with $L = 2$. Substituting for $f(x)$ in equation (13) with $m = 0$, we have

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-2}^{0}(-x)\,dx + \frac{1}{2}\int_{0}^{2}x\,dx = 1 + 1 = 2. \tag{17}$$

For $m > 0$, equation (13) yields

$$a_m = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-2}^{0}(-x)\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right)dx + \frac{1}{2}\int_{0}^{2}x\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right)dx.$$

These integrals can be evaluated through integration by parts, with the result that

$$\begin{aligned}
a_m &= \frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{2}{m\pi}x\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{2}{m\pi}\right)^2\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right)\right)\Bigg|_{-2}^{0} \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{2}{m\pi}x\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{2}{m\pi}\right)^2\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right)\right)\Bigg|_{0}^{2} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left(-\left(\frac{2}{m\pi}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2}{m\pi}\right)^2\cos(m\pi) + \left(\frac{2}{m\pi}\right)^2\cos(m\pi) - \left(\frac{2}{m\pi}\right)^2\right) \\
&= \frac{4}{(m\pi)^2}(\cos(m\pi) - 1), \qquad m = 1, 2, \ldots \\
&= \begin{cases} -\dfrac{8}{(m\pi)^2}, & m \text{ odd}, \\ 0, & m \text{ even}. \end{cases}
\end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

Finally, from equation (14), it follows in a similar way that

$$b_m = 0, \qquad m = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{19}$$

By substituting the coefficients from equations (17), (18), and (19) in the series (16), we obtain the Fourier series for f:

$$\begin{aligned}
f(x) &= 1 - \frac{8}{\pi^2}\left(\cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{3^2}\cos\left(\frac{3\pi x}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{5^2}\cos\left(\frac{5\pi x}{2}\right) + \cdots\right) \\
&= 1 - \frac{8}{\pi^2}\sum_{m=1,3,5,\ldots}^{\infty}\frac{1}{m^2}\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{2}\right) \\
&= 1 - \frac{8}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{(2n-1)^2}\cos\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2}\right).
\end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

EXAMPLE 2

Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -3 < x < -1, \\ 1, & -1 < x < 1, \\ 0, & 1 < x < 3 \end{cases} \tag{21}$$

and suppose that $f(x + 6) = f(x)$. Graph three periods of $y = f(x)$. Find the coefficients in the Fourier series for f.

Solution:

The graph of $y = f(x)$ is shown in Figure 10.2.3.

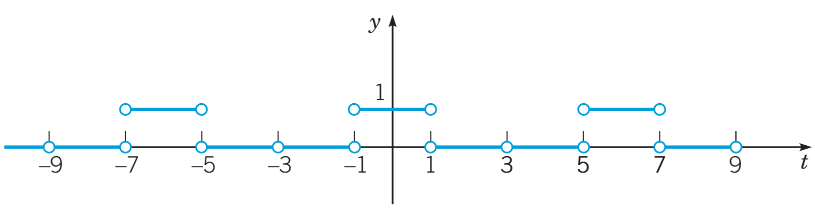


FIGURE 10.2.3 Graph of $f(x)$ in Example 2.

Note that $f(x)$ is not assigned a value at the points of discontinuity, such as $x = -1$ and $x = 1$, or at the ends of the period, such as $x = -9$, $x = -3$, $x = 3$, and $x = 9$. This has no effect on the values of the Fourier coefficients, because they result from the evaluation of integrals, and the value of an integral is not affected by the value of the integrand at a single point or at a finite number of points. Thus the coefficients are the same regardless of what value, if any, $f(x)$ is assigned at a point of discontinuity.

Since f has period 6, it follows that $L = 3$ in this problem. Consequently, the Fourier series for f has the form

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(a_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right) + b_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)\right), \tag{22}$$

where the coefficients a_n and b_n are given by equations (13) and (14) with $L = 3$. We have

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{3}\int_{-3}^{3} f(x)dx = \frac{1}{3}\int_{-1}^{1} 1\,dx = \frac{2}{3}. \tag{23}$$

Similarly,

$$a_n = \frac{1}{3}\int_{-1}^{1}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)dx = \frac{1}{n\pi}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)\Bigg|_{-1}^{1} = \frac{2}{n\pi}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{24}$$

and

$$b_n = \frac{1}{3}\int_{-1}^{1}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)dx = -\frac{1}{n\pi}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)\Bigg|_{-1}^{1} = 0, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{25}$$

Thus the Fourier series for f is

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{1}{3} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{2}{n\pi}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right) \qquad (26)\\ &= \frac{1}{3} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\pi}\left(\cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\cos\left(\frac{2\pi x}{3}\right) - \frac{1}{4}\cos\left(\frac{4\pi x}{3}\right) - \frac{1}{5}\cos\left(\frac{5\pi x}{3}\right) + \cdots\right). \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Consider again the function in Example 1 and its Fourier series (20). Investigate the speed with which the series converges. In particular, determine how many terms are needed so that the error is no greater than 0.01 for all x.

Solution:

The m^{th} partial sum in this series

$$s_m(x) = 1 - \frac{8}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{m}\frac{1}{(2n-1)^2}\cos\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2}\right) \tag{27}$$

can be used to approximate the function f. The coefficients diminish as $(2n-1)^{-2}$, so the series converges fairly rapidly. This is borne out by Figure 10.2.4, where the partial sums for $m = 1$ (dotted blue) and $m = 2$ (dashed red) are plotted. To investigate the convergence in more detail, we can consider the error $e_m(x) = f(x) - s_m(x)$. Figure 10.2.5 shows a plot of $|e_6(x)|$ versus x for $0 \le x \le 2$. Observe that $|e_6(x)|$ is greatest at the points $x = 0$ and $x = 2$, where the graph of $f(x)$ has corners. It is more difficult for the series to approximate the function near these points, resulting in a larger error there for a given m. Similar graphs are obtained for other values of m.

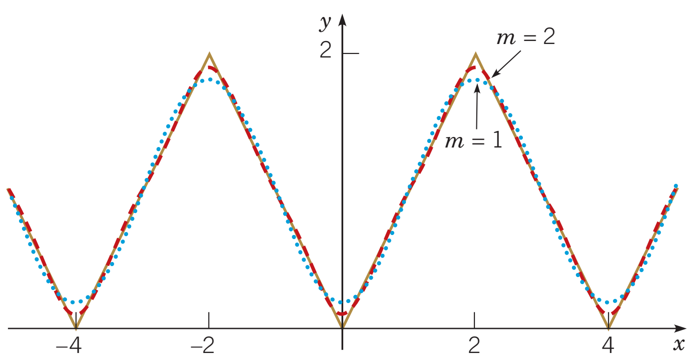


FIGURE 10.2.4 Partial sums in the Fourier series, equation (20) for $m = 1$ (dotted blue) and for $m = 2$ (dashed red), for the triangular wave (gold).

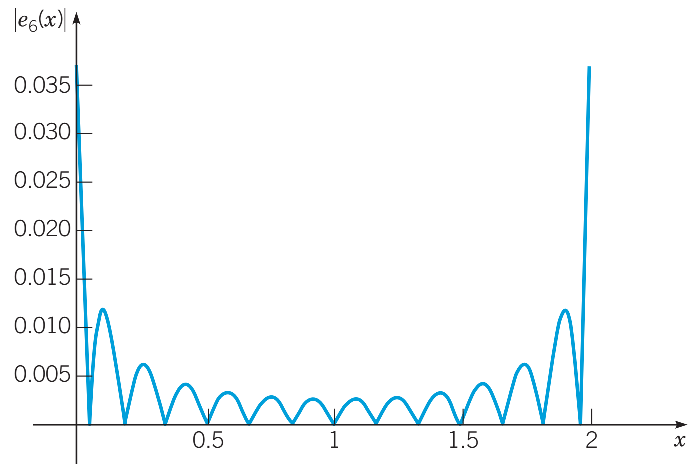


FIGURE 10.2.5 Plot of $|e_6(x)|$ versus x for the triangular wave in Example 3.

Once you realize that the maximum error always occurs at $x = 0$ or $x = 2$, you can obtain a *uniform* error bound for each m simply by evaluating $|e_m(x)|$ at one of these points. For example, for $m = 6$ we have $e_6(2) = 0.03370$, so $|e_6(x)| < 0.034$ for $0 \le x \le 2$ and, consequently, for all x. Table 10.2.1 shows corresponding data for other values of m; these data are plotted in Figure 10.2.6. From this information you can begin to estimate the number of terms that are needed in the series in order to achieve a given level of accuracy in the approximation. From Table 10.2.1, we see that the maximum error drops below 0.01 somewhere between $m = 20$ and $m = 25$. In fact, to guarantee that $|e_m(x)| \le 0.01$, we need to choose $m = 21$, for which the error is $e_{21}(2) = 0.00965$.

TABLE 10.2.1 Values of the Error $e_m(2)$ for the Triangular Wave

m	$e_m(2)$
2	0.09937
4	0.05040
6	0.03370
10	0.02025
15	0.01350
20	0.01013
25	0.00810

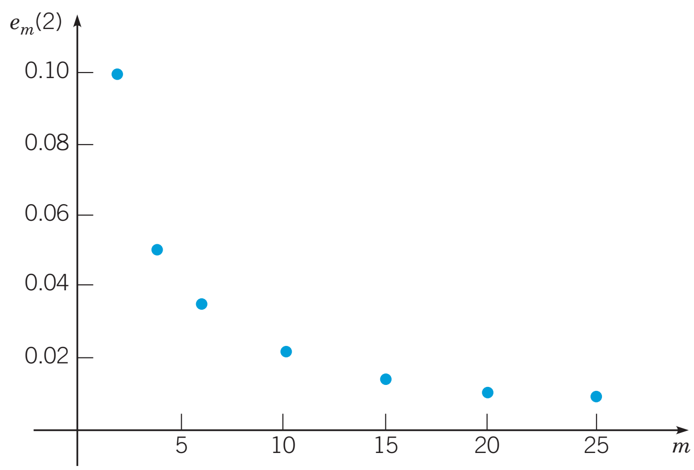


FIGURE 10.2.6 Plot of $e_m(2)$ versus m for the triangular wave.

In this book, Fourier series appear mainly as a means of solving certain problems in partial differential equations. However, Fourier series have much wider application in science and engineering and, in general, are valuable tools in the investigation of periodic phenomena. A basic problem is to resolve an incoming signal into its harmonic components, which amounts to constructing its Fourier series representation. In some frequency ranges, the separate terms correspond to different colors or to different audible tones. The magnitude of the coefficient determines the amplitude of each component. This process is referred to as **spectral analysis**.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8, determine whether the given function is periodic. If so, find its fundamental period.

1. $\sin(5x)$

2. $\cos(2\pi x)$

3. $\sinh(2x)$

4. $\sin(\pi x/L)$

5. $\tan(\pi x)$

6. x^2

7. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & 2n-1 \le x < 2n, \\ 1, & 2n \le x < 2n+1; \end{cases} \quad n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$

8. $f(x) = \begin{cases} (-1)^n, & 2n-1 \le x < 2n, \\ 1, & 2n \le x < 2n+1; \end{cases} \quad n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$

9. If $f(x) = -x$ for $-L < x < L$, and if $f(x+2L) = f(x)$, find a formula for $f(x)$ in the interval $L < x < 2L$; in the interval $-3L < x < -2L$.

10. If $f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1, & -1 < x < 0, \\ x, & 0 < x < 1, \end{cases}$ and if $f(x+2) = f(x)$, find a formula for $f(x)$ in the interval $1 < x < 2$; in the interval $8 < x < 9$.

11. If $f(x) = L - x$ for $0 < x < 2L$, and if $f(x+2L) = f(x)$, find a formula for $f(x)$ in the interval $-L < x < 0$.

12. Verify equations (6) and (7) in this section by direct integration.

In each of Problems 13 through 18:

a. Sketch the graph of the given function for three periods.
b. Find the Fourier series for the given function.

13. $f(x) = -x, \quad -L \le x < L; \quad f(x+2L) = f(x)$

14. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & -L \le x < 0, \\ 0, & 0 \le x < L; \end{cases} \quad f(x+2L) = f(x)$

15. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & -\pi \le x < 0, \\ 0, & 0 \le x < \pi; \end{cases} \quad f(x+2\pi) = f(x)$

16. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1, & -1 \le x < 0, \\ 1-x, & 0 \le x < 1; \end{cases} \quad f(x+2) = f(x)$

17. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x+L, & -L \le x \le 0, \\ L, & 0 < x < L; \end{cases} \quad f(x+2L) = f(x)$

18. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -2 \le x \le -1, \\ x, & -1 < x < 1, \\ 0, & 1 \le x < 2; \end{cases} \quad f(x+4) = f(x)$

In each of Problems 19 through 24:

a. Sketch the graph of the given function for three periods.
b. Find the Fourier series for the given function.
G **c.** Plot the partial sum $s_m(x)$ versus x for $m = 5$, 10, and 20.
d. Describe how the Fourier series seems to be converging.

19. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1, & -2 \le x < 0, \\ 1, & 0 \le x < 2; \end{cases} \quad f(x+4) = f(x)$

20. $f(x) = x, \quad -1 \le x < 1; \quad f(x+2) = f(x)$

21. $f(x) = x^2/2, \quad -2 \le x \le 2; \quad f(x+4) = f(x)$

22. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x+2, & -2 \le x < 0, \\ 2-2x, & 0 \le x < 2; \end{cases} \quad f(x+4) = f(x)$

23. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{2}x, & -2 \le x < 0, \\ 2x - \frac{1}{2}x^2, & 0 \le x < 2; \end{cases} \quad f(x+4) = f(x)$

24. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -3 \le x \le 0, \\ x^2(3-x), & 0 < x < 3; \end{cases} \quad f(x+6) = f(x)$

25. Consider the function f defined in Problem 21, and let $e_m(x) = f(x) - s_m(x)$.

a. Plot $|e_m(x)|$ versus x for $0 \le x \le 2$ for several values of m.
b. Find the smallest value of m for which $|e_m(x)| \le 0.01$ for all x.

26. Consider the function f defined in Problem 24, and let $e_m(x) = f(x) - s_m(x)$.

G **a.** Plot $|e_m(x)|$ versus x for $0 \le x \le 3$ for several values of m.
N **b.** Find the smallest value of m for which $|e_m(x)| \le 0.1$ for all x.

27. Suppose that g is an integrable periodic function with period T.

a. If $0 \le a \le T$, show that

$$\int_0^T g(x)\,dx = \int_a^{a+T} g(x)\,dx.$$

Hint: Show first that $\int_0^a g(x)\,dx = \int_T^{a+T} g(x)\,dx$. Then, in the second integral, consider the change of variable $s = x - T$.

b. Show that for any value of a, not necessarily in $0 \le a \le T$,

$$\int_0^T g(x)\,dx = \int_a^{a+T} g(x)\,dx.$$

c. Show that for any values of a and b,

$$\int_a^{a+T} g(x)\,dx = \int_b^{b+T} g(x)\,dx.$$

28. If f is differentiable and is periodic with period T, show that f' is also periodic with period T. Determine whether

$$F(x) = \int_0^x f(t)\,dt$$

is always periodic.

29. In this problem we indicate certain similarities between three-dimensional geometric vectors and Fourier series.

a. Let $\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$, and $\mathbf{v}_3$ be a set of mutually orthogonal vectors in three dimensions, and let $\mathbf{u}$ be any three-dimensional vector. Show that

$$\mathbf{u} = a_1\mathbf{v}_1 + a_2\mathbf{v}_2 + a_3\mathbf{v}_3, \tag{28}$$

where

$$a_i = \frac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}_i}{\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i}, \qquad i = 1, 2, 3. \tag{29}$$

Show that a_i can be interpreted as the projection of $\mathbf{u}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{v}_i$ divided by the length of $\mathbf{v}_i$.

b. Define the inner product (u, v) by

$$(u, v) = \int_{-L}^{L} u(x)v(x)\,dx. \tag{30}$$

Also let

$$\phi_n(x) = \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots;$$
$$\psi_n(x) = \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{31}$$

Show that equation (10) can be written in the form

$$(f, \phi_n) = \frac{a_0}{2}(\phi_0, \phi_n) + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} a_m(\phi_m, \phi_n) + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} b_m(\psi_m, \phi_n). \tag{32}$$

c. Use equation (32) and the corresponding equation for (f, ψ_n), together with the orthogonality relations, to show that

$$a_n = \frac{(f, \phi_n)}{(\phi_n, \phi_n)}, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots;$$
$$b_n = \frac{(f, \psi_n)}{(\psi_n, \psi_n)}, \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{33}$$

Note the resemblance between equations (33) and equation (29). The functions ϕ_n and ψ_n play a role for functions similar to that of the orthogonal vectors $\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$, and $\mathbf{v}_3$ in three-dimensional space. The coefficients a_n and b_n can be interpreted as projections of the function f onto the base functions ϕ_n and ψ_n.

Observe also that any vector in three dimensions can be expressed as a linear combination of three mutually orthogonal vectors. In a somewhat similar way, any sufficiently smooth function defined on $-L \le x \le L$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the mutually orthogonal functions $\cos(n\pi x/L)$ and $\sin(n\pi x/L)$, that is, as a Fourier series.

10.3 The Fourier Convergence Theorem

In the preceding section we showed that if the Fourier series

$$\frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\left(a_m \cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right) + b_m \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\right) \tag{1}$$

converges and thereby defines a function f, then f is periodic with period $2L$, and the coefficients a_m and b_m are related to $f(x)$ by the Euler-Fourier formulas:

$$a_m = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots; \tag{2}$$

$$b_m = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \qquad m = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{3}$$

In this section we suppose that a function f is given. If this function is periodic with period $2L$ and integrable on the interval $[-L, L]$, then a set of coefficients a_m and b_m can be computed from equations (2) and (3), and a series of the form (1) can be formally constructed. The question is whether this series converges for each value of x and, if so, whether its sum is $f(x)$. Examples have been discovered showing that the Fourier series corresponding to a function f may not converge to $f(x)$ and may even diverge. Functions whose Fourier series do not converge to the value of the function at isolated points are easily constructed, and examples will be presented later in this section. Functions whose Fourier series diverge at one or more points are more pathological, and we will not consider them in this book.

To guarantee convergence of a Fourier series to the function from which its coefficients were computed, it is essential to place additional conditions on the function. From a practical point of view, such conditions should be broad enough to cover all situations of interest, yet simple enough to be easily checked for particular functions. Through the years, several sets of conditions have been devised to serve this purpose.

Before stating a convergence theorem for Fourier series, recall that during the introduction of the Laplace transform in Section 6.1, we defined a function f to be **piecewise continuous** on a bounded interval $a \le x \le b$ if the interval can be partitioned by a finite number of points $a = x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_n = b$ so that

1. f is continuous on each open subinterval $x_{i-1} < x < x_i$.
2. f approaches a finite limit as the endpoints of each subinterval are approached from within the subinterval.

The graph of a piecewise continuous function is shown in Figure 10.3.1.

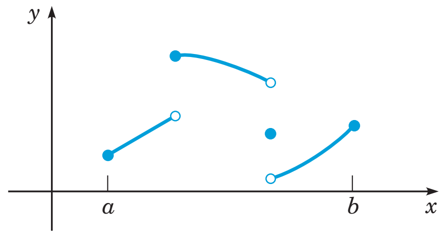


FIGURE 10.3.1 A piecewise continuous function.

The notation $f(c^+)$ is used to denote the *limit of* $f(x)$ *as* $x \to c$ *from the right*; and, similarly, $f(c^-)$ denotes the *limit of* $f(x)$ *as* x *approaches* c *from the left*. That is, $f(c^+) = \lim_{x\to c^+} f(x)$ and $f(c^-) = \lim_{x\to c^-} f(x)$.

Note that it is not essential that the function even be defined at the partition points x_i. For example, in the following theorem we assume that f' is piecewise continuous; but certainly f' does not exist at those points where f itself is discontinuous. It is also not essential that the interval be closed; it may also be open, or open at one end and closed at the other.

Theorem 10.3.1 | Fourier Convergence Theorem

Suppose that f and f' are piecewise continuous on the interval $-L \le x < L$. Further, suppose that f is defined outside the interval $-L \le x < L$ so that it is periodic with period $2L$. Then f has a Fourier series

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\left(a_m \cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right) + b_m \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)\right), \tag{4}$$

whose coefficients are given by equations (2) and (3). The Fourier series converges to $f(x)$ at all points where f is continuous, and it converges to $\frac{1}{2}\left(f(x^+) + f(x^-)\right)$ at all points where f is discontinuous.

Note that $\frac{1}{2}\left(f(x^+) + f(x^-)\right)$ is the mean value of the right- and left-hand limits at the point x. At any point where f is continuous, $f(x^+) = f(x^-) = f(x)$. Thus it is correct to say that the Fourier series converges to $\frac{1}{2}\left(f(x^+) + f(x^-)\right)$ at all points. Whenever we say that a Fourier series converges to a function f, we always mean that it converges in this sense.

We emphasize that the conditions given in this theorem are only sufficient for the convergence of a Fourier series; they are by no means necessary. Nor are they the most general sufficient conditions that have been discovered. In spite of this, the proof of the theorem is fairly difficult, and we do not discuss it here.[4] Under more restrictive conditions, a much simpler convergence proof is possible; see Problem 18.

To obtain a better understanding of the content of the theorem, it is helpful to consider some classes of functions that fail to satisfy the assumed conditions. Functions that are not included in the theorem are primarily those with infinite discontinuities in the interval $[-L, L]$, such as $1/x^2$ as $x \to 0$, or $\ln|x - L|$ as $x \to L$. Functions having an infinite number of jump discontinuities in this bounded interval are also excluded; however, such functions are rarely encountered.

It is noteworthy that a Fourier series may converge to a sum that is not differentiable, or even continuous, in spite of the fact that each term in the series (4) is continuous, and even differentiable infinitely many times. The example below is an illustration of this, as is Example 2 in Section 10.2.

[4]Proofs of the convergence of a Fourier series can be found in most books on advanced calculus. See, for example, Kaplan (Chapter 7) or Buck (Chapter 6).

EXAMPLE 1

Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -L < x < 0, \\ L, & 0 < x < L, \end{cases} \tag{5}$$

and let f be defined outside this interval so that $f(x + 2L) = f(x)$ for all x. We will temporarily leave open the definition of f at the points $x = 0, \pm L$. Find the Fourier series for this function and determine where it converges.

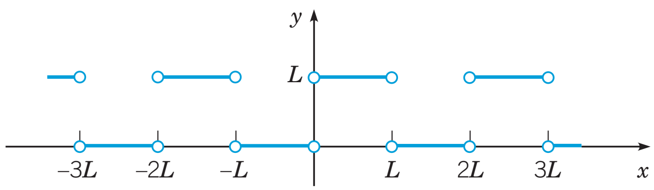


FIGURE 10.3.2 The square wave in Example 1.

Solution:

Three periods of the graph of $y = f(x)$ are shown in Figure 10.3.2; it extends periodically to infinity in both directions. It can be thought of as representing a square wave. The interval $[-L, L]$ can be partitioned into the two open subintervals $(-L, 0)$ and $(0, L)$. In $(0, L)$, $f(x) = L$ and $f'(x) = 0$. Clearly, both f and f' are continuous and furthermore have limits as $x \to 0$ from the right and as $x \to L$ from the left. The situation in $(-L, 0)$ is similar. Consequently, both f and f' are piecewise continuous on $[-L, L)$, so f satisfies the conditions of Theorem 10.3.1. If the coefficients a_m and b_m are computed from equations (2) and (3), the convergence of the resulting Fourier series to $f(x)$ is ensured at all points where f is continuous. Note that the values of the Fourier coefficients a_m and b_m are the same regardless of the definition of f at its points of discontinuity. This is true because the value of an integral is unaffected by changing the value of the integrand at a finite number of points. From equation (2),

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)dx = \int_0^L 1dx = L$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} a_m &= \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \int_0^L \cos\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx \\ &= \frac{L}{m\pi}(\sin(m\pi) - 0) = 0, \quad m \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, from equation (3),

$$\begin{aligned} b_m &= \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \int_0^L \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right)dx \\ &= \frac{L}{m\pi}(1 - \cos(m\pi)) = \begin{cases} 0, & m \text{ even;} \\ \dfrac{2L}{mx}, & m \text{ odd.} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{L}{2} + \frac{2L}{\pi}\left(\sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{L}\right) + \frac{1}{3}\sin\left(\frac{3\pi x}{L}\right) + \frac{1}{5}\sin\left(\frac{5\pi x}{L}\right) + \cdots\right) \\ &= \frac{L}{2} + \frac{2L}{\pi}\sum_{m=1,3,5,\ldots}^{\infty} \frac{1}{m}\sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{L}\right) \\ &= \frac{L}{2} + \frac{2L}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2n-1}\sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{L}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

At the points $x = 0, \pm nL$, where the function f in the example is not continuous, all terms in the series after the first vanish and the sum is $L/2$. This is the mean value of the limits from the right and left, as it should be. Thus we might as well define f at these points to have the value $L/2$.

If we choose to define it otherwise, the series still gives the value $L/2$ at these points, since all of the preceding calculations remain valid. The series simply does not converge to the function at those points unless f is defined to have the value $L/2$. This illustrates the possibility that the Fourier series corresponding to a function may not converge to it at points of discontinuity unless the function is suitably defined at such points.

The manner in which the partial sums

$$s_n(x) = \frac{L}{2} + \frac{2L}{\pi}\left(\sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{L}\right) + \cdots + \frac{1}{2n-1}\sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{L}\right)\right), \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots$$

of the Fourier series (6) converge to $f(x)$ is indicated in Figure 10.3.3, where L has been chosen to be 1 and the graph of $s_8(x)$ is plotted. The figure suggests that at points where f is continuous, the partial sums do approach $f(x)$ as n increases. However, in the neighborhood of points of discontinuity, such as $x = 0$ and $x = L$, the partial sums do not converge smoothly to the mean value. Instead, they tend to overshoot the mark at each end of the jump, as though they cannot quite accommodate themselves to the sharp turn required at this point. This behavior is typical of Fourier series at points of discontinuity and is known as the **Gibbs[5] phenomenon**.

Additional insight is attained by considering the error $e_n(x) = f(x) - s_n(x)$. Figure 10.3.4 shows a plot of $|e_n(x)|$ versus x for $n = 8$ and for $L = 1$. The least upper bound of $|e_8(x)|$ is 0.5 and is approached as $x \to 0$ and as $x \to 1$. As n increases, the error decreases in the interior of the interval [where $f(x)$ is continuous], but the least upper bound does not diminish with increasing n. Thus we cannot *uniformly* reduce the error throughout the interval by increasing the number of terms.

Figures 10.3.3 and 10.3.4 also show that the series in this example converges more slowly than the one in Example 1 in Section 10.2. This is due to the fact that the coefficients in the series (6) are proportional only to $1/(2n-1)$.

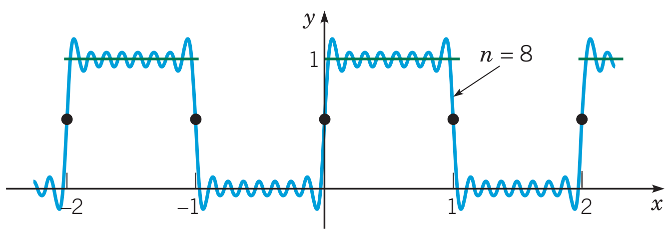


FIGURE 10.3.3 The partial sum $s_8(x)$ in the Fourier series, equation (6), for the square wave.

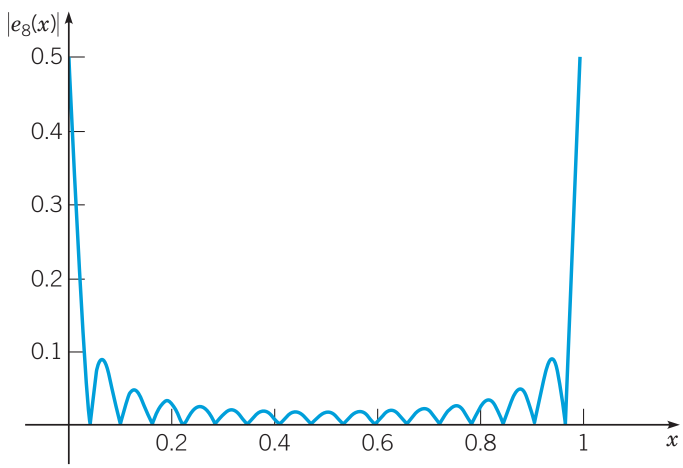


FIGURE 10.3.4 A plot of the error $|e_8(x)|$ versus x for the square wave.

[5]The Gibbs phenomenon is named after Josiah Willard Gibbs (1839–1903), who is better known for his work on vector analysis and statistical mechanics. Gibbs was professor of mathematical physics at Yale and one of the first American scientists to achieve an international reputation. The Gibbs phenomenon is discussed in more detail by Carslaw (Chapter 9).

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, assume that the given function is periodically extended outside the original interval.

a. Find the Fourier series for the extended function.
b. Sketch the graph of the function to which the series converges for three periods.

1. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1, & \pi \le x < 0, \\ 1, & 0 \le x < \pi \end{cases}$

2. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -\pi \le x < 0, \\ x, & 0 \le x < \pi \end{cases}$

3. $f(x) = \begin{cases} L + x, & -L \le x < 0, \\ L - x, & 0 \le x < L \end{cases}$

4. $f(x) = 1 - x^2, \quad -1 \le x < 1$

5. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -\pi \le x < -\pi/2, \\ 1, & -\pi/2 \le x < \pi/2, \\ 0, & \pi/2 \le x < \pi \end{cases}$

6. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -1 \le x < 0, \\ x^2, & 0 \le x < 1 \end{cases}$

In each of Problems 7 through 12, assume that the given function is periodically extended outside the original interval.

a. Find the Fourier series for the given function.
G **b.** Let $e_n(x) = f(x) - s_n(x)$. Find the least upper bound or the maximum value (if it exists) of $|e_n(x)|$ for $n = 10$, 20, and 40.
G **c.** If possible, find the smallest n for which $|e_n(x)| \le 0.01$ for all x.

7. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & -\pi \le x < 0, \\ 0, & 0 \le x < \pi; \end{cases} \quad f(x + 2\pi) = f(x)$
(see Section 10.2, Problem 15)

8. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1, & -1 \le x < 0, \\ 1 - x, & 0 \le x < 1; \end{cases} \quad f(x + 2) = f(x)$
(see Section 10.2, Problem 16)

9. $f(x) = x, \quad -1 \le x < 1; \quad f(x + 2) = f(x)$
(see Section 10.2, Problem 20)

10. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 2, & -2 \le x < 0, \\ 2 - 2x, & 0 \le x < 2; \end{cases} \quad f(x + 4) = f(x)$
(see Section 10.2, Problem 22)

11. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -1 \le x < 0, \\ x^2, & 0 \le x < 1; \end{cases} \quad f(x + 2) = f(x)$
(see Problem 6)

12. $f(x) = x - x^3, \quad -1 \le x < 1; \; f(x + 2) = f(x)$

Periodic Forcing Terms. In this chapter we are concerned mainly with the use of Fourier series to solve boundary value problems for certain partial differential equations. However, Fourier series are also useful in many other situations where periodic phenomena occur.

Problems 13 through 16 indicate how they can be employed to solve initial value problems with periodic forcing terms.

13. Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + \omega^2 y = \sin(nt), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where n is a positive integer and $\omega^2 \ne n^2$. What happens if $\omega^2 = n^2$?

14. Find the formal solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + \omega^2 y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin(nt), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where $\omega > 0$ is not equal to a positive integer. How is the solution altered if $\omega = m$, where m is a positive integer?

15. Find the formal solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + \omega^2 y = f(t), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where f is periodic with period 2π and

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 < t < \pi; \\ 0, & t = 0, \pi, 2\pi; \\ -1, & \pi < t < 2\pi. \end{cases}$$

See Problem 1.

16. Find the formal solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + \omega^2 y = f(t), \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0,$$

where f is periodic with period 2 and

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 1 - t, & 0 \le t < 1; \\ -1 + t, & 1 \le t < 2. \end{cases}$$

See Problem 8.

17. Assuming that

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(a_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) + b_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \right), \tag{7}$$

show formally that

$$\frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^{L} [f(x)]^2 dx = \frac{a_0^2}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2).$$

This relation between a function f and its Fourier coefficients is known as Parseval's[6] equation. This relation is very important in the theory of Fourier series; see Problem 9 in Section 11.6.
Hint: Multiply equation (7) by $f(x)$, integrate from $-L$ to L, and use the Euler-Fourier formulas.

18. This problem indicates a proof of convergence of a Fourier series under conditions more restrictive than those in Theorem 10.3.1.

a. If f and f' are piecewise continuous on $-L \le x < L$, and if f is periodic with period $2L$, show that na_n and nb_n are bounded as $n \to \infty$. *Hint:* Use integration by parts.
b. If f is continuous on $-L \le x \le L$ and periodic with period $2L$, and if f' and f'' are piecewise continuous on $-L \le x < L$, show that $n^2 a_n$ and $n^2 b_n$ are bounded as $n \to \infty$. If f is continuous on the *closed* interval, then it is continuous for all x. Why is this important? *Hint:* Again, use integration by parts.
c. Using the result of part b, show that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ and $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |b_n|$ converge.
d. From the result in part c, show that the Fourier series (4) converges absolutely[7] for all x.

[6] Marc-Antoine Parseval (1755–1836) was a relatively obscure French mathematician for whom an important result has been named. He presented a forerunner of this result in 1799, though not in the context of Fourier series.

[7] It also converges uniformly; for an explanation of what this means, see a book on advanced calculus or analysis.

Acceleration of Convergence. In the next problem, we show how it is sometimes possible to improve the speed of convergence of a Fourier series.

19. Suppose that we wish to calculate values of the function g, where

$$g(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(2n-1)}{1+(2n-1)^2} \sin((2n-1)\pi x). \tag{8}$$

It is possible to show that this series converges, albeit rather slowly. However, observe that for large n, the terms in the series (8) are approximately equal to $\sin((2n-1)\pi x)/(2n-1)$ and that the latter terms are similar to those in the example in the text, equation (6).

a. Show that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2n-1} \sin((2n-1)\pi x) = \frac{\pi}{2}\left(f(x) - \frac{1}{2}\right), \tag{9}$$

where f is the square wave in the example with $L = 1$.

b. Subtract equation (9) from equation (8) and show that

$$g(x) = \frac{\pi}{2}\left(f(x) - \frac{1}{2}\right) - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin((2n-1)\pi x)}{(2n-1)\left(1+(2n-1)^2\right)}. \tag{10}$$

The series (10) converges much faster than the series (8) and thus provides a better way to calculate values of $g(x)$.

10.4 Even and Odd Functions

Before looking at further examples of Fourier series, it is useful to distinguish two classes of functions for which the Euler-Fourier formulas can be simplified. These are even and odd functions, which are characterized geometrically by the property of symmetry with respect to the y-axis and with respect to the origin, respectively (see Figure 10.4.1).

Analytically, f is an **even function** if its domain contains the point $-x$ whenever it contains the point x, and if

$$f(-x) = f(x) \tag{1}$$

for each x in the domain of f. Similarly, f is an **odd function** if its domain contains $-x$ whenever it contains x, and if

$$f(-x) = -f(x) \tag{2}$$

for each x in the domain of f. Examples of even functions are 1, x^2, $\cos(nx)$, $|x|$, $\cosh(nx)$, and x^{2n}. The functions x, x^3, $\sin(nx)$, $\sinh(nx)$, and x^{2n+1} are examples of odd functions. Note that according to equation (2), $f(0)$ must be zero if f is an odd function whose domain contains the origin. Most functions are neither even nor odd; an example is e^x. Only one function, f identically zero, is both even and odd.

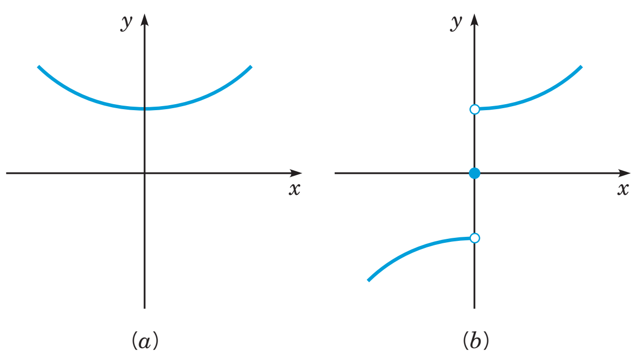


FIGURE 10.4.1 (a) An even function. (b) An odd function.

Elementary properties of even and odd functions include the following:[8]

1. The sum (difference) and product (quotient) of two even functions are even.
2. The sum (difference) of two odd functions is odd; the product (quotient) of two odd functions is even.

[8]These statements may need to be modified if either function vanishes identically.

3. The sum (difference) of an odd function and an even function is neither even nor odd; the product (quotient) of an odd function and an even function is odd.

The proofs of all these assertions are simple and follow directly from the definitions. For example, if both f_1 and f_2 are odd, and if $g(x) = f_1(x) + f_2(x)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} g(-x) &= f_1(-x) + f_2(-x) = -f_1(x) - f_2(x) \\ &= -\big(f_1(x) + f_2(x)\big) = -g(x), \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

so $f_1 + f_2$ is an odd function also. Similarly, if $h(x) = f_1(x)f_2(x)$, then

$$h(-x) = f_1(-x)f_2(-x) = \big(-f_1(x)\big)\big(-f_2(x)\big) = f_1(x)f_2(x) = h(x), \tag{4}$$

so that $f_1 f_2$ is even.

Also of importance are the following two integral properties of even and odd functions:

4. If f is an even function, then

$$\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)dx = 2\int_0^L f(x)dx. \tag{5}$$

5. If f is an odd function, then

$$\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)dx = 0. \tag{6}$$

Properties 4 and 5 are intuitively clear from the interpretation of an integral in terms of area under a curve, and they also follow immediately from the definitions. For example, if f is even, then

$$\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)dx = \int_{-L}^{0} f(x)dx + \int_0^L f(x)dx.$$

Letting $x = -s$ in the first term on the right-hand side and using equation (1), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x)dx &= -\int_L^0 f(-s)ds + \int_0^L f(x)dx \\ &= -\int_L^0 f(s)ds + \int_0^L f(x)dx = 2\int_0^L f(x)dx. \end{aligned}$$

The proof of the corresponding property for odd functions is similar. (See Problem 31.)

Even and odd functions are particularly important in applications of Fourier series since their Fourier series have special forms, which occur frequently in physical problems.

Cosine Series. Suppose that f and f' are piecewise continuous on $-L \le x < L$ and that f is an even periodic function with period $2L$. Then it follows from properties 1 and 3 that $f(x)\cos(n\pi x/L)$ is even and $f(x)\sin(n\pi x/L)$ is odd. As a consequence of equations (5) and (6), the Fourier coefficients of f are then given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \quad && n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots; \\ b_n &= 0, && n = 1, 2, \ldots. \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

Thus f has the Fourier series

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right).$$

In other words, the Fourier series of any even function consists only of the even trigonometric functions $\cos(n\pi x/L)$ and the constant term; it is natural to call such a series a **Fourier cosine series**. From a computational point of view, observe that only the coefficients a_n, for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, need to be calculated from the integral formula (7). Each of the b_n, for

$n = 1, 2, \dots,$ is automatically zero for any even function and so does not need to be calculated by integration.

Sine Series. Suppose that f and f' are piecewise continuous on $-L \le x < L$ and that f is an odd periodic function of period $2L$. Then it follows from Properties 2 and 3 that $f(x)\cos(n\pi x/L)$ is odd and $f(x)\sin(n\pi x/L)$ is even. Thus, from equations (5) and (6), the Fourier coefficients of f are

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= 0, && n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \\ b_n &= \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx, && n = 1, 2, \dots, \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

and the Fourier series for f is

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right).$$

Thus the Fourier series for any odd function consists only of the odd trigonometric functions $\sin(n\pi x/L)$; such a series is called a **Fourier sine series**. Again observe that only half of the coefficients need to be calculated by integration, since each a_n, for $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots,$ is zero for any odd function.

EXAMPLE 1

Let $f(x) = x$, $-L < x < L$, and let $f(-L) = f(L) = 0$. Let f be defined elsewhere so that it is periodic of period $2L$. The function defined in this manner is known as a *sawtooth wave*. Graph three periods of $y = f(x)$. Find the Fourier series for this function.

Solution:

The graph of $y = f(x)$ on $[-L, L]$ and one period to the left and one period to the right is shown in Figure 10.4.2.

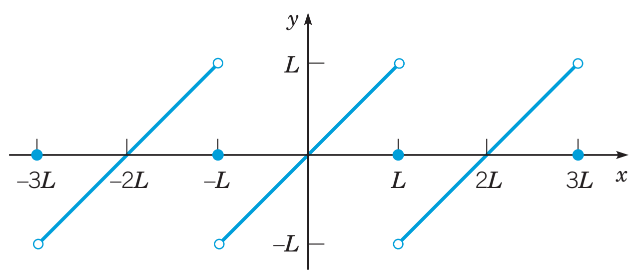


FIGURE 10.4.2 The sawtooth wave in Example 1.

Since f is an odd function, its Fourier coefficients are, according to equation (8),

$$a_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots;$$

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L x\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx \\ &= \frac{2}{L}\left(\frac{L}{n\pi}\right)^2\left(\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) - \frac{n\pi x}{L}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\right)\Bigg|_0^L \\ &= \frac{2L}{n\pi}(-1)^{n+1}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the Fourier series for f, the sawtooth wave, is

$$
\begin{aligned}
f(x) &= \frac{2L}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \\
&= \frac{2L}{\pi}\left(\sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{L}\right) - \frac{1}{3}\sin\left(\frac{3\pi x}{L}\right) + \frac{1}{5}\sin\left(\frac{5\pi x}{L}\right) - \cdots\right).
\end{aligned}
\tag{9}
$$

Observe that the periodic function f is discontinuous at the points $\pm L, \pm 3L, \dots$, as shown in Figure 10.4.2. At these points the series (9) converges to the mean value of the left and right limits, namely, to zero. The partial sum of the series (9) for $n = 9$ is shown in Figure 10.4.3. The Gibbs phenomenon (mentioned in Section 10.3) again occurs near the points of discontinuity.

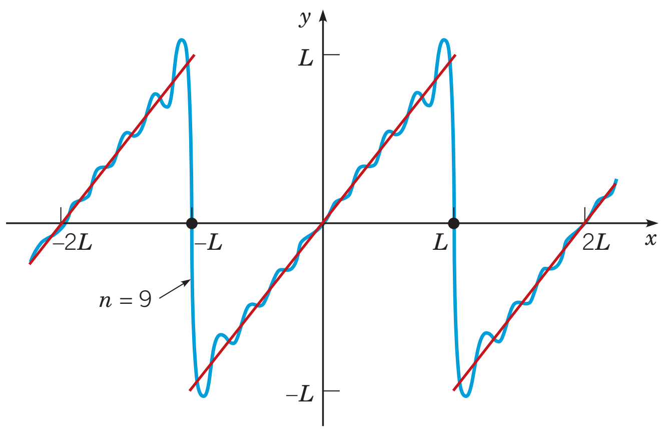


FIGURE 10.4.3 A partial sum (blue) in the Fourier series, equation (9), for the sawtooth wave (red).

Note that in this example $f(-L) = f(L) = 0$, as well as $f(0) = 0$. This is required if the function f is to be both odd and periodic with period $2L$. When we speak of constructing a sine series for a function defined on $0 \le x \le L$, it is understood that, if necessary, we must first redefine the function to be zero at $x = 0$ and $x = L$.

It is important to point out that we have now found two different Fourier series representations of the function $f(x) = x$ on the interval $0 \le x \le 2$. In Example 1 of Section 10.2, we found a Fourier cosine series for $f(x)$ on $0 \le x \le 2$. On the other hand, in Example 1 in this section, just above, with $L = 2$, we expressed the same function with a Fourier sine series. Thus, if it is required to represent the function $f(x) = x$ on $0 \le x < 2$ by a Fourier series, it is possible to do this by *either a cosine series or a sine series*. In the former case, f is extended as an *even* function into the interval $-2 < x < 0$ and elsewhere periodically (the triangular wave). In the latter case, f is extended into $-2 < x < 0$ as an *odd* function and elsewhere periodically (the sawtooth wave). If f is extended in any other way, the resulting Fourier series will still converge to x in $0 \le x < 2$ but will involve both sine and cosine terms.

In solving problems in differential equations, it is often useful to expand in a Fourier series of period $2L$ a function f originally defined only on the interval $[0, L]$. As indicated previously for the function $f(x) = x$, with $L = 2$, several alternatives are available. Explicitly, we can

1. Define a function g of period $2L$ so that

$$
g(x) = \begin{cases} f(x), & 0 \le x \le L, \\ f(-x), & -L < x < 0. \end{cases}
\tag{10}
$$

The function g is thus the *even periodic extension* of f. Its Fourier series, which is a cosine series, represents f on $[0, L]$.

2. Define a function h of period $2L$ so that

$$h(x) = \begin{cases} f(x), & 0 < x < L, \\ 0, & x = 0, L, \\ -f(-x), & -L < x < 0. \end{cases} \tag{11}$$

The function h is thus the *odd periodic extension* of f. Its Fourier series, which is a sine series, also represents f on $(0, L)$.

3. Define a function k of period $2L$ so that

$$k(x) = f(x), \quad 0 \le x \le L, \tag{12}$$

and let $k(x)$ be defined for $(-L, 0)$ in any way consistent with the conditions of Theorem 10.3.1. Sometimes it is convenient to define $k(x)$ to be zero for $-L < x < 0$. The Fourier series for k, which involves both sine and cosine terms, also represents f on $[0, L]$, regardless of the manner in which $k(x)$ is defined in $(-L, 0)$. Thus there are infinitely many such series, all of which converge to $f(x)$ in the original interval.

Usually, the form of the expansion to be used will be dictated (or at least suggested) by the purpose for which it is needed. However, if there is a choice as to the kind of Fourier series to be used, the selection can sometimes be based on the rapidity of convergence. For example, the cosine series for the triangular wave (equation (20) of Section 10.2) converges more rapidly than the sine series for the sawtooth wave (equation (9) in this section), although both converge to the same function for $0 \le x < L$. This is because the triangular wave is a smoother function than the sawtooth wave and is therefore easier to approximate. In general, the more continuous derivatives possessed by a function over the entire interval $-\infty < x < \infty$, the faster its Fourier series will converge. See Problem 18 of Section 10.3.

EXAMPLE 2

Suppose that

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x, & 0 < x \le 1, \\ 0, & 1 < x \le 2. \end{cases} \tag{13}$$

As indicated previously, we can represent f either by a cosine series or by a sine series. Sketch the graph of three periods of the sum of each of these series for $-6 \le x \le 6$.

Solution:

In this example, $L = 2$, so the cosine series for f converges to the even periodic extension of f of period 4, whose graph is sketched in Figure 10.4.4.

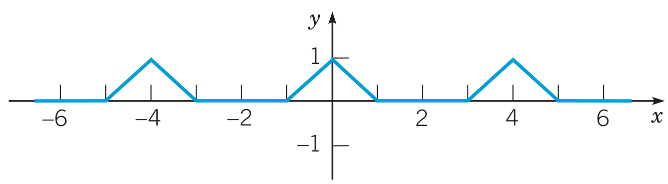


FIGURE 10.4.4 Even periodic extension of $f(x)$ given by equation (13).

Similarly, the sine series for f converges to the odd periodic extension of f of period 4. The graph of this function is shown in Figure 10.4.5.

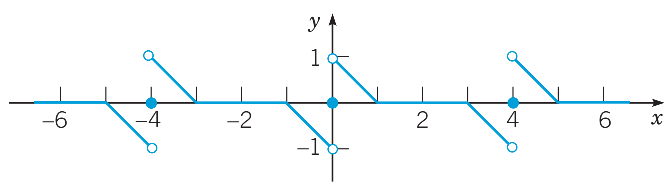


FIGURE 10.4.5 Odd periodic extension of $f(x)$ given by equation (13).

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, determine whether the given function is even, odd, or neither.

1. $x^3 - 2x$

2. $x^3 - 2x + 1$

3. $\tan(2x)$

4. $\sec x$

5. $|x|^3$

6. e^{-x}

In each of Problems 7 through 12, a function f is given on an interval of length L. In each case sketch the graphs of the even and odd extensions of f of period $2L$.

7. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x < 2, \\ 1, & 2 \le x < 3 \end{cases}$

8. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \le x < 1, \\ x-1, & 1 \le x < 2 \end{cases}$

9. $f(x) = 2 - x, \quad 0 < x < 2$

10. $f(x) = x - 3, \quad 0 < x < 4$

11. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \le x < 1, \\ 1, & 1 \le x < 2 \end{cases}$

12. $f(x) = 4 - x^2, \quad 0 < x < 1$

13. Prove that any function can be expressed as the sum of two other functions, one of which is even and the other odd. That is, for any function f, whose domain contains $-x$ whenever it contains x, show that there are an even function g and an odd function h such that $f(x) = g(x) + h(x)$. *Hint:* What can you say about $f(x) + f(-x)$?

14. Find the coefficients in the cosine and sine series described in Example 2.

In each of Problems 15 through 22:

a. Find the required Fourier series for the given function.
b. Sketch the graph of the function to which the series converges over three periods.

15. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 < x < 1, \\ 0, & 1 < x < 2; \end{cases}$ cosine series, period 4

(Compare with Example 1 and Problem 5 of Section 10.3.)

16. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x < 1, \\ 1, & 1 \le x < 2; \end{cases}$ sine series, period 4

17. $f(x) = 1, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi;$ cosine series, period 2π

18. $f(x) = 1, \quad 0 < x < \pi;$ sine series, period 2π

19. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 < x < \pi, \\ 1, & \pi < x < 2\pi, \\ 2, & 2\pi < x < 3\pi; \end{cases}$ sine series, period 6π

20. $f(x) = x, \quad 0 \le x < 1;$ series of period 1

21. $f(x) = L - x, \quad 0 \le x \le L;$ cosine series, period $2L$
(Compare with Example 1 of Section 10.2.)

22. $f(x) = L - x, \quad 0 < x < L;$ sine series, period $2L$

In each of Problems 23 through 26:

a. Find the required Fourier series for the given function.
b. Sketch the graph of the function to which the series converges for three periods.
G **c.** Plot one or more partial sums of the series.

23. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 < x < \pi, \\ 0, & \pi < x < 2\pi; \end{cases}$ cosine series, period 4π

24. $f(x) = -x, \quad -\pi < x < 0;$ sine series, period 2π

25. $f(x) = 2 - x^2, \quad 0 < x < 2;$ sine series, period 4

26. $f(x) = x^2 - 2x, \quad 0 < x < 4;$ cosine series, period 8

In each of Problems 27 through 30, a function is given on an interval $0 < x < L$.

a. Sketch the graphs of the even extension $g(x)$ and the odd extension $h(x)$ of the given function of period $2L$ over three periods.
b. Find the Fourier cosine and sine series for the given function.
G **c.** Plot a few partial sums of each series.
G **d.** For each series, investigate the dependence on n of the maximum error on $[0, L]$.

27. $f(x) = 3 - x, \quad 0 < x < 3$

28. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 < x < 1, \\ 0, & 1 < x < 2 \end{cases}$

29. $f(x) = (4x^2 - 4x - 3)/4, \quad 0 < x < 2$

30. $f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + 5x + 1, \quad 0 < x < 3$

31. Prove that if f is an odd function, then

$$\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\,dx = 0.$$

32. Prove Properties 2 and 3 of even and odd functions, as stated in the text.

33. Prove that the derivative of an even function is odd and that the derivative of an odd function is even.

34. Let $F(x) = \int_0^x f(t)\,dt$. Show that if f is even, then F is odd, and that if f is odd, then F is even.

35. From the Fourier series for the square wave in Example 1 of Section 10.3, show that

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1}.$$

This relation between π and the odd positive integers was discovered by Leibniz in 1674.

36. From the Fourier series for the triangular wave (Example 1 of Section 10.2), show that

$$\frac{\pi^2}{8} = 1 + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2n+1)^2}.$$

37. Assume that f has a Fourier sine series

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \quad 0 \le x \le L.$$

a. Show formally that

$$\frac{2}{L} \int_0^L (f(x))^2\,dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2.$$

Compare this result (Parseval's equation) with that of Problem 17 in Section 10.3. What is the corresponding result if f has a cosine series?

b. Apply the result of part a to the series for the sawtooth wave given in equation (9), and thereby show that

$$\frac{\pi^2}{6} = 1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \cdots = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}.$$

This relation was discovered by Euler in about 1735.

More Specialized Fourier Series. Let f be a function originally defined on $0 \le x \le L$ and satisfying there the continuity conditions of Theorem 10.3.1. In this section we have shown that it is possible to represent f by either a sine series or a cosine series by constructing odd or even periodic extensions of f, respectively. Problems 38 through 40 concern some other, more specialized Fourier series that converge to the given function f on $(0, L)$.

38. Let f be extended into $(L, 2L]$ in an arbitrary manner subject to the continuity conditions of Theorem 10.3.1. Then extend the resulting function into $(-2L, 0)$ as an odd function and elsewhere as a periodic function of period $4L$ (see Figure 10.4.6). Show that this function has a Fourier sine series in terms of the functions $\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2L}\right)$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$; that is,

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2L}\right),$$

where

$$b_n = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^{2L} f(x) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2L}\right) dx.$$

This series converges to the original function on $(0, L)$.

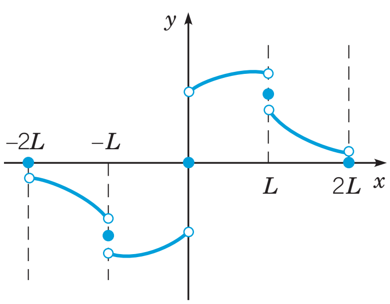


FIGURE 10.4.6 Graph of one period of the function in Problem 38.

39. Let f first be extended into $(L, 2L)$ so that it is symmetric about $x = L$. Then f satisfies $f(2L - x) = f(x)$ for $0 \le x < L$. Let the resulting function be extended into $(-2L, 0)$ as an odd function and elsewhere as a periodic function of period $4L$ (see Figure 10.4.7). Show that this function has a Fourier series in terms of the functions $\sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{2L}\right)$, $\sin\left(\frac{3\pi x}{2L}\right)$, $\sin\left(\frac{5\pi x}{2L}\right)$, ...; that is,

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right),$$

where

$$b_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^{L} f(x) \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right) dx.$$

This series converges to the original function on $(0, L]$.

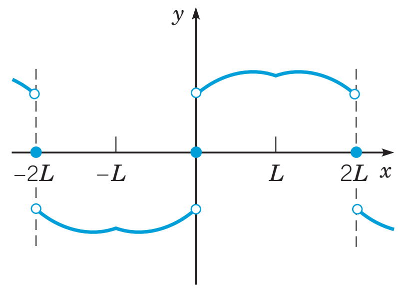


FIGURE 10.4.7 Graph of one period of the function in Problem 39.

40. **a.** How should f, originally defined on $[0, L]$, be extended so as to obtain a Fourier series involving only the functions $\cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{2L}\right)$, $\cos\left(\frac{3\pi x}{2L}\right)$, $\cos\left(\frac{5\pi x}{2L}\right)$, ...? Refer to Problems 38 and 39.

b. If $f(x) = x$ for $0 \le x \le L$, sketch the function to which the Fourier series converges for $-4L \le x \le 4L$.

10.5 Separation of Variables; Heat Conduction in a Rod

The basic partial differential equations of heat conduction, wave propagation, and potential theory that we discuss in this chapter are associated with three distinct types of physical phenomena: diffusive processes, oscillatory processes, and time-independent or steady-state processes. These three partial differential equations are of fundamental importance in many branches of physics. They are also of considerable significance from a mathematical point of view. The partial differential equations whose theory is best developed and whose applications are most significant and varied are the linear equations of second order. All such equations can be classified into one of three categories: the heat conduction equation, the wave equation, and the potential equation, respectively, are prototypes of these categories. Thus a study of these three equations yields much information about more general second-order linear partial differential equations.

During the last two centuries, several methods have been developed for solving partial differential equations. The method of separation of variables is the oldest systematic method, having been used by d'Alembert, Daniel Bernoulli, and Euler about 1750 in their investigations of waves and vibrations. It has been considerably refined and generalized in the meantime, and it remains a method of great importance and frequent use today. To show how the method of separation of variables works, we consider first a basic problem of heat conduction in a solid body. The mathematical study of heat conduction originated[9] about 1800, and it continues to command the attention of modern scientists. For example, analysis of the dissipation and transfer of heat away from its sources in high-speed machinery is frequently an important technological problem.

Let us now consider a heat conduction problem for a straight bar of uniform cross section and homogeneous material. Let the x-axis be chosen to lie along the axis of the bar, and let $x = 0$ and $x = L$ denote the ends of the bar (see Figure 10.5.1). Suppose further that the sides of the bar are perfectly insulated so that no heat passes through them. We also assume that the cross-sectional dimensions are so small that the temperature u can be considered constant on any given cross section. Then u is a function only of the axial coordinate x and the time t.

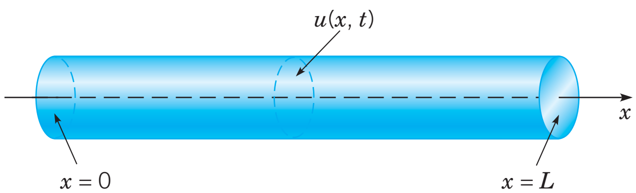


FIGURE 10.5.1 A heat-conducting solid bar.

The variation of temperature in the bar is governed by a partial differential equation derived in Appendix A at the end of this chapter. The equation is called the **heat conduction equation** and has the form

$$\alpha^2 u_{xx} = u_t, \quad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0, \tag{1}$$

where α^2 is a constant known as the **thermal diffusivity**. The parameter α^2 depends only on the material from which the bar is made and is defined by

$$\alpha^2 = \frac{\kappa}{\rho s}, \tag{2}$$

where κ is the thermal conductivity, ρ is the density, and s is the specific heat of the material in the bar. The units of α^2 are length squared per time. Typical values of α^2 are given in Table 10.5.1.

In addition, we assume that the initial temperature distribution in the bar is given; thus

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad 0 \le x \le L, \tag{3}$$

where f is a given function. Finally, we assume that the ends of the bar are held at fixed temperatures: the temperature T_1 at $x = 0$ and the temperature T_2 at $x = L$. However, it turns out that we need only consider the case where $T_1 = T_2 = 0$. We show in Section 10.6 how to reduce the more general problem to this special case. Thus, in this section we will assume that u is always zero when $x = 0$ or $x = L$:

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \quad t > 0. \tag{4}$$

The fundamental problem of heat conduction is to find $u(x, t)$ that satisfies the differential equation (1) for $0 < x < L$ and for $t > 0$, the initial condition (3) when $t = 0$, and the boundary conditions (4) at $x = 0$ and $x = L$.

[9]The first important investigation of heat conduction was carried out by Joseph Fourier. He presented basic papers on the subject to the Academy of Sciences of Paris in 1807 and 1811. Although these papers were controversial and were not published at the time, Fourier continued to develop his ideas and eventually wrote one of the classics of applied mathematics, *Théorie analytique de la chaleur*, published in 1822.

TABLE 10.5.1 Values of the Thermal Diffusivity for Some Common Materials

Material	α^2 (cm^2/s)
Silver (99.9% pure)	1.6563
Gold	1.27
Copper (at 25°C)	1.11
Silicon	0.88
Aluminum	0.8418
Iron	0.23
Air (at 300K)	0.19
Cast Iron	0.12
Steel (1% carbon)	0.1172
Steel (stainless 310 at 25°C)	0.03352
Quartz	0.014
Granite	0.011
Brick	0.0038
Water	0.00144
Wood (yellow pine)	0.00082

The problem described by equations (1), (3), and (4) is an initial value problem in the time variable t; an initial condition is given, and the differential equation governs what happens later. However, with respect to the space variable x, the problem is a boundary value problem; boundary conditions are imposed at each end of the bar, and the differential equation describes the evolution of the temperature in the interval between them. Alternatively, we can consider the problem as a boundary value problem in the xt-plane (see Figure 10.5.2). The solution $u(x, t)$ of equation (1) is sought in the semi-infinite strip $0 < x < L, t > 0$, subject to the requirement that $u(x, t)$ must assume a prescribed value at each point on the boundary of this semi-infinite strip.

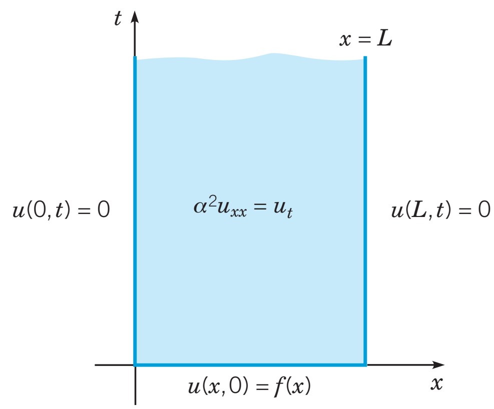


FIGURE 10.5.2 Boundary value problem for the heat conduction equation.

The heat conduction problem (1), (3), (4) is *linear* since the unknown temperature function u appears only to the first power throughout. The differential equation and boundary conditions are also *homogeneous*. This suggests that we might approach the problem by seeking solutions of the differential equation and boundary conditions, and then superposing them to satisfy the initial condition. The remainder of this section describes how this plan can be implemented.

Method of Separation of Variables. One solution of the differential equation (1) that satisfies the boundary conditions (4) is the function $u(x, t) = 0$, but this solution does not satisfy the initial condition (3) except in the trivial case in which $f(x)$ is also zero. Thus our goal is to find other, nonzero solutions of the differential equation and boundary conditions. To find the needed solutions, we start by making a basic assumption about the form of the solutions that has far-reaching, and perhaps unforeseen, consequences. The assumption is that $u(x,t)$ is a product of two functions, one depending only on x and the other depending only on t; thus

$$u(x,t) = X(x)T(t). \tag{5}$$

Substituting from equation (5) for u in the differential equation (1) yields

$$\alpha^2 X''(x)T(t) = X(x)T'(t).$$

We will simplify this derivation by often omitting the independent variables x and t; our notation is intended to indicate that the functions X and T depend on the variables x and t, respectively. Thus, we will write the above equation as

$$\alpha^2 X''T = XT', \tag{6}$$

where primes refer to ordinary differentiation with respect to the independent variable, whether x or t. Dividing both sides of equation (6) by $\alpha^2 XT$ yields the equivalent equation

$$\frac{X''}{X} = \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\frac{T'}{T}, \tag{7}$$

in which the variables are separated; that is, the left-hand side depends only on x and the right-hand side only on t.

It is now crucial to realize that for equation (7) to be valid at each point (x,t) in the semi-infinite strip $0 < x < L$, $t > 0$, it is necessary that both sides of equation (7) must be equal to the same constant. Otherwise, if one independent variable (say, x) were kept fixed and the other were allowed to vary, one side (the left in this case) of equation (7) would remain unchanged while the other varied, thus violating the equality. If we call this separation constant $-\lambda$, then equation (7) becomes

$$\frac{X''}{X} = \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\frac{T'}{T} = -\lambda. \tag{8}$$

Hence we obtain the following two ordinary differential equations for $X(x)$ and $T(t)$:

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \tag{9}$$

$$T' + \alpha^2\lambda T = 0. \tag{10}$$

We denote the separation constant by $-\lambda$ (rather than λ) because in this problem it turns out that it must be negative, and it is convenient to exhibit the minus sign explicitly.

The assumption (5) has led to the replacement of the partial differential equation (1) by the two ordinary differential equations (9) and (10). Each of these equations is linear and homogeneous, with constant coefficients, and so can be readily solved for *any* value of λ. The product of two solutions of equation (9) and (10), respectively, provides a solution of the partial differential equation (1). However, we are interested only in those solutions of equation (1) that also satisfy the boundary conditions (4). As we now show, this severely restricts the possible values of λ.

Substituting for $u(x,t)$ from equation (5) in the boundary condition at $x = 0$, we obtain

$$u(0,t) = X(0)T(t) = 0. \tag{11}$$

If equation (11) is satisfied by choosing $T(t)$ to be zero for all t, then $u(x,t)$ is zero for all x and t, and we have already rejected this possibility. Therefore, equation (11) must be satisfied by requiring that

$$X(0) = 0. \tag{12}$$

Similarly, the boundary condition at $x = L$ requires that

$$X(L) = 0. \tag{13}$$

We now want to consider equation (9) subject to the boundary conditions (12) and (13). This is an eigenvalue problem and, in fact, is the same problem that we discussed in detail at the end of Section 10.1; see especially the paragraph containing equation (29) in that section. The only difference is that the dependent variable there was called y rather than X. If we refer to the results obtained earlier (equation (31) of Section 10.1), the only nontrivial solutions of equations (9), (12), and (13) are the eigenfunctions

$$X_n(x) = \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{14}$$

associated with the eigenvalues

$$\lambda_n = \frac{n^2\pi^2}{L^2}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{15}$$

Turning now to equation (10) for $T(t)$ and substituting $n^2\pi^2/L^2$ for λ, we have

$$T' + \frac{n^2\pi^2\alpha^2}{L^2}T = 0. \tag{16}$$

Thus $T(t)$ is proportional to $\exp(-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2)$. Hence, multiplying solutions of equations (9) and (10) together, and neglecting arbitrary constants of proportionality, we conclude that the functions

$$u_n(x,t) = e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{17}$$

satisfy the partial differential equation (1) and the boundary conditions (4) for each positive integer value of n. The functions u_n are sometimes called **fundamental solutions** of the heat conduction problem (1), (3), and (4).

It remains only to satisfy the initial condition (3):

$$u(x,0) = f(x), \quad 0 \le x \le L. \tag{18}$$

Recall that we have often solved a linear initial value problem by using the principle of superposition; that is, we form a linear combination of a set of fundamental solutions of the differential equation and then choose the coefficients to satisfy the initial conditions. The analogous step in the present problem is to form a linear combination of the functions (17) and then to choose the coefficients to satisfy equation (18). The main difference from earlier problems is that there are infinitely many functions (17), so a general linear combination of them is an infinite series. Thus we assume that

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n u_n(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \tag{19}$$

where the coefficients c_n are as yet undetermined. The individual terms in the series (19) satisfy the differential equation (1) and boundary conditions (4). We will assume that the infinite series of equation (19) converges and also satisfies equations (1) and (4). To satisfy the initial condition (3), we must have

$$u(x,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) = f(x). \tag{20}$$

In other words, we need to choose the coefficients c_n so that the series of sine functions in equation (20) converges to the initial temperature distribution $f(x)$ for $0 \le x \le L$. The series in equation (20) is just the Fourier sine series for f; according to equation (8) of Section 10.4, its coefficients are given by

$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx. \tag{21}$$

Hence the solution of the heat conduction problem of equations (1), (3), and (4) is given by the series in equation (19) with the coefficients computed from equation (21).

EXAMPLE 1

Find the temperature $u(x, t)$ at any time in a metal rod 50 cm long, insulated on the sides, which initially has a uniform temperature of 20°C throughout and whose ends are maintained at 0°C for all $t > 0$.

Solution:

The temperature in the rod satisfies the heat conduction problem (1), (3), (4) with $L = 50$ and $f(x) = 20$ for $0 < x < 50$. Thus, from equation (19), the solution is

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/2500} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{50}\right), \tag{22}$$

where, from equation (21),

$$c_n = \frac{4}{5}\int_0^{50} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{50}\right) dx = \frac{40}{n\pi}(1 - \cos n\pi) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{80}{n\pi}, & n \text{ odd;} \\ 0, & n \text{ even.} \end{cases} \tag{23}$$

Finally, by substituting for c_n in equation (22), we obtain

$$u(x, t) = \frac{80}{\pi} \sum_{n=1,3,5,\ldots}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/2500} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{50}\right). \tag{24}$$

The expression (24) for the temperature is moderately complicated, but the negative exponential factor in each term of the series causes the series to converge quite rapidly, except for small values of t or α^2. Therefore, accurate results can usually be obtained by using only the first few terms of the series.

In order to display quantitative results, let us measure t in seconds; then α^2 has the units of cm^2/s. If we choose $\alpha^2 = 1$ for convenience, this corresponds to a rod of a material whose thermal properties are somewhere between copper and aluminum. The behavior of the solution can be seen from the graphs in Figures 10.5.3 through 10.5.5. In Figure 10.5.3 we show the temperature distribution in the bar at several different times. Observe that the temperature diminishes steadily as heat in the bar is lost through the end points. The way in which the temperature decays at a given point in the bar is indicated in Figure 10.5.4, where temperature is plotted against time for a few selected points in the bar. Finally, Figure 10.5.5 is a three-dimensional plot of u versus both x and t. Observe that we obtain the graphs in Figures 10.5.3 and 10.5.4 by intersecting the surface in Figure 10.5.5 by planes on which either t or x is constant. Note that the temperature is constant along each of the curves drawn on the surface in Figure 10.5.5; in this case, these level curves are known as **isotherms**. The slight waviness in Figure 10.5.5 at $t = 0$ results from using only five terms in the series for $u(x, t)$ and from the slow convergence of the series for $t = 0$ (remember the Gibbs phenomenon introduced in Section 10.3).

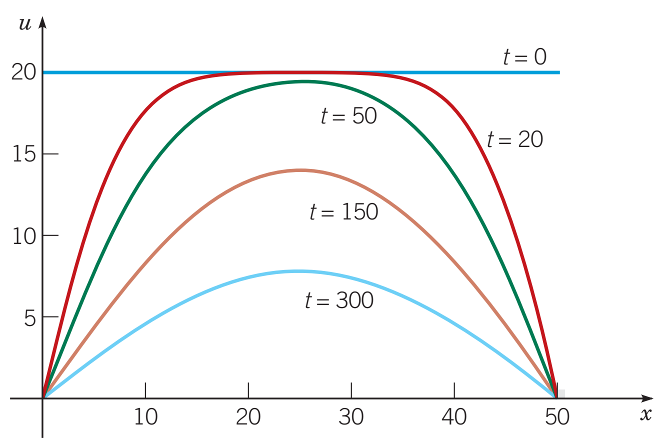


FIGURE 10.5.3 Temperature distributions at several times using the first five terms of the series solution (24) of the heat conduction problem in Example 1.

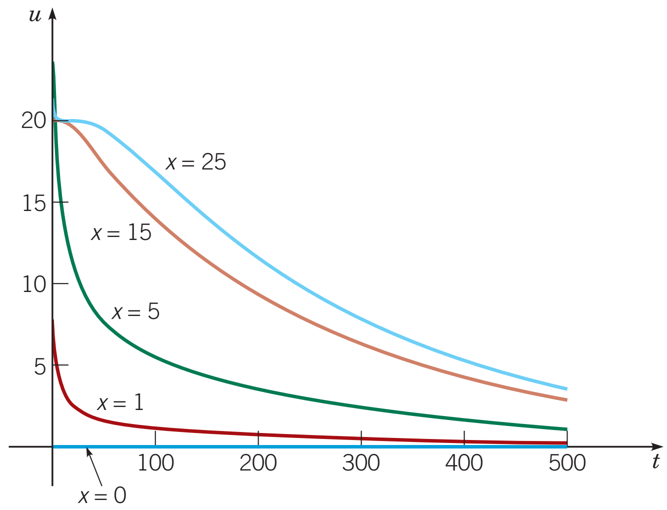


FIGURE 10.5.4 Temperature profiles as a function of time at several locations using the first five terms of the series solution (24) of the heat conduction problem in Example 1.

A problem with possible practical implications is to determine the time τ at which the entire bar has cooled to a specified temperature. For example, when is the temperature in the entire bar no greater than 1°C? Because of the symmetry of the initial temperature distribution and the boundary conditions, the warmest point in the bar is always the center. Thus τ is found by solving $u(25, t) = 1$ for t. Using one term in the series expansion (24), we obtain

$$\tau = \frac{2500}{\pi^2} \ln\left(\frac{80}{\pi}\right) \cong 820 \text{ s.}$$

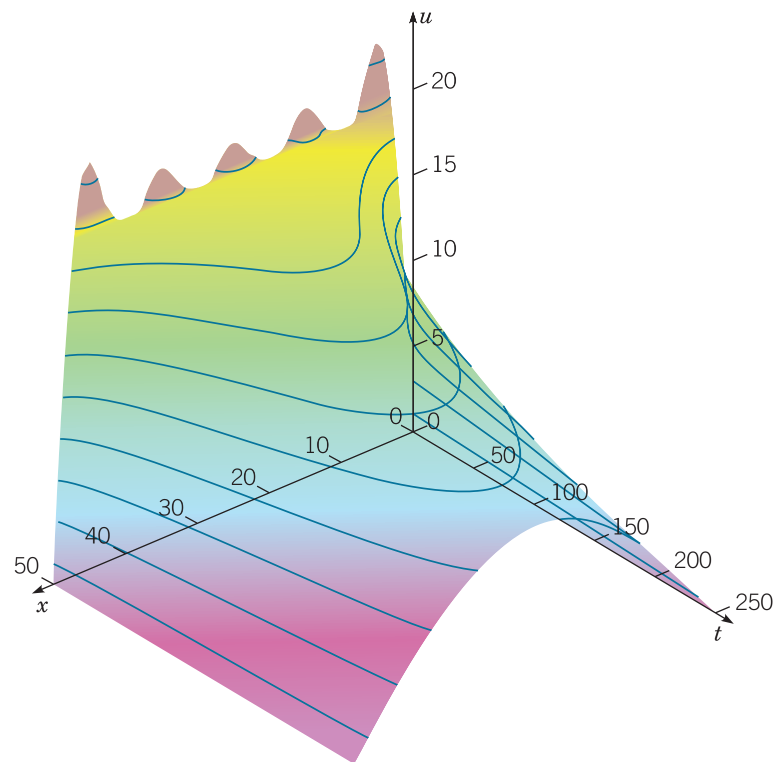


FIGURE 10.5.5 Plot of temperature u versus x and t using the first 10 terms in the series solution (24) of the heat conduction problem in Example 1.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, determine whether the method of separation of variables can be used to replace the given partial differential equation by a pair of ordinary differential equations. If so, find the equations.

1. $xu_{xx} + u_t = 0$

2. $tu_{xx} + xu_t = 0$

3. $u_{xx} + u_{xt} + u_t = 0$

4. $(p(x)u_x)_x - r(x)u_{tt} = 0$

5. $u_{xx} + (x + y)u_{yy} = 0$

6. $u_{xx} + u_{yy} + xu = 0$

7. Find the solution of the heat conduction problem

$$\begin{aligned} &100u_{xx} = u_t, && 0 < x < 1, \quad t > 0; \\ &u(0, t) = 0, && u(1, t) = 0, \quad t > 0; \\ &u(x, 0) = \sin(2\pi x) - \sin(5\pi x), && 0 \le x \le 1. \end{aligned}$$

8. Find the solution of the heat conduction problem

$$\begin{aligned} &u_{xx} = 4u_t, \quad 0 < x < 2, \quad t > 0; \\ &u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(2, t) = 0, \quad t > 0; \\ &u(x, 0) = 2\sin(\pi x/2) - \sin(\pi x) + 4\sin(2\pi x), \quad 0 \le x \le 2. \end{aligned}$$

Consider the conduction of heat in a rod 40 cm in length whose ends are maintained at 0°C for all $t > 0$. In each of Problems 9 through 12, find an expression for the temperature $u(x, t)$ if the initial temperature distribution in the rod is the given function. Suppose that $\alpha^2 = 1$.

9. $u(x, 0) = 50, \quad 0 < x < 40$

10. $u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x < 20, \\ 40 - x, & 20 \le x \le 40 \end{cases}$

11. $u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \le x < 10, \\ 50, & 10 \le x \le 30, \\ 0, & 30 < x \le 40 \end{cases}$

12. $u(x, 0) = x, \quad 0 \le x < 40$

N **13.** Consider again the rod in Problem 9. For $t = 5$ and $x = 20$, determine how many terms are needed to find the solution correct to three decimal places. A reasonable way to do this is to find n so that including one more term does not change the first three decimal places of $u(20, 5)$. Repeat for $t = 20$ and $t = 80$. Form a conclusion about the speed of convergence of the series for $u(x, t)$.

N **14.** Repeat Problem 13 for the rod in Problem 10.

N **15.** Repeat Problem 13 for the rod in Problem 11.

N **16.** Repeat Problem 13 for the rod in Problem 12.

17. For the rod in Problem 9:

G **a.** Plot u versus x for $t = 5, 10, 20, 40, 100,$ and 200. Put all of the graphs on the same set of axes and thereby obtain a picture of the way in which the temperature distribution changes with time.

G **b.** Plot u versus t for $x = 5, 10, 15,$ and 20.

G **c.** Draw a three-dimensional plot of u versus x and t.

N **d.** How long does it take for the entire rod to cool off to a temperature of no more than 1°C?

G **18.** Repeat Problem 17 for the rod in Problem 10.

G **19.** Repeat Problem 17 for the rod in Problem 11.

G **20.** For the rod in Problem 12:

G **a.** Plot u versus x for $t = 5, 10, 20, 40, 100,$ and 200.

G **b.** For each value of t used in part a, estimate the value of x for which the temperature is greatest. Plot these values versus t to see how the location of the warmest point in the rod changes with time.

G **c.** Plot u versus t for $x = 10, 20,$ and 30.

G **d.** Draw a three-dimensional plot of u versus x and t.

N **e.** How long does it take the entire rod to cool to a temperature of no more than 1°C?

N **21.** Let a metallic rod 20 cm long be heated to a uniform temperature of 100°C. Suppose that at $t = 0$, the ends of the bar are plunged into an ice bath at 0°C and thereafter maintained at this temperature, but that no heat is allowed to escape through the lateral surface. Find an expression for the temperature at any point in the bar at any later time. Determine the temperature at the center of the bar at time $t = 30$ s if the bar is made of a. silver, b. aluminum, and c. cast iron.

N **22.** Approximate the times when the entire bar has cooled to 1°C

a. using two terms;

b. using three terms.

c. Compare the times found in a and b with the time found using one term in Example 1.

N **23.** For the rod of Problem 21, find the time that will elapse before the center of the bar cools to a temperature of 5°C if the bar is made of a. silver, b. aluminum, and c. cast iron.

24. In solving differential equations, the computations can almost always be simplified by the use of **dimensionless variables**.

a. Show that if the dimensionless variable $\xi = x/L$ is introduced, the heat conduction equation becomes

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \xi^2} = \frac{L^2}{\alpha^2}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}, \quad 0 < \xi < 1, \quad t > 0.$$

b. Since L^2/α^2 has the units of time, it is convenient to use this quantity to define a dimensionless time variable $\tau = (\alpha^2/L^2)t$. Then show that the heat conduction equation reduces to

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \xi^2} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial \tau}, \quad 0 < \xi < 1, \quad \tau > 0.$$

25. Consider the equation

$$au_{xx} - bu_t + cu = 0, \tag{25}$$

where a, b, and c are constants.

a. Let $u(x, t) = e^{\delta t}w(x, t)$, where δ is constant, and find the corresponding partial differential equation for w.

b. If $b \ne 0$, show that δ can be chosen so that the partial differential equation found in part a has no term in w. Thus, by a change of dependent variable, it is possible to reduce equation (25) to the heat conduction equation.

26. The heat conduction equation in two space dimensions is

$$\alpha^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) = u_t.$$

Assuming that $u(x, y, t) = X(x)Y(y)T(t)$, find ordinary differential equations that are satisfied by $X(x)$, $Y(y)$, and $T(t)$.

27. The heat conduction equation in two space dimensions may be expressed in terms of polar coordinates as

$$\alpha^2\left(u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta}\right) = u_t.$$

Assuming that $u(r, \theta, t) = R(r)\Theta(\theta)T(t)$, find ordinary differential equations that are satisfied by $R(r)$, $\Theta(\theta)$, and $T(t)$.

10.6 Other Heat Conduction Problems

In Section 10.5 we considered the problem consisting of the heat conduction equation

$$\alpha^2 u_{xx} = u_t, \qquad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0, \tag{1}$$

the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \tag{2}$$

and the initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \qquad 0 \le x \le L. \tag{3}$$

We found the solution to be

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \tag{4}$$

where the coefficients c_n are the same as in the series

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right). \tag{5}$$

The series in equation (5) is just the Fourier sine series for f; according to Section 10.4, its coefficients are given by

$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx. \tag{6}$$

Hence the solution of the heat conduction problem, equations (1) to (3), is given by the series in equation (4) with the coefficients computed from equation (6).

We emphasize that, at this stage, the solution (4) must be regarded as a *formal* solution; that is, we obtained it without rigorous justification of the limiting processes involved. Such a justification is beyond the scope of this book. However, once the series (4) has been obtained, it is possible to show that in the semi-infinite strip $0 < x < L$, $t > 0$, it converges to a continuous function; that the derivatives u_{xx} and u_t can be computed by differentiating the series (4) term by term; and that the heat conduction equation (1) is indeed satisfied. The argument relies heavily on the fact that each term of the series (4) contains a negative exponential factor, and this results in relatively rapid convergence of the series. A further argument establishes that the function u given by equation (4) also satisfies the boundary and initial conditions; this completes the justification of the formal solution.

It is interesting to note that although f satisfies the conditions of the Fourier Convergence Theorem (Theorem 10.3.1), it may have points of discontinuity. In this case the initial temperature distribution $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ is discontinuous at one or more points. Nevertheless, the solution $u(x, t)$ is continuous for arbitrarily small values of $t > 0$. This illustrates the fact that heat conduction is a diffusive process that instantly smooths out any discontinuities that may be present in the initial temperature distribution. Finally, since f is bounded, it follows from equation (6) that the coefficients c_n are also bounded. Consequently, the presence of the negative exponential factor in each term of the series (4) guarantees that

$$\lim_{t\to\infty} u(x, t) = 0 \tag{7}$$

for all x regardless of the initial condition. This is in accord with the result expected from physical intuition.

We now consider two other problems of one-dimensional heat conduction that can be handled by the method developed in Section 10.5.

Nonhomogeneous Boundary Conditions. Suppose now that one end of the bar is held at a constant temperature T_1 and the other is maintained at a constant temperature T_2.

The differential equation (1) and the initial condition (3) remain unchanged. The boundary conditions are

$$u(0,t) = T_1, \quad u(L,t) = T_2, \quad t > 0. \tag{8}$$

This problem is only slightly more difficult, because of the nonhomogeneous boundary conditions, than the one in Section 10.5. We can solve it by reducing it to a problem having homogeneous boundary conditions, which can then be solved as in Section 10.5. The technique for doing this is suggested by the following physical argument.

After a long time—that is, as $t \to \infty$—we anticipate that the temperature approaches a steady-state temperature distribution, which is independent of the time t and the initial conditions; we denote this distribution as $v(x)$. Since $v(x)$ does not depend on t, its time derivative v_t is zero and spatial derivatives are ordinary derivatives: $v_x = v'$. The heat conduction equation (1) for v then becomes

$$v''(x) = 0, \quad 0 < x < L. \tag{9}$$

Hence the steady-state temperature distribution is a linear function of x. Further, $v(x)$ must satisfy the boundary conditions

$$v(0) = T_1, \quad v(L) = T_2, \tag{10}$$

which are valid even as $t \to \infty$. The solution of equation (9) satisfying equations (10) is

$$v(x) = \big(T_2 - T_1\big)\frac{x}{L} + T_1. \tag{11}$$

Returning to the original problem, equations (1), (3), and (8), we will try to express $u(x,t)$ as the sum of the steady-state temperature distribution $v(x)$ and another (transient) temperature distribution $w(x,t)$; thus we write

$$u(x,t) = v(x) + w(x,t). \tag{12}$$

Since $v(x)$ is given by equation (11), the problem will be solved provided that we can determine $w(x,t)$. The boundary value problem for $w(x,t)$ is found by substituting the expression in equation (12) for $u(x,t)$ in equations (1), (3), and (8).

From equation (1), we have

$$\alpha^2(v+w)_{xx} = (v+w)_t;$$

since $v_{xx} = 0$ and $v_t = 0$, it follows that

$$\alpha^2 w_{xx} = w_t. \tag{13}$$

Similarly, from equations (12), (8), and (10),

$$\begin{aligned} w(0,t) &= u(0,t) - v(0) = T_1 - T_1 = 0,\\ w(L,t) &= u(L,t) - v(L) = T_2 - T_2 = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

Finally, from equations (12) and (3),

$$w(x,0) = u(x,0) - v(x) = f(x) - v(x), \tag{15}$$

where $v(x)$ is given by equation (11). Thus the transient part of the solution to the original problem is found by solving the problem consisting of equations (13), (14), and (15). This latter problem is precisely the one solved in Section 10.5, provided that $f(x) - v(x)$ is now regarded as the initial temperature distribution. Hence

$$u(x,t) = \big(T_2 - T_1\big)\frac{x}{L} + T_1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \tag{16}$$

where

$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L \left(f(x) - (T_2 - T_1)\frac{x}{L} - T_1\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx. \tag{17}$$

This is another case in which a more difficult problem is solved by reducing it to a simpler problem that has already been solved. The technique of reducing a problem with nonhomogeneous boundary conditions to one with homogeneous boundary conditions by subtracting the steady-state solution has wide application.

EXAMPLE 1

Consider the heat conduction problem

$$u_{xx} = u_t, \qquad 0 < x < 30, \quad t > 0, \tag{18}$$

$$u(0, t) = 20, \quad u(30, t) = 50, \quad t > 0, \tag{19}$$

$$u(x, 0) = 60 - 2x, \qquad 0 < x < 30. \tag{20}$$

Find the steady-state temperature distribution and the boundary value problem that determines the transient distribution.

Solution:

We seek the solution in the form $u(x,t) = v(x) + w(x,t)$. The steady-state temperature $v(x)$ satisfies $v''(x) = 0$ and the boundary conditions $v(0) = 20$ and $v(30) = 50$. Thus $v(x) = 20 + x$. The transient distribution $w(x,t)$ satisfies the heat conduction equation

$$w_{xx} = w_t, \qquad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0, \tag{21}$$

the homogeneous boundary conditions

$$w(0, t) = 0, \quad w(30, t) = 0, \qquad t > 0, \tag{22}$$

and the modified initial condition

$$w(x, 0) = 60 - 2x - (20 + x) = 40 - 3x, \quad 0 < x < L. \tag{23}$$

Note that this problem is of the form (1), (2), (3) with $f(x) = 40 - 3x$, $\alpha^2 = 1$, and $L = 30$. Thus the solution is given by equations (4) and (6).

Figure 10.6.1 shows a plot of the initial temperature distribution $60 - 2x$, the final temperature distribution $20 + x$, and the temperature at three intermediate times found by solving equations (21) through (23). Note that while the initial condition does not satisfy the boundary conditions, the intermediate temperature satisfies the boundary conditions (19) for any $t > 0$. As t increases, the effect of the boundary conditions gradually moves from the ends of the bar toward its center.

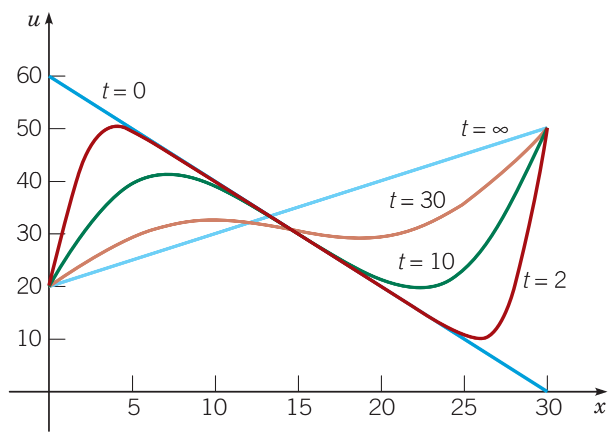


FIGURE 10.6.1 Temperature distributions at several times using the first 10 terms of the series solution of the heat conduction problem in Example 1.

Bar with Insulated Ends. A slightly different problem occurs if the ends of the bar are insulated so that there is no passage of heat through them. According to equation (2) in Appendix A, the rate of flow of heat across a cross section is proportional to the rate of change of temperature in the x direction. Thus, in the case of no heat flow, the boundary conditions are

$$u_x(0, t) = 0, \quad u_x(L, t) = 0, \quad t > 0. \tag{24}$$

The problem posed by equations (1), (3), and (24) can also be solved by the method of separation of variables. If we let

$$u(x,t) = X(x)T(t), \tag{25}$$

and substitute for u in equation (1), then it follows, as in Section 10.5, that

$$\frac{X''}{X} = \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\frac{T'}{T} = -\lambda, \tag{26}$$

where λ is a constant. Thus we obtain again the two ordinary differential equations

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \quad 0 < x < L. \tag{27}$$

$$T' + \alpha^2\lambda T = 0, \quad t > 0. \tag{28}$$

For any value of λ, a product of solutions of equations (27) and (28) is a solution of the partial differential equation (1). However, we are interested only in those solutions that also satisfy the boundary conditions (24).

If we substitute for $u(x,t)$ from equation (25) in the boundary condition at $x = 0$, we obtain $X'(0)T(t) = 0$. We cannot permit $T(t)$ to be zero for all t, since then $u(x,t)$ would also be zero for all t. Hence we must have

$$X'(0) = 0. \tag{29}$$

Proceeding in the same way with the boundary condition at $x = L$, we find that

$$X'(L) = 0. \tag{30}$$

Thus we wish to solve equation (27) subject to the boundary conditions (29) and (30). It is possible to show that nontrivial solutions of this problem can exist only if λ is real. One way to show this is indicated in Problem 18; alternatively, we can appeal to a more general theory to be discussed in Section 11.2. We will assume that λ is real and will consider, in turn, the three cases $\lambda < 0$, $\lambda = 0$, and $\lambda > 0$.

Case I: If $\lambda < 0$, we let $\lambda = -\mu^2$, where μ is real and positive, so that equation (27) becomes $X'' - \mu^2 X = 0$. It is convenient to write its general solution as

$$X(x) = k_1\sinh(\mu x) + k_2\cosh(\mu x) \tag{31}$$

so that the boundary conditions are easier to apply. In this case the boundary conditions can be satisfied only by choosing $k_1 = k_2 = 0$. Since this forces the solution to be the trivial solution $u(x,t) = 0$, it follows that λ cannot be negative; in other words, the problem (27), (29), and (30) has no negative eigenvalues.

Case II: If $\lambda = 0$, then equation (27) is $X'' = 0$, and therefore,

$$X(x) = k_1 x + k_2. \tag{32}$$

The boundary conditions (29) and (30) require that $k_1 = 0$ but do not determine k_2. Thus $\lambda = 0$ is an eigenvalue, corresponding to the eigenfunction $X(x) = 1$. For $\lambda = 0$, it follows from equation (28) that $T(t)$ is also a constant, which can be combined with k_2. Hence, for $\lambda = 0$, we obtain the constant solution $u_0(x,t) = 1$.

Case III: Finally, if $\lambda > 0$, let $\lambda = \mu^2$, where μ is real and positive. Then equation (27) becomes $X'' + \mu^2 X = 0$, and consequently,

$$X(x) = k_1\sin(\mu x) + k_2\cos(\mu x). \tag{33}$$

The boundary condition (29) requires that $k_1 = 0$, and the boundary condition (30) requires that $\mu = n\pi/L$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ but leaves k_2 arbitrary. Thus the problem (27), (29), and (30) has an infinite sequence of positive eigenvalues $\lambda_n = n^2\pi^2/L^2$ with the corresponding eigenfunctions $X_n(x) = \cos(n\pi x/L)$. For the eigenvalue λ_n, the solution $T_n(t)$ of equation (28) is proportional to $\exp(-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2)$.

Combining these results, we have the following fundamental solutions for the problem (1), (3), and (24):

$$\begin{aligned} u_0(x,t) &= 1, \\ u_n(x,t) &= e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \end{aligned} \tag{34}$$

where arbitrary constants of proportionality have been dropped. Each of these functions satisfies the differential equation (1) and the boundary conditions (24). Because both the differential equation and the boundary conditions are linear and homogeneous, any finite linear combination of the fundamental solutions satisfies them. We will assume that this is true for convergent infinite linear combinations of fundamental solutions as well. Thus, to satisfy the initial condition (3), we assume that $u(x,t)$ has the form

$$\begin{aligned} u(x,t) &= \frac{c_0}{2}u_0(x,t) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n u_n(x,t) \\ &= \frac{c_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{35}$$

The coefficients c_n are determined by the requirement that

$$u(x,0) = \frac{c_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) = f(x). \tag{36}$$

Thus the unknown coefficients in equation (35) must be the coefficients in the Fourier cosine series of period $2L$ for f. Hence

$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{37}$$

With this choice of the coefficients $c_0, c_1, c_2, \ldots$, the series (35) provides the solution to the heat conduction problem for a rod with insulated ends, equations (1), (3), and (24).

It is worth observing that the solution (35) can also be thought of as the sum of a steady-state temperature distribution (given by the constant $c_0/2$), which is independent of time t, and a transient distribution (given by the rest of the infinite series) that approaches zero in the limit as t approaches infinity. That the steady-state is a constant is consistent with the expectation that the process of heat conduction will gradually smooth out the initial temperature distribution in the bar as long as no heat is allowed to enter from, or to escape to, the outside. The physical interpretation of the term

$$\frac{c_0}{2} = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^L f(x)dx \tag{38}$$

is that the steady-state temperature distribution is the mean value of the original temperature distribution.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the temperature $u(x,t)$ in a metal rod of length 25 cm that is insulated on the ends as well as on the sides and whose initial temperature distribution is $u(x,0) = x$ for $0 < x < 25$.

Solution:

The temperature in the rod satisfies the heat conduction problem (1), (3), and (24) with $L = 25$. Thus, from equation (35), the solution is

$$u(x,t) = \frac{c_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/625} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{25}\right), \tag{39}$$

where the coefficients are determined from equation (37). We have

$$c_0 = \frac{2}{25}\int_0^{25} x\,dx = 25 \tag{40}$$

and, for $n \geq 1$,

$$c_n = \frac{2}{25}\int_0^{25} x\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{25}\right)dx$$

$$= \frac{50(\cos(n\pi) - 1)}{n^2\pi^2} = \begin{cases} -\dfrac{100}{(n\pi)^2}, & n \text{ odd;} \\ 0, & n \text{ even.} \end{cases} \tag{41}$$

Thus

$$u(x,t) = \frac{25}{2} - \frac{100}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1,3,5,\ldots}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/625}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{25}\right) \tag{42}$$

is the solution of the given problem.

For $\alpha^2 = 1$, Figure 10.6.2 shows plots of the temperature distribution in the bar at several times. Again, the convergence of the series is rapid so that only a relatively few terms are needed to generate the graphs.

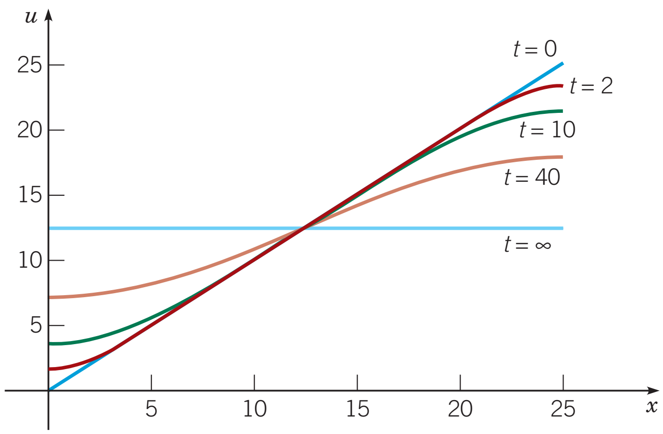


FIGURE 10.6.2 Temperature distributions at several times using the first five terms of the series solution (42) of the heat conduction problem in Example 2.

More General Problems. The method of separation of variables can also be used to solve heat conduction problems with boundary conditions other than those given by equations (8) and equations (24). For example, the left end of the bar might be held at a fixed temperature T while the other end is insulated. In this case the boundary conditions are

$$u(0,t) = T, \quad u_x(L,t) = 0, \quad t > 0. \tag{43}$$

The first step in solving this problem is to reduce the given boundary conditions to homogeneous ones by subtracting the steady-state solution. The resulting problem is solved by essentially the same procedure as in the problems previously considered. However, the extension of the initial function f outside of the interval $[0, L]$ is somewhat different from that in any case considered so far (see Problem 15).

A more general type of boundary condition occurs when the rate of heat flow through the end of the bar is proportional to the temperature. It is shown in Appendix A that the boundary conditions in this case are of the form

$$u_x(0,t) - h_1 u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(L,t) + h_2 u(L,t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \tag{44}$$

where h_1 and h_2 are nonnegative constants. If we apply the method of separation of variables to the problem consisting of equations (1), (3), and (44), we find that $X(x)$ must be a solution of

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \quad X'(0) - h_1 X(0) = 0, \quad X'(L) + h_2 X(L) = 0, \tag{45}$$

where λ is the separation constant. Once again, it is possible to show that nontrivial solutions can exist only for certain nonnegative real values of λ, the eigenvalues, but these values are not given by a simple formula (see Problem 20). It is also possible to show that the corresponding solutions of equations (45), the eigenfunctions, satisfy an orthogonality relation and that we can satisfy the initial condition (3) by superposing solutions of equations (45). However, the resulting series is not included in the discussion of this chapter. There is a more general theory that covers such problems, and it is outlined in Chapter 11.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 8, find the steady-state solution of the heat conduction equation $\alpha^2 u_{xx} = u_t$ that satisfies the given set of boundary conditions.

1. $u(0,t) = 10, \quad u(50,t) = 40$

2. $u(0,t) = 30, \quad u(40,t) = -20$

3. $u_x(0,t) = 0, \quad u(L,t) = 0$

4. $u_x(0,t) = 0, \quad u(L,t) = T$

5. $u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(L,t) = 0$

6. $u(0,t) = T, \quad u_x(L,t) = 0$

7. $u_x(0,t) - u(0,t) = 0, \quad u(L,t) = T$

8. $u(0,t) = T, \quad u_x(L,t) + u(L,t) = 0$

9. Let an aluminum rod of length 20 cm be initially at the uniform temperature of 25°C. Suppose that at time $t = 0$, the end $x = 0$ is cooled to 0°C while the end $x = 20$ is heated to 60°C, and both are thereafter maintained at those temperatures.

a. Find the temperature distribution in the rod at any time t.

G **b.** Plot the initial temperature distribution, the final (steady-state) temperature distribution, and the temperature distributions at two representative intermediate times on the same set of axes.

G **c.** Plot u versus t for $x = 5$, 10, and 15.

N **d.** Estimate how much time must elapse before the temperature at $x = 5$ cm comes (and remains) within 1% of its steady-state value.

10. a. Let the ends of a copper rod 100 cm long be maintained at 0°C. Suppose that the center of the bar is heated to 100°C by an external heat source and that this situation is maintained until a steady-state results. Find this steady-state temperature distribution.

b. At a time $t = 0$ (after the steady-state of part a has been reached), let the heat source be removed. At the same instant, let the end $x = 0$ be placed in thermal contact with a reservoir at 20°C, while the other end remains at 0°C. Find the temperature as a function of position and time.

G **c.** Plot u versus x for several values of t. Also plot u versus t for several values of x.

N **d.** What limiting value does the temperature at the center of the rod approach after a long time? How much time must elapse before the center of the rod cools to within 1°C of its limiting value?

11. Consider a rod of length 30 for which $\alpha^2 = 1$. Suppose the initial temperature distribution is given by $u(x,0) = x(60-x)/30$ and that the boundary conditions are $u(0,t) = 30$ and $u(30,t) = 0$.

a. Find the temperature in the rod as a function of position and time.

G **b.** Plot u versus x for several values of t. Also plot u versus t for several values of x.

G **c.** Plot u versus t for $x = 12$. Observe that u initially decreases, then increases for a while, and finally decreases to approach its steady-state value. Explain physically why this behavior occurs at this point.

12. Consider a uniform rod of length L with an initial temperature given by $u(x,0) = \sin(\pi x/L)$, $0 \le x \le L$. Assume that both ends of the bar are insulated.

a. Find the temperature $u(x,t)$.

b. What is the steady-state temperature as $t \to \infty$?

G **c.** Let $\alpha^2 = 1$ and $L = 40$. Plot u versus x for several values of t. Also plot u versus t for several values of x.

d. Describe briefly how the temperature in the rod changes as time progresses.

13. Consider a bar of length 40 cm whose initial temperature is given by $u(x,0) = x(60-x)/30$. Suppose that $\alpha^2 = 1/4$ cm^2/s and that both ends of the bar are insulated.

a. Find the temperature $u(x,t)$.

G **b.** Plot u versus x for several values of t. Also plot u versus t for several values of x.

c. Determine the steady-state temperature in the bar.

N **d.** Determine how much time must elapse before the temperature at $x = 40$ comes within 1°C of its steady-state value.

14. Consider a bar 30 cm long that is made of a material for which $\alpha^2 = 1$ and whose ends are insulated. Suppose that the initial temperature is zero except for the interval $5 < x < 10$, where the initial temperature is 25°C.

a. Find the temperature $u(x,t)$.

G **b.** Plot u versus x for several values of t. Also plot u versus t for several values of x.

G **c.** Plot $u(4,t)$ and $u(11,t)$ versus t. Observe that the points $x = 4$ and $x = 11$ are symmetrically located with respect to the initial temperature pulse, yet their temperature plots are significantly different. Explain physically why this is so.

15. Consider a uniform bar of length L having an initial temperature distribution given by $f(x)$, $0 \le x \le L$. Assume that the temperature at the end $x = 0$ is held at 0°C, while the end $x = L$ is insulated so that no heat passes through it.

a. Show that the fundamental solutions of the partial differential equation and boundary conditions are

$$u_n(x,t) = e^{-(2n-1)^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/4L^2} \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right),$$
$$n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$$

b. Find a formal series expansion for the temperature $u(x,t)$

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n u_n(x,t)$$

that also satisfies the initial condition $u(x,0) = f(x)$.
Hint: Even though the fundamental solutions involve only the odd sines, it is still possible to represent f by a Fourier series involving only these functions. See Problem 39 of Section 10.4.

16. In the bar of Problem 15, suppose that $L = 30$, $\alpha^2 = 1$, and the initial temperature distribution is $f(x) = 30 - x$ for $0 < x < 30$.

a. Find the temperature $u(x,t)$.

G **b.** Plot u versus x for several values of t. Also plot u versus t for several values of x.

c. How does the location x_m of the warmest point in the bar change as t increases? Draw a graph of x_m versus t.

G **d.** Plot the maximum temperature in the bar versus t.

17. Suppose that the conditions are as in Problems 15 and 16 except that the boundary condition at $x = 0$ is $u(0,t) = 40$.

a. Find the temperature $u(x,t)$.

G **b.** Plot u versus x for several values of t. Also plot u versus t for several values of x.

c. Compare the plots you obtained in this problem with those from Problem 16. Explain how the change in the boundary condition at $x = 0$ causes the observed differences in the behavior of the temperature in the bar.

18. Consider the boundary value problem

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \quad X'(0) = 0, \quad X'(L) = 0. \tag{46}$$

Let $\lambda = \mu^2$, where $\mu = \nu + i\sigma$ with ν and σ real. Show that if $\sigma \neq 0$, then the only solution of equations (46) is the trivial solution $X(x) = 0$. *Hint:* Use an argument similar to that in Problem 23 of Section 10.1.

19. The right end of a bar of length a with thermal conductivity κ_1 and cross-sectional area A_1 is joined to the left end of a bar of thermal conductivity κ_2 and cross-sectional area A_2. The composite bar has a total length L. Suppose that the end $x = 0$ is held at temperature zero, while the end $x = L$ is held at temperature T. Find the steady-state temperature in the composite bar, assuming that the temperature and rate of heat flow are continuous at $x = a$. *Hint:* See equation (2) of Appendix A.

20. Consider the problem

$$\begin{aligned}
&\alpha^2 u_{xx} = u_t, && 0 < x < L, t > 0;\\
&u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(L,t) + \gamma u(L,t) = 0, && t > 0;\\
&u(x,0) = f(x), && 0 \le x \le L.
\end{aligned} \tag{47}$$

a. Let $u(x,t) = X(x)T(t)$, and show that

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \quad X(0) = 0, \quad X'(L) + \gamma X(L) = 0, \tag{48}$$

and

$$T' + \lambda\alpha^2 T = 0,$$

where λ is the separation constant.

b. Assume that λ is real, and show that problem (48) has no nontrivial solutions if $\lambda \le 0$.

c. If $\lambda > 0$, let $\lambda = \mu^2$ with $\mu > 0$. Show that problem (48) has nontrivial solutions only if μ is a solution of the equation

$$\mu\cos(\mu L) + \gamma\sin(\mu L) = 0. \tag{49}$$

d. Rewrite equation (49) as $\tan(\mu L) = -\mu/\gamma$. Then, by drawing the graphs of $y = \tan(\mu L)$ and $y = -\mu/\gamma$ for $\mu > 0$ on the same set of axes, show that equation (49) is satisfied by infinitely many positive values of μ; denote these by $\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots, \mu_n, \ldots$, ordered in increasing size.

e. Determine the set of fundamental solutions $u_n(x,t)$ corresponding to the values μ_n found in part d.

An External Heat Source. Consider the heat conduction problem in a bar that is in thermal contact with an external heat source or sink. Then the modified heat conduction equation is

$$u_t = \alpha^2 u_{xx} + s(x), \tag{50}$$

where the term $s(x)$ describes the effect of the external agency; $s(x)$ is positive for a source and negative for a sink. Suppose that the boundary conditions are

$$u(0,t) = T_1, \quad u(L,t) = T_2 \tag{51}$$

and the initial condition is

$$u(x,0) = f(x). \tag{52}$$

Problems 21 through 23 deal with this kind of problem.

21. Write $u(x,t) = v(x) + w(x,t)$, where v and w are the steady-state and transient parts of the solution, respectively. State the boundary value problems that $v(x)$ and $w(x,t)$, respectively, satisfy. Observe that the problem for w is the fundamental heat conduction problem discussed in Section 10.5, with a modified initial temperature distribution.

22. a. Suppose that $\alpha^2 = 1$ and $s(x) = k$, a constant, in equation (50). Find $v(x)$.

b. Assume that $T_1 = 0$, $T_2 = 0$, $L = 20$, $k = 1/5$, and that $f(x) = 0$ for $0 < x < L$. Determine $w(x,t)$.

G **c.** Plot $u(x,t)$ versus x for several values of t; on the same axes.

G **d.** Plot the steady-state part of the solution $v(x)$.

23. a. Let $\alpha^2 = 1$ and $s(x) = kx/L$, where k is a constant, in equation (50). Find $v(x)$.

b. Assume that $T_1 = 10$, $T_2 = 30$, $L = 20$, $k = 1/2$, and that $f(x) = 0$ for $0 < x < L$. Determine $w(x,t)$.

G **c.** Plot $u(x,t)$ versus x for several values of t; on the same axes.

G **d.** Plot the steady-state part of the solution $v(x)$.

10.7 The Wave Equation: Vibrations of an Elastic String

A second partial differential equation that occurs frequently in applied mathematics is the wave equation. Some form of this equation, or a generalization of it, almost inevitably arises in any mathematical analysis of phenomena involving the propagation of waves in a continuous medium. For example, the studies of acoustic waves, water waves, electromagnetic waves, and seismic waves are all based on this equation.

Perhaps the easiest situation to visualize occurs in the investigation of mechanical vibrations. Suppose that an elastic string of length L is tightly stretched between two supports at the same horizontal level so that the x-axis lies along the string (see Figure 10.7.1).

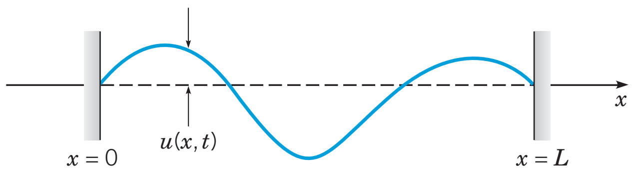


FIGURE 10.7.1 A vibrating string.

The elastic string may be thought of as a guitar string, a guy wire, or possibly an electric power line. Suppose that the string is set in motion (for example, by plucking) so that it vibrates in a vertical plane, and let $u(x, t)$ denote the vertical displacement experienced by the string at the point x at time t. If damping effects, such as air resistance, are neglected, and if the amplitude of the motion is not too large, then $u(x, t)$ satisfies the partial differential equation

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt} \tag{1}$$

in the domain $0 < x < L$, $t > 0$. Equation (1) is known as the one-dimensional **wave equation**[10] and is derived in Appendix B at the end of the chapter. The constant coefficient a^2 appearing in equation (1) is given by

$$a^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}, \tag{2}$$

where T is the tension (force) in the string, and ρ is the mass per unit length of the string material. It follows that a has the units of length/time—that is, of velocity. In Problem 14 it is shown that a is the velocity of propagation of waves along the string.

To describe the motion of the string completely, it is necessary also to specify suitable initial and boundary conditions for the displacement $u(x, t)$. The ends are assumed to remain fixed, and therefore the boundary conditions are

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \quad t \geq 0. \tag{3}$$

Since the differential equation (1) is of second order with respect to t, it is plausible to prescribe two initial conditions. These are the initial position of the string

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \qquad 0 \leq x \leq L \tag{4}$$

and its initial velocity

$$u_t(x, 0) = g(x), \qquad 0 \leq x \leq L, \tag{5}$$

[10]The solution of the wave equation was one of the major mathematical problems of the mid-eighteenth century. The wave equation was first derived and studied by d'Alembert in 1746. It also attracted the attention of Euler (1748), Daniel Bernoulli (1753), and Lagrange (1759). Solutions were obtained in several different forms, and the merits of, and relations among, these solutions were argued, sometimes heatedly, in a series of papers extending over more than 25 years. The major points at issue concerned the nature of a function and the kinds of functions that can be represented by trigonometric series. These questions were not resolved until the nineteenth century.

where f and g are given functions. In order for equations (3), (4), and (5) to be consistent, it is also necessary to require that

$$f(0) = f(L) = 0, \quad g(0) = g(L) = 0. \tag{6}$$

The mathematical problem then is to determine the solution of the wave equation (1) that also satisfies the boundary conditions (3) and the initial conditions (4) and (5). Like the heat conduction problem of Sections 10.5 and 10.6, this problem is an initial value problem in the time variable t and a boundary value problem in the space variable x. Alternatively, it can be considered as a boundary value problem in the semi-infinite strip $0 < x < L$, $t > 0$ of the xt-plane (see Figure 10.7.2). One condition is imposed at each point on the semi-infinite sides, and two are imposed at each point on the finite base.

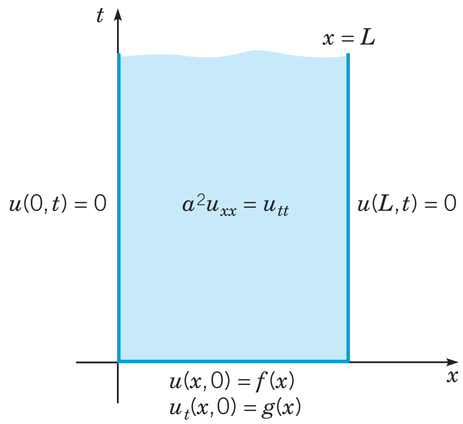


FIGURE 10.7.2 Boundary value problem for the wave equation.

It is important to realize that equation (1) governs a large number of other wave problems besides the transverse vibrations of an elastic string. For example, it is only necessary to interpret the function u and the constant a appropriately to have problems dealing with water waves in an ocean, acoustic or electromagnetic waves in the atmosphere, or elastic waves in a solid body. If more than one space dimension is significant, then equation (1) must be slightly generalized. The two-dimensional wave equation is

$$a^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) = u_{tt}. \tag{7}$$

This equation would arise, for example, if we considered the motion of a thin elastic sheet, such as a drumhead. Similarly, in three (spatial) dimensions the wave equation is

$$a^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy} + u_{zz}) = u_{tt}. \tag{8}$$

In connection with the latter two equations, the boundary and initial conditions must also be suitably generalized.

We now solve three boundary value problems involving the wave equation in one dimension.

Elastic String with Nonzero Initial Displacement. First suppose that the string is disturbed from its equilibrium position and then released at time $t = 0$ with zero velocity to vibrate freely. Then the vertical displacement $u(x, t)$ must satisfy the wave equation (1)

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}, \qquad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0;$$

the boundary conditions (3)

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \qquad t \geq 0;$$

and the initial conditions

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x, 0) = 0, \quad 0 \leq x \leq L, \tag{9}$$

where f is a given function describing the configuration of the string at $t = 0$.

The method of separation of variables can be used to obtain the solution of equations (1), (3), and (9). Assuming that

$$u(x,t) = X(x)T(t) \tag{10}$$

and substituting for u in equation (1), we obtain

$$\frac{X''}{X} = \frac{1}{a^2}\frac{T''}{T} = -\lambda, \tag{11}$$

where λ is a separation constant. Thus we find that $X(x)$ and $T(t)$ satisfy the ordinary differential equations

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \tag{12}$$

$$T'' + a^2\lambda T = 0. \tag{13}$$

Further, by substituting from equation (10) for $u(x,t)$ in the boundary conditions (3), we find that $X(x)$ must satisfy the boundary conditions

$$X(0) = 0, \quad X(L) = 0. \tag{14}$$

Finally, by substituting from equation (10) into the second of the initial conditions (9), we also find that $T(t)$ must satisfy the initial condition

$$T'(0) = 0. \tag{15}$$

Our next task is to determine $X(x)$, $T(t)$, and λ by solving equation (12) subject to the boundary conditions (14) and solving equation (13) subject to the initial condition (15).

The problem of solving the differential equation (12) subject to the boundary conditions (14) is *precisely the same problem* that arose in Section 10.5 in connection with the heat conduction equation. Thus we can use the results obtained there and at the end of Section 10.1: the problem (12), (14) has nontrivial solutions if and only if λ is an eigenvalue

$$\lambda = \frac{n^2\pi^2}{L^2}, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{16}$$

and $X(x)$ is proportional to the corresponding eigenfunction $\sin(n\pi x/L)$.

Using the values of λ given by equation (16) in equation (13), we obtain

$$T'' + \frac{n^2\pi^2a^2}{L^2}T = 0. \tag{17}$$

Therefore,

$$T(t) = k_1\cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right) + k_2\sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right), \tag{18}$$

where k_1 and k_2 are arbitrary constants. The initial condition (15) requires that $k_2 = 0$, so $T(t)$ must be proportional to $\cos(n\pi at/L)$.

Thus the functions

$$u_n(x,t) = \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots \tag{19}$$

satisfy the partial differential equation (1), the boundary conditions (3), and the second initial condition (9). These functions are the fundamental solutions for the given problem.

To satisfy the remaining (nonhomogeneous) initial condition (9), we will consider a superposition of the fundamental solutions (19) with properly chosen coefficients. Thus we assume that $u(x,t)$ has the form

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n u_n(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right), \tag{20}$$

where the constants c_n remain to be chosen. The initial condition $u(x,0) = f(x)$ requires that

$$u(x,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) = f(x). \tag{21}$$

Consequently, the coefficients c_n must be the coefficients in the Fourier sine series of period $2L$ for f; hence

$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{22}$$

Thus the formal solution of the problem of equations (1), (3), and (9) is given by equation (20) with the coefficients calculated from equation (22).

For a fixed value of n, the expression $\sin(n\pi x/L)\cos(n\pi at/L)$ in equation (19) is periodic in time t with the period $2L/na$; it therefore represents a vibratory motion of the string having this period, or having the frequency $n\pi a/L$. The quantities $n\pi a/L$ for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$ are the **natural frequencies** of the string—that is, the frequencies at which the string will freely vibrate. The factor $\sin(n\pi x/L)$ represents the displacement pattern occurring in the string when it is executing vibrations of the given frequency. Each displacement pattern is called a **natural mode** of vibration and is periodic in the space variable x; the spatial period $2L/n$ is called the **wavelength** of the mode of frequency $n\pi a/L$. Thus the eigenvalues $n^2\pi^2/L^2$ of the problem (12), (14) are proportional to the squares of the natural frequencies, and the eigenfunctions $\sin(n\pi x/L)$ give the natural modes. The first three natural modes are sketched in Figure 10.7.3. The total motion of the string, given by the function $u(x,t)$ of equation (20), is thus a combination of the natural modes of vibration and is also a periodic function of time with period $2L/a$.

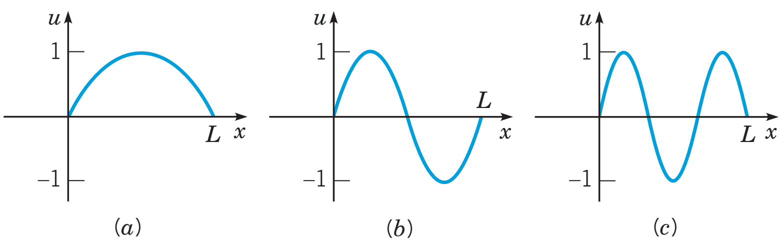


FIGURE 10.7.3 First three fundamental modes of vibration of an elastic string. (a) Frequency $= \pi a/L$, wavelength $= 2L$; (b) frequency $= 2\pi a/L$, wavelength $= L$; (c) frequency $= 3\pi a/L$, wavelength $= 2L/3$.

EXAMPLE 1

Consider a vibrating string of length $L = 30$ that satisfies the wave equation

$$4u_{xx} = u_{tt}, \quad 0 < x < 30, \quad t > 0. \tag{23}$$

Assume that the ends of the string are fixed and that the string is set in motion with no initial velocity from the initial position

$$u(x,0) = f(x) = \begin{cases} x/10, & 0 \le x \le 10, \\ (30-x)/20, & 10 < x \le 30. \end{cases} \tag{24}$$

Find the displacement $u(x,t)$ of the string, and describe its motion through one period.

Solution:

The solution is given by equation (20) with $a = 2$ and $L = 30$; that is,

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{30}\right)\cos\left(\frac{2n\pi t}{30}\right), \tag{25}$$

where c_n is calculated from equation (22). Substituting from equation (24) into equation (22), we obtain

$$c_n = \frac{2}{30}\int_0^{10} \frac{x}{10} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{30}\right) dx + \frac{2}{30}\int_{10}^{30} \frac{30-x}{20} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{30}\right) dx. \tag{26}$$

By evaluating the integrals in equation (26), we find that

$$c_n = \frac{9}{n^2\pi^2} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right), \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots . \tag{27}$$

The solution (25), (27) gives the displacement of the string at any point x at any time t. The motion is periodic in time with period 30, so it is sufficient to analyze the solution for $0 \le t \le 30$.

The best way to visualize the solution is by a computer animation showing the dynamic behavior of the vibrating string. Here, we indicate the motion of the string in Figures 10.7.4, 10.7.5, and 10.7.6. Plots of u versus x for $t = 0, 4, 7.5, 11$, and 15 are shown in Figure 10.7.4. Observe that the maximum initial displacement is positive and occurs at $x = 10$, while at $t = 15$, a half-period later, the maximum displacement is negative and occurs at $x = 20$. The string then retraces its motion and returns to its original configuration at $t = 30$. Figure 10.7.5 shows the behavior of the points $x = 0, 5, 10, 15$, and 25 by plots of u versus t for these fixed values of x. The plots confirm that the motion is indeed periodic with period 30 and illustrate that each point remains motionless for a substantial part of each period. Figure 10.7.6 shows a three-dimensional plot of u versus both x and t, from which

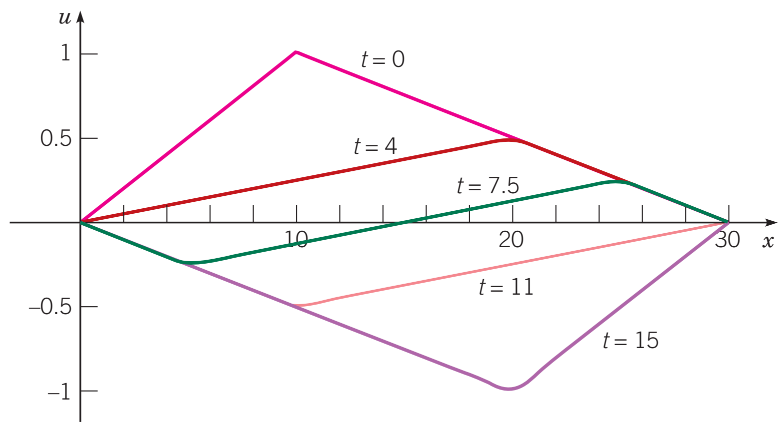


FIGURE 10.7.4 Plots of u versus x for $t = 0, 4, 7.5, 11$, and 15 using the first 25 terms of the series solution (25) of the string in Example 1.

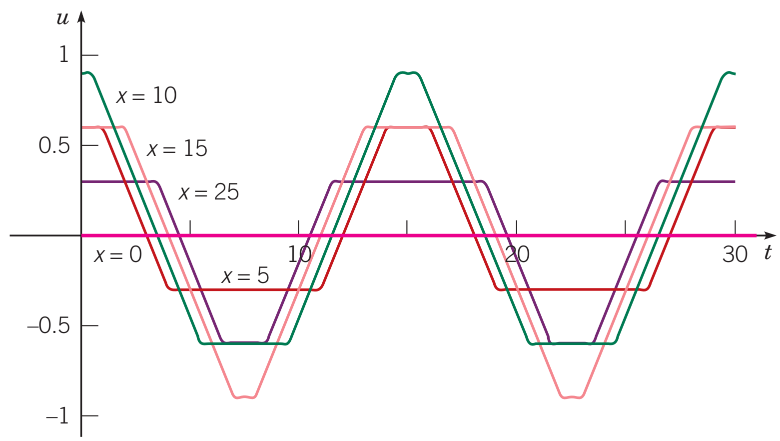


FIGURE 10.7.5 Plots of u versus t for $x = 0, 5, 10, 15$, and 25 using the first 25 terms of the series solution of the string in Example 1.

the overall nature of the solution is apparent. Of course, the curves in Figures 10.7.4 and 10.7.5 lie on the surface shown in Figure 10.7.6.

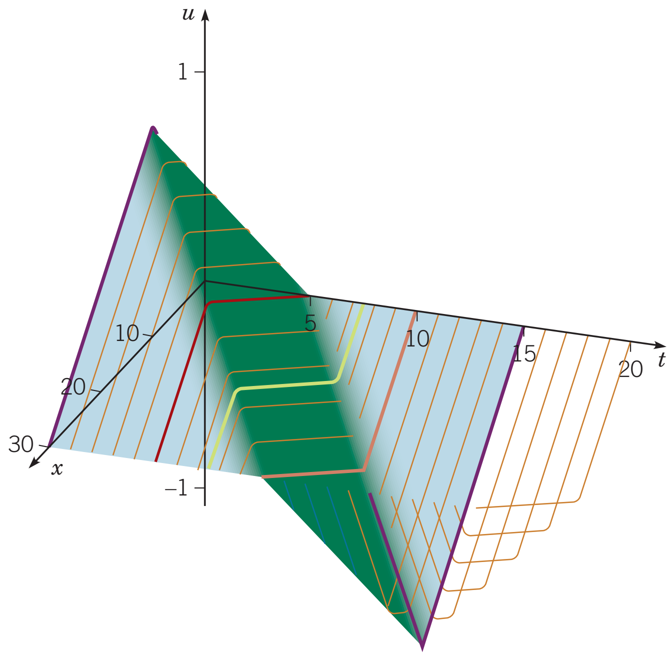


FIGURE 10.7.6 Plot of u versus x and t using the first 25 terms of the series solution (25) of the string in Example 1.

Justification of the Solution. As in the heat conduction problem considered earlier, equation (20) with the coefficients c_n given by equation (22) is only a *formal* solution of equations (1), (3), and (9). To determine whether equation (20) *actually* represents the solution of the given problem requires some further investigation. As in the heat conduction problem, it is tempting to try to show this directly by substituting equation (20) for $u(x, t)$ in equations (1), (3), and (9). However, upon formally computing u_{xx}, for example, we obtain

$$u_{xx}(x,t) = -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \left(\frac{n\pi}{L}\right)^2 \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right);$$

due to the presence of the n^2 factor in the numerator, this series may not converge. This would not necessarily mean that the series (20) for $u(x, t)$ is incorrect, but only that the series (20) cannot be used to calculate u_{xx} and u_{tt}. A basic difference between solutions of the wave equation and those of the heat conduction equation is that the latter contain negative exponential terms that approach zero very rapidly with increasing n, which ensures the convergence of the series solution and its derivatives. In contrast, series solutions of the wave equation contain only oscillatory terms that do not decay with increasing n.

However, there is an alternative way to establish the validity of equation (20) indirectly. At the same time, we will gain additional information about the structure of the solution. First we will show that equation (20) is equivalent to

$$u(x,t) = \frac{1}{2}\big(h(x-at) + h(x+at)\big), \tag{28}$$

where h is the function obtained by extending the initial data f into $(-L, 0)$ as an odd function, and to other values of x as a periodic function of period $2L$. That is,

$$h(x) = \begin{cases} f(x), & 0 \le x \le L, \\ -f(-x), & -L < x < 0; \end{cases} \tag{29}$$

$$h(x + 2L) = h(x).$$

To establish equation (28), note that h has the Fourier series

$$h(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \tag{30}$$

where c_n is given by equation (22). Then, using the trigonometric identities for the sine of a sum or difference, we obtain

$$h(x-at) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \left(\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right) - \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right) \right),$$

$$h(x+at) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \left(\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right) \right),$$

and equation (28) follows immediately upon adding the last two equations. From equation (28), we see that $u(x,t)$ is continuous for $0 < x < L$, $t > 0$, provided that h is continuous on the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$. This requires f to be continuous on the original interval $[0, L]$. Similarly, u is twice continuously differentiable with respect to either variable in $0 < x < L$, $t > 0$, provided that h is twice continuously differentiable on $(-\infty, \infty)$. This requires f' and f'' to be continuous on $[0, L]$. Furthermore, since h'' is the odd extension of f'', we must also have $f''(0) = f''(L) = 0$. However, since h' is the even extension of f', no further conditions are required on f'. Provided that these conditions are met, u_{xx} and u_{tt} can be computed from equation (28), and it is an elementary exercise to show that these derivatives satisfy the wave equation. Some of the details of the argument just indicated are given in Problems 19 and 20.

If some of the continuity requirements stated in the last paragraph are not met, then u is not differentiable at some points in the semi-infinite strip $0 < x < L$, $t > 0$, and thus is a solution of the wave equation only in a somewhat restricted sense. An important physical consequence of this observation is that if there are any discontinuities present in the initial data f, then they will be preserved in the solution $u(x,t)$ for all time. In contrast, in heat conduction problems, initial discontinuities are instantly smoothed out (Section 10.6). Suppose that the initial displacement f has a jump discontinuity at $x = x_0$, $0 \le x_0 \le L$. Since h is the odd periodic extension of f, the same discontinuity is present in $h(\xi)$ at $\xi = x_0 + 2nL$ and at $\xi = -x_0 + 2nL$, where n is any integer. Thus $h(x - at)$ is discontinuous at points (x,t) when $x - at = x_0 + 2nL$ or when $x - at = -x_0 + 2nL$. For a fixed x in $[0, L]$, the discontinuity that was originally at x_0 will reappear in $h(x - at)$ at $t = (x \pm x_0 - 2nL)/a$. Similarly, $h(x + at)$ is discontinuous at the point x at $t = (-x \pm x_0 + 2mL)/a$, where m is any integer. If we refer to equation (28), it then follows that the solution $u(x,t)$ is also discontinuous at the given point x at these values of t. Since the physical problem is posed for $t > 0$, only those values of m and n that yield positive values of t are of interest.

Elastic String with Nonzero Initial Velocity. Let us modify the problem just considered by supposing that the string is set in motion from its equilibrium position with a given velocity. Then the vertical displacement $u(x,t)$ must satisfy the wave equation

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}, \qquad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0;$$

the boundary conditions

$$u(0,t) = 0, \quad u(L,t) = 0, \qquad t \ge 0;$$

and the initial conditions

$$u(x,0) = 0, \quad u_t(x,0) = g(x), \quad 0 \le x \le L, \tag{31}$$

where $g(x)$ is the initial velocity at the point x of the string.

The solution of this new problem can be obtained by following the procedure described above for the problem (1), (3), and (9). Upon separating variables, we find that the problem for $X(x)$ is exactly the same as before. Thus, once again, $\lambda = n^2\pi^2/L^2$ and $X(x)$ is proportional to $\sin(n\pi x/L)$. The differential equation for $T(t)$ is also the same as before (see equation (17)),

$$T'' + \frac{n^2\pi^2 a^2}{L^2} T = 0, \tag{32}$$

but the associated initial condition is now

$$T(0) = 0, \tag{33}$$

corresponding to the first of the initial conditions (31). Recall that the general solution of equation (32) is

$$T(t) = k_1 \cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right) + k_2 \sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right), \tag{34}$$

but now the initial condition (32) requires that $k_1 = 0$. Therefore, $T(t)$ is now proportional to $\sin(n\pi at/L)$, and the fundamental solutions for the problem (1), (3), and (31) are

$$u_n(x,t) = \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{35}$$

Each of the functions $u_n(x,t)$ satisfies the wave equation (1), the boundary conditions (3), and the first of the initial conditions (31). The main consequence of using the initial conditions (31) rather than (9) is that the time-dependent factor in $u_n(x,t)$ involves a sine rather than a cosine.

To satisfy the remaining (nonhomogeneous) initial condition, we assume that $u(x,t)$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the fundamental solutions (33); that is,

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} k_n u_n(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} k_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right). \tag{36}$$

To determine the values of the coefficients k_n, we differentiate equation (34) with respect to t, set $t = 0$, and use the second initial condition (31); this gives the equation

$$u_t(x,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n\pi a}{L} k_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) = g(x). \tag{37}$$

Hence the quantities $\dfrac{n\pi a}{L}k_n$ are the coefficients in the Fourier sine series of period $2L$ for g. Therefore,

$$\frac{n\pi a}{L}k_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L g(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{38}$$

Thus equation (34), with the coefficients given by equation (36), constitutes a formal solution to the problem of equations (1), (3), and (31). The validity of this formal solution can be established by arguments similar to those previously outlined for the solution of equations (1), (3), and (9).

General Problem for the Elastic String. Finally, we turn to the problem consisting of the wave equation (1), the boundary conditions (3), and the general initial conditions (4), (5):

$$u(x,0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x,0) = g(x), \quad 0 < x < L, \tag{39}$$

where $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are the given initial position and velocity, respectively, of the string. Although this problem can be solved by separating variables, as in the cases discussed previously, it is important to note that it can also be solved simply by adding together the two solutions that we obtained above. To show that this is true, let $v(x,t)$ be the solution of the problem (1), (3), and (9), and let $w(x,t)$ be the solution of the problem (1), (3), and (31). Thus $v(x,t)$ is given by equations (20) and (22), and $w(x,t)$ is given by equations (34) and (36). Now let $u(x,t) = v(x,t) + w(x,t)$. What problem does $u(x,t)$ satisfy? First, observe that

$$a^2u_{xx} - u_{tt} = (a^2v_{xx} - v_{tt}) + (a^2w_{xx} - w_{tt}) = 0 + 0 = 0, \tag{40}$$

so $u(x,t)$ satisfies the wave equation (1). Next, we have

$$u(0,t) = v(0,t) + w(0,t) = 0 + 0 = 0, \quad u(L,t) = v(L,t) + w(L,t) = 0 + 0 = 0, \tag{41}$$

so $u(x,t)$ also satisfies the boundary conditions (3). Finally, we have

$$u(x,0) = v(x,0) + w(x,0) = f(x) + 0 = f(x) \tag{42}$$

and

$$u_t(x,0) = v_t(x,0) + w_t(x,0) = 0 + g(x) = g(x). \tag{43}$$

Thus $u(x,t)$ satisfies the general initial conditions (37).

We can restate the result we have just obtained in the following way. To solve the wave equation with the general initial conditions (37), you can solve instead the somewhat simpler problems with the initial conditions (9) and (31), respectively, and then add together the two solutions. This is another use of the **principle of superposition**.

Problems

Consider an elastic string of length L whose ends are held fixed. The string is set in motion with no initial velocity from an initial position $u(x, 0) = f(x)$. In each of Problems 1 through 4, carry out the following steps. Let $L = 10$ and $a = 1$ in parts (b) through (d).

a. Find the displacement $u(x, t)$ for the given initial position $f(x)$.

G **b.** Plot $u(x, t)$ versus x for $0 \le x \le 10$ and for several values of t between $t = 0$ and $t = 20$.

G **c.** Plot $u(x, t)$ versus t for $0 \le t \le 20$ and for several values of x.

G **d.** Construct an animation of the solution in time for at least one period.

e. Describe the motion of the string in a few sentences.

1. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x/L, & 0 \le x \le L/2, \\ 2(L-x)/L, & L/2 < x \le L \end{cases}$

2. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 4x/L, & 0 \le x \le L/4, \\ 1, & L/4 < x < 3L/4, \\ 4(L-x)/L, & 3L/4 \le x \le L \end{cases}$

3. $f(x) = 8x(L-x)^2/L^3$

4. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & 0 \le x \le L/2 - 1 \\ 1, & L/2 - 1 < x < L/2 + 1 \quad (\text{assume } L > 2), \\ 0, & L/2 + 1 \le x \le 1 \end{cases}$

Consider an elastic string of length L whose ends are held fixed. The string is set in motion from its equilibrium position with an initial velocity $u_t(x, 0) = g(x)$. In each of Problems 5 through 8, carry out the following steps. Let $L = 10$ and $a = 1$ in parts (b) through (d).

a. Find the displacement $u(x, t)$ for the given $g(x)$.

G **b.** Plot $u(x, t)$ versus x for $0 \le x \le 10$ and for several values of t between $t = 0$ and $t = 20$.

G **c.** Plot $u(x, t)$ versus t for $0 \le t \le 20$ and for several values of x.

G **d.** Construct an animation of the solution in time for at least one period.

e. Describe the motion of the string in a few sentences.

5. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 2x/L, & 0 \le x \le L/2, \\ 2(L-x)/L, & L/2 < x \le L \end{cases}$

6. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 4x/L, & 0 \le x \le L/4, \\ 1, & L/4 < x < 3L/4, \\ 4(L-x)/L, & 3L/4 \le x \le L \end{cases}$

7. $g(x) = 8x(L-x)^2/L^3$

8. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & 0 \le x \le L/2 - 1 \\ 1, & L/2 - 1 < x < L/2 + 1 \quad (\text{assume } L > 2), \\ 0, & L/2 + 1 \le x \le 1 \end{cases}$

9. If an elastic string is free at one end, the boundary condition to be satisfied there is that $u_x = 0$. Find the displacement $u(x, t)$ in an elastic string of length L, fixed at $x = 0$ and free at $x = L$, set in motion with no initial velocity from the initial position $u(x, 0) = f(x)$, where f is a given function. *Hint:* Show that the fundamental solutions for this problem, satisfying all conditions except the nonhomogeneous initial condition, are

$$u_n(x, t) = \sin(\lambda_n x)\cos(\lambda_n a t),$$

where $\lambda_n = (2n-1)\pi/(2L)$, $n = 1, 2, \ldots$. Compare this problem with Problem 15 of Section 10.6; pay particular attention to the extension of the initial data out of the original interval $[0, L]$.

10. Consider an elastic string of length L. The end $x = 0$ is held fixed, while the end $x = L$ is free; thus the boundary conditions are $u(0, t) = 0$ and $u_x(L, t) = 0$. The string is set in motion with no initial velocity from the initial position $u(x, 0) = f(x)$, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & 0 \le x \le L/2 - 1 \\ 1, & L/2 - 1 < x < L/2 + 1 \quad (\text{assume } L > 2), \\ 0, & L/2 + 1 \le x \le 1 \end{cases}$$

a. Find the displacement $u(x, t)$.

G **b.** With $L = 10$ and $a = 1$, plot u versus x for $0 \le x \le 10$ and for several values of t. Pay particular attention to values of t between 3 and 7. Observe how the initial disturbance is reflected at each end of the string.

G **c.** With $L = 10$ and $a = 1$, plot u versus t for several values of x.

G **d.** Construct an animation of the solution in time for at least one period.

e. Describe the motion of the string in a few sentences.

G **11.** Suppose that the string in Problem 10 is started instead from the initial position $f(x) = 8x(L-x)^2/L^3$. Follow the instructions in Problem 10 for this new problem.

12. Dimensionless variables can be introduced into the wave equation $a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}$ in the following manner:

a. Let $s = x/L$ and show that the wave equation becomes

$$a^2 u_{ss} = L^2 u_{tt}.$$

b. Show that L/a has the dimensions of time and therefore can be used as the unit on the time scale. Let $\tau = at/L$ and show that the wave equation then reduces to

$$u_{ss} = u_{\tau\tau}.$$

Problems 13 and 14 indicate the form of the general solution of the wave equation and the physical significance of the constant a.

13. a. Show that the wave equation

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}$$

can be reduced to the form $u_{\xi\eta} = 0$ by the change of variables $\xi = x - at$, $\eta = x + at$.

b. Show that $u(x, t)$ can be written as

$$u(x, t) = \phi(x - at) + \psi(x + at),$$

where ϕ and ψ are arbitrary functions.

14. G **a.** Plot the value of $\phi(x - at)$ for $t = 0$, $1/a$, $2/a$, and t_0/a if $\phi(s) = \sin s$. Note that for any $t \neq 0$, the graph of $y = \phi(x - at)$ is the same as that of $y = \phi(x)$ when $t = 0$, but displaced a distance at in the positive x direction. Thus a represents the velocity at which a disturbance moves along the string.

b. What is the interpretation of $\phi(x + at)$?

15. A steel wire 5 ft in length is stretched by a tensile force of 50 lb. The wire has a weight per unit length of 0.026 lb/ft.

a. Find the velocity of propagation of transverse waves in the wire.

b. Find the natural frequencies of vibration.

c. If the tension in the wire is increased, how are the natural frequencies changed? Are the natural modes also changed?

16. Consider the wave equation

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}$$

in an infinite one-dimensional medium subject to the initial conditions

$$u(x,0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x,0) = 0, \quad -\infty < x < \infty.$$

a. Using the form of the solution obtained in Problem 13, show that ϕ and ψ must satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x) + \psi(x) &= f(x), \\ -\phi'(x) + \psi'(x) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

b. Solve the equations of part a for ϕ and ψ, and thereby show that

$$u(x,t) = \frac{1}{2}\big(f(x-at) + f(x+at)\big).$$

This form of the solution was obtained by d'Alembert in 1746. *Hint:* Note that the equation $\psi'(x) = \phi'(x)$ is solved by choosing $\psi(x) = \phi(x) + c$.

c. Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2, & -1 < x < 1, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Show that

$$f(x-at) = \begin{cases} 2, & -1+at < x < 1+at, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Also determine $f(x+at)$.

d. Sketch the solution found in part b at $t = 0$, $t = 1/2a$, $t = 1/a$, and $t = 2/a$, obtaining the results shown in Figure 10.7.7. Observe that an initial displacement produces two waves moving in opposite directions away from the original location; each wave consists of one-half of the initial displacement.

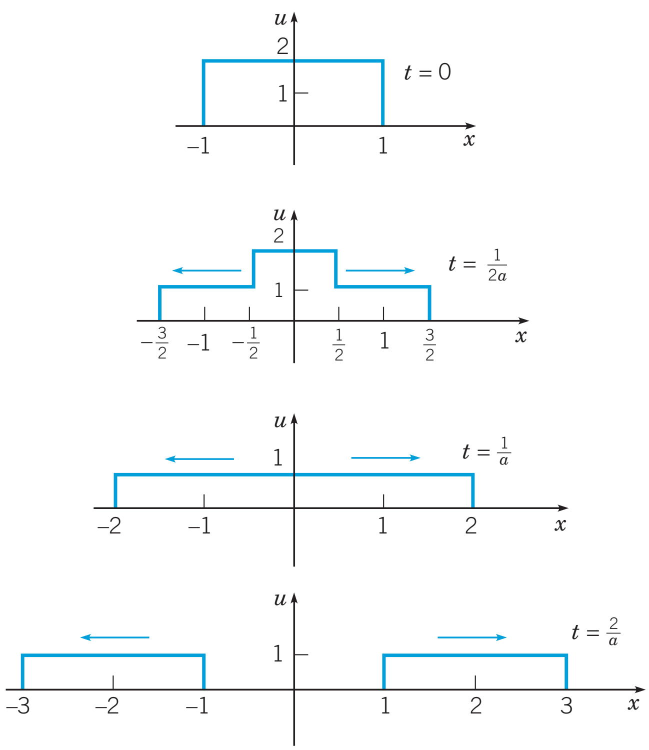


FIGURE 10.7.7 Propagation of an initial disturbance in an infinite one-dimensional medium.

17. Consider the wave equation

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}$$

in an infinite one-dimensional medium subject to the initial conditions

$$u(x,0) = 0, \quad u_t(x,0) = g(x), \quad -\infty < x < \infty.$$

a. Using the form of the solution obtained in Problem 13, show that

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x) + \psi(x) &= 0, \\ -a\phi'(x) + a\psi'(x) &= g(x). \end{aligned}$$

b. Use the first equation of part a to show that $\psi'(x) = -\phi'(x)$. Then use the second equation to show that $-2a\phi'(x) = g(x)$ and therefore that

$$\phi(x) = -\frac{1}{2a}\int_{x_0}^{x} g(\xi)\,d\xi + \phi(x_0),$$

where x_0 is arbitrary. Finally, determine $\psi(x)$.

c. Show that

$$u(x,t) = \frac{1}{2a}\int_{x-at}^{x+at} g(\xi)\,d\xi.$$

18. By combining the results of Problems 16 and 17, show that the solution of the problem

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt},$$
$$u(x,0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x,0) = g(x), \quad -\infty < x < \infty$$

is given by

$$u(x,t) = \frac{1}{2}\big(f(x-at) + f(x+at)\big) + \frac{1}{2a}\int_{x-at}^{x+at} g(\xi)\,d\xi.$$

Problems 19 and 20 indicate how the formal solution (20), (22) of equations (1), (3), and (9) can be shown to constitute the actual solution of that problem.

19. Use the identity $\sin A \cos B = \frac{1}{2}(\sin(A+B) + \sin(A-B))$, to show that solution (20) of the problem of equations (1), (3), and (9) can be written in the form (28).

20. Let $h(\xi)$ represent the initial displacement in $[0, L]$, extended into $(-L, 0)$ as an odd function and extended elsewhere as a periodic function of period $2L$. Assuming that h, h', and h'' are continuous, show by direct differentiation that $u(x,t)$ as given in equation (28) satisfies the wave equation (1) and also the initial conditions (9). Note also that since equation (20) clearly satisfies the boundary conditions (3), the same is true of equation (28). Comparing equation (28) with the solution of the corresponding problem for the infinite string (Problem 16), we see that they have the same form, provided that the initial data for the finite string, defined originally only on the interval $0 \le x \le L$, are extended in the given manner over the entire x-axis. If this is done, the solution for the infinite string is also applicable to the finite one.

21. The motion of a circular elastic membrane, such as a drumhead, is governed by the two-dimensional wave equation in polar coordinates

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} = a^{-2}u_{tt}.$$

Assuming that $u(r,\theta,t) = R(r)\Theta(\theta)T(t)$, find ordinary differential equations satisfied by $R(r)$, $\Theta(\theta)$, and $T(t)$.

22. The total energy $E(t)$ of the vibrating string is given as a function of time by

$$E(t) = \int_0^L \left(\frac{1}{2}\rho u_t^2(x,t) + \frac{1}{2}T u_x^2(x,t)\right) dx; \tag{44}$$

the first term is the kinetic energy due to the motion of the string, and the second term is the potential energy created by the displacement of the string away from its equilibrium position.

For the displacement $u(x,t)$ given by equation (20)—that is, for the solution of the string problem with zero initial velocity—show that

$$E(t) = \frac{\pi^2 T}{4L}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^2 c_n^2. \tag{45}$$

Note that the right-hand side of equation (45) does not depend on t. Thus the total energy E is a constant and therefore is *conserved* during the motion of the string. *Hint:* Use Parseval's equation (Problem 37 of Section 10.4 and Problem 17 of Section 10.3), and recall that $a^2 = T/\rho$.

23. Dispersive Waves. Consider the modified wave equation

$$a^{-2}u_{tt} + \gamma^2 u = u_{xx}, \qquad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0 \tag{46}$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0,t) = 0, \quad u(L,t) = 0, \qquad t > 0 \tag{47}$$

and the initial conditions

$$u(x,0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x,0) = 0, \quad 0 < x < L. \tag{48}$$

a. Show that the solution can be written as

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \cos\left(\sqrt{\frac{n^2\pi^2}{L^2} + \gamma^2}\, at\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right),$$

where

$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx.$$

b. By using trigonometric identities, rewrite the solution as

$$u(x,t) = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \left(\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}(x + a_n t)\right) + \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}(x - a_n t)\right)\right).$$

Determine a_n, the speed of wave propagation.

c. Observe that a_n, found in part b, depends on n. This means that components of different wave lengths (or frequencies) are propagated at different speeds, resulting in a distortion of the original wave form over time. This phenomenon is called **dispersion**. Find the condition under which a_n is independent of n—that is, there is no dispersion.

C **24.** Consider the situation in Problem 23 with $a^2 = 1$, $L = 10$, and

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x - 4, & 4 \le x \le 5, \\ 6 - x, & 5 \le x \le 6, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

a. Determine the coefficients c_n in the solution of Problem 23a.

G **b.** Plot

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{10}\right) \quad \text{for } 0 \le x \le 10,$$

choosing N large enough so that the plot accurately displays the graph of $f(x)$. Use this value of N for the remaining plots called for in this problem.

G **c.** Let $\gamma = 0$. Plot $u(x,t)$ versus x for $t = 60$.

G **d.** Let $\gamma = 1/8$. Plot $u(x,t)$ versus x for $t = 20$, 40, and 60.

G **e.** Let $\gamma = 1/4$. Plot $u(x,t)$ versus x for $t = 20$, 40, and 60.

10.8 Laplace's Equation

One of the most important of all partial differential equations occurring in applied mathematics is that associated with the name of Laplace:[11] in two dimensions

$$u_{xx} + u_{yy} = 0, \tag{1}$$

and in three dimensions

$$u_{xx} + u_{yy} + u_{zz} = 0. \tag{2}$$

For example, in a two-dimensional heat conduction problem, the temperature $u(x, y, t)$ must satisfy the differential equation

$$\alpha^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) = u_t, \tag{3}$$

[11] Laplace's equation is named for Pierre-Simon de Laplace, who, beginning in 1782, studied its solutions extensively while investigating the gravitational attraction of arbitrary bodies in space. However, the equation first appeared in 1752 in a paper by Euler on hydrodynamics.

where α^2 is the thermal diffusivity. If a steady state exists, then the time derivative vanishes and u is a function of x and y only; in this case equation (3) reduces to equation (1). Similarly, for the steady-state heat conduction problem in three dimensions, the temperature must satisfy the three-dimensional form of Laplace's equation. Equations (1) and (2) also occur in other branches of mathematical physics. In the consideration of electrostatic fields, the electric potential function in a dielectric medium containing no electric charges must satisfy either equation (1) or equation (2), depending on the number of space dimensions involved. Similarly, the potential function of a particle in free space acted on only by gravitational forces satisfies the same equations. Consequently, Laplace's equation is often referred to as the **potential equation**. Another example arises in the study of the steady (time-independent), two-dimensional, inviscid, irrotational motion of an incompressible fluid. This study centers on two functions, known as the **velocity potential function** and the **stream function**, both of which satisfy equation (1). In elasticity, the displacements that occur when a perfectly elastic bar is twisted are described in terms of the so-called **warping function**, which also satisfies equation (1).

Since there is no time dependence in any of the problems just mentioned, there are no initial conditions to be satisfied by the solutions of equation (1) or (2). They must, however, satisfy certain boundary conditions on the boundary of the region in which the differential equation is to be solved. Since Laplace's equation is of second order, it might be plausible to expect that two boundary conditions would be required to determine the solution completely. This, however, is not the case. Recall that in the heat conduction problem for the finite bar (Sections 10.5 and 10.6), it was necessary to prescribe one condition at each end of the bar—the bar is represented as a (one-dimensional) interval and one condition is specified at each endpoint of the interval, that is, at each boundary point. If we generalize this observation to multidimensional problems, it is then natural to prescribe one condition on the function u at each point on the boundary of the region in which a solution of equation (1) or (2) is sought. When the region is a subset of the (two-dimensional) plane, the boundary is a (one-dimensional) curve; if the region is a subset in (three-dimensional) space, the boundary is a (two-dimensional) surface.

The most common boundary condition occurs when the value of u is specified at each boundary point; in terms of the heat conduction problem, this corresponds to prescribing the temperature on the boundary. In some problems the value of the derivative, or rate of change, of u in the direction normal to the boundary is specified instead; the condition on the boundary of a thermally insulated body, for example, is of this type. It is entirely possible for more complicated boundary conditions to occur; for example, u might be prescribed on part of the boundary and its normal derivative specified on the remainder. The problem of finding a solution of Laplace's equation that takes on given boundary values is known as a **Dirichlet problem**, in honor of P.G.L. Dirichlet.[12] On the other hand, if the values of the normal derivative are prescribed on the boundary, the problem is said to be a **Neumann problem**, in honor of C.G. Neumann.[13] The Dirichlet and Neumann problems are also known as the first and second boundary value problems of potential theory, respectively.

Physically, it is plausible to expect that the types of boundary conditions just mentioned will be sufficient to determine the solution completely. Indeed, it is possible to establish the existence and uniqueness of the solution of Laplace's equation under the boundary conditions mentioned, provided that the shape of the boundary and the functions appearing in the boundary conditions satisfy certain very mild requirements. However, the proofs of these theorems, and even their accurate statement, are beyond the scope of the present book. Our only concern will be solving some typical problems by means of separation of variables and Fourier series.

---

[12]Peter Gustav Lejeune Dirichlet (1805–1859) was born in Germany of Belgian ancestry. He was a professor at Berlin and, after the death of Gauss, at Göttingen. In 1829 he provided the first set of conditions sufficient to guarantee the convergence of a Fourier series. The definition of *function* that is usually used today in elementary calculus is essentially the one given by Dirichlet in 1837. Although he is best known for his work in analysis and differential equations, Dirichlet was also one of the leading number theorists of the nineteenth century.

[13]Carl Gottfried Neumann (1832–1925), a German mathematician and professor at Leipzig for more than forty years, made contributions to differential equations, integral equations, and complex variables.

While the problems chosen as examples have interesting physical interpretations (in terms of electrostatic potentials or steady-state temperature distributions, for instance), our purpose here is primarily to point out some of the features that may occur during their mathematical solution. It is also worth noting again that more complicated problems can sometimes be solved by expressing the solution as the sum of solutions of several simpler problems (see Problems 3 and 4).

Dirichlet Problem for a Rectangle. Consider the mathematical problem of finding the function u satisfying Laplace's equation

$$u_{xx} + u_{yy} = 0, \tag{4}$$

in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, and also satisfying the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, 0) &= 0, \quad u(x, b) = 0, \qquad 0 < x < a, \\ u(0, y) &= 0, \quad u(a, y) = f(y), \quad 0 < y < b, \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

where f is a given function on $0 < y < b$ (see Figure 10.8.1).

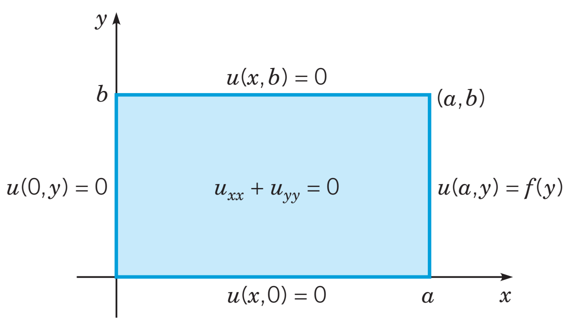


FIGURE 10.8.1 Dirichlet problem for a rectangle.

To solve this problem, we wish to construct a fundamental set of solutions satisfying the partial differential equation and the homogeneous boundary conditions; then we will superpose these solutions so as to satisfy the remaining boundary condition. Let us assume that

$$u(x, y) = X(x)Y(y) \tag{6}$$

and substitute for u in equation (4). This yields

$$\frac{X''}{X} = -\frac{Y''}{Y} = \lambda,$$

where λ is the separation constant. Thus we obtain the two ordinary differential equations

$$X'' - \lambda X = 0, \quad 0 < x < a \tag{7}$$

$$Y'' + \lambda Y = 0, \quad 0 < y < b. \tag{8}$$

If we now substitute for u from equation (6) in each of the homogeneous boundary conditions (5), we find that

$$X(0) = 0 \tag{9}$$

and

$$Y(0) = 0, \quad Y(b) = 0. \tag{10}$$

We will first determine the solution of the differential equation (8) subject to the boundary conditions (10). Notice that this problem is essentially identical to one encountered previously in Sections 10.1, 10.5, and 10.7. We conclude that there are nontrivial solutions if and only if λ is an eigenvalue, namely,

$$\lambda = \left(\frac{n\pi}{b}\right)^2, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{11}$$

and $Y(y)$ is proportional to the corresponding eigenfunction $\sin(n\pi y/b)$. Next, we substitute from equation (11) for λ in equation (7), obtaining

$$X'' - \left(\frac{n\pi}{b}\right)^2 X = 0.$$

To solve this equation subject to the boundary condition (9), it is convenient to write the general solution as

$$X(x) = k_1 \cosh\left(\frac{n\pi x}{b}\right) + k_2 \sinh\left(\frac{n\pi x}{b}\right). \tag{12}$$

The boundary condition (9) then requires that $k_1 = 0$. Therefore, $X(x)$ must be proportional to $\sinh(n\pi x/b)$. Thus we obtain the fundamental solutions

$$u_n(x, y) = \sinh\left(\frac{n\pi x}{b}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{13}$$

These functions satisfy the differential equation (4) and all the homogeneous boundary conditions for each value of n.

To satisfy the remaining nonhomogeneous boundary condition at $x = a$, we assume, as usual, that we can represent the solution $u(x, y)$ in the form

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n u_n(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sinh\left(\frac{n\pi x}{b}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right). \tag{14}$$

The coefficients c_n are determined by the boundary condition

$$u(a, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sinh\left(\frac{n\pi a}{b}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right) = f(y). \tag{15}$$

Therefore, the quantities $c_n \sinh(n\pi a/b)$ must be the coefficients in the Fourier sine series of period $2b$ for f and are given by

$$c_n \sinh\left(\frac{n\pi a}{b}\right) = \frac{2}{b} \int_0^b f(y) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right) dy. \tag{16}$$

Thus the solution of the partial differential equation (1) satisfying the boundary conditions (5) is given by equation (14) with the coefficients c_n computed from equation (16).

From equations (14) and (16), we can see that the n^{th} term of the solution contains the factor $\sinh(n\pi x/b)/\sinh(n\pi a/b)$. To estimate this quantity for large n, we can use the approximation $\sinh\xi \cong \frac{1}{2}e^{\xi}$ and thereby obtain

$$\frac{\sinh\left(\dfrac{n\pi x}{b}\right)}{\sinh\left(\dfrac{n\pi a}{b}\right)} \cong \frac{\dfrac{1}{2}\exp\left(\dfrac{n\pi x}{b}\right)}{\dfrac{1}{2}\exp\left(\dfrac{n\pi a}{b}\right)} = \exp\left(-\frac{n\pi(a - x)}{b}\right).$$

Thus this factor has the character of a negative exponential; consequently, the series (14) converges quite rapidly unless $a - x$ is very small.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the solution to the Dirichlet problem for Laplace's equation (4), (5) with $a = 3$, $b = 2$, and

$$f(y) = \begin{cases} y, & 0 \le y \le 1, \\ 2 - y, & 1 \le y \le 2. \end{cases} \tag{17}$$

Display the solution both as a three-dimensional plot and as a contour plot. (Use enough terms in the solution to see the true profile of the boundary conditions.)

Solution:

Evaluating c_n from equation (16), we find that

$$c_n = \frac{8\sin(n\pi/2)}{n^2\pi^2 \sinh(3n\pi/2)}. \tag{18}$$

Then $u(x, y)$ is given by equation (14). Keeping 20 nonzero terms in the series, we can plot u versus x and y, as shown in Figure 10.8.2. Alternatively, we can construct a contour plot showing level curves of $u(x, y)$; Figure 10.8.3 is such a plot, showing the eleven level curves from 0 to 1 with increments of 0.1.

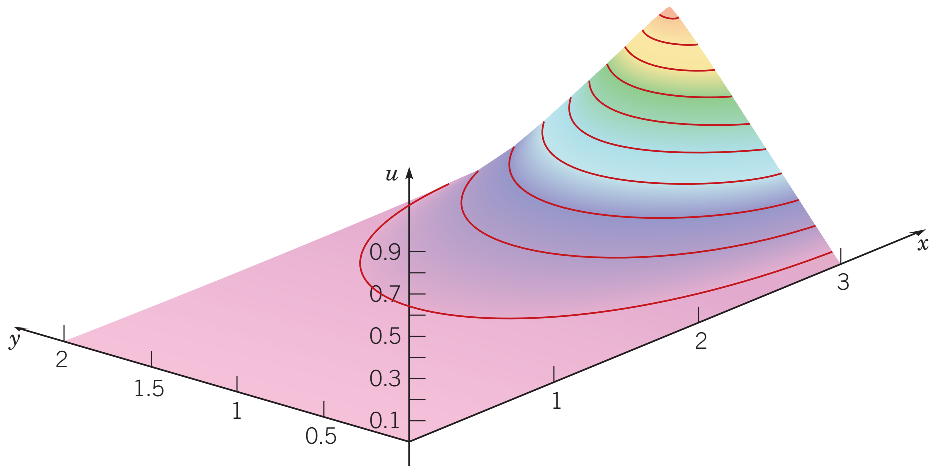


FIGURE 10.8.2 Plot of u versus x and y for Example 1.

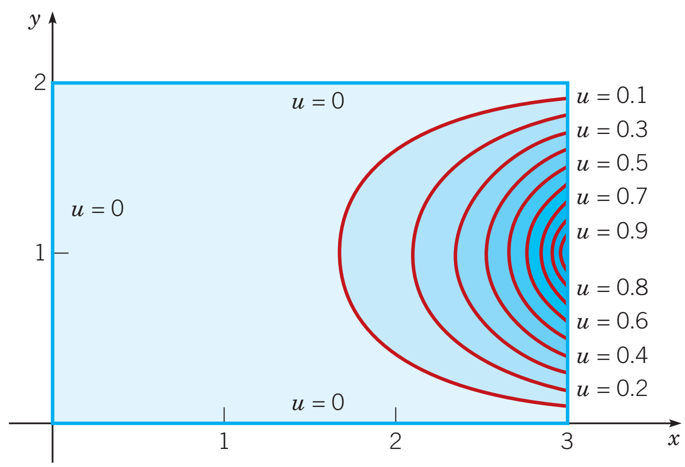


FIGURE 10.8.3 Level curves of $u(x, y)$ for Example 1.

Dirichlet Problem for a Circle. Consider the problem of solving Laplace's equation in a circular region $r < a$ subject to the boundary condition

$$u(a, \theta) = f(\theta), \quad 0 < \theta < 2\pi, \tag{19}$$

where f is a given function on $0 \le \theta < 2\pi$ with $f(0) = f(2\pi)$ (see Figure 10.8.4). In polar coordinates (r, θ), Laplace's equation has the form (see Problem 15)

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} = 0, \quad 0 < r < a, \quad 0 < \theta < 2\pi. \tag{20}$$

To complete the statement of the problem, we note that the assumption that $f(0) = f(2\pi)$ ensures that the periodic extension of f to the entire real line will be, at least, continuous. Therefore, $u(r, \theta)$ must also be periodic in θ with period 2π. Moreover, we state explicitly that $u(r, \theta)$ must be bounded for $r \le a$; the reason for this boundedness assumption will become clear later.

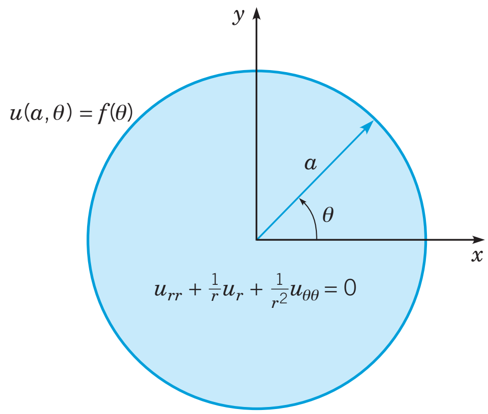


FIGURE 10.8.4 Dirichlet problem for Laplace's equation in a circular region.

To apply the method of separation of variables to this problem, we assume that

$$u(r, \theta) = R(r)\Theta(\theta) \tag{21}$$

and substitute for u in the differential equation (20). This yields

$$R''\Theta + \frac{1}{r}R'\Theta + \frac{1}{r^2}R\Theta'' = 0,$$

or

$$r^2\frac{R''}{R} + r\frac{R'}{R} = -\frac{\Theta''}{\Theta} = \lambda, \tag{22}$$

where λ is the separation constant. Thus we obtain the two ordinary differential equations

$$r^2R'' + rR' - \lambda R = 0, \tag{23}$$

$$\Theta'' + \lambda\Theta = 0. \tag{24}$$

In this problem there are no homogeneous boundary conditions; recall, however, that solutions must be bounded and also periodic in θ with period 2π. It is possible to show (see Problem 9) that the periodicity condition requires λ to be real. We will consider, in turn, the cases in which λ is negative, zero, and positive.

Case I: If $\lambda < 0$, let $\lambda = -\mu^2$, where $\mu > 0$. Then equation (24) becomes $\Theta'' - \mu^2\Theta = 0$, and consequently,

$$\Theta(\theta) = c_1e^{\mu\theta} + c_2e^{-\mu\theta}. \tag{25}$$

Thus $\Theta(\theta)$ can be periodic only if $c_1 = c_2 = 0$, and we conclude that λ cannot be negative.

Case II: If $\lambda = 0$, then equation (24) becomes $\Theta'' = 0$, and thus

$$\Theta(\theta) = c_1 + c_2\theta. \tag{26}$$

For $\Theta(\theta)$ to be periodic, we must have $c_2 = 0$ so that $\Theta(\theta)$ is a constant. Further, for $\lambda = 0$, equation (23) becomes

$$r^2R'' + rR' = 0. \tag{27}$$

This equation is of the Euler type and has the solution

$$R(r) = k_1 + k_2 \ln r. \tag{28}$$

The logarithmic term cannot be accepted if $u(r, \theta)$ is to remain bounded as $r \to 0$; hence $k_2 = 0$. Thus, corresponding to $\lambda = 0$, we conclude that $u(r, \theta)$ must be a constant—that is, proportional to the solution

$$u_0(r, \theta) = 1. \tag{29}$$

Case III: Finally, if $\lambda > 0$, we let $\lambda = \mu^2$, where $\mu > 0$. Then equations (23) and (24) become

$$r^2R'' + rR' - \mu^2R = 0 \tag{30}$$

and

$$\Theta'' + \mu^2\Theta = 0, \tag{31}$$

respectively. Equation (30) is an Euler equation and has the solution

$$R(r) = k_1 r^{\mu} + k_2 r^{-\mu}, \tag{32}$$

while equation (31) has the solution

$$\Theta(\theta) = c_1 \sin(\mu\theta) + c_2 \cos(\mu\theta). \tag{33}$$

In order for Θ to be periodic with period 2π, it is necessary for μ to be a positive integer n. Since $\mu = n$ is a positive integer, it follows that the solution $r^{-\mu}$ in equation (32) becomes unbounded as $r \to 0$ and so must be discarded. Consequently, $k_2 = 0$ and the appropriate solutions of equation (20) are

$$u_n(r,\theta) = r^n \cos(n\theta), \quad v_n(r,\theta) = r^n \sin(n\theta), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{34}$$

These functions, together with $u_0(r,\theta) = 1$, form a set of fundamental solutions for the present problem.

In the usual way, we now assume that u can be expressed as a linear combination of the fundamental solutions; that is,

$$u(r,\theta) = \frac{c_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^n (c_n \cos(n\theta) + k_n \sin(n\theta)). \tag{35}$$

The boundary condition (19) then requires that

$$u(a,\theta) = \frac{c_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a^n (c_n \cos(n\theta) + k_n \sin(n\theta)) = f(\theta) \tag{36}$$

for $0 \le \theta < 2\pi$. The function f may be extended outside this interval so that it is periodic with period 2π and therefore has a Fourier series of the form (36). Since the extended function has period 2π, we may compute its Fourier coefficients by integrating over any period of the function. In particular, it is convenient to use the original interval $(0, 2\pi)$; then

$$a^n c_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta)\cos(n\theta)\,d\theta, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots; \tag{37}$$

$$a^n k_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta)\sin(n\theta)\,d\theta, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{38}$$

With this choice of the coefficients, equation (35) represents the solution of the boundary value problem of equations (19) and (20). Note that in this problem we needed both sine and cosine terms in the solution. This is because the boundary data were given on $0 \le \theta < 2\pi$ and have period 2π. As a consequence, the full Fourier series is required, rather than sine or cosine terms alone.

Problems

1. **a.** Find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$u(0,y) = 0, \quad u(a,y) = 0, \quad 0 < y < b,$$
$$u(x,0) = 0, \quad u(x,b) = g(x), \quad 0 < x < a.$$

b. Find the solution if

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x \le a/2, \\ a - x, & a/2 \le x \le a. \end{cases}$$

G c. For $a = 3$ and $b = 1$, plot u versus x for several values of y and also plot u versus y for several values of x. (Use enough terms in the Fourier series to accurately approximate the nonhomogeneous boundary condition.)

G d. Plot u versus both x and y in three dimensions. Also draw a contour plot showing several level curves of $u(x, y)$ in the xy-plane.

2. Find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$u(0,y) = 0, \quad u(a,y) = 0, \quad 0 < y < b,$$
$$u(x,0) = h(x), \quad u(x,b) = 0, \quad 0 < x < a.$$

3. a. Find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &u(0, y) = 0, \quad &&u(a, y) = f(y), \quad &&0 < y < b, \\ &u(x, 0) = h(x), \quad &&u(x, b) = 0, \quad &&0 < x < a. \end{aligned}$$

Hint: Consider the possibility of adding the solutions of two problems, one with homogeneous boundary conditions except for $u(a, y) = f(y)$, and the other with homogeneous boundary conditions except for $u(x, 0) = h(x)$.

b. Find the solution if $h(x) = (x/a)^2$ and $f(y) = 1 - y/b$.

G **c.** Let $a = 2$ and $b = 2$. Plot the solution in several ways: u versus x (for a uniform sample of y values), u versus y (for a uniform sample of x values), u versus both x and y, and a contour plot.

4. Show how to find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &u(0, y) = k(y), \quad &&u(a, y) = f(y), \quad &&0 < y < b, \\ &u(x, 0) = h(x), \quad &&u(x, b) = g(x), \quad &&0 < x < a. \end{aligned}$$

Hint: See Problem 3.

5. Find the solution $u(r, \theta)$ of Laplace's equation

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} = 0, \quad r > a, \quad 0 < \theta < 2\pi,$$

outside the circle $r = a$, that satisfies the boundary condition

$$u(a, \theta) = f(\theta), \quad 0 \le \theta < 2\pi,$$

on the circle. Assume that $u(r, \theta)$ is single-valued and bounded for $r > a$.

6. a. Find the solution $u(r, \theta)$ of Laplace's equation in the semicircular region $r < a$, $0 < \theta < \pi$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &u(r, 0) = 0, \quad u(r, \pi) = 0, \quad &&0 < r < a, \\ &u(a, \theta) = f(\theta), &&0 < \theta < \pi. \end{aligned}$$

Assume that u is single-valued and bounded in the given region.

b. Find the solution if $f(\theta) = \theta(\pi - \theta)$.

G **c.** Let $a = 2$ and plot the solution in several ways: u versus r, u versus θ, u versus both r and θ, and a contour plot.

7. Find the solution $u(r, \theta)$ of Laplace's equation in the circular sector $0 < r < a$, $0 < \theta < \alpha$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &u(r, 0) = 0, \quad u(r, \alpha) = 0, \quad &&0 < r < a, \\ &u(a, \theta) = f(\theta), &&0 < \theta < \alpha. \end{aligned}$$

Assume that u is single-valued and bounded in the sector and that $0 < \alpha < 2\pi$.

8. a. Find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the semi-infinite strip $0 < x < a$, $y > 0$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} u(0, y) = 0, \quad u(a, y) = 0, \quad y > 0, \\ u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad 0 < x < a \end{aligned}$$

and the additional condition that $u(x, y) \to 0$ as $y \to \infty$.

b. Find the solution if $f(x) = x(a - x)$.

N **c.** Let $a = 5$. Find the smallest value of y_0 for which $u(x, y) \le 0.1$ for all $y \ge y_0$.

9. Show that equation (24) has periodic solutions only if λ is real. *Hint:* Let $\lambda = -\mu^2$, where $\mu = \nu + i\sigma$ with ν and σ real.

10. Consider the problem of finding a solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &u_x(0, y) = 0, \quad &&u_x(a, y) = f(y), \quad &&0 < y < b, \\ &u_y(x, 0) = 0, \quad &&u_y(x, b) = 0, \quad &&0 < x < a. \end{aligned}$$

This is an example of a Neumann problem.

a. Show that Laplace's equation and the homogeneous boundary conditions determine the fundamental set of solutions

$$\begin{aligned} u_0(x, y) &= c_0, \\ u_n(x, y) &= c_n \cosh\left(\frac{n\pi x}{b}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \end{aligned}$$

b. By superposing the fundamental solutions of part (a), formally determine a function u satisfying the nonhomogeneous boundary condition $u_x(a, y) = f(y)$. Note that when $u_x(a, y)$ is calculated, the constant term in $u(x, y)$ is eliminated, and there is no condition from which to determine c_0. Furthermore, it must be possible to express f by means of a Fourier cosine series of period $2b$, which does not have a constant term. This means that

$$\int_0^b f(y)\,dy = 0$$

is a necessary condition for the given problem to be solvable. Finally, note that c_0 remains arbitrary, and hence the solution is determined only up to this additive constant. This is a property of all Neumann problems.

11. Find a solution $u(r, \theta)$ of Laplace's equation inside the circle $r = a$ that satisfies the boundary condition on the circle

$$u_r(a, \theta) = g(\theta), \quad 0 < \theta < 2\pi.$$

Note that this is a Neumann problem and that its solution is determined only up to an arbitrary additive constant. State a necessary condition on $g(\theta)$ for this problem to be solvable by the method of separation of variables (see Problem 10).

12. a. Find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &u(0, y) = 0, \quad &&u(a, y) = 0, \quad &&0 < y < b, \\ &u_y(x, 0) = 0, \quad &&u(x, b) = g(x), \quad &&0 < x < a. \end{aligned}$$

Note that this is neither a Dirichlet nor a Neumann problem, but a mixed problem in which u is prescribed on part of the boundary and its normal derivative on the rest.

b. Find the solution if

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x \le a/2, \\ a - x, & a/2 \le x \le a. \end{cases}$$

G **c.** Let $a = 3$ and $b = 1$. By drawing suitable plots, compare this solution with the solution of Problem 1.

13. **a.** Find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$u(0, y) = 0, \quad u(a, y) = f(y), \quad 0 < y < b,$$
$$u(x, 0) = 0, \quad u_y(x, b) = 0, \quad 0 < x < a.$$

Hint: Eventually, it will be necessary to expand $f(y)$ in a series that makes use of the functions $\sin(\pi y/2b)$, $\sin(3\pi y/2b)$, $\sin(5\pi y/2b)$, ... (see Problem 39 of Section 10.4).

b. Find the solution if $f(y) = y(2b - y)$.

G **c.** Let $a = 3$ and $b = 2$; plot several different views of the solution.

14. **a.** Find the solution $u(x, y)$ of Laplace's equation in the rectangle $0 < x < a$, $0 < y < b$, that satisfies the boundary conditions

$$u_x(0, y) = 0, \quad u_x(a, y) = 0, \quad 0 < y < b,$$
$$u(x, 0) = 0, \quad u(x, b) = g(x), \quad 0 < x < a.$$

b. Find the solution if $g(x) = 1 + x^2(x - a)^2$.

G **c.** Let $a = 3$ and $b = 2$; plot several different views of the solution.

15. Show that Laplace's equation in polar coordinates is

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} = 0.$$

Hint: Use $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$ and the chain rule.

16. Show that Laplace's equation in cylindrical coordinates is

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} + u_{zz} = 0.$$

Hint: Use $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$, $z = z$, and the chain rule.

17. Show that Laplace's equation in spherical coordinates is

$$u_{\rho\rho} + \frac{2}{\rho}u_\rho + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} + \frac{1}{\rho^2\sin^2\phi}u_{\theta\theta} + \frac{\cot\phi}{r^2}u_\phi = 0.$$

Hint: Use $x = \rho\sin\phi\cos\theta$, $y = \rho\sin\phi\sin\theta$, $z = \rho\cos\theta$, and the chain rule.

18. **a.** Laplace's equation in cylindrical coordinates was found in Problem 15. Show that axially symmetric solutions (i.e., solutions that do not depend on θ) satisfy

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + u_{zz} = 0.$$

b. Assuming that $u(r, z) = R(r)Z(z)$, show that R and Z satisfy the equations

$$rR'' + R' + \lambda^2 rR = 0, \quad Z'' - \lambda^2 Z = 0.$$

Note: The equation for R is Bessel's equation of order zero with independent variable λr.

19. **Flow in an Aquifer.** Consider the flow of water in a porous medium, such as sand, in an aquifer. The flow is driven by the hydraulic head, a measure of the potential energy of the water above the aquifer. Let $R : 0 < x < a, 0 < z < b$ be a vertical section of an aquifer. In a uniform, homogeneous medium, the hydraulic head $u(x, z)$ satisfies Laplace's equation

$$u_{xx} + u_{zz} = 0 \quad \text{in } R. \tag{39}$$

If water cannot flow through the sides and bottom of R, then the boundary conditions there are

$$u_x(0, z) = 0, \quad u_x(a, z) = 0, \quad 0 < z < b \tag{40}$$
$$u_z(x, 0) = 0, \quad 0 < x < a. \tag{41}$$

Finally, suppose that the boundary condition at $z = b$ is

$$u(x, b) = b + \alpha x, \quad 0 < x < a, \tag{42}$$

where α is the slope of the water table.

a. Solve the given boundary value problem for $u(x, z)$.

G **b.** Let $a = 1000$, $b = 500$, and $\alpha = 0.1$. Draw a contour plot of the solution in R; that is, plot some level curves of $u(x, z)$.

G **c.** Water flows along paths in R that are orthogonal to the level curves of $u(x, z)$ in the direction of decreasing u. Plot some of the flow paths.

A APPENDIX

Derivation of the Heat Conduction Equation In this section we derive the linear partial differential equation that, to a first approximation at least, governs the conduction of heat in solids. It is important to understand that the mathematical analysis of a physical situation or process such as this ultimately rests on a foundation of empirical knowledge of the phenomenon involved. The mathematician must have a place to start, so to speak, and this place is furnished by experience.

Consider a uniform rod insulated on the lateral surfaces so that heat can flow only in the axial direction. It has been demonstrated many times that if two parallel cross sections of the same area A and different temperatures T_1 and T_2, respectively, are separated by a small distance d, an amount of heat per unit time will pass from the warmer section to the cooler one. Moreover, this amount of heat is proportional to the area A and to the temperature difference $|T_2 - T_1|$ and is inversely proportional to the separation distance d. Thus

$$\text{Amount of heat per unit time} = \frac{\kappa A|T_2 - T_1|}{d}, \tag{1}$$

where the positive proportionality factor κ is called the thermal conductivity and depends primarily on the material[14] of the rod. The relation (1) is often called **Fourier's law of heat conduction**. We repeat that equation (1) is an empirical, not a theoretical, result and that it can be, and often has been, verified by careful experiment. It is the basis of the mathematical theory of heat conduction.

Now consider a straight rod of uniform cross section and homogeneous material, oriented so that the x-axis lies along the axis of the rod (see Figure 10.A.1). Let $x = 0$ and $x = L$ designate the ends of the bar.

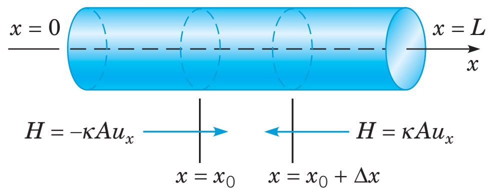


FIGURE 10.A.1 Conduction of heat in an element of a rod.

We will assume that the sides of the bar are perfectly insulated so that there is no passage of heat through them. We will also assume that the temperature u depends only on the axial position x and the time t, and not on the lateral coordinates y and z. In other words, we assume that the temperature remains constant on any cross section of the bar. This assumption is usually satisfactory for thin rods, that is, rods where the lateral dimensions of the rod are small compared to its length.

The differential equation governing the temperature in the bar is an expression of a fundamental physical balance; the rate at which heat flows into any portion of the bar is equal to the rate at which heat is absorbed in that portion of the bar. The terms in the equation are called the flux (flow) term and the absorption term, respectively.

We will first calculate the flux term. Consider an element of the bar lying between the cross sections $x = x_0$ and $x = x_0 + \Delta x$, where x_0 is arbitrary and Δx is small. The instantaneous rate of heat transfer $H(x_0, t)$ from left to right across the cross section $x = x_0$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} H(x_0, t) &= -\lim_{d \to 0} \kappa A \frac{u(x_0 + d/2, t) - u(x_0 - d/2, t)}{d} \\ &= -\kappa A u_x(x_0, t). \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

The minus sign appears in this equation because there will be a positive flow of heat from left to right only if the temperature is greater to the left of $x = x_0$ than to the right; in this case $u_x(x_0, t)$ is negative. In a similar manner, the rate at which heat passes from left to right through the nearby cross section $x = x_0 + \Delta x$ is given by

$$H(x_0 + \Delta x, t) = -\kappa A u_x(x_0 + \Delta x, t). \tag{3}$$

The net rate at which heat flows into the segment of the bar between $x = x_0$ and $x = x_0 + \Delta x$ is thus given by

$$Q = H(x_0, t) - H(x_0 + \Delta x, t) = \kappa A \big(u_x(x_0 + \Delta x, t) - u_x(x_0, t)\big), \tag{4}$$

and the amount of heat entering this bar element in a short time interval of length Δt is

$$Q \Delta t = \kappa A \big(u_x(x_0 + \Delta x, t) - u_x(x_0, t)\big) \Delta t. \tag{5}$$

Let us now calculate the absorption term. The average change in temperature Δu, in the time interval Δt, is proportional to the amount of heat $Q \Delta t$ introduced and is inversely proportional to the mass Δm of the segment. Since the rod is assumed to be homogeneous,

[14]Actually, κ also depends on the temperature, but if the temperature range is not too great, it is satisfactory to assume that κ is independent of temperature.

with density ρ and cross-sectional area A, the mass of the segment between x_0 and $x_0 + \Delta x$ is $\Delta m = \rho A \Delta x$. Thus

$$\Delta u = \frac{1}{s}\frac{Q\Delta t}{\Delta m} = \frac{Q\Delta t}{s\rho A\Delta x}, \tag{6}$$

where the constant of proportionality s is known as the specific heat of the material of the bar.[15] The average temperature change Δu in the bar element under consideration is the actual temperature change at some intermediate point $x = x_0 + \theta\Delta x$, where $0 < \theta < 1$. Thus equation (6) can be written as

$$u(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t + \Delta t) - u(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t) = \frac{Q\Delta t}{s\rho A\Delta x} \tag{7}$$

or as

$$Q\Delta t = \big(u(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t + \Delta t) - u(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t)\big)s\rho A\Delta x. \tag{8}$$

To balance the flux and absorption terms, we equate the two expressions for $Q\Delta t$:

$$\begin{aligned}\kappa A\big(u_x(x_0 + \Delta x, t) - u_x(x_0, t)\big)\Delta t \\ = s\rho A\big(u(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t + \Delta t) - u(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t)\big)\Delta x.\end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

Upon dividing equation (9) by $s\rho A\Delta x\Delta t$, we obtain

$$\frac{\kappa}{s\rho}\frac{u_x\big(x_0 + \Delta x, t\big) - u_x\big(x_0, t\big)}{\Delta x} = \frac{u\big(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t + \Delta t\big) - u\big(x_0 + \theta\Delta x, t\big)}{\Delta t}.$$

Now, letting $\Delta x \to 0$ and $\Delta t \to 0$ leads us to the **heat conduction** or **diffusion equation**

$$\alpha^2 u_{xx} = u_t, \tag{10}$$

where the quantity α^2 defined by

$$\alpha^2 = \frac{\kappa}{\rho s} \tag{11}$$

is called the **thermal diffusivity** and is a parameter that depends only on the material of the bar. The units of α^2 are $(\text{length})^2/\text{time}$. Typical values of α^2 are given in Table 10.5.1.

Several relatively simple conditions may be imposed at the ends of the bar. For example, the temperature at an end may be maintained at some constant value T. This might be accomplished by placing the end of the bar in thermal contact with some reservoir of sufficient size so that any heat that flows between the bar and the reservoir does not appreciably alter the temperature of the reservoir. At an end where this is done, the boundary condition is

$$u = T. \tag{12}$$

Another simple boundary condition occurs if the end is insulated so that no heat passes through it. The amount of heat crossing the cross section of the bar at $x = x_0$ is given by expression (2): $-\kappa A u_x(x_0, t)$. At an insulated end, no heat crosses the boundary. The boundary condition that enforces an insulated end is

$$u_x = 0. \tag{13}$$

A more general type of boundary condition occurs if the rate of flow of heat through an end of the bar is proportional to the temperature there. Let us consider the end $x = 0$, where the rate of flow of heat from left to right is given by $-\kappa A u_x(0, t)$; see equation (2). Hence the rate of heat flow out of the bar (from right to left) at $x = 0$ is $\kappa A u_x(0, t)$. If this quantity is proportional to the temperature $u(0, t)$, then we obtain the boundary condition

$$u_x(0, t) - h_1 u(0, t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \tag{14}$$

where h_1 is a nonnegative constant of proportionality. Note that $h_1 = 0$ corresponds to an insulated end and that $h_1 \to \infty$ corresponds to an end held at zero temperature.

If heat flow is taking place at the right end of the bar $(x = L)$, then in a similar way we obtain the boundary condition

$$u_x(L, t) + h_2 u(L, t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \tag{15}$$

where again h_2 is a nonnegative constant of proportionality.

[15] The dependence of the density and specific heat on temperature is relatively small and will be neglected. Thus both ρ and s will be considered as constants.

Finally, to determine completely the flow of heat in the bar, it is necessary to state the temperature distribution at one fixed instant, usually taken as the initial time $t = 0$. This initial condition is of the form

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad 0 < x < L. \tag{16}$$

The problem then is to determine the solution of the differential equation (10) subject to one of the boundary conditions (12) to (15) at each end and to the initial condition (16) at $t = 0$.

Several generalizations of the heat equation (10) also occur in practice. First, the bar material may be nonuniform, and the cross section may not be constant along the length of the bar. In this case, the parameters κ, ρ, s, and A may depend on the axial variable x. Going back to equation (2), we see that the rate of heat transfer from left to right across the cross section at $x = x_0$ is now given by

$$H(x_0, t) = -\kappa(x_0)A(x_0)u_x(x_0, t) \tag{17}$$

with a similar expression for $H(x_0+\Delta x, t)$. If we introduce these quantities into equation (4) and eventually into equation (9), and proceed as before, we obtain the partial differential equation

$$(\kappa A u_x)_x = s\rho A u_t. \tag{18}$$

We will usually write equation (18) in the form

$$r(x)u_t = (p(x)u_x)_x, \tag{19}$$

where $p(x) = \kappa(x)A(x)$ and $r(x) = s(x)\rho(x)A(x)$. Note that both of these quantities are intrinsically positive.

A second generalization occurs if there are other ways in which heat enters or leaves the bar. Suppose that there is a *source* that adds heat to the bar at a rate $G(x, t, u)$ per unit time per unit length, where $G(x, t, u) > 0$. In this case we must add the term $G(x, t, u)\Delta x \,\Delta t$ to the left-hand side of equation (9), and this leads to the differential equation

$$r(x)u_t = (p(x)u_x)_x + G(x, t, u). \tag{20}$$

If $G(x, t, u) < 0$, then we speak of a *sink* that removes heat from the bar at the rate $G(x, t, u)$ per unit time per unit length. To make the problem tractable, we must restrict the form of the function G. In particular, we assume that G is linear in u and that the coefficient of u does not depend on t. Thus we write

$$G(x, t, u) = F(x, t) - q(x)u. \tag{21}$$

The minus sign in equation (21) has been introduced so that certain equations that appear later will have their customary forms. Substituting from equation (21) into equation (20), we obtain

$$r(x)u_t = (p(x)u_x)_x - q(x)u + F(x, t). \tag{22}$$

This equation is sometimes called the **generalized heat conduction equation**. Boundary value problems for equation (22) will be discussed to some extent in Chapter 11.

Finally, if instead of a one-dimensional bar, we consider a body with more than one significant space dimension, then the temperature is a function of two or three space coordinates rather than of x alone. Considerations similar to those leading to equation (10) can be employed to derive the heat conduction equation in two dimensions

$$\alpha^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) = u_t, \tag{23}$$

or in three dimensions

$$\alpha^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy} + u_{zz}) = u_t. \tag{24}$$

The boundary conditions corresponding to equations (12) and (13) for multidimensional problems correspond to a prescribed temperature distribution on the boundary, or to an insulated boundary. Similarly, the initial temperature distribution will, in general, be a function of x and y for equation (23) and a function of x, y, and z for equation (24).

B APPENDIX

Derivation of the Wave Equation In this appendix we derive the wave equation in one space dimension as it applies to the transverse vibrations of an elastic string or cable; the elastic string may be thought of as a guitar string, a guy wire, or possibly an electric power line. The same equation, however, with the variables properly interpreted, occurs in many other wave problems having only one significant space variable.

Consider a perfectly flexible elastic string stretched tightly between supports fixed at the same horizontal level (see Figure 10.B.1a). Let the x-axis lie along the string with the endpoints located at $x = 0$ and $x = L$. If the string is set in motion at some initial time $t = 0$ (for example, by plucking) and is thereafter left undisturbed, it will vibrate freely in a vertical plane, provided that damping effects, such as air resistance, are neglected. To determine the differential equation governing this motion, we will consider the forces acting on a small element of the string of length Δx lying between the points x and $x + \Delta x$ (see Figure 10.B.1b). We assume that the motion of the string is small and that, as a consequence, each point on the string moves solely in a vertical line. We denote by $u(x, t)$ the vertical displacement of the point x at the time t. Let the tension in the string, which always acts in the tangential direction, be denoted by $T(x, t)$, and let ρ denote the mass per unit length of the string.

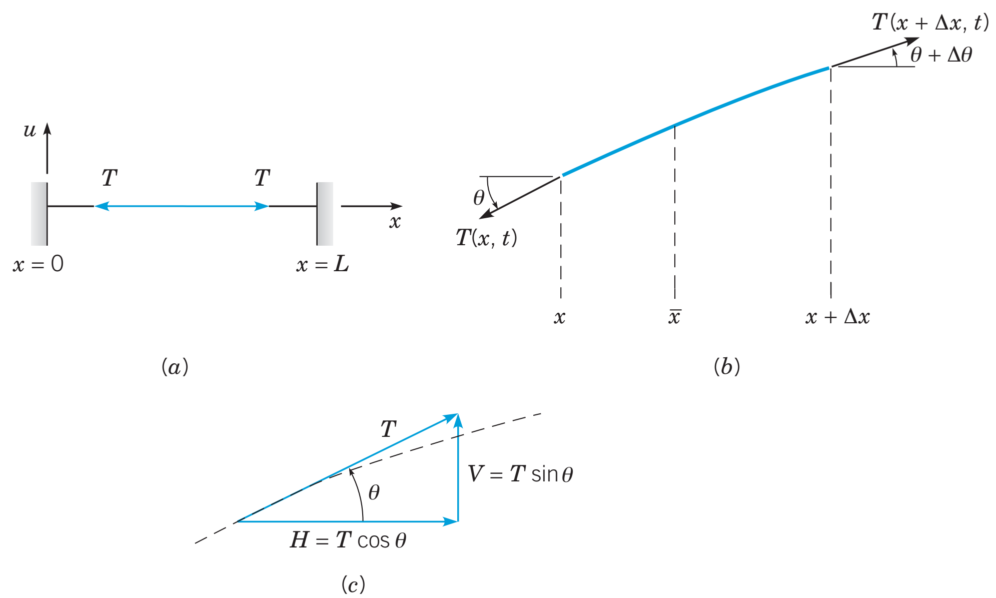


FIGURE 10.B.1 (a) An elastic string under tension. (b) An element of the displaced string. (c) Resolution of the tension T into components.

Newton's law, as it applies to the element Δx of the string, states that the net external force, due to the tension at the ends of the element, must be equal to the product of the mass of the element and the acceleration of its mass center. Since there is no horizontal acceleration, the horizontal components must satisfy

$$T(x + \Delta x, t)\cos(\theta + \Delta\theta) - T(x, t)\cos\theta = 0. \tag{1}$$

If we denote the horizontal component of the tension (see Figure 10.B.1c) by H, then equation (1) states that H is independent of x.

On the other hand, the vertical components satisfy

$$T(x + \Delta x, t)\sin(\theta + \Delta\theta) - T(x, t)\sin\theta = \rho\,\Delta x\, u_{tt}(\bar{x}, t), \tag{2}$$

where $\bar{x}$ is the coordinate of the center of mass of the element of the string under consideration. Clearly, $\bar{x}$ lies in the interval $x < \bar{x} < x + \Delta x$. The weight of the string, which acts vertically downward, is assumed to be negligible and has been neglected in equation (2).

Let the vertical component of T be denoted by V; then equation (2) can be written as

$$\frac{V(x+\Delta x, t) - V(x, t)}{\Delta x} = \rho u_{tt}(\overline{x}, t).$$

Passing to the limit as $\Delta x \to 0$ gives

$$V_x(x, t) = \rho u_{tt}(x, t). \tag{3}$$

To express equation (3) entirely in terms of u, we note that

$$V(x, t) = H(t)\tan\theta = H(t)u_x(x, t).$$

Hence equation (3) becomes

$$(Hu_x)_x = \rho u_{tt},$$

or, since H is independent of x,

$$Hu_{xx} = \rho u_{tt}. \tag{4}$$

For small motions of the string, the angle theta is small, and $H = T\cos\theta$ is accurately approximated by T. Then equation (4) takes its customary form

$$a^2 u_{xx} = u_{tt}, \tag{5}$$

where

$$a^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}. \tag{6}$$

We will assume further that a^2 is a constant, although this is not required in our derivation, even for small motions. Equation (5) is called the **wave equation for one space dimension**. Since T has the dimension of force, and ρ that of mass/length, it follows that the constant a has the dimension of velocity. It is possible to identify a as the velocity with which a small disturbance (wave) moves along the string. According to equation (6), the **wave velocity** a varies directly with the tension in the string, but inversely with the density of the string material. These facts are in agreement with experience.

As in the case of the heat conduction equation, there are various generalizations of the wave equation (5). One important equation is known as the **telegraph equation** and has the form

$$u_{tt} + cu_t + ku = a^2 u_{xx} + F(x, t), \tag{7}$$

where c and k are nonnegative constants. The terms cu_t, ku, and $F(x, t)$ arise from a **viscous damping force**, an **elastic restoring force**, and an external force, respectively. Note the similarity of equation (7), except for the term $a^2 u_{xx}$, to the equation for the spring–mass system derived in Section 3.7; the additional term $a^2 u_{xx}$ arises from a consideration of internal elastic forces.

The telegraph equation also governs the flow of voltage, or current, in a transmission line (hence its name); in this case the coefficients are related to electrical parameters in the line.

For a vibrating system with more than one significant space coordinate, it may be necessary to consider the wave equation in two dimensions

$$a^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) = u_{tt}, \tag{8}$$

or in three dimensions

$$a^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy} + u_{zz}) = u_{tt}. \tag{9}$$

References

The following books contain additional information on Fourier series:

Buck, R. C., and Buck, E. F., *Advanced Calculus* (3rd ed.) (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1978).

Carslaw, H. S., *Introduction to the Theory of Fourier's Series and Integrals* (3rd ed.) (Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1930; New York: Dover, 1952).

Courant, R., and John, F., *Introduction to Calculus and Analysis* (2 vols.) (Berlin/New York: Springer-Verlag, 1999).

Kaplan, W., *Advanced Calculus* (5th ed.) (Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2003).

A brief biography of Fourier and an annotated copy of his 1807 paper are contained in

Grattan-Guinness, I., *Joseph Fourier 1768–1830: A Survey of His Life and Work* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1972).

Useful references on partial differential equations and the method of separation of variables include the following:

Churchill, R. V., and Brown, J. W., *Fourier Series and Boundary Value Problems* (8th ed.) (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012).

Haberman, R., *Elementary Applied Partial Differential Equations: With Fourier Series and Boundary Value Problems* (4th ed.) (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice-Hall, 2004).

Pinsky, M. A., *Partial Differential Equations and Boundary Value Problems with Applications* (3rd ed.) (Boston: WCB/McGraw-Hill, 1998; Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 2011).

Powers, D. L., *Boundary Value Problems and Partial Differential Equations* (6th ed.) (Boston: Academic Press, 2010).

Strauss, W. A., *Partial Differential Equations, an Introduction* (2nd ed.) (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2009).

Weinberger, H. F., *A First Course in Partial Differential Equations with Complex Variables and Transform Methods* (New York: Blaisdell, 1965; New York: Dover, 1995).

Boundary Value Problems and Sturm-Liouville Theory

As a result of separating variables in a partial differential equation in Chapter 10, we repeatedly encountered the differential equation

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \quad 0 < x < L$$

with the boundary conditions

$$X(0) = 0, \quad X(L) = 0.$$

This boundary value problem is the prototype of a large class of problems that are important in applied mathematics. These problems are known as Sturm-Liouville boundary value problems. In this chapter we discuss the fundamental properties of Sturm-Liouville problems, including existence and uniqueness of solutions; in the process we are able to generalize somewhat the method of separation of variables for partial differential equations.

11.1 The Occurrence of Two-Point Boundary Value Problems

In Chapter 10 we described the method of separation of variables as a means of solving certain problems involving partial differential equations. The heat conduction problem consisting of the partial differential equation

$$\alpha^2 u_{xx} = u_t, \quad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0 \tag{1}$$

subject to the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \quad t > 0 \tag{2}$$

and the initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad 0 \le x \le L \tag{3}$$

is typical of the problems considered there. A crucial part of the process of solving such problems is to find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the differential equation

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \quad 0 < x < L \tag{4}$$

with the boundary conditions

$$X(0) = 0, \quad X(L) = 0 \tag{5}$$

or perhaps

$$X'(0) = 0, \quad X'(L) = 0. \tag{6}$$

The sine or cosine functions that result from solving equation (4) subject to the boundary conditions (5) or (6), respectively, are used to expand the initial temperature distribution $f(x)$ in an appropriate Fourier series.

In this chapter we extend and generalize the results of Chapter 10. Our main goal is to show how the method of separation of variables can be used to solve problems somewhat more general than that of equations (1), (2), and (3). We are interested in three types of generalizations.

First, we wish to consider more general partial differential equations—for example, the equation

$$r(x)u_t = \big(p(x)u_x\big)_x - q(x)u + F(x,t). \tag{7}$$

This equation can arise, as indicated in Appendix A of Chapter 10, in the study of heat conduction in a bar of variable material properties in the presence of heat sources. If $p(x)$ and $r(x)$ are constants, and if the source terms $q(x)u$ and $F(x,t)$ are zero, then equation (7) reduces to equation (1). The partial differential equation (7) also occurs in the investigation of other phenomena of a diffusive character.

A second generalization is to allow more general boundary conditions. In particular, we wish to consider boundary conditions of the form

$$u_x(0,t) - h_1u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(L,t) + h_2u(L,t) = 0. \tag{8}$$

Such conditions occur when the rate of heat flow through an end of the bar is proportional to the temperature there. Usually, h_1 and h_2 are nonnegative constants, but in some cases they may be negative or depend on t. The boundary conditions (2) are obtained in the limit as $h_1 \to \infty$ and $h_2 \to \infty$. The other important limiting case, $h_1 = h_2 = 0$, gives the boundary conditions for insulated ends.

The final generalization that we discuss in this chapter concerns the geometry of the region in which the problem is posed. The results of Chapter 10 are adequate only for a rather restricted class of problems, chiefly those in which the region of interest is rectangular or, in a few cases, circular. Later in this chapter we consider certain problems posed in a few other geometrical regions.

Let us consider the equation

$$r(x)u_t = (p(x)u_x)_x - q(x)u \tag{9}$$

obtained by setting the term $F(x,t)$ in equation (7) equal to zero. To separate the variables, we assume that

$$u(x,t) = X(x)T(t) \tag{10}$$

and substitute for u in equation (9). We obtain

$$r(x)XT' = (p(x)X')'T - q(x)XT, \tag{11}$$

or, upon dividing by $r(x)XT$,

$$\frac{T'}{T} = \frac{\big(p(x)X'\big)'}{r(x)X} - \frac{q(x)}{r(x)} = -\lambda. \tag{12}$$

We have denoted the separation constant by $-\lambda$ in anticipation of the fact that usually it will turn out to be real and negative. From equation (12) we obtain the following two ordinary differential equations for X and T:

$$(p(x)X')' - q(x)X + \lambda r(x)X = 0, \tag{13}$$

$$T' + \lambda T = 0. \tag{14}$$

If we substitute from equation (10) for u in equations (8) and assume that h_1 and h_2 are constants, then we obtain the boundary conditions

$$X'(0) - h_1X(0) = 0, \quad X'(L) + h_2X(L) = 0. \tag{15}$$

To proceed further we need to solve equation (13) subject to the boundary conditions (15). Although this is a more general linear homogeneous two-point boundary value problem than the problem consisting of the differential equation (4) and the boundary conditions (5) or (6), the solutions behave in very much the same way. For every value of λ, the two-point boundary value problem (13), (15) has the trivial solution $X(x) = 0$. For certain values of λ, called **eigenvalues**, there are also other, nontrivial solutions called **eigenfunctions**. These eigenfunctions form the basis for series solutions of a variety of problems in partial differential equations, such as the generalized heat conduction equation (9) subject to the boundary conditions (8) and the initial condition (3).

In this chapter we discuss some of the properties of solutions of two-point boundary value problems for second-order linear equations. Sometimes we consider the general linear homogeneous equation

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0, \tag{16}$$

investigated in Chapter 3. However, for most purposes it is better to discuss equations in which the first and second derivative terms are related as in equation (13). It is always possible to transform the general equation (16) so that the derivative terms appear as in equation (13) (see Problem 11).

Boundary value problems with higher-order differential equations can also occur; in them the number of boundary conditions must equal the order of the differential equation. As a rule, the order of the differential equation is even, and half the boundary conditions are given at each end of the interval. It is also possible for a single boundary condition to involve values of the solution and/or its derivatives at both boundary points; for example,

$$y(0) - y(L) = 0. \tag{17}$$

The following example involves one boundary condition of the form (15) and is therefore more complicated than the problems in Section 10.1.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenfunctions of the boundary value problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \tag{18}$$

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) + y(1) = 0. \tag{19}$$

One place where this problem occurs is in the heat conduction problem in a bar of unit length. The boundary condition at $x = 0$ corresponds to a zero temperature there. The boundary condition at $x = 1$ corresponds to a rate of heat flow that is proportional to the temperature there, and units are chosen so that the constant of proportionality is 1 (see Appendix A of Chapter 10).

Solution:

The solution of the differential equation may have one of several forms, depending on λ, so it is necessary to consider several cases.

Case I: First, if $\lambda = 0$, the general solution of the differential equation (18) is

$$y = c_1 x + c_2. \tag{20}$$

The two boundary conditions (19) require that

$$c_2 = 0, \quad 2c_1 + c_2 = 0, \tag{21}$$

respectively. The only solution of equations (21) is $c_1 = c_2 = 0$, so the boundary value problem has no nontrivial solution in this case. Hence $\lambda = 0$ is not an eigenvalue.

Case II: If $\lambda > 0$, then the general solution of the differential equation (18) is

$$y = c_1 \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda}x\right) + c_2 \cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda}x\right), \tag{22}$$

where $\sqrt{\lambda} > 0$. The boundary condition at $x = 0$ requires that $c_2 = 0$; from the boundary condition at $x = 1$ we then obtain the equation

$$c_1\left(\sin\sqrt{\lambda} + \sqrt{\lambda}\cos\sqrt{\lambda}\right) = 0.$$

For a nontrivial solution y we must have $c_1 \neq 0$, and thus λ must satisfy

$$\sin\sqrt{\lambda} + \sqrt{\lambda}\cos\sqrt{\lambda} = 0. \tag{23}$$

Note that if λ is such that $\cos\sqrt{\lambda} = 0$, then $\sin\sqrt{\lambda} \neq 0$, and equation (23) is not satisfied. Hence we may assume that $\cos\sqrt{\lambda} \neq 0$; dividing equation (23) by $\cos\sqrt{\lambda}$, we obtain

$$\sqrt{\lambda} = -\tan\sqrt{\lambda}. \tag{24}$$

The solutions of equation (24) cannot be determined exactly; they must be approximated numerically. They can also be estimated by sketching the graphs of $f(\sqrt{\lambda}) = \sqrt{\lambda}$ and $g(\sqrt{\lambda}) = -\tan\sqrt{\lambda}$ for $\sqrt{\lambda} > 0$ on the same set of axes and identifying the points of intersection of the two curves (see Figure 11.1.1). The point $\sqrt{\lambda} = 0$ is specifically excluded from this argument because the solution (22) is valid only for $\sqrt{\lambda} \neq 0$. Despite the fact that the curves intersect there, $\lambda = 0$ is not an eigenvalue, as we have already shown. The first four positive solutions of equation (24) are $\sqrt{\lambda_1} \cong 2.02876$, $\sqrt{\lambda_2} \cong 4.91318$, $\sqrt{\lambda_3} \cong 7.97867$, and $\sqrt{\lambda_4} \cong 11.08554$. Figure 11.1.1 shows that the roots can be approximated with reasonable accuracy by $\sqrt{\lambda_n} \cong (2n-1)\pi/2$ for $n = 5, 6, \ldots$, the precision of this estimate improving as n increases. Hence the eigenvalues are

$$\begin{gathered} \lambda_1 \cong 4.11586, \quad \lambda_2 \cong 24.13934, \quad \lambda_3 \cong 63.65911, \quad \lambda_4 \cong 122.88916, \\ \lambda_n \cong \frac{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}{4}, \quad \text{for } n = 5, 6, \ldots. \end{gathered} \tag{25}$$

Finally, since $c_2 = 0$, the eigenfunction corresponding to the eigenvalue λ_n is

$$\phi_n(x, \lambda_n) = k_n \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right); \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{26}$$

where the constant k_n remains arbitrary.

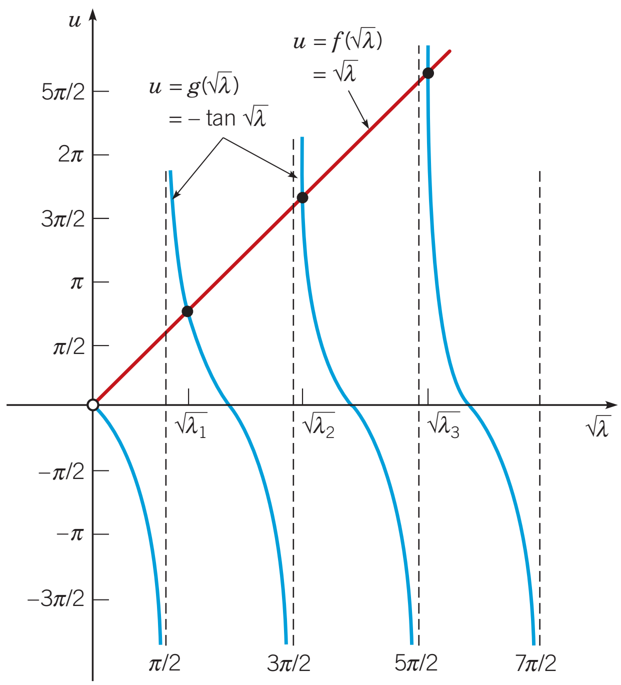


FIGURE 11.1.1 Graphical solution of $\sqrt{\lambda} = -\tan\sqrt{\lambda}$.

Case III: Next consider $\lambda < 0$. In this case let $\lambda = -\mu$ so that $\mu > 0$. Then equation (14) becomes

$$y'' - \mu y = 0, \tag{27}$$

and its general solution is

$$y = c_1 \sinh(\sqrt{\mu}\, x) + c_2 \cosh(\sqrt{\mu}\, x), \tag{28}$$

where $\sqrt{\mu} > 0$. Proceeding as in the previous case, we find that μ must satisfy the equation

$$\sqrt{\mu} = -\tanh\sqrt{\mu}. \tag{29}$$

From Figure 11.1.2 it is clear that the graphs of $f\left(\sqrt{\mu}\right) = \sqrt{\mu}$ and $g\left(\sqrt{\mu}\right) = -\tanh\sqrt{\mu}$ intersect only at the origin. Hence there are no positive values of $\sqrt{\mu}$ that satisfy equation (29), and hence the boundary value problem (18), (19) has no negative eigenvalues.

Finally, it is necessary to consider the possibility that λ may be complex. It is possible to show by direct calculation that the problem (18), (19) has no complex eigenvalues. However, in Section 11.2 we consider in more detail a large class of problems that includes this example. One of the things we show there is that every problem in this class has only real eigenvalues. Therefore, we omit the discussion of the nonexistence of complex eigenvalues here. Thus all the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the problem (18), (19) are given by equations (25) and (26).

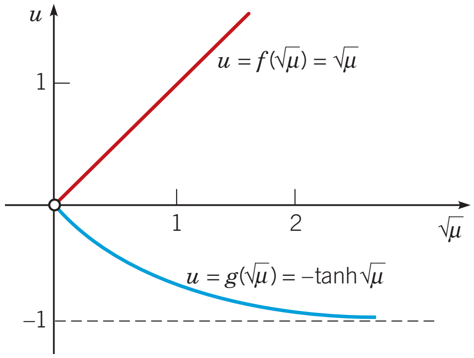


FIGURE 11.1.2 Graphical representation of $\sqrt{\mu} = -\tanh\sqrt{\mu}$.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 6, state whether the given boundary value problem is homogeneous or nonhomogeneous.

1. $y'' + 4y = 0, \quad y(-1) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

2. $((1 + x^2)y')' + 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 1$

3. $y'' + 4y = \sin x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

4. $-y'' + x^2 y = \lambda y, \quad y'(0) - y(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) + y(1) = 0$

5. $-((1 + x^2)y')' = \lambda y + 1, \quad y(-1) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

6. $-y'' = \lambda(1 + x^2)y, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) + 3y(1) = 0$

In each of Problems 7 through 10, assume that all eigenvalues are real.

a. Determine the form of the eigenfunctions and the determinantal equation satisfied by the nonzero eigenvalues.
b. Determine whether $\lambda = 0$ is an eigenvalue.
c. Find approximate values for λ_1 and λ_2, the nonzero eigenvalues of smallest absolute value.
d. Estimate λ_n for large values of n.

7. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) + y'(\pi) = 0$

8. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) + y'(1) = 0$

9. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) - y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) + y'(1) = 0$

10. $y'' - \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) + y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

11. Consider the general linear homogeneous second-order equation

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0. \tag{30}$$

We seek an integrating factor $\mu(x)$ such that, upon multiplying equation (30) by $\mu(x)$, we can write the resulting equation in the form

$$(\mu(x)P(x)y')' + \mu(x)R(x)y = 0. \tag{31}$$

a. By equating coefficients of y' in equations (30) and (31), show that μ must be a solution of

$$P\mu' = (Q - P')\mu. \tag{32}$$

b. Solve equation (32) and thereby show that

$$\mu(x) = \frac{1}{P(x)} \exp\left(\int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{Q(s)}{P(s)} ds\right). \tag{33}$$

Compare this result with that of Problem 31 in Section 3.2.

In each of Problems 12 through 15, use the method of Problem 11 to transform the given equation into the form $(p(x)y')' + q(x)y = 0$.

12. $y'' - 2xy' + \lambda y = 0$ (Hermite equation)

13. $x^2 y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0$ (Bessel equation)

14. $xy'' + (1 - x)y' + \lambda y = 0$ (Laguerre equation)

15. $(1 - x^2)y'' - xy' + \alpha^2 y = 0$ (Chebyshev equation)

16. The equation

$$u_{tt} + cu_t + ku = a^2 u_{xx} + F(x, t), \tag{34}$$

where $a^2 > 0$, $c \geq 0$, and $k \geq 0$ are constants, is known as the **telegraph equation**. It arises in the study of an elastic string under tension (see Appendix B of Chapter 10). Equation (34) also occurs in other applications. Consider equation (34) with $F(x, t) = 0$. Let $u(x, t) = X(x)T(t)$, separate variables, and derive ordinary differential equations for X and T.

17. Consider the boundary value problem

$$y'' - 2y' + (1 + \lambda)y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0.$$

a. Introduce a new dependent variable u by the relation $y = s(x)u$. Find the equivalent boundary value problem in terms of u. Determine $s(x)$ so that the differential equation for u has no u' term.
b. Solve the boundary value problem for u and thereby determine the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the original problem. Assume that all eigenvalues are real.
c. Solve the given problem directly (without introducing u).

18. Consider the boundary value problem

$$y'' + 4y' + (4 + 9\lambda)y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(L) = 0.$$

a. Determine, at least approximately, the real eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenfunctions by proceeding as in Problem 17a and b.

b. Also solve the given problem directly (without introducing a new variable). *Hint:* In part (a), be sure to pay attention to the boundary conditions as well as the differential equation.

The differential equations in Problems 19 and 20 differ from those in previous problems in that the parameter λ multiplies the y' term as well as the y term. In each of these problems, determine the real eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenfunctions.

19. $y'' + y' + \lambda(y' + y) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

20. $x^2y'' - \lambda(xy' - y) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y(2) - y'(2) = 0$

21. Consider the problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad 2y(0) + y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0.$$

a. Find the determinantal equation satisfied by the positive eigenvalues.

b. Show that there is an infinite sequence of such eigenvalues.

c. Find λ_1 and λ_2. Then show that $\lambda_n \cong ((2n+1)\pi/2)^2$ for large n.

d. Find the determinantal equation satisfied by the negative eigenvalues.

e. Show that there is exactly one negative eigenvalue and find its value.

22. Consider the problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad \alpha y(0) + y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0,$$

where α is a given constant.

a. Show that for all values of α there is an infinite sequence of positive eigenvalues.

b. If $\alpha < 1$, show that all (real) eigenvalues are positive. Show that the smallest eigenvalue approaches zero as α approaches 1 from below.

c. Show that $\lambda = 0$ is an eigenvalue only if $\alpha = 1$.

d. If $\alpha > 1$, show that there is exactly one negative eigenvalue and that this eigenvalue decreases as α increases.

23. Consider the problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(L) = 0.$$

Show that if ϕ_m and ϕ_n are eigenfunctions corresponding to the eigenvalues λ_m and λ_n, respectively, with $\lambda_m \neq \lambda_n$, then

$$\int_0^L \phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx = 0.$$

Hint: Note that

$$\phi_m'' + \lambda_m\phi_m = 0, \quad \phi_n'' + \lambda_n\phi_n = 0.$$

Multiply the first of these equations by ϕ_n, the second by ϕ_m, and integrate from 0 to L, using integration by parts. Finally, subtract one equation from the other.

24. In this problem we consider a higher-order eigenvalue problem. The analysis of transverse vibrations of a uniform elastic bar is based on the differential equation

$$y^{(4)} - \lambda y = 0,$$

where y is the transverse displacement and $\lambda = m\omega^2/EI$; m is the mass per unit length of the rod, E is Young's modulus, I is the moment of inertia of the cross section about an axis through the centroid perpendicular to the plane of vibration, and ω is the frequency of vibration. Thus, for a bar whose material and geometrical properties are given, the eigenvalues determine the natural frequencies of vibration. Boundary conditions at each end are usually one of the following types:

$$\begin{aligned} y = y' &= 0, && \text{clamped end,} \\ y = y'' &= 0, && \text{simply supported or hinged end,} \\ y'' = y''' &= 0, && \text{free end.} \end{aligned}$$

For each of the following three cases, find the form of the eigenfunctions and the equation satisfied by the eigenvalues of this fourth-order boundary value problem. Determine λ_1 and λ_2, the two eigenvalues of smallest magnitude. Assume that the eigenvalues are real and positive.

a. $y(0) = y''(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = y''(L) = 0$

b. $y(0) = y''(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = y'(L) = 0$

c. $y(0) = y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(L) = y'''(L) = 0$ (cantilevered bar)

25. This problem illustrates that the eigenvalue parameter sometimes appears in the boundary conditions as well as in the differential equation. Consider the longitudinal vibrations of a uniform straight elastic bar of length L and cross-sectional area A. It can be shown that the axial displacement $u(x,t)$ satisfies the partial differential equation

$$\frac{E}{\rho}u_{xx} = u_{tt}; \quad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0, \tag{35}$$

where E is Young's modulus and ρ is the mass per unit volume. If the end $x = 0$ is fixed, then the boundary condition there is

$$u(0,t) = 0, \quad t > 0. \tag{36}$$

Suppose that the end $x = L$ is rigidly attached to a mass m but is otherwise unrestrained. We can obtain the boundary condition here by writing Newton's law for the mass. From the theory of elasticity, it can be shown that the force exerted by the bar on the mass is given by $-EAu_x(L,t)$. Hence the boundary condition is

$$EAu_x(L,t) + mu_{tt}(L,t) = 0, \quad t > 0. \tag{37}$$

a. Assume that $u(x,t) = X(x)T(t)$, and show that $X(x)$ and $T(t)$ satisfy the differential equations

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0, \tag{38}$$

$$T'' + \lambda\frac{E}{\rho}T = 0. \tag{39}$$

b. Show that the boundary conditions are

$$X(0) = 0, \quad X'(L) - \gamma\lambda LX(L) = 0, \tag{40}$$

where $\gamma = \dfrac{m}{\rho AL}$ is a dimensionless parameter that gives the ratio of the end mass to the mass of the bar.

Hint: Use the differential equation for $T(t)$ in simplifying the boundary condition at $x = L$.

c. Determine the form of the eigenfunctions and the equation satisfied by the real eigenvalues of equations (38) and (40).

d. Find the first two eigenvalues λ_1 and λ_2 if $\gamma = 0.5$.

11.2 Sturm-Liouville Boundary Value Problems

We now consider two-point boundary value problems of the type obtained in Section 11.1 by separating the variables in a heat conduction problem for a bar of variable material properties and with a source term proportional to the temperature. This kind of problem also occurs in many other applications.

These boundary value problems are commonly referred to as **Sturm-Liouville**[1] boundary value problems. They consist of a differential equation of the form

$$(p(x)y')' - q(x)y + \lambda r(x)y = 0 \tag{1}$$

on the interval $0 < x < 1$, together with the boundary conditions

$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0 \tag{2}$$

at the endpoints. It is often convenient to introduce the linear homogeneous differential operator L defined by

$$L[y] = -(p(x)y')' + q(x)y. \tag{3}$$

Then the differential equation (1) can be written as

$$L[y] = \lambda r(x)y. \tag{4}$$

We assume that the functions p, p', q, and r are continuous on the interval $0 \le x \le 1$ and, further, that $p(x) > 0$ and $r(x) > 0$ at all points in $0 \le x \le 1$. In this case the boundary value problem is said to be **regular**. These assumptions are necessary to render the theory as simple as possible while retaining considerable generality. It turns out that these conditions are satisfied in many significant problems in mathematical physics. For example, the equation $y'' + \lambda y = 0$, which arose repeatedly in the preceding chapter, is of the form (1) with $p(x) = 1$, $q(x) = 0$, and $r(x) = 1$.

The boundary conditions (2) are said to be **separated**; that is, each involves only one of the boundary points. These are the most general separated boundary conditions that are possible for a second-order differential equation. Note that for the first boundary condition to impose any restriction on y, it is necessary for at least one of the numbers α_1 and α_2 to be nonzero. Similarly, at least one of the numbers β_1 and β_2 must be nonzero.

Before proceeding to establish some of the properties of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2), it is necessary to derive an identity, known as Lagrange's identity, that is basic to the study of linear boundary value problems. Let u and v be functions having continuous second derivatives on the interval $0 \le x \le 1$. Then[2]

$$\int_0^1 L[u]v\,dx = \int_0^1 (-(pu')'v + quv)\,dx.$$

Integrating the first term on the right-hand side twice by parts, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 L[u]v\,dx &= -p(x)u'(x)v(x)\Big|_0^1 + p(x)u(x)v'(x)\Big|_0^1 + \int_0^1 (-u(pv')' + uqv)\,dx \\ &= -p(x)(u'(x)v(x) - u(x)v'(x))\Big|_0^1 + \int_0^1 uL[v]\,dx.\end{aligned}$$

[1] Charles-François Sturm (1803–1855) and Joseph Liouville (1809–1882), in a series of papers in 1836 and 1837, set forth many properties of the class of boundary value problems associated with their names, including the results stated in Theorems 11.2.1 to 11.2.4. Sturm was born in Geneva, Switzerland, but spent almost his entire adult life in Paris. He is also famous for a theorem on the number of real zeros of a polynomial and, in addition, did extensive work in physics and mechanics. Liouville was a French mathematician who did notable research in analysis, algebra, and number theory. One of his most important results was the proof (in 1844) of the existence of transcendental numbers. He was also the founder, and for 39 years the editor, of the influential *Journal de mathématiques pures et appliquées*.

[2] For brevity, we sometimes use the notation $\int_0^1 f\,dx$ rather than $\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$ in this chapter.

Hence, upon transposing the integral on the right-hand side, we have

$$\int_0^1 (L(u)v - uL(v))\,dx = -p(x)(u'(x)v(x) - u(x)v'(x))\Big|_0^1. \tag{5}$$

Equation (5) is known as **Lagrange's identity**.

Now let us suppose that the functions u and v in equation (5) also satisfy the boundary conditions (2). Then, if we assume that $\alpha_2 \neq 0$ and $\beta_2 \neq 0$, the right-hand side of equation (5) becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
&-p(x)(u'(x)v(x) - u(x)v'(x))\Big|_0^1\\
&= -p(1)(u'(1)v(1) - u(1)v'(1)) + p(0)(u'(0)v(0) - u(0)v'(0))\\
&= -p(1)\left(-\frac{\beta_1}{\beta_2}u(1)v(1) + \frac{\beta_1}{\beta_2}u(1)v(1)\right) + p(0)\left(-\frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha_2}u(0)v(0) + \frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha_2}u(0)v(0)\right)\\
&= 0.
\end{aligned}$$

The same result holds if either α_2 or β_2 is zero; the proof in this case is even simpler and is left for you. Thus, if the differential operator L is defined by equation (3), and if the functions u and v satisfy the boundary conditions (2), then Lagrange's identity reduces to

$$\int_0^1 (L[u]v - uL[v])\,dx = 0. \tag{6}$$

Let us now write equation (6) in a slightly different way. In equation (4) of Section 10.2 we introduced the inner product (u, v) of two real-valued functions u and v on a given interval; using the interval $0 \leq x \leq 1$, we have

$$(u, v) = \int_0^1 u(x)v(x)\,dx. \tag{7}$$

In this notation, equation (6) becomes

$$(L[u], v) - (u, L[v]) = 0. \tag{8}$$

In proving Theorem 11.2.1 below, it is necessary to deal with complex-valued functions. By analogy with the definition in Section 7.2 for vectors, we define the inner product of two complex-valued functions on $0 \leq x \leq 1$ as

$$(u, v) = \int_0^1 u(x)\overline{v}(x)\,dx, \tag{9}$$

where $\overline{v}$ is the complex conjugate of v. Clearly, equation (9) coincides with equation (7) if $u(x)$ and $v(x)$ are real. It is important to know that equation (8) remains valid under the stated conditions if u and v are complex-valued functions and if the inner product is defined as in equation (9). To see this, you can start with the quantity $\int_0^1 L[u]\overline{v}\,dx$ and retrace the steps leading to equation (6), making use of the fact that $p(x)$, $q(x)$, α_1, α_2, β_1, and β_2 are all real-valued quantities (see Problem 22).

We now consider some of the implications of equation (8) for the Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem (1), (2). We assume without proof[3] that this problem actually has eigenvalues and eigenfunctions. In Theorems 11.2.1 to 11.2.4 below, we state several of their important, but relatively elementary, properties. Each of these properties is illustrated by the basic Sturm-Liouville problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, \tag{10}$$

whose eigenvalues are $\lambda_n = n^2\pi^2$, with corresponding eigenfunctions $\phi_n(x) = \sin(n\pi x)$.

Theorem 11.2.1

All the eigenvalues of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2) are real-valued.

[3] For a proof of this statement, see the books by Sagan (Chapter 5) or by Birkhoff and Rota (Chapter 10) listed in the References at the end of this chapter.

To prove this theorem, let us suppose that λ is a (possibly complex) eigenvalue of the problem (1), (2) and that ϕ is a corresponding eigenfunction, also possibly complex-valued. Let us write $\lambda = \mu + i\nu$ and $\phi(x) = U(x) + iV(x)$, where μ, ν, $U(x)$, and $V(x)$ are real-valued. Then, if we let $u = \phi$ and also $v = \phi$ in equation (8), we have

$$(L[\phi], \phi) = (\phi, L[\phi]). \tag{11}$$

However, we know that $L[\phi] = \lambda r\phi$, so equation (11) becomes

$$(\lambda r\phi, \phi) = (\phi, \lambda r\phi). \tag{12}$$

Writing out equation (12) in full, using the definition (9) of the inner product, we obtain

$$\int_0^1 \lambda r(x)\phi(x)\overline{\phi}(x)dx = \int_0^1 \phi(x)\overline{\lambda}\overline{r}(x)\overline{\phi}(x)dx. \tag{13}$$

Since $r(x)$ is real, $\overline{r}(x) = r(x)$, and equation (13) reduces to

$$(\lambda - \overline{\lambda})\int_0^1 r(x)\phi(x)\overline{\phi}(x)dx = 0.$$

However, $\phi(x)\overline{\phi}(x) = U^2(x) + V^2(x)$, so we have

$$(\lambda - \overline{\lambda})\int_0^1 r(x)\Big(U^2(x) + V^2(x)\Big)dx = 0. \tag{14}$$

The integrand in equation (14) is nonnegative and not identically zero. Since the integrand is also continuous, it follows that the integral is positive. Therefore, the factor $\lambda - \overline{\lambda} = 2i\nu$ must be zero. Hence $\nu = 0$ and λ is real-valued, so the theorem is proved.

An important consequence of Theorem 11.2.1 is that in finding eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of a Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem, we need look only for real eigenvalues. Recall that this is what we did in Chapter 10. It is also possible to show that the eigenfunctions of the boundary value problem (1), (2) are real-valued. A proof is sketched in Problem 23.

Theorem 11.2.2 | Orthogonality of Sturm-Liouville Eigenfunctions

Eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem (1), (2) from different eigenvalues are orthogonal with respect to the weight function r. That is, if ϕ_m and ϕ_n are two eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2) corresponding to eigenvalues λ_m and λ_n, respectively, and if $\lambda_m \neq \lambda_n$, then

$$\int_0^1 r(x)\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)dx = 0. \tag{15}$$

To prove Theorem 11.2.2, we note that ϕ_m and ϕ_n satisfy the differential equations

$$L[\phi_m] = \lambda_m r\phi_m \tag{16}$$

and

$$L[\phi_n] = \lambda_n r\phi_n, \tag{17}$$

respectively. If we let $u = \phi_m$, let $v = \phi_n$, and substitute for $L[u]$ and $L[v]$ in equation (8), we obtain

$$(\lambda_m r\phi_m, \phi_n) - (\phi_m, \lambda_n r\phi_n) = 0,$$

or, using equation (9),

$$\lambda_m \int_0^1 r(x)\phi_m(x)\overline{\phi}_n(x)dx - \overline{\lambda}_n \int_0^1 \phi_m(x)\overline{r}(x)\overline{\phi}_n(x)dx = 0.$$

Because λ_n, $r(x)$, and $\phi_n(x)$ are real, this equation becomes

$$(\lambda_m - \lambda_n)\int_0^1 r(x)\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)dx = 0. \tag{18}$$

Since by hypothesis $\lambda_m \neq \lambda_n$, it follows that ϕ_m and ϕ_n must satisfy equation (15), and the theorem is proved.

Theorem 11.2.3

The eigenvalues of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2) are all simple; that is, to each eigenvalue there corresponds only one linearly independent eigenfunction. Further, the eigenvalues form an infinite sequence and can be ordered according to increasing magnitude so that

$$\lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \lambda_3 < \cdots < \lambda_n < \cdots .$$

Moreover, $\lambda_n \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$.

The proof of this theorem is somewhat more advanced than those of the two previous theorems and will be omitted. However, a proof that the eigenvalues are simple is outlined in Problem 20.

Again, we note that all the properties stated in Theorems 11.2.1 to 11.2.3 are exemplified by the eigenvalues $\lambda_n = n^2\pi^2$ and eigenfunctions $\phi_n(x) = \sin(n\pi x)$ of the example problem (10). Clearly, the eigenvalues are real-valued. The eigenfunctions satisfy the orthogonality relation

$$\int_0^1 r(x)\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx = \int_0^1 \sin(m\pi x)\ \sin(n\pi x)\,dx = 0, \qquad m \neq n, \tag{19}$$

which was established in Section 10.2 by direct integration. Further, the eigenvalues can be ordered so that $\lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \cdots$, and $\lambda_n \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$. Finally, to each eigenvalue there corresponds a single linearly independent eigenfunction.

We will now assume that the eigenvalues of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2) are ordered as indicated in Theorem 11.2.3. Associated with the eigenvalue λ_n is a corresponding eigenfunction ϕ_n, determined up to a multiplicative constant. It is often convenient to choose the arbitrary constant multiplying each eigenfunction so as to satisfy the condition

$$\int_0^1 r(x)\phi_n^2(x)\,dx = 1, \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots . \tag{20}$$

Equation (20) is called a **normalization condition**, and eigenfunctions satisfying this condition are said to be **normalized** (with respect to the weight function r). Indeed, in this case, the eigenfunctions are said to form an **orthonormal set** (with respect to the weight function r) since they already satisfy the orthogonality relation (15). It is sometimes useful to combine equations (15) and (20) into a single equation. To this end we introduce the symbol δ_{mn}, which is known as the **Kronecker**[4] **delta** and is defined by

$$\delta_{mn} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } m \neq n, \\ 1, & \text{if } m = n. \end{cases} \tag{21}$$

Making use of the Kronecker delta, we can write equations (15) and (20) as

$$\int_0^1 r(x)\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx = \delta_{mn}. \tag{22}$$

EXAMPLE 1

Determine the normalized eigenfunctions of the problem (10):

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 0, \qquad y(1) = 0.$$

[4] The German mathematician Leopold Kronecker (1823–1891), a student of Dirichlet, was associated with the University of Berlin for most of his life, although (since he was independently wealthy) he held a faculty position only from 1883 onward. He worked in number theory, elliptic functions, algebra, and their interconnections.

Solution:

The eigenvalues of this problem are $\lambda_1 = \pi^2$, $\lambda_2 = 4\pi^2, \ldots, \lambda_n = n^2\pi^2, \ldots$, and the corresponding eigenfunctions are $k_1 \sin(\pi x), k_2 \sin(2\pi x), \ldots, k_n \sin(n\pi x), \ldots$, respectively. In this case the weight function is $r(x) = 1$. To satisfy equation (20), we must choose k_n so that

$$\int_0^1 (k_n \sin(n\pi x))^2 dx = 1 \tag{23}$$

for each value of n. Since

$$k_n^2 \int_0^1 \sin^2(n\pi x)\,dx = k_n^2 \int_0^1 \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos(2n\pi x)\right) dx = \frac{1}{2}k_n^2,$$

Equation (23) is satisfied if k_n is chosen to be $\sqrt{2}$ for each value of n. Hence the normalized eigenfunctions of the given boundary value problem are

$$\phi_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\sin(n\pi x), \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{24}$$

EXAMPLE 2

Determine the normalized eigenfunctions of the problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 0, \qquad y'(1) + y(1) = 0. \tag{25}$$

Solution:

In Example 1 of Section 11.1, we found that the eigenvalue λ_n satisfies the equation

$$\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n} + \sqrt{\lambda_n}\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n} = 0 \tag{26}$$

and that the corresponding eigenfunction is

$$\phi_n(x) = k_n \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right), \tag{27}$$

where k_n is arbitrary. We can determine k_n from the normalization condition (20). Since $r(x) = 1$ in this problem, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^1 r(x)\phi_n^2(x)\,dx &= k_n^2 \int_0^1 \sin^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right) dx \\
&= k_n^2 \int_0^1 \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos\left(2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right)\right) dx = k_n^2 \left(\frac{x}{2} - \frac{\sin(2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x)}{4\sqrt{\lambda_n}}\right)\Bigg|_0^1 \\
&= k_n^2 \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sin\left(2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)}{4\sqrt{\lambda_n}}\right) = k_n^2 \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{2\sqrt{\lambda_n}}\right) \\
&= k_n^2 \frac{1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{2},
\end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we have used equation (26). Hence, to normalize the eigenfunctions ϕ_n, we must choose

$$k_n = \left(\frac{2}{1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{28}$$

The normalized eigenfunctions of the given problem are

$$\phi_n(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2}\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x}{\left(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)^{1/2}}; \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{29}$$

We now turn to the question of expressing a given function f as a series of eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2). We have already seen examples of such expansions in Sections 10.2 to 10.4. For example, it was shown in Section 10.4 that if a function f is continuous and has a piecewise continuous derivative on $0 \leq x \leq 1$, and satisfies the boundary conditions $f(0) = f(1) = 0$, then f can be expanded in a Fourier sine series of the form

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin(n\pi x). \tag{30}$$

The functions $\sin(n\pi x)$, $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, are precisely the eigenfunctions of the boundary value problem (10). The coefficients b_n are given by

$$b_n = 2\int_0^1 f(x)\sin(n\pi x)\,dx \tag{31}$$

and the series (30) converges for each x in $0 \leq x \leq 1$. In a similar way, f can be expanded in a Fourier cosine series using the eigenfunctions $\cos(n\pi x)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, of the boundary value problem $y'' + \lambda y = 0$, $y'(0) = 0$, $y'(1) = 0$.

Now suppose that a given function f, satisfying suitable conditions, can be expanded in an infinite series of eigenfunctions of the more general Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2). If this can be done, then we have

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \phi_n(x), \tag{32}$$

where the functions $\phi_n(x)$ satisfy equations (1), (2) and also the orthonormality condition (22). To compute the coefficients in the series (32), we multiply equation (32) by $r(x)\phi_m(x)$, where m is a fixed positive integer, and integrate from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$. Assuming that the series can be integrated term by term, we obtain

$$\int_0^1 r(x)f(x)\phi_m(x)\,dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \int_0^1 r(x)\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \delta_{mn}. \tag{33}$$

By the definition of δ_{mn}, the last sum in equation (33) reduces to the single term c_m. Hence, using the definition of the inner product, we have

$$c_m = \int_0^1 r(x)f(x)\phi_m(x)\,dx = (f, r\phi_m), \quad m = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{34}$$

The coefficients in the series (32) have thus been formally determined. Equation (34) has the same structure[5] as the Euler–Fourier formulas for the coefficients in a Fourier series, and the eigenfunction series (32) also has convergence properties similar to those of Fourier series.

The following theorem is analogous to the Fourier Convergence Theorem (Theorem 10.3.1).

Theorem 11.2.4

Let $\phi_1, \phi_2, \ldots, \phi_n, \ldots$ be the normalized eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2):

$$(p(x)y')' - q(x)y + \lambda r(x)y = 0,$$
$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0.$$

Let f and f' be piecewise continuous on $0 \leq x \leq 1$. Then the series (32) whose coefficients c_m are given by equation (34) converges to $\frac{1}{2}(f(x^+) + f(x^-))$ at each point in the open interval $0 < x < 1$.

Moreover, the series (32) converges at each point in the closed interval $0 \leq x \leq 1$, provided f is continuous (and f' is piecewise continuous) on $0 \leq x \leq 1$ and f satisfies the following boundary conditions:

(i) If $\phi_n(0) = 0$ for all n, that is, $\alpha_2 = 0$ in the first of boundary conditions (2), then assume that $f(0) = 0$, and

(ii) If $\phi_n(1) = 0$ for all n, that is, $\beta_2 = 0$ in the second of boundary conditions (2), then assume that $f(1) = 0$.

[5]The alert reader will have noticed that equation (34) does not reduce to equation (31) when $\phi_m = \sin(m\pi x)$. The extra factor of 2 appears because these eigenfunctions are orthogonal but not orthonormal.

EXAMPLE 3

Expand the function

$$f(x) = x, \quad 0 \le x \le 1 \tag{35}$$

in terms of the normalized eigenfunctions $\phi_n(x)$ of the problem (25).

Solution:

In Example 2, where $r(x) = 1$, we found the normalized eigenfunctions to be

$$\phi_n(x) = k_n \sin(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x), \tag{36}$$

where k_n is given by equation (28) and λ_n satisfies equation (26). To find the expansion for f in terms of the eigenfunctions ϕ_n, we write

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \phi_n(x), \tag{37}$$

where the coefficients are given by equation (34). Thus

$$c_n = \int_0^1 r(x) f(x) \phi_n(x)\, dx = k_n \int_0^1 x \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n} x\right) dx.$$

Integrating by parts, we obtain

$$c_n = k_n \left(\frac{\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{\lambda_n} - \frac{\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{\sqrt{\lambda_n}} \right) = k_n \frac{2\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{\lambda_n},$$

where we have used equation (26) in the last step. Upon substituting for k_n from equation (28), we obtain

$$c_n = \frac{2\sqrt{2}\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{\lambda_n\left(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)^{1/2}}. \tag{38}$$

Thus

$$f(x) = 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(\sqrt{\lambda_n})}{\lambda_n\left(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)} \sin(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x). \tag{39}$$

In Example 1 of Section 10.4, we found the Fourier sine series for $f(x) = x$ (with $L = 1$) to be

$$f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n} \sin(n\pi x).$$

While equation (39) is a series of sine functions, it is not a Fourier sine series. This means its convergence cannot be ascertained from the Fourier Convergence Theorem (Theorem 10.3.1). But from Theorem 11.2.4, we conclude that series (39) converges pointwise to $f(x) = x$ for $0 \le x \le 1$.

Self-Adjoint Problems. Sturm-Liouville boundary value problems are of great importance in their own right, but they can also be viewed as belonging to a much more extensive class of problems that have many of the same properties. For example, there are many similarities between Sturm-Liouville problems and the algebraic system

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \lambda \mathbf{x}, \tag{40}$$

where the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is real symmetric or Hermitian. Comparing the results mentioned in Section 7.3 with those of this section, we note that in both cases the eigenvalues are real, and the eigenfunctions or eigenvectors form an orthogonal set. Further, the eigenfunctions or eigenvectors can be used as the basis for expressing an essentially arbitrary function or vector, respectively, as a sum. The most important difference is that a matrix has only a finite number of eigenvalues and eigenvectors, while a Sturm-Liouville problem has infinitely many. It is interesting and of fundamental importance in mathematics that these seemingly different problems—the matrix problem (40) and the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2)—which arise in different ways, are actually parts of a single underlying theory. This theory is usually referred to as **linear operator theory** and is part of the subject of functional analysis.

We now point out some ways in which Sturm-Liouville problems can be generalized, while still preserving the main results of Theorems 11.2.1 to 11.2.4—the existence of a sequence of real eigenvalues tending to infinity, the orthogonality of the eigenfunctions, and the possibility of expressing an arbitrary function as a series of eigenfunctions. These generalizations depend on the continued validity of the crucial relation (8).

Let us consider the boundary value problem consisting of the differential equation

$$L[y] = \lambda r(x)y, \quad 0 < x < 1, \tag{41}$$

where

$$L[y] = P_n(x)\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + \cdots + P_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + P_0(x)y, \tag{42}$$

and n linear homogeneous boundary conditions at the endpoints. If equation (8) is valid for every pair of sufficiently differentiable functions that satisfy the boundary conditions, then the given problem is said to be **self-adjoint**. It is important to observe that equation (8) involves restrictions on both the differential equation and the boundary conditions. The differential operator L must be such that the same operator appears in both terms of equation (8). This requires L to be of even order. Further, a second-order operator must have the form (3), a fourth-order operator must have the form

$$L[y] = (p(x)y'')'' - (q(x)y')' + s(x)y, \tag{43}$$

and higher-order operators must have an analogous structure. In addition, the boundary conditions must be such as to eliminate the boundary terms that arise during the integration by parts used in deriving equation (8). For example, in a second-order problem, this is true for the separated boundary conditions (2) and also in certain other cases, one of which is given in Example 4 below.

Let us suppose that we have a self-adjoint boundary value problem for equation (41), where $L[y]$ is given now by equation (43). We assume that p, q, r, and s are continuous on $0 \le x \le 1$ and that the derivatives of p and q indicated in equation (43) are also continuous. If in addition $p(x) > 0$ and $r(x) > 0$ for $0 \le x \le 1$, then there is an infinite sequence of real eigenvalues tending to $+\infty$, the eigenfunctions are orthogonal with respect to the weight function r, and an arbitrary function can be expressed as a series of eigenfunctions. However, the eigenvalues may not be simple in these more general problems.

We turn now to the relation between Sturm-Liouville problems and Fourier series. We have noted previously that Fourier sine and cosine series can be obtained by using the eigenfunctions of certain Sturm-Liouville problems involving the differential equation $y''+\lambda y = 0$ with boundary conditions $y(0) = y(1) = 0$ and $y'(0) = y'(1) = 0$, respectively. This raises the question of whether we can obtain a full Fourier series, including both sine and cosine terms, by choosing a suitable set of boundary conditions. The answer is provided by the following example, which also serves to illustrate the occurrence of nonseparated boundary conditions.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the boundary value problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \tag{44}$$

$$y(-1) - y(1) = 0, \quad y'(-1) - y'(1) = 0. \tag{45}$$

Solution:

This is not a Sturm-Liouville problem because the boundary conditions are not separated. The boundary conditions (45) are called **periodic boundary conditions** since they require that y and y' assume the same values at $x = 1$ as at $x = -1$. Nevertheless, it is straightforward to show that the problem (44), (45) is self-adjoint. A simple calculation establishes that $\lambda_0 = 0$ is an eigenvalue and that the corresponding eigenfunction is $\phi_0(x) = 1$. Further, there are additional eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = \pi^2$, $\lambda_2 = (2\pi)^2, \ldots, \lambda_n = (n\pi)^2, \ldots$. To each of these nonzero eigenvalues there correspond *two* linearly independent eigenfunctions; for example, corresponding to λ_n are the two eigenfunctions $\phi_n(x) = \cos(n\pi x)$ and $\psi_n(x) = \sin(n\pi x)$. This illustrates that the eigenvalues may not be simple when the boundary conditions are not separated. Further, if we seek to expand a given function f of period 2 in a series of eigenfunctions of the problem (44), (45), we obtain the series

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(a_n\cos(n\pi x) + b_n\sin(n\pi x)),$$

which is just the Fourier series for f on the interval $-1 \le x \le 1$.

We will not give further consideration to problems that do not have separated boundary conditions, nor will we deal with problems of higher than second order, except in a few problems. There is, however, one other kind of generalization that we do wish to discuss. That is the case in which the coefficients p, q, and r in equation (1) do not quite satisfy the rather strict continuity and positivity requirements laid down at the beginning of this section. Such problems are called **singular Sturm-Liouville boundary value problems** and are the subject of Section 11.4.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 5, determine the normalized eigenfunctions of the given problem.

1. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$

2. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

3. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$

4. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) + y(1) = 0;$
see Section 11.1, Problem 8.

5. $y'' - 2y' + (1+\lambda)y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0;$
see Section 11.1, Problem 17.

In each of Problems 6 through 9, find the coefficients in the eigenfunction expansion $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n\phi_n(x)$ of the given function, using the normalized eigenfunctions of Problem 1.

6. $f(x) = 1, \quad 0 \le x \le 1$

7. $f(x) = x, \quad 0 \le x \le 1$

8. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le x < \frac{1}{2} \\ 0, & \frac{1}{2} \le x \le 1 \end{cases}$

9. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x, & 0 \le x < \frac{1}{2} \\ 1, & \frac{1}{2} \le x \le 1 \end{cases}$

In each of Problems 10 through 13, find the coefficients in the eigenfunction expansion $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n\phi_n(x)$ of the given function, using the normalized eigenfunctions of Problem 4.

10. $f(x) = 1, \quad 0 \le x \le 1$

11. $f(x) = x, \quad 0 \le x \le 1$

12. $f(x) = 1 - x, \quad 0 \le x \le 1$

13. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le x < \frac{1}{2} \\ 0, & \frac{1}{2} \le x \le 1 \end{cases}$

In each of Problems 14 through 18, determine whether the given boundary value problem is self-adjoint.

14. $y'' + y' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

15. $(1+x^2)y'' + 2xy' + y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) + 2y'(1) = 0$

16. $y'' + y = \lambda y, \quad y(0) - y'(1) = 0, \quad y'(0) - y(1) = 0$

17. $(1+x^2)y'' + 2xy' + y = \lambda(1+x^2)y,$
$y(0) - y'(1) = 0, \quad y'(0) + 2y(1) = 0$

18. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) + y'(\pi) = 0$

19. Show that if the functions u and v satisfy equations (2), and either $\alpha_2 = 0$ or $\beta_2 = 0$, or both, then

$$p(x)(u'(x)v(x) - u(x)v'(x))\Big|_0^1 = 0.$$

20. In this problem we outline a proof of the first part of Theorem 11.2.3: that the eigenvalues of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2) are simple. The proof is by contradiction.

a. Suppose that a given eigenvalue λ is not simple. Then there exist two corresponding eigenfunctions ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 that are linearly independent—that is, not multiples of each other.

b. Compute the Wronskian $W[\phi_1, \phi_2](x)$, and use the boundary conditions (2) to show that $W[\phi_1, \phi_2](0) = 0$.

c. Use Theorem 3.2.7 to reach a contradiction, which establishes that the eigenvalues must be simple, as asserted in Theorem 11.2.3.

21. Consider the Sturm-Liouville problem

$$-(p(x)y')' + q(x)y = \lambda r(x)y, \quad 0 < x < 1$$
$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0,$$

where p, q, and r satisfy the conditions stated in the text.

a. Show that if λ is an eigenvalue and ϕ a corresponding eigenfunction, then

$$\lambda\int_0^1 r\phi^2\,dx = \int_0^1 (p\phi'^{1,2} + q\phi^2)\,dx + \frac{\beta_1}{\beta_2}p(1)\phi^2(1) - \frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha_2}p(0)\phi^2(0),$$

provided that $\alpha_2 \ne 0$ and $\beta_2 \ne 0$. How must this result be modified if $\alpha_2 = 0$ or $\beta_2 = 0$?

b. Show that if $q(x) \ge 0$ and if β_1/β_2 and $-\alpha_1/\alpha_2$ are nonnegative, then the eigenvalue λ is nonnegative.

c. Under the conditions of part b, show that the eigenvalue λ is strictly positive unless $\alpha_1 = \beta_1 = 0$ and $q(x) = 0$ for each x in $0 \le x \le 1$.

22. Derive equation (8) using the inner product (9) and assuming that u and v are complex-valued functions. *Hint:* Consider the quantity $\int_0^1 L[u]\overline{v}\,dx$, split u and v into real and imaginary parts, and proceed as in the text.

23. In this problem we outline a proof that the eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2) are real-valued.

a. Let λ be an eigenvalue and let $\phi(x) = U(x) + iV(x)$ be a corresponding eigenfunction. Show that U and V are also eigenfunctions corresponding to λ.

b. Using Theorem 11.2.3, or the result of Problem 20, show that U and V are linearly dependent.

c. Show that ϕ must be real-valued, apart from an arbitrary multiplicative constant that may be complex.

24. Consider the problem

$$x^2y'' = \lambda(xy' - y), \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y(2) = 0.$$

Note that λ appears as a coefficient of y' as well as of y itself. It is possible to extend the definition of self-adjointness to this type of problem and to show that this particular problem is not self-adjoint. Show that the problem has eigenvalues but that none of them is real. This illustrates that in general, nonself-adjoint problems may have eigenvalues that are not real.

Buckling of an Elastic Column. An investigation of the buckling of a uniform elastic column of length L by an axial load P (Figure 11.2.1a) leads to the differential equation

$$y^{(4)} + \lambda y'' = 0, \quad 0 < x < L. \tag{46}$$

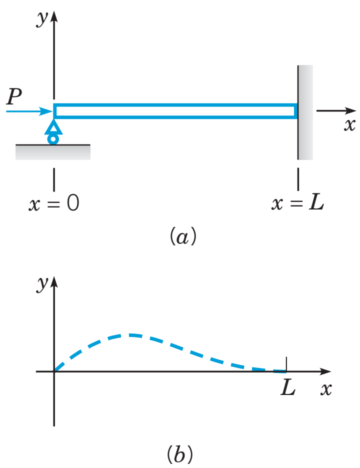


FIGURE 11.2.1 (a) A column under compression. (b) Shape of the buckled column.

The parameter λ is equal to $P/(EI)$, where E is Young's modulus and I is the moment of inertia of the cross section about an axis through the centroid perpendicular to the xy-plane. The boundary conditions at $x = 0$ and $x = L$ depend on how the ends of the column are supported. Typical boundary conditions are

$$\begin{aligned} y = y' = 0, &\quad \text{clamped end,} \\ y = y'' = 0, &\quad \text{simply supported (hinged) end.} \end{aligned}$$

The bar shown in Figure 11.2.1a is simply supported at $x = 0$ and clamped at $x = L$. It is desired to determine the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of equation (46) subject to suitable boundary conditions. In particular, the smallest eigenvalue λ_1 gives the load at which the column buckles, or can assume a curved equilibrium position, as shown in Figure 11.2.1b. The corresponding eigenfunction describes the configuration of the buckled column. Note that the differential equation (46) does not fall within the theory discussed in this section. It is possible to show, however, that in each of the cases given here all the eigenvalues are real and positive. Problems 25 and 26 deal with column-buckling problems.

25. For each of the following boundary conditions, find the smallest eigenvalue (the buckling load) of $y^{(4)} + \lambda y'' = 0$, and also find the corresponding eigenfunction (the shape of the buckled column).

a. $y(0) = y''(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = y''(L) = 0$

b. $y(0) = y''(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = y'(L) = 0$

c. $y(0) = y'(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = y'(L) = 0$

26. In some buckling problems the eigenvalue parameter appears in the boundary conditions as well as in the differential equation. One such case occurs when one end of the column is clamped and the other end is free. In this case the differential equation $y^{(4)} + \lambda y'' = 0$ must be solved subject to the boundary conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(L) = 0, \quad y'''(L) + \lambda y'(L) = 0.$$

Find the smallest eigenvalue and the corresponding eigenfunction.

27. Solutes in an aquifer are transported by two separate mechanisms. The process by which a solute is transported by the bulk motion of the flowing groundwater is called **advection**. In addition, the solute is spread by small-scale fluctuations in the groundwater velocity along the tortuous flow paths within individual pores, a process called **mechanical dispersion**. The one-dimensional form of the advection–dispersion equation for a nonreactive dissolved solute in a saturated, homogeneous, isotropic porous medium under steady, uniform flow is

$$c_t + vc_x = Dc_{xx}, \quad 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0, \tag{47}$$

where $c(x, t)$ is the concentration of the solute, v is the average linear groundwater velocity, D is the coefficient of hydrodynamic dispersion, and L is the length of the aquifer. Suppose that the boundary conditions are

$$c(0, t) = 0, \quad c_x(L, t) = 0, \quad t > 0 \tag{48}$$

and that the initial condition is

$$c(x, 0) = f(x), \quad 0 < x < L, \tag{49}$$

where $f(x)$ is the given initial concentration of the solute.

a. Assume that $c(x, t) = X(x)T(t)$, use the method of separation of variables, and find the equations satisfied by $X(x)$ and $T(t)$, respectively. Show that the problem for $X(x)$ can be written in the Sturm-Liouville form

$$(p(x)X')' + \lambda r(x)X = 0, \quad 0 < x < L, \tag{50}$$

$$X(0) = 0, \quad X'(L) = 0, \tag{51}$$

where $p(x) = r(x) = \exp(-vx/D)$. Hence the eigenvalues are real, and the eigenfunctions are orthogonal with respect to the weight function $r(x)$.

b. Let $\mu^2 = \lambda - v^2/(4D^2)$. Show that the eigenfunctions are

$$X_n(x) = e^{vx/(2D)} \sin(\mu_n x), \tag{52}$$

where μ_n satisfies the equation

$$\tan(\mu L) = -\frac{2D\mu}{v} \tag{53}$$

G c. Show graphically that equation (53) has an infinite sequence of positive roots and that $\mu_n \cong (2n - 1)\pi/(2L)$ for large n.

d. Show that

$$\int_0^L r(x)X_n^2(x)\,dx = \frac{L}{2} + \frac{v}{4D\mu_n^2}\sin^2(\mu_n L).$$

e. Find a formal solution of the problem (47), (48), (49) in terms of a series of the eigenfunctions $X_n(x)$.

G **f.** Let $v = 1$, $D = 0.5$, $L = 10$, and $f(x) = \delta(x - 3)$, where δ is the Dirac delta[6] function. Using the solution found in part (e), plot $c(x, t)$ versus x for several values of t, such as $t = 0.5$, 1, 3, 6, and 10. Also plot $c(x, t)$ versus t for several values of x. Note that the number of terms that are needed to obtain an accurate plot depends strongly on the values of t and x.

g. Describe in a few words how the solution evolves as time advances.

28. A nonreactive tracer at concentration c_0 is continuously introduced into a steady flow at the upstream end of a column of length L packed with a homogeneous granular medium. Assuming that the tracer concentration in the column is initially zero, the boundary value problem that models this process is

$$\begin{aligned} c_t + vc_x &= Dc_{xx}, && 0 < x < L, \quad t > 0, \\ c(0, t) &= c_0, && t > 0, \\ c_x(L, t) &= 0, && t > 0, \\ c(x, 0) &= 0, && 0 < x < L, \end{aligned}$$

where $c(x, t)$, v, and D are as in Problem 27.

a. Assuming that $c(x, t) = c_0 + u(x, t)$, find the boundary value problem satisfied by $u(x, t)$.

b. Proceeding as in Problem 27, find $u(x, t)$ in terms of an eigenfunction expansion.

G **c.** Let $v = 1$, $D = 0.5$, $c_0 = 1$, and $L = 10$. Plot $c(x, t)$ versus x for several values of t, and also plot $c(x, t)$ versus t for several values of x.

d. Describe in a few words how the solution evolves with time. For example, about how long does it take for the steady-state solution to be essentially attained?

11.3 Nonhomogeneous Boundary Value Problems

In this section we discuss how to solve nonhomogeneous boundary value problems for both ordinary and partial differential equations. Most of our attention is directed toward problems in which the differential equation alone is nonhomogeneous, while the boundary conditions are homogeneous. We assume that the solution can be expanded in a series of eigenfunctions of a related homogeneous problem, and then we determine the coefficients in this series so that the nonhomogeneous problem is satisfied. We first describe this method as it applies to boundary value problems for second-order linear ordinary differential equations. Later we illustrate its use for partial differential equations by solving a heat conduction problem in a bar with variable material properties and in the presence of source terms.

Nonhomogeneous Sturm-Liouville Problems. Consider the boundary value problem consisting of the nonhomogeneous differential equation

$$L[y] = -(p(x)y')' + q(x)y = \mu r(x)y + f(x), \tag{1}$$

where μ is a given constant and f is a given function on $0 \le x \le 1$, and the boundary conditions

$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0. \tag{2}$$

As in Section 11.2, we assume that p, p', q, and r are continuous on $0 \le x \le 1$ and that $p(x) > 0$ and $r(x) > 0$ there. We will solve the problem (1), (2) by making use of the eigenfunctions of the corresponding homogeneous problem consisting of the differential equation

$$L[y] = \lambda r(x)y \tag{3}$$

and the boundary conditions (2). Let $\lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \cdots < \lambda_n < \cdots$ be the eigenvalues of this problem, and let $\phi_1, \phi_2, \ldots, \phi_n, \ldots$ be the corresponding normalized eigenfunctions.

We now assume that the solution $y = \phi(x)$ of the nonhomogeneous problem (1), (2) can be expressed as a series of the form

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \phi_n(x). \tag{4}$$

[6]See Section 6.5, especially equation (16) of that section.

From equation (34) of Section 11.2, we know that

$$b_n = \int_0^1 r(x)\phi(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{5}$$

However, since we do not know $\phi(x)$, we cannot use equation (5) to calculate b_n. Instead, we will try to determine b_n so that the problem (1), (2) is satisfied and then use equation (4) to find $\phi(x)$. Note first that ϕ as given by equation (4) always satisfies the boundary conditions (2) since each ϕ_n does.

The differential equation that ϕ must satisfy is just equation (1) with y replaced by ϕ:

$$L[\phi](x) = \mu r(x)\phi(x) + f(x). \tag{6}$$

We substitute the series (4) into the differential equation (6) and attempt to determine b_n so that the differential equation is satisfied. The term on the left-hand side of equation (6) becomes

$$L[\phi](x) = L\left[\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n\phi_n\right](x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n L[\phi_n](x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n\lambda_n r(x)\phi_n(x), \tag{7}$$

where we have assumed that we can interchange the operations of summation and differentiation.

Note that the function r appears in equation (7) and also in the term $\mu r(x)\phi(x)$ in equation (6). This suggests that we rewrite the nonhomogeneous term in equation (6) as $r(x)(f(x)/r(x))$ so that $r(x)$ also appears as a multiplier in this term. If the function f/r satisfies the conditions of Theorem 11.2.4, then

$$\frac{f(x)}{r(x)} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n\phi_n(x), \tag{8}$$

where, using equation (5) with ϕ replaced by f/r,

$$c_n = \int_0^1 r(x)\frac{f(x)}{r(x)}\phi_n(x)\,dx = \int_0^1 f(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{9}$$

Upon substituting for $\phi(x)$, $L[\phi](x)$, and $f(x)$ in equation (6) from equations (4), (7), and (8), respectively, we find that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n\lambda_n r(x)\phi_n(x) = \mu r(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n\phi_n(x) + r(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n\phi_n(x).$$

After collecting terms and canceling the common nonzero factor $r(x)$, we have

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}((\lambda_n - \mu)b_n - c_n)\phi_n(x) = 0. \tag{10}$$

If equation (10) is to hold for each x in the interval $0 \le x \le 1$, then the coefficient of $\phi_n(x)$ must be zero for each n; see Problem 14 for a proof of this fact. Hence

$$(\lambda_n - \mu)b_n - c_n = 0, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{11}$$

We must now distinguish two main cases, one of which also has two subcases.

Case I: First suppose that $\mu \neq \lambda_n$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$; that is, μ is not equal to any eigenvalue of the corresponding homogeneous problem. Then

$$b_n = \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - \mu}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{12}$$

and

$$y = \phi(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - \mu}\phi_n(x). \tag{13}$$

Equation (13), with c_n given by equation (9), is a formal solution of the nonhomogeneous boundary value problem (1), (2). Our argument does not prove that the series (13) converges.

However, any solution of the boundary value problem (1), (2) clearly satisfies the conditions of Theorem 11.2.4; indeed, it satisfies the more stringent conditions given in the second paragraph of that theorem. Thus it is reasonable to expect that the series (13) does converge at each point, and this fact can be established, provided, for example, that f is continuous.

Case II: The second main case is when μ is equal to one of the eigenvalues of the corresponding homogeneous problem, say, $\mu = \lambda_m$; then the situation is quite different. In this event, for $n = m$, equation (11) has the form $0 \cdot b_m - c_m = 0$. Again we must consider two cases.

Case IIa: If $\mu = \lambda_m$ and $c_m \neq 0$, then there is no value of b_m that satisfies equation (11), and therefore the nonhomogeneous problem (1), (2) has no solution.

Case IIb: If $\mu = \lambda_m$ and $c_m = 0$, then equation (11) is satisfied regardless of the value of b_m; in other words, b_m remains arbitrary. In this case the boundary value problem (1), (2) does have a solution, but it is not unique, since it can include an arbitrary multiple of the eigenfunction ϕ_m.

Since c_m is given by equation (9), the condition $c_m = 0$ means that

$$\int_0^1 f(x)\phi_m(x)\,dx = 0. \tag{14}$$

Thus, if $\mu = \lambda_m$, the nonhomogeneous boundary value problem (1), (2) can be solved only if f is orthogonal to the eigenfunction corresponding to the eigenvalue λ_m.

The results we have formally obtained are summarized in the following theorem.

Theorem 11.3.1

The nonhomogeneous boundary value problem (1), (2) has a unique solution for each continuous f whenever μ is different from all the eigenvalues of the corresponding homogeneous problem; the solution is given by equation (13), and the series converges for each x in $0 \leq x \leq 1$.

If μ is equal to an eigenvalue λ_m of the corresponding homogeneous problem, then the nonhomogeneous boundary value problem has no solution unless condition (14) holds; that is, unless f is orthogonal to ϕ_m. In that case, the solution is not unique and contains an arbitrary multiple of $\phi_m(x)$.

The main part of Theorem 11.3.1 is sometimes stated in the following way:

Theorem 11.3.2

For a given value of μ, either the nonhomogeneous problem (1), (2) has a unique solution for each continuous f (if μ is not equal to any eigenvalue λ_m of the corresponding homogeneous problem), or else the homogeneous problem (3), (2) has a nontrivial solution (the eigenfunction corresponding to λ_m).

This latter form of the theorem is known as the **Fredholm[7] alternative theorem**. This is one of the basic theorems of mathematical analysis and occurs in many different contexts. You may be familiar with it in connection with sets of linear algebraic equations where the vanishing or nonvanishing of the determinant of coefficients replaces the statements about μ and λ_m. See the discussion in Section 7.3.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the boundary value problem

$$y'' + 2y = -x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) + y'(1) = 0.$$

[7] The Swedish mathematician Erik Ivar Fredholm (1866–1927), professor at the University of Stockholm, established the modern theory of integral equations in a fundamental paper in 1903. Fredholm's work emphasized the similarities between integral equations and systems of linear algebraic equations. There are also many interrelations between differential and integral equations; for example, see Section 2.8 and Problem 22 of Section 6.6.

Solution:

This particular problem can be solved directly in an elementary way and has the solution

$$y = \frac{\sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,x\right)}{\sin\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}\cos\sqrt{2}} - \frac{x}{2}. \tag{15}$$

The method of solution described below illustrates the use of eigenfunction expansions, a method that can be employed in many problems not accessible by elementary procedures.

We begin by rewriting the differential equation as

$$-y'' = 2y + x \tag{16}$$

so that it will have the same form as equation (1). We seek the solution of the given problem as a series of normalized eigenfunctions ϕ_n of the corresponding homogeneous problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) + y'(1) = 0. \tag{17}$$

These eigenfunctions were found in Example 2 of Section 11.2 and are

$$\phi_n(x) = k_n \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right), \tag{18}$$

where

$$k_n = \left(\frac{2}{1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}}\right)^{1/2} \tag{19}$$

and the eigenvalue λ_n satisfies

$$\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n} + \sqrt{\lambda_n}\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n} = 0. \tag{20}$$

Recall that in Example 1 of Section 11.1, we found that

$$\lambda_1 \cong 4.11586, \quad \lambda_2 \cong 24.13934, \quad \lambda_3 \cong 63.65911, \quad \lambda_4 \cong 122.88916,$$
$$\lambda_n \cong \frac{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}{4}, \quad \text{for } n = 5, 6, \ldots.$$

We assume that y is given by equation (4)

$$y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \phi_n(x),$$

and it follows that the coefficients b_n are found from equation (12)

$$b_n = \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - 2},$$

where the c_n are the expansion coefficients of the nonhomogeneous term $f(x) = x$ in equation (16) in terms of the eigenfunctions ϕ_n. These coefficients were found in Example 3 of Section 11.2 and are

$$c_n = \frac{2\sqrt{2}\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{\lambda_n(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n})^{1/2}}. \tag{21}$$

Putting everything together, we finally obtain the solution

$$y = 4\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{\lambda_n(\lambda_n - 2)(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n})} \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right). \tag{22}$$

Although equations (15) and (22) are quite different in appearance, they are actually two different expressions for the same function. This follows from the uniqueness part of Theorem 11.3.1 or 11.3.2, since $\lambda = 2$ is not an eigenvalue of the homogeneous problem (17). Another alternative to show the equivalence of equations (15) and (22) is to expand the right-hand side of equation (15) in terms of the eigenfunctions $\phi_n(x)$.

The series (22) converges rapidly to the exact solution. Figure 11.3.1(a) shows the exact solution and the first term of series (22). (With two or more terms of the series the two solution curves are indistinguishable.) Figures 11.3(b) and (c) show the difference between the exact solution (15) and the first three and fifteen terms of the series solution (22).

For this problem, it is fairly obvious that equation (15) is a more convenient expression for the solution than equation (22). However, we emphasize again that in other problems we may not be able to obtain the solution except by series (or numerical approximation) methods.

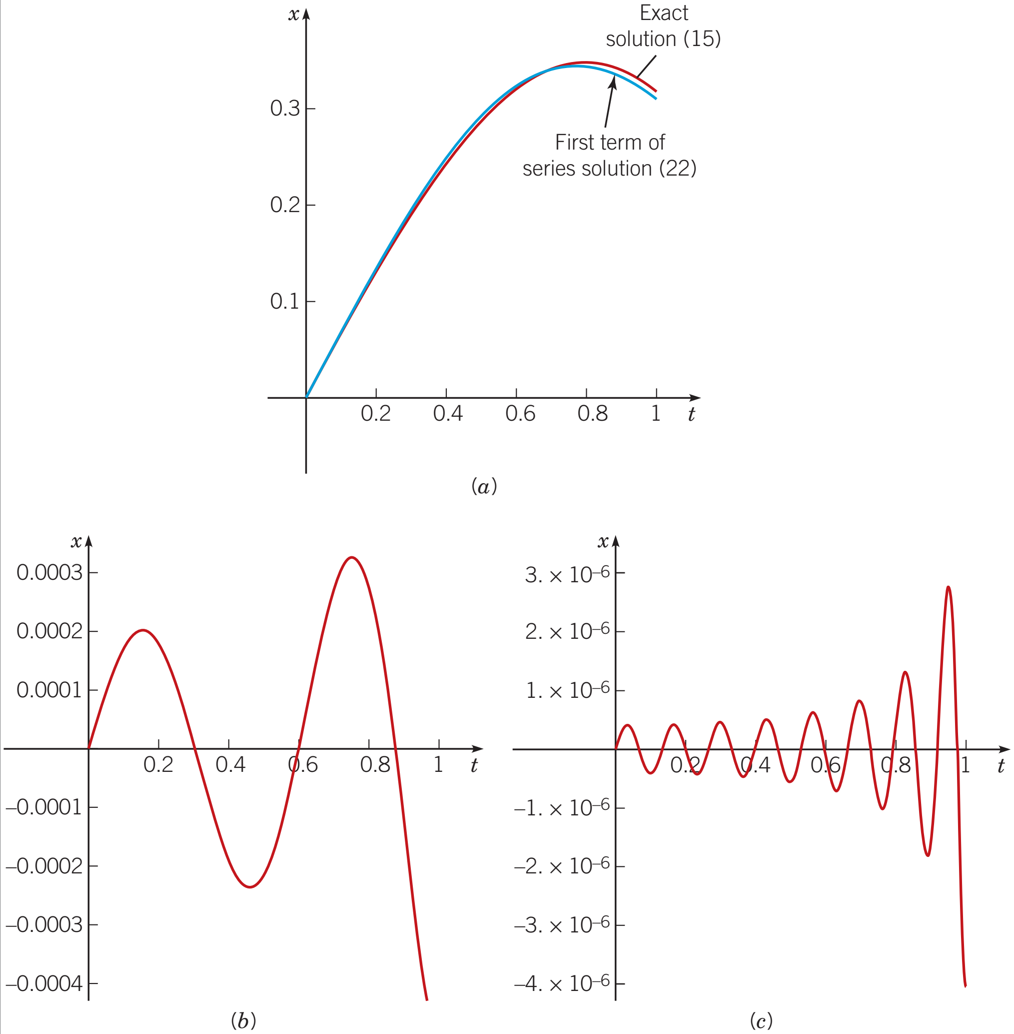


FIGURE 11.3.1 Graphical comparison of the exact solution (15) and partial sums of the series (22). (*a*) The exact solution (red) and the first term of the series solution (blue). The difference between the exact solution and the first three (*b*) and fifteen (*c*) terms of the series solution.

Nonhomogeneous Heat Conduction Problems. To show how eigenfunction expansions can be used to solve nonhomogeneous problems for partial differential equations, let us consider the generalized heat conduction equation

$$r(x)u_t = (p(x)u_x)_x - q(x)u + F(x,t) \tag{23}$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u_x(0,t) - h_1 u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(1,t) + h_2 u(1,t) = 0, \quad t > 0 \tag{24}$$

and the initial condition

$$u(x,0) = f(x), \quad 0 < x < 1. \tag{25}$$

This problem was previously discussed in Appendix A of Chapter 10 and in Section 11.1. In the latter section we let $u(x,t) = X(x)T(t)$ in the homogeneous equation obtained by setting $F(x,t) = 0$ and showed that $X(x)$ must be a solution of the boundary value problem

$$-(p(x)X')' + q(x)X = \lambda r(x)X, \tag{26}$$

$$X'(0) - h_1 X(0) = 0, \quad X'(1) + h_2 X(1) = 0. \tag{27}$$

If we assume that p, q, and r satisfy the proper continuity requirements and that $p(x)$ and $r(x)$ are always positive, the problem (26), (27) is a Sturm-Liouville problem as discussed in Section 11.2. Thus we obtain a sequence of eigenvalues $\lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \cdots < \lambda_n < \cdots$ and the corresponding normalized eigenfunctions $\phi_1(x), \phi_2(x), \ldots, \phi_n(x), \ldots$.

We will solve the given nonhomogeneous boundary value problem (23), (24), and (25) by assuming that $u(x, t)$ can be expressed as a series of eigenfunctions

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\phi_n(x) \tag{28}$$

and then showing how to determine the coefficients $b_n(t)$. The procedure is basically the same as that used in the nonhomogeneous Sturm-Liouville problem (1), (2) that we considered earlier, although it is more complicated in certain respects. For instance, the coefficients b_n must now depend on t, because otherwise u would be a function of x only. Note that the boundary conditions (24) are automatically satisfied by an expression of the form (28) because each $\phi_n(x)$ satisfies the boundary conditions (27).

Next we substitute from equation (28) for u in equation (23). From the first two terms on the right-hand side of equation (23), we formally obtain

$$\begin{aligned}(p(x)u_x)_x - q(x)u &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(p(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\phi_n'(x)\right) - q(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\phi_n(x)\\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\big((p(x)\phi_n'(x))' - q(x)\phi_n(x)\big).\end{aligned} \tag{29}$$

Since $(p(x)\phi_n'(x))' - q(x)\phi_n(x) = -\lambda_n r(x)\phi_n(x)$, we obtain finally

$$(p(x)u_x)_x - q(x)u = -r(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\lambda_n\phi_n(x). \tag{30}$$

Now consider the term on the left-hand side of equation (23). We have

$$r(x)u_t = r(x)\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\phi_n(x) = r(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n'(t)\phi_n(x). \tag{31}$$

We must also express the nonhomogeneous term in equation (23) as a series of eigenfunctions. Once again, it is convenient to look at the ratio $F(x,t)/r(x)$ and to write

$$\frac{F(x,t)}{r(x)} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \gamma_n(t)\phi_n(x), \tag{32}$$

where the coefficients are given by

$$\gamma_n(t) = \int_0^1 r(x)\frac{F(x,t)}{r(x)}\phi_n(x)\,dx = \int_0^1 F(x,t)\phi_n(x)\,dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{33}$$

Since $F(x,t)$ is given, we can consider the functions $\gamma_n(t)$ to be known.

Gathering all these results together, we substitute from equations (30), (31), and (32) in equation (23) and find that

$$r(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n'(t)\phi_n(x) = -r(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\lambda_n\phi_n(x) + r(x)\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\gamma_n(t)\phi_n(x). \tag{34}$$

To simplify equation (34), we cancel the common nonzero factor $r(x)$ from all terms and write everything in one summation:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}[b_n'(t) + \lambda_n b_n(t) - \gamma_n(t)]\phi_n(x) = 0. \tag{35}$$

Once again, if equation (35) is to hold for all x in $0 < x < 1$, it is necessary for the quantity in square brackets to be zero for each n (again, see Problem 14). Hence $b_n(t)$ is a solution of the first-order linear ordinary differential equation

$$b_n'(t) + \lambda_n b_n(t) = \gamma_n(t), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{36}$$

where $\gamma_n(t)$ is given by equation (33).

To determine $b_n(t)$ completely, we must have an initial condition

$$b_n(0) = B_n, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots \tag{37}$$

for equation (36). This we obtain from the initial condition (25). Setting $t = 0$ in equation (28) and using equation (25), we have

$$u(x, 0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(0)\phi_n(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n\phi_n(x) = f(x). \tag{38}$$

Thus, for each n, the initial value B_n is the coefficient of $\phi_n(x)$ in the (weighted) eigenfunction expansion for $f(x)$, that is,

$$B_n = \int_0^1 r(x)f(x)\phi_n(x)dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{39}$$

Note that everything on the right-hand side of equation (39) is known, so we can consider B_n as known.

The initial value problem (36), (37) is solved by the methods of Section 2.1. The integrating factor is $\mu(t) = \exp(\lambda_n t)$, and it follows that

$$b_n(t) = B_n e^{-\lambda_n t} + \int_0^t e^{-\lambda_n(t-s)}\gamma_n(s)ds, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{40}$$

The details of this calculation are left to the reader. Note that the first term on the right-hand side of equation (40) depends on the function f through the coefficients B_n, while the second depends on the nonhomogeneous term F through the coefficients $\gamma_n(s)$.

Thus an explicit solution of the boundary value problem (23), (24), and (25) is given by equation (28):

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\phi_n(x),$$

where the coefficients $b_n(t)$ are determined from equation (40). The quantities B_n and $\gamma_n(s)$ in equation (40) are found, in turn, from equations (39) and (33), respectively.

Summarizing, to use this method to solve a boundary value problem such as that given by equations (23), (24), and (25), we must

1. Find the eigenvalues λ_n and the normalized eigenfunctions ϕ_n of the homogeneous problem (26), (27).
2. Calculate the coefficients B_n and $\gamma_n(t)$ from equations (39) and (33), respectively.
3. Evaluate the integral in equation (40) to determine an explicit expression for $b_n(t)$.
4. Sum the infinite series (28).

Since any or all of these steps may be difficult, the entire process can be quite formidable. One redeeming feature is that, as was seen in Example 1, often the series (28) converges rapidly, in which case only very few terms may be needed to obtain an adequate approximation to the solution.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the heat conduction problem

$$u_t = u_{xx} + xe^{-t}, \qquad 0 < x < 1, \quad t > 0, \tag{41}$$

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u_x(1, t) + u(1, t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \tag{42}$$

$$u(x, 0) = 0, \qquad 0 < x < 1. \tag{43}$$

Solution:

Again, we use the eigenvalues λ_n and the normalized eigenfunctions ϕ_n of the problem (17) and assume that u is given by equation (28)

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\phi_n(x).$$

The coefficients b_n are determined from the differential equation

$$b_n' + \lambda_n b_n = \gamma_n(t), \tag{44}$$

where $\gamma_n(t)$ is the coefficient of the n^{th} term in the eigenfunction expansion of the nonhomogeneous term xe^{-t}. Thus we have

$$\gamma_n(t) = \int_0^1 xe^{-t}\phi_n(x)\,dx = e^{-t}\int_0^1 x\phi_n(x)\,dx = c_n e^{-t}, \tag{45}$$

where $c_n = \int_0^1 x\phi_n(x)\,dx$ is given by equation (21). The initial condition for equation (44) is

$$b_n(0) = 0 \tag{46}$$

since the initial temperature distribution (43) is zero everywhere. The solution of the initial value problem (44), (46) is

$$\begin{aligned} b_n(t) &= e^{-\lambda_n t}\int_0^t e^{\lambda_n s} c_n e^{-s}\,ds = c_n e^{-\lambda_n t}\frac{e^{(\lambda_n - 1)t} - 1}{\lambda_n - 1} \\ &= c_n \frac{e^{-t} - e^{-\lambda_n t}}{\lambda_n - 1}. \end{aligned} \tag{47}$$

Thus the solution of the heat conduction problem (41) to (43) is given by

$$u(x,t) = 4\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\left(\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)\left(e^{-t} - e^{-\lambda_n t}\right)\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right)}{\lambda_n(\lambda_n - 1)\left(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)}. \tag{48}$$

The solution given by equation (48) is exact but complicated. To judge whether a satisfactory approximation to the solution can be obtained by using only a few terms in this series, we must estimate its speed of convergence. First we split the right-hand side of equation (48) into two parts:

$$u(x,t) = 4e^{-t}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right)}{\lambda_n(\lambda_n - 1)\left(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)} - 4\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\lambda_n t}\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right)}{\lambda_n(\lambda_n - 1)\left(1 + \cos^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)}. \tag{49}$$

Recall from Example 1 in Section 11.1 that the eigenvalues λ_n are very nearly proportional to n^2. In the first series on the right-hand side of equation (49), the trigonometric factors are all bounded as $n \to \infty$; thus this series converges similarly to the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n^{-2}$ or $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{-4}$. Hence at most two or three terms are required for us to obtain an excellent approximation to this part of the solution. The second series contains the additional factor $e^{-\lambda_n t}$, so its convergence is even more rapid for $t > 0$; all terms after the first are almost surely negligible.

Further Discussion. Eigenfunction expansions can be used to solve a much greater variety of problems than the preceding discussion and examples may suggest. For example, time-independent nonhomogeneous boundary conditions can be handled much as in Section 10.6. To reduce the problem to one with homogeneous boundary conditions, subtract from u a function v that is chosen to satisfy the given boundary conditions. Then the difference $w = u - v$ satisfies a problem with homogeneous boundary conditions, but with a modified forcing term and initial condition. This problem can be solved by the procedure described in this section.

One potential difficulty in using eigenfunction expansions is that the normalized eigenfunctions of the corresponding homogeneous problem must be found. For a differential equation with variable coefficients, this may be difficult, if not impossible. In such a case it is sometimes possible to use other functions, such as eigenfunctions of a simpler problem, that satisfy the same boundary conditions. For instance, if the boundary conditions are

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(1, t) = 0, \tag{50}$$

then it may be convenient to replace the functions $\phi_n(x)$ in equation (28) by $\sin(n\pi x)$. These functions at least satisfy the correct boundary conditions, although, in general, they are not solutions of the corresponding homogeneous differential equation. Next we expand the nonhomogeneous term $F(x, t)$ in a series of the form (32), again with $\phi_n(x)$ replaced by $\sin(n\pi x)$, and then substitute for both u and F in equation (23). Upon collecting the coefficients of $\sin(n\pi x)$ for each n, we have an infinite set of first-order linear differential equations from which to determine $b_1(t), b_2(t), \ldots$. The essential difference between this case and the one considered earlier is that now the equations for the functions $b_n(t)$ are *coupled*. Thus they cannot be solved one by one, as before, but must be dealt with simultaneously. In practice, the infinite system is replaced by an approximating finite system, from which approximations to a finite number of coefficients are calculated.

Boundary value problems for equations of higher than second-order can also often be solved by eigenfunction expansions. In some cases the procedure parallels almost exactly that for second-order problems. However, a variety of complications can also arise.

Finally, we emphasize that the discussion in this section has been purely formal. Separate and sometimes elaborate arguments must be used to establish convergence of eigenfunction expansions or to justify some of the steps used, such as term-by-term differentiation of eigenfunction series.

There are also other, altogether different methods for solving nonhomogeneous boundary value problems. One of these leads to a solution expressed as a definite integral rather than as an infinite series. This approach involves certain functions known as Green's functions and, for ordinary differential equations, is the subject of Problems 28 through 36.

Problems

In each of Problems 1 through 5, solve the given problem by means of an eigenfunction expansion.

1. $y'' + 2y = -x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

2. $y'' + 2y = -x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$; see Section 11.2, Problem 7.

3. $y'' + 2y = -x, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$; see Section 11.2, Problem 3.

4. $y'' + 2y = -x, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) + y(1) = 0$; see Section 11.2, Problem 11.

5. $y'' + 2y = -1 + |1 - 2x|, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

In each of Problems 6 through 9, determine a formal eigenfunction series expansion for the solution of the given problem. Assume that f satisfies the conditions of Theorem 11.3.1. State the values of μ for which the solution exists.

6. $y'' + \mu y = -f(x), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$

7. $y'' + \mu y = -f(x), \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

8. $y'' + \mu y = -f(x), \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$

9. $y'' + \mu y = -f(x), \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) + y(1) = 0$

In each of Problems 10 through 13, determine whether there is any value of the constant a for which the problem has a solution. Find the solution for each such value.

10. $y'' + \pi^2 y = a + x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

11. $y'' + 4\pi^2 y = a + x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

12. $y'' + \pi^2 y = a, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$

13. $y'' + \pi^2 y = a - \cos(\pi x), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

14. Let $\phi_1, \phi_2, \ldots, \phi_n, \ldots$ be the normalized eigenfunctions of the differential equation (3) subject to the boundary conditions (2). If $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \phi_n(x)$ converges to $f(x)$, where $f(x) = 0$ for all values of x in $0 \le x \le 1$, show that $c_n = 0$ for each n.
Hint: Multiply by $r(x)\phi_m(x)$, integrate, and use the orthogonality property of the eigenfunctions.

15. Let L be a second-order linear differential operator. Show that the solution $y = \phi(x)$ of the problem

$$L[y] = f(x), \quad \alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = a, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = b$$

can be written as $y = u + v$, where $u = \phi_1(x)$ and $v = \phi_2(x)$ are solutions of the problems

$$L[u] = 0, \quad \alpha_1 u(0) + \alpha_2 u'(0) = a, \quad \beta_1 u(1) + \beta_2 u'(1) = b$$

and

$$L[v] = f(x), \quad \alpha_1 v(0) + \alpha_2 v'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 v(1) + \beta_2 v'(1) = 0,$$

respectively.

16. Show that the problem

$$y'' + \pi^2 y = \pi^2 x, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y(1) = 0$$

has the solution

$$y = c_1 \sin(\pi x) + \cos(\pi x) + x.$$

Also show that this solution cannot be obtained by splitting the problem as suggested in Problem 15, since neither of the two subsidiary problems can be solved in this case.

17. Consider the problem

$$y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = 0, \quad y(0) = a, \quad y(1) = b.$$

Let $y = u + v$, where v is any twice-differentiable function satisfying the boundary conditions (but not necessarily the differential equation). Show that u is a solution of the problem

$$u'' + p(x)u' + q(x)u = g(x), \quad u(0) = 0, \quad u(1) = 0,$$

where $g(x) = -(v'' + p(x)v' + q(x)v)$ and is known once v is chosen. Thus nonhomogeneities can be transferred from the boundary conditions to the differential equation. Find a function v for this problem.

18. Using the method of Problem 17, transform the problem

$$y'' + 2y = 2 - 4x, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y(1) + y'(1) = -2$$

into a new problem in which the boundary conditions are homogeneous. Solve the latter problem by reference to Example 1 of the text.

In each of Problems 19 through 22, use eigenfunction expansions to find for value problem. *Note*: Each differential equation must be satisfied $0 < x < 1, t > 0$; the pair of boundary conditions holds for $t > 0$; and the initial condition holds on $0 < x < 1$.

19. $u_t = u_{xx} - x, \quad u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(1,t) = 0,$ $u(x,0) = \sin(\pi x/2)$; see Problem 2.

20. $u_t = u_{xx} + e^{-t}, \quad u_x(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(1,t) + u(1,t) = 0,$ $u(x,0) = 1 - x$; see Section 11.2, Problems 10 and 12.

21. $u_t = u_{xx} + 1 - |1 - 2x|, \quad u(0,t) = 0, \quad u(1,t) = 0,$ $u(x,0) = 0$; see Problem 5.

22. $u_t = u_{xx} + e^{-t}(1 - x), \quad u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(1,t) = 0,$ $u(x,0) = 0$; see Section 11.2, Problems 6 and 7.

23. Consider the boundary value problem

$$\begin{aligned} r(x)u_t &= (p(x)u_x)_x - q(x)u + F(x), && 0 < x < 1, \quad t > 0, \\ u(0,t) &= T_1, \quad u(1,t) = T_2, && t > 0, \\ u(x,0) &= f(x), && 0 < x < 1. \end{aligned}$$

a. Let $v(x)$ be a solution of the problem

$$(p(x)v')' - q(x)v = -F(x), \quad v(0) = T_1, \quad v(1) = T_2.$$

If $w(x,t) = u(x,t) - v(x)$, find the boundary value problem satisfied by w. Note that this problem can be solved by the method of this section.

b. Generalize the procedure of part (a) to the case where u satisfies the boundary conditions

$$u_x(0,t) - h_1u(0,t) = T_1, \quad u_x(1,t) + h_2u(1,t) = T_2.$$

In each of Problems 24 and 25, use the method indicated in Problem 23 to solve the given boundary value problem.

24. $$\begin{aligned} &u_t = u_{xx} - 2, && 0 < x < 1, \quad t > 0, \\ &u(0,t) = 1, \quad u(1,t) = 0, && t > 0, \\ &u(x,0) = x^2 - 2x + 2, && 0 < x < 1. \end{aligned}$$

25. $$\begin{aligned} &u_t = u_{xx} - \pi^2\cos(\pi x), && 0 < x < 1, \quad t > 0, \\ &u_x(0,t) = 0, \quad u(1,t) = 1, && t > 0, \\ &u(x,0) = \cos(3\pi x/2) - \cos(\pi x), && 0 < x < 1. \end{aligned}$$

26. The method of eigenfunction expansions is often useful for nonhomogeneous problems related to the wave equation or its generalizations. Consider the problem

$$r(x)u_{tt} = (p(x)u_x)_x - q(x)u + F(x,t), \; 0 < x < 1, \; t > 0 \quad (51)$$

$$u_x(0,t) - h_1u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(1,t) + h_2u(1,t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \quad (52)$$

$$u(x,0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x,0) = g(x), \quad 0 < x < 1. \quad (53)$$

This problem can arise in connection with generalizations of the telegraph equation (Problem 16 in Section 11.1) or the longitudinal vibrations of an elastic bar (Problem 25 in Section 11.1).

a. Let $u(x,t) = X(x)T(t)$ in the homogeneous equation corresponding to equation (51), and show that $X(x)$ satisfies equations (26) and (27) of the text. Let λ_n and $\phi_n(x)$ denote the eigenvalues and normalized eigenfunctions of this problem.

b. Assume that $u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(t)\phi_n(x)$, and show that $b_n(t)$ must satisfy the initial value problem

$$b_n''(t) + \lambda_n b_n(t) = \gamma_n(t), \quad b_n(0) = \alpha_n, \quad b_n'(0) = \beta_n,$$

where α_n, β_n, and $\gamma_n(t)$ are the (weighted) coefficients of $f(x)$, $g(x)$, and $F(x,t)/r(x)$, respectively, in terms of the eigenfunctions $\phi_1(x), \ldots, \phi_n(x), \ldots$.

27. In this problem we explore a little further the analogy between Sturm-Liouville boundary value problems and Hermitian matrices. Let $\mathbf{A}$ be an $n \times n$ Hermitian matrix with eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n$ and corresponding orthonormal eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$. Consider the nonhomogeneous system of equations

$$\mathbf{Ax} - \mu\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}, \quad (54)$$

where μ is a given real number and $\mathbf{b}$ is a given vector. We will point out a way of solving equation (54) that is analogous to the method presented in the text for solving equations (1) and (2).

a. Show that $\mathbf{b} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} b_i\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}$, where $b_i = (\mathbf{b}, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)})$.

b. Assume that $\mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}$. Show that for equation (54) to be satisfied, it is necessary that $a_i = b_i/(\lambda_i - \mu)$. Thus

$$\mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{(\mathbf{b}, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)})}{\lambda_i - \mu}\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}, \quad (55)$$

provided that μ is not one of the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$, that is, $\mu \neq \lambda_i$ for $i = 1, \ldots, n$.

c. Compare this result with equation (13).

Green's[8] Functions. Consider the nonhomogeneous system of algebraic equations

$$\mathbf{Ax} - \mu\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}, \quad (56)$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is an $n \times n$ Hermitian matrix, μ is a given real number, and $\mathbf{b}$ is a given vector. Instead of using an eigenvector expansion as in Problem 27, we can solve equation (56) by computing the inverse matrix $(\mathbf{A} - \mu\mathbf{I})^{-1}$, which exists if μ is not an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$. Then

$$\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{A} - \mu\mathbf{I})^{-1}\mathbf{b}. \quad (57)$$

[8] Green's functions are named after George Green (1793–1841) of England. He was almost entirely self-taught in mathematics and made significant contributions to electricity and magnetism, fluid mechanics, and partial differential equations. His most important work was an essay on electricity and magnetism that was published privately in 1828. In this paper Green was the first to recognize the importance of potential functions. He introduced the functions now known as Green's functions as a means of solving boundary value problems and developed the integral transformation theorems, of which Green's theorem in the plane is a particular case. However, these results did not become widely known until Green's essay was republished in the 1850s through the efforts of William Thomson (Lord Kelvin).

Problems 28 through 36 indicate a way of solving nonhomogeneous boundary value problems that is analogous to using the inverse matrix for a system of linear algebraic equations. The Green's function plays a part similar to the inverse of the matrix of coefficients. This method leads to solutions expressed as definite integrals rather than as infinite series. Except in Problem 35, we will assume that $\mu = 0$ for simplicity.

28. **a.** Show by the method of variation of parameters that the general solution of the differential equation

$$-y'' = f(x)$$

can be written in the form

$$y = \phi(x) = c_1 + c_2 x - \int_0^x (x - s) f(s) ds,$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants.

b. Let $y = \phi(x)$ also be required to satisfy the boundary conditions $y(0) = 0$, $y(1) = 0$. Show that in this case

$$c_1 = 0, \quad c_2 = \int_0^1 (1 - s) f(s) ds.$$

c. Show that, under the conditions of parts a and b, $\phi(x)$ can be written in the form

$$\phi(x) = \int_0^x s(1 - x) f(s) ds + \int_x^1 x(1 - s) f(s) ds.$$

d. Defining

$$G(x, s) = \begin{cases} s(1 - x), & 0 \le s \le x, \\ x(1 - s), & x \le s \le 1, \end{cases}$$

show that the solution can be written as

$$\phi(x) = \int_0^1 G(x, s) f(s) ds.$$

The function $G(x, s)$ appearing under the integral sign is a **Green's function**. The usefulness of a Green's function solution rests on the fact that the Green's function is independent of the nonhomogeneous term in the differential equation. Thus, once the Green's function is determined, the solution of the boundary value problem for any nonhomogeneous term $f(x)$ is obtained by a single integration. Note further that no determination of arbitrary constants is required, since $\phi(x)$ as given by the Green's function integral formula automatically satisfies the boundary conditions.

29. By a procedure similar to that in Problem 28, show that the solution of the boundary value problem

$$-(y'' + y) = f(x), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$$

is

$$y = \phi(x) = \int_0^1 G(x, s) f(s) ds,$$

where

$$G(x, s) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin s \, \sin(1 - x)}{\sin 1}, & 0 \le s \le x, \\[2ex] \dfrac{\sin x \, \sin(1 - s)}{\sin 1}, & x \le s \le 1. \end{cases}$$

30. It is possible to show that the Sturm-Liouville problem

$$L[y] = -(p(x)y')' + q(x)y = f(x), \tag{58}$$

$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0 \tag{59}$$

has a Green's function solution

$$y = \phi(x) = \int_0^1 G(x, s) f(s) ds, \tag{60}$$

provided that $\lambda = 0$ is not an eigenvalue of $L[y] = \lambda y$ subject to the boundary conditions (59). Further, $G(x, s)$ is given by

$$G(x, s) = \begin{cases} -\dfrac{y_1(s) y_2(x)}{p(x) W[y_1, y_2](x)}, & 0 \le s \le x, \\[2ex] -\dfrac{y_1(x) y_2(s)}{p(x) W[y_1, y_2](x)}, & x \le s \le 1, \end{cases} \tag{61}$$

where y_1 is a solution of $L[y] = 0$ satisfying the boundary condition at $x = 0$, y_2 is a solution of $L[y] = 0$ satisfying the boundary condition at $x = 1$, and $W[y_1, y_2]$ is the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2.

a. Verify that the Green's function obtained in Problem 28 is given by formula (61).

b. Verify that the Green's function obtained in Problem 29 is given by formula (61).

c. Show that $p(x) W[y_1, y_2](x)$ is a constant by showing that its derivative is zero.

d. Using equation (61) and the result of part c, show that $G(x, s) = G(s, x)$.

e. Verify that $y = \phi(x)$ from equation (60) with $G(x, s)$ given by equation (61) satisfies the differential equation (58) and the boundary conditions (59).

In each of Problems 31 through 34, solve the given boundary value problem by determining the appropriate Green's function and expressing the solution as a definite integral. Use equations (58) to (61) of Problem 30.

31. $-y'' = f(x), \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

32. $-y'' = f(x), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) + y'(1) = 0$

33. $-(y'' + y) = f(x), \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

34. $-y'' = f(x), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0$

35. Consider the boundary value problem

$$L[y] = -(p(x)y')' + q(x)y = \mu r(x) y + f(x), \tag{62}$$

$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0. \tag{63}$$

In this section the solution $y = \phi(x)$ of the Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem (62), (63) is given by equation (13), where c_n is defined by equation (9), provided that μ is not an eigenvalue of the corresponding homogeneous problem. In this case it can also be shown that the solution is given by a Green's function integral of the form

$$y = \phi(x) = \int_0^1 G(x, s, \mu) f(s) ds. \tag{64}$$

Note that in this problem the Green's function also depends on the parameter μ.

a. Show that if these two expressions for $\phi(x)$ are to be equivalent, then

$$G(x, s, \mu) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{\phi_i(x) \phi_i(s)}{\lambda_i - \mu}, \tag{65}$$

where λ_i and ϕ_i are the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions, respectively, of equations (3), (2) of this section. Again, we see from equation (65) that μ cannot be equal to any eigenvalue λ_i.

b. Derive equation (65) directly by assuming that $G(x, s, \mu)$ has the eigenfunction expansion

$$G(x, s, \mu) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i(x, \mu)\phi_i(s). \tag{66}$$

Determine $a_i(x, \mu)$ by multiplying equation (66) by $r(s)\phi_j(s)$ and integrating with respect to s from $s = 0$ to $s = 1$.
Hint: Show first that λ_i and ϕ_i satisfy the equation

$$\phi_i(x) = (\lambda_i - \mu)\int_0^1 G(x, s, \mu)r(s)\phi_i(s)ds. \tag{67}$$

36. Consider the boundary value problem

$$-\frac{d^2y}{ds^2} = \delta(s - x), \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0,$$

where s is the independent variable, $s = x$ is a definite point in the interval $0 < s < 1$, and δ is the Dirac delta function (see Section 6.5). Show that the solution of this problem is the Green's function $G(x, s)$ obtained in Problem 28.

In solving the given problem, note that $\delta(s-x) = 0$ in the intervals $0 \le s < x$ and $x < s \le 1$. Note further that $-dy/ds$ experiences a jump of magnitude 1 as s passes through the value x.

This problem illustrates a general property, namely, that the Green's function $G(x, s)$ can be identified as the response at the point s to a unit impulse at the point x. A more general nonhomogeneous term f on $0 \le x \le 1$ can be regarded as a continuous distribution of impulses with magnitude $f(x)$ at the point x. The solution of a nonhomogeneous boundary value problem in terms of a Green's function integral can then be interpreted as the result of superposing the responses to the set of impulses represented by the nonhomogeneous term $f(x)$.

11.4 Singular Sturm-Liouville Problems

In the preceding sections of this chapter, we considered Sturm-Liouville boundary value problems: the differential equation

$$L[y] = -(p(x)y')' + q(x)y = \lambda r(x)y, \quad 0 < x < 1, \tag{1}$$

together with boundary conditions of the form

$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0. \tag{2}$$

Until now, we have always assumed that the problem is regular. That is, we have assumed that p is differentiable, that p', q, and r are continuous, and that $p(x) > 0$ and $r(x) > 0$ at all points in the *closed* interval $0 \le x \le 1$. However, there are also equations of physical interest in which some of these conditions are not satisfied.

For example, suppose that we wish to study Bessel's equation of order ν on the interval $0 < x < 1$. This equation is sometimes written in the form[9]

$$-(xy')' + \frac{\nu^2}{x}y = \lambda xy \tag{3}$$

so that $p(x) = x$, $q(x) = \nu^2/x$, and $r(x) = x$. Thus $p(0) = 0$, $r(0) = 0$, and $q(x)$ is unbounded and hence discontinuous as $x \to 0$. However, the conditions imposed on regular Sturm-Liouville problems are met elsewhere in the interval.

Similarly, for Legendre's equation we have

$$-\left(\left(1 - x^2\right)y'\right)' = \lambda y, \quad -1 < x < 1, \tag{4}$$

where $\lambda = \alpha(\alpha + 1)$, $p(x) = 1 - x^2$, $q(x) = 0$, and $r(x) = 1$. Here the required conditions on p, q, and r are satisfied in the interval $0 \le x \le 1$ except that $p(1) = 0$.

We use the term **singular Sturm-Liouville problem** to refer to a certain class of boundary value problems for the differential equation (1) in which the functions p, q, and r satisfy the conditions stated earlier on the open interval $0 < x < 1$, but at least one of these functions fails to satisfy them at one or both of the boundary points. We also prescribe suitable separated boundary conditions of a kind to be described in more detail later in this section. Singular problems also occur if the interval is unbounded, for example, $0 \le x < \infty$. We do not consider this latter kind of singular problem in this book.

[9]The substitution $t = \sqrt{\lambda}\,x$ reduces equation (3) to the standard form $t^2y'' + ty' + \left(t^2 - \nu^2\right)y = 0$.

As an example of a singular problem on a finite interval, consider the equation

$$xy'' + y' + \lambda xy = 0, \tag{5}$$

or

$$-(xy')' = \lambda xy, \tag{6}$$

on the interval $0 < x < 1$, and suppose that $\lambda > 0$. This equation arises in the study of free vibrations of a circular elastic membrane and is discussed further in Section 11.5. If we introduce the new independent variable t defined by $t = \sqrt{\lambda}\, x$, then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{\lambda}\,\frac{dy}{dt}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \lambda\,\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}.$$

Hence equation (5) becomes

$$\frac{t}{\sqrt{\lambda}}\,\lambda\,\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \sqrt{\lambda}\,\frac{dy}{dt} + \lambda\frac{t}{\sqrt{\lambda}}y = 0,$$

or, if we cancel the common factor $\sqrt{\lambda}$ in each term,

$$t\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \frac{dy}{dt} + ty = 0. \tag{7}$$

Equation (7) is Bessel's equation of order zero (see Section 5.7). The general solution of equation (7) for $t > 0$ is

$$y = c_1 J_0(t) + c_2 Y_0(t);$$

hence the general solution of equation (6) for $x > 0$ is

$$y = c_1 J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\, x\right) + c_2 Y_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\, x\right), \tag{8}$$

where J_0 and Y_0 denote the Bessel functions of the first and second kinds of order zero. From equations (6) and (12) of Section 5.7, we have

$$J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\, x\right) = 1 + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m \lambda^m x^{2m}}{2^{2m}(m!)^2}, \qquad x > 0, \tag{9}$$

$$Y_0(\sqrt{\lambda}\, x) = \frac{2}{\pi}\left(\left(\gamma + \ln\left(\frac{\sqrt{\lambda}\, x}{2}\right)\right) J_0(\sqrt{\lambda}\, x) + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{m+1} H_m \lambda^m x^{2m}}{2^{2m}(m!)^2}\right), \qquad x > 0, \tag{10}$$

where $H_m = 1 + 1/2 + \cdots + 1/m$ and $\gamma = \lim\limits_{m\to\infty}(H_m - \ln m)$. The graphs of $[y = J_0(x)]$ and $y = Y_0(x)$ are given in Figure 5.7.2.

Suppose that we seek a solution of equation (6) that also satisfies the boundary conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, \tag{11}$$

which are typical of those we have met in other problems in this chapter. Since $J_0(0) = 1$ and $Y_0(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to 0$, the condition $y(0) = 0$ can be satisfied only by choosing $c_1 = c_2 = 0$ in equation (8). Thus the boundary value problem (6), (11) has only the trivial solution.

One interpretation of this result is that the boundary condition $y(0) = 0$ is too restrictive for the differential equation (6). This illustrates the general situation, namely, that at a singular boundary point it is necessary to consider a modified type of boundary condition. In the present problem, suppose that we require only that the solution (8) and its derivative remain bounded. In other words, we take as the boundary condition at $x = 0$ the requirement

$$y \text{ and } y' \text{ remain bounded as } x \to 0^+. \tag{12}$$

This condition can be satisfied by choosing $c_2 = 0$ in equation (8), so as to eliminate the unbounded solution Y_0. The second boundary condition, $y(1) = 0$, then yields

$$J_0(\sqrt{\lambda}) = 0. \tag{13}$$

It is possible to show[10] that equation (13) has an infinite set of discrete positive roots, which yield the eigenvalues $0 < \lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \cdots < \lambda_n < \cdots$ of the given problem. The corresponding eigenfunctions

$$\phi_n(x) = J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right), \tag{14}$$

are determined only up to a multiplicative constant.

The boundary value problem with differential equation (6) and boundary conditions $y(1) = 0$ and (12) is an example of a singular Sturm-Liouville problem. This example illustrates that if the boundary conditions are relaxed in an appropriate way, then a singular Sturm-Liouville problem may have an infinite sequence of eigenvalues and eigenfunctions, just as a regular Sturm-Liouville problem does.

Because of their importance in applications, it is worthwhile to investigate singular boundary value problems a little further. There are two main questions that are of concern:

1. Precisely what type of boundary conditions can be allowed in a singular Sturm-Liouville problem?
2. To what extent do the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of a singular problem share the properties of eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of regular Sturm-Liouville problems? In particular, are the eigenvalues real, are the eigenfunctions orthogonal, and can a given function be expanded as a series of eigenfunctions?

Both of these questions can be answered by a study of the identity

$$\int_0^1 (L[u]v - uL[v])\,dx = 0, \tag{15}$$

which played an essential part in the development of the theory of regular Sturm-Liouville problems. We therefore investigate the conditions under which this relation holds for singular problems, where the integral in equation (15) may now have to be examined as an improper integral. To be definite, we consider the differential equation (1) and assume that $x = 0$ is a singular boundary point but that $x = 1$ is not. The boundary condition $\beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0$ is imposed at the nonsingular boundary point $x = 1$, but we leave unspecified, for the moment, the boundary condition at $x = 0$. Indeed, our principal objective is to determine what kinds of boundary conditions are allowable at a singular boundary point if equation (15) is to hold.

Since the boundary value problem under investigation is singular at $x = 0$, we choose a positive number ϵ and consider the integral $\int_\epsilon^1 L[u]v\,dx$, instead of $\int_0^1 L[u]v\,dx$, as in Section 11.2. Afterward we let ϵ approach zero. Assuming that u and v have at least two continuous derivatives on $\epsilon \le x \le 1$, and integrating twice by parts, we find that

$$\int_\epsilon^1 (L[u]v - uL[v])\,dx = -p(x)(u'(x)v(x) - u(x)v'(x))\Big|_\epsilon^1. \tag{16}$$

The boundary term at $x = 1$ is again eliminated if both u and v satisfy the second boundary condition in (2), and thus

$$\int_\epsilon^1 (L[u]v - uL[v])\,dx = p(\epsilon)(u'(\epsilon)v(\epsilon) - u(\epsilon)v'(\epsilon)). \tag{17}$$

Taking the limit as $\epsilon \to 0$ through positive values yields

$$\int_0^1 (L[u]v - uL[v])\,dx = \lim_{\epsilon\to 0^+} p(\epsilon)(u'(\epsilon)v(\epsilon) - u(\epsilon)v'(\epsilon)). \tag{18}$$

[10]The function J_0 is well tabulated; the roots of equation (13) can be found in tables such as those in Abramowitz and Stegun. You can also use a computer algebra system to compute them quickly. The first three roots of equation (13) are $\sqrt{\lambda} = 2.405$, 5.520, and 8.654, respectively, to four significant figures; $\sqrt{\lambda_n} \cong (n - 1/4)\pi$ for large n.

Hence equation (15) holds if and only if, in addition to the assumptions stated previously,

$$\lim_{\epsilon \to 0^+} p(\epsilon)(u'(\epsilon)v(\epsilon) - u(\epsilon)v'(\epsilon)) = 0 \tag{19}$$

for every pair of functions u and v in the class under consideration. When $x = 0$ is a singular boundary point for $L[y] = \lambda r(x)y$, equation (19) is the criterion that determines what boundary conditions are allowable at $x = 0$. A similar condition applies at $x = 1$ if that boundary point is singular, namely,

$$\lim_{\epsilon \to 1^-} p(\epsilon)(u'(\epsilon)v(\epsilon) - u(\epsilon)v'(\epsilon)) = 0. \tag{20}$$

In summary, as in Section 11.2, a singular boundary value problem for equation (1) is said to be **self-adjoint** if equation (15) is valid, possibly as an improper integral, for each pair of functions u and v with the following properties: they are twice continuously differentiable on the open interval $0 < x < 1$, they satisfy a boundary condition of the form (2) at each regular boundary point, and they satisfy a boundary condition sufficient to ensure equation (19) if $x = 0$ is a singular boundary point, or equation (20) if $x = 1$ is a singular boundary point. If at least one boundary point is singular, then the differential equation (1), together with two boundary conditions of the type just described, are said to form a **singular Sturm-Liouville problem**.

EXAMPLE 1

Show that the singular Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem consisting of the differential equation

$$xy'' + y' + \lambda xy = 0$$

with boundary conditions that both y and y' remain bounded as x approaches 0 from the right and that $\beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0$ is self-adjoint.

Solution:

From the differential equation, we see that $p(x) = x$. If both u and v and their first derivatives are bounded as $x \to 0^+$, it is clear that equation (19) will hold. Hence this singular boundary value problem, with any boundary condition of the form $\beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0$ at $x = 1$, is self-adjoint.

The most striking difference between regular and singular Sturm-Liouville problems is that in a singular problem the eigenvalues may not be discrete. That is, the problem may have nontrivial solutions for every value of λ, or for every value of λ in some interval. In such a case the problem is said to have a **continuous spectrum**. It may happen that a singular problem has a mixture of discrete eigenvalues and also a continuous spectrum. When a problem has a continuous spectrum, the corresponding sets of eigenfunctions are therefore not denumerable, and series expansions of the type described in Theorem 11.2.4 do not exist; the infinite sum is replaced by an appropriate integral representation.

Finally, it is possible that only a discrete set of eigenvalues exists, just as in the regular case discussed in Section 11.2. For example, this is true of the problem consisting of equations (6), $y(1) = 0$, and (12). In general, it may be difficult to determine which case actually occurs in a given problem.

A systematic discussion of singular Sturm-Liouville problems is quite sophisticated[11] indeed, requiring a substantial extension of the methods presented in this book. We restrict ourselves to some examples related to physical applications; in each of these examples it is known that there is an infinite set of discrete eigenvalues.

[11] See, for example, Chapter 5 of the book by Yosida listed in the References at the end of this chapter.

If a singular Sturm-Liouville problem does have only a discrete set of eigenvalues and eigenfunctions, then equation (15) can be used, just as in Section 11.2, to prove that the eigenvalues of such a problem are real and that the eigenfunctions are orthogonal with respect to the weight function r. The expansion of a given function in terms of a series of eigenfunctions then follows, as in Section 11.2.

Such expansions are useful, as in the regular case, for solving nonhomogeneous boundary value problems. The procedure is very similar to that described in Section 11.3. Some examples for ordinary differential equations are indicated in Problems 1 to 4, and some problems for partial differential equations appear in Section 11.5.

EXAMPLE 2

The singular Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem

$$-(xy')' = \lambda xy, \quad 0 < x < 1,$$

$$y \text{ and } y' \text{ bounded as } x \to 0, \quad y(1) = 0$$

has eigenfunctions $\phi_n(x) = J_0(\sqrt{\lambda_n}x)$.
(a) Show that the ϕ_n satisfy the orthogonality relation

$$\int_0^1 x\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)dx = 0, \quad m \neq n \tag{21}$$

with respect to the weight function $r(x) = x$.
(b) Given a function f with f and f' piecewise continuous on $0 \leq x \leq 1$, find the coefficients c_n such that

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right). \tag{22}$$

Solution:

(a) From the differential equation, we see that $p(x) = x$, $q(x) = 0$, and $r(x) = 0$. Thus the orthogonality of the eigenfunctions with weight $r(x) = x$ is a direct consequence of Theorem 11.2.2.
(b) While Theorem 11.2.4 applies only when the eigenfunctions are normalized, multiplying equation (22) by $xJ_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_m}\, x\right)$ and integrating term by term from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$, we obtain

$$\int_0^1 xf(x)J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_m}\, x\right)dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \int_0^1 xJ_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_m}\, x\right)J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right)dx. \tag{23}$$

Because of the orthogonality condition (21), the right-hand side of equation (23) collapses to a single term; hence

$$c_m = \frac{\displaystyle\int_0^1 xf(x)J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_m}\, x\right)dx}{\displaystyle\int_0^1 xJ_0^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_m}\, x\right)dx}, \tag{24}$$

which determines the coefficients in the series (22).

The convergence of the series (22) is established by an extension of Theorem 11.2.4 to cover this case. This theorem can also be shown to hold for other sets of Bessel functions, which are solutions of appropriate boundary value problems; for Legendre polynomials; and for solutions of a number of other singular Sturm-Liouville problems of considerable interest.

It must be emphasized that the singular problems mentioned here are not necessarily typical. In general, singular boundary value problems are characterized by continuous spectra, rather than by discrete sets of eigenvalues.

Problems

1. Find a formal solution of the nonhomogeneous boundary value problem

$$-(xy')' = \mu xy + f(x),$$

$$y \text{ and } y' \text{ bounded as } x \to 0^+, \quad y(1) = 0,$$

where f is a given continuous function on $0 \le x \le 1$, and μ is not an eigenvalue of the corresponding homogeneous problem.
Hint: Use a series expansion similar to those in Section 11.3.

2. Consider the boundary value problem

$$-(xy')' = \lambda xy,$$

$$y \text{ and } y' \text{ bounded as } x \to 0^+, \quad y'(1) = 0.$$

a. Show that $\lambda_0 = 0$ is an eigenvalue of this problem corresponding to the eigenfunction $\phi_0(x) = 1$. If $\lambda > 0$, show formally that the eigenfunctions are given by the Bessel functions $\phi_n(x) = J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right)$, where $\sqrt{\lambda_n}$ is the n^{th} positive root (in increasing order) of the equation $J_0'\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) = 0$. It is possible to show that there is an infinite sequence of such roots.
G **b.** Create a graph supporting the claim that $J_0'\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) = 0$ has an infinite sequence of positive roots.
c. Show that if $m,\ n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, then

$$\int_0^1 x\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx = 0, \quad m \ne n.$$

d. Find a formal solution to the nonhomogeneous problem

$$-(xy')' = \mu xy + f(x),$$

$$y \text{ and } y' \text{ bounded as } x \to 0^+, \quad y'(1) = 0,$$

where f is a given continuous function on $0 \le x \le 1$, and μ is not an eigenvalue of the corresponding homogeneous problem.

3. Consider the problem

$$-(xy')' + \frac{k^2}{x}y = \lambda xy,$$
$$y \text{ and } y' \text{ bounded as } x \to 0^+, \quad y(1) = 0,$$

where k is a positive integer.
a. Using the substitution $t = \sqrt{\lambda}\, x$, show that the given differential equation reduces to Bessel's equation of order k (see Problem 9 of Section 5.7). One solution is $J_k(t)$; a second linearly independent solution, denoted by $Y_k(t)$, is unbounded as $t \to 0$.
b. Show formally that the eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots$ of the given problem are the squares of the positive zeros of $J_k\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right)$ and that the corresponding eigenfunctions are $\phi_n(x) = J_k\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\, x\right)$. It is possible to show that there is an infinite sequence of such zeros.
c. Show that the eigenfunctions $\phi_n(x)$ satisfy the orthogonality relation

$$\int_0^1 x\phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx = 0, \quad m \ne n.$$

d. Determine the coefficients in the formal series expansion

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n\phi_n(x).$$

e. Find a formal solution of the nonhomogeneous problem

$$-(xy')' + \frac{k^2}{x}y = \mu xy + f(x),$$
$$y \text{ and } y' \text{ bounded as } x \to 0^+, \quad y(1) = 0,$$

where f is a given continuous function on $0 \le x \le 1$, and μ is not an eigenvalue of the corresponding homogeneous problem.

4. Consider Legendre's equation (see Problems 22 through 24 of Section 5.3)

$$-\left(\left(1 - x^2\right)y'\right)' = \lambda y$$

subject to the boundary conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \quad y \text{ and } y' \text{ remain bounded as } x \to 1^-.$$

The eigenvalues for this problem are $\lambda_1 = 2,\ \lambda_2 = 4 \cdot 3,\ \ldots,\ \lambda_n = 2n(2n - 1),\ \ldots$ and the eigenfunctions are the corresponding odd Legendre polynomials

$$\phi_1(x) = P_1(x) = x,\ \ \phi_2(x) = P_3(x) = \left(5x^3 - 3x\right)/2,$$
$$\ldots,\ \ \phi_n(x) = P_{2n-1}(x),\ \ \ldots$$

a. Show that

$$\int_0^1 \phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx = 0, \quad m \ne n.$$

b. Find a formal solution of the nonhomogeneous problem

$$-\left(\left(1 - x^2\right)y'\right)' = \mu y + f(x),$$
$$y(0) = 0, \quad y \text{ and } y' \text{ bounded as } x \to 1^-,$$

where f is a given continuous function on $0 \le x \le 1$, and μ is not an eigenvalue of the corresponding homogeneous problem.

5. The equation

$$(1 - x^2)y'' - xy' + \lambda y = 0 \tag{25}$$

is Chebyshev's equation; see Problem 10 of Section 5.3.
a. Show that equation (25) can be written in the form

$$-\left(\left(1 - x^2\right)^{1/2}y'\right)' = \lambda\left(1 - x^2\right)^{-1/2}y, \quad -1 < x < 1. \tag{26}$$

b. Consider the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &y \text{ and } y' \text{ remain bounded as } x \to -1^+, \\ &y \text{ and } y' \text{ remain bounded as } x \to 1^-. \end{aligned} \tag{27}$$

Show that the boundary value problem (26), (27) is self-adjoint.
c. It can be shown that the singular Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem (26), (27) has eigenvalues $\lambda_0 = 0,\ \lambda_1 = 1,\ \lambda_2 = 4,\ \ldots,\ \lambda_n = n^2,\ \ldots$. The corresponding eigenfunctions are the Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x)$: $T_0(x) = 1$, $T_1(x) = x$, $T_2(x) = 1 - 2x^2,\ \ldots$. Show that

$$\int_{-1}^1 \frac{T_m(x)T_n(x)}{\left(1 - x^2\right)^{1/2}}\,dx = 0, \quad m \ne n. \tag{28}$$

Note that this is a convergent improper integral.

11.5 Further Remarks on the Method of Separation of Variables: A Bessel Series Expansion

In this chapter we are interested in extending the method of separation of variables developed in Chapter 10 to a larger class of problems—to problems involving more general partial differential equations, more general boundary conditions, or different geometrical regions. We indicated in Section 11.3 how to deal with a class of more general differential equations or boundary conditions. Here we concentrate on problems posed in various geometrical regions, with emphasis on those leading to singular Sturm-Liouville problems when the variables are separated.

Because of its relative simplicity, as well as the considerable physical significance of many problems to which it is applicable, the method of separation of variables merits its important place in the theory and application of partial differential equations. However, this method does have certain limitations that should not be forgotten. In the first place, the problem must be linear so that the principle of superposition can be invoked to construct additional solutions by forming linear combinations of the fundamental solutions of an appropriate homogeneous problem.

As a practical matter, we must also be able to solve the ordinary differential equations, obtained after separating the variables, in a reasonably convenient manner. In some problems to which the method of separation of variables can be applied in principle, it is of very limited practical value due to a lack of information about the solutions of the ordinary differential equations that appear.

Furthermore, the geometry of the region involved in the problem is subject to rather severe restrictions. On the one hand, a coordinate system must be employed in which the variables can be separated, and the partial differential equation replaced by a set of ordinary differential equations. For Laplace's equation there are about a dozen such coordinate systems; only rectangular, polar, circular cylindrical, and spherical coordinates are likely to be familiar to most readers of this book. On the other hand, the boundary of the region of interest must consist of coordinate curves or surfaces—that is, curves or surfaces on which one variable remains constant. Thus, at an elementary level, we are limited to regions bounded by straight lines or circular arcs in two dimensions, or by planes, circular cylinders, circular cones, or spheres in three dimensions.

In three-dimensional problems, applying the method of separation of variables to Laplace's operator $u_{xx} + u_{yy} + u_{zz}$ leads to the equation $X'' + \lambda X = 0$ in rectangular coordinates, to Bessel's equation in cylindrical coordinates, and to Legendre's equation in spherical coordinates. It is this fact that is largely responsible for the intensive study that has been made of these equations and the functions defined by them. It is also noteworthy that two of the three most important situations lead to singular, rather than regular, Sturm-Liouville problems. Thus singular problems are by no means exceptional and may be of even greater interest than regular problems. The remainder of this section is devoted to an example involving an expansion of a given function as a series of Bessel functions.

The Vibrations of a Circular Elastic Membrane. In Section 10.7 (see equation (7)) we noted that the transverse vibrations of a thin elastic membrane are governed by the two-dimensional wave equation

$$a^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) = u_{tt}. \tag{1}$$

To study the motion of a circular membrane, it is convenient to write equation (1) in polar coordinates:

$$a^2\left(u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta}\right) = u_{tt}. \tag{2}$$

We will assume that the membrane has unit radius, that it is fixed securely around its circumference, and that initially it occupies a displaced position independent of the angular variable θ, from which it is released at time $t = 0$. Because of the circular symmetry of the initial and boundary conditions, it is natural to assume also that u is independent of θ; hence u is a function of r and t only. In this event the differential equation (2) becomes

$$a^2\left(u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r\right) = u_{tt}, \qquad 0 < r < 1, \quad t > 0. \tag{3}$$

The boundary condition at $r = 1$ is

$$u(1,t) = 0, \qquad t \geq 0, \tag{4}$$

and the initial conditions are

$$u(r,0) = f(r), \quad u_t(r,0) = 0, \quad 0 \leq r \leq 1, \tag{5}$$

where $f(r)$ describes the initial configuration of the membrane. For consistency we also require that $f(1) = 0$. Finally, we state explicitly the requirement that $u(r,t)$ must be bounded for $0 \leq r \leq 1$.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the solution of the two-dimensional wave equation (3) in the unit circle with boundary condition (4) and initial conditions (5).

Solution:

Assuming that $u(r,t) = R(r)T(t)$, and substituting for $u(r,t)$ in equation (3), we obtain

$$\frac{R'' + (1/r)R'}{R} = \frac{1}{a^2}\frac{T''}{T} = -\lambda^2. \tag{6}$$

We have anticipated that the separation constant must be negative by writing it as $-\lambda^2$ with $\lambda > 0$.[12] Then equation (6) yields the following two ordinary differential equations:

$$r^2R'' + rR' + \lambda^2r^2R = 0, \tag{7}$$

$$T'' + \lambda^2a^2T = 0. \tag{8}$$

Thus, from equation (8),

$$T(t) = k_1\sin(\lambda at) + k_2\cos(\lambda at). \tag{9}$$

Introducing the new independent variable $\xi = \lambda r$ into equation (7), we obtain

$$\xi^2\frac{d^2R}{d\xi^2} + \xi\frac{dR}{d\xi} + \xi^2R = 0, \tag{10}$$

which is Bessel's equation of order zero. Thus

$$R\left(\frac{\xi}{\lambda}\right) = c_1J_0(\xi) + c_2Y_0(\xi), \tag{11}$$

where J_0 and Y_0 are Bessel functions of the first and second kinds, respectively, of order zero (see Section 11.4). In terms of r, we have

$$R(r) = c_1J_0(\lambda r) + c_2Y_0(\lambda r). \tag{12}$$

The boundedness condition on $u(r,t)$ requires that R remain bounded as $r \to 0^+$. Since $Y_0(\lambda r) \to -\infty$ as $r \to 0^+$, we must choose $c_2 = 0$. The boundary condition (4) then requires that

$$J_0(\lambda) = 0. \tag{13}$$

[12] By denoting the separation constant by $-\lambda^2$, rather than simply by $-\lambda$, we avoid the appearance of numerous radical signs in the following discussion.

Consequently, the allowable values of the separation constant are obtained from the roots of the transcendental equation (13). Recall from Section 11.4 that $J_0(\lambda)$ has an infinite set of discrete positive zeros, which we denote by $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots, \lambda_n, \ldots$, ordered in increasing magnitude. Further, the functions $J_0(\lambda_n r)$ are the eigenfunctions of a singular Sturm-Liouville problem and can be used as the basis of a series expansion for the given function f. The fundamental solutions of this problem, which satisfy the partial differential equation (3), the boundary condition (4), and the boundedness condition, are

$$u_n(r,t) = J_0(\lambda_n r)\,\sin(\lambda_n at), \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{14}$$

$$v_n(r,t) = J_0(\lambda_n r)\,\cos(\lambda_n at), \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{15}$$

Next we assume that $u(r,t)$ can be expressed as an infinite linear combination of the fundamental solutions (14), (15):

$$\begin{aligned} u(r,t) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(k_n u_n(r,t) + c_n v_n(r,t)) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(k_n J_0(\lambda_n r)\,\sin(\lambda_n at) + c_n J_0(\lambda_n r)\,\cos(\lambda_n at)). \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

The initial conditions require that

$$u(r,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n J_0(\lambda_n r) = f(r), \tag{17}$$

$$u_t(r,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n a k_n J_0(\lambda_n r) = 0. \tag{18}$$

From equation (24) of Section 11.4, we obtain

$$k_n = 0, \qquad c_n = \frac{\displaystyle\int_0^1 rf(r)J_0(\lambda_n r)\,dr}{\displaystyle\int_0^1 r(J_0(\lambda_n r))^2\,dr}, \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{19}$$

Thus the solution of the partial differential equation (3) satisfying the boundary condition (4) and the initial conditions (5) is given by

$$u(r,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n J_0(\lambda_n r)\,\cos(\lambda_n at) \tag{20}$$

with the coefficients c_n defined by equation (19).

Problems

1. Consider Laplace's equation $u_{xx} + u_{yy} = 0$ in the parallelogram whose vertices are $(0,0)$, $(2,0)$, $(3,2)$, and $(1,2)$. Suppose that the boundary condition $u(x,2) = f(x)$ is imposed on the side $y = 2$ for $1 \le x \le 3$, and that on the other three sides $u = 0$ (see Figure 11.5.1).

a. Show that there are no nontrivial solutions of the partial differential equation of the form $u(x,y) = X(x)Y(y)$ that also satisfy the homogeneous boundary conditions.

b. Let $\xi = x - \frac{1}{2}y$, $\eta = y$. Show that the given parallelogram in the xy-plane transforms into the square $0 \le \xi \le 2$, $0 \le \eta \le 2$ in the $\xi\eta$-plane. Show that the differential equation transforms into

$$\frac{5}{4}u_{\xi\xi} - u_{\xi\eta} + u_{\eta\eta} = 0. \tag{21}$$

How are the boundary conditions transformed?

c. Show that in the $\xi\eta$-plane, the differential equation (21) possesses no solution of the form

$$u(\xi,\eta) = U(\xi)V(\eta).$$

Thus in the xy-plane, the shape of the boundary precludes a solution by the method of the separation of variables, while in the $\xi\eta$-plane, the region is acceptable but the variables in the differential equation can no longer be separated.

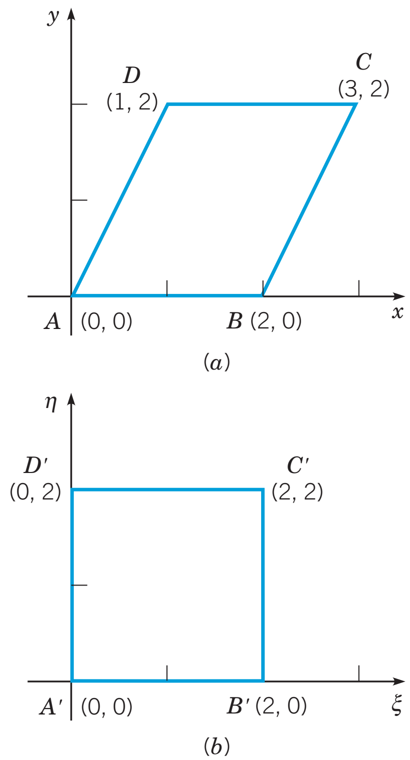


FIGURE 11.5.1 The regions in Problem 1.

2. Find the displacement $u(r,t)$ in a vibrating circular elastic membrane of radius 1 that satisfies the boundary condition

$$u(1,t) = 0, \quad t \geq 0,$$

and the initial conditions

$$u(r,0) = 0, \quad u_t(r,0) = g(r), \quad 0 \leq r \leq 1,$$

where $g(1) = 0$. *Hint:* The differential equation to be satisfied is equation (3) of this section.

3. Find the displacement $u(r,t)$ in a vibrating circular elastic membrane of radius 1 that satisfies the boundary condition

$$u(1,t) = 0, \quad t \geq 0,$$

and the initial conditions

$$u(r,0) = f(r), \quad u_t(r,0) = g(r), \quad 0 \leq r \leq 1,$$

where $f(1) = g(1) = 0$.

4. The wave equation in polar coordinates is

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} = \frac{1}{a^2}u_{tt}.$$

Show that if $u(r,\theta,t) = R(r)\Theta(\theta)T(t)$, then R, Θ, and T satisfy the ordinary differential equations

$$\begin{aligned} r^2R'' + rR' + (\lambda^2r^2 - n^2)R &= 0, \\ \Theta'' + n^2\Theta &= 0, \\ T'' + \lambda^2a^2T &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

5. In the circular cylindrical coordinates r, θ, z defined by

$$x = r\cos\theta, \quad y = r\sin\theta, \quad z = z,$$

Laplace's equation is (see Problem 16 in Section 10.8)

$$u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r + \frac{1}{r^2}u_{\theta\theta} + u_{zz} = 0.$$

a. Show that if $u(r,\theta,z) = R(r)\Theta(\theta)Z(z)$, then R, Θ, and Z satisfy the ordinary differential equations

$$\begin{aligned} r^2R'' + rR' + (\lambda^2r^2 - n^2)R &= 0, \\ \Theta'' + n^2\Theta &= 0, \\ Z'' - \lambda^2Z &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

b. Show that if $u(r,\theta,z)$ is independent of θ, then the first equation in part a becomes

$$r^2R'' + rR' + \lambda^2r^2R = 0,$$

the second is omitted altogether, and the third is unchanged.

6. Find the steady-state temperature distribution in a semi-infinite rod $0 < z < \infty$, $0 \leq r < 1$, if the temperature is independent of θ and approaches zero as $z \to \infty$. Assume that the temperature $u(r,z)$ satisfies the boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} u(1,z) &= 0, \qquad z > 0, \\ u(r,0) &= f(r), \quad 0 \leq r \leq 1. \end{aligned}$$

Hint: Refer to Problem 5.

7. The equation

$$v_{xx} + v_{yy} + k^2v = 0$$

is a generalization of Laplace's equation and is sometimes called the **Helmholtz[13] equation**.

a. In polar coordinates the Helmholtz equation is

$$v_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}v_r + \frac{1}{r^2}v_{\theta\theta} + k^2v = 0.$$

If $v(r,\theta) = R(r)\Theta(\theta)$, show that R and Θ satisfy the ordinary differential equations

$$r^2R'' + rR' + (k^2r^2 - \lambda^2)R = 0, \quad \Theta'' + \lambda^2\Theta = 0.$$

b. Consider the Helmholtz equation in the disk $r < c$. Find the solution that remains bounded at all points in the disk, that is periodic in θ with period 2π, and that satisfies the boundary condition $v(c,\theta) = f(\theta)$, where f is a given function on $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$. *Hint:* The equation for R is a Bessel equation. See Problem 3 of Section 11.4.

8. Consider the flow of heat in a cylinder $0 < r < 1$, $0 < \theta < 2\pi$, $-\infty < z < \infty$ of radius 1 and of infinite length. Let the surface of the cylinder be held at temperature zero, and let the initial temperature distribution be a function of the radial variable r only. Then the temperature u is a function of r and t only and satisfies the heat conduction equation

$$\alpha^2\left(u_{rr} + \frac{1}{r}u_r\right) = u_t, \quad 0 < r < 1, \quad t > 0,$$

and the following initial and boundary conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} u(r,0) &= f(r), \quad 0 \leq r \leq 1, \\ u(1,t) &= 0, \qquad t > 0. \end{aligned}$$

[13]The German scientist Hermann von Helmholtz (1821–1894) was trained in medicine and physiology; early in his career he made important contributions to physiological optics and acoustics, including the invention of the ophthalmoscope in 1851. Later his interests turned to physics, especially fluid mechanics and electrodynamics. During his lifetime, he held chairs in physiology or physics at several German universities.

Show that

$$u(r,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n J_0(\lambda_n r) e^{-\alpha^2 \lambda_n^2 t},$$

where $J_0(\lambda_n) = 0$. Find a formula for c_n.

9. In the spherical coordinates ρ, θ, ϕ ($\rho > 0, 0 < \theta < 2\pi$, $0 < \phi < \pi$) defined by the equations

$$x = \rho \cos\theta \sin\phi, \quad y = \rho \sin\theta \sin\phi, \quad z = \rho \cos\phi,$$

Laplace's equation is (see Problem 17 in Section 10.8)

$$\rho^2 u_{\rho\rho} + 2\rho u_\rho + (\csc^2\phi) u_{\theta\theta} + u_{\phi\phi} + (\cot\phi) u_\phi = 0.$$

a. Show that if $u(\rho,\theta,\phi) = P(\rho)\Theta(\theta)\Phi(\phi)$, then P, Θ, and Φ satisfy ordinary differential equations of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \rho^2 P'' + 2\rho P' - \mu^2 P &= 0, && \rho > 0, \\ \Theta'' + \lambda^2 \Theta &= 0, && 0 < \theta < 2\pi, \\ (\sin^2\phi)\Phi'' + (\sin\phi\cos\phi)\Phi' & \\ + (\mu^2 \sin^2\phi - \lambda^2)\Phi &= 0, && 0 < \phi < \pi. \end{aligned}$$

The differential equation for P is of the Euler type, while the one for Φ is related to Legendre's equation.

b. Show that if $u(\rho,\theta,\phi)$ is independent of θ, then the first equation in part (a) is unchanged, the second is omitted, and the third becomes

$$(\sin^2\phi)\Phi'' + (\sin\phi\cos\phi)\Phi' + (\mu^2 \sin^2\phi)\Phi = 0.$$

c. Define a new independent variable $s = \cos\phi$. Then show that the equation for Φ in part b becomes

$$(1-s^2)\frac{d^2\Phi}{ds^2} - 2s\frac{d\Phi}{ds} + \mu^2\Phi = 0, \quad -1 \le s \le 1.$$

Note that this is Legendre's equation.

10. Find the steady-state temperature $u(\rho,\phi)$ in a sphere of unit radius if the temperature is independent of θ and satisfies the boundary condition

$$u(1,\phi) = f(\phi), \quad 0 \le \phi \le \pi.$$

Hint: Refer to Problem 9 and to Problems 22 through 29 of Section 5.3. Use the fact that the only solutions of Legendre's equation that are finite at both ± 1 are the Legendre polynomials.

11.6 Series of Orthogonal Functions: Mean Convergence

In Section 11.2 we stated that under certain restrictions, a given function f can be expanded in a series of eigenfunctions of a Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem, the series converging to $\frac{1}{2}((x^+) + f(x^-))$ at each point in the open interval. Under somewhat more restrictive conditions, the series converges to $f(x)$ at each point in the closed interval. This type of convergence is referred to as **pointwise convergence**. In this section we describe a different kind of convergence that is especially useful for series of orthogonal functions, such as eigenfunctions.

Suppose that we are given the set of functions $\phi_1, \phi_2, \ldots, \phi_n$, that are continuous on the interval $0 \le x \le 1$ and satisfy the orthonormality condition

$$\int_0^1 r(x)\phi_i(x)\phi_j(x)\,dx = \delta_{ij} \tag{1}$$

where r is a nonnegative weight function and δ_{ij} is the Kronecker delta. Suppose also that we wish to approximate a given function f, defined on $0 \le x \le 1$, by a linear combination of $\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n$. That is, if

$$S_n(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \phi_i(x), \tag{2}$$

we wish to choose the coefficients $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ so that the function S_n will best approximate f on $0 \le x \le 1$. The first problem that we must face in doing this is to state precisely what we mean by "best approximate f on $0 \le x \le 1$." There are several reasonable meanings that can be attached to this phrase.

1. We can choose n points $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ in the interval $0 \le x \le 1$ and require that $S_n(x)$ have the same value as $f(x)$ at each of these points. The coefficients $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ are found by solving the set of linear algebraic equations

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \phi_i(x_j) = f(x_j), \quad j = 1, \ldots, n. \tag{3}$$

This procedure is known as the **method of collocation**. It has the advantage that it is very easy to write down equations (3); we need only to evaluate the functions involved at the points $x_1, \ldots, x_n$. If these points are well chosen, and if n is fairly large, then presumably $S_n(x)$ not only will be equal to $f(x)$ at the chosen points but also will be reasonably close to it at other points as well. Collocation also has several deficiencies. One is that if one more base function ϕ_{n+1} is added, then one more point x_{n+1} is required, and *all* the coefficients must be recomputed. Thus it is inconvenient to improve the accuracy of a collocation approximation by including additional terms. Further, the coefficients a_i depend on the location of the points $x_1, \ldots, x_n$, and it is not obvious how best to select these points.

2. Alternatively, we can consider the difference $|f(x) - S_n(x)|$ and try to make it as small as possible. The trouble here is that $|f(x) - S_n(x)|$ is a function of x as well as of the coefficients $a_1, \ldots, a_n$, and it is not clear how to calculate a_i. The choice of a_i that makes $|f(x) - S_n(x)|$ small at one point may make it large at another. One way to proceed is to consider instead the least upper bound[14] of $|f(x) - S_n(x)|$ for x in $0 \le x \le 1$, and then to choose $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ so as to make this quantity as small as possible. That is, if

$$E_n(a_1, \ldots, a_n) = \operatorname*{lub}_{0 \le x \le 1} \left| f(x) - S_n(x) \right|, \tag{4}$$

then choose $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ so as to minimize E_n. This approach is intuitively appealing and is often used in theoretical calculations. In practice, however, it is usually very hard, if not impossible, to write down an explicit formula for $E_n(a_1, \ldots, a_n)$. Further, this procedure shares one of the disadvantages of collocation: upon adding an additional term to $S_n(x)$, we must recompute all the preceding coefficients. Thus it is not often useful in practical problems.

3. Another way to proceed is to consider

$$I_n(a_1, \ldots, a_n) = \int_0^1 r(x)|f(x) - S_n(x)|dx. \tag{5}$$

If $r(x) = 1$, then I_n is the area between the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = S_n(x)$ (see Figure 11.6.1). We can then determine the coefficients a_i so as to minimize I_n. To avoid the complications resulting from calculations with absolute values, it is more convenient to consider instead

$$R_n(a_1, \ldots, a_n) = \int_0^1 r(x)(f(x) - S_n(x))^2 dx \tag{6}$$

as our measure of the quality of approximation of the linear combination $S_n(x)$ to $f(x)$. Although R_n is clearly similar in some ways to I_n, it lacks the simple geometric interpretation of the latter. Nevertheless, it is much easier mathematically to deal with R_n than with I_n. The quantity R_n is called the **mean square error** of the approximation S_n to f. If $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ are chosen so as to minimize R_n, then S_n is said to approximate f in the **mean square sense**.

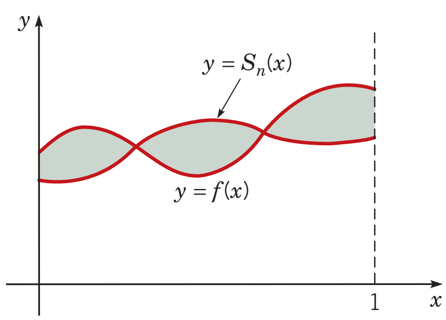


FIGURE 11.6.1 $I - n$ is the area between the graphs of $y = f(x)$ (blue) and $y = S_n(x)$ (red).

[14] The **least upper bound (lub)** is an upper bound that is smaller than any other upper bound. The lub of a bounded function always exists and is equal to the function's maximum if it has one.

To choose $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ so as to minimize R_n, we must satisfy the necessary conditions

$$\frac{\partial R_n}{\partial a_i} = 0, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n. \tag{7}$$

Writing out equation (7) and noting that $\partial S_n(x; a_1, \ldots, a_n)/\partial a_i$ is equal to $\phi_i(x)$, we obtain

$$-\frac{\partial R_n}{\partial a_i} = 2\int_0^1 r(x)[f(x) - S_n(x)]\phi_i(x)\,dx = 0. \tag{8}$$

Substituting for $S_n(x)$ from equation (2) and making use of the orthogonality relation (1), we find that

$$a_i = \int_0^1 r(x)f(x)\phi_i(x)\,dx, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n. \tag{9}$$

The coefficients defined by equation (9) are called the **Fourier coefficients of f with respect to the orthonormal set $\phi_1, \phi_2, \ldots, \phi_n$ and the weight function** r. Since the conditions (7) are only necessary and not sufficient for R_n to be a minimum, a separate argument is required to show that R_n is actually minimized if the a_i are chosen by equation (9). This argument is outlined in Problem 5.

Note that the coefficients (9) are the same as those in the eigenfunction series whose convergence, under certain conditions, was stated in Theorem 11.2.4. Thus $S_n(x)$ is the nth partial sum in this series and constitutes the best mean square approximation to $f(x)$ that is possible with the functions $\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n$. We will assume hereafter that the coefficients a_i in $S_n(x)$ are given by equation (9).

Equation (9) is noteworthy in two other important respects. In the first place, it gives a formula for each a_i *separately*, rather than a set of linear algebraic equations for $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ as in the method of collocation, for example. This is due to the orthogonality of the base functions $\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n$. Further, the formula for a_i is *independent* of n, the number of terms in $S_n(x)$. The practical significance of this is as follows. Suppose that, to obtain a better approximation to f, we desire to use an approximation with more terms—say, k terms, where $k > n$. It is then unnecessary to recompute the first n coefficients in $S_k(x)$. All that is required is to compute, from equation (9), the coefficients $a_{n+1}, \ldots, a_k$ arising from the additional base functions $\phi_{n+1}, \ldots, \phi_k$. Of course, if f, r, and the ϕ_n are complicated functions, it may be necessary to evaluate the integrals numerically.

Now let us suppose that there is an infinite sequence of functions $\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n, \ldots$, that are continuous and orthonormal on the interval $0 \le x \le 1$. Suppose further that as n increases without bound, the mean square error R_n approaches zero. In this event the infinite series

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i\phi_i(x)$$

is said to converge in the mean square sense (or, more simply, in the mean) to $f(x)$. Mean convergence is an essentially different type of convergence from the pointwise convergence considered up to now. A series may converge in the mean without converging at each point. This is plausible geometrically because the area between two curves, which behaves in the same way as the mean square error, may be zero even though the functions are not the same at every point. They may differ on any finite set of points, for example, without affecting the mean square error. It is less obvious, but also true, that even if an infinite series converges at every point, it may not converge in the mean. Indeed, the mean square error may even become unbounded. An example of this phenomenon is given in Problem 4.

Now suppose that we wish to know what class of functions, defined on $0 \le x \le 1$, can be represented as an infinite series of the orthonormal set ϕ_i, $i = 1, 2, \ldots$. The answer depends on what kind of convergence we require. We say that the set $\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n, \ldots$ is **complete** with respect to mean square convergence for a set of functions $\mathcal{F}$ if, for each function f in $\mathcal{F}$, the series

$$f(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i\phi_i(x), \tag{10}$$

with coefficients given by equation (9), converges in the mean. There is a similar definition for completeness with respect to pointwise convergence.

Theorems having to do with the convergence of series such as that in equation (10) can now be restated in terms of the idea of completeness. For example, Theorem 11.2.4 can be restated as follows: The eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem

$$-\big(p(x)y'\big)' + q(x)y = \lambda r(x)y, \quad 0 < x < 1, \tag{11}$$

$$\alpha_1 y(0) + \alpha_2 y'(0) = 0, \quad \beta_1 y(1) + \beta_2 y'(1) = 0 \tag{12}$$

are complete with respect to ordinary pointwise convergence for the set of functions that are continuous on $0 \le x \le 1$ and that have piecewise continuous derivatives there.

If pointwise convergence is replaced by mean convergence, Theorem 11.2.4 can be considerably generalized. Before we state such a companion theorem to Theorem 11.2.4, we first define what is meant by a square integrable function. A function f is said to be **square integrable** on the interval $0 \le x \le 1$ if both f and f^2 are integrable[15] on that interval. The following theorem is similar to Theorem 11.2.4 except that it involves mean convergence.

Theorem 11.6.1

The eigenfunctions ϕ_i of the regular Sturm-Liouville problem (11), (12) are complete with respect to mean convergence for the set of functions that are square integrable on $0 \le x \le 1$. In other words, given any square integrable function f, the series (10), whose coefficients are given by equation (9), converges to $f(x)$ in the mean square sense.

It is significant that the class of functions specified in Theorem 11.6.1 is very large indeed. The class of square integrable functions contains some functions with many discontinuities, including some kinds of infinite discontinuities, as well as some functions that are not differentiable at any point. All these functions have mean convergent expansions in the eigenfunctions of the boundary value problem (11), (12). However, in many cases these series do not converge pointwise, at least not at every point. Thus mean convergence is more naturally associated with series of orthogonal functions, such as eigenfunctions, than ordinary pointwise convergence.

The theory of Fourier series discussed in Chapter 10 is just a special case of the general theory of Sturm-Liouville problems. For instance, the functions

$$\phi_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\sin(n\pi x), n = 1, 2, \ldots \tag{13}$$

are the normalized eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0. \tag{14}$$

Thus, if f is a given square integrable function on $0 \le x \le 1$, then according to Theorem 11.6.1, the series

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} b_m \phi_m(x) = \sqrt{2}\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} b_m \sin(m\pi x), \tag{15}$$

where

$$b_m = \int_0^1 f(x)\phi_m(x)\,dx = \sqrt{2}\int_0^1 f(x)\,\sin(m\pi x)\,dx, \tag{16}$$

converges in the mean. The series (15) is precisely the Fourier sine series discussed in Section 10.4. If f satisfies the further conditions stated in Theorem 11.2.4, then this series converges pointwise, as well as in the mean.

---

[15] For the Riemann integral used in elementary calculus, the hypotheses that f and f^2 are integrable are independent; that is, there are functions such that f is integrable but f^2 is not, and conversely (see Problem 6). A generalized integral, known as the Lebesgue integral, has the property (among others) that if f^2 is integrable, then f is also necessarily integrable. The term *square integrable* came into common use in connection with this type of integration.

Similarly, the Sturm-Liouville problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0 \tag{17}$$

has normalized eigenfunctions $\phi_0(x) = 1$, $\phi_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\cos(n\pi x)$, $n = 1, 2, \ldots$. Thus this problem is naturally associated with the Fourier cosine series.

EXAMPLE 1

Let $f(x) = 1$ for $0 < x < 1$. Expand $f(x)$ using the eigenfunctions (13), and discuss the pointwise and mean square convergence of the resulting series.

Solution:

The series has the form (15), and its coefficients b_m are given by equation (16). Thus

$$\begin{aligned} b_m &= \int_0^1 f(x)\phi_m(x)dx = \sqrt{2}\int_0^1 \sin(m\pi x)dx = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{m\pi}(1 - \cos(m\pi)), \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{m\pi}(1 - (-1)^m) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2\sqrt{2}}{m\pi} & m \text{ odd} \\ 0 & m \text{ even.} \end{cases} \end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

and the n^{th} partial sum of the series is

$$S_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\sum_{m=1}^{n} b_m \sin(m\pi x) = 2\sum_{m=1}^{n} \frac{1 - \cos(m\pi)}{m\pi}\sin(m\pi x) = \frac{4}{\pi}\sum_{m=1,3,\ldots,n} \frac{1}{m}\sin(m\pi x). \tag{19}$$

The mean square error associated with the nth partial sum of the series is then

$$R_n = \int_0^1 (f(x) - S_n(x))^2 dx. \tag{20}$$

By calculating R_n for several values of n and plotting the results, we obtain Figure 11.6.2. This figure indicates that R_n steadily decreases as n increases. Of course, Theorem 11.6.1 asserts that $R_n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$. Pointwise, we know that $S_n(x) \to f(x) = 1$ as $n \to \infty$ for $0 < x < 1$; further, $S_n(x)$ has the value zero for $x = 0$ or $x = 1$ for every n. Although the series converges pointwise for each value of x, the least upper bound of the error does not diminish as n grows larger. For each n, there are points close to $x = 0$ and $x = 1$ where the error is arbitrarily close to 1. The situation is similar to the Gibbs phenomenon observed in Example 1 in Section 10.3; see Figures 10.3.3 and 10.3.4.

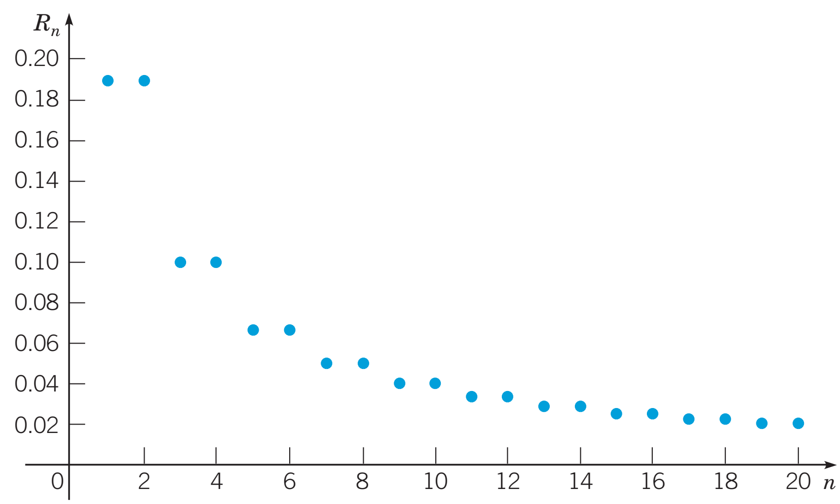


FIGURE 11.6.2 Dependence of the mean square error R_n on n in Example 1. Note that because $b_{2k} = 0$, $R_{2k} = R_{2k-1}$.

Theorem 11.6.1 can be extended to cover self-adjoint boundary value problems having periodic boundary conditions, such as the problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \tag{21}$$

$$y(-1) - y(1) = 0, \quad y'(-1) - y'(1) = 0$$

considered in Example 4 of Section 11.2. The eigenfunctions of problem (21) are $\phi_0(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$, $\phi_n(x) = \cos(n\pi x)$ for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, and $\psi_n(x) = \sin(n\pi x)$ for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$. If f is a given square integrable function on $-1 \le x \le 1$, then its expansion in terms of the eigenfunctions ϕ_n and ψ_n is of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos(n\pi x) + b_n \sin(n\pi x)), \tag{22}$$

where

$$a_n = \int_{-1}^{1} f(x)\cos(n\pi x)\,dx, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \tag{23}$$

$$b_n = \int_{-1}^{1} f(x)\sin(n\pi x)\,dx, \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{24}$$

This expansion is exactly the Fourier series for f discussed in Sections 10.2 and 10.3. According to the generalization of Theorem 11.6.1, the series (22) converges in the mean for any square integrable function f, even though f may not satisfy the conditions of Theorem 10.3.1, which ensure pointwise convergence.

Problems

C **1.** Extend the results of Example 1 by finding the smallest value of n for which $R_n < 0.02$, where R_n is given by equation (20).

C **2.** Let $f(x) = x$ for $0 < x < 1$, and let $\phi_m(x) = \sqrt{2}\sin(m\pi x)$.

a. Find the coefficients b_m in the expansion of $f(x)$ in terms of $\phi_1(x), \phi_2(x), \ldots$.

b. Calculate the mean square error R_n for several values of n and plot the results.

c. Find the smallest value of n for which $R_n < 0.01$.

C **3.** Follow the instructions for Problem 2 using $f(x) = x(1 - x)$ for $0 < x < 1$.

4. In this problem we show that pointwise convergence of a sequence $S_n(x)$ does not imply mean convergence, and conversely.

a. Let $S_n(x) = n\sqrt{x}e^{-nx^2/2}, 0 \le x \le 1$. Show that $S_n(x) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ for each x in $0 \le x \le 1$. Show also that

$$R_n = \int_0^1 \left(0 - S_n(x)\right)^2 dx = \frac{n}{2}\left(1 - e^{-n}\right)$$

and hence $R_n \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$. Thus pointwise convergence does not imply mean convergence.

b. Let $S_n(x) = x^n$ for $0 \le x \le 1$, and let $f(x) = 0$ for $0 \le x \le 1$. Show that

$$R_n = \int_0^1 (f(x) - S_n(x))^2 dx = \frac{1}{2n+1},$$

and hence $S_n(x)$ converges to $f(x)$ in the mean. Also show that $S_n(x)$ does not converge to $f(x)$ pointwise throughout $0 \le x \le 1$. Thus mean convergence does not imply pointwise convergence.

5. Suppose that the functions $\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n$ satisfy the orthonormality relation (1) and that a given function f is to be approximated by $S_n(x) = c_1\phi_1(x) + \cdots + c_n\phi_n(x)$, where the coefficients c_i are not necessarily those of equation (9). Show that the mean square error R_n given by equation (6) may be written in the form

$$R_n = \int_0^1 r(x)f^2(x)\,dx - \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} (c_i - a_i)^2,$$

where the a_i are the Fourier coefficients given by equation (9). Show that R_n is minimized if $c_i = a_i$ for each i.

6. In this problem we show by examples that the (Riemann) integrability of f and of f^2 is independent.

a. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^{-1/2}, & 0 < x \le 1, \\ 0, & x = 0. \end{cases}$

Show that $\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$ exists as an improper integral, but $\int_0^1 f^2(x)\,dx$ does not.

b. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational}, \\ -1, & x \text{ irrational}. \end{cases}$

Show that $\int_0^1 f^2(x)\,dx$ exists, but $\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$ does not.

Hint: Recall that when a (Riemann) integral exists, upper and lower Riemann sums on a partition of $0 \le x \le 1$ converge to the value of the integral as the length of the largest subinterval in the partition decreases to zero.

7. Suppose that it is desired to construct a set of polynomials $f_0(x)$, $f_1(x)$, $f_2(x)$, $\ldots$, $f_k(x)$, $\ldots$, where $f_k(x)$ is of degree k, that are orthonormal on the interval $0 \le x \le 1$. That is, the set of polynomials must satisfy

$$(f_j, f_k) = \int_0^1 f_j(x) f_k(x)\,dx = \delta_{jk}.$$

a. Find $f_0(x)$ by choosing the polynomial of degree zero such that $(f_0, f_0) = 1$.
b. Find $f_1(x)$ by determining the polynomial of degree one such that $(f_0, f_1) = 0$ and $(f_1, f_1) = 1$.
c. Find $f_2(x)$.
d. The normalization condition $(f_k, f_k) = 1$ is somewhat awkward to apply. Let $g_0(x)$, $g_1(x)$, $\ldots$, $g_k(x)$, $\ldots$ be the sequence of polynomials that are orthogonal on $0 \le x \le 1$ and that are normalized by the condition $g_k(1) = 1$. Find $g_0(x)$, $g_1(x)$, and $g_2(x)$, and compare them with $f_0(x)$, $f_1(x)$, and $f_2(x)$.

8. Suppose that it is desired to construct a set of polynomials $P_0(x)$, $P_1(x)$, $\ldots$, $P_k(x)$, $\ldots$, where $P_k(x)$ is of degree k, that are orthogonal on the interval $-1 \le x \le 1$; see Problem 7. Suppose further that $P_k(x)$ is normalized by the condition $P_k(1) = 1$. Find $P_0(x)$, $P_1(x)$, $P_2(x)$, and $P_3(x)$. Note that these are the first four Legendre polynomials (see Problem 19 of Section 5.3).

9. This problem develops some further results associated with mean convergence. Define $R_n(a_1, \ldots, a_n)$, $S_n(x)$, and a_i by equations (2), (6), and (9), respectively.

a. Show that

$$R_n = \int_0^1 r(x) f^2(x)\,dx - \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i^2.$$

Hint: Substitute for $S_n(x)$ in equation (6) and integrate, using the orthogonality relation (1).

b. Show that $\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i^2 \le \int_0^1 r(x) f^2(x)\,dx$. This result is known as **Bessel's inequality**.

c. Show that $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i^2$ converges.

d. Show that $\lim_{n\to\infty} R_n = \int_0^1 r(x) f^2(x)\,dx - \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i^2$.

e. Show that $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i \phi_i(x)$ converges to $f(x)$ in the mean if and only if

$$\int_0^1 r(x) f^2(x)\,dx = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i^2.$$

This result is known as **Parseval's equation**.

In Problems 10 through 12, let $\phi_1, \phi_2, \ldots, \phi_n, \ldots$ be the normalized eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem (11), (12).

10. Show that if a_n is the nth Fourier coefficient of a square integrable function f, then $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = 0$.
Hint: Use Bessel's inequality, Problem 9b.

11. Show that the series

$$\phi_1(x) + \phi_2(x) + \cdots + \phi_n(x) + \cdots$$

cannot be the eigenfunction series for any square integrable function.
Hint: See Problem 10.

12. Show that the series

$$\phi_1(x) + \frac{\phi_2(x)}{\sqrt{2}} + \cdots + \frac{\phi_n(x)}{\sqrt{n}} + \cdots$$

is not the eigenfunction series for any square integrable function.
Hint: Use Bessel's inequality, Problem 9b.

13. Show that Parseval's equation in Problem 9e is obtained formally by squaring the series (10) corresponding to f, multiplying by the weight function r, and integrating term by term.

References

The following books were mentioned in the text in connection with certain theorems about Sturm-Liouville problems:

Birkhoff, G., and Rota, G.-C., *Ordinary Differential Equations* (4th ed.) (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1989).

Sagan, H., *Boundary and Eigenvalue Problems in Mathematical Physics* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1961; New York: Dover, 1989).

Weinberger, H. F., *A First Course in Partial Differential Equations with Complex Variables and Transform Methods* (New York: Blaisdell, 1965; New York: Dover, 1995).

Yosida, K., *Lectures on Differential and Integral Equations* (New York: Interscience Publishers, 1960; New York: Dover, 1991).

The following book is a convenient source of numerical and graphical data about Bessel and Legendre functions:

Abramowitz, M., and Stegun, I. A. (eds.), *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables* (New York: Dover, 1965); originally published by the National Bureau of Standards, Washington, DC, 1964.

The digital successor to Abramowitz and Stegun is

Digital Library of Mathematical Functions. Release date August 29, 2011. National Institute of Standards and Technology from http://dlmf.nist.gov/.

The following books also contain much information about Sturm-Liouville problems:

Cole, R. H., *Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations* (New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1968).

Hochstadt, H., *Differential Equations: A Modern Approach* (New York: Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, 1964; New York: Dover, 1975).

Miller, R. K., and Michel, A. N., *Ordinary Differential Equations* (New York: Academic Press, 1982; Mineola, NY: Dover, 2007).

Tricomi, F. G., *Differential Equations* (translated by Elizabeth A. McHarg) (New York: Hafner, 1961; Mineola, NY: Dover, 2012).

Answers to Problems

Chapter 1

Section 1.1, page 8

1. $y \to 3/2$ as $t \to \infty$
2. y diverges from $3/2$ as $t \to \infty$
3. $y \to -1/2$ as $t \to \infty$
4. y diverges from $-1/2$ as $t \to \infty$
5. $y' = 2 - 3y$
6. $y' = y - 2$
7. $y = 0$ and $y = 4$ are equilibrium solutions; $y \to 4$ if initial value is positive; y diverges from 0 if initial value is negative.
8. $y = 0$ and $y = 5$ are equilibrium solutions; y diverges from 5 if initial value is greater than 5; $y \to 0$ if initial value is less than 5.
9. $y = 0$ is equilibrium solution; $y \to 0$ if initial value is negative; y diverges from 0 if initial value is positive.
10. $y = 0$ and $y = 2$ are equilibrium solutions; y diverges from 0 if initial value is negative; $y \to 2$ if initial value is between 0 and 2; y diverges from 2 if initial value is greater than 2.
11. (j)
12. (c)
13. (g)
14. (b)
15. (h)
16. (e)
17. **a.** $da/dt = 3 - 3 \times 10^{-4}a$; a in g, t in h
    b. $a \to 10^4$ g; no
    c. $\dfrac{dc}{dt} = 3 \times 10^{-6} - 3 \times 10^{-4}c$, with initial condition $c(10) = a(0)/10^6 = a_0/10^6$
18. $dV/dt = -kV^{2/3}$ for some $k > 0$.
19. $du/dt = -0.05(u - 70)$; u in °F, t in min
20. **a.** $dq/dt = 500 - 0.4q$; q in mg, t in h
    b. $q \to 1250$ mg
21. **a.** $mv' = mg - kv^2$
    b. $v \to \sqrt{mg/k}$
    c. $k = 2/49$
22. y is asymptotic to $t - 3$ as $t \to \infty$
23. $y \to \infty$, 0, or $-\infty$ depending on the initial value of y
24. $y \to \infty$ or $-\infty$ or y oscillates depending on the initial value of y
25. $y(tf) = 0$ and then y fails to exist after some $t_f \geq 0$

Section 1.2, page 15

1. **a.** $y = 5 + (y_0 - 5)e^{-t}$
   b. $y = (5/2) + (y_0 - 5/2)e^{-2t}$
   c. $y = 5 + (y_0 - 5)e^{-2t}$
   Equilibrium solution is $y = 5$ in (a) and (c), $y = 5/2$ in (b); solution approaches equilibrium faster in (b) and (c) than in (a).
2. **a.** $y = 5 + (y_0 - 5)e^{t}$
   b. $y = 5/2 + (y_0 - 5/2)e^{2t}$
   c. $y = 5 + (y_0 - 5)e^{2t}$
   Equilibrium solution is $y = 5$ in (a) and (c), $y = 5/2$ in (b); solution diverges from equilibrium faster in (b) and (c) than in (a).
3. **a.** $y = ce^{-at} + b/a$
   b. (i) Equilibrium is lower and is approached more rapidly. (ii) Equilibrium is higher. (iii) Equilibrium remains the same and is approached more rapidly.
4. **a.** $y_e = (b/a)$
   b. $Y' = aY$
5. **a.** $y_1(t) = ce^{at}$
   b. $y = ce^{at} + b/a$
6. $y = ce^{-at} + b/a$
7. **a.** $T = 2 \ln 18 \cong 5.78$ months
   b. $T = 2 \ln(900/(900 - p_0))$ months
   c. $p_0 = 900(1 - e^{-6}) \cong 897.8$
8. **a.** $T = 5 \ln 50 \cong 19.56$ s
   b. 718.34 m
9. **b.** $v = 49 \tanh(t/5)$ m/s
   e. $x = 245 \ln \cosh(t/5)$ m
   f. $T \cong 9.48$ s
10. **a.** $r \cong 0.02828$ day^{-1}
    b. $Q(t) = 100e^{-0.02828t}$
    c. $T \cong 24.5$ d
12. **a.** $u = T + (u_0 - T)e^{-kt}$
    b. $k\tau = \ln 2$
13. **a.** $Q(t) = CV(1 - e^{-t/RC})$
    b. $Q(t) \to CV = Q_L$
    c. $Q(t) = CV \exp(-(t - t_1)/(RC))$
14. **a.** $Q' = 3(1 - 10^{-4}Q), \quad Q(0) = 0$
    b. $Q(t) = 10^4\left(1 - e^{-3t/10^4}\right)$, t in h; after 1 year $Q \cong 9277.77$ g
    c. $Q' = -3Q/10^4, \quad Q(0) = 9277.77$
    d. $Q(t) = 9277.77e^{-3t/10^4}$, t in h; after 1 year $Q \cong 670.07$ g
    e. $T \cong 2.60$ yr

Section 1.3, page 22

1. Second order, linear
2. Second order, nonlinear
3. Fourth order, linear
4. Second order, nonlinear
11. $r = -2$
12. $r = 2, -3$
13. $r = 0, 1, 2$
14. $r = -1, -2$
15. $r = 1, 4$
16. Second order, linear

17. Fourth order, linear

18. Second order, nonlinear

Chapter 2

Section 2.1, page 31

1. c. $y = ce^{-3t} + t/3 - 1/9 + e^{-2t}$; y is asymptotic to $t/3 - 1/9$ as $t \to \infty$

2. c. $y = ce^{2t} + t^3e^{2t}/3$; $\quad y \to \infty$ as $t \to \infty$

3. c. $y = ce^{-t} + 1 + t^2e^{-t}/2$; $\quad y \to 1$ as $t \to \infty$

4. c. $y = c/t + 3\cos(2t)/(4t) + 3\sin(2t)/2$; y is asymptotic to $3\sin(2t)/2$ as $t \to \infty$

5. c. $y = ce^{2t} - 3e^t$; $y \to \infty$ or $-\infty$ as $t \to \infty$

6. c. $y = -te^{-t} + ct$; $y \to \infty$, 0, or $-\infty$ as $t \to \infty$

7. c. $y = ce^{-t} + \sin(2t) - 2\cos(2t)$; y is asymptotic to $\sin(2t) - 2\cos(2t)$ as $t \to \infty$

8. c. $y = ce^{-t/2} + 3t^2 - 12t + 24$; y is asymptotic to $3t^2 - 12t + 24$ as $t \to \infty$

9. $y = 3e^t + 2(t-1)e^{2t}$

10. $y = (t^2 - 1)e^{-2t}/2$

11. $y = (\sin t)/t^2$

12. $y = (t - 1 + 2e^{-t})/t, \quad t \neq 0$

13. b. $y = -\dfrac{4}{5}\cos t + \dfrac{8}{5}\sin t + \left(a + \dfrac{4}{5}\right)e^{t/2}$; $a_0 = -\dfrac{4}{5}$
c. y oscillates for $a = a_0$

14. b. $y = \left(2 + a(3\pi + 4)e^{2t/3} - 2e^{-\pi t/2}\right)/(3\pi + 4)$; $a_0 = -2/(3\pi + 4)$
c. $y \to 0$ for $a = a_0$

15. b. $y = te^{-t} + (ea - 1)e^{-t}/t$; $a_0 = 1/e$
c. $y \to 0$ as $t \to 0$ for $a = a_0$

16. b. $y = \left(e^t - e + a\sin 1\right)/\sin t$; $a_0 = (e-1)/\sin 1$
c. $y \to 1$ for $a = a_0$

17. $(t, y) = (1.364312, 0.820082)$

18. $y_0 = -1.642876$

19. a. $y = 12 + \dfrac{8}{65}\cos 2t + \dfrac{64}{65}\sin 2t - \dfrac{788}{65}e^{-t/4}$; y oscillates about 12 as $t \to \infty$
b. $t = 10.065778$

20. $y_0 = -5/2$

21. $y_0 = -16/3$; $y \to -\infty$ as $t \to \infty$ for $y_0 = -16/3$

29. See Problem 2.

30. See Problem 4.

Section 2.2, page 38

1. $3y^2 - 2x^3 = c$; $\quad y \neq 0$

2. $y^{-1} + \cos x = c$ if $y \neq 0$; also $y = 0$; everywhere

3. $2\tan(2y) - 2x - \sin(2x) = c$ if $\cos(2y) \neq 0$; also $y = \pm(2n+1)\pi/4$ for any integer n; everywhere

4. $y = \sin(\ln|x| + c)$ if $x \neq 0$ and $|y| < 1$; also $y = \pm 1$

5. $y^2 - x^2 + 2(e^y - e^{-x}) = c$; $\quad y + e^y \neq 0$

6. $3y + y^3 - x^3 = c$; everywhere

7. $y = kx$

8. $y = \pm\sqrt{x^2 + c}$

9. a. $y = 1/(x^2 - x - 6)$
c. $-2 < x < 3$

10. a. $y = -\sqrt{2x - 2x^2 + 4}$
c. $-1 < x < 2$

11. a. $y = (2(1-x)e^x - 1)^{1/2}$
c. $-1.68 < x < 0.77$ approximately

12. a. $r = 2/(1 - 2\ln\theta)$
c. $0 < \theta < \sqrt{e}$

13. a. $y = \left(3 - 2\sqrt{1 + x^2}\right)^{-1/2}$
c. $|x| < \dfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{5}$

14. a. $y = -\dfrac{1}{2} + \dfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{4x^2 - 15}$
c. $x > \dfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{15}$

15. a. $y = 5/2 - \sqrt{x^3 - e^x + 13/4}$
c. $-1.4445 < x < 4.6297$ approximately

16. a. $y = \left(\pi - \arcsin\left(3\cos^2 x\right)\right)/3$
c. $|x - \pi/2| < 0.6155$

17. $y^3 - 3y^2 - x - x^3 + 2 = 0, \quad |x| < 1$

18. $y^3 - 4y - x^3 = -1, \quad |x^3 - 1| < 16/3\sqrt{3}$ or $-1.28 < x < 1.60$

19. $y = -1/(x^2/2 + 2x - 1); \quad x = -2$

20. $y = -3/2 + \sqrt{2x - e^x + 13/4}; \quad x = \ln(2)$

21. a. $y \to 4$ if $y_0 > 0$; $\quad y = 0$ if $y_0 = 0$; $\quad y \to -\infty$ if $y_0 < 0$
b. $T = 3.29527$

22. a. $y \to 4$ as $t \to \infty$
b. $T = 2.84367$
c. $3.6622 < y_0 < 4.4042$

23. $x = \dfrac{c}{a}y + \dfrac{ad - bc}{a^2}\ln|ay + b| + k; \quad a \neq 0,\ ay + b \neq 0$

25. c. $|y + 2x|^3|y - 2x| = c$

26. b. $\arctan(y/x) - \ln|x| = c$

27. b. $x^2 + y^2 - cx^3 = 0$

28. b. $|y - x| = c|y + 3x|^5$; also $y = x$

29. b. $|y + x|\,|y + 4x|^2 = c$

30. b. $|x|^3|x^2 - 5y^2| = c$

31. b. $c|x|^3 = |y^2 - x^2|$

Section 2.3, page 47

1. $t = 100\ln 100$ min $\cong 460.5$ min

2. $Q(t) = 120\gamma(1 - \exp(-t/60))$; $\quad 120\gamma$

3. a. $Q(t) = \dfrac{63,150}{2501}e^{-t/50} + 25 - \dfrac{625}{2501}\cos t + \dfrac{25}{5002}\sin t$
c. level = 25; amplitude = $25\sqrt{2501}/5002 \cong 0.24995$

4. c. 130.41 s

5. a. $(\ln 2)/r$ yr
b. 9.90 yr
c. 8.66%

6. a. $k\left(e^{rt} - 1\right)/r$
b. $k \cong \$3930$
c. 9.77%

7. $k = \$3086.64$/yr; $\quad \$1259.92$

8. a. $t \cong 146.54$ months
b. $246,758.02

9. a. $0.00012097\ \text{yr}^{-1}$
b. $Q_0\exp(-0.00012097t)$, t in yr
c. 13,305 yr

10. a. $\tau \cong 2.9632$; no
b. $\tau = 10\ln 2 \cong 6.9315$
c. $\tau = 6.3805$

11. b. $y_c \cong 0.83$

12. $t = \dfrac{\ln(13/8)}{\ln(13/12)}$ min $\cong 6.07$ min

13. a. $u(t) = 2000/(1 + 0.048t)^{1/3}$
c. $\tau \cong 750.77$ s

14. a. $u(t) = ce^{-kt} + T_0 + kT_1(k\cos(\omega t) + \omega\sin(\omega t))/(k^2 + \omega^2)$
b. $R \cong 9.11°$F; $\tau \cong 3.51$ h
c. $R = kT_1/\sqrt{k^2 + \omega^2}$; $\tau = (1/\omega)\arctan(\omega/k)$

15. a. $c = k + P/r + (c_0 - k - P/r)e^{-rt/V}$;
$\lim_{t\to\infty} c = k + P/r$
b. $T = (V\ln 2)/r$; $T = (V\ln 10)/r$
c. Superior, $T = 431$ yr; Michigan, $T = 71.4$ yr; Erie, $T = 6.05$ yr; Ontario, $T = 17.6$ yr

16. a. 50.408 m
b. 5.248 s

17. a. 45.783 m
b. 5.129 s

18. a. 48.562 m
b. 5.194 s

19. a. $x_m = -\dfrac{m^2 g}{k^2}\ln\left(1 + \dfrac{kv_0}{mg}\right) + \dfrac{mv_0}{k}$;
$t_m = \dfrac{m}{k}\ln\left(1 + \dfrac{kv_0}{mg}\right)$

20. a. $v = -mg/k + (v_0 + (mg/k))\exp(-kt/m)$
b. $v = v_0 - gt$; yes
c. $v = 0$ for $t > 0$

21. a. $v_L = 2a^2 g(\rho - \rho')/9\mu$
b. $e = 4\pi a^3 g(\rho - \rho')/3E$

22. b. $x = ut\cos A$, $y = -gt^2/2 + ut\sin A + h$
d. $-16L^2/(u^2\cos^2 A) + L\tan A + 3 \geq H$
e. 0.63 rad $\leq A \leq 0.96$ rad
f. $u = 106.89$ ft/s, $A = 0.7954$ rad

23. a. $v = (u\cos A)e^{-rt}$, $w = -g/r + (u\sin A + g/r)e^{-rt}$
b. $x = (u\cos A)(1 - e^{-rt})/r$,
$y = -gt/r + (u\sin A + g/r)(1 - e^{-rt})/r + h$
d. $u = 145.3$ ft/s, $A = 0.644$ rad

24. d. $k = 2.193$

Section 2.4, page 57

1. $0 < t < 3$

2. $\pi/2 < t < 3\pi/2$

3. $-\infty < t < -2$

4. $1 < t < \pi$

5. $t^2 + y^2 < 1$

6. $1 - t^2 + y^2 > 0$ or $1 - t^2 + y^2 < 0$, $t \neq 0$, $y \neq 0$

7. Everywhere

8. $y \neq 0$, $y \neq 3$

9. $y = \pm\sqrt{y_0^2 - 4t^2}$ if $y_0 \neq 0$; $|t| < |y_0|/2$

10. $y = (1/y_0 - t^2)^{-1}$ if $y_0 \neq 0$; $y = 0$ if $y_0 = 0$;
interval is $|t| < 1/\sqrt{y_0}$ if $y_0 > 0$; $-\infty < t < \infty$ if $y_0 \leq 0$

11. $y = y_0/\sqrt{2ty_0^2 + 1}$ if $y_0 \neq 0$; $y = 0$ if $y_0 = 0$;
interval is $-1/2y_0^2 < t < \infty$ if $y_0 \neq 0$; $-\infty < t < \infty$ if $y_0 = 0$

12. $y = \pm\sqrt{\dfrac{2}{3}\ln(1 + t^3) + y_0^2}$; $-(1 - \exp(-3y_0^2/2))^{1/3} < t < \infty$

13. $y \to 3$ if $y_0 > 0$; $y = 0$ if $y_0 = 0$; $y \to -\infty$ if $y_0 < 0$

14. $y \to -\infty$ if $y_0 < 0$; $y \to 0$ if $y_0 \geq 0$

15. $y \to 0$ if $y_0 \leq 9$; $y \to \infty$ if $y_0 > 9$

16. $y \to -\infty$ if $y_0 < y_c \approx -0.019$; otherwise y is asymptotic to $\sqrt{t - 1}$

17. a. No
b. Yes; set $t_0 = 1/2$ in equation (19) in text.
c. $|y| \leq (4/3)^{3/2} \cong 1.5396$

18. a. $y_1(t)$ is a solution for $t \geq 2$; $y_2(t)$ is a solution for all t
b. f_y is not continuous at $(2, -1)$

22. a. $y = c\dfrac{1}{\mu(t)} + \dfrac{1}{\mu(t)}\displaystyle\int_{t_0}^{t}\mu(s)g(s)ds$

23. a. $n = 0$: $y = \dfrac{1}{\mu(t)}\displaystyle\int_{t_0}^{t}\mu(s)q(s)\,ds$ where $\mu(t) = \exp\left(\displaystyle\int_{t_0}^{t} p(t)\,dt\right)$

$n = 1$: $y = c\exp\left(\displaystyle\int_{t_0}^{t} q(t) - p(t)\,dt\right)$

24. $y = r/(k + cre^{-rt})$

25. $y = \pm\left(\epsilon/\left(\sigma + c\epsilon e^{-2\epsilon t}\right)\right)^{1/2}$

26. $y = \dfrac{1}{2}\left(1 - e^{-2t}\right)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 1$;
$y = \dfrac{1}{2}\left(e^2 - 1\right)e^{-2t}$ for $t > 1$

27. $y = e^{-2t}$ for $0 \leq t \leq 1$; $y = e^{-(t+1)}$ for $t > 1$

Section 2.5, page 67

1. $y = -a/b$ is asymptotically stable, $y = 0$ is unstable

2. $y = 1$ is asymptotically stable, $y = 0$ and $y = 2$ are unstable

3. $y = 0$ is unstable

4. $y = 0$ is asymptotically stable

5. c. $y = (y_0 + (1 - y_0)kt)/(1 + (1 - y_0)kt)$

6. $y = -1$ is asymptotically stable, $y = 0$ is semistable, $y = 1$ is unstable

7. $y = -1$ and $y = 1$ are asymptotically stable, $y = 0$ is unstable

8. $y = 2$ is asymptotically stable, $y = 0$ is semistable, $y = -2$ is unstable

9. $y = 0$ and $y = 1$ are semistable

16. a. $y = 0$ is unstable, $y = K$ is asymptotically stable
b. Concave up for $0 < y \leq K/e$,
concave down for $K/e \leq y < K$

17. a. $y = K\exp((\ln(y_0/K))e^{-rt})$
b. $y(2) \cong 0.7153K \cong 57.6 \times 10^6$ kg
c. $\tau \cong 2.215$ yr

18. b. $V^* = (k/(\alpha\pi))^{3/2}\,\pi h/(3a)$; yes
c. $k < \alpha\pi a^2$

19. c. $Y = Ey_2 = KE(1 - (E/r))$
d. $Y_m = Kr/4$ for $E = r/2$

20. a. $y_{1,2} = K(1 \mp \sqrt{1 - (4h/rK)})/2$

21. a. $y = 0$ is unstable, $y = 1$ is asymptotically stable
b. $y = y_0/(y_0 + (1 - y_0)e^{-\alpha t})$

22. a. $y = y_0 e^{-\beta t}$
b. $x = x_0\exp(-\alpha y_0(1 - e^{-\beta t})/\beta)$
c. $x_0\exp(-\alpha y_0/\beta)$

23. b. $z = 1/(\nu + (1-\nu)e^{\beta t})$
c. 0.0927

24. a, b. $a = 0$: $y = 0$ is semistable. $a > 0$: $y = \sqrt{a}$ is asymptotically stable and $y = -\sqrt{a}$ is unstable.

25. a. $a \le 0$: $y = 0$ is asymptotically stable. $a > 0$: $y = 0$ is unstable; $y = \sqrt{a}$ and $y = -\sqrt{a}$ are asymptotically stable.

26. a. $a < 0$: $y = 0$ is asymptotically stable and $y = a$ is unstable.
$a = 0$: $y = 0$ is semistable.
$a > 0$: $y = 0$ is unstable and $y = a$ is asymptotically stable.

27. a. $\lim_{t\to\infty} x(t) = \min(p, q)$; $\quad x(t) = \dfrac{pq(e^{\alpha(q-p)t} - 1)}{qe^{\alpha(q-p)t} - p}$

b. $\lim_{t\to\infty} x(t) = p$; $\quad x(t) = \dfrac{p^2\alpha t}{p\alpha t + 1}$

Section 2.6, page 75

1. $x^2 + 3x + y^2 - 2y = c$
2. Not exact
3. $x^3 - x^2y + 2x + 2y^3 + 3y = c$
4. $ax^2 + 2bxy + cy^2 = k$
5. Not exact
6. $e^{xy}\cos 2x + x^2 - 3y = c$
7. $y\ln x + 3x^2 - 2y = c$
8. $x^2 + y^2 = c$
9. $y = \left(x + \sqrt{28 - 3x^2}\right)/2, \quad |x| < \sqrt{28/3}$
10. $y = (x - (24x^3 + x^2 - 8x - 16)^{1/2})/4, \quad x > 0.9846$
11. $b = 3$; $\quad x^2y^2 + 2x^3y = c$
12. $b = 1$; $\quad e^{2xy} + x^2 = c$
15. $x^2 + 2\ln|y| - y^{-2} = c$; $\quad$ also $y = 0$
16. $x^2e^x \sin y = c$
18. $\mu(x) = e^{3x}$; $\quad (3x^2y + y^3)e^{3x} = c$
19. $\mu(x) = e^{-x}$; $\quad y = ce^x + 1 + e^{2x}$
20. $\mu(y) = y$; $\quad xy + y\cos y - \sin y = c$
21. $\mu(y) = e^{2y}/y$; $\quad xe^{2y} - \ln|y| = c$; $\quad$ also $y = 0$

Section 2.7, page 82

1. a. 1.2, 1.39, 1.571, 1.7439
b. 1.1975, 1.38549, 1.56491, 1.73658
c. 1.19631, 1.38335, 1.56200, 1.73308
d. 1.19516, 1.38127, 1.55918, 1.72968

2. a. 1.1, 1.22, 1.364, 1.5368
b. 1.105, 1.23205, 1.38578, 1.57179
c. 1.10775, 1.23873, 1.39793, 1.59144
d. 1.1107, 1.24591, 1.41106, 1.61277

3. a. 1.25, 1.54, 1.878, 2.2736
b. 1.26, 1.5641, 1.92156, 2.34359
c. 1.26551, 1.57746, 1.94586, 2.38287
d. 1.2714, 1.59182, 1.97212, 2.42554

4. a. 0.3, 0.538501, 0.724821, 0.866458
b. 0.284813, 0.513339, 0.693451, 0.831571
c. 0.277920, 0.501813, 0.678949, 0.815302
d. 0.271428, 0.490897, 0.665142, 0.799729

5. Converge for $y \ge 0$; undefined for $y < 0$

6. Converge for $y \ge 0$; diverge for $y < 0$

7. Converge for $|y(0)| < 2.37$ (approximately); diverge otherwise

8. Diverge

9. a. 2.30800, 2.49006, 2.60023, 2.66773, 2.70939, 2.73521
b. 2.30167, 2.48263, 2.59352, 2.66227, 2.70519, 2.73209
c. 2.29864, 2.47903, 2.59024, 2.65958, 2.70310, 2.73053
d. 2.29686, 2.47691, 2.58830, 2.65798, 2.70185, 2.72959

10. a. 1.70308, 3.06605, 2.44030, 1.77204, 1.37348, 1.11925
b. 1.79548, 3.06051, 2.43292, 1.77807, 1.37795, 1.12191
c. 1.84579, 3.05769, 2.42905, 1.78074, 1.38017, 1.12328
d. 1.87734, 3.05607, 2.42672, 1.78224, 1.38150, 1.12411

11. a. −0.166134, −0.410872, −0.804660, 4.15867
b. −0.174652, −0.434238, −0.889140, −3.09810

12. A reasonable estimate for y at $t = 0.8$ is between 5.5 and 6. No reliable estimate is possible at $t = 1$ from the specified data.

13. b. $2.37 < \alpha_0 < 2.38$

14. b. $0.67 < \alpha_0 < 0.68$

Section 2.8, page 90

1. $dw/ds = (s+1)^2 + (w+2)^2, \quad w(0) = 0$

2. $dw/ds = 1 - (w+3)^3, \quad w(0) = 0$

3. a. $\phi_n(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{2^k t^k}{k!}$

c. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(t) = e^{2t} - 1$

4. a. $\phi_n(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} t^{k+1}/(k+1)!2^{k-1}$

c. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \phi_n(t) = 4e^{-t/2} + 2t - 4$

5. a. $\phi_n(t) = \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{t^{2k-1}}{1\cdot 3\cdot 5\cdots(2k-1)}$

6. a. $\phi_n(t) = -\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{t^{3k-1}}{2\cdot 5\cdot 8\cdots(3k-1)}$

7. a. $\phi_1(t) = \dfrac{t^3}{3}$; $\quad \phi_2(t) = \dfrac{t^3}{3} + \dfrac{t^7}{7\cdot 9}$;

$$\phi_3(t) = \frac{t^3}{3} + \frac{t^7}{7\cdot 9} + \frac{2t^{11}}{3\cdot 7\cdot 9\cdot 11} + \frac{t^{15}}{(7\cdot 9)^2\cdot 15}$$

8. a. $\phi_1(t) = t$; $\quad \phi_2(t) = t - \dfrac{t^4}{4}$;

$$\phi_3(t) = t - \frac{t^4}{4} + \frac{3t^7}{4\cdot 7} - \frac{3t^{10}}{16\cdot 10} + \frac{t^{13}}{64\cdot 13}$$

9. a. $\phi_1(t) = t, \quad \phi_2(t) = t - \dfrac{t^2}{2!} + \dfrac{t^4}{4!} - \dfrac{t^6}{6!} + O(t^8)$,

$$\phi_3(t) = t - \frac{t^2}{2!} + \frac{t^3}{3!} + \frac{t^4}{4!} - \frac{7t^5}{5!} + \frac{14t^6}{6!} + O(t^7),$$

$$\phi_4(t) = t - \frac{t^2}{2!} + \frac{t^3}{3!} - \frac{7t^5}{5!} + \frac{31t^6}{6!} + O(t^7)$$

10. a. $\phi_1(t) = -t - t^2 - \dfrac{t^3}{2}$,

$$\phi_2(t) = -t - \frac{t^2}{2} + \frac{t^3}{6} + \frac{t^4}{4} - \frac{t^5}{5} - \frac{t^6}{24} + O(t^7),$$

$$\phi_3(t) = -t - \frac{t^2}{2} + \frac{t^4}{12} - \frac{3t^5}{20} + \frac{4t^6}{45} + O(t^7),$$

$$\phi_4(t) = -t - \frac{t^2}{2} + \frac{t^4}{8} - \frac{7t^5}{60} + \frac{t^6}{15} + O(t^7)$$

Section 2.9, page 99

1. $y_n = (-1)^n(0.9)^n y_0$; $\quad y_n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$

2. $y_n = y_0\sqrt{(n+2)(n+1)/2}$; $\quad y_n \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$

3. $y_n = \begin{cases} y_0, & \text{if } n = 4k \text{ or } n = 4k-1; \\ -y_0, & \text{if } n = 4k-2 \text{ or } n = 4k-3; \end{cases}$

y_n has no limit as $n \to \infty$

4. $y_n = (0.5)^n(y_0 - 12) + 12; \quad y_n \to 12$ as $n \to \infty$

5. \$2283.63

6. \$258.14

7. 30 yrs: \$804.62/mo; \$289,663.20 total;
20 yrs: \$899.73/mo; \$215,935.20 total

8. \$103,624.62

9. 9.73%

12. b. $u_n \to -\infty$ as $n \to \infty$

15. a. 4.7263
b. 1.223%
c. 3.5643
e. 3.5699

Miscellaneous Problems, page 100

1. $y = c/x^2 + x^3/5$

2. $2y + \cos y - x - \sin x = c$

3. $x^2 + xy - 3y - y^3 = 0$

4. $y = -3 + ce^{x-x^2}$

5. $x^2y + xy^2 + x = c$

6. $y = x^{-1}\left(1 - e^{1-x}\right)$

7. $y = (4 + \cos 2 - \cos x)/x^2$

8. $x^2y + x + y^2 = c$

9. $x + \ln|x| + x^{-1} + y - 2\ln|y| = c$; also $y = 0$

10. $x^3/3 + xy + e^y = c$

11. $x^2 + 2xy + 2y^2 = 34$

12. $y = c/\cosh^2(x/2)$

13. $e^{-x}\cos y + e^{2y}\sin x = c$

14. $y = ce^{3x} - e^{2x}$

15. $y = e^{-2x}\displaystyle\int_0^x e^{-s^2}\,ds + 3e^{-2x}$

16. $2xy + xy^3 - x^3 = c$

17. $e^x + e^{-y} = c$

18. $2xy^2 + 3x^2y - 4x + y^3 = c$

19. $y = e^{2t}/(3t) + ce^{-t}/t$

20. $e^{-y/x} + \ln|x| = c$

21. $(x^2 + y^2 + 1)e^{-y^2} = c$

22. $\arctan(y/x) - \ln\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = c$

23. $y^2/x^3 + y/x^2 = c$

24. $\dfrac{1}{y} = -x\displaystyle\int_1^x \frac{e^{2s}}{s^2}\,ds + \frac{x}{2}$

26. a. $y = t + (c - t)^{-1}$
b. $y = t^{-1} + 2t(c - t^2)^{-1}$
c. $y = \sin t + \left(c\cos t - \dfrac{1}{2}\sin t\right)^{-1}$

27. a. $v' - (x(t) + b)v = b$
b. $v = \left(b\int \mu(t)\,dt + c\right)/\mu(t), \quad \mu(t) = \exp(-at^2/2 - bt)$

28. $y = c_1t^{-1} + c_2 + \ln t$

29. $y = c_1\ln t + c_2 + t$

30. $y = 1/k\ln|(k - t)/(k + t)| + c_2$ if $c_1 = k^2 > 0$;
$y = 2/k\arctan(t/k) + c_2$ if $c_1 = -k^2 < 0$;
$y = -2t^{-1} + c_2$ if $c_1 = 0$; also $y = c$

31. $y = \pm\dfrac{2}{3}(t - 2c_1)\sqrt{t + c_1} + c_2$; also $y = c$
Hint: $\mu(v) = v^{-3}$ is an integrating factor.

32. $y^2 = c_1t + c_2$

33. $y = c_1\sin(t + c_2) = k_1\sin t + k_2\cos t$

34. $y\ln|y| - y + c_1y + t = c_2$; also $y = c$

35. $e^y = (t + c_2)^2 + c_1$

36. $y = \dfrac{4}{3}(t + 1)^{3/2} - \dfrac{1}{3}$

37. $y = 3\ln t - \dfrac{3}{2}\ln(t^2 + 1) - 5\arctan t + 2 + \dfrac{3}{2}\ln 2 + \dfrac{5}{4}\pi$

Chapter 3

Section 3.1, page 109

1. $y = c_1e^t + c_2e^{-3t}$

2. $y = c_1e^{-t} + c_2e^{-2t}$

3. $y = c_1e^{t/2} + c_2e^{-t/3}$

4. $y = c_1 + c_2e^{-5t}$

5. $y = c_1e^{3t/2} + c_2e^{-3t/2}$

6. $y = c_1\exp\left((1 + \sqrt{3})t\right) + c_2\exp\left((1 - \sqrt{3})t\right)$

7. $y = e^t$; $y \to \infty$ as $t \to \infty$

8. $y = \dfrac{5}{2}e^{-t} - \dfrac{1}{2}e^{-3t}$; $y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$

9. $y = -1 - e^{-3t}$; $y \to -1$ as $t \to \infty$

10. $y = (2/\sqrt{33})\exp\left((-1 + \sqrt{33})t/4\right)$
$- (2/\sqrt{33})\exp\left((-1 - \sqrt{33})t/4\right)$; $y \to \infty$ as $t \to \infty$

11. $y = \dfrac{1}{10}e^{-9(t-1)} + \dfrac{9}{10}e^{t-1}$; $y \to \infty$ as $t \to \infty$

12. $y = -\dfrac{1}{2}e^{(t+2)/2} + \dfrac{3}{2}e^{-(t+2)/2}$; $y \to -\infty$ as $t \to \infty$

13. $y'' + y' - 6y = 0$

14. $y = \dfrac{1}{4}e^t + e^{-t}$; minimum is $y = 1$ at $t = \ln 2$

15. $y = -e^t + 3e^{t/2}$; maximum is $y = 9/4$ at $t = \ln(9/4)$,
$y = 0$ at $t = \ln 9$

16. $\alpha = -2$

17. $y \to 0$ for $\alpha < 0$; y becomes unbounded for $\alpha > 1$

18. $y \to 0$ for $\alpha < 1$; there is no α for which all nonzero solutions become unbounded

19. a. $y = (6 + \beta)e^{-2t} - (4 + \beta)e^{-3t}$
b. $t_m = \ln((12 + 3\beta)/(12 + 2\beta)), \quad y_m = \dfrac{4}{27}(6 + \beta)^3/(4 + \beta)^2$
c. $\beta = 6(1 + \sqrt{3}) \cong 16.3923$
d. $t_m \to \ln(3/2), \quad y_m \to \infty$

20. a. $y = d/c$
b. $aY'' + bY' + cY = 0$

21. a. $b > 0$ and $0 < c < b^2/(4a)$
b. $c < 0$
c. $b < 0$ and $0 < c < b^2/(4a)$

Section 3.2, page 119

1. $-\dfrac{7}{2}e^{t/2}$

2. 1

3. e^{-4t}

4. $-e^{2t}$

5. 0

6. $0 < t < \infty$

7. $0 < t < 4$

8. $0 < t < \infty$

9. $2 < x < 3\pi/2$

11. The equation is nonlinear.

12. The equation is nonhomogeneous.

13. No

14. $3te^{2t} + ce^{2t}$

15. $-4(t\cos t - \sin t)$

16. y_3 and y_4 are a fundamental set of solutions if and only if $a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 \neq 0$.

17. $y_1(t) = \frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} + \frac{2}{3}e^{t}, \quad y_2(t) = -\frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{3}e^{t}$

18. $y_1(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-3(t-1)} + \frac{3}{2}e^{-(t-1)}$, $y_2(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-3(t-1)} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-(t-1)}$

19. Yes

20. Yes

21. Yes

22. b. Yes

c. $\{y_1(t), y_3(t)\}$ and $\{y_1(t), y_4(t)\}$ are fundamental sets of solutions; $\{y_2(t), y_3(t)\}$ and $\{y_4(t), y_5(t)\}$ are not

23. ct^2e^t

24. $c\cos t$

25. $c/(1-x^2)$

27. $2/25$

28. $p(t) = 0$ for all t

30. If t_0 is an inflection point, and $y = \phi(t)$ is a solution, then from the differential equation $p(t_0)\phi'(t_0) + q(t_0)\phi(t_0) = 0$.

32. Yes, $y = c_1e^{-x^2/2}\int_{x_0}^{x} e^{t^2/2}dt + c_2e^{-x^2/2}$

33. Yes, $y = \frac{1}{\mu(x)}\left(c_1\int_{x_0}^{x}\frac{\mu(t)}{t}dt + c_2\right)$, where $\mu(x) = \exp\left(-\int\left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{\cos x}{x}\right)dx\right)$

34. Yes, $y = c_1x^{-1} + c_2x$

36. $x^2\mu'' + 3x\mu' + (1 + x^2 - \nu^2)\mu = 0$

37. $\mu'' - x\mu = 0$

38. The Legendre and Airy equations are self-adjoint.

Section 3.3, page 125

1. $e^2\cos 3 - ie^2\sin 3 \cong -7.3151 - 1.0427i$

2. -1

3. $e^2\cos(\pi/2) - ie^2\sin(\pi/2) = -e^2 i \cong -7.3891i$

4. $2\cos(\ln 2) - 2i\sin(\ln 2) \cong 1.5385 - 1.2779i$

5. $y = c_1e^t\cos t + c_2e^t\sin t$

6. $y = c_1e^t\cos\left(\sqrt{5}\,t\right) + c_2e^t\sin\left(\sqrt{5}\,t\right)$

7. $y = c_1e^{-t}\cos t + c_2e^{-t}\sin t$

8. $y = c_1e^{-3t}\cos(2t) + c_2e^{-3t}\sin(2t)$

9. $y = c_1e^{-t}\cos(t/2) + c_2e^{-t}\sin(t/2)$

10. $y = c_1e^{t/3} + c_2e^{-4t/3}$

11. $y = c_1e^{-2t}\cos(3t/2) + c_2e^{-2t}\sin(3t/2)$

12. $y = \frac{1}{2}\sin(2t)$; steady oscillation

13. $y = -e^{t-\pi/2}\sin 2t$; growing oscillation

14. $y = \left(1 + 2\sqrt{3}\right)\cos t - \left(2 - \sqrt{3}\right)\sin t$; steady oscillation

15. $y = \sqrt{2}\,e^{-(t-\pi/4)}\cos t + \sqrt{2}\,e^{-(t-\pi/4)}\sin t$; decaying oscillation

16. a. $u = 2e^{t/6}\cos\left(\sqrt{23}\,t/6\right) - \left(2/\sqrt{23}\right)e^{t/6}\sin\left(\sqrt{23}\,t/6\right)$

b. $t = 10.7598$

17. a. $u = 2e^{-t/5}\cos\left(\sqrt{34}\,t/5\right) + \left(7/\sqrt{34}\right)e^{-t/5}\sin\left(\sqrt{34}\,t/5\right)$

b. $T = 14.5115$

18. a. $y = 2e^{-t}\cos\left(\sqrt{5}\,t\right) + \left((\alpha+2)/\sqrt{5}\right)e^{-t}\sin\left(\sqrt{5}\,t\right)$

b. $\alpha = 1.50878$

c. $t = \left(\pi - \arctan\left(2\sqrt{5}/(2+\alpha)\right)\right)/\sqrt{5}$

d. $\pi/\sqrt{5}$

26. $y = c_1\cos(\ln t) + c_2\sin(\ln t)$

27. $y = c_1t^{-1} + c_2t^{-2}$

28. $y = c_1t^6 + c_2t^{-1}$

29. $y = c_1t^2 + c_2t^3$

30. $y = c_1t + c_2t^{-3}$

31. $y = c_1t^{-3}\cos(\ln t) + c_2t^{-3}\sin(\ln t)$

32. e. $\dfrac{q'(t) + 2p(t)q(t)}{2(-q(t))^{3/2}}$ must be a constant

33. Yes, $y = c_1\cos x + c_2\sin x, \quad x = \int e^{-t^2/2}dt$

34. No

35. Yes, $y = c_1e^{-t^2/4}\cos\left(\sqrt{3}\,t^2/4\right) + c_2e^{-t^2/4}\sin\left(\sqrt{3}\,t^2/4\right)$

36. $y = c_1\exp\left(\int e^{-t^2/2}\,dt\right) + c_2\exp\left(-\int e^{-t^2/2}\,dt\right)$

Section 3.4, page 132

1. $y = c_1e^t + c_2te^t$

2. $y = c_1e^{-t/3} + c_2te^{-t/3}$

3. $y = c_1e^{-t/2} + c_2e^{3t/2}$

4. $y = c_1e^t\cos(3t) + c_2e^t\sin(3t)$

5. $y = c_1e^{3t} + c_2te^{3t}$

6. $y = c_1e^{-t/4} + c_2e^{-4t}$

7. $y = c_1e^{-3t/4} + c_2te^{-3t/4}$

8. $y = e^{-t/2}\cos(t/2) + c_2e^{-t/2}\sin(t/2)$

9. $y = 2e^{2t/3} - \frac{7}{3}te^{2t/3}, \quad y \to -\infty$ as $t \to \infty$

10. $y = 2te^{3t}, \quad y \to \infty$ as $t \to \infty$

11. $y = 7e^{-2(t+1)} + 5te^{-2(t+1)}, \quad y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$

12. $y = 2e^{t/2} + (b-1)te^{t/2}; \quad b = 1$

13. a. $y = e^{-t/2} + \frac{5}{2}te^{-t/2}$

b. $t_M = \frac{8}{5}, \quad y_M = 5e^{-4/5} \cong 2.24664$

c. $y = e^{-t/2} + \left(b + \frac{1}{2}\right)te^{-t/2}$

d. $t_M = 4b/(1+2b) \to 2$ as $b \to \infty$; $y_M = (1+2b)\exp(-2b/(1+2b)) \to \infty$ as $b \to \infty$

18. $y_2(t) = t^3$

19. $y_2(t) = t^{-2}$

20. $y_2(t) = t^{-1}\ln t$

21. $y_2(x) = \cos x^2$

22. $y_2(x) = x^{-1/2}\cos x$

23. $y = c_1e^{-\delta x^2/2}\int_0^x e^{\delta s^2/2}ds + c_2e^{-\delta x^2/2}$

24. $y_2(t) = y_1(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} y_1^{-2}(s)\exp\left(-\int_{s_0}^{s} p(r)\,dr\right)ds$

25. $y_2(t) = t^{-1} \ln t$

26. $y_2(t) = \cos t^2$

27. $y_2(x) = x^{-1/2} \cos x$

29. **b.** $y_0 + (a/b)y_0'$

31. $y = c_1 t^2 + c_2 t^2 \ln t$

32. $y = c_1 t^{-1/2} + c_2 t^{-1/2} \ln t$

33. $y = c_1 t^{-1} + c_2 t^{-1} \ln t$

34. $y = c_1 t^{3/2} + c_2 t^{3/2} \ln t$

Section 3.5, page 141

1. $y = c_1 e^{3t} + c_2 e^{-t} - e^{2t}$

2. $y = c_1 e^{-t} + c_2 e^{2t} - \frac{7}{2} + 3t - 2t^2$

3. $y = c_1 e^{2t} + c_2 e^{-3t} + 2e^{3t} - 3e^{-2t}$

4. $y = c_1 e^{3t} + c_2 e^{-t} + \frac{3}{16} te^{-t} + \frac{3}{8} t^2 e^{-t}$

5. $y = c_1 + c_2 e^{-2t} + \frac{3}{2}t - \frac{1}{2}\sin(2t) - \frac{1}{2}\cos(2t)$

6. $y = c_1 e^{-t} + c_2 te^{-t} + t^2 e^{-t}$

7. $y = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t - \frac{1}{3} t\cos(2t) - \frac{5}{9}\sin(2t)$

8. $u = c_1 \cos(\omega_0 t) + c_2 \sin(\omega_0 t) + \left(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2\right)^{-1} \cos(\omega t)$

9. $u = c_1 \cos(\omega_0 t) + c_2 \sin(\omega_0 t) + 1/\left(2\omega_0\right) t \sin(\omega_0 t)$

10. $y = c_1 e^{-t/2} \cos\left(\sqrt{15}\, t/2\right) + c_2 e^{-t/2} \sin\left(\sqrt{15}\, t/2\right)$
$+ \frac{1}{6} e^t - \frac{1}{4} e^{-t}$

11. $y = e^t - \frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} - t - \frac{1}{2}$

12. $y = \frac{7}{10}\sin(2t) - \frac{19}{40}\cos(2t) + \frac{1}{4}t^2 - \frac{1}{8} + \frac{3}{5}e^t$

13. $y = 4te^t - 3e^t + \frac{1}{6}t^3 e^t + 4$

14. $y = 2\cos(2t) - \frac{1}{8}\sin(2t) - \frac{3}{4} t\cos(2t)$

15. $y = e^{-t}\cos(2t) + \frac{1}{2} e^{-t}\sin(2t) + te^{-t}\sin(2t)$

16. **a.** $Y(t) = t(A_0 t^4 + A_1 t^3 + A_2 t^2 + A_3 t + A_4)$
$+ t(B_0 t^2 + B_1 t + B_2)e^{-3t} + D\sin 3t + E\cos 3t$
b. $A_0 = 2/15,\ A_1 = -2/9,\ A_2 = 8/27,\ A_3 = -8/27,$
$A_4 = 16/81,\ B_0 = -1/9,\ B_1 = -1/9,\ B_2 = -2/27,$
$D = -1/18,\ E = -1/18$

17. **a.** $Y(t) = e^t(A\cos 2t + B\sin 2t) + (D_0 t + D_1)e^{2t}\sin t$
$+ (E_0 t + E_1)e^{2t}\cos t$
b. $A = -1/20,\ B = -3/20,\ D_0 = -3/2,\ D_1 = -5,$
$E_0 = 3/2,\ E_1 = 1/2$

18. **a.** $Y(t) = Ae^{-t} + t(B_0 t^2 + B_1 t + B_2)e^{-t}\cos t$
$+ t(D_0 t^2 + D_1 t + D_2)e^{-t}\sin t$
b. $A = 3,\ B_0 = -2/3,\ B_1 = 0,\ B_2 = 1,\ D_0 = 0,$
$D_1 = 1,\ D_2 = 1$

19. **a.** $Y(t) = t(A_0 t^2 + A_1 t + A_2)\sin(2t)$
$+ t(B_0 t^2 + B_1 t + B_2)\cos(2t)$
b. $A_0 = 0,\ A_1 = 13/16,\ A_2 = 7/4,\ B_0 = -1/12,$
$B_1 = 0,\ B_2 = 13/32$

20. **a.** $Y(t) = (A_0 t^2 + A_1 t + A_2)e^t \sin(2t)$
$+ (B_0 t^2 + B_1 t + B_2)e^t \cos(2t) + e^{-t}(D\cos t + E\sin t) + Fe^t$
b. $A_0 = 1/52,\ A_1 = 10/169,\ A_2 = -1233/35{,}152,$
$B_0 = -5/52,\ B_1 = 73/676,\ B_2 = -4105/35{,}152,$
$D = -3/2,\ E = 3/2,\ F = 2/3$

21. **a.** $Y(t) = t(A_0 t + A_1)e^{-t}\cos 2t + t(B_0 t + B_1)e^{-t}\sin 2t$
$+ (D_0 t + D_1)e^{-2t}\cos t + (E_0 t + E_1)e^{-2t}\sin t$
b. $A_0 = 0,\ A_1 = 3/16,\ B_0 = 3/8,\ B_1 = 0,$
$D_0 = -2/5,\ D_1 = -7/25,\ E_0 = 1/5,\ E_1 = 1/25$

22. **b.** $w = -\frac{2}{5} + c_1 e^{5t}$

23. $y = c_1 \cos \lambda t + c_2 \sin \lambda t + \sum_{m=1}^{N} \left(a_m / \left(\lambda^2 - m^2\pi^2\right)\right) \sin(m\pi t)$

24. $y = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t \le \pi \\ -(1 + \pi/2)\sin t - (\pi/2)\cos t + (\pi/2)e^{\pi - t}, & t > \pi \end{cases}$

25. No

28. $y = c_1 e^{4t} + c_2 e^{-t} - \frac{1}{2} e^{2t}$

Section 3.6, page 146

1. $Y(t) = e^t$

2. $Y(t) = -\frac{2}{3} te^{-t}$

3. $Y(t) = 2t^2 e^{t/2}$

4. $y = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t - (\cos t)\ln(\tan t + \sec t)$

5. $y = c_1 \cos(3t) + c_2 \sin(3t) + \sin(3t)\ln(\tan(3t) + \sec(3t)) - 1$

6. $y = c_1 e^{-2t} + c_2 te^{-2t} - e^{-2t}\ln t$

7. $y = c_1 \cos(t/2) + c_2 \sin(t/2) + t\sin(t/2) +$
$2(\ln(\cos(t/2))\cos(t/2)$

8. $y = c_1 e^t + c_2 te^t - \frac{1}{2} e^t \ln(1 + t^2) + te^t \arctan t$

9. $y = c_1 e^{2t} + c_2 e^{3t} + \int \left(e^{3(t-s)} - e^{2(t-s)}\right) g(s)ds$

10. $Y(t) = \frac{1}{2} + t^2 \ln(t)$

11. $Y(t) = -2t^2$

12. $Y(t) = \frac{1}{2}(t - 1)e^{2t}$

13. $Y(x) = \frac{1}{6} x^2 (\ln x)^3$

14. $Y(x) = -\frac{3}{2} x^{1/2} \cos x$

15. $Y(x) = x^{-1/2} \int t^{-3/2} \sin(x - t) g(t) dt$

18. **b.** $y = y_0 \cos t + y_0' \sin t + \int_{t_0}^{t} \sin(t - s) g(s) ds$

19. $y = (b - a)^{-1} \int_{t_0}^{t} [e^{b(t-s)} - e^{a(t-s)}]\, g(s) ds$

20. $y = \mu^{-1} \int_{t_0}^{t} e^{\lambda(t-s)} \sin \mu(t - s) g(s) ds$

21. $y = \int_{t_0}^{t} (t - s)e^{a(t-s)} g(s) ds$

24. $y = c_1 t + c_2 t^2 + 4t^2 \ln t$

25. $y = c_1 t^{-1} + c_2 t^{-5} + \frac{1}{12} t$

26. $y = c_1(1 + t) + c_2 e^t + \frac{1}{2}(t - 1)e^{2t}$

Section 3.7, page 157

1. $u = 5\cos(2t - \delta), \quad \delta = \arctan(4/3) \cong 0.9273$

2. $u = \sqrt{13}\cos(\pi t - \delta), \quad \delta = \pi + \arctan(3/2) \cong 4.1244$

3. $u = \frac{5}{7}\sin(14t)$ cm, t in s; $\quad t = \pi/14$ s

4. $u = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}} \sin\left(8\sqrt{2}\, t\right) - \frac{1}{12}\cos\left(8\sqrt{2}\, t\right)$ ft, t in s;
$\omega = 8\sqrt{2}$ rad/s, $T = \pi/(4\sqrt{2})$ s, $\quad R = \sqrt{11/288} \cong 0.1954$ ft,
$\delta = \pi - \arctan(3/\sqrt{2}) \cong 2.0113$

5. $u = e^{-10t}\left(2\cos\left(4\sqrt{6}\,t\right) + \left(5/\sqrt{6}\right)\ \sin\left(4\sqrt{6}\,t\right)\right)$ cm,
t in s; $\mu = 4\sqrt{6}$ rad/s, $T_d = \pi/2\sqrt{6}$ s,
$T_d/T = 7/(2\sqrt{6}) \cong 1.4289$, $\tau \cong 0.4045$ s

6. $u \cong 0.057198e^{-0.15t}\cos(3.87008\,t - 0.50709)$ m, t in s;
$\mu = 3.87008$ rad/s, $\mu/\omega_0 = 3.87008/\sqrt{15} \cong 0.99925$

7. $Q = 10^{-6}\left(2e^{-500t} - e^{-1000t}\right)$ C; t in s

8. $\gamma = \sqrt{20/9} \cong 1.4907$

11. a. $r = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$, $r\cos\theta = B$, $r\sin\theta = -A$
b. $R = r$; $\delta = \theta + (4n+1)\pi/2, n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

12. $R = 10^3\ \Omega$

14. $v_0 < -\gamma u_0/(2m)$

16. $2\pi/\sqrt{31}$

17. $k = 6$, $v = \pm 2\sqrt{5}$

18. a. $u(t) = e^{-\gamma t/2m}$
$\times\left(u_0\sqrt{4km - \gamma^2}\cos(\mu t) + (2mv_0 + \gamma u_0)\sin(\mu t)\right)/\sqrt{4km - \gamma^2}$
b. $R^2 = 4m\left(ku_0^2 + \gamma u_0 v_0 + mv_0^2\right)/\left(4km - \gamma^2\right)$

19. $\rho l u'' + \rho_0 g u = 0$, $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\rho l/\rho_0 g}$

20. a. $u = \sqrt{2}\sin\left(\sqrt{2}\,t\right)$
c. clockwise

21. a. $u = (16/\sqrt{127})e^{-t/8}\sin\left(\sqrt{127}\,t/8\right)$
c. clockwise

22. b. $u = a\cos\left(\sqrt{k/m}\,t\right) + b\sqrt{m/k}\sin\left(\sqrt{k/m}\,t\right)$

24. b. $u = \sin t$, $A = 1$, $T = 2\pi$
c. $A = 0.98$, $T = 6.07$
d. $\epsilon = 0.2$, $A = 0.96$, $T = 5.90$; $\epsilon = 0.3$, $A = 0.94$, $T = 5.74$
f. $\epsilon = -0.1$, $A = 1.03$, $T = 6.55$; $\epsilon = -0.2$, $A = 1.06$, $T = 6.90$; $\epsilon = -0.3, A = 1.11$, $T = 7.41$

Section 3.8, page 167

1. $2\sin(t/2)\cos(13t/2)$

2. $2\cos(3\pi t/2)\cos(\pi t/2)$

3. $2\sin(7t/2)\cos(t/2)$

4. $u'' + 10u' + 98u = 2\sin(t/2)$, $u(0) = 0$, $u'(0) = 0.03$,
u in m, t in s

5. a. $u = \dfrac{1}{153,281}\left(160e^{-5t}\cos\left(\sqrt{73}\,t\right)\right.$
$\left.+\dfrac{383,443}{7300}e^{-5t}\sin(\sqrt{73}\,t) - 160\cos(t/2) + 3128\sin(t/2)\right)$
b. The first two terms are the transient solution.
d. $\omega = 4\sqrt{3}$ rad/s

6. $u = \cos(8t) + \sin(8t) - 8t\cos(8t)/4$ ft, t in sec;
$1/8, \pi/8, \pi/4, 3\pi/8$ s

7. a. $\dfrac{8}{901}\left(30\cos(2t) + \sin(2t)\right)$ ft, t in s
b. $m = 4$ slugs

8. $u = \left(\sqrt{2}/6\right)\cos(3t - 3\pi/4)$ m, t in s

11. $u = \begin{cases} F_0(t - \sin t), & 0 \le t \le \pi \\ F_0((2\pi - t) - 3\sin t), & \pi < t \le 2\pi \\ -4F_0\sin t, & 2\pi < t < \infty \end{cases}$

13. a. $u = 3(\cos t - \cos(\omega t))/(\omega^2 - 1)$

14. a. $u = ((\omega^2 + 2)\cos t - 3\cos(\omega t))/(\omega^2 - 1) + \sin t$

Chapter 4

Section 4.1, page 173

1. $-\infty < t < \infty$

2. $t > 1$, or $0 < t < 1$, or $t < 0$

3. $\ldots, -3\pi/2 < x < -\pi/2$, $-\pi/2 < x < 1$,
$1 < x < \pi/2$, $\pi/2 < x < 3\pi/2, \ldots$

4. $-\infty < x < -2$, $-2 < x < 2$, $2 < x < \infty$

5. Linearly independent

6. Linearly dependent; $f_1(t) + 3f_2(t) - 2f_3(t) = 0$

7. Linearly dependent; $2f_1(t) + 13f_2(t) - 3f_3(t) - 7f_4(t) = 0$

8. 1

9. $-6e^{-2t}$

10. $6x$

11. $6/x$

12. $\sin^2 t = \dfrac{1}{2} - \dfrac{1}{2}\cos(2t)$

14. a. $a_0(n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 1) + a_1(n(n-1)\cdots 2)t + \cdots + a_n t^n$
b. $(a_0 r^n + a_1 r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n)e^{rt}$
c. $e^t, e^{-t}, e^{2t}, e^{-2t}$; yes, $W[e^t, e^{-t}, e^{2t}, e^{-2t}] \neq 0$,
$-\infty < t < \infty$

16. $W(t) = ce^{-2t}$

17. $W(t) = c/t^2$

20. $y = c_1 e^t + c_2 t + c_3 t e^t$

21. $y = c_1 t^2 + c_2 t^3 + c_3(t + 1)$

Section 4.2, page 180

1. $\sqrt{2}\exp(i(\pi/4) + 2m\pi))$

2. $2\exp(i(2\pi/3 + 2m\pi))$

3. $3\exp(i(\pi + 2m\pi))$

4. $2\exp(i(11\pi/6) + 2m\pi)$

5. 1, $\dfrac{1}{2}\left(-1 + i\sqrt{3}\right)$, $\dfrac{1}{2}\left(-1 - i\sqrt{3}\right)$

6. $2^{1/4}e^{-\pi i/8}$, $2^{1/4}e^{7\pi i/8}$

7. $\left(\sqrt{3} + i\right)/\sqrt{2}$, $-\left(\sqrt{3} + i\right)/\sqrt{2}$

8. $y = c_1 e^t + c_2 t e^t + c_3 e^{-t}$

9. $y = c_1 e^t + c_2 t e^t + c_3 t^2 e^t$

10. $y = c_1 + c_2 t + c_3 e^{2t} + c_4 t e^{2t}$

11. $y = c_1\cos t + c_2\sin t + e^{\sqrt{3}t/2}\left(c_3\cos\left(\dfrac{t}{2}\right) + c_4\sin\left(\dfrac{t}{2}\right)\right)$
$+ e^{-\sqrt{3}t/2}\left(c_5\cos\left(\dfrac{t}{2}\right) + c_6\sin\left(\dfrac{t}{2}\right)\right)$

12. $y = c_1 e^t + c_2 t e^t + c_3 t^2 e^t + c_4 e^{-t} + c_5 t e^{-t} + c_6 t^2 e^{-t}$

13. $y = c_1 + c_2 t + c_3 e^t + c_4 e^{-t} + c_5\cos t + c_6\sin t$

14. $y = c_1 + c_2 e^t + c_3 e^{2t} + c_4\cos t + c_5\sin t$

15. $y = e^t((c_1 + c_2 t)\cos t + (c_3 + c_4 t)\sin t)$
$+ e^{-t}((c_5 + c_6 t)\cos t + (c_7 + c_8 t)\sin t)$

16. $y = (c_1 + c_2 t)\cos t + (c_3 + c_4 t)\sin t$

17. $y = c_1 e^{-t} + c_2 e^{\left(-2+\sqrt{2}\right)t} + c_3 e^{\left(-2-\sqrt{2}\right)t}$

18. $y = c_1 e^{3t} + c_2 e^{-2t} + c_3 e^{\left(3+\sqrt{3}\right)t} + c_4 e^{\left(3-\sqrt{3}\right)t}$

19. $y = c_1 e^{-t/3} + c_2 e^{-t/4} + c_3 e^{-t}\cos(2t) + c_4 e^{-t}\sin(2t)$

20. $y = 2 - 2\cos t + \sin t$

21. $y = \frac{1}{2}e^{-t/\sqrt{2}}\sin\left(t/\sqrt{2}\right) - \frac{1}{2}e^{t/\sqrt{2}}\sin\left(t/\sqrt{2}\right)$

22. $y = 2t - 3$

23. $y = -\frac{2}{3}e^{t} - \frac{1}{10}e^{2t} - \frac{1}{6}e^{-2t} - \frac{16}{15}e^{-t/2}$

24. $y = \frac{2}{13}e^{-t} + \frac{24}{13}e^{t/2}\cos t + \frac{3}{13}e^{t/2}\sin t$

25. $y = 8 - 18e^{-t/3} + 8e^{-t/2}$

26. $y = \frac{95}{32}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{32}e^{t} + \frac{1}{2}\cos t - \frac{17}{16}\sin t$

27. $y = \frac{1}{2}(\cosh t - \cos t) + \frac{1}{2}(\sinh t - \sin t)$

28. **a.** $W(t) = c$, a constant
b. $W(t) = -8$
c. $W(t) = 4$

29. **b.** $u_1 = c_1\cos t + c_2\sin t + c_3\cos\left(\sqrt{6}\,t\right) + c_4\sin\left(\sqrt{6}\,t\right)$

Section 4.3, page 184

1. $y = c_1e^{t} + c_2te^{t} + c_3e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}te^{-t} + 3$

2. $y = c_1e^{t} + c_2e^{-t} + c_3\cos t + c_4\sin t - 3t - \frac{1}{4}t\sin t$

3. $y = c_1e^{-t} + c_2\cos t + c_3\sin t + \frac{1}{2}te^{-t} + 4(t-1)$

4. $y = c_1 + c_2t + c_3e^{-2t} + c_4e^{2t} - \frac{1}{3}e^{t} - \frac{1}{48}t^4 - \frac{1}{16}t^2$

5. $y = c_1\cos t + c_2\sin t + c_3t\cos t + c_4t\sin t + 3 + \frac{1}{9}\cos 2t$

6. $y = c_1 + c_2t + c_3t^2 + c_4e^{-t}$
$+ e^{t/2}\left(c_5\cos\left(\sqrt{3}\,t/2\right) + c_6\sin\left(\sqrt{3}\,t/2\right)\right) + \frac{1}{24}t^4$

7. $y = \frac{3}{16}(1 - \cos(2t)) + \frac{1}{8}t^2$

8. $y = (t-4)\cos t - \left(\frac{3}{2}t + 4\right)\sin t + 3t + 4$

9. $y = -\frac{2}{5}\cos t - \frac{4}{5}\sin t + \frac{1}{20}e^{-t} + \frac{81}{40}e^{t} + \frac{73}{520}e^{-3t}$
$+ \frac{77}{65}\cos(2t) - \frac{49}{130}\sin(2t)$

10. $Y(t) = t(A_0t^3 + A_1t^2 + A_2t + A_3) + Bt^2e^{t}$

11. $Y(t) = t(A_0t + A_1)e^{-t} + B\cos t + C\sin t$

12. $Y(t) = t(A_0t^2 + A_1t + A_2) + (B_0t + B_1)\cos t + (C_0t + C_1)\sin t$

13. $Y(t) = Ae^{t} + (B_0t + B_1)e^{-t} + te^{-t}(C\cos t + D\sin t)$

14. $k_0 = a_0, \quad k_n = a_0\alpha^n + a_1\alpha^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1}\alpha + a_n$

Section 4.4, page 188

1. $y = c_1 + c_2\cos t + c_3\sin t - \ln\cos t - (\sin t)\ln(\sec t + \tan t)$

2. $y = c_1 + c_2e^{t} + c_3e^{-t} - \frac{1}{2}t^2$

3. $y = c_1e^{t} + c_2e^{-t} + c_3e^{2t} + \frac{1}{30}e^{4t}$

4. $y = c_1e^{t} + c_2\cos t + c_3\sin t - \frac{1}{5}e^{-t}\cos t$

5. $y = c_1e^{t} + c_2\cos t + c_3\sin t - \frac{1}{2}(\cos t)\ln\cos t$
$+ \frac{1}{2}(\sin t)\ln\cos t - \frac{1}{2}t\cos t - \frac{1}{2}t\sin t + \frac{1}{2}e^{t}\int_{t_0}^{t}(e^{-s}/\cos s)ds$

6. $y(t) = y_c(t) + y_p(t)$
$= c_1 + c_2e^{t} + c_3e^{-t} + \ln\left|\frac{\csc(t) + \cot(t)}{\csc(t_0) + \cot(t_0)}\right| + \frac{e^{t}}{2}\int_{t_0}^{t}e^{-s}\csc(s)ds +$
$\frac{e^{-t}}{2}\int_{t_0}^{t}e^{s}\csc(s)ds$

7. $c_1 = \frac{3}{2},\ c_2 = \frac{1}{2},\ c_3 = -\frac{5}{2},\ t_0 = 0$

8. $y = 3 + \ln(2)/2 - e^{-(t-\pi/4)} - \ln|\sec(t)|$
$+ \frac{e^{t}}{2}\int_{\pi/4}^{t}e^{-s}\tan(s)ds + \frac{e^{-t}}{2}\int_{\pi/4}^{t}e^{s}\tan(s)ds$

9. $Y(x) = x^4/15$

10. $Y(t) = \frac{1}{2}\int_{t_0}^{t}(e^{t-s} - \sin(t-s) - \cos(t-s))g(s)ds$

11. $Y(t) = \frac{1}{2}\int_{t_0}^{t}(\sinh(t-s) - \sin(t-s))g(s)ds$

12. $Y(t) = \frac{1}{2}\int_{t_0}^{t}e^{(t-s)}(t-s)^2g(s)ds; \quad Y(t) = -te^{t}\ln|t|$

Chapter 5

Section 5.1, page 195

1. $\rho = 1$

2. $\rho = 2$

3. $\rho = \infty$

4. $\rho = \frac{1}{2}$

5. $\rho = 1$

6. $\rho = 3$

7. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}, \quad \rho = \infty$

8. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{x^n}{n!}, \quad \rho = \infty$

9. $1 + (x-1), \quad \rho = \infty$

10. $1 - 2(x+1) + (x+1)^2, \quad \rho = \infty$

11. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{n+1}\frac{(x-1)^n}{n}, \quad \rho = 1$

12. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}x^n, \quad \rho = 1$

13. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n+1}(x-2)^n, \quad \rho = 1$

14. **a.** $y' = 1 + 2^2x + 3^2x^2 + 4^2x^3 + \cdots + (n+1)^2x^n + \cdots,$
b. $y'' = 2^2 + 3^2\cdot 2x + 4^2\cdot 3x^2 + 5^2\cdot 4x^3 + \cdots + (n+2)^2(n+1)x^n + \cdots$

15. **a.** $y' = a_1 + 2a_2x + 3a_3x^2 + 4a_4x^3 + \cdots + (n+1)a_{n+1}x^n + \cdots$
$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}na_nx^{n-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+1)a_{n+1}x^n,$
$y'' = 2a_2 + 6a_3x + 12a_4x^2 + 20a_5x^3 + \cdots + (n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}x^n + \cdots$
$= \sum_{n=2}^{\infty}n(n-1)a_nx^{n-2} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}x^n$

18. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2}x^n$

19. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+1)a_nx^n$

20. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}((n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2} + na_n)x^n$

21. $a_1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}((n+1)a_{n+1} + a_{n-1})x^n$

22. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}((n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2} + a_n)x^n$

23. $a_n = (-2)^na_0/n!, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots; \quad a_0e^{-2x}$

Section 5.2, page 204

1. a. $a_{n+2} = a_n/(n+2)(n+1)$

b, d. $y_1(x) = 1 + \dfrac{x^2}{2!} + \dfrac{x^4}{4!} + \dfrac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots = \displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \dfrac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} = \cosh x,$

$y_2(x) = x + \dfrac{x^3}{3!} + \dfrac{x^5}{5!} + \dfrac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots = \displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \dfrac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} = \sinh x$

2. a. $a_{n+2} = \dfrac{-3}{n+2} a_{n+1}$

b, d. $y_1 = 1, y_2 = x + \dfrac{(-3)^1}{2!}x^2 + \dfrac{(-3)^2}{3!}x^3 + \dfrac{(-3)^3}{4!}x^4 + \cdots$

$= \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \dfrac{(-3)^{n-1}x^n}{n!} = \dfrac{1}{3}(1 - e^{3x})$

3. a. $a_{n+2} = a_n/(n+2)$

b, d. $y_1(x) = 1 + \dfrac{x^2}{2} + \dfrac{x^4}{2 \cdot 4} + \dfrac{x^6}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} + \cdots = \displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \dfrac{x^{2n}}{2^n n!},$

$y_2(x) = x + \dfrac{x^3}{3} + \dfrac{x^5}{3 \cdot 5} + \dfrac{x^7}{3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7} + \cdots = \displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \dfrac{2^n n! x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}$

4. a. $(n+2)a_{n+2} - a_{n+1} - a_n = 0$

b. $y_1(x) = 1 + \dfrac{1}{2}(x-1)^2 + \dfrac{1}{6}(x-1)^3 + \dfrac{1}{6}(x-1)^4 + \cdots,$

$y_2(x) = (x-1) + \dfrac{1}{2}(x-1)^2 + \dfrac{1}{2}(x-1)^3 + \dfrac{1}{4}(x-1)^4 + \cdots$

5. a. $a_{n+4} = -k^2 a_n/((n+4)(n+3)); \quad a_2 = a_3 = 0$

b, d. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{k^2x^4}{3 \cdot 4} + \dfrac{k^4x^8}{3 \cdot 4 \cdot 7 \cdot 8} - \dfrac{k^6x^{12}}{3 \cdot 4 \cdot 7 \cdot 8 \cdot 11 \cdot 12} + \cdots$

$= 1 + \displaystyle\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \dfrac{(-1)^{m+1}(k^2x^4)^{m+1}}{3 \cdot 4 \cdot 7 \cdot 8 \cdots (4m+3)(4m+4)},$

$y_2(x) = x - \dfrac{k^2x^5}{4 \cdot 5} + \dfrac{k^4x^9}{4 \cdot 5 \cdot 8 \cdot 9} - \dfrac{k^6x^{13}}{4 \cdot 5 \cdot 8 \cdot 9 \cdot 12 \cdot 13} + \cdots$

$= x\left(1 + \displaystyle\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \dfrac{(-1)^{m+1}(k^2x^4)^{m+1}}{4 \cdot 5 \cdot 8 \cdot 9 \cdots (4m+4)(4m+5)}\right)$

Hint: Let $n = 4m$ in the recurrence relation, $m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$.

6. a. $(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2} - n(n+1)a_{n+1} + a_n = 0, \quad n \geq 1;$
$a_2 = -\dfrac{1}{2}a_0$

b. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 - \dfrac{1}{6}x^3 - \dfrac{1}{24}x^4 + \cdots,$

$y_2(x) = x - \dfrac{1}{6}x^3 - \dfrac{1}{12}x^4 - \dfrac{1}{24}x^5 + \cdots$

7. a. $a_{n+2} = -a_n/(n+1), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

b. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{x^2}{1} + \dfrac{x^4}{1 \cdot 3} - \dfrac{x^6}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5} + \cdots$

$= 1 + \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \dfrac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)},$

$y_2(x) = x - \dfrac{x^3}{2} + \dfrac{x^5}{2 \cdot 4} - \dfrac{x^7}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} + \cdots$

$= x + \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \dfrac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdots (2n)}$

8. a. $a_{n+2} = -((n+1)^2 a_{n+1} + a_n + a_{n-1})/((n+1)(n+2)),$
$n = 1, 2, \ldots, \quad a_2 = -(a_0 + a_1)/2$

b. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{1}{2}(x-1)^2 + \dfrac{1}{6}(x-1)^3 - \dfrac{1}{12}(x-1)^4 + \cdots,$

$y_2(x) = (x-1) - \dfrac{1}{2}(x-1)^2 + \dfrac{1}{6}(x-1)^3 - \dfrac{1}{6}(x-1)^4 + \cdots$

9. a. $3(n+2)a_{n+2} - (n+1)a_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

b, d. $y_1(x) = 1 + \dfrac{x^2}{6} + \dfrac{x^4}{24} + \dfrac{5}{432}x^6$

$+ \cdots + \dfrac{3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)}{3^n \cdot 2 \cdot 4 \cdots (2n)}x^{2n} + \cdots,$

$y_2(x) = x + \dfrac{2}{9}x^3 + \dfrac{8}{135}x^5 + \dfrac{16}{945}x^7$

$+ \cdots + \dfrac{2 \cdot 4 \cdots (2n)}{3^n \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n+1)}x^{2n+1} + \cdots$

10. a. $2(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2} + (n+3)a_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

b, d. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{3}{4}x^2 + \dfrac{5}{32}x^4 - \dfrac{7}{384}x^6$

$+ \cdots + (-1)^n \dfrac{3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n+1)}{2^n(2n)!}x^{2n} + \cdots,$

$y_2(x) = x - \dfrac{x^3}{3} + \dfrac{x^5}{20} - \dfrac{x^7}{210}$

$+ \cdots + (-1)^n \dfrac{4 \cdot 6 \cdots (2n+2)}{2^n(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1} + \cdots$

11. a. $2(n+2)(n+1)a_{n+2} + 3(n+1)a_{n+1} + (n+3)a_n = 0,$
$n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

b. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{3}{4}(x-2)^2 + \dfrac{3}{8}(x-2)^3 + \dfrac{1}{64}(x-2)^4 + \cdots,$

$y_2(x) = (x-2) - \dfrac{3}{4}(x-2)^2 + \dfrac{1}{24}(x-2)^3 + \dfrac{9}{64}(x-2)^4 + \cdots$

12. a. $y = 2 + x + x^2 + \dfrac{1}{3}x^3 + \dfrac{1}{4}x^4 + \cdots$

c. about $|x| < 0.7$

13. a. $y = 4 - x - 4x^2 + \dfrac{1}{2}x^3 + \dfrac{4}{3}x^4 + \cdots$

c. about $|x| < 0.5$

14. a. $y = -3 + 2x - \dfrac{3}{2}x^2 - \dfrac{1}{2}x^3 - \dfrac{1}{8}x^4 + \cdots$

c. about $|x| < 0.9$

15. a. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{1}{3}(x-1)^3 - \dfrac{1}{12}(x-1)^4 + \dfrac{1}{18}(x-1)^6 + \cdots,$

$y_2(x) = (x-1) - \dfrac{1}{4}(x-1)^4 - \dfrac{1}{20}(x-1)^5 + \dfrac{1}{28}(x-1)^7 + \cdots$

16. *Hint:* Consider using induction.

18. a. $y_1(x) = 1 - \dfrac{\lambda}{2!}x^2 + \dfrac{\lambda(\lambda-4)}{4!}x^4 - \dfrac{\lambda(\lambda-4)(\lambda-8)}{6!}x^6$

$+ \cdots, y_2(x) = x - \dfrac{\lambda-2}{3!}x^3 + \dfrac{(\lambda-2)(\lambda-6)}{5!}x^5$

$- \dfrac{(\lambda-2)(\lambda-6)(\lambda-10)}{7!}x^7 + \cdots$

b. $1, \ x, \ 1-2x^2, \ x - \dfrac{2}{3}x^3, \ 1 - 4x^2 + \dfrac{4}{3}x^4, \ x - \dfrac{4}{3}x^3 + \dfrac{4}{15}x^5$

c. $1, \ 2x, \ 4x^2 - 2, \ 8x^3 - 12x, \ 16x^4 - 48x^2 + 12,$
$32x^5 - 160x^3 + 120x$

19. b. $y = x - x^3/6 + \cdots$

Section 5.3, page 209

1. $\phi''(0) = -1, \quad \phi'''(0) = 0, \quad \phi^{(4)}(0) = 3$

2. $\phi''(1) = 0, \quad \phi'''(1) = -6, \quad \phi^{(4)}(1) = 42$

3. $\phi''(0) = 0, \quad \phi'''(0) = -a_0, \quad \phi^{(4)}(0) = -4a_1$

4. $\rho = \infty, \quad \rho = \infty$

5. $\rho = 1, \quad \rho = 3, \quad \rho = 1$

6. $\rho = 1, \quad \rho = \sqrt{3}$

7. a. $\rho = \infty$

b. $\rho = \infty$

c. $\rho = \infty$

d. $\rho = \infty$

e. $\rho = 1$

f. $\rho = \sqrt{2}$

g. $\rho = \infty$

h. $\rho = 1$

i. $\rho = 1$

j. $\rho = 2$

k. $\rho = \sqrt{3}$

l. $\rho = 1$
m. $\rho = \infty$
n. $\rho = \infty$

8. **a.** $y_1(x) = 1 - \frac{\alpha^2}{2!}x^2 - \frac{(2^2-\alpha^2)\alpha^2}{4!}x^4 - \frac{(4^2-\alpha^2)(2^2-\alpha^2)\alpha^2}{6!}x^6 - \cdots$
$- \frac{((2m-2)^2-\alpha^2)\cdots(2^2-\alpha^2)\alpha^2}{(2m)!}x^{2m} - \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = x + \frac{1-\alpha^2}{3!}x^3 + \frac{(3^2-\alpha^2)(1-\alpha^2)}{5!}x^5 + \cdots$
$+ \frac{((2m-1)^2-\alpha^2)\cdots(1-\alpha^2)}{(2m+1)!}x^{2m+1} + \cdots$
b. $y_1(x)$ or $y_2(x)$ terminates with x^n as $\alpha = n$ is even or odd
c. $n = 0,\ y = 1;\quad n = 1,\ y = x;\quad n = 2,\ y = 1 - 2x^2;$ $n = 3,\ y = x - \frac{4}{3}x^3$

9. $y_1(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{6}x^3 + \frac{1}{120}x^5 + \frac{1}{180}x^6 + \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = x - \frac{1}{12}x^4 + \frac{1}{180}x^6 + \frac{1}{504}x^7 + \cdots,\ \rho = \infty$

10. $y_1(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{6}x^3 + \frac{1}{12}x^4 - \frac{1}{40}x^5 + \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = x - \frac{1}{12}x^4 + \frac{1}{20}x^5 - \frac{1}{60}x^6 + \cdots,\quad \rho = \infty$

11. $y_1(x) = 1 + x^2 + \frac{1}{12}x^4 + \frac{1}{120}x^6 + \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = x + \frac{1}{6}x^3 + \frac{1}{60}x^5 + \frac{1}{560}x^7 + \cdots,\ \rho = \pi/2$

12. Cannot specify arbitrary initial conditions at $x = 0$; hence $x = 0$ is a singular point.

13. $y = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \cdots = e^x$

14. $y = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{2\cdot 4} + \frac{x^6}{2\cdot 4\cdot 6} + \cdots + \frac{x^{2n}}{2^n\cdot n!} + \cdots$

15. $y = 1 + x + x^2 + \cdots + x^n + \cdots = \frac{1}{1-x}$

16. $y = a_0\left(1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \cdots\right)$
$+ 2\left(\frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \cdots\right)$
$= a_0e^x + 2\left(e^x - 1 - x - \frac{x^2}{2}\right) = ce^x - 2 - 2x - x^2$

18. $1,\ 1 - 3x^2,\ 1 - 10x^2 + \frac{35}{3}x^4;\quad x,\ x - \frac{5}{3}x^3,\ x - \frac{14}{3}x^3 + \frac{21}{5}x^5$

19. **a.** $1,\ x,\ (3x^2-1)/2,\ (5x^3-3x)/2,$ $(35x^4-30x^2+3)/8,\ (63x^5-70x^3+15x)/8$
c. $P_1,\ 0;\quad P_2,\ \pm 0.57735;\quad P_3,\ 0,\ \pm 0.77460;$ $P_4,\ \pm 0.33998,\ \pm 0.86114;\ P_5,\ 0,\ \pm 0.53847, \pm 0.90618$

Section 5.4, page 218

1. $y = c_1x^{-1} + c_2x^{-2}$

2. $y = c_1|x+1|^{-1/2} + c_2|x+1|^{-3/2}$

3. $y = c_1x^2 + c_2x^2\ln|x|$

4. $y = c_1x + c_2x\ln|x|$

5. $y = c_1|x|^{\left(-5+\sqrt{29}\right)/2} + c_2|x|^{\left(-5-\sqrt{29}\right)/2}$

6. $y = c_1|x|^{3/2}\cos\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\ln|x|\right) + c_2|x|^{3/2}\sin\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\ln|x|\right)$

7. $y = c_1x^3 + c_2x^3\ln|x|$

8. $y = c_1(x-2)^{-2}\cos(2\ln|x-2|) + c_2(x-2)^{-2}\sin(2\ln|x-2|)$

9. $y = 2x^{3/2} - x^{-1}$

10. $y = 2x^{-1/2}\cos(2\ln x) - x^{-1/2}\sin(2\ln x)$

11. $y = 2x^2 - 7x^2\ln|x|$

12. $x = 0,$ regular

13. $x = 0,$ regular; $\quad x = 1,$ irregular

14. $x = 0,$ irregular; $\quad x = 1,$ regular

15. $x = 0,$ irregular; $\quad x = \pm 1,$ regular

16. $x = 1,$ regular; $\quad x = -1,$ irregular

17. $x = 0,$ regular

18. $x = 1,$ regular; $\quad x = -2,$ irregular

19. $x = 0,\ 3,$ regular

20. $x = 0,$ regular

21. $x = 0,$ irregular

22. $x = 0,\ \pm n\pi,$ regular

23. $x = 0,$ irregular; $\quad x = \pm n\pi,$ regular

24. $\alpha < 1$

25. $\beta > 0$

26. $\gamma = 2$

27. **a.** $\alpha < 1$ and $\beta > 0$
b. $\alpha < 1$ and $\beta \geq 0$, or $\alpha = 1$ and $\beta > 0$
c. $\alpha > 1$ and $\beta > 0$
d. $\alpha > 1$ and $\beta \geq 0$, or $\alpha = 1$ and $\beta > 0$
e. $\alpha = 1$ and $\beta > 0$

30. $y = a_0\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2\cdot 5} + \frac{x^4}{2\cdot 4\cdot 5\cdot 9} - \cdots\right)$

33. Irregular singular point

34. Regular singular point

35. Regular singular point

36. Irregular singular point

37. Irregular singular point

Section 5.5, page 223

1. **b.** $r(2r-1) = 0;\quad a_n = -\frac{a_{n-2}}{(n+r)[2(n+r)-1]};$ $r_1 = \frac{1}{2},\ r_2 = 0$
c. $y_1(x) = x^{1/2}\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2\cdot 5} + \frac{x^4}{2\cdot 4\cdot 5\cdot 9} - \frac{x^6}{2\cdot 4\cdot 6\cdot 5\cdot 9\cdot 13} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^nx^{2n}}{2^nn!5\cdot 9\cdot 13\cdots(4n+1)} + \cdots\right)$
d. $y_2(x) = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2\cdot 3} + \frac{x^4}{2\cdot 4\cdot 3\cdot 7} - \frac{x^6}{2\cdot 4\cdot 6\cdot 3\cdot 7\cdot 11} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^nx^{2n}}{2^nn!3\cdot 7\cdot 11\cdots(4n-1)} + \cdots$

2. **b.** $r^2 - \frac{1}{9} = 0;\quad a_n = -\frac{a_{n-2}}{(n+r)^2 - \frac{1}{9}};\quad r_1 = \frac{1}{3},\ r_2 = -\frac{1}{3}$
c. $y_1(x) = x^{1/3}\left[1 - \frac{1}{1!\left(1+\frac{1}{3}\right)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2!\left(1+\frac{1}{3}\right)\left(2+\frac{1}{3}\right)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^4 + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^m}{m!\left(1+\frac{1}{3}\right)\left(2+\frac{1}{3}\right)\cdots\left(m+\frac{1}{3}\right)}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2m} + \cdots\right]$

d. $y_2(x) = x^{-1/3}\left(1 - \frac{1}{1!(1-\frac{1}{3})}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2!(1-\frac{1}{3})(2-\frac{1}{3})}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^4 + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^m}{m!(1-\frac{1}{3})(2-\frac{1}{3})\cdots(m-\frac{1}{3})}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2m} + \cdots\right)$

Hint: Let $n = 2m$ in the recurrence relation, $m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$.

3. b. $r(r-1) = 0$; $a_n = -\frac{a_{n-1}}{(n+r)(n+r-1)}$; $r_1 = 1, r_2 = 0$

c. $y_1(x) = x\left(1 - \frac{x}{1!2!} + \frac{x^2}{2!3!} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^n}{n!(n+1)!}x^n + \cdots\right)$

4. b. $r^2 = 0$; $a_n = \frac{a_{n-1}}{(n+r)^2}$; $r_1 = r_2 = 0$

c. $y_1(x) = 1 + \frac{x}{(1!)^2} + \frac{x^2}{(2!)^2} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{(n!)^2} + \cdots$

5. b. $r^2 - 2 = 0$; $a_n = -\frac{a_{n-1}}{(n+r)^2 - 2}$; $r_1 = \sqrt{2},\ r_2 = -\sqrt{2}$

c. $y_1(x) = x^{\sqrt{2}} \times \left(1 - \frac{x}{1(1+2\sqrt{2})} + \frac{x^2}{2!(1+2\sqrt{2})(2+2\sqrt{2})} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^n}{n!(1+2\sqrt{2})(2+2\sqrt{2})\cdots(n+2\sqrt{2})}x^n + \cdots\right)$

d. $y_2(x) = x^{-\sqrt{2}} \times \left(1 - \frac{x}{1(1-2\sqrt{2})} + \frac{x^2}{2!(1-2\sqrt{2})(2-2\sqrt{2})} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^n}{n!(1-2\sqrt{2})(2-2\sqrt{2})\cdots(n-2\sqrt{2})}x^n + \cdots\right)$

6. b. $r^2 = 0$; $(n+r)a_n = a_{n-1}$; $r_1 = r_2 = 0$

c. $y_1(x) = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \cdots = e^x$

7. a. $r^2 = 0$; $r_1 = 0,\ r_2 = 0$

b. $y_1(x) = 1 + \frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)}{2\cdot 1^2}(x-1) - \frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)(1\cdot 2 - \alpha(\alpha+1))}{(2\cdot 1^2)(2\cdot 2^2)}(x-1)^2 + \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} \times \frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)(1\cdot 2-\alpha(\alpha+1))\cdots(n(n-1)-\alpha(\alpha+1))}{2^n(n!)^2} \times (x-1)^n + \cdots$

8. a. $r_1 = \frac{1}{2},\ r_2 = 0$ at both $x = \pm 1$

b. $y_1(x) = |x-1|^{1/2}\left(1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n P_n}{2^n(2n+1)!}(x-1)^n\right)$ where $P_n = (1+2\alpha)\cdots(2n-1+2\alpha)(1-2\alpha)\cdots(2n-1-2\alpha)$, $y_2(x) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n Q_n}{n!1\cdot 3\cdot 5\cdots(2n-1)}(x-1)^n$ where $Q_n = (1+\alpha)\cdots(n-1+\alpha)(-\alpha)(1-\alpha)\cdots(n-1-\alpha)$,

9. b. $r^2 = 0$; $r_1 = 0$, $r_2 = 0$; $a_n = \frac{(n-1-\lambda)a_{n-1}}{n^2}$

c. $y_1(x) = 1 + \frac{-\lambda}{(1!)^2}x + \frac{(-\lambda)(1-\lambda)}{(2!)^2}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{(-\lambda)(1-\lambda)\cdots(n-1-\lambda)}{(n!)^2}x^n + \cdots$

For $\lambda = n$, the coefficients of all terms past x^n are zero.

12. e. $((n-1)^2 - 1)b_n = -b_{n-2}$, it is impossible to determine b_2.

Section 5.6, page 229

1. a. $x = 0$;
b. $r(r-1) = 0$; $r_1 = 1,\ r_2 = 0$

2. a. $x = 0$;
b. $r^2 - 3r + 2 = 0$; $r_1 = 2,\ r_2 = 1$

3. None

4. a. $x = 0$;
b. $r\left(r - \frac{3}{4}\right) = 0$; $r_1 = \frac{3}{4},\ r_2 = 0$
a. $x = -2$;
b. $r\left(r - \frac{5}{4}\right) = 0$; $r_1 = \frac{5}{4},\ r_2 = 0$

5. a. $x = 0$;
b. $r^2 + 1 = 0$; $r_1 = i,\ r_2 = -i$

6. a. $x = 1$;
b. $r^2 + r = 0$; $r_1 = 0,\ r_2 = -1$

7. a. $x = -2$;
b. $r^2 - (5/4)r = 0$; $r_1 = 5/4,\ r_2 = 0$

8. a. $x = 2$;
b. $r^2 - 2r = 0$; $r_1 = 2,\ r_2 = 0$
a. $x = -2$;
b. $r^2 - 2r = 0$; $r_1 = 2,\ r_2 = 0$

9. b. $r_1 = 0,\ r_2 = 0$
c. $y_1(x) = 1 + x + \frac{1}{4}x^2 + \frac{1}{36}x^3 + \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = y_1(x)\ln x - 2x - \frac{3}{4}x^2 - \frac{11}{108}x^3 + \cdots$

10. b. $r_1 = 1,\ r_2 = 0$
c. $y_1(x) = x - 4x^2 + \frac{17}{3}x^3 - \frac{47}{12}x^4 + \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = -6y_1(x)\ln x + 1 - 33x^2 + \frac{449}{6}x^3 + \cdots$

11. b. $r_1 = 1,\ r_2 = 0$
c. $y_1(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{12}x^3 - \frac{1}{144}x^4 + \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = -y_1(x)\ln x + 1 - \frac{3}{4}x^2 + \frac{7}{36}x^3 - \frac{35}{1728}x^4 + \cdots$

12. b. $r_1 = 1,\ r_2 = -1$
c. $y_1(x) = x - \frac{1}{24}x^3 + \frac{1}{720}x^5 + \cdots,$
$y_2(x) = -\frac{1}{3}y_1(x)\ln x + x^{-1} - \frac{1}{90}x^3 + \cdots$

13. b. $r_1 = \frac{1}{2},\ r_2 = 0$
c. $y_1(x) = (x-1)^{1/2}\left(1 - \frac{3}{4}(x-1) + \frac{53}{480}(x-1)^2 + \cdots\right),$
d. $\rho = 1$

14. c. *Hint:* $(n-1)(n-2) + (1+\alpha+\beta)(n-1) + \alpha\beta = (n-1+\alpha)(n-1+\beta)$
d. *Hint:* $(n-\gamma)(n-1-\gamma) + (1+\alpha+\beta)(n-\gamma) + \alpha\beta = (n-\gamma+\alpha)(n-\gamma+\beta)$

Section 5.7, page 239

1. $y_1(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n x^n}{n!(n+1)!},$

$y_2(x) = -y_1(x)\ln x + \frac{1}{x}\left(1 - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{H_n + H_{n-1}}{n!(n-1)!}(-1)^n x^n\right)$

2. $y_1(x) = \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n x^n}{(n!)^2},$

$y_2(x) = y_1(x)\ln x - \frac{2}{x}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n H_n}{(n!)^2}x^n$

3. $y_1(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n 2^n}{(n!)^2} x^n,$

$y_2(x) = y_1(x) \ln x - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n 2^n H_n}{(n!)^2} x^n$

4.

$$y_1(x) = x^{3/2}\left(1 + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m}{m!(1+\frac{3}{2})(2+\frac{3}{2})\cdots(m+\frac{3}{2})}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2m}\right)$$

$$y_2(x) = x^{-3/2}\left(1 + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m}{m!(1-\frac{3}{2})(2-\frac{3}{2})\cdots(m-\frac{3}{2})}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2m}\right)$$

Hint: Let $n = 2m$ in the recurrence relation, $m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. For $r = -\frac{3}{2}$, $a_1 = 0$ and a_3 is arbitrary.

Chapter 6

Section 6.1, page 247

1. Piecewise continuous
2. Neither
3. Continuous
4. **a.** $F(s) = 1/s^2, \quad s > 0$
b. $F(s) = 2/s^3, \quad s > 0$
c. $F(s) = n!/s^{n+1}, \quad s > 0$
5. $F(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + a^2}, \quad s > 0$
6. $F(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 - b^2}, \quad s > |b|$
7. $F(s) = \frac{b}{s^2 - b^2}, \quad s > |b|$
8. $F(s) = \frac{b}{s^2 + b^2}, \quad s > 0$
9. $F(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + b^2}, \quad s > 0$
10. $F(s) = \frac{b}{(s-a)^2 + b^2}, \quad s > a$
11. $F(s) = \frac{s-a}{(s-a)^2 + b^2}, \quad s > a$
12. $F(s) = \frac{1}{(s-a)^2}, \quad s > a$
13. $F(s) = \frac{2as}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}, \quad s > 0$
14. $F(s) = \frac{n!}{(s-a)^{n+1}}, \quad s > a$
15. $F(s) = \frac{2a(3s^2 - a^2)}{(s^2 + a^2)^3}, \quad s > 0$
16. $F(s) = \frac{1 - e^{-\pi s}}{s}$
17. $F(s) = \frac{1 - e^{-s}}{s^2}$
18. $F(s) = \frac{1 - 2e^{-s} + e^{-2s}}{s^2}$
19. Converges
20. Converges
21. Diverges
23. **d.** $\Gamma(3/2) = \sqrt{\pi}/2; \quad \Gamma(11/2) = 945\sqrt{\pi}/32$

Section 6.2, page 255

1. $f(t) = \frac{3}{2}\sin(2t)$
2. $f(t) = 2t^2 e^t$
3. $f(t) = \frac{2}{5}e^t - \frac{2}{5}e^{-4t}$
4. $f(t) = 2e^{-t}\cos(2t)$
5. $f(t) = 2\cosh(2t) - \frac{3}{2}\sinh(2t)$
6. $f(t) = 3 - 2\sin(2t) + 5\cos(2t)$
7. $f(t) = -2e^{-2t}\cos t + 5e^{-2t}\sin t$
8. $y = \frac{1}{5}(e^{3t} + 4e^{-2t})$
9. $y = 2e^{-t} - e^{-2t}$
10. $y = e^t \sin t$
11. $y = 2e^t \cos\left(\sqrt{3}\,t\right) - \left(2/\sqrt{3}\right)e^t \sin\left(\sqrt{3}\,t\right)$
12. $y = 2e^{-t}\cos(2t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}\sin(2t)$
13. $y = te^t - t^2 e^t + \frac{2}{3}t^3 e^t$
14. $y = \cosh t$
15. $y = ((\omega^2 - 5)\cos(\omega t) + \cos(2t))/(\omega^2 - 4)$
16. $y = \frac{1}{5}(e^{-t} - e^t\cos t + 7e^t \sin t)$
17. $Y(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + 4} + \frac{1 - e^{-\pi s}}{s(s^2 + 4)}$
18. $Y(s) = \frac{1 - e^{-s}}{s^2(s^2 + 4)}$
19. $Y(s) = \frac{1 - 2e^{-s} + e^{-2s}}{s^2(s^2 + 1)}$
22. $F(s) = 1/(s-a)^2$
23. $F(s) = 2b(3s^2 - b^2)/(s^2 + b^2)^3$
24. $F(s) = n!/(s-a)^{n+1}$
25. $F(s) = 2b(s-a)/[(s-a)^2 + b^2]^2$
27. **a.** $Y' + s^2 Y = s$
b. $s^2 Y'' + 2sY' - (s^2 + \alpha(\alpha+1))Y = -1$

Section 6.3, page 262

5. **b.** $f(t) = -2u_3(t) + 4u_5(t) - u_7(t)$
6. **b.** $f(t) = 1 - 2u_1(t) + 2u_2(t) - 2u_3(t) + u_4(t)$
7. **b.** $f(t) = 1 + u_2(t)[e^{-(t-2)} - 1]$
8. **b.** $f(t) = t + u_2(t)(2-t) + u_5(t)(5-t) - u_7(t)(7-t)$
9. $F(s) = 2e^{-s}/s^3$
10. $F(s) = \frac{e^{-\pi s}}{s^2} - \frac{e^{-2\pi s}}{s^2}(1 + \pi s)$
11. $F(s) = \frac{1}{s}(e^{-s} + 2e^{-3s} - 6e^{-4s})$
12. $F(s) = s^{-2}\left((1-s)e^{-2s} - (1+s)e^{-3s}\right)$
13. $f(t) = t^3 e^{2t}$
14. $f(t) = \frac{1}{3}u_2(t)\left(e^{t-2} - e^{-2(t-2)}\right)$
15. $f(t) = 2u_2(t)e^{t-2}\cos(t-2)$
16. $f(t) = u_1(t) + u_2(t) - u_3(t) - u_4(t)$
18. $f(t) = 2(2t)^n$
19. $f(t) = \frac{1}{2}e^{-t/2}\cos t$
20. $f(t) = \frac{1}{6}e^{t/3}\left(e^{2t/3} - 1\right)$
21. $F(s) = s^{-1}\left(1 - e^{-s}\right), \quad s > 0$
22. $F(s) = s^{-1}\left(1 - e^{-s} + e^{-2s} - e^{-3s}\right), \quad s > 0$
23. $F(s) = \frac{1}{s}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n e^{-ns} = \frac{1/s}{1 + e^{-s}}, \quad s > 0$

25. $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \dfrac{1/s}{1+e^{-s}}, \quad s > 0$

26. $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \dfrac{1-e^{-s}}{s\left(1+e^{-s}\right)}, \quad s > 0$

27. $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \dfrac{1-(1+s)e^{-s}}{s^2\left(1-e^{-s}\right)}, \quad s > 0$

28. $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \dfrac{1+e^{-\pi s}}{(1+s^2)(1-e^{-\pi s})}, \quad s > 0$

29. a. $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = s^{-1}(1-e^{-s}), \quad s > 0$
b. $\mathcal{L}\{g(t)\} = s^{-2}(1-e^{-s}), \quad s > 0$
c. $\mathcal{L}\{h(t)\} = s^{-2}(1-e^{-s})^2, \quad s > 0$

30. b. $\mathcal{L}\{p(t)\} = \dfrac{1-e^{-s}}{s^2(1+e^{-s})}, \quad s > 0$

Section 6.4, page 268

1. b. $y = 1 - \cos t + \sin t - u_{3\pi}(t)(1+\cos t)$

2. b. $y = e^{-t}\sin t + \frac{1}{2}u_\pi(t)(1+e^{-(t-\pi)}\cos t + e^{-(t-\pi)}\sin t)$
$-\frac{1}{2}u_{2\pi}(t)(1-e^{-(t-2\pi)}\cos t - e^{-(t-2\pi)}\sin t)$

3. b. $y = \frac{1}{6}(1-u_{2\pi}(t))(2\sin t - \sin(2t))$

4. b. $y = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t} - e^{-t} - u_{10}(t)\left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-2(t-10)} - e^{-(t-10)}\right)$

5. b. $y = -\frac{16}{25} + \frac{4}{5}t + \frac{1}{25}e^{-t/2}(16\cos t - 12\sin t)$
$+\, u_{\pi/2}(t)\left(\frac{16}{25} + \frac{2\pi}{5} - \frac{4}{5}t - \frac{1}{25}e^{\pi/4-t/2}(12\cos t + 16\sin t)\right)$

6. b. $y = h(t) + u_\pi(t)h(t-\pi)$,
$h(t) = \frac{4}{17}(-4\cos t + \sin t + 4e^{-t/2}\cos t + e^{-t/2}\sin t)$

7. b. $y = u_\pi(t)\left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{4}\cos(2t-2\pi)\right)$
$-\, u_{3\pi}(t)\left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{4}\cos(2t-6\pi)\right)$

8. b. $y = h(t) - u_\pi(t)h(t-\pi)$,
$h(t) = (3 - 4\cos t + \cos(2t))/12$

9. $f(t) = \frac{h}{k}(t-t_0)(u_{t_0}(t) - u_{t_0+k}(t)) + hu_{t_0+k}(t)$

10. $g(t) = \frac{h}{k}(t-t_0)\left(u_{t_0}(t) - u_{t_0+k}(t)\right)$
$-\frac{h}{k}(t-t_0-2k)\left(u_{t_0+k}(t) - u_{t_0+2k}(t)\right)$

11. b. $u(t) = 4ku_{3/2}(t)h\left(t-\frac{3}{2}\right) - 4ku_{5/2}(t)h\left(t-\frac{5}{2}\right)$,
$h(t) = \frac{1}{4} - \frac{\sqrt{7}}{84}e^{-t/8}\sin\left(\frac{3\sqrt{7}}{8}t\right) - \frac{1}{4}e^{-t/8}\cos\left(\frac{3\sqrt{7}}{8}t\right)$
d. $k = 2.51$
e. $\tau = 25.6773$

12. a. $k = 5$
b. $y = (u_5(t)h(t-5) - u_{5+k}(t)h(t-5-k))/k$,
$h(t) = \frac{1}{4}t - \frac{1}{8}\sin(2t)$

13. b. $y = 1 - \cos t + 2\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k u_{k\pi}(t)(1-\cos(t-k\pi))$

15. b. $y = 1 - \cos t + \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k u_{k\pi}(t)(1-\cos(t-k\pi))$

17. a. $y = 1 - \cos t + 2\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k u_{11k/4}(t)(1-\cos(t-11k/4))$

Section 6.5, page 273

1. a. $y = e^{-t}\cos t + e^{-t}\sin t + u_\pi(t)e^{-(t-\pi)}\sin(t-\pi)$

2. a. $y = \frac{1}{2}u_\pi(t)\sin(2(t-\pi)) - \frac{1}{2}u_{2\pi}(t)\sin(2(t-2\pi))$

3. a. $y = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} + u_5(t)\left(-e^{-2(t-5)} + e^{-(t-5)}\right) + u_{10}(t)\left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-2(t-10)} - e^{-(t-10)}\right)$

4. a. $y = \frac{1}{4}\sin t - \frac{1}{4}\cos t + \frac{1}{4}e^{-t}\cos(\sqrt{2}\,t) + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}u_{3\pi}(t)e^{-(t-3\pi)}\sin\left(\sqrt{2}(t-3\pi)\right)$

5. a. $y = \sin t + u_{2\pi}(t)\sin(t-2\pi)$

6. a. $y = u_{\pi/4}(t)\sin(2(t-\pi/4))$

7. a. $y = \frac{1}{5}\cos t + \frac{2}{5}\sin t - \frac{1}{5}e^{-t}\cos t - \frac{3}{5}e^{-t}\sin t$
$+\, u_{\pi/2}(t)e^{-(t-\pi/2)}\sin(t-\pi/2)$

8. a. $y = u_1(t)(\sinh(t-1) - \sin(t-1))/2$

9. a. $-e^{-T/4}\delta(t-5-T), \quad T = 8\pi/\sqrt{15}$

10. a. $y = \dfrac{4}{\sqrt{15}}u_1(t)e^{-(t-1)/4}\sin\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{15}}{4}(t-1)\right)$
b. $t_1 \cong 2.3613, \quad y_1 \cong 0.71153$
c. $y = \dfrac{8\sqrt{7}}{21}u_1(t)e^{-(t-1)/8}\sin\left(\dfrac{3\sqrt{7}}{8}(t-1)\right)$;
$t_1 \cong 2.4569, \quad y_1 \cong 0.83351$
d. $t_1 = 1 + \pi/2 \cong 2.5708, \quad y_1 = 1$

11. a. $k_1 \cong 2.8108$
b. $k_1 \cong 2.3995$
c. $k_1 = 2$

12. a. $\phi(t,k) = \frac{1}{2k}(u_{4-k}(t)h(t-4+k) - u_{4+k}(t)h(t-4-k))$,
$h(t) = 1 - \cos t$
b. $\phi_0(t) = u_4(t)\sin(t-4)$
c. Yes

13. b. $y = \sum_{k=1}^{20} u_{k\pi}(t)\sin(t-k\pi)$

14. b. $y = \sum_{k=1}^{20}(-1)^{k+1}u_{k\pi}(t)\sin(t-k\pi)$

15. b. $y = \sum_{k=1}^{15} u_{(2k-1)\pi}(t)\sin(t-(2k-1)\pi)$

16. b. $y = \sum_{k=1}^{40}(-1)^{k+1}u_{11k/4}(t)\sin(t-11k/4)$

17. b. $y = \dfrac{20}{\sqrt{399}}\sum_{k=1}^{20}(-1)^{k+1}u_{k\pi}(t)e^{-(t-k\pi)/20}$
$\times \sin\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{399}}{20}(t-k\pi)\right)$

18. b. $y = \dfrac{20}{\sqrt{399}}\sum_{k=1}^{15} u_{(2k-1)\pi}(t)e^{-(t-(2k-1)\pi)/20}$
$\times \sin\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{399}}{20}(t-(2k-1)\pi)\right)$

Section 6.6, page 279

3. $\sin t * \sin t = \frac{1}{2}(\sin t - t\cos t)$ is negative when $t = 2\pi$, for example.

4. $F(s) = \dfrac{2}{s^2(s^2+4)}$

5. $F(s) = \dfrac{1}{(s+1)(s^2+1)}$

6. $F(s) = \dfrac{s}{(s^2+1)^2}$

7. $f(t) = \dfrac{1}{6}\displaystyle\int_0^t (t-\tau)^3 \sin\tau\, d\tau$

8. $f(t) = \displaystyle\int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)} \cos(2\tau) d\tau$

9. $f(t) = \dfrac{1}{2}\displaystyle\int_0^t (t-\tau)e^{-(t-\tau)} \sin(2\tau) d\tau$

10. c. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 u^m(1-u)^n\, du = \frac{\Gamma(m+1)\Gamma(n+1)}{\Gamma(m+n+2)}$

11. $y = \dfrac{1}{\omega}\sin(\omega t) + \dfrac{1}{\omega}\displaystyle\int_0^t \sin(\omega(t-\tau))g(\tau)\, d\tau$

12. $y = \dfrac{1}{8}\displaystyle\int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)/2}\sin(2(t-\tau))g(\tau)\, d\tau$

13. $y = e^{-t/2}\cos t - \dfrac{1}{2}e^{-t/2}\sin t$
$+ \displaystyle\int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)/2}\sin(t-\tau)(1-u_\pi(\tau))\, d\tau$

14. $y = 2e^{-t} - e^{-2t} + \displaystyle\int_0^t \left(e^{-(t-\tau)} - e^{-2(t-\tau)}\right)\cos(\alpha\tau)\, d\tau$

15. $y = \dfrac{4}{3}\cos t - \dfrac{1}{3}\cos(2t)$
$+ \dfrac{1}{6}\displaystyle\int_0^t (2\sin(t-\tau) - \sin(2(t-\tau)))g(\tau)\, d\tau$

16. $\Phi(s) = \dfrac{F(s)}{1+K(s)}$

17. a. $\phi(t) = \dfrac{1}{3}(4\sin(2t) - 2\sin t)$

18. a. $\phi(t) = \cos t$
b. $\phi''(t) + \phi(t) = 0,\quad \phi(0) = 1,\quad \phi'(0) = 0$

19. a. $\phi(t) = \left(1 - 2t + t^2\right)e^{-t}$
b. $\phi''(t) + 2\phi'(t) + \phi(t) = 2e^{-t},\quad \phi(0) = 1,\quad \phi'(0) = -3$

20. a. $\phi(t) = \dfrac{1}{3}e^{-t} - \dfrac{1}{3}e^{t/2}\cos\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}t\right) + \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}e^{t/2}\sin\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}t\right)$
b. $\phi'''(t) + \phi(t) = 0,\quad \phi(0) = 0,\quad \phi'(0) = 0,\quad \phi''(0) = 1$

21. a. $\phi(t) = \cos t$
b. $\phi^{(4)}(t) - \phi(t) = 0,\quad \phi(0) = 1,\quad \phi'(0) = 0,$
$\phi''(0) = -1,\quad \phi'''(0) = 0$

Chapter 7

Section 7.1, page 284

1. $x_1' = x_2,\quad x_2' = -2x_1 - 0.5x_2$

2. $x_1' = x_2,\quad x_2' = -(1 - 0.25t^{-2})x_1 - t^{-1}x_2$

3. $x_1' = x_2,\quad x_2' = x_3,\quad x_3' = x_4,\quad x_4' = x_1$

4. $x_1' = x_2,\quad x_2' = -4x_1 - 0.25x_2 + 2\cos(3t),\quad x_1(0) = 1,$
$x_2(0) = -2$

5. $x_1' = x_2,\quad x_2' = -q(t)x_1 - p(t)x_2 + g(t),$
$x_1(0) = u_0,\quad x_2(0) = u_0'$

6. c. $x_1 = c_1e^{-t} + c_2e^{-3t}$
d. $x_2 = c_1e^{-t} - c_2e^{-3t}$

7. a. $x_1'' - x_1' - 2x_1 = 0$
b. $x_1 = \dfrac{11}{3}e^{2t} - \dfrac{2}{3}e^{-t},\quad x_2 = \dfrac{11}{6}e^{2t} - \dfrac{4}{3}e^{-t}$
c. Graph is asymptotic to the line $x_1 = 2x_2$ in the first quadrant.

8. a. $x_1'' + 4x_1 = 0$
b. $x_1 = 3\cos(2t) + 4\sin(2t),\quad x_2 = -3\sin(2t) + 4\cos(2t)$
c. Graph is a circle, center at origin, radius 5, traversed clockwise.

9. a. $x_1'' + x_1' + 4.25x_1 = 0$
b. $x_1 = -2e^{-t/2}\cos(2t) + 2e^{-t/2}\sin(2t),$
$x_2 = 2e^{-t/2}\cos(2t) + 2e^{-t/2}\sin(2t)$
c. Graph is a clockwise spiral, approaching the origin.

10. $LRCI'' + LI' + RI = 0$

15. $y_1' = y_3,\quad y_2' = y_4,\quad m_1y_3' = -(k_1+k_2)y_1 + k_2y_2 + F_1(t),$
$m_2y_4' = k_2y_1 - (k_2+k_3)y_2 + F_2(t)$

19. a. $Q_1' = \dfrac{3}{2} - \dfrac{1}{10}Q_1 + \dfrac{3}{40}Q_2,\quad Q_1(0) = 25,$

$Q_2' = 3 + \dfrac{1}{10}Q_1 - \dfrac{1}{5}Q_2,\quad Q_2(0) = 15$

b. $Q_1^E = 42,\quad Q_2^E = 36$

c. $x_1' = -\dfrac{1}{10}x_1 + \dfrac{3}{40}x_2,\quad x_1(0) = -17,$

$x_2' = \dfrac{1}{10}x_1 - \dfrac{1}{5}x_2,\quad x_2(0) = -21$

20. a. $Q_1' = 3q_1 - \dfrac{1}{15}Q_1 + \dfrac{1}{100}Q_2,\quad Q_1(0) = Q_1^0,$

$Q_2' = q_2 + \dfrac{1}{30}Q_1 - \dfrac{3}{100}Q_2,\quad Q_2(0) = Q_2^0$

b. $Q_1^E = 6(9q_1 + q_2),\quad Q_2^E = 20(3q_1 + 2q_2)$

c. No

d. $\dfrac{10}{9} \le Q_2^E/Q_1^E \le \dfrac{20}{3}$

Section 7.2, page 293

1. a. $\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -6 & 3 \\ 5 & 9 & -2 \\ 2 & 3 & 8 \end{pmatrix}$

b. $\begin{pmatrix} -15 & 6 & -12 \\ 7 & -18 & -1 \\ -26 & -3 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$

c. $\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -12 & 3 \\ 4 & 3 & 7 \\ 9 & 12 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

d. $\begin{pmatrix} -8 & -9 & 11 \\ 14 & 12 & -5 \\ 5 & -8 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

2. a. $\begin{pmatrix} 1-i & -7+2i \\ -1+2i & 2+3i \end{pmatrix}$

b. $\begin{pmatrix} 3+4i & 6i \\ 11+6i & 6-5i \end{pmatrix}$

c. $\begin{pmatrix} -3+5i & 7+5i \\ 2+i & 7+2i \end{pmatrix}$

d. $\begin{pmatrix} 8+7i & 4-4i \\ 6-4i & -4 \end{pmatrix}$

3. a. $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & -3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

b. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

c, d. $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 4 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 5 & -4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

4. a. $\begin{pmatrix} 3-2i & 2-i \\ 1+i & -2+3i \end{pmatrix}$

b. $\begin{pmatrix} 3+2i & 1-i \\ 2+i & -2-3i \end{pmatrix}$

c. $\begin{pmatrix} 3+2i & 2+i \\ 1-i & -2-3i \end{pmatrix}$

5. a. $\begin{pmatrix} 7 & -11 & -3 \\ 11 & 20 & 17 \\ -4 & 3 & -12 \end{pmatrix}$

b. $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 7 & 4 \\ -1 & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$

c. $\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -8 & -11 \\ 9 & 15 & 6 \\ -5 & -1 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

7. a. $4i$

b. $12-8i$

c. $2+2i$

d. 16

8. $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{11} & -\frac{4}{11} \\ \frac{2}{11} & \frac{1}{11} \end{pmatrix}$

9. $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{12} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix}$

10. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 & 2 \\ -3 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

11. Singular

12. $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{8} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{4} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$

13. Singular

14. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

16. a. $\begin{pmatrix} 7e^t & 5e^{-t} & 10e^{2t} \\ -e^t & 7e^{-t} & 2e^{2t} \\ 8e^t & 0 & -e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$

b. $\begin{pmatrix} 2e^{2t}-2+3e^{3t} & 1+4e^{-2t}-e^t & 3e^{3t}+2e^t-e^{4t} \\ 4e^{2t}-1-3e^{3t} & 2+2e^{-2t}+e^t & 6e^{3t}+e^t+e^{4t} \\ -2e^{2t}-3+6e^{3t} & -1+6e^{-2t}-2e^t & -3e^{3t}+3e^t-2e^{4t} \end{pmatrix}$

c. $\begin{pmatrix} e^t & -2e^{-t} & 2e^{2t} \\ 2e^t & -e^{-t} & -2e^{2t} \\ -e^t & -3e^{-t} & 4e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$

d. $(e-1)\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2e^{-1} & \frac{1}{2}(e+1) \\ 2 & e^{-1} & -\frac{1}{2}(e+1) \\ -1 & 3e^{-1} & e+1 \end{pmatrix}$

Section 7.3, page 303

1. $x_1 = -\frac{1}{3}, \quad x_2 = \frac{7}{3}, \quad x_3 = -\frac{1}{3}$

2. No solution

3. $x_1 = -c, \quad x_2 = c+1, \quad x_3 = c$, where c is arbitrary

4. $x_1 = c, \quad x_2 = -c, \quad x_3 = -c$, where c is arbitrary

5. $x_1 = 0, \quad x_2 = 0, \quad x_3 = 0$

6. Linearly independent

7. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} - 5\mathbf{x}^{(2)} + 2\mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \mathbf{0}$

8. Linearly independent

9. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + \mathbf{x}^{(2)} - \mathbf{x}^{(4)} = \mathbf{0}$

11. $3\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) - 6\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) + \mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = \mathbf{0}$

12. Linearly independent

14. $\lambda_1 = 2, \ \mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = 4, \ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

15. $\lambda_1 = 1+2i, \ \mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1-i \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = 1-2i, \ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1+i \end{pmatrix}$

16. $\lambda_1 = -3, \ \mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = -1, \ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

17. $\lambda_1 = 2, \ \mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = -2, \ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix}$

18. $\lambda_1 = 1, \ \mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = 1+2i, \ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -i \end{pmatrix};$

$\lambda_3 = 1-2i, \ \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ i \end{pmatrix}$

19. $\lambda_1 = 1, \ \mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = 2, \ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix};$

$\lambda_3 = 3, \ \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

20. $\lambda_1 = 1, \ \mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = 2, \ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix};$

$\lambda_3 = -1, \ \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

Section 7.4, page 308

1. d. $\mathbf{x}(t) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}e^t + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} \\ \frac{1}{2}e^t + \frac{3}{2}e^{-t} \end{pmatrix},$

e. 2.

2. d. $\mathbf{x}(t) = -\frac{1}{5}\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + \frac{6}{5}\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{5}e^{-3t} + \frac{6}{5}e^{2t} \\ \frac{4}{5}e^{-3t} + \frac{6}{5}e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$

e. $5e^{-t}$.

3. d. $\mathbf{x}(t) = \frac{1}{5}\mathbf{x}^{(1)} - \frac{8}{5}\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t - 8\sin t \\ 2\cos t - 3\sin t \end{pmatrix},$

e. -5.

4. d. $\mathbf{x}(t) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + 0\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix},$

e. 2.

5. d. $\mathbf{x}(t) = \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{t}{4} + t^{-1} \\ \frac{t}{4} + 3t^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$,
e. 2.

6. d. $\mathbf{x}(t) = 2\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + 0\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2t^{-1} \\ 4t^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$,
e. $-3t$.

8. c. $W(t) = c\exp\left(\int (p_{11}(t) + p_{22}(t))dt\right)$

12. a. $W(t) = t^2$
b. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent at each point except $t = 0$; they are linearly independent on every interval.
c. At least one coefficient must be discontinuous at $t = 0$.
d. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -2t^{-2} & 2t^{-1} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

13. a. $W(t) = t(t-2)e^t$
b. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent at each point except $t = 0$ and $t = 2$; they are linearly independent on every interval.
c. There must be at least one discontinuous coefficient at $t = 0$ and $t = 2$.
d. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \dfrac{2-2t}{t^2-2t} & \dfrac{t^2-2}{t^2-2t} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

Section 7.5, page 318

1. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t}$

2. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}e^{-2t}$

3. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}$

4. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t/2} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t}$

5. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-2t}$

6. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t}$

7. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{4t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_3\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}$

8. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_3\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{8t}$

9. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-2t} + c_3\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{3t}$

10. $\mathbf{x} = -\frac{3}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t} + \frac{7}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{4t}$

11. $\mathbf{x} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}e^{3t}$

12. $\mathbf{x} = 6\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + 3\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}e^{4t}$

14. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}t + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}t^{-1}$

15. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}t^2 + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}t^4$

16. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}t^{-2}$

21. a. $x_1' = x_2,\quad x_2' = -(c/a)x_1 - (b/a)x_2$

22. a. $\mathbf{x} = -\frac{55}{8}\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t/20} + \frac{29}{8}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t/4}$
c. $T \cong 74.39$

23. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{\left(-2+\sqrt{2}\right)t/2} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{\left(-2-\sqrt{2}\right)t/2}$;
$r_{1,2} = (-2 \pm \sqrt{2})/2$; node
b. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}e^{\left(-1+\sqrt{2}\right)t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}e^{\left(-1-\sqrt{2}\right)t}$;
$r_{1,2} = -1 \pm \sqrt{2}$; saddle point
c. $r_{1,2} = -1 \pm \sqrt{\alpha}$; $\alpha = 1$

24. a. $\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}e^{-2t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}$

25. a. $\left(\frac{1}{CR_2} - \frac{R_1}{L}\right)^2 - \frac{4}{CL} > 0$

Section 7.6, page 327

1. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} 2\cos(2t) \\ \sin(2t) \end{pmatrix} + c_2e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} -2\sin(2t) \\ \cos(2t) \end{pmatrix}$

2. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 5\cos t \\ 2\cos t + \sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 5\sin t \\ -\cos t + 2\sin t \end{pmatrix}$

3. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} \cos t \\ 2\cos t + \sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} \sin t \\ -\cos t + 2\sin t \end{pmatrix}$

4. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} -2\cos 3t \\ \cos 3t + 3\sin 3t \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} -2\sin 3t \\ \sin 3t - 3\cos 3t \end{pmatrix}$

5. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_2e^{t}\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \cos(2t) \\ \sin(2t) \end{pmatrix} + c_3e^{t}\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sin(2t) \\ -\cos(2t) \end{pmatrix}$

6. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-2t} + c_2e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2}\sin(\sqrt{2}\,t) \\ \cos(\sqrt{2}\,t) \\ -\cos(\sqrt{2}\,t) - \sqrt{2}\sin(\sqrt{2}\,t) \end{pmatrix} +$
$c_3e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2}\cos(\sqrt{2}\,t) \\ \sin(\sqrt{2}\,t) \\ \sqrt{2}\cos(\sqrt{2}\,t) - \sin(\sqrt{2}\,t) \end{pmatrix}$

7. $\mathbf{x} = e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} \cos t - 3\sin t \\ \cos t - \sin t \end{pmatrix}$

8. $\mathbf{x} = e^{-2t}\begin{pmatrix} \cos t - 5\sin t \\ -2\cos t - 3\sin t \end{pmatrix}$

9. a. $r = -\frac{1}{4} \pm i$

10. a. $r = \frac{1}{5} \pm i$

11. a. $r = \alpha \pm i$
b. $\alpha = 0$

12. a. $r = \left(\alpha \pm \sqrt{\alpha^2 - 20}\right)/2$
b. $\alpha = -\sqrt{20},\ 0,\ \sqrt{20}$

13. a. $r = \frac{5}{4} \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3\alpha}$
b. $\alpha = 0,\ 25/12$

14. a. $r = -1 \pm \sqrt{-\alpha}$
b. $\alpha = -1,\ 0$

15. a. $r = -1 \pm \sqrt{25 + 8\alpha}$

b. $\alpha = -25/8,\ -3$

16. $\mathbf{x} = c_1 t^{-1}\begin{pmatrix} \cos\left(\sqrt{2}\ln t\right) \\ \sqrt{2}\sin\left(\sqrt{2}\ln t\right) \end{pmatrix} + c_2 t^{-1}\begin{pmatrix} \sin\left(\sqrt{2}\ln t\right) \\ -\sqrt{2}\cos\left(\sqrt{2}\ln t\right) \end{pmatrix}$

17. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 5\cos(\ln t) \\ 2\cos(\ln t) + \sin(\ln t) \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 5\sin(\ln t) \\ -\cos(\ln t) + 2\sin(\ln t) \end{pmatrix}$

18. a. $r = -\frac{1}{4} \pm i,\ -\frac{1}{4}$

19. a. $r = -\frac{1}{4} \pm i,\ \frac{1}{10}$

20. b. $\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = c_1 e^{-t/2}\begin{pmatrix} \cos(t/2) \\ 4\sin(t/2) \end{pmatrix} + c_2 e^{-t/2}\begin{pmatrix} \sin(t/2) \\ -4\cos(t/2) \end{pmatrix}$

c. Use $c_1 = 2,\quad c_2 = -\frac{3}{4}$ in answer to part (b).

d. $\lim_{t\to\infty} I(t) = \lim_{t\to\infty} V(t) = 0;$ no

21. b. $\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = c_1 e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} \cos t \\ -\cos t - \sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2 e^{-t}\begin{pmatrix} \sin t \\ -\sin t + \cos t \end{pmatrix}$

c. Use $c_1 = 2$ and $c_2 = 3$ in answer to part (b).

d. $\lim_{t\to\infty} I(t) = \lim_{t\to\infty} V(t) = 0;$ no

23. b. $r = \pm i\sqrt{k/m}$

d. $|r|$ is the natural frequency.

24. c. $r_1^2 = -1,\quad \xi^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix};\quad r_2^2 = -4,\quad \xi^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$

d. $x_1 = 3c_1\cos t + 3c_2\sin t + 3c_3\cos(2t) + 3c_4\sin(2t),$
$x_2 = 2c_1\cos t + 2c_2\sin t - 4c_3\cos(2t) - 4c_4\sin(2t)$

e. $x_1' = -3c_1\sin t + 3c_2\cos t - 6c_3\sin(2t) + 6c_4\cos(2t),$
$x_2' = -2c_1\sin t + 2c_2\cos t + 8c_3\sin(2t) - 8c_4\cos(2t)$

25. a. $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -4 & 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 9/4 & -13/4 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

b. $r_1 = i,\quad \xi^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ i \\ i \end{pmatrix};\quad r_2 = -i,\quad \xi^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -i \\ -i \end{pmatrix};$

$r_3 = \frac{5}{2}i,\quad \xi^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \\ 10i \\ -\frac{15}{2}i \end{pmatrix};\quad r_4 = -\frac{5}{2}i,\quad \xi^{(4)} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \\ -10i \\ \frac{15}{2}i \end{pmatrix}$

c. $\mathbf{y} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} \cos t \\ \cos t \\ -\sin t \\ -\sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} \sin t \\ \sin t \\ \cos t \\ \cos t \end{pmatrix}$

$+ c_3\begin{pmatrix} 4\cos\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \\ -3\cos\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \\ -10\sin\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \\ \frac{15}{2}\sin\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \end{pmatrix} + c_4\begin{pmatrix} 4\sin\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \\ -3\sin\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \\ 10\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \\ -\frac{15}{2}\cos\left(\frac{5}{2}t\right) \end{pmatrix}$

e. $c_1 = \frac{10}{7},\quad c_2 = 0,\quad c_3 = \frac{1}{7},\quad c_4 = 0.\qquad$ period $= 4\pi$.

Section 7.7, page 336

1. b. $\Phi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{3}e^{-t} + \frac{4}{3}e^{2t} & \frac{2}{3}e^{-t} - \frac{2}{3}e^{2t} \\ -\frac{2}{3}e^{-t} + \frac{2}{3}e^{2t} & \frac{4}{3}e^{-t} - \frac{1}{3}e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$

2. b. $\Phi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}e^{-t/2} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} & e^{-t/2} - e^{-t} \\ \frac{1}{4}e^{-t/2} - \frac{1}{4}e^{-t} & \frac{1}{2}e^{-t/2} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}$

3. b. $\Phi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t + 2\sin t & -5\sin t \\ \sin t & \cos t - 2\sin t \end{pmatrix}$

4. b. $\Phi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t}\cos(2t) & -2e^{-t}\sin(2t) \\ \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}\sin(2t) & e^{-t}\cos(2t) \end{pmatrix}$

5. b. $\Phi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2}e^{2t} + \frac{3}{2}e^{4t} & \frac{1}{2}e^{2t} - \frac{1}{2}e^{4t} \\ -\frac{3}{2}e^{2t} + \frac{3}{2}e^{4t} & \frac{3}{2}e^{2t} - \frac{1}{2}e^{4t} \end{pmatrix}$

6. b. $\Phi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t}\cos t + 2e^{-t}\sin t & -e^{-t}\sin t \\ 5e^{-t}\sin t & e^{-t}\cos t - 2e^{-t}\sin t \end{pmatrix}$

7. b. $\Phi(t) =$
$\begin{pmatrix} -2e^{-2t} + 3e^{-t} & -e^{-2t} + e^{-t} & -e^{-2t} + e^{-t} \\ \frac{5}{2}e^{-2t} - 4e^{-t} + \frac{3}{2}e^{2t} & \frac{5}{4}e^{-2t} - \frac{4}{3}e^{-t} + \frac{13}{12}e^{2t} & \frac{5}{4}e^{-2t} - \frac{4}{3}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{12}e^{2t} \\ \frac{7}{2}e^{-2t} - 2e^{-t} - \frac{3}{2}e^{2t} & \frac{7}{4}e^{-2t} - \frac{2}{3}e^{-t} - \frac{13}{12}e^{2t} & \frac{7}{4}e^{-2t} - \frac{2}{3}e^{-t} - \frac{1}{12}e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$

8. b. $\Phi(t) =$
$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{6}e^{t} + \frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} & -\frac{1}{3}e^{t} + \frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} & \frac{1}{2}e^{t} - e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} \\ -\frac{2}{3}e^{t} - \frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} + e^{3t} & \frac{4}{3}e^{t} - \frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} & -2e^{t} + e^{-2t} + e^{3t} \\ -\frac{1}{6}e^{t} - \frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} & \frac{1}{3}e^{t} - \frac{1}{3}e^{-2t} & -\frac{1}{2}e^{t} + e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} \end{pmatrix}$

9. $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}\cos(2t) + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3/2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}\sin(2t)$

14. c. $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} u_0 \\ v_0 \end{pmatrix}\cos(\omega t) + \begin{pmatrix} v_0 \\ -\omega^2 u_0 \end{pmatrix}\frac{\sin(\omega t)}{\omega}$

Section 7.8, page 343

1. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{t} + c_2\left(\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}te^{t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}e^{t}\right)$

2. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + c_2\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}t - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}\right)$

3. a. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_2\left(\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}te^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}\right)$

4. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t} + c_3\left(\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t}\right)$

5. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}e^{2t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} + c_3\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t}$

6. a. $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 + 4t \\ 2 + 4t \end{pmatrix}e^{-3t}$

7. a. $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}e^{-t} - 6\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}te^{-t}$

8. a. $\mathbf{x} = 2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + 14\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}t$

9. a. $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -33 \end{pmatrix} e^t + 4\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} te^t + 3\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}$

10. a. $\mathbf{x} = \frac{4}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t/2} + \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} e^{-7t/2}$

11. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t + c_2\left(\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t \ln t + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} t\right)$

12. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t^{-3} + c_2\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t^{-3} \ln t - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix} t^{-3}\right)$

14. b. $\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = -\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t/2} + \left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} te^{-t/2} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}\right)$

15. d. $\xi = -\xi^{(1)}$
e. $\xi = -(k_1 + k_2)\xi^{(1)}, \quad k_1 + k_2 \neq 0$

17. a. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}$

c. $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}$

d. $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \frac{t^2}{2} e^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}$

e. $\Psi(t) = e^{2t}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & t+2 \\ 1 & t+1 & t^2/2 + t \\ -1 & -t & -t^2/2 + 3 \end{pmatrix}$

f. $\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{T}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & -2 & -2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$

$\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

18. a. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^t, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} e^t$

b. $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} te^t + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^t$

e. $\Psi(t) = e^t\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2t \\ 0 & 2 & -4t \\ 2 & -3 & 2t+1 \end{pmatrix}$ or $e^t\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & -2t \\ 0 & -4 & -4t \\ 2 & 2 & 2t+1 \end{pmatrix}$

f. $\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -4 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{T}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/4 & 0 \\ -2 & 3/2 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$

$\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

19. a. $\mathbf{J}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^2 & 2\lambda \\ 0 & \lambda^2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{J}^3 = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^3 & 3\lambda^2 \\ 0 & \lambda^3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{J}^4 = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^4 & 4\lambda^3 \\ 0 & \lambda^4 \end{pmatrix}$

c. $\exp(\mathbf{J}t) = e^{\lambda t}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$
d. $\mathbf{x} = \exp(\mathbf{J}t)\mathbf{x}^0$

20. c. $\exp(\mathbf{J}t) = e^{\lambda t}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & t \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

21. c. $\exp(\mathbf{J}t) = e^{\lambda t}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t & t^2/2 \\ 0 & 1 & t \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

Section 7.9, page 351

1. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^t + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + \frac{3}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} te^t - \frac{1}{4}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} e^t + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} t - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

2. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 5\cos t \\ 2\cos t + \sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 5\sin t \\ -\cos t + 2\sin t \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t\cos t - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} t\sin t - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \cos t$

3. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} e^{-3t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^t$

4. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + c_2\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} t - \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}\right) - 2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \ln t + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} t^{-1} - \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} t^{-2}$

5. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + \frac{1}{4}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix} e^t$

6. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^t + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^t + 2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} te^t$

7. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-4t} - \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2} - 1 \\ 2 - \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} te^{-t} + \frac{1}{9}\begin{pmatrix} 2 + \sqrt{2} \\ -1 - \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}$

8. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 5\cos t \\ 2\cos t + \sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 5\sin t \\ -\cos t + 2\sin t \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} t\cos t - \begin{pmatrix} 5/2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t\sin t - \begin{pmatrix} 5/2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \cos t$

9. a. $\Psi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}\cos\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) & e^{-t/2}\sin\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) \\ 4e^{-t/2}\sin\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) & -4e^{-t/2}\cos\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) \end{pmatrix}$

b. $\mathbf{x} = e^{-t/2}\begin{pmatrix} \sin\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) \\ 4 - 4\cos\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) \end{pmatrix}$

10. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} t^{-1} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} t - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t\ln t - \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} t^2$

11. $\mathbf{x} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t^2 + c_2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} t^{-1} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} t + \frac{1}{10}\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} t^4 - \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

13. a. $\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2e^t \end{pmatrix}.$

14. a. $\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\dfrac{t+2}{t^2} & \dfrac{t+2}{t} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2t \end{pmatrix}$.

15. a. $\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -q(t) & -p(t) \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ g(t) \end{pmatrix}$.

17. $(3(\alpha_1 - \alpha_2) - 4)/6 = c_1, \quad (\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 3)/2 = c_2$

Chapter 8

Section 8.1, page 361

3. a. 1.59980, 1.29288, 1.07242, 0.930175
b. 1.61124, 1.31361, 1.10012, 0.962552
c. 1.64337, 1.37164, 1.17763, 1.05334
d. 1.63301, 1.35295, 1.15267, 1.02407

4. a. 1.2025, 1.41603, 1.64289, 1.88590
b. 1.20388, 1.41936, 1.64896, 1.89572
c. 1.20864, 1.43104, 1.67042, 1.93076
d. 1.20693, 1.42683, 1.66265, 1.91802

5. a. 1.10244, 1.21426, 1.33484, 1.46399
b. 1.10365, 1.21656, 1.33817, 1.46832
c. 1.10720, 1.22333, 1.34797, 1.48110
d. 1.10603, 1.22110, 1.34473, 1.47688

6. a. 0.509239, 0.522187, 0.539023, 0.559936
b. 0.509701, 0.523155, 0.540550, 0.562089
c. 0.511127, 0.526155, 0.545306, 0.568822
d. 0.510645, 0.525138, 0.543690, 0.566529

7. a. −0.920498, −0.857538, −0.808030, −0.770038
b. −0.922575, −0.860923, −0.812300, −0.774965
c. −0.928059, −0.870054, −0.824021, −0.788686
d. −0.926341, −0.867163, −0.820279, −0.784275

8. a. 2.90330, 7.53999, 19.4292, 50.5614
b. 2.93506, 7.70957, 20.1081, 52.9779
c. 3.03951, 8.28137, 22.4562, 61.5496
d. 3.00306, 8.07933, 21.6163, 58.4462

9. a. 0.891830, 1.25225, 2.37818, 4.07257
b. 0.908902, 1.26872, 2.39336, 4.08799
c. 0.958565, 1.31786, 2.43924, 4.13474
d. 0.942261, 1.30153, 2.42389, 4.11908

10. a. 1.60729, 2.46830, 3.72167, 5.45963
b. 1.60996, 2.47460, 3.73356, 5.47774
c. 1.61792, 2.49356, 3.76940, 5.53223
d. 1.61528, 2.48723, 3.75742, 5.51404

11. a. −1.45865, −0.217545, 1.05715, 1.41487
b. −1.45322, −0.180813, 1.05903, 1.41244
c. −1.43600, −0.0681657, 1.06489, 1.40575
d. −1.44190, −0.105737, 1.06290, 1.40789

12. a. 0.587987, 0.791589, 1.14743, 1.70973
b. 0.589440, 0.795758, 1.15693, 1.72955
c. 0.593901, 0.808716, 1.18687, 1.79291
d. 0.592396, 0.804319, 1.17664, 1.77111

13. 1.595, 2.4636

14. $e_{n+1} = (2\phi(\bar{t}_n) - 1)h^2, \quad |e_{n+1}| \le \left(1 + 2\max_{0\le t\le 1} |\phi(t)|\right)h^2,$
$e_{n+1} = e^{2\bar{t}_n}h^2, \quad |e_1| \le 0.012, \quad |e_4| \le 0.022$

15. $e_{n+1} = (2\phi(\bar{t}_n) - \bar{t}_n)h^2, \quad |e_{n+1}| \le \left(1 + 2\max_{0\le t\le 1} |\phi(t)|\right)h^2,$
$e_{n+1} = 2e^{2\bar{t}_n}h^2, \quad |e_1| \le 0.024, \quad |e_4| \le 0.045$

16. $e_{n+1} = \left(19 - 15\bar{t}_n\phi\left(\bar{t}_n\right)^{-1/2}\right)h^2/4$

17. $e_{n+1} = \left(1 + \left(\bar{t}_n + \phi\left(\bar{t}_n\right)\right)^{-1/2}\right)h^2/4$

18. $e_{n+1} = \left(2 - \left(\phi\left(\bar{t}_n\right) + 2\bar{t}_n^2\right)\exp\left(-\bar{t}_n\phi\left(\bar{t}_n\right)\right) - \bar{t}_n\exp\left(-2\bar{t}_n\phi\left(\bar{t}_n\right)\right)\right)h^2/2$

19. a 1.2, 1.0, 1.2
b $\phi(t) = 1 + (1/5\pi)\sin(5\pi t)$
d 1.1, 1.1, 1.0, 1.0
e $h < 1/\sqrt{50\pi} \cong 0.08$

21. $e_{n+1} = -\dfrac{1}{2}\phi''\left(\bar{t}_n\right)h^2$

22. a. 1.55, 2.34, 3.46, 5.07
b. 1.20, 1.39, 1.57, 1.74
c. 1.20, 1.42, 1.65, 1.90

23. a. 0
b. 60
c. −92.16

24. $0.224 \ne 0.225$

Section 8.2, page 366

2. a. 1.19512, 1.38120, 1.55909, 1.72956
b. 1.19515, 1.38125, 1.55916, 1.72965
c. 1.19516, 1.38126, 1.55918, 1.72967

3. a. 1.20526, 1.42273, 1.65511, 1.90570
b. 1.20533, 1.42290, 1.65542, 1.90621
c. 1.20534, 1.42294, 1.65550, 1.90634

4. a. 1.10483, 1.21882, 1.34146, 1.47263
b. 1.10484, 1.21884, 1.34147, 1.47262
c. 1.10484, 1.21884, 1.34147, 1.47262

5. a. 0.510164, 0.524126, 0.542083, 0.564251
b. 0.510168, 0.524135, 0.542100, 0.564277
c. 0.510169, 0.524137, 0.542104, 0.564284

6. a. −0.924650, −0.864338, −0.816642, −0.780008
b. −0.924550, −0.864177, −0.816442, −0.779781
c. −0.924525, −0.864138, −0.816393, −0.779725

7. a. 2.96719, 7.88313, 20.8114, 55.5106
b. 2.96800, 7.88755, 20.8294, 55.5758

8. a. 0.926139, 1.28558, 2.40898, 4.10386
b. 0.925815, 1.28525, 2.40869, 4.10359

9. a. 3.96217, 5.10887, 6.43134, 7.92332
b. 3.96218, 5.10889, 6.43138, 7.92337

10. a. 1.61263, 2.48097, 3.74556, 5.49595
b. 1.61263, 2.48092, 3.74550, 5.49589

11. a. 0.590897, 0.799950, 1.16653, 1.74969
b. 0.590906, 0.799988, 1.16663, 1.74992

13. a. $e_{n+1} = (38h^3/3)\exp(4\bar{t}_n)$, $|e_{n+1}| \le 37,758.8h^3$ on $0 \le t \le 2$,
c. $|e_1| \le 0.00193389$

14. a. $e_{n+1} = (2h^3/3)\exp(2\bar{t}_n)$, $|e_{n+1}| \le 4.92604h^3$ on $0 \le t \le 1$,
b. $|e_1| \le 0.000814269$

15. a. $e_{n+1} = (4h^3/3)\exp(2\bar{t}_n)$, $|e_{n+1}| \le 9.85207h^3$ on $0 \le t \le 1$,
b. $|e_1| \le 0.00162854$

16. $h \cong 0.036$

17. $h \cong 0.023$

18. $h \cong 0.081$

19. $h \cong 0.117$

21. 1.19512, 1.38120, 1.55909, 1.72956

22. 1.62268, 1.33435, 1.12789, 0.995130

23. 1.20526, 1.42273, 1.65511, 1.90570

24. 1.10485, 1.21886, 1.34149, 1.47264

Section 8.3, page 370

2. **a.** 1.19516, 1.38127, 1.55918, 1.72968
b. 1.19516, 1.38127, 1.55918, 1.72968

3. **a.** 1.62231, 1.33362, 1.12686, 0.993839
b. 1.62230, 1.33362, 1.12685, 0.993826

4. **a.** 1.10484, 1.21884, 1.34147, 1.47262
b. 1.10484, 1.21884, 1.34147, 1.47262

5. **a.** 0.510170, 0.524138, 0.542105, 0.564286
b. 0.520169, 0.524138, 0.542105, 0.564286

6. **a.** −0.924517, −0.864125, −0.816377, −0.779706
b. −0.924517, −0.864125, −0.816377, −0.779706

7. **a.** 2.96825, 7.88889, 20.8349, 55.5957
b. 2.96828, 7.88904, 20.8355, 55.5980

8. **a.** 0.925725, 1.28516, 2.40860, 4.10350
b. 0.925711, 1.28515, 2.40860, 4.10350

9. **a.** 3.96219, 5.10890, 6.43139, 7.92338
b. 3.96219, 5.10890, 6.43139, 7.92338

10. **a.** 1.61262, 2.48091, 3.74548, 5.49587
b. 1.61262, 2.48091, 3.74548, 5.49587

11. **a.** 0.590909, 0.800000, 1.166667, 1.75000
b. 0.590909, 0.800000, 1.166667, 1.75000

Section 8.4, page 375

1. **a.** 1.7296801, 1.8934697
b. 1.7296802, 1.8934698
c. 1.7296805, 1.8934711

2. **a.** 0.993852, 0.925764
b. 0.993846, 0.925746
c. 0.993869, 0.925837

3. **a.** 1.4726173, 1.6126215
b. 1.4726189, 1.6126231
c. 1.4726199, 1.6126256

4. **a.** 0.56428577, 0.59090918
b. 0.56428581, 0.59090923
c. 0.56428588, 0.59090952

5. **a.** −0.779693, −0.753135
b. −0.779692, −0.753137
c. −0.779680, −0.753089

6. **a.** 2.96828, 7.88907, 20.8356, 55.5984
b. 2.96829, 7.88909, 20.8357, 55.5986
c. 2.96831, 7.88926, 20.8364, 55.6015

7. **a.** 0.9257133, 1.285148, 2.408595, 4.103495
b. 0.9257124, 1.285148, 2.408595, 4.103495
c. 0.9257248, 1.285158, 2.408594, 4.103493

8. **a.** 3.962186, 5.108903, 6.431390, 7.923385
b. 3.962186, 5.108903, 6.431390, 7.923385
c. 3.962186, 5.108903, 6.431390, 7.923385

9. **a.** 1.612622, 2.480909, 3.745479, 5.495872
b. 1.612622, 2.480909, 3.745479, 5.495873
c. 1.612623, 2.480905, 3.745473, 5.495869

10. **a.** 0.5909091, 0.8000000, 1.166667, 1.750000
b. 0.5909091, 0.8000000, 1.166667, 1.750000
c. 0.5909092, 0.8000002, 1.166667, 1.750001

Section 8.5, page 378

1. **a.** 1.26, 0.76; 1.7714, 1.4824; 2.58991, 2.3703; 3.82374, 3.60413; 5.64246, 5.38885
b. 1.32493, 0.758933; 1.93679, 1.57919; 2.93414, 2.66099; 4.48318, 4.22639; 6.84236, 6.56452
c. 1.32489, 0.759516; 1.9369, 1.57999; 2.93459, 2.66201; 4.48422, 4.22784; 6.8444, 6.56684

2. **a.** 0.582, 1.18; 0.117969, 1.27344; −0.336912, 1.27382; −0.730007, 1.18572; −1.02134, 1.02371
b. 0.568451, 1.15775; 0.109776, 1.22556; −0.32208, 1.20347; −0.681296, 1.10162; −0.937852, 0.937852
c. 0.56845, 1.15775; 0.109773, 1.22557; −0.322081, 1.20347; −0.681291, 1.10161; −0.937841, 0.93784

3. **a.** −0.198, 0.618; −0.378796, 0.28329; −0.51932, −0.0321025; −0.594324, −0.326801; −0.588278, −0.57545
b. −0.196904, 0.630936; −0.372643, 0.298888; −0.501302, −0.0111429; −0.561270, −0.288943; −0.547053, −0.508303
c. −0.196935, 0.630939; −0.372687, 0.298866; −0.501345, −0.0112184; −0.561292, −0.28907; −0.547031, −0.508427

4. **a.** 2.96225, 1.34538; 2.34119, 1.67121; 1.90236, 1.97158; 1.56602, 2.23895; 1.29768, 2.46732
b. 3.06339, 1.34858; 2.44497, 1.68638; 1.9911, 2.00036; 1.63818, 2.27981; 1.3555, 2.5175
c. 3.06314, 1.34899; 2.44465, 1.68699; 1.99075, 2.00107; 1.63781, 2.28057; 1.35514, 2.51827

5. **a.** 1.42386, 2.18957; 1.82234, 2.36791; 2.21728, 2.53329; 2.61118, 2.68763; 2.9955, 2.83354
b. 1.41513, 2.18699; 1.81208, 2.36233; 2.20635, 2.5258; 2.59826, 2.6794; 2.97806, 2.82487
c. 1.41513, 2.18699; 1.81209, 2.36233; 2.20635, 2.52581; 2.59826, 2.67941; 2.97806, 2.82488

6. For $h = 0.05$ and 0.025: $x = 10.227$, $y = -4.9294$; these results agree with the exact solution to five digits.

7. 1.543, 0.0707503; 1.14743, −1.3885

8. 1.99521, −0.662442

Section 8.6, page 386

1. **b.** $\phi_2(t) - \phi_1(t) = 0.001e^t \to \infty$ as $t \to \infty$

2. **b.** $\phi_1(t) = \ln(e^t/(2-e^t))$; $\phi_2(t) = \ln(1/(1-t))$

3. **a., b.** $h = 0.00025$ is sufficient. **c.** $h = 0.005$ is sufficient.

4. **a.** $y = 4e^{-10t} + t^2/4$
c. Runge–Kutta is stable for $h = 0.25$ but unstable for $h = 0.3$.
d. $h = 5/13 \cong 0.384615$ is small enough.

5. **a.** $y = t$

6. **a.** $y = t^2$

Chapter 9

Section 9.1, page 397

1. a. $r_1 = -1,\ \xi^{(1)} = (1, 2)^T;\ r_2 = 2, \xi^{(2)} = (2, 1)^T$
b. saddle point, unstable

2. a. $r_1 = 2,\ \xi^{(1)} = (1, 3)^T;\ r_2 = 4, \xi^{(2)} = (1, 1)^T$
b. node, unstable

3. a. $r_1 = -1, \xi^{(1)} = (1, 3)^T;\ r_2 = 1, \xi^{(2)} = (1, 1)^T$
b. saddle point, unstable

4. a. $r_1 = r_2 = -3, \xi^{(1)} = (1, 1)^T$
b. improper node, asymptotically stable

5. a. $r_1, r_2 = -1 \pm i;\ \xi^{(1)}, \xi^{(2)} = (2 \pm i, 1)^T$
b. spiral point, asymptotically stable

6. a. $r_1, r_2 = \pm i;\ \xi^{(1)}, \xi^{(2)} = (2 \pm i, 1)^T$
b. center, stable

7. a. $r_1, r_2 = 1 \pm 2i; \xi^{(1)}, \xi^{(2)} = (1, 1 \mp i)^T$
b. spiral point, unstable

8. a. $r_1 = -1, \xi^{(1)} = (1, 0)^T;\ r_2 = -1/4, \xi^{(2)} = (4, -3)^T$
b. node, asymptotically stable

9. a. $r_1, r_2 = \pm 3i;\ \xi^{(1)}, \xi^{(2)} = (2, -1 \pm 3i)^T$
b. center, stable

10. a. $r_1 = r_2 = -1;\ \xi^{(1)} = (1, 0)^T, \xi^{(2)} = (0, 1)^T$
b. proper node, asymptotically stable

11. $x_0 = 1, y_0 = 1;\ r_1 = \sqrt{2}, r_2 = -\sqrt{2};$ saddle point, unstable

12. $x_0 = -2, y_0 = 1;\ r_1, r_2 = -1 \pm \sqrt{2}\, i;$
spiral point, asymptotically stable

13. $x_0 = \gamma/\delta, y_0 = \alpha/\beta;\ r_1, r_2 = \pm\sqrt{\beta\delta}\, i;$ center, stable

14. $c^2 > 4km$, node, asymptotically stable; $c^2 = 4km$, improper node, asymptotically stable;
$c^2 < 4km$, spiral point, asymptotically stable

Section 9.2, page 406

1. $x = 4e^{-t}, y = 2e^{-2t}, y = x^2/8$

2. $x = 4e^{-t}, y = 2e^{2t}, y = 32x^{-2};\ x = 4e^{-t}, y = 0$

3. $x = \sqrt{a}\cos\left(\sqrt{ab}\, t\right), y = -\sqrt{b}\sin\left(\sqrt{ab}\, t\right); x^2/a + y^2/b = 1$

4. a., c. $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, 1\right)$, saddle point, unstable;
(0, 0), (proper) node, unstable

5. a., c. $\left(-\sqrt{3}/3, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$, saddle point, unstable; $\left(\sqrt{3}/3, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$, center, stable

6. a., c. (0, 0), node, unstable;
(2, 0), node, asymptotically stable;
$\left(0, \frac{3}{2}\right)$, saddle point, unstable; (−1, 3), node, asymptotically stable

7. a., c. (0, 0), node, asymptotically stable; (1, −1), saddle point, unstable; (1, −2), spiral point, asymptotically stable

8. a., c. (0, 0), spiral point, asymptotically stable;
$(1 - \sqrt{2}, 1 + \sqrt{2})$, saddle point, unstable;
$(1 + \sqrt{2}, 1 - \sqrt{2})$, saddle point, unstable

9. a., c. (0, 0), saddle point, unstable;
(2, 2), spiral point, asymptotically stable;
(−1, −1), spiral point, asymptotically stable;
(−2, 0), saddle point, unstable

10. a., c. (0, 0), saddle point, unstable; (−2, 2), node, unstable;
(4, 4), spiral point, asymptotically stable

11. a., c. (0, 0), saddle point, unstable;
(2, 0), saddle point, unstable;
(1, 1), spiral point, asymptotically stable;
(−2, −2), spiral point, asymptotically stable

12. a., c. (0, 0), node, unstable; (1, 1), saddle point, unstable;
(3, −1), spiral point, asymptotically stable

13. a., c. (0, 1), saddle point, unstable;
(1, 1), node, asymptotically stable; (−2, 4), spiral point, unstable

14. a. $4x^2 - y^2 = c$

15. a. $4x^2 + y^2 = c$

16. a. $(y - 2x)^2(x + y) = c$

17. a. $\arctan(y/x) - \ln\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = c$

18. a. $x^2y^2 - 3x^2y - 2y^2 = c$

19. a. $y^2/2 - \cos x = c$

20. a. $x^2 + y^2 - x^4/12 = c$

Section 9.3, page 415

1. linear and nonlinear: saddle point, unstable

2. linear: center, stable;
nonlinear: spiral point or center, indeterminate

3. linear: improper node, unstable;
nonlinear: node or spiral point, unstable

4. a., b., c. (0, 0); $u' = -2u + 2v, v' = 4u + 4v;\ r = 1 \pm \sqrt{17};$ saddle point, unstable
(−2, 2); $u' = 4u, v' = 6u + 6v;\ r = 4, 6;$ node, unstable
(4, 4); $u' = -6u + 6v, v' = -8u;\ r = -3 \pm \sqrt{39}\, i;$ spiral point, asymptotically stable

5. a., b., c. (0, 0); $u' = u, v' = 3v;\ r = 1, 3;$ node, unstable
(1, 0); $u' = -u - v, v' = 2v;\ r = -1, 2;$ saddle point, unstable
$\left(0, \frac{3}{2}\right)$; $u' = -\frac{1}{2}u, v' = -\frac{3}{2}u - 3v;\ r = -\frac{1}{2}, -3;$ node, asymptotically stable
(−1, 2); $u' = u + v, v' = -2u - 4v;\ r = (-3 \pm \sqrt{17})/2;$ saddle point, unstable

6. a., b., c. (1, 1); $u' = -v, v' = 2u - 2v;\ r = -1 \pm i;$ spiral point, asymptotically stable
(−1, 1); $u' = -v, v' = -2u - 2v;\ r = -1 \pm \sqrt{3};$ saddle point, unstable

7. a., b., c. (0, 0); $u' = -2u + 4v, v' = 2u + 4v;\ r = (1 \pm \sqrt{17}/2;$ saddle point, unstable
(2, 1); $u' = -3u + 6v, v' = -4u;\ r = \dfrac{-3 \pm \sqrt{87}i}{4};$ spiral point, asymptotically stable
(2, −2); $u' = -6v, v' = 2u;\ r = \pm\sqrt{3}\, i;$ center or spiral point, indeterminate
(4, −2); $u' = -8v, v' = -2u - 4v;\ r = -1 \pm \sqrt{5};$ saddle point, unstable

8. a., b., c. (0, 0); $u' = u, v' = v;\ r = 1, 1;$ node or spiral point, unstable
(−1, 0); $u' = -u, v' = 2v;\ r = -1, 2;$ saddle point, unstable

9. a., b., c. $(0, \pm 2n\pi), n = 0, 1, 2, \dots;\ u' = v, v' = -u;$
$r = \pm i;$ center or spiral point, indeterminate
$(2, \pm(2n - 1)\pi), n = 1, 2, 3, \dots;\ u' = -3v, v' = -u;\ r = \pm\sqrt{3};$ saddle point, unstable

10. a., b., c. (0, 0); $u' = u,\ v' = v;\ r = 1, 1;$ node or spiral point, unstable
(1, 1); $u' = u - 2v, v' = -2u + v;\ r = 3, -1;$ saddle point, unstable

11. a., b., c. (1, 1); $u' = -u - v, v' = u - 3v;\ r = -2, -2;$
node or spiral point, asymptotically stable
(−1, −1); $u' = u + v, v' = u - 3v;\ r = -1 \pm \sqrt{5};$ saddle point, unstable

12. **a., b., c.** $(0, 0)$; $u' = -2u - v, v' = u - v$; $r = (-3 \pm \sqrt{3}\,i)/2$; spiral point, asymptotically stable
$(-0.33076,\ 1.0924)$ and $(0.33076, -1.0924)$;
$u' = -3.5216u - 0.27735v, v' = 0.27735u + 2.6895v$;
$r = -3.5092, 2.6771$; saddle point, unstable

13. **a., b., c.** $(0, 0)$; $u' = u + v, v' = -u + v$; $r = 1 \pm i$; spiral point, unstable

14. **a., b., c.** $(2, 2)$; $u' = -4v, v' = -\frac{7}{2}u + \frac{7}{2}v$;
$r = (7 \pm \sqrt{273})/4$; saddle point, unstable
$(-2, -2)$; $u' = 4v, v' = \frac{1}{2}u - \frac{1}{2}v$; $r = (-1 \pm \sqrt{33})/4$; saddle point, unstable
$\left(-\frac{3}{2}, 2\right)$; $u' = -4v, v' = \frac{7}{2}u$; $r = \pm\sqrt{14}\,i$; center or spiral point, indeterminate
$\left(-\frac{3}{2}, -2\right)$; $u' = 4v, v' = -\frac{1}{2}u$; $r = \pm\sqrt{2}\,i$; center or spiral point, indeterminate

15. **a., b., c.** $(0, 0)$; $u' = 2u - v, v' = 2u - 4v$; $r = -1 \pm \sqrt{7}$; saddle point, unstable
$(2, 1)$; $u' = -3v, v' = 4u - 8v$; $r = -2, -6$; node, asymptotically stable
$(-2, 1)$; $u' = 5v, v' = -4u$; $r = \pm 2\sqrt{5}\,i$; center or spiral point, indeterminate
$(-2, -4)$; $u' = 10u - 5v, v' = 6u$; $r = 5 \pm \sqrt{5}\,i$; spiral point, unstable

18. **b., c.** Refer to Table 9.3.1.

20. **a.** $R = A$, $T \cong 3.17$
b. $R = A$, $T \cong 3.20, 3.35, 3.63, 4.17$
c. $T \to \pi$ as $A \to 0$
d. $A = \pi$

21. **a.** $v_c \cong 4.00$

22. **a.** $v_c \cong 4.51$

27. **a.** $dx/dt = y$, $dy/dt = -g(x) - c(x)y$
b. The linear system is $dx/dt = y$,
$dy/dt = -g'(0)x - c(0)y$.
c. The eigenvalues satisfy $r^2 + c(0)r + g'(0) = 0$.

Section 9.4, page 426

1. **b., c.** $(0, 0)$; $u' = \frac{3}{2}u, v' = 2v$; $r = \frac{3}{2}, 2$; node, unstable
$(0, 2)$; $u' = \frac{1}{2}u, v' = -\frac{3}{2}u - 2v$; $r = \frac{1}{2}, -2$; saddle point, unstable
$\left(\frac{3}{2}, 0\right)$; $u' = -\frac{3}{2}u - \frac{3}{4}v, v' = \frac{7}{8}v$; $r = -\frac{3}{2}, \frac{7}{8}$; saddle point, unstable
$\left(\frac{4}{5}, \frac{7}{5}\right)$; $u' = -\frac{4}{5}u - \frac{2}{5}v, v' = -\frac{21}{20}u - \frac{7}{5}v$;
$r = (-22 \pm \sqrt{204})/20$; node, asymptotically stable

2. **b., c.** $(0, 0)$; $u' = \frac{3}{2}u, v' = 2v$; $r = \frac{3}{2}, 2$; node, unstable
$(0, 4)$; $u' = -\frac{1}{2}u, v' = -6u - 2v$; $r = -\frac{1}{2}, -2$; node, asymptotically stable
$\left(\frac{3}{2}, 0\right)$; $u' = -\frac{3}{2}u - \frac{3}{4}v, v' = -\frac{1}{4}v$; $r = -\frac{1}{4}, -\frac{3}{2}$; node, asymptotically stable
$(1, 1)$; $u' = -u - \frac{1}{2}v, v' = -\frac{3}{2}u - \frac{1}{2}v$; $r = (-3 \pm \sqrt{13})/4$;
saddle point, unstable

3. **b., c.** $(0, 0)$; $u' = u, v' = \frac{3}{2}v$; $r = 1, \frac{3}{2}$; node, unstable
$\left(0, \frac{3}{2}\right)$; $u' = -\frac{1}{2}u, v' = -\frac{3}{2}u - \frac{3}{2}v$; $r = -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}$; node, asymptotically stable
$(1, 0)$; $u' = -u - v, v' = \frac{1}{2}v$; $r = -1, \frac{1}{2}$; saddle point, unstable

4. **b., c.** $(0, 0)$; $u' = u, v' = \frac{5}{2}v$; $r = 1, \frac{5}{2}$; node, unstable
$\left(0, \frac{5}{3}\right)$; $u' = \frac{11}{6}u, v' = \frac{5}{12}u - \frac{5}{2}v$; $r = \frac{11}{6}, -\frac{5}{2}$; saddle point, unstable
$(1, 0)$; $u' = -u + \frac{1}{2}v, v' = \frac{11}{4}v$; $r = -1, \frac{11}{4}$; saddle point, unstable
$(2, 2)$; $u' = -2u + v$, $v' = \frac{1}{2}u - 3v$; $r = (-5 \pm \sqrt{3})/2$;
node, asymptotically stable

6. **a.** Critical points are $x = 0, y = 0$; $x = \epsilon_1/\sigma_1, y = 0$;
$x = 0, y = \epsilon_2/\sigma_2$.
$x \to 0$, $y \to \epsilon_2/\sigma_2$ as $t \to \infty$; the redear survive.
b. Same as part a except $x \to \epsilon_1/\sigma_1$, $y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$; the bluegill survive.

7. **a.** $X = (B - \gamma_1 R)/(1 - \gamma_1\gamma_2)$, $Y = (R - \gamma_2 B)/(1 - \gamma_1\gamma_2)$
b. X is reduced, Y is increased; yes, if B becomes less than $\gamma_1 R$, then $x \to 0$ and $y \to R$ as $t \to \infty$.

8. **a.** $\sigma_1\epsilon_2 - \alpha_2\epsilon_1 \neq 0$: $(0, 0)$, $(0, \epsilon_2/\sigma_2)$, $(\epsilon_1/\sigma_1, 0)$;
$\sigma_1\epsilon_2 - \alpha_2\epsilon_1 = 0$: $(0, 0)$, and all points on the line
$\sigma_1 x + \alpha_1 y = \epsilon_1$
b. $\sigma_1\epsilon_2 - \alpha_2\epsilon_1 > 0$: $(0, 0)$ is unstable node;
$(\epsilon_1/\sigma_1, 0)$ is saddle point;
$(0, \epsilon_2/\sigma_2)$ is asymptotically stable node.
$\sigma_1\epsilon_2 - \alpha_2\epsilon_1 < 0$: $(0, 0)$ is unstable node;
$(0, \epsilon_2/\sigma_2)$ is saddle point;
$(\epsilon_1/\sigma_1, 0)$ is asymptotically stable node.
c. $(0, 0)$ is unstable node; points on the line $\sigma_1 x + \alpha_1 y = \epsilon_1$ are stable, nonisolated critical points.

10. **b.** $(0, 0)$, saddle point; $(0.15, 0)$, spiral point if $\gamma^2 < 1.11$, node if $\gamma^2 \geq 1.11$; $(2, 0)$, saddle point
c. $\gamma \cong 1.20$

11. **b.** $\left(2 - \sqrt{4 - \frac{3}{2}\alpha},\ \frac{3}{2}\alpha\right)$, $\left(2 + \sqrt{4 - \frac{3}{2}\alpha},\ \frac{3}{2}\alpha\right)$
c. $(1, 3)$ is an asymptotically stable node;
$(3, 3)$ is a saddle point
d. $\alpha_0 = 8/3$; critical point is $(2, 4)$; $\lambda = 0, -1$

12. **b.** $\left(2 - \sqrt{4 - \frac{3}{2}\alpha},\ \frac{3}{2}\alpha\right)$, $\left(2 + \sqrt{4 - \frac{3}{2}\alpha},\ \frac{3}{2}\alpha\right)$
c. $(1, 3)$ is a saddle point; $(3, 3)$ is an unstable spiral point
d. $\alpha_0 = 8/3$; critical point is $(2, 4)$; $\lambda = 0, 1$

13. **b.** $\left(\left(3 - \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2,\ \left(3 + 2\alpha - \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2\right)$,
$\left(\left(3 + \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2,\ \left(3 + 2\alpha + \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2\right)$
c. $(1, 3)$ is a saddle point; $(2, 4)$ is an unstable spiral point
d. $\alpha_0 = 9/4$; critical point is $(3/2, 15/4)$; $\lambda = 0, 0$

14. **b.** $\left(\left(3 - \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2,\ \left(3 + 2\alpha - \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2\right)$,
$\left(\left(3 + \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2,\ \left(3 + 2\alpha + \sqrt{9 - 4\alpha}\right)/2\right)$
c. $(1, 3)$ is a center of the linear approximation and also of the nonlinear system; $(2, 4)$ is a saddle point
d. $\alpha_0 = 9/4$; critical point is $(3/2, 15/4)$; $\lambda = 0, 0$

15. **b.** $P_1(0, 0)$, $P_2(1, 0)$, $P_3(0, \alpha)$, $P_4(2 - 2\alpha, -1 + 2\alpha)$.
P_4 is in the first quadrant for $0.5 \leq \alpha \leq 1$.
c. $\alpha = 0$; P_3 coincides with P_1. $\alpha = 0.5$; P_4 coincides with P_2.
$\alpha = 1$; P_4 coincides with P_3.
d. $\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - 2x - y & -x \\ -0.5y & \alpha - 2y - 0.5x \end{pmatrix}$
e. P_1 is an unstable node for $\alpha > 0$. P_2 is an asymptotically stable node for $0 < \alpha < 0.5$ and a saddle point for $\alpha > 0.5$. P_3 is a saddle point for $0 < \alpha < 1$ and an asymptotically stable node for $\alpha > 1$. P_4 is an asymptotically stable node for $0.5 < \alpha < 1$.

16. b. $P_1(0,0)$, $P_2(1,0)$, $P_3(0, 0.75/\alpha)$, $P_4((4\alpha-3)/(4\alpha-2), 1/(4\alpha-2))$. P_4 is in the first quadrant for $\alpha \geq 0.75$.

c. $\alpha = 0.75$; P_3 coincides with P_4.

d. $\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} 1-2x-y & -x \\ -0.5y & 0.75-2\alpha y-0.5x \end{pmatrix}$

e. P_1 is an unstable node. P_2 is a saddle point. P_3 is an asymptotically stable node for $0 < \alpha < 0.75$ and a saddle point for $\alpha > 0.75$. P_4 is an asymptotically stable node for $\alpha > 0.75$.

17. b. $P_1(0,0)$, $P_2(1,0)$, $P_3(0,\alpha)$, $P_4(0.5, 0.5)$. In addition, for $\alpha = 1$ every point on the line $x + y = 1$ is a critical point.

c. $\alpha = 0$; P_3 coincides with P_1. Also $\alpha = 1$.

d. $\mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} 1-2x-y & -x \\ -(2\alpha-1)y & \alpha-2y-(2\alpha-1)x \end{pmatrix}$

e. P_1 is an unstable node for $\alpha > 0$. P_2 and P_3 are saddle points for $0 < \alpha < 1$ and asymptotically stable nodes for $\alpha > 1$. P_4 is an asymptotically stable spiral point for $0 < \alpha < 0.5$, an asymptotically stable node for $0.5 \leq \alpha < 1$, and a saddle point for $\alpha > 1$.

Section 9.5, page 433

1. b., c. $(0,0)$; $u' = \frac{3}{2}u$, $v' = -\frac{1}{2}v$; $r = \frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}$; saddle point, unstable

$\left(\frac{1}{2}, 3\right)$; $u' = -\frac{1}{4}v$, $v' = 3u$; $r = \pm\sqrt{3}\,i/2$; center or spiral point, indeterminate

2. b., c. $(0,0)$; $u' = u, v' = -\frac{1}{4}v$; $r = 1, -\frac{1}{4}$; saddle point, unstable

$\left(\frac{1}{2}, 2\right)$; $u' = -\frac{1}{4}v, v' = u$; $r = \pm\frac{1}{2}i$; center or spiral point, indeterminate

3. b., c. $(0,0)$; $u' = u, v' = -\frac{1}{4}v$; $r = 1, -\frac{1}{4}$; saddle point, unstable

$(2,0)$; $u' = -u - v, v' = \frac{3}{4}v$; $r = -1, \frac{3}{4}$; saddle point, unstable

$\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\right)$; $u' = -\frac{1}{4}u - \frac{1}{4}v$, $v' = \frac{3}{4}u$; $r = (-1 \pm \sqrt{11}\,i)/8$; spiral point, asymptotically stable

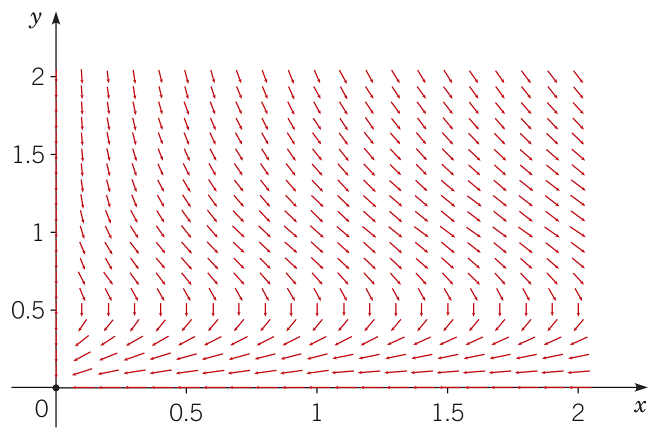
4. b., c. $(0,0)$; $u' = -u, v' = -\frac{3}{2}v$; $r = -1, -\frac{3}{2}$; node, asymptotically stable

$\left(\frac{1}{2}, 0\right)$; $u' = \frac{3}{4}u - \frac{3}{20}v, v' = -v$; $r = -1, \frac{3}{4}$; saddle point, unstable

$(2,0)$; $u' = -3u - \frac{3}{5}v, v' = \frac{1}{2}v$; $r = -3, \frac{1}{2}$; saddle point, unstable

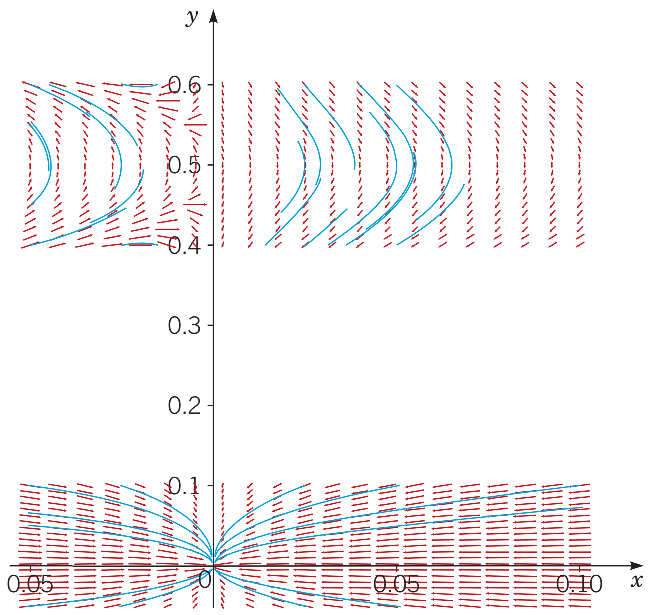
$\left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{3}\right)$; $u' = -\frac{3}{4}u - \frac{9}{20}v$, $v' = \frac{5}{3}u$; $r = (-3 \pm \sqrt{39}\,i)/8$; spiral point, asymptotically stable

5. a.

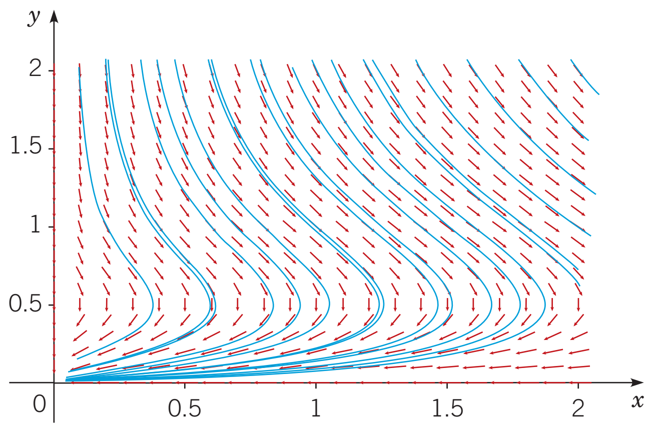


b., c. $(0,0)$; $u' = -\frac{1}{2}u$, $v' = -\frac{1}{4}v$; $r = -\frac{1}{4}, -\frac{1}{2}$; node, asynmptotically stable $\left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right)$; $u' = 0$. $v' = -\frac{1}{4}u$; $r = 0, 0$; proper or improper node, or saddle point

d.



e.



6. b., c.

$t = 0, T, 2T, \ldots$:	H is a max.,	dP/dt is a max.
$t = T/4, 5T/4, \ldots$:	dH/dt is a min.,	P is a max.
$t = T/2, 3T/2, \ldots$:	H is a min.,	dP/dt is a min.
$t = 3T/4, 7T/4, \ldots$:	dH/dt is a max.,	P is a min.

7. a. $\sqrt{c}\,\alpha/(\sqrt{a}\,\gamma)$

b. $\sqrt{3}$

d. The ratio of prey amplitude to predator amplitude increases very slowly as the initial point moves away from the equilibrium point.

8. a. $4\pi/\sqrt{3} \cong 7.2552$

c. The period increases slowly as the initial point moves away from the equilibrium point.

9. a. $T \cong 6.5$

b. $T \cong 3.7$, $T \cong 11.5$

c. $T \cong 3.8$, $T \cong 11.1$

11. **a.** $P_1(0, 0)$, $P_2(1/\sigma, 0)$, $P_3(3, 2 - 6\sigma)$; P_2 moves to the left and P_3 moves down; they coincide at $(3, 0)$ when $\sigma = 1/3$.
b. P_1 is a saddle point. P_2 is a saddle point for $\sigma < 1/3$ and an asymptotically stable node for $\sigma > 1/3$. P_3 is an asymptotically stable spiral point for $\sigma < \sigma_1 = \left(\sqrt{7/3} - 1\right)/2 \cong 0.2638$, an asymptotically stable node for $\sigma_1 < \sigma < 1/3$, and a saddle point for $\sigma > 1/3$.

12. **a.** $P_1(0, 0)$, $P_2(a/\sigma, 0)$, $P_3[c/\gamma, (a/\alpha) - (c\sigma/\alpha\gamma)]$;
P_2 moves to the left and P_3 moves down;
they coincide at $(c/\gamma, 0)$ when $\sigma = a\gamma/c$.
b. P_1 is a saddle point. P_2 is a saddle point for $\sigma < a\gamma/c$ and an asymptotically stable node for $\sigma > a\gamma/c$. P_3 is an asymptotically stable spiral point for sufficiently small values of σ and becomes an asymptotically stable node at a certain value $\sigma_1 < a\gamma/c$. P_3 is a saddle point for $\sigma > a\gamma/c$.

13. **a., b.** $P_1(0, 0)$ is a saddle point; $P_2(5, 0)$ is a saddle point; $P_3(2, 2.4)$ is an asymptotically stable spiral point.

14. **b.** same prey, fewer predators
c. more prey, same predators
d. more prey, fewer predators

15. **b.** same prey, fewer predators
c. more prey, fewer predators
d. more prey, even fewer predators

16. **b.** same prey, fewer predators
c. more prey, same predators
d. more prey, fewer predators

Section 9.7, page 452

1. $r = 1$, $\theta = t + t_0$, stable limit cycle

2. $r = 1$, $\theta = -t + t_0$, semistable limit cycle

3. $r = 1$, $\theta = t + t_0$, stable limit cycle;
$r = 3$, $\theta = t + t_0$, unstable periodic solution

4. $r = 1$, $\theta = -t + t_0$, unstable periodic solution;
$r = 2$, $\theta = -t + t_0$, stable limit cycle

5. $r = 2n - 1$, $\theta = t + t_0$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, stable limit cycle;
$r = 2n$, $\theta = t + t_0$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, unstable periodic solution

6. $r = 2$, $\theta = -t + t_0$, semistable limit cycle;
$r = 3$, $\theta = -t + t_0$, unstable periodic solution

7. **a.** Counterclockwise
b. $r = 1$, $\theta = t + t_0$, stable limit cycle;
$r = 2$, $\theta = t + t_0$, semistable limit cycle;
$r = 3$, $\theta = t + t_0$, unstable periodic solution

8. $r = \sqrt{2}$, $\theta = -t + t_0$, unstable periodic solution

14. **a.** $\mu = 0.2$, $T \cong 6.29$; $\mu = 1$, $T \cong 6.66$;
$\mu = 5$, $T \cong 11.60$

15. **a.** $x' = y$, $y' = -x + \mu y - \mu y^3/3$
b. $0 < \mu < 2$, unstable spiral point; $\mu \geq 2$, unstable node
c. $A \cong 2.16$, $T \cong 6.65$
d. $\mu = 0.2$, $A \cong 1.99$, $T \cong 6.31$;
$\mu = 0.5$, $A \cong 2.03$, $T \cong 6.39$;
$\mu = 2$, $A \cong 2.60$, $T \cong 7.65$;
$\mu = 5$, $A \cong 4.36$, $T \cong 11.60$

16. **b.** $x' = \mu x + y$, $y' = -x + \mu y$; $\lambda = \mu \pm i$; the origin is an asymptotically stable spiral point for $\mu < 0$ and an unstable spiral point for $\mu > 0$.
c. $r' = r(\mu - r^2)$, $\theta' = -1$

17. **a.** The origin is an asymptotically stable node for $\mu < -2$, an asymptotically stable spiral point for $-2 < \mu < 0$, an unstable spiral point for $0 < \mu < 2$, and an unstable node for $\mu > 2$.

18. **a., b.** $(0, 0)$ is a saddle point; $(12, 0)$ is a saddle point; $(2, 8)$ is an unstable spiral point.

19. **a.** $(0, 0)$, $(5a, 0)$, $(2, 4a - 1.6)$
b. $r = -0.25 + 0.125a \pm 0.025\sqrt{220 - 400a + 25a^2}$; $a_0 = 2$

20. **b.** $\lambda = \left(-(5/4 - b) \pm \sqrt{(5/4 - b)^2 - 1}\right)/2$
c. $0 < b < 1/4$: asymptotically stable node;
$1/4 < b < 5/4$: asymptotically stable spiral point;
$5/4 < b < 9/4$: unstable spiral point;
$9/4 < b$; unstable node
d. $b_0 = 5/4$

21. **b.** $k = 0$, $(1.1994, -0.62426)$;
$k = 0.5$, $(0.80485, -0.13106)$
c. $k_0 \cong 0.3465$, $(0.95450, -0.31813)$
d. $k = 0.4$, $T \cong 11.23$; $k = 0.5$, $T \cong 10.37$;
$k = 0.6$, $T \cong 9.93$
e. $k_1 \cong 1.4035$

Section 9.8, page 460

1. **b.** $\lambda = \lambda_1$, $\xi^{(1)} = (0, 0, 1)^T$;
$\lambda = \lambda_2$, $\xi^{(2)} = \left(20, 9 - \sqrt{81 + 40r}, 0\right)^T$;
$\lambda = \lambda_3$, $\xi^{(3)} = \left(20, 9 + \sqrt{81 + 40r}, 0\right)^T$
c. $\lambda_1 \cong -2.6667$, $\xi^{(1)} = (0, 0, 1)^T$;
$\lambda_2 \cong -22.8277$, $\xi^{(2)} \cong (20, -25.6554, 0)^T$;
$\lambda_3 \cong 11.8277$, $\xi^{(3)} \cong (20, 43.6554, 0)^T$

2. **c.** $\lambda_1 \cong -13.8546$; $\lambda_2, \lambda_3 \cong 0.0939556 \pm 10.1945i$

5. **a.** $dV/dt = -2\sigma\left(rx^2 + y^2 + b(z - r)^2 - br^2\right)$

11. **b.** $c = \sqrt{0.5}$: $P_1\left(\sqrt{2}/4, -\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}\right)$;
$\lambda = 0, -0.05178 \pm 1.5242i$
$c = 1$: $P_1 = (0.8536, -3.4142, 3.4142)$;
$\lambda = 0.1612, -0.02882 \pm 2.0943i$
$P_2(0.1464, -0.5858, 0.5858)$;
$\lambda = -0.5303, -0.03665 \pm 1.1542i$

12. **a.** $P_1(1.1954, -4.7817, 4.7817)$;
$\lambda = 0.1893, -0.02191 \pm 2.4007i$
$P_2(0.1046, -0.4183, 0.4183)$;
$\lambda = -0.9614, 0.007964 \pm 1.0652i$
d. $T_1 \cong 5.9$

13. **a., b., c.** $c_1 \cong 1.243$

14. **a.** $P_1(2.9577, -11.8310, 11.8310)$;
$\lambda = 0.2273, -0.009796 \pm 3.5812i$
$P_2(0.04226, -0.1690, 0.1690)$;
$\lambda = -2.9053, 0.09877 \pm 0.9969i$
c. $T_2 \cong 11.8$

15. **a.** $P_1(3.7668, -15.0673, 15.0673)$;
$\lambda = 0.2324, -0.007814 \pm 4.0078i$
$P_2(0.03318, -0.1327, 0.1327)$;
$\lambda = -3.7335, 0.1083 \pm 0.9941i$
b. $T_4 \cong 23.6$

Chapter 10

Section 10.1, page 468

1. $y = -\sin(x)$

2. $y = \left(\cot\left(\sqrt{2}\pi\right)\cos\left(\sqrt{2}x\right) + \sin\left(\sqrt{2}x\right)\right)/\sqrt{2}$

3. $y = 0$ for all L; $y = c_2\sin(x)$ if $\sin(L) = 0$

4. $y = -\tan(L)\cos(x) + \sin(x)$ if $\cos(L) \neq 0$; no solution if $\cos(L) = 0$

5. No solution

6. $y = \left(-\pi\sin\left(\sqrt{2}x\right) + x\sin\left(\sqrt{2}\pi\right)\right)/2\sin\left(\sqrt{2}\pi\right)$

7. No solution

8. $y = c_2\sin(2x) + \frac{1}{3}\sin x$

9. $y = c_1\cos(2x) + \frac{1}{3}\cos x$

10. $y = \frac{1}{2}\cos x$

11. $y = -\frac{5}{2}x + \frac{3}{2}x^2$

12. $y = -\frac{1}{9}x^{-1} + \frac{1}{9}(1-e^3)x^{-1}\ln x + \frac{1}{9}x^2$

13. No solution

14. $\lambda_n = \left(\frac{2n-1}{2}\right)^2, \quad y_n(x) = \sin\left(\frac{2n-1}{2}x\right); n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

15. $\lambda_n = \left(\frac{2n-1}{2}\right)^2, \quad y_n(x) = \cos\left(\frac{2n-1}{2}x\right); n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

16. $\lambda_0 = 0, \quad y_0(x) = 1; \quad \lambda_n = n^2, \quad y_n(x) = \cos nx;$ $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

17. $\lambda_n = \left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi}{2L}\right)^2, \quad y_n(x) = \cos\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right);$ $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

18. $\lambda_0 = 0,\ y_0(x) = 1; \lambda_n = (n\pi/L)^2,\ y_n(x) = \cos(n\pi x/L);$ $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

19. $\lambda_n = -\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi}{2L}\right)^2, \quad y_n(x) = \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right);$ $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

20. $\lambda_n = 1 + (n\pi/\ln L)^2, \quad y_n(x) = x\sin(n\pi\ln x/\ln L);$ $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

21. a. $w(r) = G(R^2 - r^2)/(4\mu)$
c. Q is reduced to 0.3164 of its original value.

22. a. $y = k(x^4 - 2Lx^3 + L^3x)/24$
b. $y = k(x^4 - 2Lx^3 + L^2x^2)/24$
c. $y = k(x^4 - 4Lx^3 + 6L^2x^2)/24$

Section 10.2, page 476

1. $T = 2\pi/5$

2. $T = 1$

3. Not periodic

4. $T = 2L$

5. $T = 1$

6. Not periodic

7. $T = 2$

8. $T = 4$

9. $f(x) = 2L - x$ in $L < x < 2L$; $f(x) = -2L - x$ in $-3L < x < -2L$

10. $f(x) = x - 1$ in $1 < x < 2$; $f(x) = x - 8$ in $8 < x < 9$

11. $f(x) = -L - x$ in $-L < x < 0$

13. b. $f(x) = \frac{2L}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n}{n}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$

14. b. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{2}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin((2n-1)\pi x/L)}{2n-1}$

15. b. $f(x) = -\frac{\pi}{4} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{2\cos((2n-1)x)}{\pi(2n-1)^2} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}\sin(nx)}{n}\right)$

16. b. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{4}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\cos((2n-1)\pi x)}{(2n-1)^2}$

17. b. $f(x) =$
$\frac{3L}{4} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{2L\cos((2n-1)\pi x/L)}{(2n-1)^2\pi^2} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}L\sin(n\pi x/L)}{n\pi}\right)$

18. b. $f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(-\frac{2}{n\pi}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{2}{n\pi}\right)^2\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)\right)$
$\times\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

19. b. $f(x) = \frac{4}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin((2n-1)\pi x/2)}{2n-1}$

20. b. $f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n}\sin(n\pi x)$

21. b. $f(x) = \frac{2}{3} + \frac{8}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n}{n^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

22. b. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{12}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\cos((2n-1)\pi x/2)}{(2n-1)^2}$
$+ \frac{2}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n}{n}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

23. b. $f(x) = \frac{11}{12} + \frac{1}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n - 5}{n^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$
$+ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{4[1-(-1)^n]}{n^3\pi^3} - \frac{(-1)^n}{n\pi}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

24. b. $f(x) = \frac{9}{8} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{162[(-1)^n - 1]}{n^4\pi^4} - \frac{27(-1)^n}{n^2\pi^2}\right)$
$\times\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right) - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{108(-1)^n + 54}{n^3\pi^3}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)$

25. b. $m = 81$

26. b. $m = 27$

28. $\int_0^x f(t)\,dt$ may not be periodic; for example, let $f(t) = 1 + \cos t$.

Section 10.3, page 481

1. a. $f(x) = \frac{4}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin((2n-1)\pi x)}{2n-1}$

2. a. $f(x) =$
$\frac{\pi}{4} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{2}{(2n-1)^2\pi}\cos((2n-1)x) + \frac{(-1)^n}{n}\sin(nx)\right)$

3. a. $f(x) = \frac{L}{2} + \frac{4L}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\cos((2n-1)\pi x/L)}{(2n-1)^2}$

4. a. $f(x) = \frac{2}{3} + \frac{4}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n^2}\cos(n\pi x)$

5. a. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{2n-1}\cos((2n-1)x)$

6. a. $f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(a_n\cos(n\pi x) + b_n\sin(n\pi x));$
$a_0 = \frac{1}{3}, \quad a_n = \frac{2(-1)^n}{n^2\pi^2}, \quad b_n = \begin{cases} -1/(n\pi), & n \text{ even} \\ 1/(n\pi) - 4/(n^3\pi^3), & n \text{ odd} \end{cases}$

7. a. $f(x) =$
$-\frac{\pi}{4} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1-\cos(n\pi)}{\pi n^2}\cos(nx) - \frac{(-1)^n}{n}\sin(nx)\right)$
b. $n = 10; \quad \max|e| = 1.6025$ at $x = \pm\pi$
$n = 20; \quad \max|e| = 1.5867$ at $x = \pm\pi$
$n = 40; \quad \max|e| = 1.5788$ at $x = \pm\pi$
c. Not possible

8. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1-\cos(n\pi)}{n^2}\cos(n\pi x)$

b. $n = 10$; $\max|e| = 0.02020$ at $x = 0, \pm 1$
$n = 20$; $\max|e| = 0.01012$ at $x = 0, \pm 1$
$n = 40$; $\max|e| = 0.005065$ at $x = 0, \pm 1$

c. $n = 21$

9. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n}\sin(n\pi x)$

b. $n = 10, 20, 40$; $\max|e| = 1$ at $x \pm 1$

c. Not possible

10. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{6(1-\cos(n\pi))}{n^2\pi^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right) + \frac{2\cos(n\pi)}{n\pi}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)\right)$

b. $n = 10$; $\text{lub}|e| = 1.0606$ as $x \to 2$
$n = 20$; $\text{lub}|e| = 1.0304$ as $x \to 2$
$n = 40$; $\text{lub}|e| = 1.0152$ as $x \to 2$

c. Not possible

11. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{1}{6} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{2\cos(n\pi)}{n^2\pi^2}\cos n\pi x - \frac{2 - 2\cos(n\pi) + n^2\pi^2\cos(n\pi)}{n^3\pi^3}\sin(n\pi x)\right)$

b. $n = 10$; $\text{lub}|e| = 0.5193$ as $x \to 1$
$n = 20$; $\text{lub}|e| = 0.5099$ as $x \to 1$
$n = 40$; $\text{lub}|e| = 0.5050$ as $x \to 1$

c. Not possible

12. **a.** $f(x) = -\frac{12}{\pi^3}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n}{n^3}\sin(n\pi x)$

b. $n = 10$; $\max|e| = 0.001345$ at $x = \pm 0.9735$
$n = 20$; $\max|e| = 0.0003534$ at $x = \pm 0.9864$
$n = 40$; $\max|e| = 0.00009058$ at $x = \pm 0.9931$

c. $n = 4$

13. $y = (\omega\sin(nt) - n\sin(\omega t))/\left(\omega\left(\omega^2 - n^2\right)\right)$, $\omega^2 \neq n^2$
$y = (\sin(nt) - nt\cos(nt))/\left(2n^2\right)$, $\omega^2 = n^2$

14. $y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n(\omega\sin(nt) - n\sin(\omega t))/\left(\omega\left(\omega^2 - n^2\right)\right)$, $\omega \neq 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

$y = \sum_{\substack{n=1\\ n\neq m}}^{\infty} b_n(m\sin(nt) - n\sin(mt))/\left(m\left(m^2 - n^2\right)\right) + b_m(\sin(mt) - mt\cos(mt))/\left(2m^2\right)$, $\omega = m$

15. $y = \frac{4}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{\omega^2 - (2n-1)^2} \times \left(\frac{1}{2n-1}\sin((2n-1)t) - \frac{1}{\omega}\sin(\omega t)\right)$

16. $y = \cos\omega t + \frac{1}{2\omega^2}(1 - \cos\omega t) + \frac{4}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\cos((2n-1)\pi t) - \cos(\omega t)}{(2n-1)^2(\omega^2 - (2n-1)^2\pi^2)}$

Section 10.4, page 487

1. Odd

2. Neither

3. Odd

4. Even

5. Even

6. Neither

14. $f(x) = \frac{1}{4} + \frac{4}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1-\cos(n\pi/2)}{n^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$,

$f(x) = \frac{4}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(n\pi/2) - \sin(n\pi/2)}{n^2}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

15. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{2n-1}\cos\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2}\right)$

16. **a.** $f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{2}{n\pi}\left(-\cos(n\pi) + \frac{2}{n\pi}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)\right) \times \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

17. **a.** $f(x) = 1$

18. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{4}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{\sin((2n-1)x)}{2n-1}\right)$

19. **a.** $f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{2}{n\pi}\left(\cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{2n\pi}{3}\right) - 2\cos(n\pi)\right)\sin\left(\frac{nx}{3}\right)$

20. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin(2n\pi x)}{n}$

21. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{L}{2} + \frac{4L}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\cos((2n-1)\pi x/L)}{(2n-1)^2}$

22. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{2L}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin(n\pi x/L)}{n}$

23. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{4}{n^2}\left(\cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) - 1\right)\right) \times \cos\left(\frac{nx}{2}\right)$

24. **a.** $f(x) = 2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n}{n}\sin(nx)$

25. **a.** $f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{4n^2\pi^2(1+\cos(n\pi))}{n^3\pi^3} + \frac{16(1-\cos(n\pi))}{n^3\pi^3}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

26. **a.** $f(x) = \frac{4}{3} + \frac{16}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1+3\cos(n\pi)}{n^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{4}\right)$

27. **a.** $g(x) = \frac{3}{2} + \frac{6}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1-\cos(n\pi)}{n^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)$

$h(x) = \frac{6}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)$

28. **b.** $g(x) = \frac{1}{4} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{4\cos(n\pi/2) + 2n\pi\sin(n\pi/2) - 4}{n^2\pi^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

$h(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{4\sin(n\pi/2) - 2n\pi\cos(n\pi/2)}{n^2\pi^2}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

29. **b.** $g(x) = -\frac{5}{12} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{12\cos(n\pi) + 4}{n^2\pi^2}\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$,

$h(x) = -\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{n^2\pi^2(3 + 5\cos n\pi) + 32(1-\cos(n\pi))}{n^3\pi^3} \times \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{2}\right)$

30. b. $g(x) = \frac{1}{4} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{6n^2\pi^2(2\cos(n\pi) - 5) + 324(1 - \cos(n\pi))}{n^4\pi^4} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)$,

$$h(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{4\cos(n\pi) + 2}{n\pi} + \frac{144\cos(n\pi) + 180}{n^3\pi^3} \right) \times \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{3}\right)$$

40. a. Extend $f(x)$ antisymmetrically from $[0, L]$ into $(L, 2L]$; that is, $f(2L - x) = -f(x)$ for $0 \le x < L$. Then extend this function as an even function into $(-2L, 0)$.

Section 10.5, page 495

1. $xX'' - \lambda X = 0, \quad T' + \lambda T = 0$

2. $X'' - \lambda x X = 0, \quad T' + \lambda t T = 0$

3. $X'' - \lambda(X' + X) = 0, \quad T' + \lambda T = 0$

4. $\left(p(x)X'\right)' + \lambda r(x) X = 0, \quad T'' + \lambda T = 0$

5. Not separable

6. $X'' + (x + \lambda)X = 0, \quad Y'' - \lambda Y = 0$

7. $u(x, t) = e^{-400\pi^2 t} \sin(2\pi x) - e^{-2500\pi^2 t} \sin(5\pi x)$

8. $u(x, t) = 2e^{-\pi^2 t/16} \sin(\pi x/2) - e^{-\pi^2 t/4} \sin(\pi x) + 4e^{-\pi^2 t} \sin(2\pi x)$

9. $u(x, t) = \frac{100}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1 - \cos(n\pi)}{n} e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/1600} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{40}\right)$

10. $u(x, t) = \frac{160}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(n\pi/2)}{n^2} e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/1600} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{40}\right)$

11. $u(x, t) = \frac{100}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos(n\pi/4) - \cos(3n\pi/4)}{n} e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/1600} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{40}\right)$

12. $u(x, t) = \frac{80}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n} e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/1600} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{40}\right)$

13. $t = 5, \ n = 16; \quad t = 20, \ n = 8; \quad t = 80, \ n = 4$

17. d. $t = 673.35$

18. d. $t = 451.60$

19. d. $t = 617.17$

20. b. $t = 5, \ x = 33.20; \quad t = 10, \ x = 31.13; \quad t = 20, \ x = 28.62; \quad t = 40, \ x = 25.73; t = 100, \ x = 21.95; \quad t = 200, \ x = 20.31$

e. $t = 524.81$

21. $u(x, t) = \frac{200}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1 - \cos(n\pi)}{n} e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/400} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{20}\right)$

a. 35.91°C
b. 67.23°C
c. 99.96°C

23. a. 76.73 s
b. 152.56 s
c. 1093.36 s

25. a. $aw_{xx} - bw_t + (c - b\delta)w = 0$
b. $\delta = c/b$ if $b \neq 0$

26. $X'' + \mu^2 X = 0, \qquad Y'' + (\lambda^2 - \mu^2)Y = 0, \quad T' + \alpha^2\lambda^2 T = 0$

27. $r^2R'' + rR' + (\lambda^2 r^2 - \mu^2)R = 0, \quad \Theta'' + \mu^2\Theta = 0, \quad T' + \alpha^2\lambda^2 T = 0$

Section 10.6, page 502

1. $u = 10 + \frac{3}{5}x$

2. $u = 30 - \frac{5}{4}x$

3. $u = 0$

4. $u = T$

5. $u = 0$

6. $u = T$

7. $u = T(1 + x)/(1 + L)$

8. $u = T(1 + L - x)/(1 + L)$

9. a. $u(x, t) = 3x + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{70\cos(n\pi) + 50}{n\pi} e^{-0.86n^2\pi^2 t/400} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{20}\right)$

d. 160.29 s

10. a. $f(x) = 2x, \ 0 \le x \le 50;$ $f(x) = 200 - 2x, \ 50 < x \le 100$

b. $u(x, t) = 20 - \frac{x}{5} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-1.14n^2\pi^2 t/(100)^2} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{100}\right), \ c_n = \frac{800}{n^2\pi^2} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) - \frac{40}{n\pi}$

d. $u(50, t) \to 10$ as $t \to \infty$; 3754 s

11. a. $u(x, t) = 30 - x + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/900} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{30}\right)$,

$$c_n = \frac{60}{n^3\pi^3}(2(1 - \cos(n\pi)) - n^2\pi^2(1 + \cos(n\pi)))$$

12. a. $u(x, t) = \frac{2}{\pi} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/L^2} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$,

$$c_n = \begin{cases} 0, & n \text{ odd;} \\ -4/(n^2 - 1)\pi, & n \text{ even} \end{cases}$$

b. $\lim_{t\to\infty} u(x, t) = 2/\pi$

13. a. $u(x, t) = \frac{200}{9} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/6400} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{40}\right)$,

$$c_n = -\frac{160}{3n^2\pi^2}(3 + \cos(n\pi))$$

c. 200/9
d. 1543 s

14. a. $u(x, t) = \frac{25}{6} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/900} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{30}\right)$,

$$c_n = \frac{50}{n\pi}\left(\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{6}\right)\right)$$

15. b. $u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-(2n-1)^2\pi^2\alpha^2 t/4L^2} \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right)$,

$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x) \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right) dx$$

16. a. $u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-(2n-1)^2\pi^2 t/3600} \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{60}\right)$,

$$c_n = \frac{120}{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}(2\cos(n\pi) + (2n-1)\pi)$$

c. x_m increases from $x = 0$ and reaches $x = 30$ when $t = 104.4$.

17. a. $u(x, t) = 40 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-(2n-1)^2\pi^2 t/3600} \sin \frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{60}$,

$$c_n = \frac{40}{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}(6\cos(n\pi) - (2n-1)\pi)$$

19. $$u(x) = \begin{cases} T\dfrac{x}{a}\left(\dfrac{\xi}{\xi + (L/a) - 1}\right), & 0 \le x \le a, \\ T\left(1 - \dfrac{L-x}{a}\dfrac{1}{\xi + (L/a) - 1}\right), & a \le x \le L, \end{cases}$$
where $\xi = \kappa_2 A_2/(\kappa_1 A_1)$

20. **e.** $u_n(x,t) = e^{-\mu_n^2\alpha^2 t}\sin(\mu_n x)$

21. $\alpha^2 v'' + s(x) = 0; \quad v(0) = T_1, \ v(L) = T_2,$
$w_t = \alpha^2 w_{xx}; \quad w(0,t) = 0, \ w(L,t) = 0,$
$w(x,0) = f(x) - v(x)$

22. **a.** $v(x) = T_1 + (T_2 - T_1)(x/L) + kLx/2 - kx^2/2$

b. $w(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/400}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{20}\right),$
$$c_n = \frac{160\,(\cos(n\pi) - 1)}{n^3\pi^3}$$

23. **a.** $v(x) = T_1 + (T_2 - T_1)x/L + kLx/6 - kx^3/(6L)$

b. $w(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n^2\pi^2 t/400}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{20}\right),$
$$c_n = \frac{20}{3}\left(\frac{3n^2\pi^2(3\cos(n\pi) - 1) + 60\cos(n\pi)}{n^3\pi^3}\right)$$

Section 10.7, page 512

1. **a.** $$u(x,t) = \frac{8}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n^2}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

2. **a.** $u(x,t) =$
$$\frac{8}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n^2}\left(\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{3n\pi}{4}\right)\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

3. **a.** $$u(x,t) = \frac{32}{\pi^3}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{2 + \cos(n\pi)}{n^3}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

4. **a.** $$u(x,t) = \frac{4}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin(n\pi/2)\sin(n\pi/L)}{n}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \times \cos\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

5. **a.** $$u(x,t) = \frac{8L}{a\pi^3}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n^3}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

6. **a.** $u(x,t) =$
$$\frac{8L}{a\pi^3}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin(n\pi/4) + \sin(3n\pi/4)}{n^3}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

7. **a.** $$u(x,t) = \frac{32L}{a\pi^4}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\cos(n\pi) + 2}{n^4}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

8. **a.** $u(x,t) =$
$$\frac{4L}{a\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin(n\pi/2)\sin(n\pi/L)}{n^2}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi at}{L}\right)$$

9. $$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi at}{2L}\right),$$
$$c_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right)dx$$

10. **a.** $$u(x,t) = \frac{8}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2n-1}\sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi}{4}\right) \times \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi}{2L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi at}{2L}\right)$$

11. **a.** $$u(x,t) = \frac{512}{\pi^4}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(2n-1)\pi + 3\cos(n\pi)}{(2n-1)^4} \times \sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2L}\right)\cos\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi at}{2L}\right)$$

14. **b.** $\phi(x + at)$ represents a wave moving in the negative x direction with speed $a > 0$.

15. Using $g = 32.2$ ft/s^2:
a. 249 ft/s
b. $49.8n\pi$ rad/s
c. Frequencies increase; modes are unchanged.

21. $r^2R'' + rR' + (\lambda^2 r^2 - \mu^2)R = 0, \quad \Theta'' + \mu^2\Theta = 0,$
$T'' + \lambda^2 a^2 T = 0$

23. **a.** $a_n = a\sqrt{1 + (\gamma^2 L^2/n^2\pi^2)}$ (**c**) $\gamma = 0$

24. **a.** $$c_n = \frac{20}{n^2\pi^2}\left(2\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{2n\pi}{5}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{3n\pi}{5}\right)\right)$$

Section 10.8, page 520

1. **a.** $$u(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{n\pi y}{a}\right),$$
$$c_n = \frac{2/a}{\sinh(n\pi b/a)}\int_0^a g(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)dx$$

b. $u(x,y) =$
$$\frac{4a}{\pi^2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n^2}\frac{\sin(n\pi/2)}{\sinh(n\pi b/a)}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{n\pi y}{a}\right)$$

2. $$u(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{n\pi(b-y)}{a}\right),$$
$$c_n = \frac{2/a}{\sinh(n\pi b/a)}\int_0^a h(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)dx$$

3. **a.** $$u(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n^{(1)}\sinh\left(\frac{n\pi x}{b}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n^{(2)}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{n\pi(b-y)}{a}\right),$$
$$c_n^{(1)} = \frac{2/b}{\sinh(n\pi a/b)}\int_0^b f(y)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right)dy,$$
$$c_n^{(2)} = \frac{2/a}{\sinh(n\pi b/a)}\int_0^a h(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)dx$$

b. $$c_n^{(1)} = \frac{2}{n\pi\sinh(n\pi a/b)},$$
$$c_n^{(2)} = -\frac{2}{n^3\pi^3}\frac{(n^2\pi^2 - 2)\cos(n\pi) + 2}{\sinh(n\pi b/a)}$$

5. $$u(r,\theta) = \frac{c_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^{-n}(c_n\cos(n\theta) + k_n\sin(n\theta)),$$
$$c_n = \frac{a^n}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta)\cos(n\theta)\,d\theta, \quad k_n = \frac{a^n}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta)\sin(n\theta)\,d\theta$$

6. **a.** $$u(r,\theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n r^n \sin(n\theta),$$
$$c_n = \frac{2}{\pi a^n}\int_0^{\pi} f(\theta)\sin(n\theta)\,d\theta$$

b. $$c_n = \frac{4}{\pi a^n}\frac{1 - \cos(n\pi)}{n^3}$$

7. $$u(r,\theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n r^{n\pi/\alpha}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi\theta}{\alpha}\right),$$
$$c_n = (2/\alpha)a^{-n\pi/\alpha}\int_0^{\alpha} f(\theta)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi\theta}{\alpha}\right)d\theta$$

8. **a.** $$u(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-n\pi y/a}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right),$$
$$c_n = \frac{2}{a}\int_0^a f(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)dx$$

b. $$c_n = \frac{4a^2}{n^3\pi^3}(1 - \cos(n\pi))$$

c. $y_0 \cong 6.6315$

10. b. $u(x,y) = c_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \cosh\left(\frac{n\pi x}{b}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right)$,

$c_n = \frac{2/n\pi}{\sinh(n\pi a/b)} \int_0^b f(y)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right) dy$

11. $u(r,\theta) = c_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^n (c_n \cos(n\theta) + k_n \sin(n\theta))$,

$c_n = \frac{1}{n\pi a^{n-1}} \int_0^{2\pi} g(\theta)\cos(n\theta)\, d\theta$,

$k_n = \frac{1}{n\pi a^{n-1}} \int_0^{2\pi} g(\theta)\sin(n\theta)\, d\theta$;

necessary condition is $\int_0^{2\pi} g(\theta)\, d\theta = 0$.

12. a. $u(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)\cosh\left(\frac{n\pi y}{a}\right)$,

$c_n = \frac{2/a}{\cosh(n\pi b/a)} \int_0^a g(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right) dx$

b. $c_n = \frac{4a\sin(n\pi/2)}{n^2\pi^2\cosh(n\pi b/a)}$

13. a. $u(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sinh\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi x}{2b}\right)\sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi y}{2b}\right)$,

$c_n = \frac{2/b}{\sinh((2n-1)\pi a/2b)} \int_0^b f(y)\sin\left(\frac{(2n-1)\pi y}{2b}\right) dy$

b. $c_n = \frac{32b^2}{(2n-1)^3\pi^3\sinh((2n-1)\pi a/2b)}$

14. a. $u(x,y) = \frac{c_0 y}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{n\pi y}{a}\right)$,

$c_0 = \frac{2}{ab}\int_0^a g(x)\, dx$,

$c_n = \frac{2/a}{\sinh(n\pi b/a)} \int_0^a g(x)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right) dx$

b. $c_0 = \frac{2}{b}\left(1 + \frac{a^4}{30}\right)$, $c_n = -\frac{24a^4(1+\cos(n\pi))}{n^4\pi^4\sinh(n\pi b/a)}$

19. a. $u(x,z) = b + \frac{\alpha a}{2}$

$- \frac{4\alpha a}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos((2n-1)\pi x/a)\cosh((2n-1)\pi z/a)}{(2n-1)^2\cosh((2n-1)\pi b/a)}$

Section 11.1, page 533

1. Homogeneous
2. Nonhomogeneous
3. Nonhomogeneous
4. Homogeneous
5. Nonhomogeneous
6. Homogeneous

7. a. $\phi_n(x) = \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n} x\right)$, where $\sqrt{\lambda_n}$ satifies $\sqrt{\lambda} = -\tan\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\,\pi\right)$
b. No
c. $\lambda_1 \cong 0.6204$, $\lambda_2 \cong 2.7943$
d. $\lambda_n \cong (2n-1)^2/4$ for large n

8. a. $\phi_n(x) = \cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n} x\right)$, where $\sqrt{\lambda_n}$ satisfies $\sqrt{\lambda} = \cot\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right)$
b. No
c. $\lambda_1 \cong 0.7402$, $\lambda_2 \cong 11.7349$
d. $\lambda_n \cong (n-1)^2\pi^2$ for large n

9. a. $\phi_n(x) = \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n} x\right) + \sqrt{\lambda_n}\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n} x\right)$, where $\sqrt{\lambda_n}$ satisfies $(\lambda - 1)\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) - 2\sqrt{\lambda}\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) = 0$;
b. No
c. $\lambda_1 \cong 1.7071$, $\lambda_2 \cong 13.4924$
d. $\lambda_n \cong (n-1)^2\pi^2$ for large n

10. a. For $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, $\phi_n(x) = \sin(\mu_n x) - \mu_n \cos(\mu_n x)$ and $\lambda_n = -\mu_n^2$, where μ_n satisfies $\mu = \tan\mu$.
b. Yes; $\lambda_0 = 0$, $\phi_0(x) = 1 - x$
c. $\lambda_1 \cong -20.1907$, $\lambda_2 \cong -59.6795$
d. $\lambda_n \cong -(2n+1)^2\pi^2/4$ for large n

12. $\mu(x) = e^{-x^2}$

13. $\mu(x) = 1/x$

14. $\mu(x) = e^{-x}$

15. $\mu(x) = (1 - x^2)^{-1/2}$

16. $X'' + \lambda X = 0$, $T'' + cT' + (k + \lambda a^2)T = 0$

17. a. $s(x) = e^x$
b. $\lambda_n = n^2\pi^2$, $\phi_n(x) = e^x \sin(n\pi x)$; $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

18. Positive eigenvalues $\lambda = \lambda_n$, where $\sqrt{\lambda_n}$ satisfies $\sqrt{\lambda} = 2/3\tan\left(3\sqrt{\lambda}L\right)$ corresponding eigenfunctions are $\phi_n(x) = e^{-2x}\sin\left(3\sqrt{\lambda_n}x\right)$. If $L = 1/2$, $\lambda_0 = 0$ is eigenvalue, $\phi_0(x) = xe^{-2x}$ is eigenfunction; if $L \neq 1/2$, $\lambda = 0$ is not eigenvalue. If $L \leq 1/2$, there are no negative eigenvalues; if $L > 1/2$, there is one negative eigenvalue $\lambda = -\mu^2$, where μ is a root of $\mu = 2/3\tanh(3\mu L)$; corresponding eigenfunction is $\phi_{-1}(x) = e^{-2x}\sinh(3\mu x)$.

19. No real eigenvalues.

20. Only eigenvalue is $\lambda = 0$; eigenfunction is $\phi(x) = x - 1$.

21. a. $2\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) - \sqrt{\lambda}\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) = 0$
c. $\lambda_1 \cong 18.2738$, $\lambda_2 \cong 57.7075$
d. $2\sinh\left(\sqrt{\mu}\right) - \sqrt{\mu}\cosh\left(\sqrt{\mu}\right) = 0$, $\mu = -\lambda$
e. $\lambda_{-1} \cong -3.6673$

24. a. $\lambda_n = \mu_n^4$, where μ_n is a root of $\sin\mu L \sinh\mu L = 0$, hence $\lambda_n = (n\pi/L)^4$;
$\lambda_1 \cong 97.409/L^4$, $\lambda_2 \cong 1558.5/L^4$, $\phi_n(x) = \sin(n\pi x/L)$
b. $\lambda_n = \mu_n^4$, where μ_n is a root of
$\sin(\mu L)\cosh(\mu L) - \cos(\mu L)\sinh(\mu L) = 0$;
$\lambda_1 \cong 237.72/L^4$, $\lambda_2 \cong 2496.5/L^4$,

$\phi_n(x)\sin(\mu_n x) - \frac{\sin(\mu_n L)}{\sinh(\mu_n L)}\sinh(\mu_n x)$

c. $\lambda_n = \mu_n^4$, where μ_n is a root of $1 + \cosh(\mu L)\cos(\mu L) = 0$; $\lambda_1 \cong 12.362/L^4$, $\lambda_2 \cong 485.52/L^4$

$$\phi_n(x) = \sin(\mu_n x) - \sinh(\mu_n x) - \frac{\sin(\mu_n L) + \sinh(\mu_n L)}{\cos(\mu_n L) + \cosh(\mu_n L)}(\cos(\mu_n x) - \cosh(\mu_n x))$$

25. d. $\phi_n(x) = \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}x\right)$, where λ_n satisfies $\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}L\right) - \gamma\sqrt{\lambda_n}L\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}L\right) = 0$
e. $\lambda_1 \cong 1.1597/L^2$, $\lambda_2 \cong 13.276/L^2$

Section 11.2, page 543

1. $\phi_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\sin\left(\left(n - \frac{1}{2}\right)\pi x\right)$; $n = 1, 2, \ldots$

2. $\phi_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\left(\cos\left(n - \frac{1}{2}\right)\pi x\right)$; $n = 1, 2, \ldots$

3. $\phi_0(x) = 1$, $\phi_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\cos(n\pi x)$; $n = 1, 2, \ldots$

4. $\phi_n(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}x\right)}{(1 + \sin^2\sqrt{\lambda_n})^{1/2}}$,

where λ_n satisfies $\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right) - \sqrt{\lambda_n}\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right) = 0$

5. $\phi_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\, e^x \sin(n\pi x)$; $n = 1, 2, \ldots$

6. $a_n = \dfrac{2\sqrt{2}}{(2n-1)\pi}; \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

7. $a_n = \dfrac{4\sqrt{2}(-1)^{n-1}}{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}; \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

8. $a_n = \dfrac{2\sqrt{2}}{(2n-1)\pi}(1 - \cos((2n-1)\pi/4)); \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

9. $a_n = \dfrac{2\sqrt{2}\sin\left(\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\right)}{\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2\pi^2}; \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

In Problems 10 through 13, $\alpha_n = \left(1 + \sin^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)^{1/2}$ and $\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n} - \sqrt{\lambda_n}\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n} = 0$.

10. $a_n = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n}}{\sqrt{\lambda_n}\alpha_n}; \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

11. $a_n = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}\left(2\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n} - 1\right)}{\lambda_n\alpha_n}; \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

12. $a_n = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}\left(1 - \cos\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)}{\lambda_n\alpha_n}; \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

13. $a_n = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}/2\right)}{\sqrt{\lambda_n}\alpha_n}; \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

14. Not self-adjoint

15. Self-adjoint

16. Not self-adjoint

17. Self-adjoint

18. Self-adjoint

21. **a.** If $a_2 = 0$ or $b_2 = 0$, then the corresponding boundary term is missing.

25. **a.** $\lambda_1 = \pi^2/L^2; \quad \phi_1(x) = \sin(\pi x/L)$
b. $\lambda_1 \cong (4.4934)^2/L^2;$
$\phi_1(x) = \sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_1}x\right) - \sqrt{\lambda_1}\,x\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_1}\,L\right)$
c. $\lambda_1 = (2\pi)^2/L^2; \quad \phi_1(x) = 1 - \cos(2\pi x/L)$

26. $\lambda_1 = \pi^2/(4L^2); \quad \phi_1(x) = 1 - \cos(\pi x/(2L))$

27. **a.** $X'' - (v/D)X' + \lambda X = 0, \quad X(0) = 0,$ $X'(L) = 0; \quad T' + \lambda DT = 0$
e. $c(x,t) = \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n e^{-\lambda_n Dt} e^{vx/(2D)} \sin(\mu_n x),$
where $\lambda_n = \mu_n^2 + v^2/(4D^2);$

$$a_n = \frac{4D\mu_n^2 \displaystyle\int_0^L e^{-vx/(2D)} f(x)\sin(\mu_n x)\,dx}{2LD\mu_n^2 + v\sin^2(\mu_n L)}$$

28. **a.** $u_t + vu_x = Du_{xx}, \quad u(0,t) = 0, \quad u_x(L,t) = 0,$ $u(x,0) = -c_0$
b. $u(x,t) = \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n e^{-\lambda_n Dt} e^{vx/(2D)} \sin(\mu_n x),$
where $\lambda_n = \mu_n^2 + v^2/(4D^2)$; $b_n =$

$$\frac{8c_0 D^2\mu_n^2\left(e^{-vL/(2D)}\left(2D\mu_n\cos(\mu_n L) + v\sin(\mu_n L)\right) - 2D\mu_n\right)}{(v^2 + 4D^2\mu_n^2)(2LD\mu_n^2 + v\sin^2(\mu_n L))}$$

Section 11.3, page 553

1. $y = 2\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}\sin(n\pi x)}{(n^2\pi^2 - 2)n\pi}$

2. $y = 2\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}\sin\left(\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)\pi x\right)}{\left(\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2\pi^2 - 2\right)\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2\pi^2}$

3. $y = -\dfrac{1}{4} - 4\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(\frac{\cos(2n-1)\pi x)}{((2n-1)^2\pi^2 - 2)(2n-1)^2\pi^2}$

4. $y = 2\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(2\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n} - 1)\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right)}{\lambda_n(\lambda_n - 2)\left(1 + \sin^2\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)}$

5. $y = 8\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(n\pi/2)\sin(n\pi x)}{(n^2\pi^2 - 2)n^2\pi^2}$

6–9 For each problem the solution is

$$y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - \mu}\phi_n(x), \qquad c_n = \int_0^1 f(x)\phi_n(x)\,dx, \qquad \mu \neq \lambda_n,$$

where $\phi_n(x)$ is given in Problems 1–4, respectively, in Section 11.2, and λ_n is the corresponding eigenvalue. In Problem 8 summation starts at $n = 0$.

10. $a = -\dfrac{1}{2}, \quad y = \dfrac{1}{2\pi^2}\cos(\pi x) + \dfrac{1}{\pi^2}\left(x - \dfrac{1}{2}\right) + c\sin(\pi x)$

11. No solution

12. a is arbitrary, $\; y = c\cos(\pi x) + a/\pi^2$

13. $a = 0, \quad y = c\sin(\pi x) - (x/2\pi)\sin(\pi x)$

17. $v(x) = a + (b-a)x$

18. $v(x) = 1 - \dfrac{3}{2}x$

19. $u(x,t) = \sqrt{2}\left(-\dfrac{4c_1}{\pi^2} + \left(\dfrac{4c_1}{\pi^2} + \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)e^{-\pi^2 t/4}\right)\sin\left(\dfrac{\pi x}{2}\right)$

$$- \sqrt{2}\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{4c_n}{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}\left(1 - e^{-(n-1/2)^2\pi^2 t}\right)\sin\left(\left(n - \frac{1}{2}\right)\pi x,\right)$$

$c_n = \dfrac{4\sqrt{2}(-1)^{n+1}}{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots$

20. $u(x,t) =$

$$\sqrt{2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - 1}(e^{-t} - e^{-\lambda_n t}) + \alpha_n e^{-\lambda_n t}\right)\frac{\cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right)}{\left(1 + \sin^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)\right)^{1/2}},$$

$$c_n = \frac{\sqrt{2}\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)}{\sqrt{\lambda_n}\left(1 + \sin^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)\right)^{1/2}}, \; \alpha_n = \frac{\sqrt{2}\left(1 - \cos\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)\right)}{\lambda_n\left(1 + \sin^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right)\right)^{1/2}},$$

and λ_n satisfies $\cos\sqrt{\lambda_n} - \sqrt{\lambda_n}\sin\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right) = 0$.

21. $u(x,t) = 8\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(n\pi/2)}{n^4\pi^4}(1 - e^{-n^2\pi^2 t})\sin(n\pi x)$

22. $u(x,t) = \sqrt{2}\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n(e^{-t} - e^{-(n-1/2)^2\pi^2 t})\sin\left(\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)\pi x\right)}{\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2\pi^2 - 1},$

where $c_n = \dfrac{2\sqrt{2}(2n-1)\pi + 4\sqrt{2}(-1)^n}{(2n-1)^2\pi^2}$

23. **a.** $r(x)w_t = (p(x)w_x)_x - q(x)w, \quad w(0,t) = 0,$ $w(1,t) = 0, \quad w(x,0) = f(x) - v(x)$

24. $u(x,t) = x^2 - 2x + 1 + \dfrac{4}{\pi}\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-(2n-1)^2\pi^2 t}\sin((2n-1)\pi x)}{2n-1}$

25. $u(x,t) = -\cos(\pi x) + e^{-9\pi^2 t/4}\cos(3\pi x/2)$

31–34. In all cases solution is $y = \int_0^1 G(x, s)f(s)\,ds$, where $G(x, s)$ is given below.

31. $G(x, s) = \begin{cases} 1 - x, & 0 \le s \le x \\ 1 - s, & x \le s \le 1 \end{cases}$

32. $G(x, s) = \begin{cases} s(2 - x)/2, & 0 \le s \le x \\ x(2 - s)/2, & x \le s \le 1 \end{cases}$

33. $G(x, s) = \begin{cases} \cos(s)\sin(1 - x)/\cos(1), & 0 \le s \le x \\ \sin(1 - s)\cos(x)/\cos(1), & x \le s \le 1 \end{cases}$

34. $G(x, s) = \begin{cases} s, & 0 \le s \le x \\ x, & x \le s \le 1 \end{cases}$

Section 11.4, page 561

1. $y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - \mu} J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right)$,
$c_n = \int_0^1 f(x) J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right) dx \Big/ \int_0^1 x J_0^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right) dx$,
$\sqrt{\lambda_n}$ satisfies $J_0\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) = 0$.

2. d. $y = -\frac{c_0}{\mu} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - \mu} J_0(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x)$;

$c_0 = 2\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$;

$c_n = \int_0^1 f(x) J_0(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x)\,dx \Big/ \int_0^1 x J_0^2(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x)\,dx$,
$n = 1, 2, \ldots$; $\sqrt{\lambda_n}$ satisfies $J_0'\left(\sqrt{\lambda}\right) = 0$.

3. d. $a_n = \int_0^1 x J_k\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right) f(x)\,dx \Big/ \int_0^1 x J_k^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right) dx$

e. $y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - \mu} J_k\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right)$,

$c_n = \int_0^1 f(x) J_k(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x)\,dx \Big/ \int_0^1 x J_k^2\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\,x\right) dx$

4. b. $y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n}{\lambda_n - \mu} P_{2n-1}(x)$, where

$c_n = \int_0^1 f(x) P_{2n-1}(x)\,dx \Big/ \int_0^1 P_{2n-1}^2(x)\,dx$

Section 11.5, page 564

1. b. $u(\xi, 2) = f(\xi + 1)$, $u(\xi, 0) = 0$, $0 \le \xi \le 2$,
$u(0, \eta) = u(2, \eta) = 0$, $0 \le \eta \le 2$

2. $u(r, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} k_n J_0(\lambda_n r)\sin(\lambda_n a t)$,

$k_n = \frac{1}{\lambda_n a}\int_0^1 r J_0(\lambda_n r) g(r)\,dr \Big/ \int_0^1 r J_0^2(\lambda_n r)\,dr$

3. Superpose the solution of Problem 2 and the solution (Eq. (21)) of the example in the text.

6. $u(r, z) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n e^{-\lambda_n z} J_0(\lambda_n r)$,

$c_n = \int_0^1 r J_0(\lambda_n r) f(r)\,dr \Big/ \int_0^1 r J_0^2(\lambda_n r)\,dr$,
and λ_n satisfies $J_0(\lambda) = 0$.

7. b. $v(r, \theta) = \frac{c_0}{2} J_0(kr)$
$+ \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} J_m(kr)(b_m \sin(m\theta) + c_m \cos(m\theta))$,

$b_m = \frac{1}{\pi J_m(kc)} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta)\sin(m\theta)\,d\theta$; $m = 1, 2, \ldots$

$c_m = \frac{1}{\pi J_m(kc)} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta)\cos(m\theta)\,d\theta$; $m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

8. $c_n = \int_0^1 r f(r) J_0(\lambda_n r)\,dr \Big/ \int_0^1 r J_0^2(\lambda_n r)\,dr$

10. $u(\rho, s) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n \rho^n P_n(s)$,

where $c_n = \int_{-1}^{1} f(\arccos s) P_n(s)\,ds \Big/ \int_{-1}^{1} P_n^2(s)\,ds$;
P_n is the nth Legendre polynomial and $s = \cos(\phi)$.

Section 11.6, page 571

1. $n = 21$

2. a. $b_m = (-1)^{m+1}\sqrt{2}/(m\pi)$
c. $n = 20$

3. a. $b_m = 2\sqrt{2}(1 - \cos(m\pi))/(m^3\pi^3)$
c. $n = 1$

7. a. $f_0(x) = 1$
b. $f_1(x) = \sqrt{3}(1 - 2x)$
c. $f_2(x) = \sqrt{5}(-1 + 6x - 6x^2)$
d. $g_0(x) = 1$, $g_1(x) = 2x - 1$, $g_2(x) = 6x^2 - 6x + 1$

8. $P_0(x) = 1$, $P_1(x) = x$, $P_2(x) = (3x^2 - 1)/2$,
$P_3(x) = (5x^3 - 3x)/2$

Index

T

U

V

W

Y

WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Go to www.wiley.com/go/eula to access Wiley's ebook EULA.